



Alcatel-Lucent

7450 ESS, 7750 SR and 7950 XRS | RELEASES UP TO 13.0.R6

ADVANCED CONFIGURATION GUIDE - PART II

Alcatel-Lucent – Proprietary & Confidential
Contains proprietary/trade secret information which is the property of Alcatel-Lucent. Not to be made available to, or copied or used by anyone who is not an employee of Alcatel-Lucent except when there is a valid non-disclosure agreement in place which covers such information and contains appropriate non-disclosure and limited use obligations.
Copyright 2015 © Alcatel-Lucent. All rights reserved.

All specifications, procedures, and information in this document are subject to change and revision at any time without notice. The information contained herein is believed to be accurate as of the date of publication. Alcatel-Lucent provides no warranty, express or implied, regarding its contents. Users are fully responsible for application or use of the documentation.

Alcatel, Lucent, Alcatel-Lucent and the Alcatel-Lucent logo are trademarks of Alcatel-Lucent. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Copyright 2015 Alcatel-Lucent.

All rights reserved.

Disclaimers

Alcatel-Lucent products are intended for commercial uses. Without the appropriate network design engineering, they must not be sold, licensed or otherwise distributed for use in any hazardous environments requiring fail-safe performance, such as in the operation of nuclear facilities, aircraft navigation or communication systems, air traffic control, direct life-support machines, or weapons systems, in which the failure of products could lead directly to death, personal injury, or severe physical or environmental damage. The customer hereby agrees that the use, sale, license or other distribution of the products for any such application without the prior written consent of Alcatel-Lucent, shall be at the customer's sole risk. The customer hereby agrees to defend and hold Alcatel-Lucent harmless from any claims for loss, cost, damage, expense or liability that may arise out of or in connection with the use, sale, license or other distribution of the products in such applications.

This document may contain information regarding the use and installation of non-Alcatel-Lucent products. Please note that this information is provided as a courtesy to assist you. While Alcatel-Lucent tries to ensure that this information accurately reflects information provided by the supplier, please refer to the materials provided with any non-Alcatel-Lucent product and contact the supplier for confirmation. Alcatel-Lucent assumes no responsibility or liability for incorrect or incomplete information provided about non-Alcatel-Lucent products.

However, this does not constitute a representation or warranty. The warranties provided for Alcatel-Lucent products, if any, are set forth in contractual documentation entered into by Alcatel-Lucent and its customers.

This document was originally written in English. If there is any conflict or inconsistency between the English version and any other version of a document, the English version shall prevail.

Table of Contents

Preface	13
Multi-Service Integrated Service Adapter	17
Application Assurance — Application Identification and User-Defined Applications	19
Application Assurance — App-Profile, ASO and Control Policies	55
Application Assurance — Asymmetry Removal	87
Application Assurance — Best Practices for ISA and Host IOM Overload Protection	105
Application Assurance — HTTP In Browser Notification	131
Application Assurance — Local URL List Filtering	147
Application Assurance — Security Gateway Stateful Firewall	159
Application Assurance — Stateful Firewall	191
Application Assurance — Usage Monitoring and Policy Control via Diameter Gx Protocol	209
Deterministic Large Scale NAT44	243
IP/GRE Termination	283
L2TP Network Server	313
Multi-Chassis IPSec Redundancy	355
NAT in Combination with ESM	395
Triple Play Service Delivery Architecture	421
ARP Hosts	423
Bridged CO	451
Diameter Application NASREQ	493
Diameter Inter-Chassis Redundancy	509
ESM Basics	533
ESM IPv4: Multicast in a Wholesale/Retail Scenario	581
ESM IPv4: Multicast with Redirection	597
ESM IPv4: Multicast with SRRP	635

Table of Contents

ESM SLAAC Prefix Assignment via Local Address Server	669
ESMv4: PPPoE Hosts	691
ESMv6: IPoE Dual Stack Hosts	743
ESMv6: PPPoE Dual Stack Hosts	787
Establishing a Diameter Peering Session	823
Flexible Authentication Model in ESM	839
Ingress Multicast Path Management	885
IPv4 DHCP Hosts	929
L2TP for Subscriber Access — LAC	975
Local User Database Basics	1037
Local User Database for DHCPv4 Server	1071
Managed SAPs with Routed CO	1095
Multi-Chassis Ring Layer 2 with Enhanced Subscriber Management	1129
Python Cache Support for ESM Applications	1163
RADIUS-Triggered Dynamic Data Service Provisioning	1189
Raw Formatting of DHCPv4/v6 Options in ESM	1235
Routed CO	1271
Subscriber Redundancy for Routed-CO	1319
WiFi Aggregation and Offload — Basic Open SSID	1353
WiFi Aggregation and Offload — Basic Secure SSID with Distributed RADIUS Proxy	1379
WiFi Aggregation and Offload — IPv4/v6 Dual-Stack UEs	1405
WiFi Aggregation and Offload — Migrant User Support	1427
WiFi Aggregation and Offload — Open SSID with DSM and Lawful Intercept	1443

List of Tables

Table 1:	Customer Reserved App-Filter Ranges	27
Table 2:	Classification Rules for the ISP ON-NET Content Services	32
Table 3:	Default QoS Policy, Application QoS Policy Table	70
Table 4:	Application Assurance Asymmetry Removal Topology	91
Table 5:	Tracking ISA Load in the Reporting Interval	120
Table 6:	SCTP PPIDs	175
Table 7:	GTP Messages	184
Table 8:	ARP Host Time-Related Parameters	438
Table 9:	Correlation of Hosts and BSA/BSR Services	459
Table 10:	BSA/BSR Configuration for Host-1 Operation	463
Table 11:	BSA/BSR Configuration for Host-2 Operation	464
Table 12:	BSA/BSR Configuration for Host-3 Operation	466
Table 13:	Reserved PPPoE Tags	697
Table 14:	LCP and IPCP Code	700
Table 15:	Valid Combinations for RADIUS Authenticated Hosts	746
Table 16:	Valid Combinations for LUDB Authenticated Hosts	746
Table 17:	Applicable Subscriber-Prefix Parameters	759
Table 18:	Timer Parameters	761
Table 19:	Router Advertisements Parameters	763
Table 20:	RADIUS AVPs	765
Table 21:	Local User Database Parameters	768
Table 22:	DHCP Lease State Information	769
Table 23:	Subscriber Prefix Parameters	796
Table 24:	Subscriber Prefix Subnetting for SLAAC	796
Table 25:	Subscriber-Prefix Parameters	799
Table 26:	Prefix Subnetting for delegated-prefix-length /56	799
Table 27:	RADIUS AVPs	801
Table 28:	SLAAC-Related Parameters	805
Table 29:	IPv6CP Nack Message Format	821
Table 30:	Supported DHCP Option 82 Sub-Options	939
Table 31:	Information in DHCP Lease State	945
Table 32:	Masking Examples	1047
Table 33:	Dynamic Service Attribute List for Setup, Modify and Teardown	1200
Table 34:	Dynamic Service Actions on Control- and Data-Channel	1201
Table 35:	Function and Dictionary Relationship	1204
Table 36:	RADIUS Inserted Raw Options	1238
Table 37:	Python Modified DHCP Fields	1239
Table 38:	CLI Inserted DHCP Options	1240

List of Figures

Figure 1:	App-Filters/Applications/AppGroup	22
Figure 2:	HTTP Persistent Connection	29
Figure 3:	Wireshark® www.wikipedia.org	31
Figure 4:	Wireshark® HTTPS www.whatsapp.com	34
Figure 5:	HTTPS SNI	36
Figure 6:	SIP Wireshark® Capture	37
Figure 7:	H323 Wireshark® Capture	39
Figure 8:	Wireshark® GoGlobal	46
Figure 9:	Service Tier Example using ASO, App-Profile and AQP	63
Figure 10:	App-Profile, ASO, AQP Workflow Summary	67
Figure 11:	Default Downstream Bandwidth Policing	71
Figure 12:	Application Assurance Asymmetry Removal Topology	91
Figure 13:	Network to Subscriber Traffic Flow	100
Figure 14:	Subscriber to Network Traffic Flow	101
Figure 15:	System Packet Datapath to AA ISA	107
Figure 16:	HTTP Notification –Setup	134
Figure 17:	Notification Message Example – Quota 80%	135
Figure 18:	Local URL-List Filtering Setup	150
Figure 19:	LTE SeGW Firewall Deployment	161
Figure 20:	SeGW in Small Cells Architecture	162
Figure 21:	Configuration Topology	165
Figure 22:	Block Unsolicited Traffic	194
Figure 23:	SFW — Allow Gaming	194
Figure 24:	ALG Support Example — FTP	195
Figure 25:	Configuration Topology	198
Figure 26:	Gx Reference Point	211
Figure 27:	Convergence	212
Figure 28:	Gx Reference Point	213
Figure 29:	Diameter Protocol Stack	213
Figure 30:	ADC Rules and Related ALU Defined AVPs Defined for Use by AA	215
Figure 31:	PCC Rules and Related ALU-Defined AVPs Defined for Use by AA	216
Figure 32:	ADC Rule Example of AVPs to Install the Application Profile “gold_level”	216
Figure 33:	PCC Rule Example of AVPs to Install the Application Profile “gold_level”	217
Figure 34:	Capture of the ADC Rule Assignment of the “gold_level” appProfile	217
Figure 35:	Call Flow Diagram	220
Figure 36:	Example Configuration Setup	224
Figure 37:	PCRF AVPs Override Call Flow Diagram	234
Figure 38:	RAR Containing ASOs and AppProfile Override AVPs Example	234
Figure 39:	RAR Containing Usage Monitoring ADC Rules Example	237
Figure 40:	Deterministic NAT Mapping	245
Figure 41:	Deterministic NAT Algorithm	246
Figure 42:	Deterministic Mapping: Inside -> Outside Routing Instances	247
Figure 43:	Deterministic Mapping: Outside IP Port-Blocks/Ranges	248
Figure 44:	Test Topology	249
Figure 45:	Case 1	254
Figure 46:	Case 1 Results	259
Figure 47:	Case 1 Flows	259

List of Tables

Figure 48:	Case 2	264
Figure 49:	Case 2 Prefix 10.1.0.0/23 Results	269
Figure 50:	Case 2 Prefix 10.2.0.0/22 Results	270
Figure 51:	Case 3	271
Figure 52:	Case 3 Results	275
Figure 53:	Inverse Mapping Approach	276
Figure 54:	Sending flows: Det + non-Det NAT	281
Figure 55:	GRE Packet Format	286
Figure 56:	7x50 Implementation	287
Figure 57:	IP/GRE over IPsec Tunnel	288
Figure 58:	GRE for Remote Access to a VPRN Service	296
Figure 59:	IP/GRE Tunneling via Static Route	296
Figure 60:	Example GRE over IPsec Tunnel	301
Figure 61:	Test Topology	316
Figure 62:	Ingress/Egress QoS Processing	343
Figure 63:	MC-IPsec Architecture	358
Figure 64:	Test Topology	359
Figure 65:	Network Address Translation Overview	397
Figure 66:	Setup Topology	401
Figure 67:	Simplified Routing Topology	401
Figure 68:	Subscriber-Host Creation Flow	405
Figure 69:	Bridged CO and Routed CO Example	426
Figure 70:	ARP Hosts in a Bridged CO Environment Example	427
Figure 71:	ARP Hosts in a Routed CO Environment Example	430
Figure 72:	ARP Host Session Timeout Example	439
Figure 73:	Trap Generation Example	441
Figure 74:	Throttling Toward RADIUS Example	443
Figure 75:	ARP Host Mobility Example	445
Figure 76:	Bridged CO Network Topology	454
Figure 77:	Key Concepts of Bridged CO Model	455
Figure 78:	Flow Chart for Subscriber-Profile Identification Algorithm	457
Figure 79:	Flowchart for SLA-Profile Identification Algorithm	458
Figure 80:	Sample Topology	460
Figure 81:	Functionality of Each Node	460
Figure 82:	Host-1 Setup Process	472
Figure 83:	Host-2 Setup Process	476
Figure 84:	Host-3 Setup Process	483
Figure 85:	NASREQ Trigger	496
Figure 86:	Diameter Proxy Implementation	512
Figure 87:	Subscriber Connecting to BNG Hosting Active Diameter Proxy	513
Figure 88:	Subscriber Connecting to BNG Hosting Standby Diameter Proxy	514
Figure 89:	Diameter IP Addressing	515
Figure 90:	Retransmission Scenario	516
Figure 91:	Scenario with Failing Diameter Proxy	517
Figure 92:	Scenario with One Diameter Connection Failing	518
Figure 93:	Scenario with Both Diameter Connections Failing	518
Figure 94:	Access Node Gateway Change Trigger	519
Figure 95:	Python for Diameter Connections	524
Figure 96:	Python Example	524
Figure 97:	Diameter Debugging Points	530
Figure 98:	Bridged RGW Scenario	538

Figure 99:	Routed RGW Scenario	539
Figure 100:	SLA-Profile and Sub-Profile	540
Figure 101:	Subscriber Host Identification and Instantiation Process	544
Figure 102:	Direct Address Assignment using LUDB/RADIUS	551
Figure 103:	Indirect Address Assignment using a DHCP Server	553
Figure 104:	Indirect Address Assignment using LAA	555
Figure 105:	Wholesale/Retail Model 1	583
Figure 106:	Wholesale/Retail Model 2	583
Figure 107:	Layer 3 Wholesale/Retail	585
Figure 108:	L2TP Wholesale-Retail Multicast	591
Figure 109:	Network Topology Overview	600
Figure 110:	Single BNG Setup with Multicast Redirection	601
Figure 111:	Network Topology with MC-LAG	608
Figure 112:	IPoE Multicast Message Flow	618
Figure 113:	PPPoE Multicast Flow	622
Figure 114:	Network Topology Overview	637
Figure 115:	Network Topology Used for the Testing	639
Figure 116:	IPoE Subscriber Multicast Flow	649
Figure 117:	PPPoE Multicast Flow	654
Figure 118:	TPSDA Network Topology	671
Figure 119:	Routed CO Network Topology	694
Figure 120:	Discovery Stage Messages	698
Figure 121:	LCP Phase Messages	701
Figure 122:	CHAP Handshaking Overview Process	702
Figure 123:	PAP Overview Process	703
Figure 124:	IPCP Phase Messages	704
Figure 125:	Keepalive Messages	705
Figure 126:	Link Termination Phase	706
Figure 127:	Authentication Flow Chart	719
Figure 128:	Pado-Delay Scenario	739
Figure 129:	IPoE Dual Stack Subscriber Hosts	747
Figure 130:	Dual Stack IPoE Routed Gateway Service	748
Figure 131:	DHCPv6 Lease Process (Part A)	750
Figure 132:	DHCPv6 Lease Process (Part B)	751
Figure 133:	Prefix Delegation	753
Figure 134:	IPv6 Address/Prefix Timers	761
Figure 135:	PPPoE Dual Stack Hosts	789
Figure 136:	Dual Stack PPPoE Bridged Gateway Service Example	790
Figure 137:	Dual Stack PPPoE Routed Gateway Service Example	791
Figure 138:	Message Flow for a Dual Stack PPPoE Host	794
Figure 139:	Dual Stack PPPoE for Routed Gateway	797
Figure 140:	DHCPv6 Renewals	807
Figure 141:	Diameter Protocol Stack	825
Figure 142:	Topology	843
Figure 143:	IOM/IMM Paths Connecting to Switch Fabric Planes	888
Figure 144:	Dynamic Bandwidth Rate Management	903
Figure 145:	Falling-Percent-Reset	904
Figure 146:	Admin-Bw Rate Management	905
Figure 147:	Bridged CO Network Topology	932
Figure 148:	Routed CO Network Topology	932
Figure 149:	DHCP Lease Process	934

List of Tables

Figure 150:	Subscriber Host Connectivity Verification	962
Figure 151:	DHCP Proxy Server: Lease Split Operation	968
Figure 152:	DHCP Proxy Server: Lease Split Operation, DHCP Client Disconnected	969
Figure 153:	DHCP Host Mobility	971
Figure 154:	Network Topology	977
Figure 155:	Supported LT2P Encapsulations	978
Figure 156:	RADIUS Triggered Tunnel/Session Setup without LNS Renegotiation	983
Figure 157:	RADIUS Triggered Tunnel/Session Setup with LNS Renegotiation	984
Figure 158:	Running Multiple PPP Sessions Over a Single L2TP Tunnel	985
Figure 159:	PPP User Initiated Release/Terminate	986
Figure 160:	L2TP Tunnel and Session State Diagram	987
Figure 161:	LAC in Base Routing with Single Endpoint/Single Tunnel	991
Figure 162:	LAC in the Base Routing with Multiple Endpoints	993
Figure 163:	LAC in a VRF	995
Figure 164:	RADIUS Returns L2TP Group	996
Figure 165:	L2TP Keepalive Mechanism	1022
Figure 166:	Floating Peers Accept	1025
Figure 167:	Floating Peers Ignore	1026
Figure 168:	Floating Peers Reject	1026
Figure 169:	LUDB Applications	1039
Figure 170:	Processing an LUDB Lookup Request	1040
Figure 171:	Creating LUDBs and LUDB Entries	1042
Figure 172:	Host Matching Examples	1048
Figure 173:	Host Matching Examples (Continued)	1049
Figure 174:	LUDB Access via a DHCPv4 Server	1074
Figure 175:	Example Configuration	1080
Figure 176:	Decoding the ESM User Option	1088
Figure 177:	Network Topology	1097
Figure 178:	MC-Ring Layer 2 CO Dual Homing	1132
Figure 179:	Dual homing Under Steady-State Condition	1134
Figure 180:	Broken Ring State	1136
Figure 181:	Network Topology	1137
Figure 182:	Unicast Services — Logical Topology	1145
Figure 183:	Multicast Service — Logical Setup	1155
Figure 184:	Test Topology	1166
Figure 185:	Principle Model of Dynamic Data Services	1192
Figure 186:	Test Topology	1194
Figure 187:	Building Blocks of Dynamic Data Services	1195
Figure 188:	Hierarchy of Snippets	1206
Figure 189:	DHCPv4 Lease-Time Inserted by RADIUS and DHCPv4 Server	1241
Figure 190:	Python Injected Hint for Lease-Time	1243
Figure 191:	Format of the IA-NA Option	1244
Figure 192:	Format of the IA Address Option	1244
Figure 193:	Topology	1246
Figure 194:	Components of the Routed CO Model	1274
Figure 195:	Numbered Scenario For IES 1	1284
Figure 196:	Unnumbered Scenario for IES 1	1296
Figure 197:	Hybrid Configuration	1306
Figure 198:	Network Redundancy Components for ESM Routed-CO	1322
Figure 199:	Call Flow for Open SSID	1357
Figure 200:	WiFi Offload Scenario with Open SSID and Local DHCP Server	1359

Figure 201:	WiFi Offload Scenario with Secure SSID and L2-Aware NAT	1383
Figure 202:	Call Flow for Secure SSID with DSM	1396
Figure 203:	DHCPv4 + SLAAC/64 — Open SSID	1409
Figure 204:	DHCPv4 + SLAAC/64 Model — Closed SSID	1410
Figure 205:	DHCPv4 + SLAAC/64 with DHCPv4 Linking Model — Closed SSID	1411
Figure 206:	DHCPv4 + DHCPv6/128 IA_NA Model — Closed SSID	1412
Figure 207:	DHCPv4 + SLAAC/64 with DHCPv4 Linking Model — DTA	1413
Figure 208:	Sequence of Events to Establish and Authenticate a Migrant User (continued)	1435
Figure 209:	Sequence of Events to Establish and Authenticate a Migrant User	1436
Figure 210:	WiFi Offload Scenario with Open SSID, DSM and LI	1447

About This Guide

The Advanced Configuration Guide is divided into two books, The Part I Guide and the Part II Guide.

Part I provides advanced configurations for basic systems, system management, interface configuration, router configuration, routing protocols, MPLS, services overview, Layer 2 and EVPN services, Layer 3 services and Quality of Service.

Part II provides advanced configurations for Multi-Service Integrated Service Adapter and Triple Play Service Delivery Architecture.

Parts I and II of the Advanced Configuration Guide supplement the user configuration guides listed below.

The guide is organized alphabetically within each chapter and provides feature and configuration explanations, CLI descriptions and overall solutions. The chapters in the Advanced Configuration Guide are written for and tested on different releases, up to 13.0.R6. The Applicability section in each chapter specifies on which release the configuration was tested.

Audience

This manual is intended for network administrators who are responsible for configuring the routers. It is assumed that the network administrators have a detailed understanding of networking principles and configurations.

List of Technical Publications

The 7x50 series documentation set also includes of the following guides:

- Basic System Configuration Guide
This guide describes basic system configurations and operations.

- **System Management Guide**
This guide describes system security and access configurations as well as event logging and accounting logs.
- **Interface Configuration Guide**
This guide describes card, Media Dependent Adapter (MDA) and port provisioning.
- **Router Configuration Guide**
This guide describes logical IP routing interfaces and associated attributes such as an IP address, as well as IP and MAC-based filtering, and VRRP and Cflowd.
- **Routing Protocols Guide**
This guide provides an overview of routing concepts and provides configuration examples for RIP, OSPF, IS-IS, BGP, and route policies.
- **MPLS Configuration Guide**
This guide describes how to configure Multiprotocol Label Switching (MPLS) and Label Distribution Protocol (LDP).
- **Services Overview Guide**
This guide describes how to configure service parameters such as service distribution points (SDPs), customer information, and user services.
- **Layer 2 Services and EVPN Guide**
This guide describes Virtual Leased Lines (VLL), Virtual Private LAN Service (VPLS), Provider Backbone Bridging (PBB), and Ethernet VPN (EVPN).
- **Layer 3 Services Guide**
This guide describes Internet Enhanced Services (IES) and Virtual Private Routed Network (VPRN) services.
- **Versatile Service Module Guide**
This guide describes how to configure service parameters for the Versatile Service Module (VSM).
- **OAM and Diagnostics Guide**
This guide describes how to configure features such as service mirroring and Operations, Administration and Management (OAM) tools.
- **Triple Play Guide**
This guide describes Triple Play services and support provided by the routers and presents examples to configure and implement various protocols and services.
- **Quality of Service Guide**
This guide describes how to configure Quality of Service (QoS) policy management.
- **RADIUS Attributes Guide**

This guide describes all supported RADIUS Authentication, Authorization and Accounting attributes.

- Multi-Service Integrated Service Adapter Guide

This guide describes services provided by integrated service adapters such as Application Assurance, IPSec, ad insertion (ADI) and Network Address Translation (NAT).

- Gx AVPs Reference Guide

This guide describes Gx Attribute Value Pairs (AVP).

Multi-Service Integrated Service Adapter

In This Section

This section provides MS-ISA configuration information for the following topics:

- [Application Assurance — Application Identification and User-Defined Applications on page 19](#)
- [Application Assurance — App-Profile, ASO and Control Policies on page 55](#)
- [Application Assurance — Asymmetry Removal on page 87](#)
- [Application Assurance — Best Practices for ISA and Host IOM Overload Protection on page 105](#)
- [Application Assurance — HTTP In Browser Notification on page 131](#)
- [Application Assurance — Local URL List Filtering on page 147](#)
- [Application Assurance — Stateful Firewall on page 191](#)
- [Application Assurance — Security Gateway Stateful Firewall on page 159](#)
- [Application Assurance — Usage Monitoring and Policy Control via Diameter Gx Protocol on page 209](#)
- [Deterministic Large Scale NAT44 on page 243](#)
- [IP/GRE Termination on page 283](#)
- [L2TP Network Server on page 313](#)
- [Multi-Chassis IPSec Redundancy on page 355](#)
- [NAT in Combination with ESM on page 395](#)

In This Section

Application Assurance — Application Identification and User-Defined Applications

In This Chapter

This section describes Application Assurance (AA) Application Identification and User-Defined Applications configurations.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 20](#)
- [Overview on page 21](#)
- [Configuration Examples on page 31](#)
- [Conclusion on page 53](#)

Applicability

This example is applicable to all 7750, 7450 and 7750-SRc chassis supporting Application Assurance and was tested on release 12.0.R4.

There are no specific pre-requisites for this example.

Overview

This chapter is intended for Application Assurance (AA) network architects and engineers. It provides best practice information to customize the AA policy and classify any type traffic to meet the service provider reporting, charging or control requirements.

In addition to the signatures built and supported by Alcatel-Lucent, service providers can create their own application signatures based on various criteria. This customization capability can be used to classify traffic hosted on the provider network (web portal, streaming service) or hosted on the Internet and not yet covered by the default AA signature set.

Basics and Terminology

The following main components are used for AA classification:

- **Application Filters** — App-filters are used to define applications based on Layer 3 to Layer 7 criteria. They provide a mapping between one or more protocol signatures or customized traffic patterns into an application of interest.
- **Application** — Such as BitTorrent®, Netflix®. Traffic is classified into applications using app-filters.
- **Application Group** — Such as peer-to-peer, multimedia streaming. For the purpose of reporting and control, applications of similar type/function can be grouped together in Application Groups (App-Group).
- **Charging Group** — Such as zero rating, default. For the purpose of charging or control, applications and app-group can be grouped together in charging groups.

The following table is a high level example to illustrate how app-filters are used to defined applications and show their logical grouping into app-group and charging group.

Maximum Flexibility to Identify Standard and Custom Applications of Interest

Criteria	App-Filter (ordered list of entries, ACL like)	Application	Application Group	Charging Group
<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Protocol- Expression: (HTTP, SIP, H323, TLS, RTSP)- L4 Server Port- IP Server Address- Flow Direction- Custom Protocol	Expression - http: yahoo.com	Yahoo	Web	CG#1 - Default
	Expression - http: maps.google.com	Google Maps		Social Networking	CG#2 - Zero Rating
	Expression - http: facebook.com	Facebook		
	Protocol: ftp_control, ftp_data	FTP	File Transfer	CG#1 - Default
	Protocol: bittorrent, dht, utp	BitTorrent	Peer to Peer	
	Protocol: emule	Emule		

Flexible classification/identification rules (apps-filters) to identify:

- Standard applications
- Custom defined applications

Flexible applications/app-group creation and mapping for:

- Reporting
- Control (redirect, enrichment, policing...)

Independent charging group mapping for differentiated billing.

Figure 1: App-Filters/Applications/AppGroup

- BitTorrent® and Emule® applications are defined using their protocol signature and grouped in the P2P app-group.
- FTP application is defined using both ftp_data and ftp_control protocol signatures, the app is mapped in the file transfer app-group.
- Google Maps® and Yahoo® web sites are defined using http expression and grouped together in the Web app-group.

Configuration

Classification Criteria (App-Filter)

The operator can take full advantage of the flexible AA policy configuration to classify traffic from any application of interest using various criteria ranging from Layer 3 to Layer 7 expressions.

Expression match criteria allows to further refine traffic classification by identifying traffic from HTTP, HTTPS (SSL/TLS), SIP, H323, RTSP, Citrix protocol signatures.

The different app-filter match criteria are listed below:

- L7 Expression
 - HTTP: Host, URI, User Agent, Referer
 - SSL/TLS: Certificate Org Name, Common Name, SNI
 - H323: Product-ID
 - SIP: URI, User Agent, Media Type
 - RTSP: Host, URI, User Agent
 - Citrix: Application Published Name
 - RTMP: Page-host, page-uri, swf-host, swf-uri
- IP Protocol Number
- IP Server Address
- TCP/UDP Server Port
- Custom Protocol
- Protocol Signature

The following operators are supported to define expression based app-filters:

- ^ : Expression start with
- \$: Expression end with
- *: Wildcard - anything before or after
- \I: Forces case sensitivity
- \d: Any single decimal digit [0-9]
- \.: Any single character
- *: Asterisk character

Classification Criteria (App-Filter)

Examples of expression match combinations:

`^abcd*`: match 'abcd' at beginning, can end with anything

`*abcd*`: match 'abcd' anywhere

`*abcd$`: match 'abcd' at the end

`^abcd$`: exact expression match 'abcd'

`^ab*cd$`: string starts with 'ab', ends with 'cd' (anything else in between)

`^ab\dcd$`: string starts with 'ab', followed by a decimal digit, ends with 'cd'

Note: It is possible to combine different criteria or expressions within the same filter in which case an implicit AND operation between the criteria within the same filter is done by the system.

Application Definition Example

The example below provides a basic configuration example with the application FTP made of two protocol signatures ftp_control and ftp_data; the application is mapped into the application group file transfer:

Create the application group.

```
configure application-assurance group 1:1 policy
  app-group "File Transfer"
  exit
```

Create the application.

```
configure application-assurance group 1:1 policy
  application "FTP"
    app-group "File Transfer"
  exit
```

Create the app-filters.

```
configure application-assurance group 1:1 policy
  app-filter
    entry <1..65535> create
      protocol eq "ftp_data"
      application "FTP"
      no shutdown
    exit
    entry <1..65535> create
      protocol eq "ftp_control"
      application "FTP"
      no shutdown
  exit
```

Note: Once the application is created the operator is expected to configure the collection of statistics at the subscriber level for this new application (usually only for business VPNs).

User-Defined Applications

General Recommendations

In order to classify traffic properly it is recommended to follow the guidelines and best practices defined in this section before creating a new application:

- Analyze the application traffic
 - Identify what type traffic is used (Wireshark®).
 - Use the application the same way the end user would use it, the same application can create various flows.
 - Configure the appropriate App-Filters
 - Following the analysis of the application done above, create the application.
 - Follow the App-Filter best practices chapter to understand in which range to add the filters.
 - More than one App-Filters can be required to identify a single application.
-

AppDB/Default AA Policy

The default AA policy called AppDB (Application Database) is provided by Alcatel-Lucent and should be used on most deployments. Contact your regional support organization for more details on how to obtain it.

This configuration includes applications and application-groups most Providers can use by default and is designed to allow the addition of any custom entries required by Service Providers to identify additional services/applications.

Before adding new entries to the template and customizing the configuration it is recommended to follow the next guidelines on app-filters and ranges. These guidelines are key to allow an easy upgrade path from the policy configuration provided by Alcatel-Lucent.

App-Filters

App-Filters are an ordered list of entries. It is important to keep the order of this list consistent with the classification objective.

For instance a common configuration mistake is to configure a filter rule for the HTTP protocol signature before HTTP expression filters. If that was the case then app-filters using HTTP expressions would not be used as the system would find an acceptable match with the protocol signature before walking the list of expressions configured. This mistake is described in the example below:

```
entry 100 create
  description "Default HTTP Protocol"
  protocol eq "http"
  application "HTTP"
  no shutdown
exit
entry 110 create
  description "Google"
  expression 1 http-host eq "*.google.com$"
  application "Google"
  no shutdown
exit
```

This is an incorrect AppFilter order. App-filter entry #100 will always match before the http expression entry #110.

Note: It is not necessary to specify a protocol when defining an expression filter, the protocol is implicit based on the type of expression match criteria used (for instance, http, sip, h323).

App-Filters Ranges

The App-Filter list is an ordered list, it is key to configure each app-filter in the right order and in the proper range.

The operator can customize the policy and create applications and app-filters by using the following ranges shown in [Table 1](#) (other ranges are used by the Alcatel-Lucent default policy):

Table 1: Customer Reserved App-Filter Ranges

Range Name	Description	Start	End
Top range	Top range, matches before any other filters	1	1499
High priority	Matches before the other filters.	2000	3999
Expression range A	HTTP Host, Host+URI ; optionally with IP/Port match	19000	22999

Table 1: Customer Reserved App-Filter Ranges (Continued)

Range Name	Description	Start	End
Expression range B	Other Expression Match ; optionally with IP/Port match	33000	34999
Extended protocols	Protocol-signature + Port|IP|Dir. match	40000	41999
Custom protocols	Custom protocol signature match	61000	61499
Trusted/validate ports	1st packet validate, 1st packet trusted match	61500	61999

Ordering Basics:

- Layer 7 expressions based filters are located before their parent protocol signature (for example, expression matches on http are located before the http protocol app-filter; the same applies to TLS, SIP, H323, RTSP, Citrix).
- HTTP Host and URI are located before the HTTP referer for accounting accuracy (for example, YouTube® from within Facebook® is classified as YouTube®)
- App-filters combining protocol signatures with Layer 4 port, IP protocol, IP address or flow direction are always located before the protocol signature only filter range.

HTTP

Protocol

HTTP is a client/server protocol using TCP/IP at the transport layer to deliver resources such as HTML files, images, videos and more.

HTTP 1.1 enables HTTP clients to use a persistent connection to a server allowing them to reuse the same TCP session for multiple HTTP transactions. Text, images, video, scripts and other objects can be downloaded individually in different transactions through the same TCP session.

[Figure 2](#) describes a typical persistent HTTP connection between a web client and a server with multiple HTTP transactions within the same TCP session:

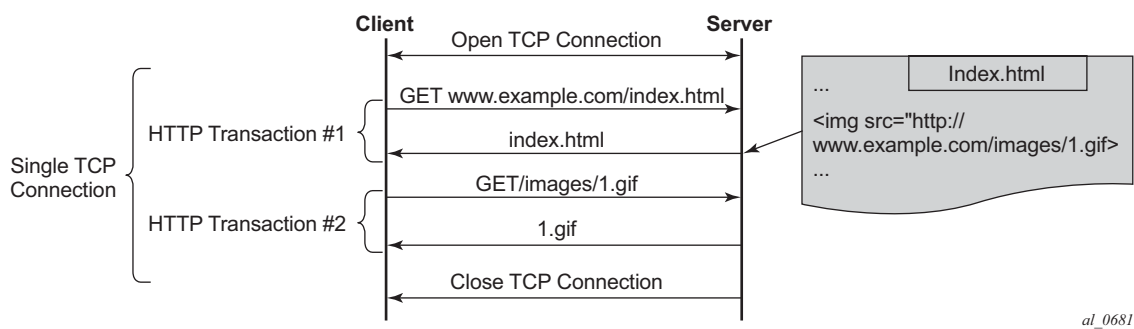


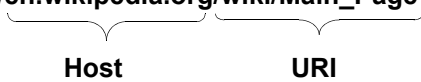
Figure 2: HTTP Persistent Connection

User-defined expression-based HTTP applications will use the first HTTP transaction to classify the flow (optionally this behavior can be modified).

HTTP Request

The example below shows the content of a typical HTTP request to wikipedia.org which includes the following header fields: HTTP Host, HTTP URI, HTTP User Agent and HTTP referer fields:

Web Browser URL: **http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Main_Page**



Host **URI**

HTTP Request Header

Host: en.wikipedia.org

URI: /wiki/Main_Page

User Agent: Mozilla/5.0(Windows NT 6.1; WOW64)

Referer: http://www.google.com/

- HTTP Host — Represents the domain name (does not include “http://”).
- HTTP URI — The URL trailer after the host domain name (begins with slash “/”).
- HTTP Referer — The address of the previous web page from which a link to the currently requested page was followed (in this example the referer is www.google.com which means the user clicked on a link from a Google search pointing to wikipedia.org).
- HTTP User Agent — This identifies the web browser or application making the HTTP request.

Configuration Examples

HTTP Host (Wikipedia)

Classifying HTTP traffic from this web site can be done using a single expression tail anchored on the HTTP host:

```
configure application-assurance group 1:1 policy app-filter
  entry <1..65535> create
    description "Wikipedia Web Access" expression 1 http-host eq "*.wikipedia.org$"
    application "Wikipedia"
    no shutdown
  exit
```

This can be confirmed using Wireshark®.

No.	Time	Source	Destination	Protocol	Info
149	4.474276	192.168.1.4	208.80.154.225	TCP	57881 > http [SYN] Seq=0 Win=8192 Le
172	4.508432	208.80.154.225	192.168.1.4	TCP	http > 57881 [SYN, ACK] Seq=0 Ack=1
173	4.508543	192.168.1.4	208.80.154.225	TCP	57881 > http [ACK] Seq=1 Ack=1 Win=62
204	4.568615	192.168.1.4	208.80.154.225	HTTP	GET / HTTP/1.1
207	4.615704	208.80.154.225	192.168.1.4	TCP	http > 57881 [ACK] Seq=1 Ack=986 Win
208	4.615807	208.80.154.225	192.168.1.4	TCP	[TCP segment of a reassembled PDU]
209	4.615635	208.80.154.225	192.168.1.4	HTTP	HTTP/1.0 301 Moved Permanently
210	4.617685	192.168.1.4	208.80.154.225	TCP	57881 > http [ACK] Seq=956 Ack=614 w

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Frame 204: 1039 bytes on wire (8312 bits), 1039 bytes captured (8312 bits) Ethernet II, Src: HonHaiPr_77:bf:c8 (4c:0f:6e:77:bf:c8), Dst: Netgear_d8:68:78 (c0:3f:0e:d8:68:78) Internet Protocol, Src: 192.168.1.4 (192.168.1.4), Dst: 208.80.154.225 (208.80.154.225) Transmission Control Protocol, Src Port: 57881 (57881), Dst Port: http (80), Seq: 1, Ack: 1, Len: 985 Hypertext Transfer Protocol <ul style="list-style-type: none"> GET / HTTP/1.1 Host: en.wikipedia.org\r\n Connection: keep-alive\r\n User-Agent: Mozilla/5.0 (Windows NT 6.1; WOW64) AppleWebKit/537.4 (KHTML, like Gecko) Chrome/22.0.1229. 	al_0682W
--	----------

Figure 3: Wireshark® www.wikipedia.org

Classification per URI within the Same Host

Operators may need to apply different charging rules to different content located on the same HTTP domain (different URI, same HOST).

Table 2 displays an example of classification rules for the ISP ON-NET content services:

Table 2: Classification Rules for the ISP ON-NET Content Services

URL	Charging Rule	AA Application
www.ispdomain.com/video	Rule #1 – 0 Rating	ISP-Portal-Video
www.ispdomain.com/images	Rule #2 – Charge X	ISP-Portal-Images
www.ispdomain.com/*	Rule #3 – Charge Y	ISP-Portal-Default

HTTP 1.1 can reuse the same TCP connection for many transactions to the same server. Classifying each HTTP transaction to www.ispdomain.com independently requires a specific AA configuration.

Prior to SR OS 12.0.R1 the system can be configured to enable traffic classification for all http requests at the AA partition level only therefore affecting all HTTP flows within this partition. SR OS 12.0R1 allows to selectively enable “http-match-all-requests” in app-filters to improve the system performance and limit the HTTP analysis per domain.

The SROS 12.0.R1 configuration example below allows traffic classification of different URIs of the same domain (www.ispdomain.com) independently therefore allowing differentiated charging and control:

- http-match-all-req is enabled on all host+uri app-filters to www.ispdomain.com
- default app-filter required to match any traffic to www.ispdomain.com

```
configure application-assurance group 1:1 policy
  app-filter
    entry <1..65535> create
      description "Zero rated content"
      expression 1 http-host eq "^www.ispdomain.com$"
      expression 2 http-uri eq "^/video*"
      http-match-all-req
      application "ISP Portal Video"
      no shutdown
    exit
  entry <1..65535> create
    description "Image charging"
    expression 1 http-host eq "^www.ispdomain.com$"
    expression 2 http-uri eq "^/images*"
    http-match-all-req
```

AA - Application ID and User-Defined Applications

```
        application "ISP Portal Images"
        no shutdown
exit
entry <1..65535> create
    description "Default charging"
    expression 1 http-host eq "^www.ispdomain.com$"
    http-match-all-req
    application "ISP Portal Default"
    no shutdown
exit
```

SSL/TLS (HTTPS)

Protocol

HTTPS uses SSL/TLS to encrypt traffic between the client and the server. Since this communication is encrypted it is not possible to identify the HTTP Host or URI. However, AA can still identify the service requested by the subscriber by looking at the TLS certificate information or Server Name Indication exchanged in the clear before the TLS session is established.

Note: SSL/TLS expression based app-filters are not limited to HTTPS. HTTPS is not a protocol in itself, but is HTTP traffic-tunnelled encrypted into SSL/TLS on port 443.

SSL/TLS Certificates

The snapshot (Figure 4) from Wireshark shows the SSL/TLS certificate exchanged using the mobile application **whatsapp**®.

No.	Time	Source	Destination	Protocol	Info
42	44.854067	192.11.231.83	50.23.142.168	TCP	33084 > https [SYN] Seq=0 Win=64240 L
43	44.933347	50.23.142.168	192.11.231.83	TCP	https > 33084 [SYN,ACK] Seq=0 Ack=1
44	45.213335	192.11.231.83	50.23.142.168	TCP	33084 > https [ACK] Seq=1 Ack=1 Win=12
45	45.342530	192.11.231.83	50.23.142.168	SSLv3	Client Hello
46	45.448230	50.23.142.168	192.11.231.83	TCP	https > 33084 [ACK] Seq=1 Ack=75 Win=6
47	45.851643	50.23.142.168	192.11.231.83	SSLv3	Server Hello
48	45.853122	50.23.142.168	192.11.231.83	TCP	[TCP segment of a reassembled PDU]
49	45.853231	50.23.142.168	192.11.231.83	TCP	[TCP segment of a reassembled PDU]
50	46.042243	192.11.231.83	50.23.142.168	TCP	33084 > https [ACK] Seq=75 Ack=2777 w
51	46.245518	192.11.231.83	50.23.142.168	TCP	33084 > https [ACK] Seq=75 Ack=4097 w
52	46.334985	50.23.142.168	192.11.231.83	SSLv3	Certificate, Server Hello Done

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reassembled TCP Segments (4686 bytes): #47(1309), #48(1388), #49(1320), #52(669)] Secure Socket Layer <ul style="list-style-type: none"> SSLv3 Record Layer: Handshake Protocol: Certificate <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Content Type: Handshake (22) Version: SSL 3.0 (0x0300) Length: 4672 Handshake Protocol: Certificate <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Handshake Type: Certificate (11) Length: 4668 Certificates Length: 4665 Certificates (4665 bytes) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Certificate Length: 1377 Certificate (id-at-commonname=*.whatsapp.net,id-at-organizationalUnitName-Domain Control validated, id Certificate Length: 1250

al_0683

Figure 4: Wireshark® HTTPS www.whatsapp.com

The certificate information can be found in the Server Hello message sent by the server, capturing SSL/TLS (HTTPS) traffic from this application can be done using a single app-filter entry tail anchored on the TLS Common Name Certificate:

```
configure application-assurance group 1:1 policy
  app-filter
    entry <1..65535> create
      description "Whats App tls and image/voice/video traffic"
      expression 1 tls-cert-subj-common-name eq
        "*.whatsapp.net$"
      application "Whats App"
      no shutdown
    exit
```

Server Name Indication

SSL/TLS traffic can optionally be identified using the Server Name Indication (SNI) which is an extension to the TLS protocol.

The SNI is found in the TLS Client Hello, the http-host expression in the app-filter is reused to classify this traffic:

No.	Time	Source	Destination	Protocol	Info
4	0.088936	192.11.231.82	98.138.6.52	TCP	iclpv-nlc > https [SYN] Seq-0 Win-1
5	0.165069	98.138.6.52	192.11.231.82	TCP	https > iclpv-nlc [SYN, ACK] Seq-0
6	0.165136	192.11.231.82	98.138.6.52	TCP	iclpv-nlc > https ACK] Seq-1 Ack-1
8	0.383867	192.11.231.82	98.138.6.52	TLSv1	Client Hello

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Cipher Suites (36 suites) Compression Methods Length: 1 ▪ Compression Methods (1 method) Extensions Length: 56 ▪ Extension: server_name Type: server_name (0x0000) 	Data (30 bytes)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Extension: elliptic_curves ▪ Extension: ec_point_formats ▪ Extension: SessionTicket TLS 	

0000	00	1e	e5	7a	96	5f	00	0c	29	7e	53	cc	08	00	45	00	...	z...	)~s...E.
0010	00	da	80	d5	40	00	80	06	69	2c	c0	0b	e7	52	62	8a	...	O...	i....Rb.
0020	06	34	05	72	01	bb	1f	6f	07	a5	3e	de	f1	43	50	18	...	4.r...o	..>..CP.
0030	fc	00	6e	15	00	00	16	03	01	00	ad	01	00	00	a9	03	...	n....	.....
0040	01	4d	80	1d	b4	c7	0c	86	06	8d	17	70	14	6c	85	ed	...	M.....	...p.1..
0050	ff	a3	30	5c	56	87	c3	09	98	d3	e0	b3	9e	a1	45	04	...	Olv...	.....E.
0060	S1	00	00	48	00	ff	c0	0a	c0	14	00	88	00	87	00	38	...	Q.H....	.....8
0070	c0	0f	c0	05	00	84	00	35	00	39	c0	07	c0	09	c0	11	...	.....5	..9.....
0080	c0	13	00	45	00	44	00	33	00	32	c0	0c	c0	0e	c0	02	...	...E.D.3	..2.....
0090	c0	04	00	96	00	41	00	04	00	05	00	2f	c0	08	c0	12	...	....A...	.../....
00a0	00	16	00	13	c0	0d	c0	03	fe	ff	00	0a	01	00	00	38	...	.....	.....8
00b0	00	00	00	1e	00	1c	00	00	19	75	73	2e	64	61	74	61	...	.....	us.data
00c0	2e	74	6f	6f	6c	62	61	72	2e	79	61	68	6f	6f	2e	63	...	toolbar	..yahoo.c
00d0	6f	6d	00	0a	00	08	00	06	00	17	00	18	00	19	00	0b	...	om.....	.....
00e0	00	02	01	00	00	23	00	00									...	....#..	.....

al_0684

Figure 5: HTTPS SNI

```

configure application-assurance group 1:1 policy
  app-filter
    entry <1..65535> create
      description "Yahoo HTTP or TLS SNI"
      expression 1 http-host eq "*.yahoo.com$"
      application "Yahoo"
      no shutdown
    exit

```


SIP

Protocol

SIP is a signaling protocol used for controlling multimedia communication sessions such as voice and video over RTP. AA automatically monitors SIP control flows and associates RTP/RTCP media flows accordingly in the sip_rtp protocol signature.

The operator can use a SIP expression match criteria in app-filter to further refine traffic classification and identify any additional application on top of the default AA policy. This can be particularly useful in business VPNs to identify voice and telepresence applications.

AA supports SIP expression match criteria on SIP URI, SIP user agent and SIP media type. The snapshot below from Wireshark® shows a SIP control exchange using the voice-video application Vonage® followed by the RTP media audio flow; the expression fields that can be matched using AA app-filters are highlighted:



al_0685

Figure 6: SIP Wireshark® Capture

Configuration Example

The configuration example below provides the configuration to classify Vonage[®] SIP/RTP desktop traffic using SIP URI expression:

```
configure application-assurance group 1:1 policy
  app-filter
    entry <1..65535> create
      description "Vonage"
      expression 1 sip-uri eq "*voncp.com*"
      application "Vonage"
      no shutdown
    exit
```

H323

Protocol

Similarly to SIP, H323 is a signaling protocol used for controlling multimedia communication sessions such as voice and video over RTP. AA automatically monitors H323 control flows and associates the RTP media flow accordingly in the h323_rtp protocol signature.

The operator can use an H323 expression match criteria app-filter to further refine traffic classification and identify any additional application on top of the default AA policy. This can be particularly useful in business VPNs to identify voice and telepresence applications.

AA supports H323 expression match criteria on the H323 Product ID. The snapshot below from Wireshark shows an H323 control exchange using the Telepresence application LifeSize® followed by the RTP media audio flow; the expression field that can be matched using AA app-filters is highlighted:

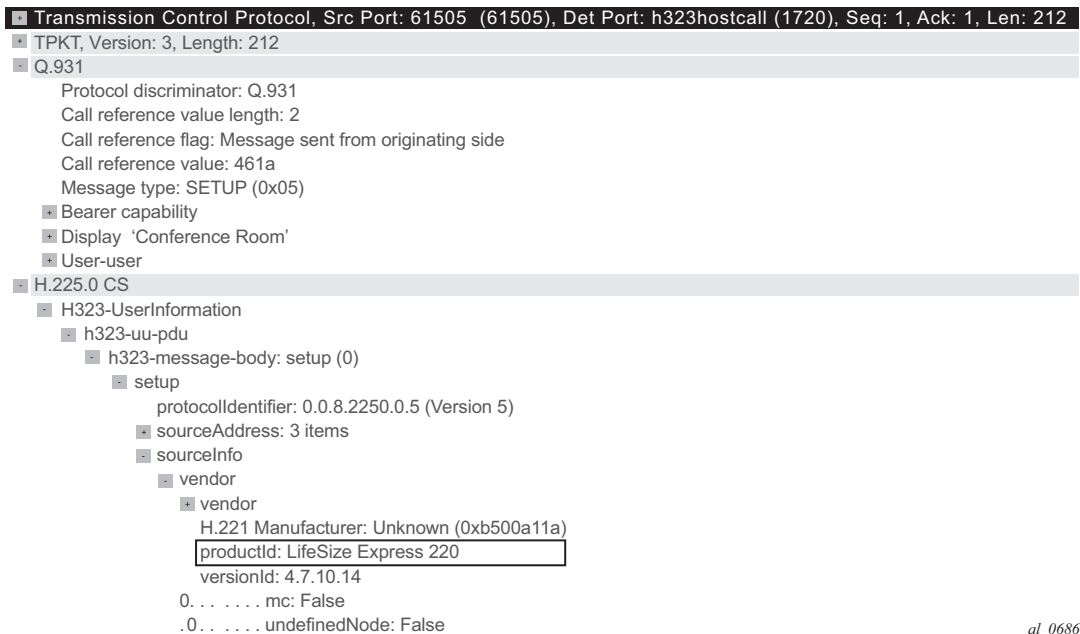


Figure 7: H323 Wireshark® Capture

Configuration Example

The configuration example below provides the configuration to classify LifeSize® H323/RTP traffic using the H323 product ID expression:

```
configure application-assurance group 1:1 policy
  app-filter
    entry <1..65535> create
      description "LifeSize H323 traffic"
      expression 1 h323-product-id eq "^LifeSize*"
      application "LifeSize"
      no shutdown
    exit
```

RTSP

Protocol

RTSP is a signaling protocol used for controlling media streaming content such as audio and video over RTP/RDT. AA automatically monitors the RTSP control flows and associates its RTP/RDT media flow with the `rtp_rtsp` protocol signature.

The operator can use an RTSP expression match criteria app-filter to further refine traffic classification and identify any additional application on top of the default AA policy. This can be particularly useful to identify specific streaming applications.

AA supports RTSP expression match criteria on the RTSP Host, URI, UserAgent. The snapshot below from Wireshark® shows an RTSP setup request to YouTube® followed by the RTP media audio flow; the expression fields that can be matched in RTSP SETUP request using AA app-filters are highlighted:

	Host	URL
<u>RTSP Header</u>		
SETUP rtsp://v3.cache7.c.youtube.com/ZTww=/0/0/0/video.3gp/trackID=13 RTSP/1.0		
CSeq: 3		
User-Agent: Mozilla/5.0 (BlackBerry; U; BlackBerry 9800; en) AppleWebKit/54.8+		
x-wap-profile: "http://www.blackberry.net/go/mobile/profiles/uaprof/9800_unknown/6.0.0.rdf"		
Transport: RTP/AVP;unicast;client_port=51132-51133;mode="PLAY"		

Configuration Example

The configuration example below provides the configuration to classify YouTube® RTSP/RTP traffic using RTSP Host expression:

```
configure application-assurance group 1:1 policy
  app-filter
    entry <1..65535> create
      description "YouTube RTSP/RTP Video"
      expression 1 rtsp-host eq "*.youtube.com$"
      application "YouTube"
      no shutdown
    exit
  exit
```

Citrix

Protocol

Independent Computing Architecture (ICA) is a Citrix Systems® protocol used in Citrix's WinFrame, Citrix XenApp (formerly called MetaFrame/Presentation Server), and Citrix XenDesktop products.

Citrix makes it possible to run applications remotely on large servers, thus making better use of server resources while at the same time allowing people using other platforms to use the applications, for example, run Microsoft® Word on a UNIX workstation.

Citrix_ica protocol signature will detect any remote application using Citrix (the protocol needs to be unencrypted and configured to non-seamless). The Citrix ICA session is started from a client and can be anything from Remote Desktop, SAP to Microsoft® Word.

The Citrix expression match app-filter is used to classify traffic based on the Citrix-published application. This published application is configured on the server and in the example above can be for instance RDP, SAP, Word, XLS or Microsoft® Word depending how the server is configured.

Configuration Example

```
configure application-assurance group 1:1 policy
  app-filter
    entry <1..65535> create
      description "Citrix SAP Application"
      expression 1 citrix-app eq "SAP"
      application "Citrix SAP"
      no shutdown
    exit
```

IP Address and TCP/UDP Port

Traffic from specific server(s) can be classified using IPv4/v6 server-address app-filter rules. It is used usually to identify traffic from an internal (on-net) server as opposed to an Internet (off-net) server.

The server-address app-filter automatically detects the client from the server by identifying which side opens the connection. It implicitly classifies traffic based on the server IP address or Port number. For example, if A initiates a TCP connection to B, then flows A->B and B<-A can be classified with a match on server-address = B. Similarly a flow initiated from B to A would be classified using a match on server-address = A.

Server Address

The configuration example below uses a server-address app-filter to classify traffic from server 10.1.1.1 in the application called Application-1:

```
configure application-assurance group 1:1 policy
  app-filter
    entry <1..65535> create
      description "Server #1 10.0.0.1"
      server-address eq 10.0.0.1/32
      application "Application-1"
      no shutdown
    exit
```

Server-Address + Server Port

The configuration example below uses server-address and server-port app-filters to classify traffic from server 10.0.0.2 on port 1234 in the application called Application-2. It is particularly useful when the same server is used to provide different services that need to be classified separately:

```
configure application-assurance group 1:1 policy
  entry <1..65535> create
    description "Server #2 10.0.0.2 port 1234 Only"
    server-address eq 10.0.0.2/32
    server-port eq 1234
    application "Application-2"
    no shutdown
  exit
```

Server Port and Protocol Signature

It is possible to combine a protocol signature with a port number in the same app-filter, this is typically done in business VPNs for specific internal applications not detected using existing AA protocol signatures.

The configuration below classifies a business VPN application running on TCP port 4000 and not detected by any other signatures. It combines the protocol signature unknown_tcp with the desired port number. This allows keeping the classification untouched for the rest of the protocols/applications and is the recommended approach:

```
configure application-assurance group 1:1 policy
  app-filter
    entry <1..65535> create
      description "Business VPN Application X Port 4000"
      server-port eq 4000
      protocol eq unknown_tcp
      application "Busines VPN Application X"
      no shutdown
    exit
```

Note: It is important to follow the app-filter range recommendations for a proper classification of traffic using IP address or port number.

Flow Setup Direction

Traffic can be classified based on flow-setup-direction app-filter. The flow setup direction can be either subscriber-to-network or network-to-subscriber.

Network side and subscriber side is AA terminology related to where AA is enabled:

- In broadband and mobile networks, AA is enabled per subscriber. This means the subscriber side represents the ESM/mobile/transit subscriber while the network side represents Internet or other subscribers.
- In business VPNs, AA is enabled on a VPN SAP/spoke SDP and the subscriber side represents the local VPN site (SAP/spoke/transit).

The example below shows the configuration to classify http traffic hosted by AA subscribers (for example, broadband subscribers running a web server):

```
configure application-assurance group 1:1 policy
  app-filter
    entry <1..65535> create
      description "HTTP Server on the subscriber side"
      flow-setup-direction network-to-subscriber
      protocol eq http
      application "HTTP Server"
      no shutdown
    exit
```

IP Protocol

Traffic can be classified using an IP protocol number for non TCP/UDP traffic.

The example below example provides the configuration to classify ICMP IPv4/v6 traffic:

```
configure application-assurance group 1:1 policy
  app-filter
    entry <1..65535> create
      description "ICMP v4"
      protocol eq "non_tcp_udp"
      ip-protocol-num eq icmp
      application "ICMP"
      no shutdown
    exit
    entry <1..65535> create
      description " ICMP v6"
      protocol eq "non_tcp_udp"
      ip-protocol-num eq ipv6-icmp
      application "ICMP"
      no shutdown
    exit
```

Custom Protocol

Custom protocols can be used to classify TCP/UDP applications using hexadecimal string matching (up to 16 hex octets) at a configurable payload offset in the data payload. The expression string length and offset must not exceed 128 bytes.

To illustrate this feature the Solaris[®] application GoGlobal is used. It provides remote access to a server (similar to VNC[®]). The snapshot below (Figure 6) from Wireshark[®] shows a TCP SYN/ACK session establishment followed by the first data exchange:

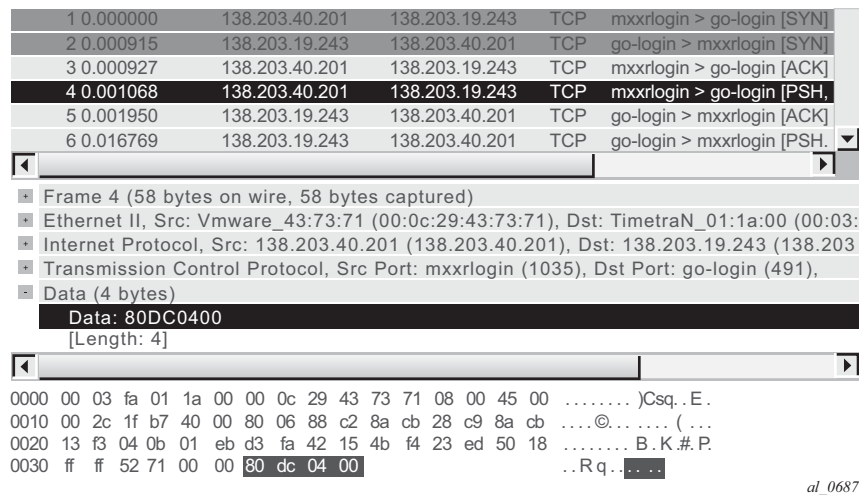


Figure 8: Wireshark[®] GoGlobal

Wireshark[®] shows that each TCP session payload starts with 80DC0400 (no offset) after the three-way TCP handshake, as a result the configuration required to classify this traffic is described below:

```
configure application-assurance group 1:1 policy
  custom-protocol 1 ip-protocol-num tcp create
    description "goglobal tcp"
    expression 1 eq "\x80\xdc\x04\x00" offset 0 direction client-to-server
    no shutdown
  exit
app-filter
  entry <1..65535> create
    description "GoGlobal "
    protocol eq "custom_01"
    application "GoGlobal"
    no shutdown
  exit
```

Typical Configuration Mistakes

An operator creating new user-defined applications can make a few typical mistakes which are listed below:

- App-filters in shutdown state — The default app-filter state is shutdown. A **no shutdown** command must be executed in order for it to be enabled.
- App-filters with no match criteria — This is a more troublesome mistake as it will catch all the traffic entering the filter in a particular application.

Troubleshooting Application Identification

Show Commands

Router/Partition Statistics

Partition level statistics are not updated in real time. Instead, statistics for a particular flow are updated either at flow closure or every five minutes. The five minute sliding window interval is a common interval for all flows in a given ISA MDA. Different ISA MDAs will have a different five minute windows as this interval is set at the MDA boot time.

The following command can be used to view the statistics for all applications configured in the ISA Group 1, Partition 1:

```
show application-assurance group 1:1 application count
```

Alternatively it is possible to sort the display by octets, packets, flows:

```
show application-assurance group 1:1 application count top [octets|packets|flows] [max-count <max-count>]
```

The operator can also identify which app-filters are being hit by the AA policy per partition (this command is not available per subscriber), it is particularly useful to identify which filters are used and optionally prune unnecessary app-filters from user-defined applications:

```
show application-assurance group 1:1 policy app-filter
```

Note: The app-filter policy is usually relatively large, in which case additional 7x50 SR CLI functionality can be used to filter out the output and only show the relevant information. The example below was created for the application FTP:

```
A:PE# show application-assurance group 1:1 policy app-filter | match "application \"FTP\""
pre-lines 3 post-lines 2
exit
entry 44300 create (2 flows, 1205 B)
  protocol eq "ftp_control"
  application "FTP"
  no shutdown
exit
entry 44301 create (2 flows, 1401 B)
  protocol eq "ftp_data"
  application "FTP"
  no shutdown
exit
```

Because partition level statistics are not updated in real time it is recommended for troubleshooting purposes to use subscriber statistics or sub-study statistics.

Subscriber Statistics

Subscriber level statistics can be updated in real time. AA is usually configured by the Operator to collect subscriber level statistics for all application groups in residential and Wifi, while business VPNs typically collect Application group and all applications for each site with AA enabled.

The commands below can be used to view per subscriber statistics for all app-groups or applications configured in ISA Group 1, Partition 1 for the ESM subscriber "Bob" or business VPN SAP 1/1/1:10:

```
show application-assurance group 1:1 aa-sub esm "bob" app-group count
show application-assurance group 1:1 aa-sub sap 1/1/1:10 application count
```

In case only app-group statistics are collected per subscriber, the aa-sub-study feature can be used to collect per application level statistics for selected subscribers, see configuration example below:

```
A:PE# configure application-assurance group 1:1 statistics aa-sub-study application
A:PE>config>app-assure>group>statistics>aa-sub-study# aa-sub esm "bob"
```

Once done, the system will show all application level statistics for this subscriber:

```
show application-assurance group 1:1 aa-sub-study esm "bob" application count
```

Similarly to partition level statistics, aa-sub and aa-sub-study statistics can be sorted by octets, packets, flows:

```
show application-assurance group 1:1 aa-sub-study esm "bob" application count top
[octets|packets|flows] [max-count <max-count>]
```

Note: When the number of flows per ISA card reaches a threshold then per subscriber statistics are not available in real time anymore and only the snapshot command can be used to display the statistics recorded in the previous 5 minute interval window:

```
show application-assurance group 1:1 aa-sub-study esm "bob" snapshot application count
```

AppFilterMiss

The default policy configuration provides a failsafe application at the very end of the app-filter list to classify any remaining traffic in the AppFilterMiss application. There should never be any traffic in this application. This failsafe filter is used as a debug to make sure that there are no major issues in the configuration.

Note: Traffic can typically be classified as AppFilterMiss when not all protocol signatures are mapped to a particular application. This could happen when upgrading to a new ISA software and enabling new protocol signature detection while not ensuring first that the correct application was provisioned. See the 7x50 SR Release Note upgrade section for more details on AA signature upgrade.

Tools

Flow-Record-Search

Traditional show commands may not provide enough information when troubleshooting flow identification and the operator can use the ISA flow-record-search tool to dump the ISA flow table for more information. This feature comes with a large number of filtering options documented in the user guide.

Each flow gives visibility into: Flow ID, Sub-Type, Sub-Name, Initiator, Direction, Source IP, Dest. IP, IP Protocol, Source Port, Dest. Port, FC, DSCP, Classified, Protocol, Application, App-Group, Charging Group, Packets tx, Bytes Tx, Packets-discarded, Bytes-discarded etc.

See below for the most commonly used commands.

To show all the flows in a given ISA card per ISA group:partition (can be a very long output, up to 3M entries):

```
tools dump application-assurance group 1:1 flow-record-search isa 1/2
```

To show all the flows per AA subscriber in a given group:partition:

```
tools dump application-assurance group 1:1 flow-record-search aa-sub esm "bob"
```

To show all the active flows per AA subscriber in a given group:partition:

```
tools dump application-assurance group 1:1 flow-record-search aa-sub esm "bob" flow-status active
```

The flow-record-search command is also available with additional details by adding search-type detail at the end of the command line. Note that due to the length of the output it is recommended to paste the CLI output content in a notepad file.

HTTP Host Recorder

SR OS 11.0.R1 introduced the comprehensive cflowd feature which allows AA to export the HTTP domain extracted from HTTP flows to the 5670 RAM reporting solution. As such, it is the preferred functionality to understand which HTTP Hosts are visible in the network.

Prior to SR OS 11.0.R1, the HTTP host recorder is a tool function available in the 7750 to record HTTP Hosts seen by AA. See the 7750 SR OS Multi-Service Integrated Services Adapter Guide for more details.

```
A:PE# show debug
debug
  application-assurance
    group 1:1
      http-host-recorder
        filter
          default-filter-action record
          record http-host-app-filter-candidates
        exit
        rate 100
        no shutdown
      exit
    exit
  exit
exit

A:PE# tools dump application-assurance group 1:1 http-host-recorder top bytes
```

Port Recorder

This function is particularly useful in business VPN (it can also be used in residential networks). The port-recorder AA tool function is similar to the http-recorder. It allows the operator to record which ports are used on selected applications.

It is most commonly used with the applications Unidentified TCP and Unidentified UDP but it can be configured to record any other applications:

```
A:PE# show debug
debug
  application-assurance
    group 1:1
      port-recorder
        application "Unidentified TCP"
        application "Unidentified UDP"
        rate 100
        shutdown
      exit
    exit
  exit
exit

A:PE# tools dump application-assurance group 1:1 port-recorder top bytes
```


Conclusion

This example, which is intended for Application Assurance (AA) network architects and engineers, provides the information required to modify an existing AA policy following AA best practices and guidelines, and provides the necessary troubleshooting information to better understand application classification using Application Assurance.

Application Assurance — App-Profile, ASO and Control Policies

In This Chapter

This section provides information about Application Assurance (AA) app-profile, Application Service Options (ASOs) and control policy configurations.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 56](#)
- [Summary on page 57](#)
- [Configuration on page 58](#)
- [Conclusion on page 85](#)

Applicability

This example is applicable to all 7750, 7450 and 7750-SRc chassis supporting Application Assurance and was tested on SR OS release 12.0.R4.

It is recommended to use the Alcatel-Lucent AppDB prior to configuring traffic control policies. The AppDB is a default configuration file to define all of the applications of interest, including all of the relevant application-groups, applications and app-filters to classify traffic, and can be obtained through Alcatel-Lucent's support organization.

Summary

In addition to providing valuable traffic analysis and statistics information using the Alcatel-Lucent 7750 Service Router (SR) or 7450 Ethernet Service Switch (ESS) and Application Assurance (AA), one of the key objectives of the AA solution is to provide the tools to manage subscriber traffic at the application level. Examples of traffic management actions include:

- Throttling low priority bandwidth hungry applications during peak hours.
- Prioritizing and remarking selected applications.
- Implementing a walled-garden environment providing open access to selected free web services only, redirecting all other requests from unregistered subscribers to a registration portal with payment services.
- Enrich HTTP Header with subscriber identification parameters to offer subscribers transparent access to premium content.
- In browser notification which triggers the display of administrative, informational or promotional messages in selected browser-sessions.
- Stateful session filtering with Application Level Gateway (ALG) support to protect subscribers against unsolicited flows.
- Parental control services interworking with an external Internet Content Adaptation Protocol (ICAP) server for rating the requested web sites.

Application traffic control policies can be applied as global policies for all subscribers, or they can be activated for individual subscribers or groups of subscribers.

This example describes the basics of activating Application Assurance on a given subscriber through the use of App-Profile and demonstrates the use of static or dynamic traffic control policies using Application Service Options (ASOs) and Application QoS Policies (AQP). It also provides detailed information for configuring Bandwidth, Flow-Count and Flow-Rate Policing including Time of Day (ToD) policing. Other policy control actions can be found in the Advanced Configuration Guide or in the MS-ISA User Guide.

Configuration

Activation of AA Services

App-Profile

Application profiles (app-profile) enable application assurance services for a given Enhanced Subscriber Management (ESM), Distributed Subscriber Management (DSM), or transit subscriber, or for a SAP or spoke SDP which are commonly referred to as **AA-subscribers (AA-sub)**. Each app-profile is unique in the system and defines the services that the AA subscriber will receive.

Assigning an app-profile to an ESM subscriber affects every host of that subscriber. Similarly, applying an app-profile to a SAP/spoke SDP will affect all traffic within that SAP/spoke SDP.

App-profiles are defined at the AA group partition level (in case of a partitioned ISA-AA group), see the configuration example below:

```
A:BNG# configure
      application-assurance group 1:1 policy
        app-profile "1-1/15M" create
          description "App-Profile Description"
          divert
          characteristic "Parental Control" value "enabled"
          capacity-cost 15
        exit
```

The app-profile parameters are:

- **divert** — Diverts all traffic from and to this subscriber to an ISA-AA. Configuring **no divert** effectively disables all AA services for subscribers using this app-profile. Default value: **no divert**.
- **characteristic** [*<characteristic-name>* **value** *<value-name>*] — one or more optional ASO service characteristics can be used to apply an AA control policy to the subscriber.
- **capacity-cost** *<cost>* — An application profile capacity cost is used to load balance AA subscribers across multiple ISA-AA cards. A common practice is to define a cost proportional to the expected peak BW for the subscribers using this profile (in Kbps or Mbps). The capacity cost is out of the scope of this example. The range is 1 to 65535, default 1.

This app-profile example uses the following naming convention:

<group-id>-<partition-id>/<BW>M where

- *<group-id>* — The ISA-AA group ID on which this profile is created.
- *<partition-id>* — The AA partition ID on which this profile is created.
- *<BW-label>* — Defines the maximum bandwidth used by the subscriber, which is used for aa-subscriber cost load balancing and subscriber rate limiting. The **M** stands for Mbps.

In general the operator can choose to use either ASO characteristics override or multiple app-profiles to apply different AA QoS policies to ESM Subscribers or Business VPN sites. For flexibility and scale it is recommended to use ASO overrides whenever possible. This is described in more details below.

Note: Prior to using special characters in a policy object name the operator should verify the list of special characters supported by the 5620 SAM; for instance the 5620 SAM does not support the use of “:” in the app-profile name therefore it should be avoided.

Residential and Wi-Fi Services

The app-profile can be assigned or modified for ESM, DSM or Transit IP subscribers either at subscriber creation time or while the subscriber is in service:

- Subscriber creation — An app-profile can be assigned at subscriber creation time through RADIUS, DHCP Option 82, Local User Database, static configuration or through a default app-profile.
- In service app-profile modification — An app-profile can be dynamically modified in service through a RADIUS Change of Authorization (CoA). From software release 12.0.R1 an app-profile can also be dynamically modified in service through Gx.

In case no app-profile is returned at subscriber creation by RADIUS, LUDB or DHCP, or when no static configuration is present, the system can apply a default app-profile if configured within the subscriber group-interface (or MSAP policy) sub-sla-mgmt:

```
sub-sla-mgmt
  def-app-profile "1-1/15M"
exit
```

Business VPN and other Service Interfaces

App-profiles are statically assigned to a given SAP, spoke SDP or transit prefix VPN site via the 5620 SAM or CLI.

The following configuration shows how to enable application assurance on a SAP or spoke SDP in a business VPRN service:

```
A:PE>config>service# vprn 100 customer 1 create
description "L3 Service Customer 1"
interface "to-site1" create
  address 192.168.1.1/24
  sap 1/1/10:11 create
    app-profile "1-1/15M"
  exit
interface "to-site2" create
  address 192.168.2.1/24
  spoke-sdp 12:100 create
    app-profile "1-1/15M"
  exit
no shutdown
```


Defining Application Service Options

ASOs for Traffic Control - Introduction

To determine which application control policies need to be applied to a AA-subscriber, an app-profile with a number of service characteristics (ASOs) is associated with each subscriber. These service characteristics are then used as match criteria in AQP policy rules to determine which rules to apply.

Therefore ASOs are service characteristics assigned to a subscriber and are used to identify the traffic control policy rule (AQP) applicable to a subscriber or a group of subscribers.

Most policy rules will be applicable to multiple subscriber profiles; nevertheless it is possible that a specific subscriber requires a dedicated policy.

ASO Characteristics and Values

For each service option that can be used by one or more subscribers, an ASO characteristic should be defined with a number of values that represent all available choices for that service characteristic. The names and values of the ASO characteristics are configurable string values; best practice is to use strings that provide a meaningful description of the service characteristic they represent.

Each ASO characteristic requires a default value and each app-profile inherits the default value of all the ASO characteristics created in a given partition unless a characteristic is referenced directly in the app-profile or overwritten as described below.

ASOs are defined at the AA group partition level (in case of a partitioned ISA-AA group). In the configuration example below two different ASO characteristics are defined: “Parental Control” and “P2P-Sub-DL”:

```
BNG>config>app-assure# group 1:1 policy
app-service-options
    characteristic "Parental Control" create
        value "disabled"
        value "enabled"
        default-value "disabled"
    exit
    characteristic "P2P-Sub-DL" create
        value "500k"
        value "1M"
        value "unlimited"
        default-value "unlimited"
    exit
```

Defining Application Service Options

The ASO values and default value of a characteristic can be displayed using a show command:

```
A:BNG# show application-assurance group 1:1 policy app-service-option "P2P-Sub-DL"
=====
Application-Assurance Application Service Options
=====
Characteristic "P2P-Sub-DL"
Value                                     Default
-----
1M                                       No
500k                                    No
unlimited                               Yes
=====
```

When configuring service characteristics for optional service options, it is recommended to configure a default value which will not trigger any AQP policy action (the default value does not match any AQP match criteria) such that the behavior of existing subscribers and app-profiles will not change until the operator specifically configures or signals a non-default characteristic value for the subscriber or the app-profile. In the example above “Parental Control” “disabled” and “P2P-Sub-DL” “unlimited” would have no corresponding AQP by design; therefore if these particular service options were applied to a subscriber they would not match a QoS policy entry.

How to Specify Service Options for AA Subscribers

ASO Assignment in App-Profile

ASOs can be statically assigned in the app-profile; this type of ASO characteristic assignment is typically reserved to the default service options enabled on a large number of subscribers.

Figure 9 shows an example of AA service definition (ASO and app-profile) for a Gold and Bronze service tier definition with the following characteristics:

- Two app-profiles **Gold** and **Bronze**
- **Gold** app-profile — No specific policy actions or ASO characteristics are configured statically in the app-profile.
- **Bronze** app-profile — A specific ASO characteristic and value is assigned to the profile to limit Peer to Peer download traffic to 1Mbps (this example does not show the app-qos-policy nor policer configuration, this will be described later).

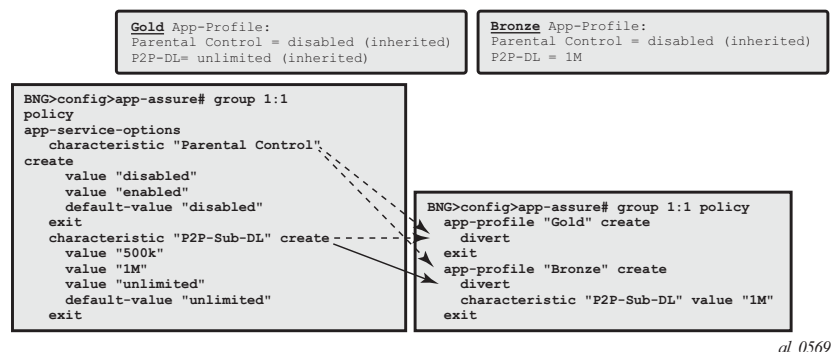


Figure 9: Service Tier Example using ASO, App-Profile and AQP

Each app-profile inherits the default values of all the ASO characteristics defined in a AA group-partition; in the example above this is reason why the app-profile Gold inherits “Parental Control” “disabled” and “P2P-Sub-DL” “unlimited”. The app-profile Bronze inherits “Parental Control” “disabled” while “P2P-Sub-DL” “1M” is assigned to this profile statically.

The operator can identify per app-profile which characteristics values are inherited from their default value and which are statically assigned using the following show command:

```
*A:BNG# show application-assurance group 1:1 policy app-profile "Gold"
  app-profile "Gold" create
    divert
    characteristic "P2P-Sub-DL" inherits default-value "unlimited"
    characteristic "Parental Control" inherits default-value "disabled"
  exit

A:BNG# show application-assurance group 1:1 policy app-profile "Bronze"
  app-profile "Bronze" create
    divert
    characteristic "P2P-Sub-DL" value "1M"
    characteristic "Parental Control" inherits default-value "disabled"
  exit
```

Note: Using ASO overrides, described later, it is possible to implement the same choice of AA service options using a single app-profile.

ASO Overrides per Subscriber via RADIUS or Gx

Prior to SR OS 12.0.R1 the operator can assign (and modify: CoA) the app-profile per ESM or Transit-IP subscribers using the “Alc-App-Prof-Str” [26-6527-45] RADIUS attribute.

SR OS 12.0.R1 added support for ASO characteristic overrides for ESM and Transit-IP subscribers via RADIUS using the attribute “Alc-AA-App-Service-Options” [26-6527-193]. This attribute can be returned during the subscriber creation process or while the subscriber is in service through RADIUS CoA. Refer to Alcatel-Lucent SR OS 12.0 RADIUS Attributes Reference Guide for more details related to the use of the AA RADIUS attributes.

An example of a RADIUS CoA message returned to the system to modify both the app-profile and one ASO characteristic is provided below:

```
NAS-Port-Id = "1/1/5:4088"
Framed-IP-Address = 192.168.211.30
Alc-App-Prof-Str = "1-1/15M"
Alc-AA-App-Service-Options = "P2P-Sub-DL=1M"
```

The ASO characteristics and values assigned to a given subscriber (statically via app-profile or overridden) can be displayed using the following show command:

```
A:BNG# show application-assurance group 1:1 aa-sub esm "sub1" summary
=====
Application-Assurance Subscriber Summary (realtime)
=====
AA-Subscriber           : sub1 (esm)
ISA assigned            : 1/2
App-Profile             : 1-1/15M
App-Profile divert      : Yes
Capacity cost           : 1
Aarp Instance Id        : N/A
HTTP URL Parameters     : (Not Specified)
Last HTTP Notified Time : 2014/08/07 12:07:47

-----
Traffic                  Octets                Packets                Flows
-----
...
...
-----
Application Service Options (ASO)
-----
Characteristic           Value                Derived from
-----
P2P-Sub-DL               1M                  dyn-override
Parental Control          disabled             default
=====
```

In the show command output above, the **derived from** field describes how the characteristics and values are assigned to the subscriber:

- app-profile — The characteristic's value statically configured in the app-profile.
- dyn-override — The characteristic's value received from RADIUS or Gx.
- default — The characteristic's default value inherited (not statically configured in the app-profile nor dynamically modified).

SR OS 12.0.R1 also introduced support for signaling the app-profile or ASO characteristics override via Gx, see [Application Assurance — App-Profile, ASO and Control Policies on page 55](#) for more details.

ASO Overrides for Business VPN and Other Services

Since SR OS 9.0.R1, ASO characteristic override values can be statically assigned to business VPN SAP, spoke SDP and transit prefix subscribers.

The operator can provision the AA policy override parameters, multiple characteristics overrides per AA-sub can be defined per override policy, see the configuration example below:

```
A:BNG>config>app-assure# group 1:1 policy-override
    policy aa-sub sap 1/1/5:210 create
        characteristic "P2P-Sub-DL" value "1M"
        characteristic "Parental Control" value "enabled"
    exit
```

Application Control Policies

App-QoS-Policy (AQP)

App-Profile / ASO / AQP Workflow Summary

App-profiles enable application assurance services for a given AA-subscriber. Each app-profile is unique in the system and defines the service that the AA subscriber will receive.

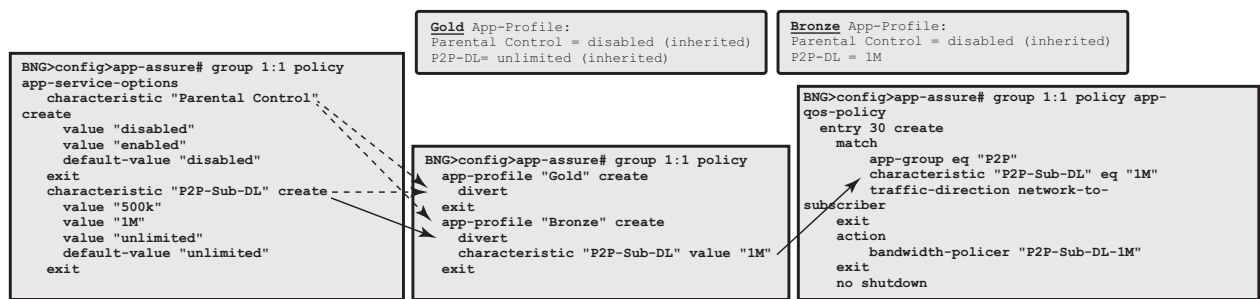
To determine which control policies need to be applied to an AA-subscriber, a number of service characteristics (ASO) are associated with each AA-subscriber.

As described earlier, these service characteristics can either be configured directly within the app-profile or assigned using overrides and they are then used as match criteria in AQP policy rules to determine which application policy rules to apply.

The app-qos-policy (AQP) is an ordered list of entries defining policy actions for flows diverted to Application Assurance. Each AQP entry is composed of match criteria and action(s).

Flows are evaluated against all entries of the AA QoS policy defined in the AA group partition that the subscriber app-profile belongs to (in case of a partitioned AA group).

Figure 10 provides a configuration example summary with app-profile, ASO, AQP and policers:



al_0570

Figure 10: App-Profile, ASO, AQP Workflow Summary

Match and Action Criteria

AQP Match Criteria

Multiple match criteria can be specified per AQP entry in which case the action will only apply to flows that match all criteria. The most common match criteria are: characteristic, application, app-group and charging-group.

The following AA match criteria can be used in an AQP:

- **app-group** {eq | neq} <app-group name>
- **application** {eq | neq} <app name>
- **charging-group** {eq | neq} <charging-group-name>
- **traffic-direction** {subscriber-to-network|network-to-subscriber|both}
- **characteristic** <characteristic-name> <eq> <value-name>: up to 4 characteristics and values per AQP
- **ip-protocol-num** {eq | neq} <protocol-id>
- **src-ip** {eq | neq} <ip-address> or **ip-prefix-list** <ip-prefix-list-name>
- **dst-ip** {eq | neq} <ip-address> or **ip-prefix-list** <ip-prefix-list-name>
- **src-port** {eq | neq} <port-num> or **range** <start-port-num><end-port-num>
- **dst-port** {eq | neq} <port-num> or **range** <start-port-num><end-port-num>
- **dscp** {eq | neq} <dscp-name>
- **aa-sub** <aa-sub-name>

AQP Actions

The following AA traffic control policies can be specified in an AQP:

- **drop**
- **bandwidth-policer** <policer-name>
- **flow-count-limit** <policer-name>
- **flow-rate-limit** <policer-name>
- **remark dscp in-profile** <dscp-name> **out-profile** <dscp-name>
- **remark fc** <fc-name>
- **remark priority** <priority-level>
- **http-error-redirect** <redirect-name>

- **http-redirect** *<redirect-name>* **flow-type** *<flow-type>* — Redirect traffic to a landing page
- **mirror-source** [**all-inclusive**] *<mirror-service-id>*
- **session-filter** *<session-filter-name>* — Session filter firewall
- **url-filter** *<url-filter-name>*: category based URL Filtering using ICAP
- **http-notification** *<http-notification-name>*
- Additional drop actions:
 - **error-drop**: configure a drop action for packets cut-through due to IP packet errors (bad IP checksums, tcp/udp port 0, etc.)
 - **overload-drop**: configure a drop action for packets cut-through due to overload
 - **fragment-drop**: configure a drop action for IP fragmented packets

Default Versus Application-Specific AQP Policies

Application QoS Policy

It usually requires the examination of a few packets to identify the protocol/application of a flow. When AQP entries are defined to match on IP header criteria (IP address, IP prefix list, TCP/UDP Port Number, IP Protocol, DSCP) or application criteria (application, App-Group or charging group), the AQP action will only be applied to matching application flows after a flow has been classified as a given application.

Default QoS Policy

If the AQP entry does not include match criteria against application (application, app-group and charging-group) or IP header information (IP address, IP prefix list, TCP/UDP port number, IP protocol, DSCP) then the AQP policy will be applied to all matching flows starting with the first packet of a flow before protocol and application identification is complete. Such AQPs are called default subscriber policies.

For an AQP to be qualified as a default subscriber policy, the match criteria must be limited to any combination of ASO characteristic values, traffic direction and optional AA subscriber name.

AQP match and actions for the default QoS policy and application QoS policy are summarized in [Table 3](#):

Table 3: Default QoS Policy, Application QoS Policy Table

Policy	AQP Match	AQP Action
Default QoS	ASO characteristic/values traffic direction aa-sub	Remark FC, DSCP, Priority Bandwidth, flow-count, flow-rate policing Session-filter Url-filter Mirror Error-drop, overload-drop, fragment-drop Drop

Table 3: Default QoS Policy, Application QoS Policy Table (Continued)

Policy	AQP Match	AQP Action
Application QoS	ASO characteristic/values traffic direction aa-sub application app-group charging-group IP address, IP Prefix List TCP/UDP Port Number DSCP IP Protocol Number	Remark FC, DSCP, Priority Bandwidth, flow-count, flow-rate policing HTTP Notification HTTP Redirect HTTP Enrichment Mirror Drop

To ensure fair access to the ISA-AA bandwidth and flow resources, it is recommended to configure default AQP policy entries limiting bandwidth and flow resources per AA sub.

Figure 11 shows a default subscriber policy limiting the downstream bandwidth (network-to-subscriber direction) to 25Mbps per subscriber:

```

7750>config>app-assure# group 1:1 policy
app-service-options
characteristic "access-rate" create
value "100M"
value "25M";
default-value "100M"
exit
exit
app-profile "1-1/25M" create
description "25Mbps Site/Subscriber"
divert
characteristic "access-rate" value "25M"
capacity-cost 25
exit

7750>config>app-assure# group 1:1 policy
app-qos-policy
entry 500 create
match
traffic-direction network-to-subscriber
characteristic "access-rate" eq "25M"
exit
action
bandwidth-policer "DefltPol-Sub-BW-DS-25Mbps"
exit
no shutdown

7750>config>app-assure# group 1
policer "DefltPol-Sub-BW-DS-25Mbps" type dual-bucket-bandwidth granularity subscriber create
description "Default Policier for BW DL of Subscriber 25Mbps"
rate 25000
mbs 470
exit

```

al_0571

Figure 11: Default Downstream Bandwidth Policing

Implicit Default Subscriber Policy

Session-filter, url-filter, overload-drop, fragment-drop and error-drop can only be used as part of a default subscriber policy; therefore these actions are not compatible with application or IP header match criteria within the same AQP.

AQP Entries Evaluation

Multiple AQP Match Entries Per Flow

A single flow can match multiple AQP entries, in which case multiple actions can be selected based on the AQP entry's order (the lowest number entry has the highest priority); the drop action takes precedence over any other AQP entry. The maximum numbers of actions that can be applied on a single flow are:

- 1 drop action
- Any combination of (applied only if no drop action is selected)
 - Up to 1 mirror action
 - Up to 1 FC, 1 priority and 1 DSCP remark action
 - Up to 4 BW policers (1 single rate AA-Sub, 1 dual rate AA-Sub, 2 single rate system level)
 - Up to 12 flow policers (3 subscriber flow-count, 3 subscriber flow-rate, 3 system flow-count, 3 system flow-rate)
 - Up to 1 HTTP Redirect
 - Up to 1 HTTP Error Redirect
 - Up to 1 HTTP Enrichment
 - Up to 1 URL-Filter
 - Up to 1 HTTP-Notification
 - Up to 1 Session-Filter Firewall
- 1 error-drop
- 1 overload-drop
- 1 fragment-drop

An AQP entry match that would cause the above limits to be exceeded is ignored (no actions from that rule are selected) and the conflict counter for this AQP is incremented.

The operator can display hits and potential conflicts per AQP entry using the following show command:

```
A:BNG# show application-assurance group 1:1 policy app-qos-policy
=====
Application QoS Policy Table
=====
Entry          Admin State          Flow Hits          Flow Conflicts
-----
30             in-service            0                  0
-----
No. of AQP entries: 1
=====
```

AQP Evaluation

Flows are evaluated against all entries of the AA QoS Policy at different steps during the lifetime of the flow:

- **Flow creation** — The default subscriber policy AQP entries for matching flows are applied starting with the first packet of a flow so before application identification completes.
- **Application identification completion**— The application QoS policies are applied once flow identification has been completed.
Note: The default QoS policy entries are applied to the subscriber's flows for packets received before and after application identification is completed.
- **Policy change** — When a configuration change is applied to the AA policy by executing the commit command on the AA group:partition policy, all diverted flows for subscribers using this policy partition will be evaluated again against all AQP entries. This re-evaluation happens as a paced background task; hence AQP control changes may not be applied immediately to all existing flows.

Policing

Policers

AA policer templates are configured as part of the AA Group configuration by specifying the policer name, type and granularity. Policers are unidirectional by definition so that separate policers must be defined per flow direction if the traffic needs to be policed in both directions (a separate AQP for each flow direction is therefore required as well).

The operator can configure the following types of policers:

- Bandwidth Policers
 - Single bucket system level
 - Single bucket AA subscriber level
 - Dual bucket AA subscriber level
- Flow Count Policer: system or AA subscriber level
- Flow Setup-Rate Policer: system or AA subscriber level

Subscriber level policers are instantiated per AA sub, meaning:

- The system automatically uses a dedicated policer for every single subscriber, even when multiple subscribers match the same AQP entry.
- The same policer can be referenced in different AQP entries; in this case all subscribers' flows matching any of these AQP entries are policed by the same subscriber policer.
Example: if the same subscriber level policer '1Mbps' is referenced in AQP entry 100 matching application BitTorrent and in AQP entry 110 matching application EDonkey, then the sum of both the BitTorrent and EDonkey traffic cannot exceed 1Mbps.

System level policers on the other hand are shared by all AA subscribers matching a given AQP entry. These policers are typically used in residential and Wi-Fi service deployments to limit the total bandwidth for an application or application group, for all subscribers or for a group of subscribers on the system or partition. An example would be a system level 500Mbps policer to limit the aggregated downstream bandwidth of "Peer to Peer" applications for all subscribers with a "Bronze" app-profile to 500Mbps.

Note: In case multiple ISA-AA cards are used per system, the overall maximum throughput using a system level policer is equal to the policer rate limit times the number of ISA cards in the system.

Bandwidth Policing

Single Bucket Subscriber/System Bandwidth Policer

Single bucket policers police the matching traffic against a configured peak-information-rate (PIR). Traffic above the PIR can be marked as out of profile or dropped.

The configuration template for a single rate bandwidth policer is as follows:

```
BNG>config>app-assure# group 1
    policer <policer-name> type single-bucket-bandwidth
                                granularity {subscriber|system} create
        description <string>
        rate <pir-rate-in-Kbps>
        mbs <max-burst-size-in-Kbytes>
        adaptation-rule pir {max|min|closest}
        tod-override <tod-override-id>
        action permit-deny|priority-mark
```

where:

- **action** — Defines the action that must be taken by the policer for non-conforming traffic.
- **permit-deny** — Non-conforming packets will be dropped.
- **priority-mark** — Non-conforming traffic will be marked as out of profile (increasing the chances that non-conforming packets will be discarded in case of congestion on the egress queues).
- **rate** — Peak information rate in Kbps.
- **mbs** — Maximum burst size in Kbytes.
- **adaptation-rule pir <max|min|closest>** — The policers work at discrete operational rates supported by the hardware. The adaptation rule specifies how the actual operational policer rate (supported by the hardware) must be selected as compared to the configured PIR. During operation, both the operational and configured rate can be displayed using the operational **show application-assurance group <n> policer <policer-name> detail** command.
- **tod-override** — Defines a time of day override policy applicable to a policer, this is described in more detail at the end of the policing section.

A single bucket subscriber level policer configuration example is shown below:

```
BNG>config>app-assure# group 1
    policer "P2P-Sub-DL-1M" type single-bucket-bandwidth granularity subscriber create
        rate 1000
        mbs 19
    exit
```

A single bucket system level policer configuration example is shown below:

```
BNG>config>app-assure# group 1
    policer "P2P-Sys-DL-100M" type single-bucket-bandwidth granularity system create
        rate 100000
        mbs 1875
    exit
```

Dual Bucket Subscriber Bandwidth Policer

Dual-bucket policers police the matching traffic against a configured peak information rate (PIR) and committed information rate (CIR). Traffic below CIR is marked in profile, traffic between CIR and PIR is marked as out of profile, and traffic above the PIR is dropped.

Dual-bucket policers can only be used as subscriber policers; system policers cannot be defined as dual-bucket policers.

The configuration is similar to the single-bucket policer, but adds the configuration of a CIR and a Committed Burst Size (CBS), and the action cannot be configured:

```
BNG>config>app-assure# group 1
    policer <policer-name> type dual-bucket-bandwidth
        granularity {subscriber|system} create
        description <string>
        rate <pir-rate-in-Kbps> cir <cir-rate-in-Kbps>
        mbs <max-burst-size-in-Kbytes>
        cbs <committed-burst-size-in-Kbytes>
        adaptation-rule pir {max|min|closest} cir {max|min|closest}
```

A dual-bucket subscriber level policer configuration example is shown below:

```
BNG>config>app-assure# group 1
    policer "P2P-Sub-DL-2M-DB" type dual-bucket-bandwidth granularity subscriber create
        rate 2000 cir 1000
        cbs 19
        mbs 38
    exit
```


MBS/CBS Calculation for Bandwidth Policers

The default MBS/CBS value of a bandwidth policer is set to 0. This value can and should be modified by the operator to allow proper interworking with TCP based applications.

The formula to calculate the MBS or CBS buffer size, as documented in RFC 6349, *Framework for TCP Throughput Testing*, is:

$$\text{Buffer (B)} = \text{Rate (bps)} / 8 * \text{RTT (s)}$$

For Internet applications it is recommended to use a common Round Trip Time (RTT) of 150 msec.

An example using a single bucket subscriber level policer rate of 10000 Kbps:

$$\text{MBS (B)} = 1,000,000 / 8 * 0.150 = 18750 \text{ Bytes or } 190 \text{ KB.}$$

Note that these policer values may need to be further adjustment depending on the application.

Flow Rate Limit Policier

Flow rate limit policers police the maximum number of new flows that are accepted per second for matching traffic. The configuration is similar to the single-bucket bandwidth policer, with the rate and MBS now expressed in flows/sec and flows, respectively.

```
BNG>config>app-assure# group 1
    policer <policer-name> type flow-rate-limit granularity {subscriber|system} create
        description <string>
        rate <flow-rate-in-flows/sec>
        mbs <max-burst-size-in-flows>
        adaptation-rule pir {max|min|closest}
        action permit-deny|priority-mark
```

This type of policer is primarily used for the default subscriber AQP policy in order to limit the maximum number of flow/seconds allocated per AA subscriber.

Note that in case the policer is used as part of the default AA subscriber policy then the **priority-mark** action has the effect to cut-through non conformant traffic in the ISA instead of drop using **permit-deny**.

Flow Count Limit Policer

Flow count limit policers police the maximum number of concurrent flows for matching traffic:

```
BNG>config>app-assure# group 1
    policer <policer-name> type flow-count-limit granularity {subscriber|system} create
        description <string>
        action permit-deny|priority-mark
        flow-count <max-number-of-flows>
```

This type of policer is primarily used for the default subscriber AQP policy in order to limit the maximum number of concurrent flows allocated per AA subscriber.

Note that the “priority-mark” has the effect to cut-through non conformant traffic in the ISA instead of drop using “permit-deny”.

Time of Day Policing

Software release 11.0.R1 introduced support for time-of-day (ToD) policer override. Up to 8 override rates with time of day specifications can be defined per policer, this time of day override using the system local time.

ToD overrides are supported for all policer types described in the previous section (bandwidth, flow-count, flow-rate) and can be configured using either daily or weekly patterns.

The configuration of ToD override on daily or weekly basis is shown in the following template:

```
BNG>config>app-assure# group 1
    policer "P2P-Sub-DL-1M-TOD" type single-bucket-bandwidth
        granularity subscriber create
        action permit-deny
        rate 1000
        mbs 19
        adaptation-rule pir closest
        tod-override <override-id>
            description <string>
            time-range daily start <start-time> end <end-time>
                                [on <day> [<day>...(upto 7 max)]]
            time-range weekly start <day,start-time> end <day,end-time>
            rate 2000
            mbs 38
```

where:

- **tod-override** <override-id> — Up to 8 override-ids (with value 1-255) can be configured per policer.

- **time-range** — Can be configured to be triggered.
 - On a daily basis at the indicated start/end-time on the specified days.
 - On a weekly basis at the indicated start day+time and end-day+time.
 - Times can be indicated as <hh>:<mm> with a 15-minute granularity for the minutes (mm = 0|15|30|45).

A configuration example for a single bucket system level bandwidth policer with the following ToD-override patterns follows:

- Default Rate Limit: 300Mbps
- Rate Limit override to 100Mbps between 5PM and 10PM
- Rate Limit override to 200Mbps between 10PM and 12PM

```
BNG>config>app-assure# group 1
    policer "P2P-Sys-DL-300M-TOD" type single-bucket-bandwidth
                                granularity system create
    description "Peer to Peer Policer System level Policer"
    rate 300000
    mbs 5625
    tod-override 1 create
        description "Override busy hour #1"
        time-range daily start 17:00 end 22:00
        rate 100000
        mbs 1875
        no shutdown
    exit
    tod-override 2 create
        description "Override busy hour #1"
        time-range daily start 22:00 end 24:00
        rate 200000
        mbs 3750
        no shutdown
    exit
```

The operator can display which policing rate is applied at any moment in time together with all configured override rates using the following command:

```
show application-assurance group <n> policer <policer-name> detail
```

Design and Configuration Examples

Default AA QoS Policy

To ensure fair access for all subscribers to the ISA-AA resources, and avoid that a disproportionate amount of ISA-AA resources are used by one or more subscribers which are misbehaving or receiving large traffic bursts from the Internet, it is recommended to configure the following three types of subscriber-level default AA QoS policies:

- **A default bandwidth policer** to limit the downstream bandwidth per subscriber (upstream bandwidth is already limited by ESM/SAP access ingress IOM QoS).
- **A default flow count policer** to limit the maximum number of active flows per traffic direction per subscriber. The operator can choose to drop or cut-through non conforming traffic.
- **A default flow rate policer** to limit the maximum flow setup rate per traffic direction per subscriber. The operator can choose to drop or cut-through non conforming traffic.

The minimum set of app-profiles used in a network is typically determined by the different access bandwidth rates; services characteristics are then used for each profile to apply a default QoS policy to limit bandwidth and flow resources accordingly.

In theory, it is possible to configure a set of default policers for every individual access bandwidth rate that is offered to a subscriber. This would however result in a large number of policers and corresponding ASO values plus app-profiles that need to be configured. Therefore, a best practice guideline is to define a small number of bandwidth ranges (not more than five to ten) that cover the full offered access bandwidth spectrum, and define for each bandwidth range a default bandwidth policer plus flow policers with appropriate limits.

As an example, assuming a residential deployment with 2 bandwidth ranges of up to 25Mbps and 100Mbps, the configuration below provides:

- Complete ASO and app-profile configuration.
- Default QoS policy for subscribers in the 25Mbps range including bandwidth.
- Flow count and flow rate policers are configured by default as permit-deny. Non conforming traffic is dropped which is common for residential deployments; alternatively the operator can decide to configure these policers as priority-mark to cut-through traffic in the ISA-AA.

In this example the resources are limited per subscriber based on their access rate maximum speed from which flow count and flow rate are derived.

App-Profile and ASO

The configuration below provides the app-profile and ASO characteristics used for the default subscriber AQP policy for the 25Mbps and 100Mbps access bandwidth range:

```
BNG>config>app-assure# group 1:1 policy
  app-service-options
    characteristic "access-rate" create
      value "100M"
      value "25M"
      default-value "100M"
    exit
  exit
  app-profile "1-1/25M" create
    description "25Mbps Site/Subscriber"
    divert
    characteristic "access-rate" value "25M"
    capacity-cost 25
  exit
  app-profile "1-1/100M" create
    description "100Mbps Site/Subscriber"
    divert
    characteristic "access-rate" value "100M"
    capacity-cost 100
  exit
```

Default Bandwidth Policing – 25Mbps AA-Sub

```
BNG>config>app-assure# group 1
  policer "DefltPol-Sub-BW-DS-25Mbps" type dual-bucket-bandwidth
                                     granularity subscriber create
    description "Deflt downstream BW policer for 25Mbps Subs"
    rate 25000
  mbs
```

The AQP entry below will act as a default AQP policy since it does not include application or IP Header match criteria:

```
BNG>config>app-assure# group 1:1 policy
  app-qos-policy
    entry 500 create
      description "Deflt downstream BW policer for 25Mbps Subs"
      match
        traffic-direction network-to-subscriber
        characteristic "access-rate" eq "25M"
      exit
    action
```

```
        bandwidth-policer "DefltPol-Sub-BW-DS-25Mbps"
    exit
    no shutdown
exit
```

Note: A similar configuration can be implemented for the 100Mbps access rate service option.

Default Flow-Count-Limit Policing – 25Mbps AA-Sub

```
BNG>config>app-assure# group 1
    policer "DefltPol-Sub-FlowCount-US-25Mbps" type flow-count-limit
                                                granularity subscriber create
        description "Deflt policer to limit active upstream flows for 25Mbps Subs"
        flow-count 10000
        action permit-deny
    exit
    policer "DefltPol-Sub-FlowCount-DS-25Mbps" type flow-count-limit
                                                granularity subscriber create
        description "Deflt policer to limit active downstream flows for 25Mbps Subs"
        flow-count 10000
        action permit-deny
    exit
```

The AQP entry below will act as a default AQP policy since it does not include application or IP Header match criteria:

```
BNG>config>app-assure# group 1:1 policy app-qos-policy
    entry 510 create
        description " Deflt policer to limit active upstream flows for 25Mbps Subs"
        match
            traffic-direction subscriber-to-network
            characteristic "access-rate" eq "25M"
        exit
        action
            flow-count-limit "DefltPol-Sub-FlowCount-US-25Mbps"
        exit
        no shutdown
    exit
    entry 515 create
        description " Deflt policer to limit active downstream flows for 25Mbps Subs"
        match
            traffic-direction network-to-subscriber
            characteristic "access-rate" eq "25M"
        exit
        action
            flow-count-limit "DefltPol-Sub-FlowCount-DS-25Mbps"
        exit
        no shutdown
    exit
```

Note: A similar configuration can be implemented for the 100Mbps access rate service option.

Default Flow-Rate-Limit Policing – 25Mbps AA-Sub

```

BNG>config>app-assure# group 1
    policer "DefltPol-Sub-FlowRate-US-25Mbps" type flow-rate-limit
                                         granularity subscriber create
        description "Deflt policer to limit upstream flow setup rate for 25Mbps Subs"
        rate 200
        action permit-deny
    exit
    policer "DefltPol-Sub-FlowRate-DS-25Mbps" type flow-rate-limit
                                         granularity subscriber create
        description "Deflt policer to limit downstr flow setup rate for 25Mbps Subs"
        rate 200
        action permit-deny
    exit

```

The AQP entry below will act as a default AQP policy since it does not include application or IP Header match criteria:

```

BNG>config>app-assure# group 1:1 policy app-qos-policy
    entry 520 create
        description "Deflt policer to limit upstream flow setup rate for 25Mbps Subs"
        match
            traffic-direction subscriber-to-network
            characteristic "access-rate" eq "25M"
        exit
        action
            flow-rate-limit "DefltPol-Sub-FlowRate-US-25Mbps"
        exit
        no shutdown
    exit
    entry 525 create
        description "Deflt policer to limit downstr flow setup rate for 25Mbps Subs"
        match
            traffic-direction network-to-subscriber
            characteristic "access-rate" eq "25M"
        exit
        action
            flow-rate-limit "DefltPol-Sub-FlowRate-DS-25Mbps"
        exit
        no shutdown
    exit

```

Note: A similar configuration can be implemented for the 100Mbps access rate service option.

Application BW Policing (Per Subscriber)

The configuration example below provides a per AA subscriber peer-to-peer rate limit of 1Mbps. It does not include the app-profile configuration since the ASO characteristic and values can be either statically configured within the app-profile or dynamically signaled through RADIUS or Gx using ASO overrides.

AA subscribers with service characteristic "P2P-Sub-DL" value of "1M" will have a bandwidth policer of 1Mbps applied to peer to peer traffic in the network to subscriber direction:

```
BNG>config>app-assure# group 1
    policer "P2P-Sub-DL-1M" type single-bucket-bandwidth granularity subscriber create
        description "Per-subscr BW policer to limit P2P downstream traffic to 1Mbps"
        rate 1000
        mbs 19
        action permit-deny
    exit

BNG>config>app-assure# group 1:1 policy
    app-service-options
        characteristic "P2P-Sub-DL" create
            value "10M"
            value "1M"
            value "unlimited"
            default-value "unlimited"
        exit

BNG>config>app-assure# group 1:1 policy app-qos-policy
    entry 30 create
        description "Per-subscr BW policer to limit P2P downstream traffic to 1Mbps"
        match
            app-group eq "Peer to Peer"
            traffic-direction network-to-subscriber
            characteristic "P2P-Sub-DL" eq "1M"
        exit
        action
            bandwidth-policer "P2P-Sub-DL-1M"
        exit
    no shutdown
    exit
```


Conclusion

This example provides detailed information to properly configure and use app-profiles, ASOs and AQPs to successfully configure application policy control rules using Application Assurance.

Application Assurance — Asymmetry Removal

In This Chapter

This section describes Application Assurance asymmetry removal configurations.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 88](#)
- [Overview on page 89](#)
- [Configuration on page 90](#)
- [Conclusion on page 103](#)

Applicability

This configuration note is applicable to all 7750 SR and 7450 ESS chassis supporting Application Assurance and was tested on release 11.0R1. Note that Asymmetry Removal is supported on 7750 SR-c12 but not on the 7750 SR-c4. For the Application Assurance Redundancy Protocol (AARP) feature, the diverting flexpath (FP) must be FP2 or higher as it makes use of spoke SDP divert.

The pre-requisites for this configuration note are a base understanding of AA configuration and operation for single homed deployments. This note applies to dual-homed SAPs and spoke SDPs configurations, in a business or residential AA context. AARP is not used for ESM AA subscribers.

Overview

This section is intended for Application Assurance (AA) network architects and engineers. It provides best practices recommendations to configure AA Asymmetry Removal.

Asymmetry means that the two directions of traffic for a given flow (to-sub and from-sub) take different paths through the network. Asymmetry removal is a means of eliminating traffic asymmetry between a set of dual-homed SAP or spoke SDP endpoints. This can be across endpoints within a single node or across a pair of inter-chassis link connected routers, which is the topology explained in this section. Asymmetry removal ensures all packets of a dual-homed AA subscriber are diverted to a given AA ISA in order to achieve accurate per subscriber traffic identification and policy enforcement.

Traffic asymmetry is created when there are dual-homed links for a given service, and the links are simultaneously carrying traffic. Asymmetry removal for transit subscribers must be implemented in the first routed hop on the network side of the subscriber management point, so there will be a deterministic and fixed SAP/spoke SDP representing the downstream subscriber management node. This ensures there are no more than two paths that the flows can take, both covered by the asymmetry removal solution.

Configuration

Application Assurance Redundancy Protocol (AARP) provides the data plane connectivity for dynamically keeping a dual-homed AA subscriber's traffic on the same ISA-AA for AA processing. An AARP instance is configured between the dual-homed routers to establish connectivity with the same AARP instance number on each node.

When asymmetry exists between dual-chassis redundant systems, Ipipe spoke SDPs are used to interconnect these services between peer nodes over an Inter-Chassis Link (ICL). The following sections explain the configuration and operation of the services for use with the Application Assurance Redundancy Protocol.

AARP Service Configuration

The following services must be configured to establish communications between the AARP instances in each of the paired nodes.

- Network topology is a VPRN (or IES) service configured in each node, with a dual-homed SAP from each node to a downstream access element.
- Assumes starting point with AA ISAs installed with identical AA policy and divert enabled in each node.
- Also, the system needs basic routing and LDP configuration for the SDP and the spoke SDPs to be established.

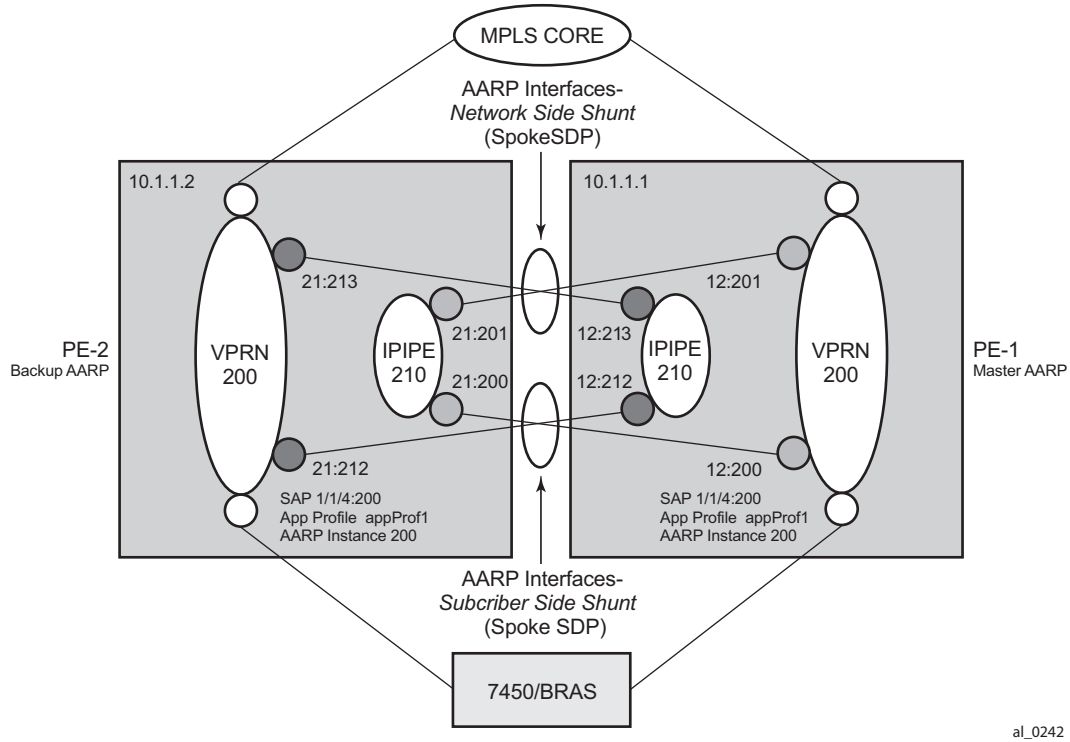


Figure 12: Application Assurance Asymmetry Removal Topology

Table 4: Application Assurance Asymmetry Removal Topology

On PE-2	On PE-1
system ip: 10.1.1.2	system ip: 10.1.1.1
dual-homed service: 200	dual-homed service: 200
dual-homed sap: 1/1/4:200	dual-homed sap: 1/1/4:200
app-profile diverting: yes	app-profile diverting: yes

Configuration Commands for AARP

To enable AARP, AARP instances and AARP interfaces on both nodes must be configured. AARP operation has the following dependencies between the nodes:

- Shunt links configured and operationally up, both subscriber side shunt and network side shunt.
- Peer communications established between nodes, AARP instance operational status will be up when peers are communicating.
- Dual-homed sap/spoke SDP configured with a unique AARP instance (matched by dual-homed interface).
- App-profile configured against sap/spoke SDP with divert enabled (making the sub an aa-sub). The app-profile is the trigger to divert the traffic node with the active AARP instance to one of the ISAs in that node, per normal AA divert behavior.

Begin with PE-2:

```
configure
    aarp 200 create
        description "aarp protecting a dual-homed sap"
        peer 10.1.1.1
        priority 100
        no shutdown
    exit
```

Ipipe shunt configuration

```
configure service
    sdp 21 mpls create
        far-end 10.1.1.1
        ldp
        keep-alive
        shutdown
    exit
    no shutdown
exit
ipipe 210 customer 1 vc-switching create
    service-mtu 9174
    spoke-sdp 21:200 create
        aarp 200 type subscriber-side-shunt
        no shutdown
    exit
    spoke-sdp 21:201 create
        aarp 200 type network-side-shunt
        no shutdown
    exit
    no shutdown
exit
```


Dual-homed and Interface Shunt Configuration

```

vprn 200 customer 1 create
description "VPRN 200 Dual Homed Routed Service"
interface "bras1" create
  sap 1/1/10:4 create
    app-profile "appProf1"
    aarp 200 type dual-homed
  exit
exit
aarp-interface "subside_1" create
  spoke-sdp 21:212 create
    aarp 200 type subscriber-side-shunt
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
aarp-interface "netside_1" create
  spoke-sdp 21:213 create
    aarp 200 type network-side-shunt
    no shutdown
  exit
exit

```

Then similarly configure the associated AARP configuration on PE-1:

```

configure
  application-assurance
    aarp 200 create
      description "aarp protecting a dual-homed sap"
      peer 10.1.1.2
      priority 200
      no shutdown
    exit

```

Ipipe Shunt Configuration

```

sdp 12 mpls create
  far-end 10.1.1.2
  ldp
  keep-alive
  shutdown
exit
no shutdown
exit
ipipe 210 customer 1 vc-switching create
  service-mtu 9174
  spoke-sdp 12:212 create
    aarp 200 type subscriber-side-shunt
    no shutdown
  exit
  spoke-sdp 12:213 create
    aarp 200 type network-side-shunt
    no shutdown
  exit
no shutdown
exit

```

Dual-homed and Interface Shunt Configuration

```
vpn 200 customer 1 create
    interface "bras1" create
        sap 1/1/4:200 create
            description "AA enabled SAP"
            aarp 200 type dual-homed
            app-profile "appProf1"
        exit
    exit
aarp-interface "subside_1" create
    spoke-sdp 12:200 create
        aarp 200 type subscriber-side-shunt
        no shutdown
    exit
exit
aarp-interface "netside_1" create
    spoke-sdp 12:201 create
        aarp 200 type network-side-shunt
        no shutdown
    exit
exit
```

Show Commands for AARP

Verify correct configuration on each node. The following output displays the example configuration for PE-1.

Starting with the AARP instance in each node, verify that the AARP instance operational state is up (if everything is properly configured as intended):

```
*A:PE-1# show application-assurance aarp 200
=====
AARP Instance 200
=====
Description      : aarp protecting dual homed sap
Admin State      : Up                               Oper State      : Up

Local IP         : 10.1.1.1                         Peer IP         : 10.1.1.2
Local State      : master                           Peer State      : backup
Local Priority    : 200                             Peer Priority    : 100

Local Flags      : none
Peer Flags       : none
Peer End-Point   : none

Master Selection Mode      : minimize-switchovers
-----
Service References
-----
Service              Reference              Reference Type
-----
VPRN 200             1/1/4:200              Dual-Homed
Ipipe 210             12:212                  Subscriber-Side Pipe Shunt
Ipipe 210             12:213                  Network-Side Pipe Shunt
VPRN 200             12:200                  Subscriber-Side AARP-Interface Shunt
VPRN 200             12:201                  Network-Side AARP-Interface Shunt
-----
No. of service references: 5
```

Verifying that the AARP instance is up is an indication that the dual-node communications for AARP is working (instance, shunts, etc.). In addition, in the above output, verify on both PE nodes that the intended SAPs are dual-homed for that instance.

Now a detailed review of the configured AARP shunt infrastructure services can be shown to make sure they are all properly configured with intended AARP parameters (such as AARP ID and Type on the network and subscriber side shunts) as displayed in the following output:

```
*A:PE-1>show# service id 210 all
=====
Service Detailed Information
=====
Service Id          : 210                               Vpn Id          : 0
Service Type        : Ipipe
Name                : (Not Specified)
Description         : (Not Specified)
```

Show Commands for AARP

```

Customer Id      : 1                      Creation Origin   : manual
Last Status Change: 05/29/2013 12:48:25
Last Mgmt Change  : 05/27/2013 13:47:32
Admin State       : Up                    Oper State        : Up
MTU               : 9174
Vc Switching      : True
SAP Count         : 0                    SDP Bind Count     : 2
CE IPv4 Discovery  : n/a
CE IPv6 Discovery  : n/a                Stack Cap Sig      : n/a
-----
ETH-CFM service specifics
-----
Tunnel Faults     : ignore
-----
Service Destination Points(SDPs)
-----
Sdp Id 12:212    -(10.1.1.2)
-----
Description       : (Not Specified)
SDP Id            : 12:212                Type               : Spoke
Spoke Descr       : (Not Specified)
Split Horiz Grp   : (Not Specified)
VC Type           : Ipipe                 VC Tag              : 0
Admin Path MTU    : 0                    Oper Path MTU       : 9174
Delivery          : MPLS
Far End           : 10.1.1.2
Tunnel Far End    : 10.1.1.2             LSP Types           : LDP
Hash Label        : Disabled              Hash Lbl Sig Cap    : Disabled
Oper Hash Label   : Disabled

Admin State       : Up                    Oper State          : Up
...
Application Profile: None
Transit Policy    : None
AARP Id           : 200
AARP Type         : subscriber-side-shunt
...
-----
IPIPE Service Destination Point specifics
-----
Configured CE IPv4 Addr: n/a                Peer CE IPv4 Addr : 0.0.0.0
-----
Sdp Id 12:213    -(10.1.1.2)
-----
Description       : (Not Specified)
SDP Id            : 12:213                Type               : Spoke
Spoke Descr       : (Not Specified)
Split Horiz Grp   : (Not Specified)
VC Type           : Ipipe                 VC Tag              : 0
Admin Path MTU    : 0                    Oper Path MTU       : 9174
Delivery          : MPLS
Far End           : 10.1.1.2
Tunnel Far End    : 10.1.1.2             LSP Types           : LDP
Hash Label        : Disabled              Hash Lbl Sig Cap    : Disabled
Oper Hash Label   : Disabled

Admin State       : Up                    Oper State          : Up
...

```

```

Application Profile: None
Transit Policy      : None
AARP Id             : 200
AARP Type           : network-side-shunt
...

```

Next, the configuration of the VPRN service of the dual-homed SAP can be reviewed to ensure it reflects the attached endpoints for the shunt Ipipe spoke SDPs:

```

*A:PE-1>show>service>id 200 all
=====
Service Detailed Information
=====
Service Id       : 200                Vpn Id           : 0
Service Type     : VPRN
Name             : (Not Specified)
Description      : (Not Specified)
Customer Id      : 1                  Creation Origin   : manual
Last Status Change: 05/27/2013 13:47:32
Last Mgmt Change : 05/27/2013 13:47:32
Admin State      : Up                 Oper State        : Up

Route Dist.      : 65004:1            VPRN Type         : regular
AS Number        : None               Router Id          : 10.1.1.1
ECMP             : Enabled            ECMP Max Routes   : 1
Max IPv4 Routes  : No Limit           Auto Bind          : LDP
Max IPv6 Routes  : No Limit
Ignore NH Metric : Disabled
Hash Label       : Disabled
Vrf Target       : target:65004:200
Vrf Import       : None
Vrf Export       : None
MVPN Vrf Target  : None
MVPN Vrf Import  : None
MVPN Vrf Export  : None
Car. Sup C-VPN   : Disabled
Label mode       : vrf
BGP VPN Backup   : Disabled

SAP Count        : 4                  SDP Bind Count    : 2
...

-----
Service Destination Points(SDPs)
-----
Sdp Id 12:200   -(10.1.1.2)
-----
Description      : (Not Specified)
SDP Id           : 12:200                Type              : Spoke
Spoke Descr      : (Not Specified)
VC Type          : n/a                   VC Tag            : n/a
Admin Path MTU   : 0                     Oper Path MTU     : 9174
Delivery         : MPLS
Far End          : 10.1.1.2
Tunnel Far End   : 10.1.1.2              LSP Types         : LDP
Hash Label       : Disabled              Hash Lbl Sig Cap   : Disabled

```

Show Commands for AARP

```
Oper Hash Label      : Disabled

Admin State          : Up                      Oper State          : Up
...
Application Profile: None
Transit Policy       : None
AARP Id              : 200
AARP Type            : subscriber-side-shunt

...
-----
IPIPE Service Destination Point specifics
-----
Configured CE IPv4 Addr: n/a                      Peer CE IPv4 Addr : 0.0.0.0
-----
Sdp Id 12:201  -(10.1.1.2)
-----
Description          : (Not Specified)
SDP Id               : 12:201                      Type                  : Spoke
Spoke Descr          : (Not Specified)
VC Type              : n/a                          VC Tag                 : n/a
Admin Path MTU       : 0                          Oper Path MTU          : 9174
Delivery             : MPLS
Far End              : 10.1.1.2
Tunnel Far End       : 10.1.1.2                      LSP Types              : LDP
Hash Label           : Disabled                      Hash Lbl Sig Cap       : Disabled
Oper Hash Label      : Disabled

Admin State          : Up                      Oper State          : Up
...

Application Profile: None
Transit Policy       : None
AARP Id              : 200
AARP Type            : network-side-shunt
...
```

Continuing deeper into the same VPRN service show output, it can be verified that the dual-homed SAP itself is properly configured and associated with that service and AARP instance:

```
-----
SAP 1/1/4:200
-----
Service Id           : 200
SAP                  : 1/1/4:200                      Encap                  : q-tag
Description          : (Not Specified)
Admin State          : Up                      Oper State          : Up
Flags                : PortOperDown
Multi Svc Site       : None
Last Status Change: 05/27/2013 13:47:32
Last Mgmt Change    : 05/27/2013 13:47:32
Sub Type             : regular
Dot1Q Ethertype      : 0x8100                      QinQ Ethertype        : 0x8100
Split Horizon Group: (Not Specified)

Admin MTU            : 1518                      Oper MTU              : 1518
Ingr IP Fltr-Id      : n/a                      Egr IP Fltr-Id        : n/a
```

Ingr Mac Fltr-Id : n/a	Egr Mac Fltr-Id : n/a
Ingr IPv6 Fltr-Id : n/a	Egr IPv6 Fltr-Id : n/a
BGP IPv4 FlowSpec : Disabled	
BGP IPv6 FlowSpec : Disabled	
tod-suite : None	qinq-pbit-marking : both
	Egr Agg Rate Limit: max
Q Frame-Based Acct : Disabled	
Acct. Pol : None	Collect Stats : Disabled
Anti Spoofing : None	Dynamic Hosts : Enabled
Avl Static Hosts : 0	Tot Static Hosts : 0
Calling-Station-Id : n/a	
Application Profile: appProf1	
Transit Policy : ip 200	
AARP Id : 200	
AARP Type : dual-homed	
Oper Group : (none)	Monitor Oper Grp : (none)
Host Lockout Plcy : n/a	
Lag Link Map Prof : (none)	
...	

Network to Subscriber Traffic Flow

When the AARP is operationally up, AARP tracks which ISA is the master ISA for each dual-homed AARP instance and uses the inter-chassis services (spoke SDP AARP shunts) to move all traffic for each instance traffic to the node with the Master ISA.

Looking at traffic in the network to subscriber direction (Figure 13):

- Traffic arriving on PE-1 is diverted to the local master ISA, processed, then proceeds to the egress SAP.
- Traffic arriving on PE-2 with the backup AARP interface is sent to the master node for AA processing. The ingress FP forwards packets to network-side-shunt AARP interface for remote AA divert.
- Arriving on PE-1, the packets on the AARP Ipipe are diverted to the master ISA where the packets are processed as if this traffic was travelling in the to-sub direction towards the dual-homed endpoint on PE-1, then returned to PE-2.
- Entering PE-2, the traffic from the subscriber side shunt interface is not diverted to ISAs in that node and egresses on the AARP instance SAP.

With this behavior, traffic always returns to the original ingress node before egressing toward the subscriber (network path for the flows are not modified).

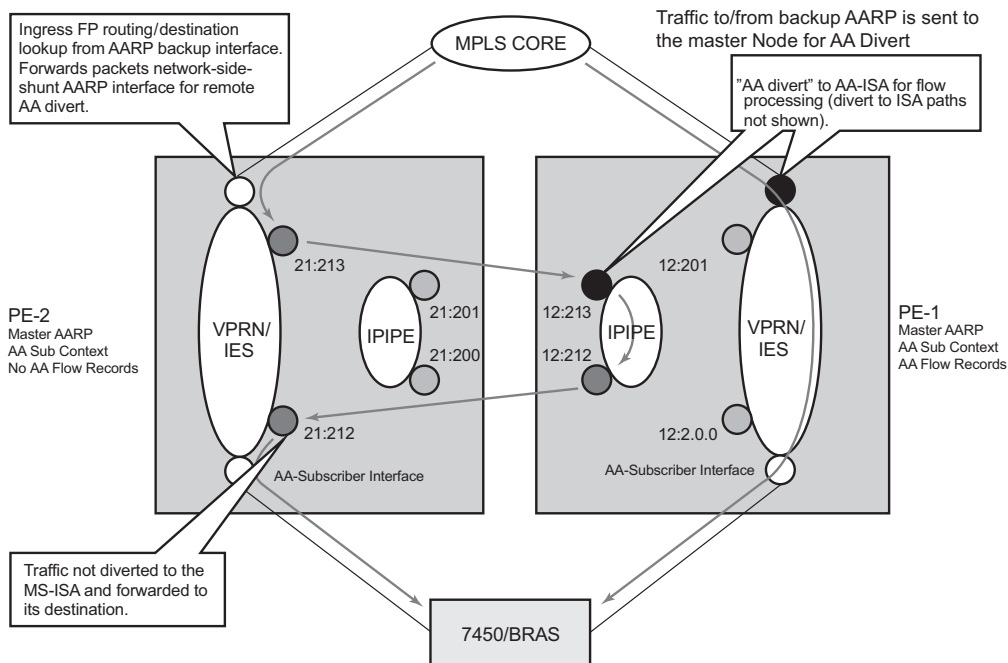


Figure 13: Network to Subscriber Traffic Flow

Subscriber to Network Traffic Flow

Looking at traffic in the subscriber to network direction (Figure 14):

- Traffic arriving on PE-1 is diverted to the local master ISA, processed, then proceeds to the egress SAP.
- Traffic arriving on PE-2 with the backup AARP ISA is sent to the master node for AA processing (not diverted to an ISA in PE-2). The ingress FP forwards packets to subscriber-side-shunt AARP interface for remote AA divert.
- Arriving on PE-1, the packets on the AARP Ipipe are diverted to the master ISA where the packets are processed as if the traffic was flowing in the from-sub direction on the dual-homed endpoint, then returned to PE-2 over the Ipipe's AARP subscriber-side-shunt.
- Entering PE-2, the traffic from the network side shunt interface is forwarded by the IES/ VPRN service to its destination.

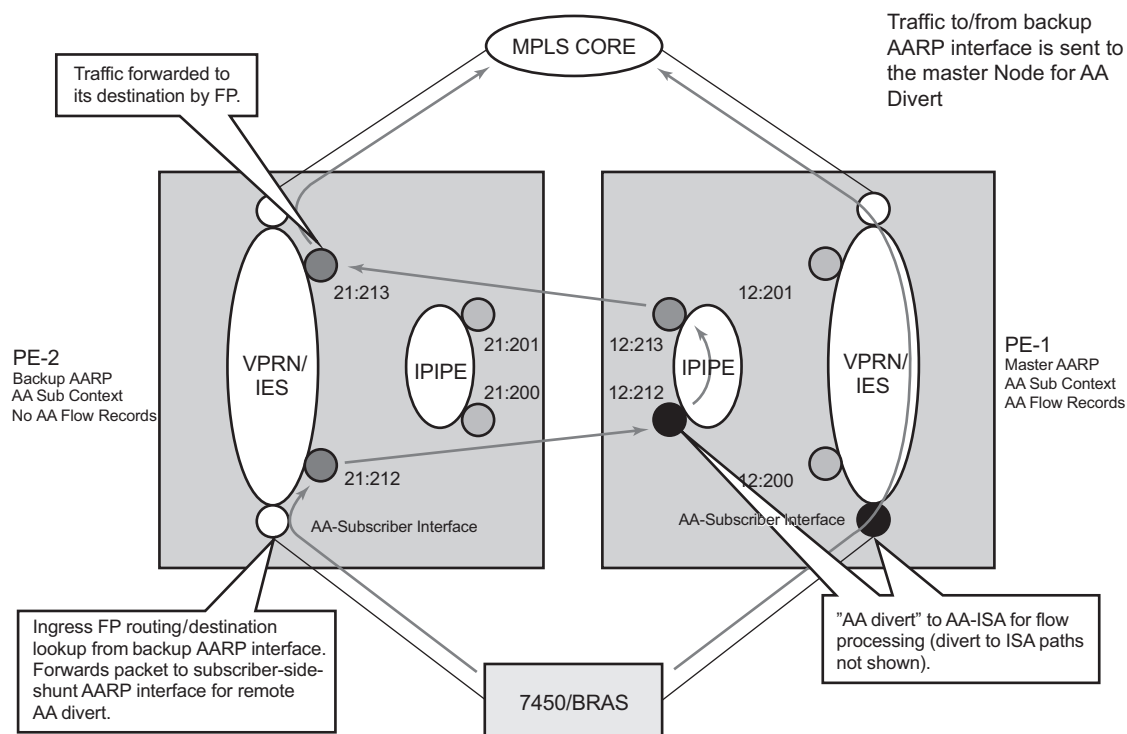


Figure 14: Subscriber to Network Traffic Flow

Typical Configuration Mistakes

Operators configuring AARP can make some typical mistakes listed below that will keep the AARP instance in Operational State down:

- The spoke SDP AARP shunt instances' IDs must be aligned with the respective spoke SDP on the peer node: if not, it will result in a flag indicating **shunt mismatch** in the show output.
- Ipipe service MTU alignment — The Ipipe service MTU values must be the same in both nodes, otherwise it will result in the services be in operational status UP, but the AARP instance will remain down.

Conclusion

This section is intended for Application Assurance (AA) network architects and engineers to provide the information required to understand and configure dual-node asymmetry removal following the intended service configuration as used by the AARP implementation.

Application Assurance — Best Practices for ISA and Host IOM Overload Protection

In This Chapter

This section provides information about Application Assurance best practices for ISA and host IOM overload protection.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 106](#)
- [Overview on page 107](#)
- [Configuration on page 113](#)
- [Conclusion on page 129](#)

Applicability

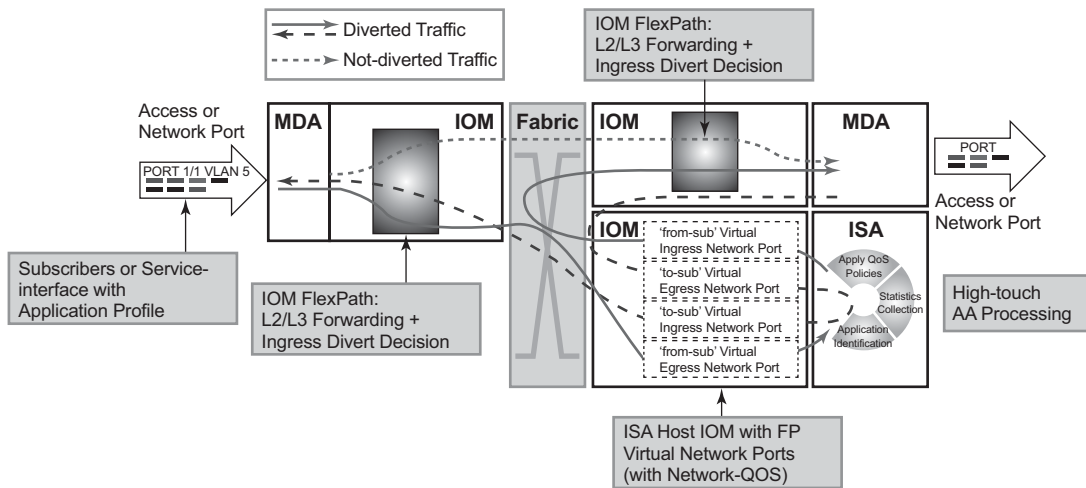
This configuration note is applicable to all 7750 SR/SR-c and 7450 ESS chassis supporting Application Assurance (AA).

The configuration was tested on release 12.0.R4.

Overview

The Multi-Service Integrated Services Adapter (MS-ISA) is a processing resource module installed in a 7x50 SR/ESS system on an ISA host IOM. This example describes the best practices for configuration and monitoring of the system to ensure proper engineering of the system resources involved in AA ISA capacity planning.

As shown in [Figure 15](#), traffic is diverted to an AA ISA by provisioning of an application profile (app-profile) for a subscriber or SAP service context. SR OS then automatically handles traffic diversion for both directions of traffic for that AA subscriber context, through one of the AA ISAs in the AA group where that app-profile is defined.



al_0535

Figure 15: System Packet Datapath to AA ISA

The following elements in the 7x50 SR/ESS system must be properly engineered for any given AA deployment. Each element is described in this section:

1. ISA capacity cost and load balancing across ISAs.
2. ISA host IOM network egress QoS. Host IOM egress network ports weighted-average shared buffer pool thresholds (within the egress QoS configuration for each group) are used for overload cut-through processing.
3. ISA resources and statistics collection.
 - Flows
 - Traffic volume (bandwidth)
 - Subscribers

- Flow setup rate
 - 4. ISA overload cut-through
 - 5. ISA default subscriber policies
-

ISA Capacity Planning Approach

This example illustrates an approach to the configuration of the 7x50 SR/ESS AA system to address these considerations:

- IOM/ISA-AA network egress QoS configuration should be designed to treat the ISA as a network port with normal network port maximum delay (by MBS).
- Within the ISA, fair access to the ISA-AA bandwidth and flow resources must be ensured: it is recommended that default Application QoS Policy (AQP) policy entries be configured limiting bandwidth and flow resources per AA subscriber.
- Thresholds for SNMP alerts that indicate a high load on ISA processing should be configured: capacity cost, flow, bandwidth.
- Capacity tracking in live deployments should be performed for parameters that can affect overload: flow setup rate, bandwidth, and subscriber-count per ISA.
- Use of other scale related consumable AA resources against system maximum limits. This includes parameters such as statistics records, transit-ip table entries, and transit-prefix TCAM entries, which should be planned and periodically tracked. These limits will not affect overload of the ISA but may affect intended service operation.
- For recommendations of the specific parameters to watch in a given deployment as well as the values of the system limits for a given release, contact your regional support organization.

AA Overload and Resource Monitoring

Overload is a condition where the total packet processing requirements for traffic arriving on a given ISA exceeds the available resources, resulting in the host IOM egress buffers reaching a configured “overload” threshold. Above this threshold, the ISA can be configured to forward excess traffic (called overload cut-through). If cut-through is not enabled and the overload condition continues, the egress queue MBS threshold will eventually be reached, after which packets will be discarded. Even if overload cut-through is enabled, any egress traffic that exceeds the maximum bus capacity of the ISA queue discard threshold will be discarded.

ISA capacity overload events are supported within the system resource monitoring and logging capabilities if the traffic and resource load crosses any of the following high and low load thresholds on a per-ISA basis. Exceeding one of these thresholds does not in itself indicate an overload state.

- a. Host IOM egress network ports weighted-average shared buffer pool thresholds (within the egress QoS configuration for each AA group) are used for triggering and removing overload cut-through processing. Care should be taken in the configuration of these buffers, as the IOM flexpath has significant buffer capacity that can result in latency larger than the network SLA acceptable guidelines. A properly engineered configuration will have large enough buffering to not trigger ISA overload unnecessarily (due to normal bursts with a reasonable traffic load) but will not incur excessive latency prior to triggering the overload state.
- b. ISA capacity cost: if the capacity cost of all subscribers on the ISA exceeds a threshold, an event is raised but the overload condition is not set (unless other resources are exhausted). ISA overload or traffic cut-through does not occur simply if capacity cost is exceeded. It is used to capacity plan an intended load for the ISA, proportional to resource use per subscriber, in order to generate events prior to overload to allow appropriate action to mitigate the resource consumption (such as provisioning more ISAs).
- c. Flow table consumption (number of allocated flow resources in use): the flow table high-watermark threshold warnings are for proactive notification of a high load. The ISA will cut-through new flows when the “flow resources in use” is at the maximum flow limit. Reaching the flow limit does not generate backpressure to the IOM, nor is the ISA considered in an overload state. Flow usage thresholds are different from bit-rate/packet-rate/flow-setup-rate thresholds in that when the flow table high-watermark threshold is exceeded, the ISA will no longer be operating as application-aware for the flows with no context. The default subscriber policy is applied to traffic that required a flow record but was unable to allocate one, which is a similar behavior to overload cut-through.

The following terms are used to describe flow resources:

- Maximum flows: the maximum AA flow table size for a given release.
 - Flows: on the show screens, the “flows” field is an indication of the number of unique 5-tuple entries in the flow table. This includes active and inactive flows; inactive will age out of the table after a period of inactivity that is dependent on the protocol used.
 - Active flows: the number of flows with traffic in the current reporting interval.
 - Flow resources in use: the number of allocated flows in the flow table. This number is greater than the number of active flows, reflecting inactive flows and flows pre-allocated for some dynamic protocols (control + data channels) and for some UDP traffic.
- d. Traffic volume: traffic rate in bytes/sec and packets/sec is the dominant cause of ISA overload in most network scenarios, when the ISA is presented with more traffic than it can process. This results in the ISA internal ingress buffers reaching a threshold that causes backpressure to the IOM egress queues (toward the ISA), allowing the ISA to process the packets it already has. This internal backpressure mechanism is normal behavior, allowing burst tolerance at the IOM-to-ISA interface; thus backpressure is not in itself an indication of overload. Overload occurs when the bursts or the load of traffic is sustained long enough to reach the ISA host IOM network port egress weighted-average shared buffer threshold. The actual amount of traffic that can be passed through an ISA is dependent on the application traffic mix, flow density, and AA policy configurations and will vary by network type and by region. The bit-rate and packet-rate watermarks can be used to provide event notification when the traffic rates exceed planning expectations.
- e. Flow setup rate: this is generally proportional to total traffic volume, and as such can be a factor in ISA overload. The flow setup rate is the rate at which new flows are presented to the ISA, each resulting in additional tasks that are specific to flow state creation; thus the ISA has a sensitivity to flow setup rates as fewer cycles are available for other datapath tasks when the flow setup rate is high. In residential networks, flow setup rates of 3 k to 5 k flows/sec per Gbps of traffic are common. The flow setup watermarks can be used to provide event notification when the rate exceeds planning expectations.

ISA Overload Models

For an ISA overload strategy, there are two design options for configuring the overload behavior of the system:

- **Host IOM egress discards:** in this model, the philosophy is to treat AA packet processing resources in the same way as a network interface (of somewhat variable capacity depending on the traffic characteristics). When too much traffic is presented to the ISA, it backpressures the host IOM egress, which will buffer packets. If the egress buffer thresholds are exceeded, the ISA will discard according to the egress QoS slope policy. This is configured by not enabling **isa-overload-cut-through** and use of appropriate egress QoS policies. Firewall or session filter deployments may use this model.
- **Overload cut-through:** the ISA group can be enabled to cut-through some traffic if an overload event occurs, triggered when the IOM network port weighted-average queues depth exceeds the weighted-average shared high-watermark threshold. In this ISA state, some packets are cut-through from application analysis but retain subscriber context with the default subscriber policy applied. This mode of deployment is intended for situations where it is preferable to forward packets even if not identified by AA than to drop/discard the packet. For example, if AA is providing value-added services (VAS) such as In-Browser Notification (IBN), analytics, or traffic rate limiting, this would usually be the preferred model as the underlying service should be preserved even if capacity to provide the VAS is not available.

Note that even with overload cut-through enabled, there is a hardware-based maximum ISA throughput of approximately 11 Gbps for MS-ISA and 40 Gbps for MS-ISA2. If this is exceeded on a sustained basis, IOM egress discards may still occur.

Understanding Packet and Protocol Cut-Through

Traffic can be cut-through the ISA-AA card on a packet-by-packet basis, in which case packets do not go through AA identification and subscriber application policy. The conditions that trigger cut-through include:

- **Overload (IOM egress network port weighted-average shared buffer threshold):** excess traffic bypasses all AA processing except for the default subscriber policy
- **Non-conformant IP packet:** traffic bypasses all AA processing except IP protocol checks and the default subscriber policy. Optionally, these packets can be discarded in AA.
- **Flow table full:** for new 5-tuples sent to the ISA, if the flow table is full, the packets are cut-through the ISA and only the default subscriber policy is applied.

Note: the default subscriber policy is a set of AQP rules that apply AQP match criteria limited to Application Service Options (ASO), aa-sub, and traffic-direction starting with the first packet of a

Understanding Packet and Protocol Cut-Through

flow, with no match conditions based on AA identification (application, app-group, charging-group, IP header). Packets will be either denied_by_default_policy or cut_through_by_default_policy, depending on the policer action configuration in the AQP rules.

For cut-through traffic, no flow records exist but it is counted under per-subscriber protocol statistics as one of the following counters, depending on the case:

- **cut_through** — Statistics for any packet that could not map to a flow, but that has a valid subscriber ID. This can be an error packet, fragmented out-of-order, no flow resource, invalid TCP flags, etc. This is the most important count for indicating overload cut-through, as it counts all traffic in overload cut-through mode (when the weighted-average threshold has been crossed).
- **denied_by_default_policy** — Packets that are dropped due to a default policy with a flow-based policer (flow rate or flow count) with action discard.
- **cut_through_by_default_policy** — Packets that failed to pass flow-based policers with an action of priority-mark.

An example of overload cut-through statistics in the CLI is shown below:

```
A:BNG# show application-assurance group 1 protocol count
=====
Application-Assurance Protocol Statistics
=====
```

Protocol	Disc	Octets	Packets	Flows
advanced_direct_connect	0%	0	0	0
aim	0%	0	0	0
amazon_video	0%	0	0	0
ares	0%	0	0	0
bbm	0%	0	0	0
betamax_voip	0%	0	0	0
bgp	0%	0	0	0
bittorrent	0%	678428534	5322929	1036129
cccam	0%	0	0	0
citrix_ica	0%	0	0	0
citrix_ima	0%	0	0	0
cnnlive	0%	0	0	0
cups	0%	0	0	0
cut_through	0%	5299435739	10603771	0
cut_through_by_default_policy	0%	0	0	0
cvs	0%	0	0	0
daap	0%	0	0	0
dcerpc	0%	0	0	0
denied_by_default_policy	0%	0	0	0

Configuration

This example illustrates a typical, configuration of a 7x50 system for AA each of the configuration topics.

AA Traffic Load Test Environment

Application assurance identifies every byte and every packet of hundreds of real-world applications using per-flow stateful analysis techniques. It is a challenge to find test equipment that can accurately emulate full scale (10 Gbps to 40 Gbps) with traffic mixes and flow behaviors representing hundreds of thousands of end users with application clients across a range of devices. Some specialized stateful test equipment can emulate large traffic rates, but even the best will have equipment-specific patterns and behaviors not representative of live traffic. Therefore, the best scenario to engineer the AA overload configuration is by iteration in live deployments: setting an initial target and modifying the configuration based on ISA performance under load.

For a lab test of ISA throughput and loading, Alcatel-Lucent uses stateful test equipment which supports emulation of various service provider traffic mix profiles suitable for generating overload conditions; however, it is outside the scope of this document to configure AA throughput tests.

The operator should be aware that use of unrealistic, non-stateful traffic generators can result in a high level of unknown traffic, with the ISA performance impacted by continually trying to identify large numbers of packets of no real application type. This, combined with cut-through for invalid IP packets, can result in ISA overload and traffic cut-through (due to overload or invalid IP packets) at traffic levels not representative of actual ISA performance on real traffic.

ISA Capacity Cost and Load Balancing Across ISAs

These AA group-level commands define the load balancing parameters within an ISA group.

```
*A:BNG# configure isa
application-assurance-group 1 aa-sub-scale residential create
no description
no fail-to-open
isa-capacity-cost-high-threshold 304000
isa-capacity-cost-low-threshold 272000
partitions
divert-fc be
no shutdown
exit
```

The following should be noted related to this configuration:

- Up to 7 primary and 1 backup ISAs are allowed. If the AA services are considered “value added” and not part of a paid service, backups are usually not used since the “fail to fabric” capability keeps the underlying service running.
- The default behavior in case of ISA failure is “no fail-to-open”, which means “fail-to-wire”; if an ISA fails, traffic is forwarded as if **no divert** was configured
- Threshold for sending capacity-cost SNMP traps: the unit used for capacity cost is a variable defined in the network design; in this example, it is expressed in Mbps of the subscriber total BW UP+DOWN with a high watermark set to $7600 \text{ Mbps} \times 40 = 304000$ (where 40 is an oversubscription ratio). The low watermark is equal to $6800 \text{ Mbps} \times 40 = 272000$.
- Partitions should always be enabled to configure additional policies in the future (for example, wifi/business)
- **divert-fc** configuration applies to the AA group: in this example, FC BE Internet is the only diverted FC; this is typical for AA residential and Wlan-GW deployments. For VPN services, typically all datapath FCs are diverted to AA.

ISA-AA Host IOM - Network Egress Shared Memory and QoS

The amount of shared memory allocated per port, along with the network port egress QoS policy, determine the maximum delay for traffic diverted to Application Assurance.

This maximum network port delay is typically determined by the operator and must be used to define the proper QoS configuration to apply to the ISA-AA ports; this QoS configuration may be the same (typically) as what is applied to regular network ports on the 7x50 SR/ESS.

For IOM3-XP and FP2 and higher based line cards there is shared network egress memory per ISA-AA port, with the ISA-AA is represented by two network ports on the host IOM:

- “from-sub”: for traffic sent from the subscriber to the network
- “to-sub”: for traffic sent from the network to the subscriber

```
configure isa application-assurance-group 1
  qos
    egress
      from-subscriber
        pool
          slope-policy "default"
          resv-cbs default
        exit
        queue-policy "network-facing-egress"
        port-scheduler-policy "network-facing"
      exit
      to-subscriber
        pool
          slope-policy "default"
          resv-cbs default
        exit
        queue-policy "network-facing-egress"
        port-scheduler-policy "network-facing"
      exit
    exit
  no shutdown
```

For IOM3-XP and FP2 and higher based line cards the amount of shared memory reserved for each egress network port is determined by the speed of the port (10 Gbps for MS-ISA and 40 Gbps for MS-ISA2) and the **egr-percentage-of-rate** ratio configuration.

MS-ISA uses by default 1000% and 500% of the rate respectively for to-sub and from-sub ports, while MS-ISA2 uses by default 100% for both to-sub and from-sub ports.

It is typically recommended that these values be adjusted when MS-ISA and a high-speed Ethernet MDA are mixed on the same IOM3, since in this context the amount of shared memory allocated to the Ethernet MDA should be increased by reducing the MS-ISA network ports memory allocation ratio. If two MS-ISAs are installed on the same IOM3, the system will by default allocate 50% of the network egress shared memory to each ISA. In addition, an operator may

adjust these values in case the actual network-to-subscriber versus subscriber-to-network ratio is significantly different in the production network, in order to achieve the expected maximum tolerated network delay.

The operator can modify the **egr-percentage-of-rate** per port using the command below:

```
A:BNG# configure port 1/2/fm-sub
A:BNG>config>port# info detail
-----
      modify-buffer-allocation-rate
      egr-percentage-of-rate 500
      exit
-----
A:BNG# configure port 1/2/to-sub
A:BNG>config>port# info detail
-----
      modify-buffer-allocation-rate
      egr-percentage-of-rate 1000
      exit
-----
```

Network egress scheduling/queuing priority is for all ISAs within a group defined at the AA ISA group level

An example below with ISA-AA and 2 x 10G Eth MDA:

```
7750# configure port <slot>/<isa-aa-mds>/fm-sub
      modify-buffer-allocation-rate
      egr-percentage-of-rate 65

7750# configure port <slot>/<isa-aa-mds>/to-sub
      modify-buffer-allocation-rate
      egr-percentage-of-rate 130
```

In this example, the configuration defines:

- from-sub — Approximately 190 msec worth of buffer at 2500 Mbps.
- to-sub— Approximately 190 msec worth of buffer at 5000 Mbps.
- The buffer can be further refined from the network QoS policy.

For MS-ISA2, each MS-ISM flexpath will default the buffer allocation rate to 100%, which is a suitable value assuming that both modules in a slot are MS-ISA2 (which is the MS-ISM configuration), or that the I/O module has a similar traffic rate as the MS-ISA2 (which is also the case in the 10x10GE and 1x100GE versions of the MS-ISA2 line cards).

Configuring ISA Resources and Stats Collection

The following are the key consumable resources in an AA ISA:

- Flows
- Bandwidth
- Subscribers
- Flow setup rate

The AA group should be configured with watermark thresholds where each ISA will generate SNMP events when resources reach this level.

- Per-ISA-card resource usage watermarks trigger SNMP traps to the management system (5620 SAM)
- The values defined below can be refined based on the network characteristics in term of flows and bandwidth per ISA after the initial deployment

```
7750# configure application-assurance
-----
      flow-table-low-wmark 90
      flow-table-high-wmark 95
      flow-setup-high-wmark 66500
      flow-setup-low-wmark 63000
      bit-rate-high-wmark 7600
      bit-rate-low-wmark 6800
```

In this example, the usage SNMP watermarks are configured for:

- Flow table: 95%/90% (maximum 4M flows on MS-ISA)
- Flow setup rate: configured to 95%/90% (of maximum 70k fps on MS-ISA)
- Bit rate/total diverted throughput

The **show>app-assure>group>status detail** command is used to display basic ISA health status:

- # aa-sub, active aa-sub, bitrate, flows in use, flow setup rate
- statistics for all ISAs combined or per ISA

```
A:BNG# show application-assurance group 1 status detail
=====
Application-Assurance Status
=====
Last time change affecting status : 05/30/2014 17:18:34
Number of Active ISAs             : 4
Flows                             : 214007945881
Flow Resources In Use             : 2955164
AA Subs Created                   : 70567
```

AA Traffic Load Test Environment

AA Subs Deleted	:	10544		
AA Subs Modified	:	0		
Seen IP Requests Sent	:	0		
Seen IP Requests Dropped	:	0		

		Current	Average	Peak

Active Flows	:	2911508	2769454	4582522
Flow Setup Rate (per second)	:	33923	29400	67865
Traffic Rate (Mbps)	:	7620	7238	22628
Packet Rate (per second)	:	1254138	1182571	3044376
AA-Subs Downloaded	:	69887	66129	70567
Active Subs	:	23131	19737	38114

		Packets	Octets	

Diverted traffic	:	7437950197613	5530634242355947	
Diverted discards	:	0	0	
Congestion	:	0	0	
Errors	:	0	N/A	
Entered ISA-AAs	:	7437950180191	5530634229794634	
Buffered in ISA-AAs	:	22	29849	
Discarded in ISA-AAs	:	97790	47801217	
Policy	:	0	0	
Congestion	:	0	0	
Errors	:	97790	47801217	
Modified in ISA-AAs				
Packet size increased	:	0	0	
Packet size decreased	:	0	0	
Errors (policy bypass)	:	28283549	21160338635	
Exited ISA-AAs	:	7437950082379	5530634181963568	
Returned discards	:	0	0	
Congestion	:	0	0	
Errors	:	0	N/A	
Returned traffic	:	7437950054070	5530634162337570	
=====				

This can also be run on a per-ISA basis:

```
show application-assurance group 1 status isa <slot/port> detail
```

Note that for MS-ISA2, there is a maximum AA packet rate of 7 M pps; under most known traffic mix scenarios, the ISA should be safely below this packet rate when at maximum bandwidth throughput. However, it is worth periodically checking this value, because if the maximum packet rate is exceeded, and overload cut-through will result. (For MS-ISA, the maximum packet rate supported is high enough to not be feasible with realistic application-based traffic mixes).

The ISA aa-performance record should always be enabled in a network for capacity planning purposes in order to properly plan when to add new ISA cards if required and to monitor the network health:

```

*A:BNG>config>isa# info
-----
application-assurance-group 1 aa-sub-scale residential create
  no description
  primary <slot/port>
  backup <slot/port>
  no fail-to-open
  isa-capacity-cost-high-threshold 304000
  isa-capacity-cost-low-threshold 272000
  partitions
  statistics
    performance
      accounting-policy 7
      collect-stats
    exit
  exit
  divert-fc be
  no shutdown
exit

```

The commands highlighted in bold above will export information on the total traffic load and resource utilization of the ISA card:

- Flows — active flows, setup rates, resource allocation
- Traffic rates — bandwidth, packets
- Subscribers — active, configured, statistics resource allocation in use

The AA statistics collection configuration refers to accounting policies that are also defined in the 7x50 SR/ESS system:

```

*A:BNG>config# log
file-id 7
  description "ISA Performance Stats"
  location cf2:
  rollover 15 retention 12
exit
accounting-policy 7
  description "ISA Performance Stats"
  collection-interval 15
  record aa-performance
  to file 7
  no shutdown
exit

```

From the AA performance record the following fields in [Table 5](#) can be used as to tracking ISA load in the reporting interval (typically a 15 to 60 minute period):

Table 5: Tracking ISA Load in the Reporting Interval

Record Name	Type	Description	Load planning use
dco	cumulative	octets discarded due to congestion in MDA	Should be 0; ISA internal congestion
dcp	cumulative	packets discarded due to congestion in MDA	Should be 0; ISA internal congestion
dpo	cumulative	octets discarded due to policy in MDA	Not related to load planning
dpp	cumulative	packets discarded due to policy in MDA	Not related to load planning
pbo	cumulative	octets policy bypass	Not used. Traffic was for an invalid subscriber and the group was "no fail-to-open"
pbp	cumulative	packets policy bypass	Not used. Traffic was for an invalid subscriber and the group was "no fail-to-open"
nfl	cumulative	number of flows	informative
caf	intervalized	current active flows	informative
aaf	intervalized	average active flows	informative
paf	intervalized	peak active flows	Check vs max
cfr	intervalized	current flow setup rate	informative
afr	intervalized	average flow setup rate	Check meets expected norms; increasing over time increases load
pfr	intervalized	peak flow setup rate	informative
ctr	intervalized	current traffic rate	informative
atr	intervalized	average traffic rate	Check meets expected norms; increasing over time increases load
ptr	intervalized	peak traffic rate	Check vs max
cpr	intervalized	current packet rate	informative

Table 5: Tracking ISA Load in the Reporting Interval (Continued)

Record Name	Type	Description	Load planning use
apr	intervalized	average packet rate	informative
ppr	intervalized	peak packet rate	informative
cds	intervalized	current diverted subscribers	informative
ads	intervalized	average diverted subscribers	informative
pds	intervalized	peak diverted subscribers	Check vs max and expected norms; increasing over time increases load
rfi	intervalized	flows in use	Check vs max and expected norms; increasing over time increases load
rcc	cumulative	ISA capacity cost	Check meets expected norms; increasing over time increases load

The intended deployment model is for this statistic record to be collected by 5620 SAM along with all other AA records and be stored in the 5670 RAM database for subsequent analytics purposes, such as trending charts or setting thresholds of key values. It is recommended that a CRON script be used to export the AA performance record to a storage server for post processing if the 5670 RAM is not deployed:

- If the 5670 RAM is not yet deployed in the network, it is possible to automatically collect the XML accounting files and provide high-level reporting through an XML-to-CSV conversion.
- The simplest approach is to configure a CRON script on the 7x50 SR/ESS to automatically retrieve the CF accounting file (alternatively, any other scripting mechanism with an interval < retention can be used)
- It is recommended that the rollover interval of the file-id policy be modified to 6H or above in order to collect fewer files while keeping the same collection interval.

```
*A:BNG# file type cf2:/script
file copy cf2:/act/*.gz ftp://login:password@IP-ADDRESS/acct/router1/

*A:BNG>config>cron# info
-----
script "test-ftp-act"
  location "cf2:/script"
  no shutdown
exit
action "cron1"
  results "ftp://login:password@IP-ADDRESS/results/router1-result.log"
  script "test-ftp-act"
  no shutdown
```

AA Traffic Load Test Environment

```
exit
schedule "schedule1"
    interval 36000
    action "cron1"
    no shutdown
exit
```

Note that the interval 36000 is in seconds (10 hours).

With this XML to CSV export mechanism, a spreadsheet can be used by the network engineer to periodically track the ISA resource utilization.

ISA Overload Cut-through

The system can be configured to react to overload based on the weighted-average (WA) queue depth of the shared network port buffer pool from-sub and to-sub. Overload cut-through is typically recommended for use of AA for value-added services where, in the event of overload, the preference is for the ISA to continue to pass packets without AA processing. However, firewall use cases will prefer to drop excess traffic in the event of overload, in which case overload cut-through may not be desired.

In addition to triggering an alarm, further packets sent to the ISA after the WA high-watermark threshold is reached are cut-through immediately by the ISA card without application identification or subscriber policy processing, if the **isa-overload-cut-through** command is enabled.

The WA queue depth is typically configured based on the maximum tolerated delay for the service diverted and the amount of shared buffer space allocated from the IOM (only for IOM3).

AA deployment recommended settings:

- high watermark — 33% of the maximum MBS for all diverted network queues
- low watermark — 5% of the maximum MBS for all diverted network queues

The recommended high and low watermarks assume that the sum of the network port egress queues MBS size is 100% of the shared buffer. If this network queue maximum size is further reduced in the network QoS policy, the watermark values must be adapted proportionally; for example, if the total MBS size cannot exceed 50% of the shared buffer, then the watermark values would be divided by 2 => High Wmark = 16%, Low Wmark = 2%. Adjusting the MBS and the **wa-shared-high-wmark** and **wa-shared-low-wmark** values proportionately ensures that the MBS point (after which discards occur) is above the WA shared high-watermark threshold; otherwise, the ISA will not ever overload if MBS discards are occurring first.

```
A:BNG# configure isa application-assurance-group 1
      isa-overload-cut-through
      qos
        egress
          from-subscriber
            wa-shared-high-wmark 16
            wa-shared-low-wmark 2
          exit
          to-subscriber
            wa-shared-high-wmark 16
            wa-shared-low-wmark 2
          exit
        exit
      exit
    exit
```

The **show>isa>group** commands can be used to verify that overload cut-through is enabled.

```
*A:BNG>show isa application-assurance-group 1
=====
ISA Application-assurance-groups
=====
ISA-AA Group Index      : 1
Description             : (Not Specified)
Subscriber Scale        : residential
WLAN GW Group Index     : N/A
Primary ISA-AA          : 1/2 up/active
Backup ISA-AA           : 2/1 down
Last Active change      : 07/02/2014 12:17:45
Admin State             : Up
Oper State              : Up
Diverted FCs            : be
Fail to mode            : fail-to-wire
Partitions              : enabled
QoS
  Egress from subscriber
    Pool                 : default
    Reserved Cbs         : default
    Slope Policy          : default
    Queue Policy         : default
    Scheduler Policy      :
  Egress to subscriber
    Pool                 : default
    Reserved Cbs         : default
    Slope Policy          : default
    Queue Policy         : default
    Scheduler Policy      :
Capacity Cost
  High Threshold         : 4294967295
  Low Threshold          : 0
Overload Cut Through     : enabled
Transit Prefix
  Max IPv4 entries       : 0
  Max IPv6 entries       : 0
  Max IPv6 remote entries : 0
HTTP Enrichment
  Max Packet Size        : 1500 octets
=====
```

To monitor the load status of an ISA, enter the following CLI command.

```
*A:BNG>show application-assurance group 1 status isa 5/1 cpu
=====
Application-Assurance ISA CPU Utilization
(Test time 993791 uSec)
=====
Management CPU Usage
-----
Name                CPU Time    CPU Usage
                   (uSec)
-----
System              14277        1.43%
Management          61101        6.15%
```



```

Statistics          69850          7.02%
Idle                848563         85.39%
=====
Datapath CPU Usage
-----
Name                CPU Time      CPU Usage
                   (uSec)
-----
System              14277         1.43%
Packet Processing   61101         6.15%
Application ID      69850         7.02%
Idle                848563         85.39%

```

Additionally, the system log files can be used to examine the AA overload history to determine when the overload state was entered and exited. It can be helpful to send AA events to a separate log using the following configuration:

```

log
  filter 45
    default-action drop
    entry 10
      action forward
      match
        application eq "application_assurance"
    exit
  exit
exit
log-id 45
  description "application-assurance log"
  filter 45
  from main
  to memory 500
exit

```

The log files can then be examined to see if overload has occurred, and how frequently. If overload occurs with any regularity, it is a situation that should be addressed. Below is an example of a log file showing AA overload:

```

A:BNG# show log log-id 45
=====
Event Log 45
=====
Description : application-assurance log
warning: 13 events dropped from log
Memory Log contents [size=500 next event=16 (not wrapped)]

15 2014/08/14 17:00:32.66 EST WARNING: APPLICATION_ASSURANCE #4433 Base
"ISA AA Group 1 MDA 5/1 exiting overload cut through processing."

14 2014/08/14 17:00:32.55 EST WARNING: APPLICATION_ASSURANCE #4431 Base
"ISA-AA group 1 MDA 5/1 wa-shared buffer use is less than or equal to 1% in the to-sub-
scriber direction or corresponding tmnxBsxisaAaGrpToSbWaSBufOvld notification has been
disabled."

13 2014/08/14 17:00:32.06 EST WARNING: APPLICATION_ASSURANCE #4432 Base

```

```
"ISA AA Group 1 MDA 5/1 entering overload cut through processing."
```

```
12 2014/08/14 17:00:32.05 EST WARNING: APPLICATION_ASSURANCE #4430 Base
```

```
"ISA-AA group 1 MDA 5/1 wa-shared buffer use is greater than or equal to 35% in the to-sub-  
scriber direction."
```

The primary indicator to look at in CLI statistics for ISA load indication is datapath CPU Usage. Regardless of the configuration and traffic profiles in use, datapath CPU usage gives a consistent indication of whether the ISA is under heavy load (the cause of overload is the inability of the ISA to perform more tasks). The idle datapath time is not proportionate to bandwidth throughput, but if idle datapath CPU usage is under 5%, this indicates an approaching maximum processing load.

At an average datapath use of 95-100% (less than 5% idle) the ISA is creating latency and backpressuring the host IOM egress. It is the best way to know how close to overload the ISA has been. Attempting to examine data throughput statistics such as bit rate, flow setup rate and packet rate to predict overload is not recommended, as these are quite variable under normal circumstances and are not directly correlated to overload. Once in overload, the data statistics (volume, setup rate, etc.) are useful for determining what threshold traps to put in place for the future, but the needed thresholds will always be specific to the live deployment traffic mix and policy configuration.

Below is an example of the status for an ISA that is fully loaded but not yet in overload:

```
*A:BNG>show application-assurance group 1 status isa 5/1 cpu
```

```
=====
Application-Assurance ISA CPU Utilization
=====
```

```
-----
Management CPU Usage (Test time 999636 uSec)
-----
```

Name	CPU Time (uSec)	CPU Usage
System	1540	0.15%
Management	14	~0.00%
Statistics	643955	64.42%
ICAP Client	603	0.06%
Idle	353524	35.37%

```
-----
Datapath CPU Usage (Test time 999735 uSec)
-----
```

Name	CPU Time (uSec)	CPU Usage
System	188374	18.84%
Packet Processing	534203	53.43%
Application ID	277158	27.72%
Idle	0	0.00%

In this example, 0% idle datapath CPU means the ISA is fully used. When the Datapath CPU Usage Idle average is in the 5-10% range consistently, the ISA should be considered “full”; to add new subscribers, more ISAs are required.

If the excessive traffic condition persists, backpressure from the ISA to the IOM will buffer packets in the egress buffers, and when the egress MBS is exceeded, the ISA host IOM will indicate Diverted discards due to congestion if cut-through is not enabled:

```
*A:BNG>show application-assurance group 1 status detail
=====
Application-Assurance Status
=====
Last time change affecting status : 08/12/2014 13:16:15
Number of Active ISAs             : 1
Flows                             : 235754165
Flow Resources In Use             : 12000000
AA Subs Created                   : 14224
AA Subs Deleted                   : 0
AA Subs Modified                  : 1
Seen IP Requests Sent             : 0
Seen IP Requests Dropped          : 0
-----
Current      Average      Peak
-----
Active Flows      : 8452434      3786948      10632607
Flow Setup Rate (per second) : 246578      65104      298677
Traffic Rate (Mbps) : 33702      13229      35813
Packet Rate (per second) : 6847697      2466118      6945936
AA-Subs Downloaded : 14224      13710      14224
Active Subs       : 14224      9934      14224
-----
Packets      Octets
-----
Diverted traffic      : 8924242848      5983284952320
Diverted discards      : 752486      729147667
  Congestion          : 752486      729147667
  Errors              : 0      N/A
Entered ISA-AAs       : 8923417360      5982508976617
Buffered in ISA-AAs   : 57      19277
Discarded in ISA-AAs  : 0      0
  Policy              : 0      0
  Congestion          : 0      0
  Errors              : 0      0
Modified in ISA-AAs   :
  Packet size increased : 0      0
  Packet size decreased : 0      0
Errors (policy bypass) : 0      0
Exited ISA-AAs        : 8923417303      5982508957340
Returned discards     : 0      0
  Congestion          : 0      0
  Errors              : 0      N/A
Returned traffic      : 8923285123      5982432640249
=====
```

ISA Default Subscriber Policy

Default Subscriber Policy — AQP with match criteria not using App-ID or 5-tuple. Match **only** includes traffic direction and/or ASO characteristic and/or subscriber-name.

It is recommended that each ISA be configured with some default subscriber policies that get applied to all subscribers at all times, independent of application flow ID, and even when an ISA is in overload cut-through. These policies protect the ISA resources and provide fairness of resource allocation between subscribers by limiting the ISA resources that can be consumed by a single subscriber. A starting point for the recommended policers is (in all cases, network-specific tuning is recommended):

- Per-subscriber flow rate policer: value more than expected maximum peak per-subscriber rate for active subscribers. The policer protects one subscriber from attacking the network with an excessive flow rate and affecting ISA flow rate resources used by other customers. A typical rate for residential networks could be 100 fps per subscriber.
- Per-subscriber flow count policer: value more than expected maximum per-subscriber flow count for active subscribers. The policer protects one subscriber from consuming excessive flow counts and affecting ISA flow resources used by other customers.
- Downstream bandwidth per subscriber: to a value more than the maximum rate supported by the service, or to less than the maximum per-subscriber capability of the ISA, whichever is lower. For fixed networks, several default policer rates are recommended using a per-sub ASO value for low, medium and large rate ranges set at a rate related to the subscriber access speed. For example, for an FTTH service the per-sub policers could be set at 3 value ranges: below 25Mbps, with another at 100Mbps sub policer for services between 25Mbps and 100Mbps, and another sub-policer for rates between 100Mbps and 1Gbps. The settings for a mobile 3G network rate may be 1Mbps and in an LTE network the rate may be 10Mbps.

For a CLI example of a default subscriber policy, see [Application Assurance — App-Profile, ASO and Control Policies on page 55](#).

Conclusion

Any deployment of Application Assurance should include careful capacity planning of the ISA resources, with an appropriate ISA overload strategy, whether for overload cut-through to keep excess traffic flowing, or with a discard policy engineered in the host IOM egress QoS policies.

ISA resource use should be monitored via appropriately configured resource thresholds, events, log files, XML records and show screens to ensure that sufficient ISA resources are available as required.

Application Assurance — HTTP In Browser Notification

In This Chapter

This chapter provides information about Application Assurance HTTP in browser notification.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 132](#)
- [Summary on page 133](#)
- [Configuration on page 134](#)
- [Conclusion on page 146](#)

Applicability

This chapter is applicable to all 7x50 systems supporting Application Assurance and was tested on SR OS release 13.0.R2.

There are no specific prerequisites for this example.

Summary

Using the Alcatel-Lucent 7x50s and Application Assurance, subscribers connected to an operator network can be sent fully customizable on-screen notification messages displayed in a non-disruptive and cost-effective manner through their web browser.

This chapter describes the different options for the operator to customize the notification messages returned to the subscriber using either different HTTP-Notification policies or using the flexible HTTP-URL-PARAM VSA mechanism.

This chapter also describes the additional configuration required with the introduction in SR OS 13.0.R1 of the Notification status monitoring capability allowing the system to notify the subscriber at the next candidate flow instead of waiting for the next notification interval in case the previous notification did not result in a success.

Configuration

The setup comprises of the following elements, see [Figure 16 on page 134](#):

- 7750 SR + ISA-AA.
- Apache Web Server (delivering notification Javascript and content).
- Subscriber (Desktop/Tablet/Smartphone).
- Authentication, Authorization and Accounting (AAA) for subscriber authentication and Policy Modification.
- Internet Access.

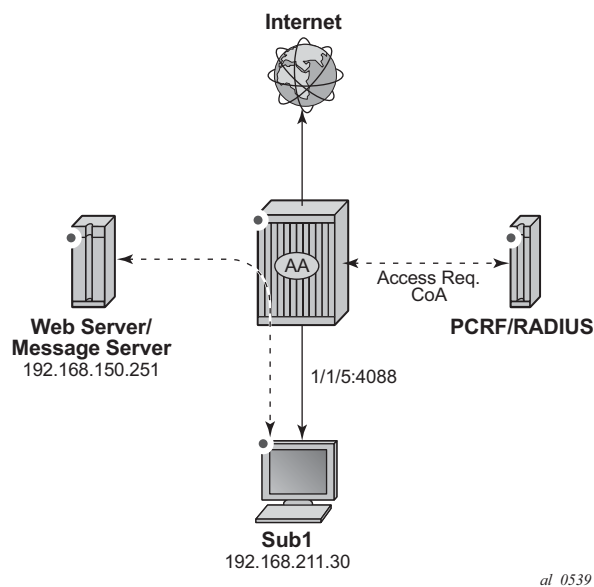


Figure 16: HTTP Notification –Setup

This example describes how to configure HTTP notification to display different notification messages. It demonstrates a simple example in the context of a residential deployment where a message is displayed when the subscriber reaches 80% or 100% of their maximum allowed volume (usage cap).

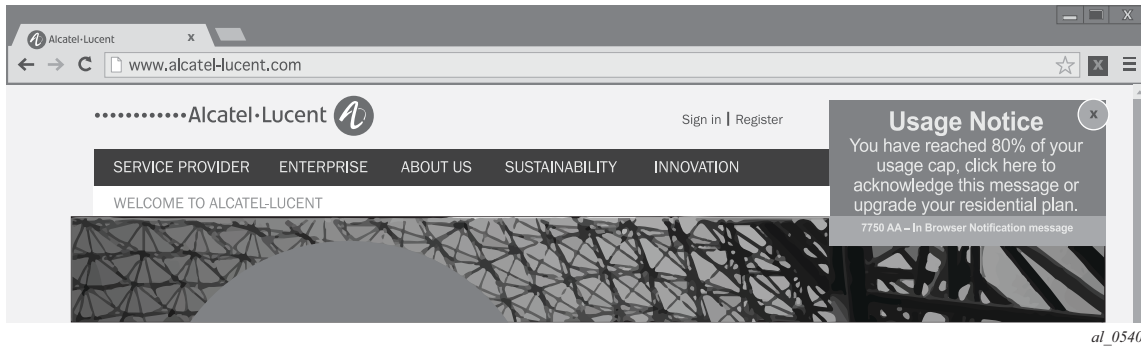


Figure 17: Notification Message Example – Quota 80%

In this context the operator has two options:

- Use a dedicated http-notification policy per message type.
- Use a common http-notification policy for any message type together with the newly introduced Http-Url-Param RADIUS VSA.

This example provides configuration examples for both options.

HTTP Notification Policy per Message Type

In this option a dedicated http-notification policy for each notification message is required.

HTTP Notification Policy

Two dedicated HTTP notification policies are used to return a different message to the subscribers when reaching 80% and 100% of their usage cap, the interval in between notifications is set to 15 minutes.

```
configure
  application-assurance group 1
    http-notification "notification-quota-100" create
      description "100% Usage Cap Notification"
      script-url "http://192.168.150.251/In-Browser-Notification/script/quota-100.js"
      template 1
      interval 15
      no shutdown
    exit

configure
  application-assurance group 1
    http-notification "notification-quota-80" create
      description "80% Usage Cap Notification"
      script-url "http://192.168.150.251/In-Browser-Notification/script/quota-80.js"
      template 1
      interval 15
      no shutdown
    exit
```

Notification Status Monitoring

The operator then needs to enable the http-match-all-req feature for any HTTP request sent to the messaging server in order to monitor HTTP notification success and failures. This is done by creating a new application and enabling http-match-all-req within the app-filter.

Success and failure notifications include a specific HTTP encoded URI automatically interpreted as a success or a failure by Application Assurance on a per subscriber basis. If a failure is detected, the system will automatically attempt to notify a new candidate flow instead of waiting for the next notification interval.

```
configure
  application-assurance group 1:1 policy
    application "IBN Messaging Server" create
    app-group "Web"
  exit
  app-filter
    entry 100 create
```

```

        expression 1 http-host eq "^192.168.150.251$"
        http-match-all-req
        application "IBN Messaging Server"
        no shutdown
    exit
exit

```

App-Profiles and App-Service-Options

Event based HTTP notifications is enabled by a policy modification triggered via RADIUS or Gx by modifying the subscriber app-profile or using the Application Service Option (ASO) override.

In this implementation of the HTTP notification policy per message type, the following ASO configuration is used:

```

configure
  application-assurance group 1:1 policy
    app-service-option
      characteristic "quota-message-notification" create
        value "100"
        value "80"
        value "disabled"
        default-value "disabled"
      exit
    exit
  app-profile "1-1/Default" create
    divert
  exit

```

The ASO characteristic **quota-message** values of 100 and 80 enable the App-Qos-Policy (AQP) **notification-quota-100** and **notification-quota-80** as defined below:

```

configure
  application-assurance group 1:1 policy app-qos-policy
    entry 1000 create
      match
        characteristic "quota-message-notification" eq "100"
        application neq "Advertising Statistics"
      exit
      action
        http-notification "notification-quota-100"
      exit
      no shutdown
    exit
  entry 1100 create
    match
      characteristic "quota-message-notification" eq "80"
      application neq "Advertising Statistics"
    exit
    action
      http-notification "notification-quota-80"
    exit

```

HTTP Notification Policy per Message Type

```
no shutdown
exit
```

RADIUS Policy

The following RADIUS CoA message is used to override the ASO characteristic of a residential subscriber so that a notification message can be returned to the subscriber when they reach 80% of their usage cap:

```
NAS-Port-Id = "1/1/5:4088"
Framed-IP-Address = 192.168.211.30
Alc-AA-App-Service-Options = "quota-message-notification=80"
Alc-App-Prof-Str = "1-1/Default"
```

Show Commands

Before the subscriber usage cap limit is reached, and before the RADIUS CoA message is received, the subscriber ASO parameter flag quota-message-notification is set to its default value **disabled** and therefore no App QoS Policy is triggered.

```
A:PE# show application-assurance group 1:1 aa-sub esm "sub1" summary
=====
Application-Assurance Subscriber Summary (realtime)
=====
AA-Subscriber           : sub1 (esm)
ISA assigned            : 1/2
App-Profile             : 1-1/Default
App-Profile divert      : Yes
Capacity cost           : 1
Aarp Instance Id        : N/A
HTTP URL Parameters     : (Not Specified)
Last HTTP Notified Time : N/A

-----
Traffic                  Octets                Packets                Flows
-----
... ..

Application Service Options (ASO)
-----
Characteristic           Value                Derived from
-----
quota-message-notification disabled                default
=====
```

After the RADIUS CoA message is sent, the subscriber ASO characteristic **quota-message-notification** value is set to **80**, the subscriber-related App QoS Policy entry 1100 now matches for this subscriber:

```
A:PE# show application-assurance group 1:1 aa-sub esm "sub1" summary
=====
Application-Assurance Subscriber Summary (realtime)
=====
AA-Subscriber           : sub1 (esm)
ISA assigned            : 1/2
App-Profile             : 1-1/Default
App-Profile divert      : Yes
Capacity cost           : 1
Aarp Instance Id        : N/A
HTTP URL Parameters     : (Not Specified)
Last HTTP Notified Time : N/A

-----
Traffic                  Octets                Packets                Flows
-----
... ..

Application Service Options (ASO)
-----
Characteristic           Value                Derived from
-----
```

HTTP Notification Policy per Message Type

```
quota-message-notification      80                               dyn-override
=====
```

The same command can be used to identify when the last successful subscriber notification occurred, see the Last HTTP Notified Time field:

```
A:PE# show application-assurance group 1:1 aa-sub esm "sub1" summary
=====
Application-Assurance Subscriber Summary (realtime)
=====
AA-Subscriber      : sub1 (esm)
ISA assigned       : 1/2
App-Profile        : 1-1/Default
App-Profile divert : Yes
Capacity cost      : 1
Aarp Instance Id   : N/A
HTTP URL Parameters : (Not Specified)
Last HTTP Notified Time : 2014/06/24 15:35:49
-----
```

The operator can also identify how many notifications have been sent per http-notification policy per partition:

```
A:PE# show application-assurance group 1 http-notification "notification-quota-80"
=====
Application Assurance Group 1 HTTP Notification "notification-quota-80"
=====
Description : 80% Usage Cap Notification
Template    : 1 - Javascript-url with subId and optional Http-Url-Param
Script URL  : http://192.168.150.251/In-Browser-Notification/script/quota-80.js
Admin Status : Up
AQP Ref      : Yes
Interval     : 15 minutes
-----
Group 1:1 Statistics
-----
Notified      : 2                      Succeeded : 2
Criteria Not Matched : 5                Failed    : 0
=====
```

The counter Criteria Not Matched is the number of HTTP flows which did not meet the AA ISA flow selection criteria for In Browser Notification. HTTP flow selection is constrained so that only HTTP web pages flows originating from a web browser are targeted, HTTP requests for content such as video or images are not candidate for notification.

HTTP Notification Customization using RADIUS VSA

Instead of using a dedicated HTTP notification policy for every single message type, the operator can return a RADIUS Http-Url-Param VSA at subscriber creation time or via CoA to customize the notification URL using a single policy. This VSA string is automatically appended to the end of the HTTP notification script-url by the 7x50 which can then be used by the web server to decide which notification message to return to the subscriber.

SR OS release supports 1 active HTTP Notification policy per subscriber, 8 different HTTP notification policies per AA ISA group and 1500 different values for the Http-Url-Param VSA. Therefore, using the Http-Url-Param VSA for the customization of the notification is the recommended model to scale the number of notification messages.

For example:

- RADIUS VSA (Alc-AA-Sub-Http-Url-Param): &message=quota80"
- 7750 HTTP Notification configured script-url: http://1.1.1.1/notification.js
- Subscriber HTTP request to the messaging server:

```
http://1.1.1.1/notification.js?SubId=sub1&var=&message=quota80
```

HTTP Notification Policy

A single HTTP notification policy is used to return different notification messages. The interval between notifications is set to 15 minutes.

```
configure
  application-assurance group 1
    http-notification "in-browser-notification" create
      description "Default HTTP Notification Policy"
      script-url "http://192.168.150.251/In-Browser-Notification/script/
                notification-select.php"

      template 1
      interval 15
      no shutdown
    exit
```

Note: This example does not describe the content of the **notification-select.php** file used to parse the URL parameters.

Notification Status Monitoring

The operator then needs to enable the `http-match-all-req` feature for any HTTP request sent to the messaging server in order to monitor HTTP notification success and failures. This is done by creating a new application and enabling `http-match-all-req` within the app-filter.

Success and failure notifications include a specific HTTP encoded URI automatically interpreted as a success or a failure by Application Assurance on a per subscriber basis. If a failure is detected, the system will automatically attempt to notify a new candidate flow, instead of waiting for the next notification interval.

```
configure
  application-assurance group 1:1 policy
    application "IBN Messaging Server" create
    app-group "Web"
  exit
  app-filter
    entry 100 create
      expression 1 http-host eq "^192.168.150.251$"
      http-match-all-req
      application "IBN Messaging Server"
      no shutdown
    exit
  exit
```

App-Profile and App-Service-Options

Similar to the previous example, HTTP notifications are enabled per subscriber using RADIUS or Gx by modifying the subscriber app-profile or using ASO override.

The following ASO configuration is used:

```
configure
  application-assurance group 1:1 policy
    app-service-option
      characteristic "in-browser-notification"
      value "enabled"
      value "disabled"
      default-value "disabled"
  exit
```

The ASO characteristic `in-browser-notification` value **enabled** is used to enable the app-qos-policy matching the `http-notification` policy in-browser-notification as shown below:

```
configure
  application-assurance group 1:1 policy app-qos-policy
    entry 1300 create
      match
        characteristic "in-browser-notification" eq "enabled"
```

```
        application neq "Advertising Statistics"  
exit  
action  
        http-notification "in-browser-notification"  
exit  
no shutdown
```

RADIUS Policy

The following RADIUS CoA message is used to modify the ASO characteristic of a residential subscriber and assign a specific Http-Url-Param VSA. The **in-browser-notification** ASO characteristic with value **enabled** is dynamically assigned to the subscriber along with the **Http-Url-Param &message=quota80**:

```
NAS-Port-Id = "1/1/5:4088"
Framed-IP-Address = 192.168.211.30
Alc-AA-App-Service-Options = "in-browser-notification=enabled"
Alc-AA-Sub-Http-Url-Param = "&message=quota80"
Alc-App-Prof-Str = "1-1/Default"
```

The subscriber HTTP request to the messaging server has the following format and includes the Http-Url-Param value as an argument of the URL:

```
http://192.168.150.251/In-Browser-Notification/script/notification-
select.php?SubId=sub1&var=&message=quota80
```

The web server can now use the parameter value to make a decision to return a suitable notification message related to the subscriber usage cap.

Show Commands

Both the **in-browser-notification** ASO characteristic with value **enabled** and the HTTP-Url-Param VSA can be shown as follows:

```
A:PE# show application-assurance group 1:1 aa-sub esm "sub1" summary
=====
Application-Assurance Subscriber Summary (realtime)
=====
AA-Subscriber          : sub1 (esm)
ISA assigned           : 1/2
App-Profile            : 1-1/Default
App-Profile divert     : Yes
Capacity cost          : 1
Aarp Instance Id       : N/A
HTTP URL Parameters    : &message=quota80
Last HTTP Notified Time : N/A

-----
Traffic                Octets                Packets                Flows
-----
... ..

Application Service Options (ASO)
-----
Characteristic          Value                Derived from
-----
in-browser-notification  enabled              dyn-override
quota-message-notification disabled              default
=====
```

The operator can also display the HTTP URL parameters VSA currently in use, per AA ISA group:

```
A:PE## tools dump application-assurance group 1 http-url-param-list
-----
Application-Assurance Subscriber HTTP URL parameters for Group 1:
-----
=====
Http Url Parameter                               Sub Usage
-----
"&message=quota80"                               1
=====
Total entries displayed 1
```

Conclusion

This chapter, intended for Application Assurance (AA) network architects and engineers, provides two implementation options for configuring and deploying HTTP In Browser Notification. It also explains how to take advantage of the Http-Url-Param RADIUS VSA to flexibly define various messaging campaigns using a common AA notification policy.

Application Assurance — Local URL List Filtering

In This Chapter

This section provides information about the Application Assurance local URL list filtering.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 148](#)
- [Overview on page 149](#)
- [Configuration on page 151](#)
- [Conclusion on page 158](#)

Applicability

This chapter is applicable to all 7x50 systems supporting Application Assurance and was tested on SR OS release 13.0.R2.

There are no specific pre-requisites for this feature.

Overview

The local URL-list filtering capability provided by Application Assurance prevents subscribers from accessing URLs that match a list of restricted URLs stored locally in the 7x50 system compact flash (CF).

This capability assists service providers to comply with regulatory requirements for network-wide URL filtering policies, such as:

- Court-ordered URL takedown
- Child protection
- Government-mandated URL takedown list

The 7x50 uses the Application Assurance capabilities to extract the URL from a subscriber HTTP/HTTPS request and compare it to the list of URLs contained in the local file. If a match occurs, the subscriber request is redirected to a preconfigured web server landing page, typically describing why the access to this resource was denied.

The system supports both unencrypted and OpenSSL Triple Data Encryption Standard (3DES) encrypted file formats to protect the content of the list.

URL-List Update

The system supports a flexible mechanism to upgrade the URL list automatically, using either Cron or the 5620 SAM, to comply with the regulatory requirements for list upgrade frequency.

HTTP/HTTPS Filtering

Each HTTP request within a TCP flow is analyzed and filtered. For HTTPS traffic, the system extracts the domain name information contained in the Transport Layer Security (TLS) Server Name Indication (SNI).

Setup Details

The setup consists of the following elements, as shown in [Figure 18](#):

- 7x50 + ISA-AA
- Web Server (redirect landing page)
- FTP Server (source for the URL-list file)
- Subscriber (desktop/laptop/tablet/smart phone)
- Internet access
- Optional: AAA for subscriber authentication and policy modification

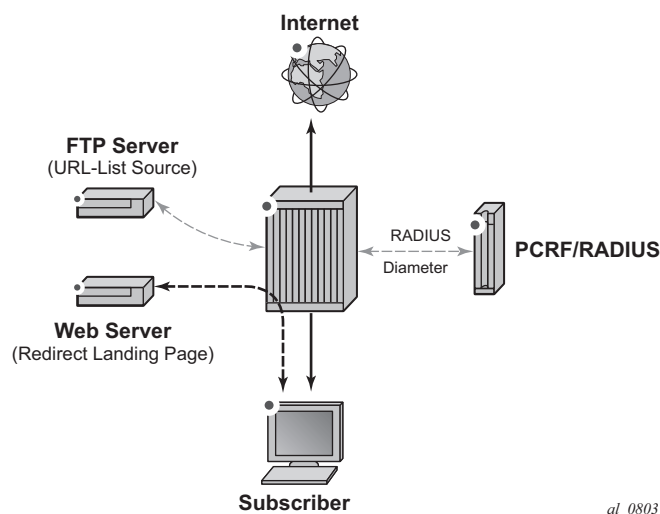


Figure 18: Local URL-List Filtering Setup

This chapter is written in the context of a residential or WiFi deployment. However, local URL-list filtering is also applicable to business VPN services.

Configuration

To configure the system for local URL-list filtering, the operator needs to:

- Create a URL-list policy referencing a valid URL-list file located on the system compact flash
- Create a URL-filter policy for local filtering by referencing the URL-list policy previously created
- Create an App-QoS-Policy (AQP) to apply this url-filter policy

URL-List Policy and URL-Filter Policy

In the following example, two dedicated URL-list and URL-filter policies show URL filtering based on a plain text file and an encrypted file:

```
configure
  application-assurance group 1
    url-list "blacklist1-encrypted" create
      description "Demo URL Filtering List - Encrypted File"
      decrypt-key "ON3HU2GFPHmpOHwWbSGw/zdM4iuxzySpqS7pw/u3qIcuG4mABmrhc." hash2
      file "cf3:\aa-url-list\url-list1.encrypted"
      no shutdown
    exit
    url-filter "local-filter-list1-encrypted" create
      default-action allow
      http-redirect "redirect-blacklist"
      local-filtering
        url-list "blacklist1-encrypted"
      exit
      no shutdown
    exit

configure
  application-assurance group 1
    url-list "blacklist1-plaintext" create
      description "Demo URL Filtering List - Plaintext File"
      file "cf3:\aa-url-list\url-list1-plaintext.txt"
      no shutdown
    exit
    url-filter "local-filter-list1-txt" create
      default-action allow
      http-redirect "redirect-blacklist"
      local-filtering
        url-list "blacklist1-plaintext"
      exit
      no shutdown
    exit
```

In the preceding example, both URL-filter policies are defined using default-action allow. The default action is used in case the file could not be loaded by the system, either at boot time or the first time the URL-list file was configured in the system. Possible causes are, for example:

- File corrupted, compact flash corrupted
- Incorrect file encryption format or password
- Wrong URL format in the file
- Too many URLs in the file

Operators should always use default-action allow when configuring the URL-filter policy associated with a URL-list file because the file or the CF may be corrupted, in which case the system logs an error and a trap is raised.

Note that if a valid URL-list file was previously in use, and an invalid file is uploaded and the URL-list policy upgraded using this file, then the system will continue using the previous list.

HTTP-Redirect Policy

Both URL-filter policies defined in the preceding example refer to the following http-redirect policy; subscribers accessing a URL from the URL-list file are redirected to the following landing page:

```
configure
  application-assurance group 1
    http-redirect "redirect-blacklist" create
      description "Redirect for Local List URL Filtering"
      template 5
      tcp-client-reset
      redirect-url "http://172.16.70.100/Redirect/redirect-blacklist.html?Request
                  edURL=$URL"
      no shutdown
    exit
```

URL-List File

File Format

The system supports the following format for the URLs contained in the URL-list file:

- URLs without the HTTP keyword. For example:
`www.domain.com/path`
 - URLs with the HTTP keyword. For example:
`http://www.domain.com/path`
 - Comment lines starting with the number sign character (#). For example:
`# This is a comment line`
 - Printable ASCII characters. URLs using non-printable ASCII characters are percent-encoded by the web browser automatically and, therefore, need to be percent-encoded in the URL-list file.
-

File Encryption

OpenSSL triple DES -nosalt is the supported encryption format. Files can be encrypted offline on a server using the following command:

```
openssl des3 -nosalt -in <input.txt> -out <output.enc>
```

List Upgrade

The URL-list file can be upgraded using the **admin** command:

```
A:BNG# admin application-assurance group 1 url-list "blacklist1-plaintext" upgrade
```

The upgrade result is logged in the system log-id 99:

```
A:BNG# show log log-id 99
=====
Event Log 99
=====
Description : Default System Log
Memory Log contents [size=500 next event=72 (not wrapped)]
71 2015/07/07 13:09:25.01 EST MINOR: APPLICATION_ASSURANCE #4446 Base url-list success
"URL list "blacklist1-plaintext" in ISA-AA group 1 has been updated. There are 3 entries in
the URL list."
```

App-Profiles and App-Service-Options

Application Assurance policies can be selectively applied to specific AA subscribers by modifying the app-profile assigned to the subscriber or using Application Service Option (ASO) override. See SR OS User Guide for more information about modifying the app-profile or ASO assigned to AA subscribers (RADIUS, Gx, Override).

In this example, the following ASO configuration is used:

```
configure
  application-assurance group 1:1 policy
    app-service-options
      characteristic "local-list-filtering" create
        value "no"
        value "yes-encrypted"
        value "yes-plaintext"
        default-value "no"
      exit
    exit
  app-profile "1-1/Default" create
    divert
  exit
```

The ASO characteristic local-list-filtering value of yes-encrypted and yes-plaintext enable the AQP entry 210 and 220 in the example:

```
configure
  application-assurance group 1:1 policy app-qos-policy
    entry 210 create
      match
        characteristic "local-list-filtering" eq "yes-encrypted"
      exit
      action
        url-filter "local-filter-list1-encrypted"
      exit
      no shutdown
    exit
  entry 220 create
    match
      characteristic "local-list-filtering" eq "yes-plaintext"
    exit
    action
      url-filter "local-filter-list1-txt"
    exit
    no shutdown
  exit
```

If the url-filter policy needs to be applied to 100% of the subscribers in the network, it is also possible to remove the ASO match criteria.

Show Commands

url-list

The status of the URL list can be shown in the CLI. The url-list show command provides basic admin and operational status, as well as the number of URLs in the list. The command also provides reasons for any possible issue related to loading the list, as well as the last successfully deployed file and the last upgrade attempt. Therefore, the operator can determine whether the latest version of the file is currently in use or if an error occurred when trying to upgrade the list.

Show command output:

```

Label                Description
Admin                Status [Up | Down] - Administrative status of the url-list
Oper Status          [Up | Down] - Operational status of the url-list
Oper Flags           [admin-down | file-does-not-exist | invalid-file-format | too
                    -many-urls| switch-over-error]
File Deployed to ISA [Yes | No] - This flag describes if the file located in the
                    compact flash is the one deployed in the ISA, in the event the
                    file is overwritten and before the admin upgrade command is used
                    this flag will display "No".

Upgrade Statistics
Last Success         Last time the list was successfully upgraded
File Name            File name for the last successful upgrade
URL Entries          Number of URLs loaded at the last success
Blank/Comment Lines  Number of blank or commented out lines
Last Attempt         Last time the operator tried to upgrade the list
Result               Success | Failure. Result of the last upgrade
File Name            File name for the last upgrade attempt

A:BNG# show application-assurance group 1 url-list "blacklist1-plaintext"
=====
Application Assurance Group 1 url-list "blacklist1-plaintext"
=====
Description          : Demo URL Filtering List - Plaintext File
Admin Status         : Up
Oper Status          : Up
Oper Flags           : <none>
File deployed to ISAs : Yes
-----
Upgrade Statistics
-----
Last Success         : 07/07/2015 11:56:01
  Deployed
    File Name        : cf3:\aa-url-list\url-list1-plaintext.txt
    URL Entries       : 3
    Blank/Comment Lines : 2
Last Attempt         : 07/07/2015 11:56:01
  Result             : Success
    File Name        : cf3:\aa-url-list\url-list1-plaintext.txt
=====

```

url-filter

The **url-filter** show command provides its operational and admin status, as well as actions taken, such as the number of redirects. With URL list filtering, using a **default-action** set to **allow**, the only counters increasing are **allow**, **redirect**, and **default**.

```
A:BNG# show application-assurance group 1 url-filter "local-filter-list1-txt"
=====
Application Assurance Group 1 URL Filter "local-filter-list1-txt"
=====
Description          : (Not Specified)
Admin Status         : Up
Oper Status          : Up
Oper Flags           : <none>

Default Action       : allow
HTTP Request Filtering : all
HTTP Redirect        : redirect-blacklist
AQP Referenced       : Yes

Local Filter URL List : blacklist1-plaintext
  Admin Status       : Up
  Oper Status        : Up
  Number of URLs     : 3
  Last Update Time   : 07/07/2015 11:56:01

-----
Total HTTP Filtering Stats
-----
HTTP Requests      : 26
HTTP Req Errors    : 0

HTTP Response Actions
  Allow            : 23
  Block            : 0
  Redirect         : 3
  Default          : 0
=====
```

http-redirect

The **http-redirect** show command provides more information about how the traffic was blocked; for example, it differentiates TCP client reset used for HTTPS from regular redirect used for HTTP traffic.

```
A:BNG# show application-assurance group 1 http-redirect "redirect-blacklist"
=====
Application Assurance Group 1 HTTP Redirect redirect-blacklist
=====
Description          : Redirect for Local List URL Filtering
Template             : 5
                    : Redirect supporting macro substitution using HTTP 302
Redirect URL         : http://172.16.70.100/Redirect/redirect-blacklist.
```



```

                                html?RequestedURL=$URL
Admin Status      : Up
AQP Ref          : No
-----
Summary Statistics
-----
Grp:Part          Redirects      Client Resets      Redirects
                  Sent           Sent           Not Sent
-----
1:1                2                1                0
-----
Total              2                1                0
-----
=====

```

Conclusion

This chapter, intended for Application Assurance (AA) network architects and engineers, provides two examples for deploying URL-list filtering as well as upgrading the list and displaying its statistics.

Application Assurance — Security Gateway Stateful Firewall

In This Chapter

This section provides information about Application Assurance Security gateway stateful firewall.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 160](#)
- [Overview on page 161](#)
- [Configuration on page 165](#)
- [Conclusion on page 190](#)

Applicability

This chapter is applicable to all 7750 SR/SR-c and 7450 ESS chassis supporting Application Assurance (AA).

The configuration was tested on release 13.0.R2.

Overview

The SR OS 13.0.R1 AA stateful firewall feature runs on AA-ISA and extends application-level analysis to provide an in-line stateful service, integrated within the Security Gateway (SeGW). The feature provides protection for mobile infrastructure; Mobility Management Entities (MMEs), Serving Gateways (SGWs), and Network Management Systems (NMSs), against attacks from compromised base stations, evolved NodeBs (eNBs), or Femto Access Points (FAPs). AA stateful packet filtering, combined with AA L7 classification and control, provides advanced, next-generation firewall functionality. Using stateful packet filtering, the AA FW not only inspects packets at layers 3 to 7, but also monitors the connection state.

AA FW deployed within a SeGW in ultra-broadband access networks (3G/4G/Femto) provides back-end core network security protection, as per Figure 1. AA FW offers protection for the following 3rd Generation Partnership Project (3GPP) defined interfaces:

1. S1-MME
2. S1-U
3. Operations, Administration and Maintenance (OAM)

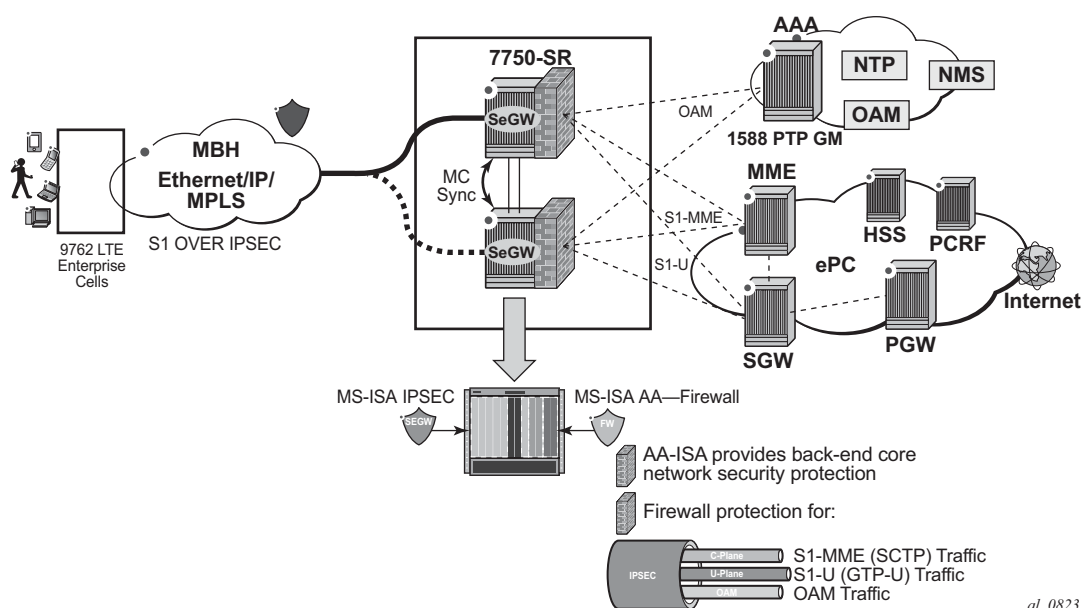


Figure 19: LTE SeGW Firewall Deployment

Similarly, the SeGW architecture for Femto deployment is based on two 7750 SR systems terminating the mobile backhaul side (front-end and connecting to, for example, a 9365 Base Station Router Gateway (BSR-GW) and other network elements of the packet core (back-end), as per [Figure 20](#):

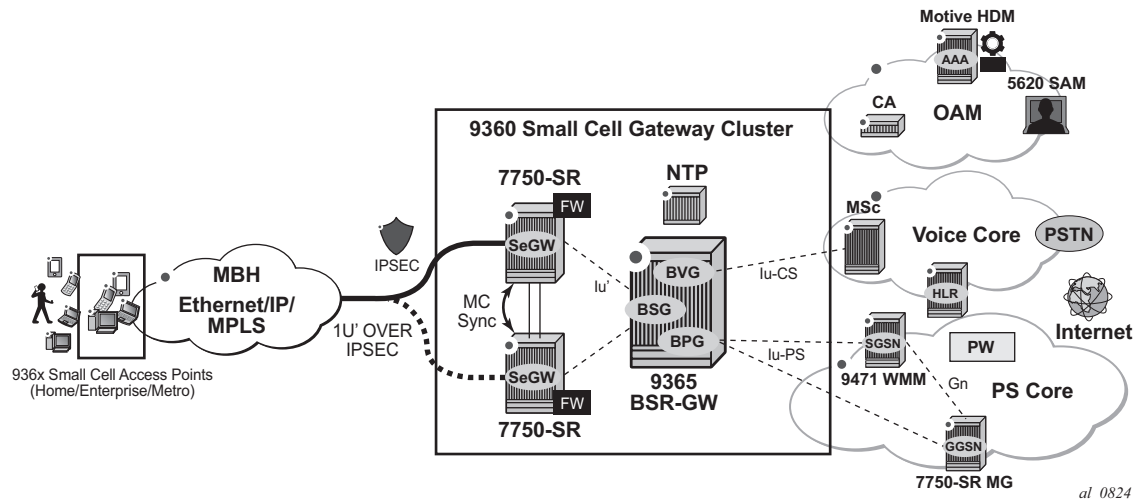


Figure 20: SeGW in Small Cells Architecture

The two SeGWs run in stateful redundant mode: upon partial or total failure of the active SeGW for a set of IPsec tunnels, the other SeGW takes over without terminating the IPsec tunnels, providing hitless failover.

In addition to MS-ISA hardware dedicated to the IPsec function, each SeGW supports one or more additional MS-ISAs running AA to provide firewall capabilities. The firewall rules protect the BSR as well as the BSR-GW and packet core network elements (NEs) from malicious attacks or unauthorized traffic.

The objective of this chapter is to describe the required configuration within AA-ISA in order to enable AA FW and protection for S1-MME, S1-U, and OAM traffic. Basic knowledge of AA-ISA diversion configuration is assumed.

S1-MME Traffic Protection

The purpose of AA FW in this deployment is to protect the MME infrastructure against an attack from a compromised eNB or FAP. Network flooding attacks, malformed packets, and port scans are examples of denial of service (DoS) attacks that can be carried out using a compromised eNB or FAP.

AA FW provides inspection of the Stream Control Transmission Protocol (SCTP) used to communicate to the MME. Such inspection includes checking for SCTP payload protocol IDs (PPIDs), source /destination ports, SCTP chunk validation, and malformed SCTP packets (such as checksum validation). In addition, the operator can configure DoS flooding rules, such as policers to limit the bandwidth and/or flow counts of SCTP traffic.

S1-U Traffic Protection

The purpose of AA FW in this deployment is to protect the SGW infrastructure against an attack from a compromised eNB or FAP. AA FW supports protection against:

- malformed GPRS Tunneling Protocol User plane (GTP-U) packet attacks
Checking packet sanity, which include GTP-U mandatory, optional, and extension header checks, as well as checks for invalid reserved information elements (IE) and missing IEs.
- unsupported GTP messages
Filtering messages based on message type and/or message length.
- flooding attacks
Shaping GTP traffic bandwidth, which limits the GTP-U bandwidth that a FAP can send to the core (SGW).
Limiting GTP tunnels, which limits the number of concurrent GTP tunnels and/or setup rate of these tunnels from a FAP to the core network.
To prevent the shared resources of bandwidth and the SGW processor from being consumed by an attacker, Alcatel-Lucent recommends the GTP flow rate limiting configuration.
- IP fragmentation-based attacks
Applying various drop rules for IP fragmentation of GTP messages.

OAM Traffic Protection

The purpose of AA FW protection in this deployment is to protect against any abuse of OAM network resources, such as NMS.

Network flooding attacks, malformed packets, and port scans are examples of such attacks that can be carried out using a compromised eNB or FAP.

See the configuration described in the [Application Assurance — Stateful Firewall on page 191](#) chapter for this context of OAM protection in SeGW.

Configuration

AA-ISA Application QoS Policies (AQPs) are enhanced in Release 13.0.R1 with several new AQP actions that provide SCTP and GTP filtering functionality. As with all AQPs, these actions have partition-level scope, which allows different FW policies to be implemented by using AA partition concepts within the same AA-ISA.

The configuration topology in [Figure 21](#) shows the SeGW FW functionality of S1-U and S1-MME interfaces. Geo-redundancy, which is a very common deployment option, is not described in this here because it is described in the [Multi-Chassis IPSec Redundancy on page 355](#) chapter.

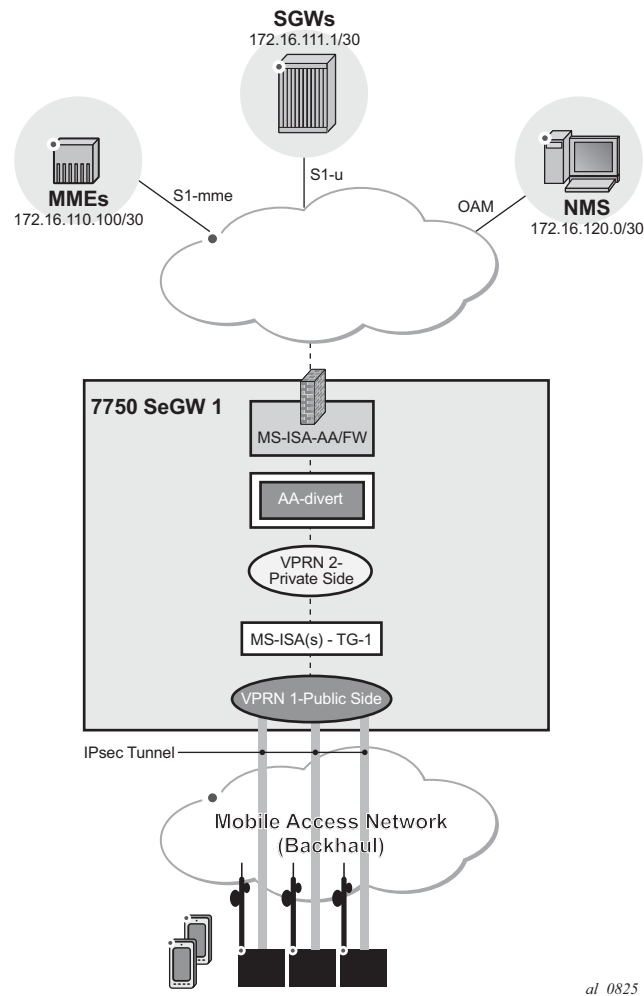


Figure 21: Configuration Topology

Pre-Setup Requirements

Configure tunnel ISAs with optional multi-chassis redundancy. See the Multi-Chassis IPSec Redundancy chapter for more information.

Step 1. Divert AA traffic and apply basic firewall rules.

Step 1.1. Divert private VPRN traffic into AA-ISA with AA multi-chassis redundancy.

This step is required for any of the configurations in Steps 2, 3 or 4.

There is no dependency between Steps 2, 3 or 4.

In this example, one private VPRN is used for all traffic to/from eNBs. In some small cell deployments, eNB traffic is split into three different VPRNs: one for control (S1-MME), one for management (OAM), and one for bearer traffic (S1-U GTP-U). In that case, each of these VPRNs needs to be diverted into AA-ISA in order to provide firewall protection.

First, define an application profile and transit IP policy, such as:

```
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group$ info
-----
      policy
      begin
      app-profile "default" create
        description " App profile that applies to the whole SAP"
      divert
      exit
      commit
    exit
  transit-ip-policy 1 create
    description "Per eNB-IP Sub policy"
    detect-seen-ip
    transit-auto-create
      no shutdown
    exit
```

Then, apply these policies to the SAP on the private side of the IPSec tunnel ISA:

```
*A:7750-1>config>service>vprn>if# info
-----
      sap tunnel-1.private:1 create
        transit-policy ip 1
        app-profile "default"
      exit
```

This configuration achieves:

- Traffic to/from the IPSec tunnel ISA private SAP is diverted to AA-ISA for the purpose of FW protection,
- Within AA-ISA, the diverted SAP is treated as a parent SAP. That is, instead of treating the whole SAP as a single subscriber, subscribers are auto-created within this SAP based on the IP address of the eNBs.

Step 1.2. Protect against malformed packets.

In firewall deployments, it is recommended that overload-drop, error-drop, and fragment-drop (all) are enabled within the default sub-policy, as shown in the example below:

- **overload-drop** ensures that AA-ISA, when overloaded, drops the excess traffic instead of allowing it through, without applying firewall rules.
- **error-drop** ensures that AA-ISA drops malformed IP packets.
- **fragment-drop (all)** because many network DoS attacks use IP fragmentation to initiate attacks, the operator has the option to drop all fragmented traffic, drop out-of-order fragments only, or allow fragments through. Allowing fragments through is not recommended for firewall deployments.

```
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>policy# app-qos-policy
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>policy>aqp# info
-----
        entry 500 create
            description "apply SeGW session filter rules"
            match
                traffic-direction subscriber-to-network
            exit
            action
                overload-drop
                error-drop
                fragment-drop all
            exit
            no shutdown
        exit
    exit
-----
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>policy#
```

Step 1.3. Limit total traffic from any eNB.

It is recommended that a total limit be placed on how much bandwidth and how many flows an eNB or FAP can generate toward the network, regardless of the type of traffic.

The limit values are a function of the number of end devices that are served by the eNB or FAP, plus some additional margin:

```
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group# info
-----
      policer "limit_eNBs_total_Flows" type flow-count-limit granularity subscriber
      create
      flow-count 1000
    exit
      policer "limit_eNBs_total_bw" type single-bucket-bandwidth granularity sub
      scribe create
      rate 500
      mbs 500
    exit
-----
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group#
```

Note: If the traffic from eNB or FAP is separated into different private SAPs, based on traffic type (S1-AP, S1-U, or OAM), as with some deployment topologies, then the policing limit value is dependent on the SAP traffic type as well as the number of end devices. See policing limit settings in Steps 2 and 3.

Apply the configured policers as actions from within the default sub-policy AQP entry:

```
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>policy# app-qos-policy entry 500
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>policy>aqp>entry>action# flow-count-limit "limit_eNBs_
total_Flows"
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>policy>aqp>entry>action# bandwidth-policer "lim-
it_eNBs_total_bw"
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>policy>aqp>entry# info
-----
      description "apply SeGW session filter rules"
      match
      traffic-direction subscriber-to-network
    exit
    action
      bandwidth-policer "limit_eNBs_total_bw"
      flow-count-limit "limit_eNBs_total_Flows"
      session-filter "SeGW_FW"
      overload-drop
      error-drop
      fragment-drop all
    exit
    no shutdown
-----
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>policy>aqp>entry#
```

Note: All of the above listed actions use the traffic direction of subscriber-to-network. That is, they are not applied to traffic in the other direction (downstream) because the purpose of the firewall is to protect the network resources from upstream traffic coming from compromised eNBs or FAPs.

Step 2. Configure AA-ISA to provide firewall protection to protect MMEs (S1-AP traffic).

Step 2.1. Create IP AA lists.

First, create an AA IP prefix list that contains eNB IP addresses or range of addresses:

```
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure# group 1:1
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group# ip-prefix-list "ALL_eNBs" create
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>pfx>$ description "eNodeB subnet"
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>pfx>$ prefix 172.16.100.0/24
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>pfx>$ exit
```

Next, optionally create an AA IP list that contains MME IP addresses (in case there are more than one):

```
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group# ip-prefix-list "MMEs" create
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>pfx>$ description "MME(s) subnet"
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>pfx>$ prefix 172.16.110.100/30
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>pfx>$ exit
```

After the above lists are created, they can be referenced and used in AA FW rules using session filters and AQPs.

Step 2.2. Allow only SCTP traffic towards MMEs — No port scanning.

A basic setup creates session-filter rules that will only allow SCTP traffic between eNBs and MMEs.

```
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group# session-filter "SeGW_FW" create
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>sess-fltr$ default-action deny
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>sess-fltr$ entry 1 create
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>sess-fltr>entry$ description "allow SCTP to MM Es"
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>sess-fltr>entry$ match
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>sess-fltr>entry>match$ ip-protocol-num "sctp"
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>sess-fltr>entry>match$ src-ip ip-prefix-list "ALL_eNBs"
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>sess-fltr>entry>match$ dst-ip ip-prefix-list "MMEs"
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>sess-fltr>entry>match$ dst-port eq 6005
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>sess-fltr>entry>match$ exit
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>sess-fltr>entry$ action permit
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>sess-fltr>entry$ exit
```

Note: In the above configuration, SCTP traffic on MMEs is assumed to be running on port 6005.

Pre-Setup Requirements

Next, the newly created session filter needs to be referenced from a default sub-policy AQP action, as follows:

```
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>policy>aqp# info
-----
entry 500 create
  description "apply SeGW session filter rules"
  match
    traffic-direction subscriber-to-network
  exit
  action
    session-filter "SeGW_FW"
    overload-drop
    error-drop
    fragment-drop all
  exit
  no shutdown
exit
exit
-----
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>policy#
```

Using traffic direction **subscriber-to-network** in the above AQP entry achieves two objectives:

1. Protects MMEs by allowing only SCTP traffic to be initiated from eNB subnets toward MMEs. Port scanning toward MME is blocked.
2. Allows MMEs to have full access to eNBs.

Note: It is important that an AQP, containing a session-filter action, does not contain any matching condition other than ASOs, traffic direction, or subscriber ID¹.

Step 2.3. DoS protection: Limit the number of SCTP flows from eNBs.

In this step, the operator configures a flow count policer to limit the number of SCTP flows that an eNB can generate toward the MMEs. This protects the MMEs against a compromised eNB trying to set up many SCTP flows.

```
*A:7750-1# configure application-assurance group 1
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group# policer "sctp_flow_count" type flow-count-limit granularity subscriber create
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>policer$ flow-count 2
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>policer$ exit
```

In the above configuration, an eNB or FAP can have up to two flows at a time. In practice, there should only be one SCTP session, one flow in each direction, per eNB-MME pair. The above example uses two flows to leave a margin in case a second, backup, MME needs to communicate with the eNB, while still providing enough protection.

1. Subscriber ID is not applicable in this deployment use-case.

Add the defined policer as a **flow-count-limit** as an AQP action, as follows:

```
A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>policy>aqp# entry 100
A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>policy>aqp>entry$ info
-----
description "limit SCTP traffic"
match
    traffic-direction subscriber-to-network
    ip-protocol-num eq sctp
exit
action
    flow-count-limit "sctp_flow_count"
exit
no shutdown
-----
A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>policy>aqp>entry$
```

Step 2.3.1. Configure an AA FW events log.

It is sometimes advisable to configure a log that captures events related to various AA FW actions. Due to the limited size of the log and the large amount of traffic AA can handle, consider the usefulness of the information in the log when:

- debugging a configuration
- testing a configuration in a staged environment
- capturing infrequent actions

To configure a log:

```
*A:7750-1# configure application-assurance group 1:1
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group# event-log "FW_drops_log" create
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>evt-log$ buffer-type circular
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>evt-log$ max-entries 100000
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>evt-log$ no shutdown
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>evt-log$ exit
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group# info
-----
---snipped---
event-log "FW_drops_log" create
buffer-type circular
max-entries 100000
no shutdown
exit
```

To reference the configured log from within the deny action of the session filter:

```
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>sess-fltr# info
-----
default-action deny event-log "FW_drops_log"
entry 1 create
description "allow SCTP to MMEs"
match
```

Pre-Setup Requirements

```
        ip-protocol-num sctp
        src-ip ip-prefix-list "ALL_eNBs"
        dst-ip ip-prefix-list "MMEs"
    exit
    action permit
exit
-----
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>sess-fltr#
```

To view the log:

```
*A:7750-1# tools dump application-assurance group 1:1 event-log "FW_drops_log" isa 1/2
=====
Application-Assurance event-log "FW_drops_log"
Current Time:         "06/10/2015 22:45:30" (UTC)
  group[:partition]:   1:1
    isa:               1/2
  admin state:         no shutdown
  buffer-type:         circular
  max-entries:         100000
=====
Event-source
Action      SubType    SubName                      Direction Src-ip
Dst-ip                                           Ip-protocol Src-port Dst-port Timestamp

Total Records:      0
=====
*A:7750-1#
```

To clear all the entries within the specified log:

```
*A:7750-1# clear application-assurance group 1:1 event-log "FW_drops_log"
```

Step 2.4. DoS protection: Limit the SCTP bandwidth from eNB

Similar to the previous step, the operator configures a flow bandwidth policer to limit the amount of SCTP traffic that an eNB can generate toward the MMEs. This protects the MMEs against a compromised eNB trying to flood the MMEs.

```
*A:7750-1# configure application-assurance group 1
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group# info
-----
---snipped---
        policer "sctp_bw_limit" type single-bucket-bandwidth granularity subscriber
create
        rate 30
        mbs 10
    exit
---snipped---
    exit
-----
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group#
```


In the above example, a single leaky-bucket policer is configured with a rate set to 30 kb/s and maximum burst size of 10 kbytes. This provides enough bandwidth to ensure normal operations, while still providing a ceiling limit of how much traffic any eNB can send toward the MMEs.

The value for this policer is a function of the amount of user equipment (UEs) served by the eNB/FAP. For example, in a small cell deployment, with 32 active users per 9962 FAP, the S1-MME bandwidth is estimated to be:

Uplink — toward MME : 2.7 kb/s

Downlink — from MME toward FAP : 28 kb/s

Add the defined policer as a subscriber policy, as follows:

```
A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>policy>aqp# entry 100
A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>policy>aqp>entry$ info
-----
description "limit SCTP traffic"
match
    traffic-direction subscriber-to-network
    ip-protocol-num eq sctp
exit
action
    bandwidth-policer "sctp_bw_limit"
    flow-count-limit "sctp_flow_count"
exit
no shutdown
-----
A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>policy>aqp>entry$
```

Step 2.4.1 Configure additional limits for all traffic to MMEs.

To further protect the MMEs from a distributed attack, whereby a number of eNBs or FAPs are compromised, an AA FW can be configured to limit total traffic, not just from a single eNB as outlined in previous sections, but from all eNBs toward the MMEs.

It is recommended to configure the following three protection limits:

1. total bandwidth of SCTP toward MMEs
2. total number of flows toward MMEs
3. flow setup rate toward the MMEs

Pre-Setup Requirements

The configuration is shown below:

```
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group# info
-----
      policer "limit_total_sctp_bw" type single-bucket-bandwidth granularity system
create
      rate 1200
      mbs 100
      exit
      policer "limit_total_sctp_flows" type flow-count-limit granularity system cre-
ate
      flow-count 400
      exit
      policer "limit_total_sctp_flows_rate" type flow-rate-limit granularity system
create
      rate 100
      mbs 100
      exit
-----
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group#
```

Notes:

- The policers are of type **system** and not **subscriber** in order to be applied to all eNBs or FAPs, as is the case when auto-transit subscribers are created (see Step 1).
- The actual limits of these policers are a function of the total number of eNBs served by the SeGW. In the above configuration, it is assumed that there are 400 eNBs. Therefore, the total limit is 400 flows of SCTP traffic.
- A flow setup rate limit of 100 is set to protect MMEs from a storm of new SCTP flows.

The policers are then referenced from within the appropriate AQP entry that matches the MMEs traffic and SCTP:

```
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>policy>aqp# info
-----
---snipped---
      entry 110 create
      description " limit system traffic towards MMEs"
      match
      traffic-direction subscriber-to-network
      src-ip eq ip-prefix-list "ALL_eNBs"
      dst-ip eq ip-prefix-list "MMEs"
      exit
      action
      bandwidth-policer "limit_total_sctp_bw"
      flow-rate-limit "limit_total_sctp_flows_rate"
      flow-count-limit "limit_total_sctp_flows"
      exit
      no shutdown
      exit
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>policy>aqp#
```

Note: It is possible, but redundant, to add the **ip-protocol eq sctp** command as a match condition, because the configured session filter already ensures that only SCTP traffic can flow between eNBs and MMEs.

Step 2.5. Allow only specified SCTP PPIDs toward the MMEs.

In this step, the operator blocks all except the specified SCTP messages that contain configured PPIDs, using an AA SCTP filter configuration:

```
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group# sctp-filter
- no sctp-filter <sctp-filter-name>
- sctp-filter <sctp-filter-name> [create]

<sctp-filter-name> : [32 chars max]
<create>          : keyword

[no] description   - Configure a description of the SCTP filter
[no] event-log     - Configure an event log for packets dropped by the SCTP
                    filter
                    ppid          + Configure actions for specific or default PPIDs
                                   (Payload Protocol Identifiers)
[no] ppid-range    - Configure the range of allowable PPIDs for the SCTP
                    filter
```

The filter specifies either a range of PPIDs or individual PPIDs:

```
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>sctp-fltr>ppid$ entry 1
- entry <entry-id> value <ppid-value> action {permit|deny}
- no entry <entry-id>

<entry-id>        : [1..255]
<ppid-value>      : [0..4294967295]D | [256 chars max]
<permit|deny>     : permit|deny
```

The PPIDs can be specified either by their values or by names. Names are specified in RFC4960. See [Table 6](#)

Table 6: SCTP PPIDs

Value	SCTP PPID	Value	SCTP PPID
0	Reserved by SCTP	31	Service Area Broadcast Protocol (SABP)
1	IUA	32	Fractal Generator Protocol (FGP)
2	M2UA	33	Ping Pong Protocol (PPP)
3	M3UA	34	CalcApp Protocol (CALCAPP)
4	SUA	35	Scripting Service Protocol (SSP)

Table 6: SCTP PPIDs (Continued)

Value	SCTP PPID	Value	SCTP PPID
5	M2PA	36	NetPerfMeter Protocol Control Channel (NPMP-CONTROL)
6	V5UA	37	NetPerfMeter Protocol Data Channel (NPMP-DATA)
7	H.248	38	Echo (ECHO)
8	BICC/Q.2150.3	39	Discard (DISCARD)
9	TALI	40	Daytime (DAYTIME)
10	DUA	41	Character Generator (CHARGEN)
11	ASAP	42	3GPP RNA
12	ENRP	43	3GPP M2AP
13	H.323	44	3GPP M3AP
14	Q.IPC/Q.2150.3	45	SSH over SCTP
15	SIMCO <draft-kiesel-midcom-simco-sctp-00.txt>	46	Diameter in a SCTP DATA chunk
16	DDP Segment Chunk	47	Diameter in a DTLS/SCTP DATA chunk
17	DDP Stream Session Control	48	R14P. BER Encoded ASN.1 over SCTP
18	S1 Application Protocol (S1AP)	49	Unassigned
19	RUA	50	WebRTC DCEP
20	HNBAP	51	WebRTC String
21	ForCES-HP	52	WebRTC Binary Partial (deprecated)
22	ForCES-MP	53	WebRTC Binary
23	ForCES-LP	54	WebRTC String Partial (deprecated)
24	SBc-AP	55	3GPP PUA
25	NBAP	56	WebRTC String Empty
26	Unassigned	57	WebRTC Binary Empty

Table 6: SCTP PPIDs (Continued)

Value	SCTP PPID	Value	SCTP PPID
27	X2AP	58-4294967295	Unassigned
28	IRCP - Inter Router Capability Protocol		
29	LCS-AP		
30	MPICH2		

It is recommended to limit the SCTP traffic to only those packets with S1 AP PPID. The SCTP filter can be configured to deny all by default and only allow PPID S1 AP (by value = 18 or by name: **s1-application-protocol**) as follows:

```
*A:7750-1# configure application-assurance group 1:1
    sctp-filter "SCTP-PPID-Filter" create
        description "Allow only S1AP PPID"
        event-log "FW_drops_log"
        ppid
        default-action deny
        entry 1 value "s1-application-protocol" action permit
    exit
```

This configured SCTP filter is then referenced as an action from within an AQP entry:

```
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>policy>aqp# info
-----
    entry 100 create
        description "limit SCTP traffic"
        match
            traffic-direction subscriber-to-network
            ip-protocol-num eq sctp
        exit
        action
            bandwidth-policer "sctp_bw_limit"
            flow-count-limit "sctp_flow_count"
            sctp-filter "SCTP-PPID-Filter"
        exit
        no shutdown
    exit
-----
A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>policy>aqp#
```

To view the packets allowed or denied by the configured SCTP filter:

Pre-Setup Requirements

```
*A:7750-1# show application-assurance group 1:1 sctp-filter "SCTP-PPID-Filter"
=====
Application Assurance Group 1:1 Sctp Filter "SCTP-PPID-Filter"
=====
Description          : Allow only SlAP PPID
Maximum PPID         : 4294967295
Minimum PPID         : 0
Default action       : deny
Configured PPIDs     : 1

Packets arrived      : 0
Packets denied
  Malformed packet   : 0
  PPID out of range  : 0
  PPID denied        : 0
Packets permitted    : 0
=====
*A:7750-1#
```

Note: The SCTP malformed packet counter shown above increments when an AA SCTP filter encounters an SCTP packet that is malformed, such as:

- IP packet is too small to contain a common SCTP header
- SCTP chunk LEN < 4 bytes: each SCTP chunk header is 4 bytes, so the SCTP chunk cannot be smaller than this
- remaining space in the IP packet is too small to contain a chunk header (for example, your packet has 2 chunks and the 2nd chunk length goes beyond the IP length advertised)
- IP packet is too small to contain the chunk

Currently, the SCTP filter statistics cannot be reset on the fly without shutting down the SCTP filter.

Another way to view the effect of the configured SCTP filter is to check the firewall log, if configured:

```
*A:7750-1# tools dump application-assurance group 1:1 event-log "FW_drops_log" isa 1/2
```

Step 3. Configure AA-ISA to protect SGW (GTP-U traffic).

The steps to configure the AA-ISA in an SeGW to protect against attacks toward the SGW are similar to the steps for SCTP traffic. While GTP filtering is very different from SCTP filtering, configuration to limit the flow counts, bandwidth, and session filter are similar.

Step 3.1. Create an AA IP list for SGWs.

In addition to the lists configured in step 2.1, the operator can optionally configure a list that contains the SGW IP addresses that are served by the SeGW, in case there is more than one.

```
*A:7750-1# configure application-assurance group 1:1 ip-prefix-list "SGWs" create
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>pfx>$ description "Serving Gateways IPs"
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>pfx>$ prefix 172.16.111.1/32
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>pfx>$ prefix 172.16.111.2/32
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>pfx>$ exit
```

Step 3.2. Allow only GTP-U traffic toward SGWs — No port scanning.

Similar to Step 2.2, create an GTP filter to allow only GTP traffic to/from eNBs to SGWs:

```
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>sess-fltr# info
-----
default-action deny event-log "FW_drops_log"
---snipped---
entry 2 create
description "allow GTP-u to SGWs"
match
ip-protocol-num udp
src-ip ip-prefix-list "ALL_eNBs"
dst-ip ip-prefix-list "SGWs"
dst-port eq 2152
exit
action permit
exit
-----
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>sess-fltr#
```

The following session filter needs to be added to the default sub-policy AQP, similar to Step 2.2:

```
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>policy>aqp# info
-----
entry 500 create
description "apply SeGW session filter rules"
match
traffic-direction subscriber-to-network
exit
action
session-filter "SeGW_FW"
overload-drop
error-drop
fragment-drop all
exit
no shutdown
exit
exit
-----
```

Pre-Setup Requirements

For AA to recognize GTP traffic and perform sanity packet checking, configure a GTP filter at the group:partition level:

```
*A:7750-1# configure application-assurance group 1:1 gtp no shutdown
```

Step 3.3. DoS protection — Limit the number of GTP-U flows from eNBs.

AA can be configured to limit the number of GTP flows from an eNB. A GTP-U flow is defined by GTP-U packet destination IP + tunnel ID (TEID).

AA allows the operator to configure two limits: one that applies to the each eNB and one that applies for all GTP-U traffic from all eNBs:

```
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group# info
-----
      policer "GTPu-Flow-count-limit" type flow-count-limit granularity subscriber
create
      flow-count 800
      gtp-traffic
      exit
```

The actual value of the flow count limit is a function of the number of UEs or devices served by an eNB or FAP. In the above case, it is assumed that there are 100 devices with a maximum of 8 GTP-U flows per device. For FAP, the number is typically around 32 devices per FAP. Note: By 3GPP standards, the maximum number of GTP-U tunnels per device is 16.

Assuming that there are 1000 eNBs or FAPs that are served by the SeGW, then to limit the total number of GTP-U flows, the operator can apply the following system policer:

```
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group# info
-----
      policer "limit_total_GTPU_Flow_count" type flow-count-limit granularity system
create
      flow-count 800000
      gtp-traffic
      exit
```

Configure AQP's to execute the policers:

```
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>policy>aqp# info
-----
---snipped---
      entry 120 create
      description "limit GTP-U traffic"
      match
      traffic-direction subscriber-to-network
      exit
      action
      flow-count-limit "GTPu-Flow-count-limit"
      exit
      no shutdown
```



```

exit
entry 130 create
    description "limit TOTAL GTPU towards SGWs"
    match
        traffic-direction subscriber-to-network
    exit
    action
        flow-count-limit "limit_total_GTPU_Flow_count"
    exit
    no shutdown
exit

```

For GTP-U flow count policing, it is important that **aqp-initial-lockup** is enabled:

```
*A:7750-1# configure application-assurance group 1:1 aqp-initial-lockup
```

The above configured limits are applied only to upstream traffic, to protect the network. No limit is placed on the downstream traffic toward the eNBs.

Note: For small cell deployments, the number of GTP-U tunnels per FAP is a function of:

1. deployment mode:
 - a. residential = 32^2 UEs,
 - b. enterprise = 8^3 UEs.
2. number of guaranteed bit rate (GBR) tunnels (max 8) and non-GBR tunnels (max 8) per UE.

Therefore, the GTP-U tunnel limit per FAP should be set to $32 \times 8 = 256$ for residential deployments or $8 \times 8 = 64$ for enterprise deployments.

The operator can view the effect of the configured policers on GTP traffic by running the following show routine:

```

*A:7750-1>show>app-assure>group# gtp
=====
Application Assurance Group 1:1 GTP
=====
Admin status : Up
Event log    : (Not Specified)
=====
GTP Statistics                                sub-to-net          net-to-sub
-----
Incoming packets                             0                   0
Packets denied
  UDP packet length                           0                   0
  GTP message length                         0                   0
  GTP version                                0                   0

```

2. 9962 MSEC-MS-MCI Enterprise
3. 9961 MSHC

Pre-Setup Requirements

```
-----
Packets permitted                                0                                0
-----
GTP Policing Statistics                          sub-to-net                      net-to-sub
-----
Packets arrived                                0                                0
Packets denied
  gtp-traffic flow-count policer                0                                0
  Other                                          0                                0
-----
Packets permitted                                0                                0
-----
GTP Filter Statistics                          sub-to-net                      net-to-sub
-----
Packets arrived                                0                                0
Packets denied (gtp-filter)                    0                                0
Packets permitted
  gtp-filter                                    0                                0
  no gtp-filter                                0                                0
-----
Total GTP packets permitted                    0                                0
=====
*A:7750-1>show>app-assure>group#
```

In the last section shown above, GTP filter statistics are related to GTP filters that are discussed and configured later in Step 3.5 of this chapter.

Step 3.4. DoS protection: Limit the GTP-U bandwidth from eNBs.

This step is similar to Step 3.3, but instead of configuring a flow count policer, the operator configures bandwidth policers:

```
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group# info
-----
create      policer "GTPU_bw_limit" type single-bucket-bandwidth granularity subscriber
            rate 5000
            mbs 100
            exit

create      policer "limit_total_GTPU_bw" type single-bucket-bandwidth granularity system
            rate 2000000
            mbs 2000
            exit

*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>policy>aqp# info
-----
---snipped---
            entry 120 create
              description "limit GTP-U traffic"
              match
                traffic-direction subscriber-to-network
              exit
```

```

        action
            bandwidth-policer "GTPU_bw_limit"
            flow-count-limit "GTPu-Flow-count-limit"
        exit
        no shutdown
    exit
entry 130 create
    description "limit TOTAL GTPU towards SGWs"
    match
        traffic-direction subscriber-to-network
    exit
    action
        bandwidth-policer "limit_total_GTPU_bw"
        flow-count-limit "limit_total_GTPU_Flow_count"
    exit
    no shutdown
exit

```

The above configured limits are applied only to upstream traffic, to protect the network. No limit is placed on downstream traffic toward the eNB.

As a debugging tool, the operator can use the AA **flow-record-search** command to check the status of GTP flows through the ISA:

```

*A:7750-1# tools dump application-assurance group 1:1 flow-record-search isa 1/2 flow-
status active protocol "gtp"
=====
Application-Assurance flow record search, Version 1.0
Search Start Time:      "06/16/2015 20:38:09" (UTC)
Search Criteria:
  group[:partition]:    1:1
  isa:                  1/2
  protocol name:        "gtp"
  application name:     none specified
  app-group name:       none specified
  flow-status:          active
  start-flowId:         none specified
  classified:           none specified
  server-ip:            none specified
  server-port:          none specified
  client-ip:            none specified
  bytes-tx:             none specified
  flow-duration:        none specified
  max-count:            none specified
  search-type:          default
=====
FlowId  Init  Src-ip                               Dst-ip
Ip-prot  Src-prt Dst-prt Protocol                Application      Pkts-tx    Bytes-
tx      Pkts-disc Bytes-disc Time-ofp(UTC)          Time-olp(UTC)
SEARCH COMPLETED.
Search End Time:      "06/16/2015 20:38:09" (UTC)
Total Records:        0
=====
*A:7750-1#

```

Pre-Setup Requirements

GTP flows that are to be denied by the previous AA configurations should not appear in the search results.

Step 3.5. Further GTP filtering and validation.

AA allows the operator to configure a GTP filter to enforce which GTP message types are allowed/denied, as well as the maximum allowed GTP message length:

```
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>gtp>gtp-fltr#
[no] description      - Configure a description of the GTP filter
[no] event-log        - Configure an event log for packets dropped by the GTP filter
[no] max-payload-le*  - Configure the maximum payload length of the GTP filter
      message-type    + Configure actions for specific or default messages

*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>gtp>gtp-fltr#
```

Note: An AA GTP filter allows the operator to configure a maximum payload size for the GTP traffic. However, in this configuration example, no maximum payload size is configured.

The list of GTP message types are defined by 3GPP standard 3GPP TS 29.281 as per [Table 7](#).

Table 7: GTP Messages

Message Type Value (Decimal)	Message	Message Type Value (Decimal)	Message
1	“echo-request”	55	“”forward-relocation-complete
2	“echo-response”	56	“relocation-cancel-request”
3	“versi”n-not-supported:	57	“relocation-cancel-response”
4	“node-alive-request”	58	“forward-sms-context”
5	“ node-alive-response”	59	“forward-relocation-complete-acknowledge”
6	“redirection-request”	60	“forward-sms-context-acknowledge”
7	“redirection-response”	70	“ran-information-relay”
16	“create-pdp-context-request”	96	“mbms-notification-request”
17	“create-pdp-context-response”	97	“mbms-notification-response”
18	“update-pdp-context-request”	98	“mbms-notification-reject-request”
19	“update-pdp-context-response”	99	“mbms-notification-reject-response”
20	“delete-pdp-context-request”	100	“create-mbms-context-request”

Table 7: GTP Messages (Continued)

Message Type Value (Decimal)	Message	Message Type Value (Decimal)	Message
21	“delete-pdp-context-response”	101	“create-mbms-context-response”
22	“initiate-pdp-context-activation-request”	102	“update-mbms-context-request”
23	“initiate-pdp-context-activation-response”	103	“update-mbms-context-response”
26	“error-indication”	104	“delete-mbms-context-request”
27	“pdu-notification-request”	105	“delete-mbms-context-response”
28	“pdu-notification-response”	112	“mbms-registration-request”
29	“pdu-notification-reject-request”	113	“mbms-registration-response”
30	“pdu-notification-reject-response”	114	“mbms-de-registration-request”
31	“supported-extension-headers-notification”	115	“mbms-de-registration-response”
32	“send-routing-information-for-gprs-request”	116	“mbms-session-start-request”
33	“send-routing-information-for-gprs-response”	117	“mbms-session-start-response”
34	“Failure-report-request”	118	“mbms-session-stop-request”
35	“failure-report-request”	119	“mbms-session-stop-response”
36	“note-ms-gprs-present-request”	120	“mbms-session-update-request”
37	“note-ms-gprs-present-response”	121	“mbms-session-update-response”
48	“identification-request”	128	“ms-info-change-notification-request”
49	“identification-response”	129	“ms-info-change-notification-response”
50	“sgsn-context-response”	240	“data-record-transfer-request”
51	“sgsn-context-request”	241	“data-record-transfer-response”
52	“sgsn-context-acknowledge”	254	“end-marker”
53	“forward-relocation-request”	255	“g-pdu”
54	“forward-relocation-response”		

Pre-Setup Requirements

Of the 67 GTP message types shown above, only 6 are allowed, by the standards, for GTP-U:

echo-request	echo-response	error-indication
g-pdu	end-marker	supported-extension-headers-notification

If these message types are permitted by the configured GTP filter, AA performs extensive GTP-U header checking on these six types.

Note: If no GTP filter is configured, no extensive GTP-U header checks are performed. For example, if the operator wants to allow all GTP-U packets and perform all GTP header sanity checks, then a GTP filter that permits all message types needs to be configured, with the default action of permit and with no values, such as:

```
gtp-filter "allow-all" create
  message-type
  default-action permit
```

Because AA FW in an SeGW is protecting an S1-U interface running GTP-U, the GTP filter only needs to allow the six GTP messages that are permitted for GTP-U:

```
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>gtp# info
-----
      gtp-filter "filter-gtp-msgs" create
      description "allow only certain msg types"
      message-type
      default-action deny
      entry 1 value "echo-request" action permit
      entry 2 value "echo-response" action permit
      entry 3 value "error-indication" action permit
      entry 4 value "supported-extension-headers-notification" action
permit
      entry 5 value "end-marker" action permit
      entry 6 value "g-pdu" action permit
      exit
    exit
  no shutdown
-----
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>gtp#
```

This GTP filter is then referenced from within an AQP entry action, as follows, in order for it to take effect:

```
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>policy>aqp# info
-----
      entry 120 create
      description "limit GTP-U traffic"
      match
        traffic-direction subscriber-to-network
        dst-ip eq ip-prefix-list "SGWs"
      exit
    action
```

```

        bandwidth-policer "GTPU_bw_limit"
        flow-count-limit "GTPu-Flow-count-limit"
        gtp-filter "filter-gtp-msgs"
    exit
    no shutdown
exit

```

The operator can view the effect of the configured GTP filter on S1-U traffic using the following show routine:

```

*A:7750-1>show>app-assure>group# gtp gtp-filter "filter-gtp-msgs"
=====
Application Assurance Group 1:1 GTP Filter "filter-gtp-msgs"
=====
Description          : allow only certain msg types
Maximum payload length : (Not Specified)
Default action       : deny
Configured messages  : 6

Packets arrived      : 0
Packets denied
  Payload length     : 0
  Message type       : 0
  Mandatory header   : 0
  Extension header   : 0
  Information element : 0
Packets permitted    : 0
=====
*A:7750-1>show>app-assure>group#

```

The above output is in addition to the information provided by the overall GTP show command:

```

*A:7750-1>show>app-assure>group# gtp

```

Step 4. Configure AA-ISA to protect NMS (OAM Traffic).

Step 4.1. Create an IP AA list that contains the NMS server IPs.

```

*A:7750-1# configure application-assurance group 1:1
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group# info
-----
        ip-prefix-list "NMSs" create
            description "Network Management-OAM subnet"
            prefix 172.16.120.0/30
        exit

```

Note: In the case of small cell deployments, different NMS servers need to be configured.

Step 4.2. Allow eNBs to initiate FTP- and ICMP-only traffic toward NMS, block port scanning.

```

*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>sess-fltr# info
-----
        default-action deny event-log "FW_drops_log"

```

Pre-Setup Requirements

```
entry 3 create
  description "allow FTP to NMS"
  match
    ip-protocol-num tcp
    src-ip ip-prefix-list "ALL_eNBs"
    dst-ip ip-prefix-list "NMSs"
    dst-port eq 22
  exit
  action permit
exit
entry 4 create
  description "allow ICMP to NMS"
  match
    ip-protocol-num icmp
    src-ip ip-prefix-list "ALL_eNBs"
    dst-ip ip-prefix-list "NMSs"
  exit
  action permit
exit
-----
*A:7750-1>config>app-assure>group>sess-fltr#
```

The operator can view the effect of the session filter on traffic, in terms of how many times it is applied, using the following show routine:

```
*A:7750-1>show>app-assure>group# session-filter
=====
AA Session Filter Table
=====
Name                               Default Action   Referenced       Entries
-----
SeGW_FW                           deny             aqp              4
-----
No. of session filters: 1
=====
*A:7750-1>show>app-assure>group#
*A:7750-1>show>app-assure>group# session-filter "SeGW_FW"
=====
AA Session Filter Instance "SeGW_FW"
=====
Description      : (Not Specified)
Default Action   : deny
  Event Log      : FW_drops_log
AQP Entries      :
                  500
-----
Filter Match Criteria
-----
Entry            : 1
Description       : allow SCTP to MMEs
IP Protocol      : sctp
Source IP List    : ALL_eNBs
Dest IP List     : MMEs
Action           : permit
  Event Log      : (Not Specified)
Hits             : 0 flows
```



```

-----
Entry          : 2
Description    : allow GTP-u to SGWs
IP Protocol    : udp
Source IP List : ALL_eNBs
Dest IP List   : SGWs
Dest Port      : eq 2152
Action         : permit
    Event Log   : (Not Specified)
Hits           : 0 flows
-----
Entry          : 3
Description    : allow FTP to NMS
IP Protocol    : tcp
Source IP List : ALL_eNBs
Dest IP List   : NMSs
Dest Port      : eq 22
Action         : permit
    Event Log   : (Not Specified)
Hits           : 0 flows
-----
Entry          : 4
Description    : allow ICMP to NMS
IP Protocol    : icmp
Source IP List : ALL_eNBs
Dest IP List   : NMSs
Action         : permit
    Event Log   : (Not Specified)
Hits           : 0 flows
-----
No. of entries : 4
=====
*A:7750-1>show>app-assure>group#

```

Note: The above configuration is generic and may need to be modified to suit the deployment requirements. For example, in the case of small cell SeGW deployment, traffic on other ports needs to be allowed to/from different NMS type servers, such as allowing TCP port 7003 and port 7013 to HDM servers. This can be accomplished by configuring additional entries in the above session filter.

Note: By allowing port 22 for FTP, the AA FW automatically opens and closes the associated data channel ports. For more information about AA FW capabilities, with regard to OAM FW protection, see Application Assurance Stateful Firewall.

Conclusion

The SR OS AA stateful firewall feature runs on AA-ISA and extends application-level analysis to provide an in-line stateful service, integrated within the Security Gateway (SeGW).

AA stateful packet filtering, combined with AA Layer 7 classification and control, provides advanced, next-generation firewall functionality, protecting mobile network core infrastructure, such as MMEs, SGWs, and NMSs.

Application Assurance — Stateful Firewall

In This Chapter

This section describes Application Assurance stateful firewall (FW) configurations for protecting residential and WiFi subscribers.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 192](#)
- [Overview on page 193](#)
- [Configuration on page 197](#)
- [Conclusion on page 208](#)

Applicability

This configuration note is applicable to all 7750 SR/SR-c and 7450 ESS chassis supporting Application Assurance (AA).

The configuration was tested on release 11.0R1.

Overview

The AA SR OS 11.0R1 FW feature extends AA-ISA application level analysis to provide an in-line integrated stateful service that protects subscribers from malicious attacks. AA stateful packet filtering feature combined with AA L7 classification and control, empowers operators with advanced, next generation firewall functionality that is integrated within the Service Router. The AA stateful firewall (FW) and application firewall runs on AA-ISA. Using stateful inspection, the AA firewall not only inspects packets at layers 3-7, but also monitors and keeps track of the connection's state. If the operator configures a **deny action** within a session filter, then the matching packets (matching both the AA Application QoS policy (AQP) and associated session filter match conditions) are dropped and no flow session state/context is created.

AA FW can be used in all deployments of AA-ISA; mobile (MGOS) and fixed (SROS), however the configurations examples here, while still very applicable (and almost 100% identical in mobile deployments) are focused on AA-ISA deployments in fixed networks.

The AA-ISA FW enabled solution provides:

- Stateful (and stateless) packet filtering and inspection with application-level gateway (ALG) support
- DoS attack protection

The objective of this section is to describe the required configuration within AA-ISA (divert to AA-ISA basic knowledge is assumed) in order to enable AA FW and protect AA subscribers from attacks (Unsolicited attacks and DoS attacks), while still allowing pin-holing through the firewall, so that applications like peer to peer gaming and various ALGs (such as FTP) are not affected.

Stateful Filtering

By performing stateful inspection, AA-ISA takes into account which side initiated a session and acts accordingly. Stateful flow processing and inspection utilizes IP layers 3/ 4 header information to build a state of the flow within AA-ISA. Layer 7 inspection is used in order to provide ALG support. Stateful flow/session processing takes note of the originator of the session and hence can allow traffic to be initiated from the subscriber, while denying (when configured) traffic originating from the network. Packets received from the network are inspected against the session filter and only those that are part of a subscriber initiated session are allowed.

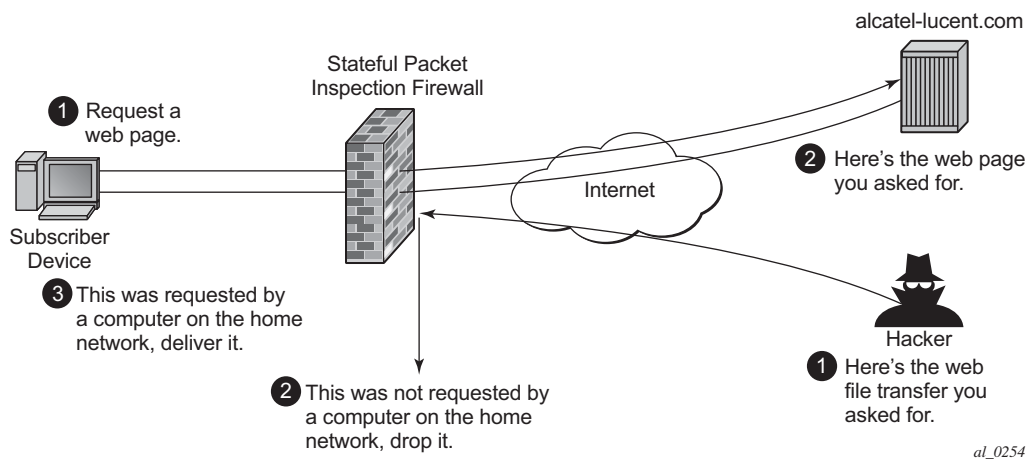


Figure 22: Block Unsolicited Traffic

To support the example shown in [Figure 22](#), AA is configured with an action to block unsolicited traffic; traffic that is not originated/initiated from the subscriber. The direction field in match criteria of AQP's is utilized to enable this functionality.

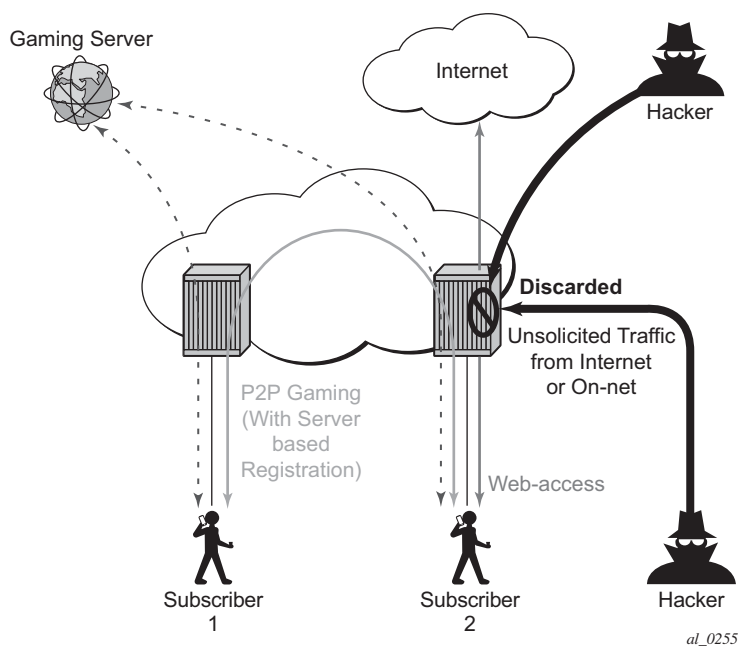


Figure 23: SFW — Allow Gaming

Figure 23 shows a similar concept. It is used to allow UDP traffic for peer to peer applications (such as gaming). Once the traffic from one peer is seen by AA-ISA, a pin-hole is opened in the reverse direction to allow for the corresponding UDP traffic from the peer.

Stateless packet filtering on the other hand does not take note of the session initiator. It discards or allows packets independently of any previous packets. In addition to AA-ISA's support for stateless (and stateful) filtering, stateless packet filtering can be performed in the system using line card ACLs (and/or MGISM PCC rules in mobile gateway deployments).

Application Layer Gateway Filtering

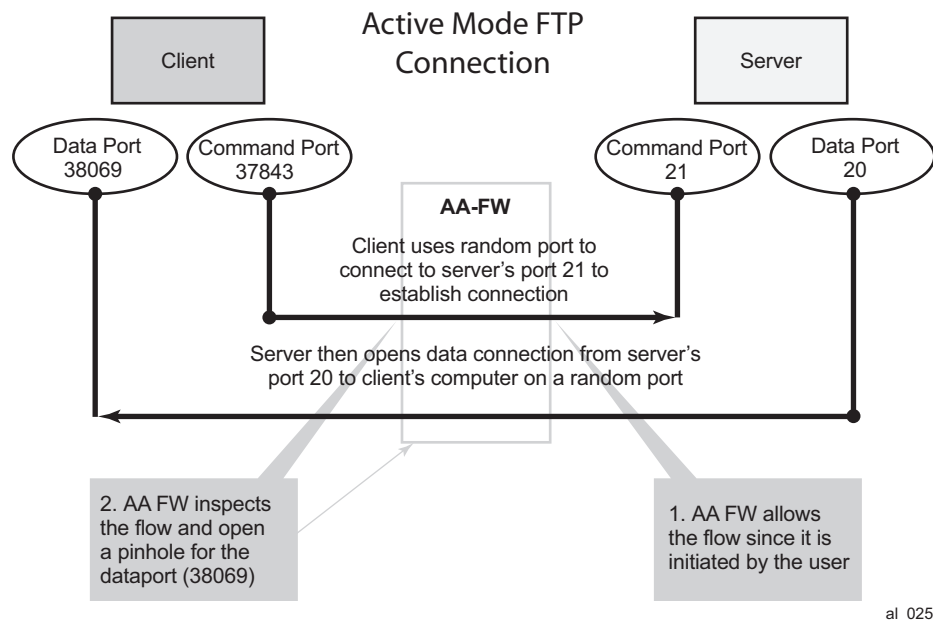


Figure 24: ALG Support Example — FTP

AA FW inspection of packets at Layer 7 offers Application Layer Gateway functionality for a large list of applications (for example, FTP, SIP, RTSP, PPTP, IRC, etc.). These applications make use of control channels or flows that spawn other flows. AA FW inspects the payload of these control flows so it can open a pinhole in advance for unspawned data flows. Figure 24 depicts an example of AA ALG support for FTP traffic.

Denial Of Service (DOS) Protection

DoS attacks work by consuming network and system resources, making them unavailable for legitimate network applications. Network flooding attacks, malformed packets and port scans are examples of such DoS attacks.

The aim of AA FW DOS protection is to protect subscribers and prevent any abuse of network resources.

Using AA FW stateful session filters, operators can protect their subscribers from any port scan scheme. This can be done by configuring the session filters to disallow any traffic that is initiated from the network.

Furthermore, AA ISA provides configurable flow policers. These policers, once configured, prevent a wide range of flooding attacks (such as ICMP PING flooding, UDP flooding, SYN Flood Attack...etc.). These policers provide protection at multiple levels; per system per application/application groups and per subscriber per applications/applications groups.

There are two types of AA ISA flow policers; flow setup rate policers and flow count policers. Flow setup rate policers limit the number of new flows, while flow count policers limit the total number of active flows.

In order to protect hosts and network resources, AA FW validates/checks different fields in the packet's header (checksum, TCP Flag, etc.) and if any fails it declares the packet to be invalid. This complements the 7x50 subscriber management enhanced security features, such as IP (or MAC) anti-spoofing protection (such as protecting against LAND attacks) and network protocol DoS protections. The cut-through-drop AQP action must be configured in order to drop these types of invalid packets.

Virtual FW/Zone-Based FW

AA FW can provide up to 128 virtual FWs, each with its own FW policies. This is achieved through the use of AA-partitions.

In addition, AA subscribers within the same AA partition can have different application profiles with different Application Service Options (ASO) values. This provides a further control mechanism to enable/disable firewall rules.

For example, the operator may want to have some subscribers possess full firewall protection, while others (who have not subscribed to this service) to have a partial firewall protection that focuses on protecting network resources, rather than network and subscribers resources.

Configuration

AA-ISA AQPs are enhanced in R11.0R1 with several new AQP actions that provide session filtering functionality. As is the case of all AQPs, these have partition level scope, which allows different FW policies to be implemented by utilizing AA partitions concepts within the same AA-ISA group. Hence, multiple virtual AA FW instances can be realized, without the need for multiple physical instances of FWs to implement different FW policies.

The AA FW stateful session filter consists of multiple entries (similar to ACLs) with a match and an action per entry. Actions are **deny** or **permit**. A **deny** action results in packets being discarded without creating a session/flow context. Match conditions include IP protocol types, source and destination IP addresses and ports. An overall default action is also configurable in case of no match to any session filter entry.

Note that AQPs with session filter actions need to have, as a matching condition, traffic direction, ASOs and/or a subscriber name. These AQP match rules cannot have any references to applications and/or application groups.

An AQP action to drop malformed/errored packets is also available.

Statistics are incremented when packets are dropped by a session filter. These are accounted against:

- protocol = denied by default policy,
- application = unknown,
- application group = unknown.

The configuration topology is shown in [Figure 25](#).

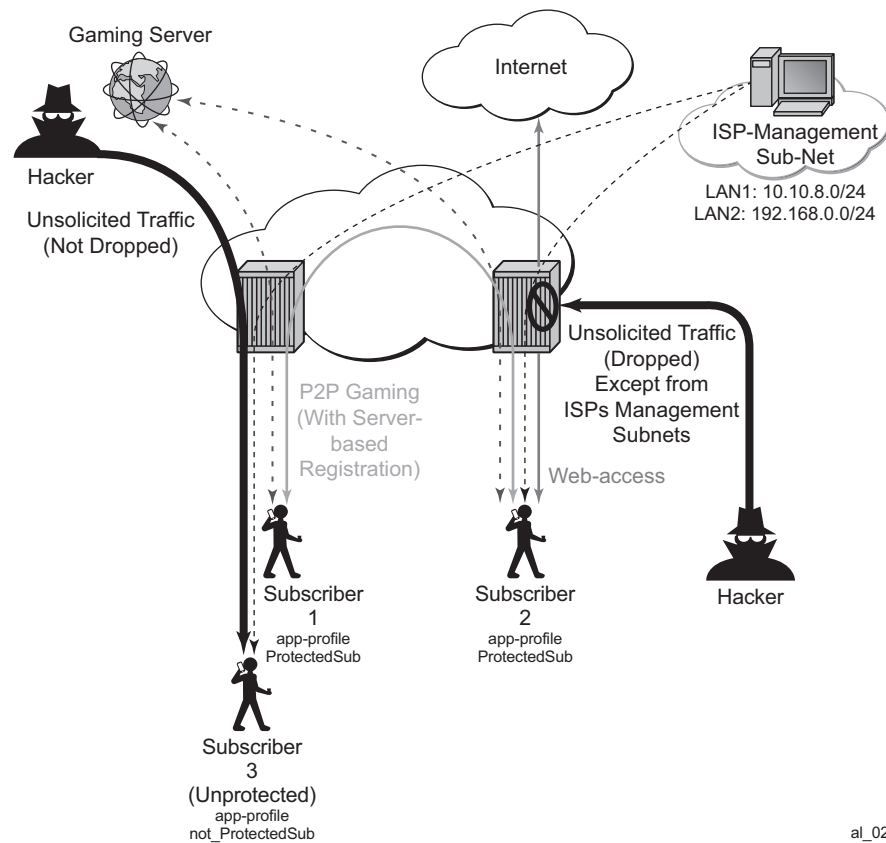


Figure 25: Configuration Topology

Step 1. Application Profile configuration:

There is nothing new introduced in application profiles in order to support FW. This section deals with how to configure the application profile to allow differentiated FW services for different subscribers. In a nut shell, the AA common building construct/attribute for differentiated policy is ASO.

To configure an ASO for FW protection:

```
configure application-assurance group 1:2 policy
begin
  app-service-options
    characteristic "FW-Protection" create
      value "None"
      value "ON"
      default-value "None"
  exit
  characteristic "ISP-Protection" create
    value "None"
    value "ON"
```

```

        default-value "None"
    exit
    characteristic "DOS-Protection" create
        value "None"
        value "ON"
        default-value "None"
    exit
exit

```

In the above example:

- ASO FW protection allows the operator to select if the subscriber is FW protected or not.
- ASO DOS protection refers to if the subscriber is protected from DOS attacks.
- ASO ISP protection is different from the above two as it protects the ISP resources by (in the example that follows) not allowing unsolicited traffic. This should be ON for all subscribers (it is then arguable if someone needs it to be defined in the ASO list, instead of merely configuring an AQP to protect ISP resources all the time).

These ASOs are referenced in appProfiles (and later in AQPs) as follows:

```

configure application-assurance group 2:103 policy
begin
    app-profile "Protected" create
        divert
        characteristic "FW-Protection" value "ON"
        characteristic "ISP-Protection" value "ON"
        characteristic "DOS-Protection" value "ON"
    exit

```

The above application profile Protected is assigned to subscribers who opted/subscribed to the firewall protection service; for example sub 1 and sub 2 in the example shown in [Figure 25 on page 198](#).

Subscribers who are not protected (for example sub 3 in [Figure 25](#)) are assigned a different profile:

```

configure application-assurance group 2:103 policy
begin
    app-profile "unProtected" create
        divert
        characteristic "FW-Protection" value "ON"
        characteristic "ISP-Protection" value "ON"
        characteristic "DOS-Protection" value "ON"
    exit

```

An alternative method to using application profiles/ASOs to provide differentiated services is to configure multiple partitions with different AQPs/ session filters. One partition for example will be for subscribers who are provided with firewall protection, while another is used for subscribers

who are not protected. This configuration is simpler and provides statistics per partition. This example however covers the more complex case using ASOs/appProfiles.

Step 2. Flow count policer configuration:

```
configure application-assurance group 2:203 policer Dos_police_Flow_count type flow-count-  
limit granularity subscriber create  
    flow-count 500  
exit
```

The configuration above limits the number of flows a subscriber can have at any time to 500. This is done to protect against DoS attacks. The value 500 is arbitrary and requires tuning for each deployment.

```
configure application-assurance group 2:203 policer Dos_Police_ICMPFlows type flow-count-  
limit granularity system create  
    flow-count 5000  
exit
```

This configuration limits the total number of flows that matches the configured AQP matching condition. It is used for ICMP applications to prevent mass port scanning.

Step 3. Application configuration

The following configuration is standard with AppDB. It is shown here for reference.

```
configure application-assurance group 2:203 policy begin  
    application ICMP create  
    exit  
    app-filter  
        entry 1540 create  
            protocol eq "non_tcp_udp"  
            ip-protocol-num eq icmp  
            application "ICMP"  
            no shutdown  
        exit  
        entry 35500 create  
            protocol eq "non_tcp_udp"  
            ip-protocol-num eq ipv6-icmp  
            application "ICMP"  
            no shutdown  
    exit
```

Step 4. AQP configuration:

```
configure application-assurance group 2:103 policy  
begin  
    app-qos-policy  
        description "Protecting ISP1 from DoS attacks from subs"  
        entry 100 create  
        match
```

```

        traffic-direction subscriber-to-network
        characteristic "ISP-Protection" eq "ON"
        dst-ip eq 10.10.8.0/24
    exit
    action
        flow-count-limit Dos_police_Flow_count
    exit
    no shutdown
exit

entry 105 create
    description "Protecting ISP2 from DoS attacks from subs"
    match
        traffic-direction subscriber-to-network
        characteristic "ISP-Protection" eq "ON"
        dst-ip eq 192.168.0.0/24
    exit
    action
        flow-count-limit Dos_police_Flow_count
    exit
    no shutdown
exit

```

These AQP's protect the ISP network by limiting the number of concurrent flows. Dropping malformed packets is done by entry 130 (later).

To guard against ICMP flooding attacks, a flow count policer (defined earlier) is used as follows:

```

configure application-assurance group 2:103 policy
begin
    app-qos-policy
        entry 107 create
            match
                traffic-direction both
                application eq icmp
            exit
            action
                flow-count-limit Dos_Police_ICMPFlows
            exit
            no shutdown
        exit
    exit

```

In order to protect ISP LAN2 from all incoming traffic (unsolicited), the operator configures entry 120.

```

entry 120 create
    match
        traffic-direction subscriber-to-network
        characteristic "ISP-Protection" eq "ON"
    exit
    action
        session-filter "ProtectISPLan2"
    exit
    no shutdown
exit

```

ProtectISPLan2 session filter drops all unsolicited traffic to LAN2 (highly secure) except for access to FTP services coming from ISP LAN1. Details of these configurations are shown in [Session-Filter on page 202](#).

To enable stateful protection for opted-in subs:

```
configure application-assurance group 2:103 policy
begin
  app-qos-policy

  entry 110 create
    description "FW for managed opted-in subs"
    match
      traffic-direction network-to-subscriber
      characteristic "FW-Protection" eq "ON"
    exit
    action
      session-filter "denyUnsolicitedwMgntCntrl "
    exit
    no shutdown
  exit
```

The above AQP protects opt-in subscribers from unsolicited traffic but still allows unsolicited traffic from ISP subnets to manage the subscriber's network.

Dropping malformed/illegal packets and protecting against DOS attacks is done via entry 130 below.

```
entry 130 create
  match
    traffic-direction both
    characteristic "DoS-Protection" eq "ON"
  exit
  action
    cut-through-drop
    flow-count-limit Dos_police_Flow_count
  exit
  no shutdown
exit
```

Step 5. Session-Filter

The following displays session-filter configuration commands.

```
configure application-assurance group 1:1 session-filter <name> create
description <description>
  default-action permit|deny# default=deny
  entry n create
    description <entry-description>
    match
      ip-protocol-num <ip-protocol-number>
```

```

no src-ip <ip4_or_v6-address/mask>
no dst-ip <ip4_or_v6-address/mask>
no src-port {eq|gt|lt} <port-num> #or
    range <start-port-num> <end-port-num>
no dst-port {eq|gt|lt} <port-num> #or
    range <start-port-num> <end-port-num>
exit
action permit|deny
exit
entry m create
. . .

```

Parameters

- **entry** *n* — A session filter can have multiple match-action rules, each of these match-action rules represent an entry within the session-filter. The entries are executed in order. If a match is found, within one entry, the subsequent entries within the session-filter are skipped (not evaluated).
- **default-action** [**permit**|**deny**] — This action is performed if no match is found for any of the configured entries within the session-filter. Default is deny.
 - A **deny** action will drop the packet and will not allow a flow record to be allocated for that flow. Note that a **drop** action within AA AQP will drop the packet but it will still create flow record.
 - A **permit** action will allow the packet to flow through the system. A flow record is also allocated. Note that the packet may get dropped by other configured AQP actions (due to header check failures).
- **description** *description-string*

This configures a text string, up to 80 characters, which can be used to describe the use of the session-filter.
- **match** — Keywords to perform the action specified under the **action** keyword only if the conditions in the match section are met.
 - **ip-protocol** *ip-protocol-number*

ip-protocol-number — 1..255

 - Decimal, hexadecimal or binary representation
 - Supported IANA IP protocol names:
crtp, crudp, egp, eigrp, encap, ether-ip, gre, icmp, idrp, igmp, igp, ip, ipv6, ipv6-frag, ipv6-icmp, ipv6-no-nxt, ipv6-opts, ipv6-route, isis, iso-ip, l2tp, ospf-igp, pim, pnni, ptp, rdp, rsvp, setp, stp, tcp, udp, vrrp
 - **src-ip/dst-ip** *ipv4-address/mask*
src-ip/dst-ip *ipv6-address/mask*
 - Source/destination IP address within the packet header.
 - IPv4 or IPv6 formats are allowed, with prefixes masks.
 - **src-port** *src-port-numbers*
src-port {**eq**|**gt**|**lt**} *port-num*
 - eq** — equal, exact match
 - gt** — match port numbers that are greater than the one specified.
 - lt** — match port numbers that are smaller than the one specified.

port-num — 0..65535 (Applicable to TCP, UDP and SCTP protocols only.)
 - **src-port range** *start-port-num end-port-num*

range — Keyword- that match port numbers within the specified range:

start-port-num — 0..65535

end-port-num — 0..65535

→ **dst-port** *dst-port-number*

- Same as source port number explained above, but applied against destination port number.

- **action deny|permit**

→ **deny** or **permit** action is only executed if a match is found.

→ **deny** action will drop the packet and will not create a flow record.

→ **permit** action will allow the packet to go through (unless another different action is found that causes it to be dropped).

- **no entry** *entry-id*

→ Causes the entry to be deleted.

- **no session-filter** *session-filter-name*

→ Causes the session filter to be deleted.

```
config application-assurance group 1:2
  session-filter " denyUnsolicitedwMgmtCntrl" create
    description "S-FW opted-in sub - allow ISP access"
    default-action deny
  entry 10 create
    description "allow ICMP access from ISP LAN1"
    match
      ip-protocol-num icmp
      src-ip 10.10.8.0/24
    exit
    action permit
  exit
  entry 20 create
    description "allow ICMP access from ISP LAN2"
    match
      ip-protocol-num icmp
      src-ip 192.168.0.0/24
    exit
    action permit
  exit
  entry 30 create
    description "allow all TCP (e.g. FTP/telnet)access from ISP LAN2"
    match
      ip-protocol-num tcp
      src-ip 192.168.0.0/24
    exit
    action permit
  entry 40 create
    description "allow TCP on port 80 /HTTP access from ISP LAN1"
    match
      ip-protocol-num tcp
      src-ip 10.10.8.0/24
      dst-port eq 80
    exit
```

Configuration

```
        action permit
    exit
```

This session filter is used to protect systems located in LAN2. It drops all unsolicited traffic except for FTP coming from LAN1.

```
configure application-assurance group 1:2
    session-filter "protectISPlan2" create
        description "S-FW to deny all unsolicited requests to LAN2"
        default-action deny
        entry 10 create
            description "allow ftp access from ISP LAN1"
            match
                ip-protocol-num tcp
                src-ip 10.10.8.0/24
                dst-port eq 21
            exit
            action permit
        exit
    exit
```

Show Routine — AQP:

```
*A:PE-1# show application-ass group 2:103 policy app-qos-policy 110
=====
Application QOS Policy Entry 110 (Default Subscriber Policy)
=====
Description : FW for managed opted-in subs
Admin State : in-service
Hits       : 95 flows
Conflicts  : 0 flows

Match :
    Traffic Direction      : network-to-subscriber
    ASO Characteristics    :
    FW-Protection          : eq FW-Protection

Action :
    Session Filter         : denyUnsolicitedwMgmtCntrl
=====
```

Show Routines — Session Filter:

```
*A:PE-1# show application-ass group 2:1 session-filter "denyUnsolicitedwMgmtCntrl"
=====
AA Session Filter Instance "denyUnsolicitedwMgmtCntrl"
=====
Description      : S-FW opted-in sub ?allow ISP access
Default Action   : deny
AQP Entries      : 110
-----
Filter Match Criteria
```

```

-----
Entry      : 10
Description : allow ICMP access from ISP LAN1
IP Protocol : icmp
Source IP   : 10.10.8.0/24
Action      : permit
Hits        : 3 flows
-----

```

```

-----
Entry      : 20
Description : allow ICMP access from ISP LAN2
IP Protocol : icmp
Source IP   : 192.168.0.0/24
Action      : permit
Hits        : 21 flows
-----

```

```

-----
Entry      : 30
Description : allow TCP access from LAN2
IP Protocol : tcp
Source IP   : 192.168.0.113/32
Action      : permit
Hits        : 50 flows
-----

```

```

-----
Entry      : 40
Description : allow HTTP access from LAN1
IP Protocol : tcp
Source IP   : 10.10.8.0/24
Source Port : eq 80
Action      : permit
Hits        : 2 flows
-----

```

```

-----
No. of entries : 4
=====

```

Conclusion

The AA stateful packet filtering feature combined with AA Layer 7 classification and control empowers operators with an advanced, next generation firewall functionality that is integrated within the SR/ESS. This section focused on traditional stateful and stateless session firewall functionality.

Application Assurance — Usage Monitoring and Policy Control via Diameter Gx Protocol

In This Chapter

This section provides information about the diameter (Gx) control feature.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 210](#)
- [Overview on page 211](#)
- [Configuration on page 224](#)
- [Conclusion on page 241](#)

Applicability

This configuration note is applicable to all 7750 SR/SR-c and 7450 ESS chassis supporting Application Assurance (AA).

The configuration was tested on release 13.0.R1.

Overview

The Gx reference point is defined in the Policy and Charging Control (PCC) architecture within the 3rd Generation Partnership Project (3GPP) standardization body. The Gx reference point is used for policy and charging control. The PCC architecture is defined in the 23.203 3GPP technical specification, while the Gx functionality is defined in the 29.212 3GPP technical specification. The SR OS implementation of Gx supports both Release 11 and Release 12 of the specification. Gx is an application of the Diameter protocol (RFC 6733). The Diameter protocol in SR OS is based on RFC 3588, *Diameter Base Protocol*.

As shown in [Figure 26](#), Gx is placed between a policy server Policy and Charging Rule Function (PCRF) and a traffic forwarding node Policy and Charging Enforcement Function (PCEF) that enforces rules set by the policy server.

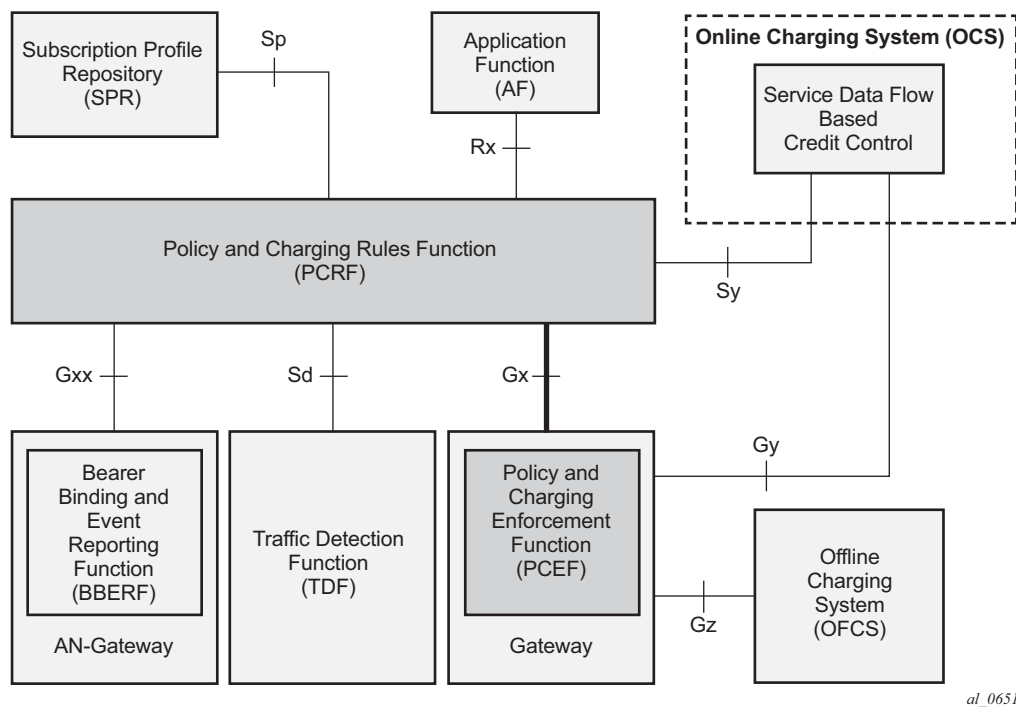


Figure 26: Gx Reference Point

Although the Gx reference point is defined within the 3GPP standardization body, its applicability has also spread to wire-line operations to achieve mobile–fixed convergence gains by streamlining policy management functions into a single Gx based infrastructure, see [Figure 27](#).

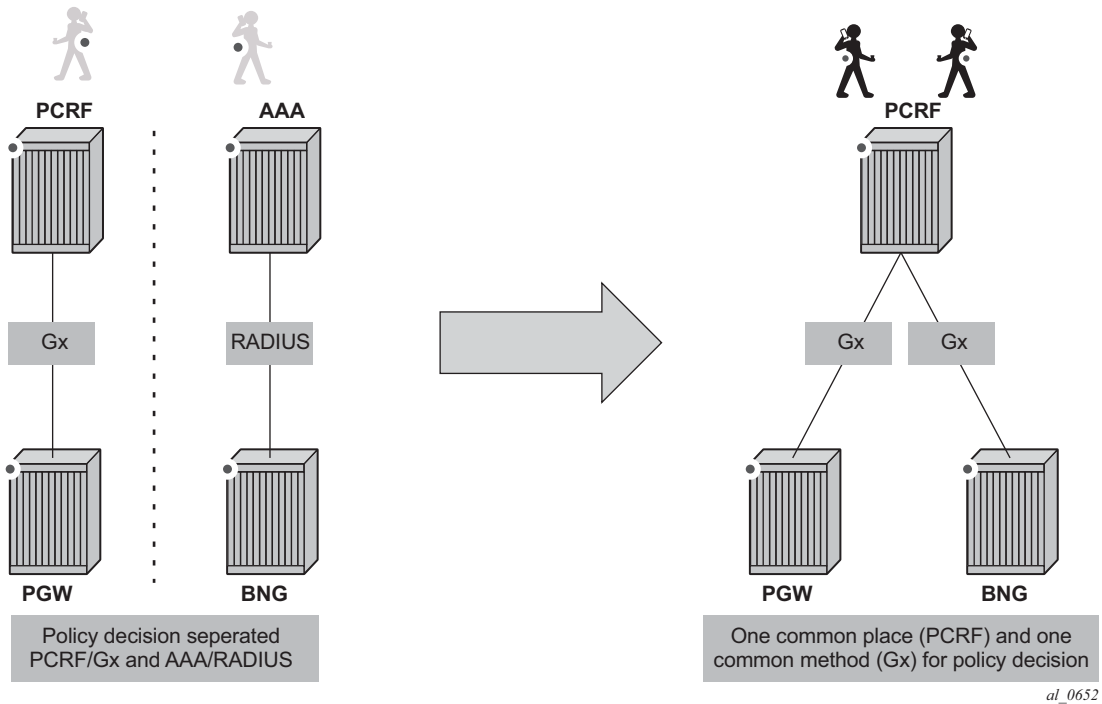


Figure 27: Convergence

Gx support on SR OS is applicable to Enhanced Subscriber Management (ESM) functions, including the Application Assurance (AA) functions. The focus of this chapter is on the AA aspects of Gx.

The SR OS based Gx interface offers the following functionalities:

- ESM subscriber based policy decision providing
 - QoS attributes
 - charging attributes
 - subscriber identification
- Usage management
 - usage reporting from PCEF to PCRF

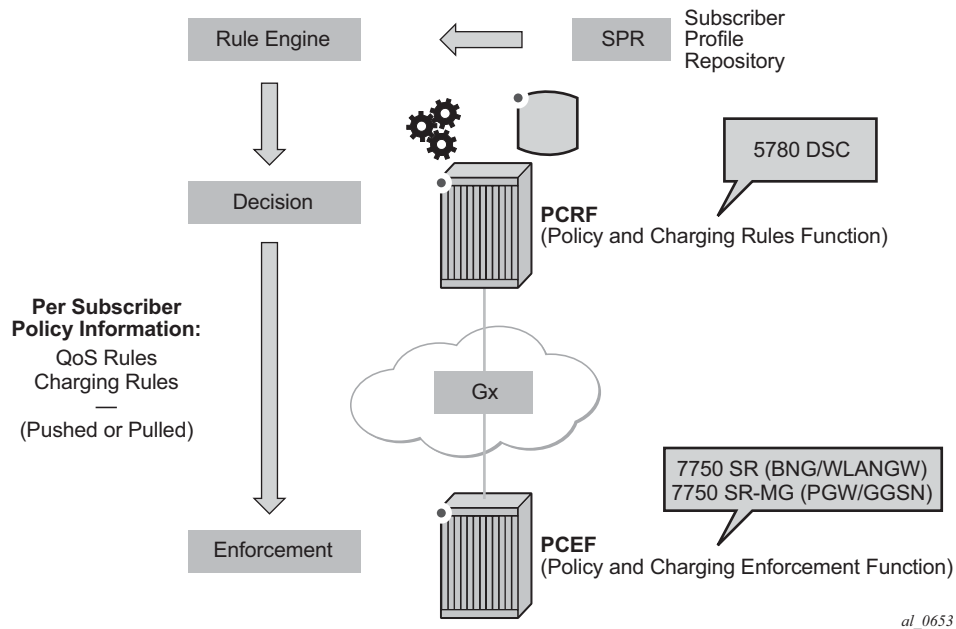


Figure 28: Gx Reference Point

Note that Gx does not provide subscriber authentication or subscriber IP address assignment.

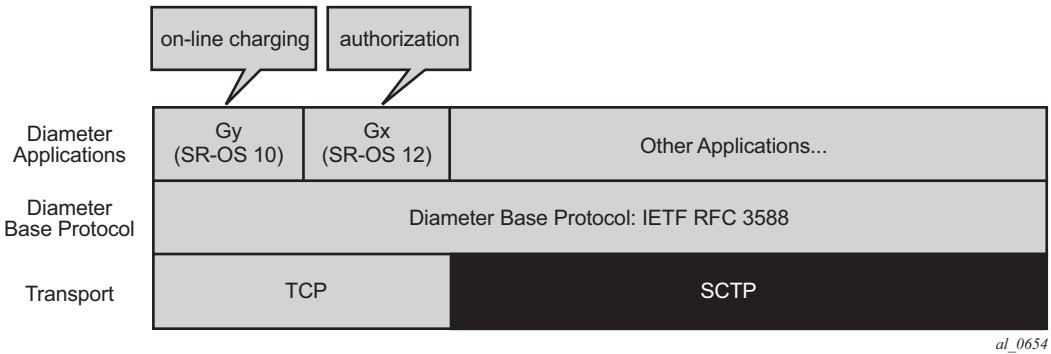


Figure 29: Diameter Protocol Stack

Policy Assignment Use Case

The SR OS accepts the following policy information from PCRF using Gx:

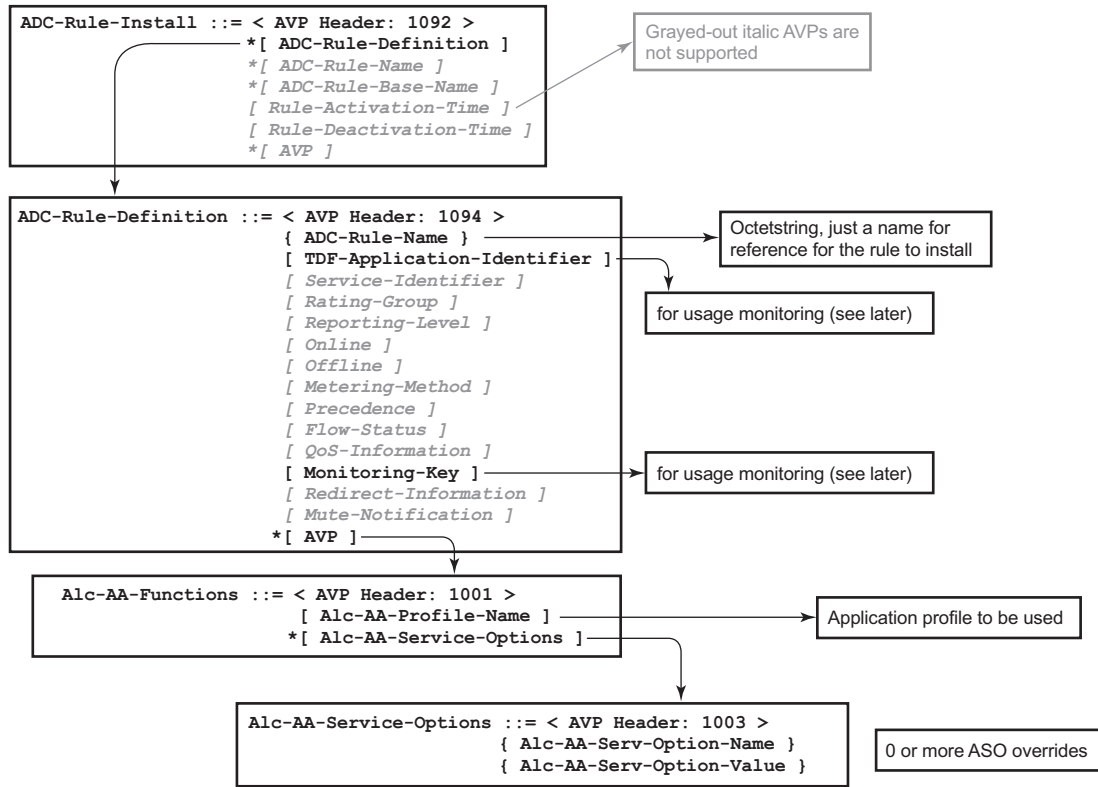
- Subscriber Profile strings and SLA Profile strings.
- Subscriber-QoS-Overrides.
- Application Profile strings.
- Application Subscriber Options (ASOs) related to AA.

Gx operates at subscriber host level and creates an “IP-CAN Session” (IP Connectivity Access Network) for every subscriber host. However, as AA operates at the subscriber level, AA related policies apply to all of the hosts belonging to that subscriber.

This chapter covers AA related functionalities, namely: application profile and ASO assignments and override. These functionalities are defined in either:

- a) Application Detection and Control (ADC) rules -per 3GPP release 11 **or**
- b) Policy and Charging Control (PCC) rules -per 3GPP release 12- .
 - **Application Profile** Alc-AA-Profile-Name Attribute-Value-Pair (AVP)
 - RADIUS equivalent is Alc-App-Prof-Str Vendor-Specific-Attribute (VSA)
 - **ASO overrides** Alc-AA-Service-Options AVP
 - RADIUS equivalent is Alc-AA-App-Service-Options VSA

Details of the ADC rules and related ALU defined AVPs defined for use by AA are shown in [Figure 30](#).



al_0655

Figure 30: ADC Rules and Related ALU Defined AVPs Defined for Use by AA

The ADC-Rule-Install is at the root level of the GX message.

As for 3GPP release 12, the details of the PCC rules and related ALU defined AVPs defined for use by AA are shown in [Figure 30](#).

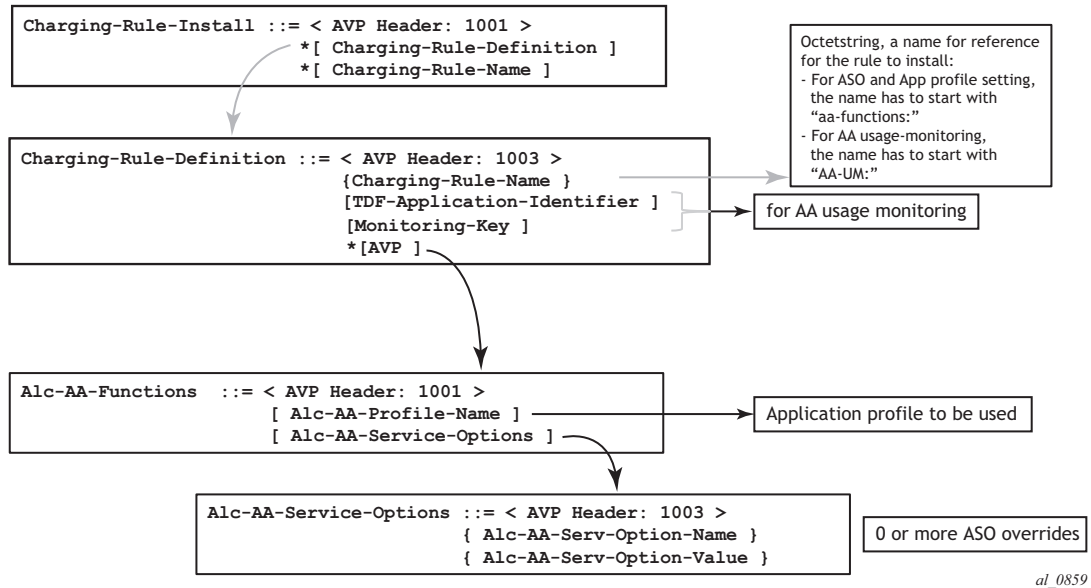


Figure 31: PCC Rules and Related ALU-Defined AVPs Defined for Use by AA

The PCC-Rule-Install, as in the case of ADC-Rule-Install, is at the root level of the GX message.

An example of the AVPs to install the application profile “gold_level” using 3GPP release 11 (/ ADC rules) is shown in [Figure 31](#).

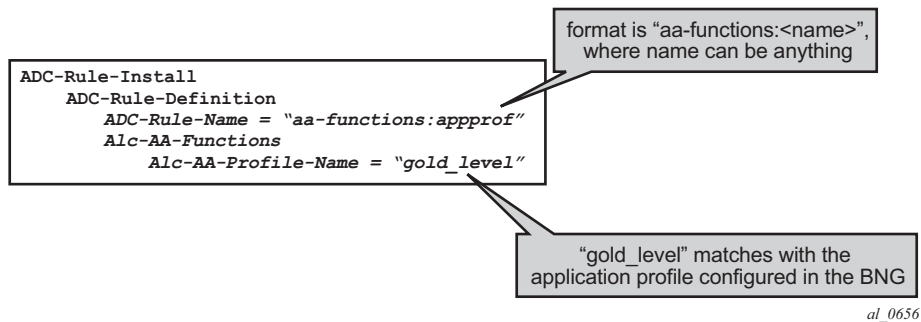


Figure 32: ADC Rule Example of AVPs to Install the Application Profile “gold_level”

An example of the AVPs to install the “gold_level” application profile using 3GPP release 12 (/ PCC rules) is shown in [Figure 34](#).

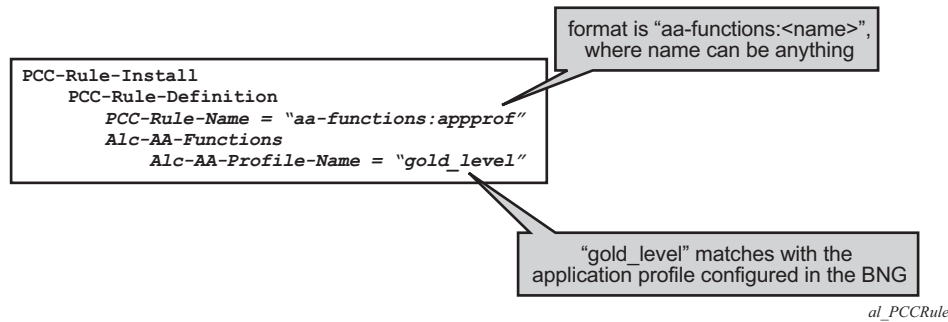


Figure 33: PCC Rule Example of AVPs to Install the Application Profile “gold_level”

NOTE: ADC-Rule-Names and PCC-Rule-Names have to start with **aa-functions** when they contain an Alc-AA-Functions AVP.

The assignment of the **gold_level** appProfile is shown in another format in [Figure 34](#).

```

adc-rule-install (1092) V----- [184]
  vendor-id TGPP
  data [172] (Grouped)
    adc-rule-definition (1094) V----- [172]
      vendor-id TGPP
      data [160] (Grouped)
        adc-rule-name (1096) V----- [32]
        vendore-id TGPP
        data [20] (UTF8String) : aa-functions:appprof
      AA-Functions (1001) V----- [128]
      vendor-id ALU
      data [116] (Grouped)
        AA-Profile-Name (1002) V----- [17]
        vendor-id ALU
        data [5] (UTF8String) : gold level
        AA-App-Service-Options (1003) V----- [48]
        vendor-id ALU
        data [36] (Grouped)
          AA-App-Service-Options-Name (1004) V----- [17]
          vendor-id ALU
          data [5] (UTF8String) : level
          AA-App-Serv-Options-Value (1005) V----- [16]
          vendor-id ALU
          data [4] (UTF8String) : high
        AA-App-Service-Options (1003) V----- [48]
        vendor-id ALU
        data [36] (Grouped)
          AA-App-Serv-Options-Name (1004) V----- [18]
          vendor-id ALU
          data [6] (UTF8String) : p2p
          AA-App-Serv-Options-Value (1005) V----- [14]
          vendor-id ALU
          data [2] (UTF8String) : unlimited
  
```

al_0657

Figure 34: Capture of the ADC Rule Assignment of the “gold_level” appProfile

Application profiles and ASO overrides can be changed on-the-fly with a Re-Authentication-Request (RAR) message according to these rules:

- If an Application profile is present in the Gx message it is applied first. Then ASO AVPs are applied when present (in the Gx message). In other words:
 - If a RAR message only contains the same application profile and no ASO overrides, then all previous ASO overrides are removed.
 - When a RAR message contains the same application profile and new ASO overrides, then the new ASO overrides are applied, and the previous ASO overrides are removed.
 - When a RAR message contains a new application profile, all previous ASO overrides are removed and replaced with the ASOs in the RAR if present.
 - When a RAR message does not contain an application profile but only ASO overrides, then the new ASO overrides are added to the existing ASO overrides.

Note that a single Gx ADC (or PCC) rule cannot contain both AA subscriber policies (appProfile/ASO) and AA Usage monitoring (as outlined later). These have to be in separate ADC (or PCC) rules.

Usage Management/Monitoring Use-Case

The AA-ISA can monitor application usage at the subscriber level and report back to the PCRF whenever the usage exceeds the threshold(s) set by the PCRF when receiving requests from the PCRF over the Gx interface.

Usage monitoring can be used by operators to report to PCRF when:

- The AA-ISA detects the start of a subscriber application by setting the usage threshold to a very low value.
- A pre-set usage volume per subscriber application is exceeded.

AA can monitor subscriber's traffic for any defined:

- Application,
- Application group, and/or
- Charging group.

The AA-ISA reports the accumulated usage when:

- A usage threshold is reached.
- The PCRF explicitly disables the usage monitoring.
- The PCRF requests a report.
- The ADC (or PCC) rule associated with the monitoring instance is removed or deactivated.
- A session is terminated.

An AA defined application, application group and/or charging group is automatically allowed to be referenced by an ADC (or PCC) rule for the purpose of usage monitoring only if:

{It is already selected for either XML or RADIUS per subscriber accounting

OR

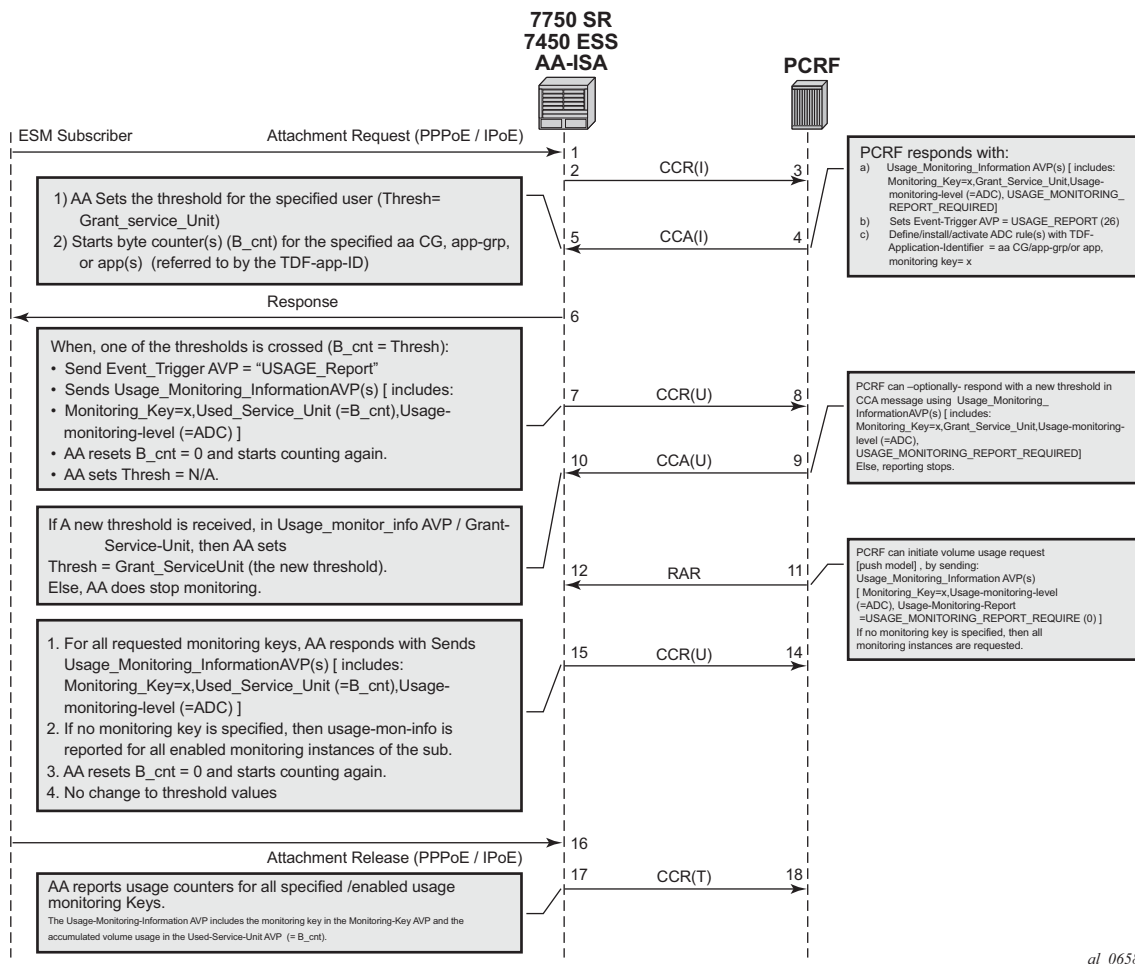
It is explicitly enabled by the operator for per subscriber statistics collection}

AND

Usage monitoring is enabled for the given AA group:partition

Figure 35 illustrates the different messaging/call flows involved in application level usage monitoring. Details of the different supported AVPs used in these messages are illustrated later.

Usage Management/Monitoring Use-Case



al_0658

Figure 35: Call Flow Diagram

The AA-ISA/PCEF supports Usage-Thresholds AVPs that refer to the thresholds (in bytes) at which point an event needs to be sent back to the PCRF, (see [Figure 33](#)).

Time based thresholds are not supported.

AA supports the “grant-service-unit” AVP using the following possible values (AVP):

- CC-Input-Octets AVP (code 412) : From Subscriber total byte count threshold.
- CC-Output-Octet AVP (code 414): To subscriber total byte count threshold.
- CC-Total-octets AVP (code 421): Threshold of aggregate traffic (Input and Output byte counters).

As shown in [Figure 35](#), (T=7), AA sends a Credit Control Request (CCR_ message) with a "USAGE_REPORT" Event-Trigger AVP to the PCRF when the usage counter reaches the configured usage monitoring threshold for a given subscriber (and given application group). AA counters are reset (to zero) when the monitoring threshold is reached (and an event is sent back to the PCRF). The counter(s) however does not stop counting newly arriving traffic. AA counters only include “admitted” packets. Any packets that were discarded by AA due to, for example, policing actions are not counted for usage-monitoring purposes.

The TDF-Application-Identifier AVP (within the ADC or PCC rule) refers to an AA Charging group, an AA application group or to an AA application. TDF-Application-Identifiers (for example, charging-groups) have to be manually entered at the PCRF to match the AA charging groups defined in the AA. If the TDF-Application-Identifier refers to a name that is used for both a charging group and an application (or an application group), AA monitors the charging group. In other words, the AA charging group has a higher precedence than the AA application group.

Gx Usage Monitoring AVP Summary

For 3GPP release 11 (using ADC rules), the following AVPs are used for AA-Usage monitoring:

```

ADC-Rule-Install ::= < AVP Header: 1092 >
    * [ ADC-Rule-Definition ]
    * [ ADC-Rule-Name ]

ADC-Rule-Definition ::= < AVP Header: 1094 >
    { ADC-Rule-Name }
    [ TDF-Application-Identifier ]; AA app/app-grp/chrg-grp
    [ Monitoring-Key ];

Usage-Monitoring-Information ::= < AVP Header: 1067 >
    [ Monitoring-Key ]
    0,2 [ Granted-Service-Unit ]
        Granted-Service-Unit ::= < AVP Header: 431 >
            [ CC-Total-Octets ]
            [ CC-Input-Octets ]
            [ CC-Output-Octets ]

    0,2 [ Used-Service-Unit ]
        Used-Service-Unit ::= < AVP Header: 446 >
            [ CC-Total-Octets ] ;
            [ CC-Input-Octets ]
            [ CC-Output-Octets ]

    [ Usage-Monitoring-Level ]

; ADC_RULE_LEVEL (2)

    [ Usage-Monitoring-Report ]

; immediate report -- USAGE_MONITORING_REPORT_REQUIRED (0)

    [ Usage-Monitoring-Support ]

; to disable : USAGE_MONITORING_DISABLED (0)

```

For 3GPP release 12 (using PCC rules), the following AVPs are used for AA-Usage monitoring:

```

Charging-Rule-Install ::= < AVP Header: 1001 >
    * [ Charging-Rule-Definition ]
    * [ Charging-Rule-Name ]

Charging-Rule-Definition ::= < AVP Header: 1003 >
    { Charging-Rule-Name } ;/ starts with "UM-AA:"
    [ TDF-Application-Identifier ]; AA app/app-grp/chrg-grp
    [ Monitoring-Key ];

Usage-Monitoring-Information ::= < AVP Header: 1067 >
    [ Monitoring-Key ]

```

```

0,2[ Granted-Service-Unit ]
    Granted-Service-Unit ::= < AVP Header: 431 >
    [ CC-Total-Octets ]
    [ CC-Input-Octets ]
    [ CC-Output-Octets ]

0,2[ Used-Service-Unit ]
Used-Service-Unit ::= < AVP Header: 446 >
    [ CC-Total-Octets ] ;
    [ CC-Input-Octets ]
    [ CC-Output-Octets ]

[ Usage-Monitoring-Level ]
; PCC_RULE_LEVEL (1)

[ Usage-Monitoring-Report ]
; immediate report -- USAGE_MONITORING_REPORT_REQUIRED (0)

[ Usage-Monitoring-Support ]
; to disable : USAGE_MONITORING_DISABLED (0)

```

Configuration

This configuration example highlights the commands illustrating how Gx can be used to:

- Override AppProfile and ASO characteristics.
- Set and retrieve AA level usage monitoring metrics.

While the configuration associated with setting up the Gx interface toward the PCRF is shown for the sake of completeness, that aspect of the configuration is not explored in detail, and only a 3GPP release 11 model is shown. Similarly, the Gx policies and usage monitoring associated with ESM host policies (non-AA aspects) are out of the scope of this chapter.

The configuration on the 7750 node is the same, independent of whether the PCRF supports 3GPP release 11 (ADC) or release 12(PCC) to provide AA policy control function.

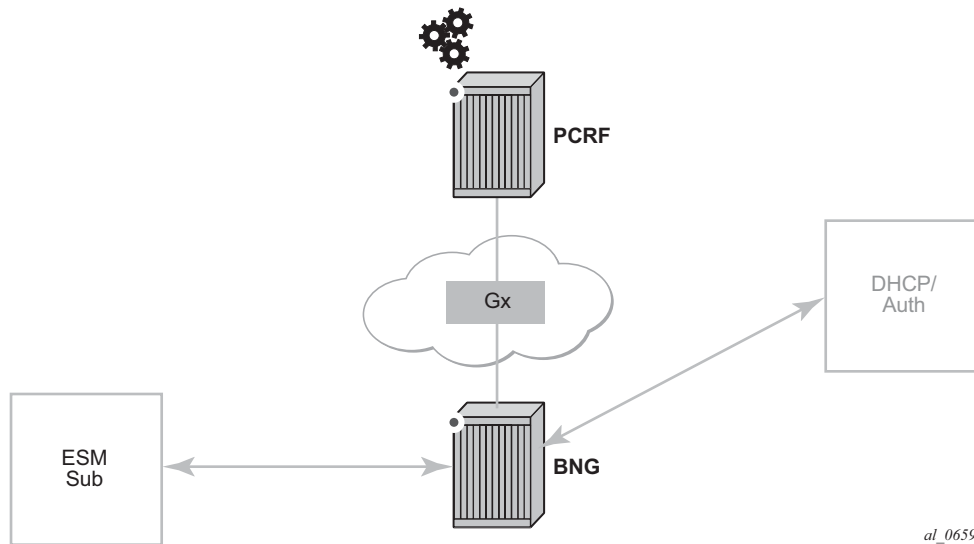


Figure 36: Example Configuration Setup

The BNG is set up with at least one IOM and one MS-ISA MDA configured as ISA-AA.

```
configure
  card 1
    card-type iom3-xp
    mda 1
      mda-type m20-1gb-xp-sfp
      no shutdown
    exit
    mda 2
      mda-type isa-aa
```

```

        no shutdown
    exit
    no shutdown
exit
card 3
    card-type iom3-xp
    mda 1
        mda-type isa-aa
        no shutdown
    exit
    mda 2
        mda-type isa-aa
        no shutdown
    exit
    no shutdown
exit

```

The configurations in this example are broken down into four main steps:

- Step 1.** Configuring the Gx interface (high-level)
- Step 2.** Configuring AA application profiles and ASOs (high-level)
- Step 3.** Configuring AA applications filters (high-level)
- Step 4.** Configuring AA usage-monitoring

The focus of this configuration example is on Step 4, and the updated show routines related to AA ESM subscriber state are shown at the end of Step 2.

Step 1. Configuring the Gx interface (high-level).

These commands bring up the Gx diameter control channel between the Gx Controller(/Server), also known as PCRF, and the PCEF(/BNG).

```
configure
aaa
    diameter-peer-policy "ppol" create
        applications gx
        connection-timer 5
        origin-host "router.workstation"
        origin-realm "alcatel-lucent.com"
        transaction-timer 5
        watchdog-timer 10
        peer "ppeer0" create
            address 10.1.0.10
            destination-host "primary-pcrf.alcatel-lucent.com"
            destination-realm "alcatel-lucent.com"
            no shutdown
        exit
    exit
exit
```

The diameter peer policy “**ppol**” is then referenced under subscriber management.

```
configure
subscriber-mgmt
    diameter-application-policy "diamAppPlcy" create
        application gx
        diameter-peer-policy "ppol"
    exit
```

Then the created subscriber management policy “**diamAppPlcy**” is applied to the subscriber interface.

```
configure
service
    customer 1 create
        description "Default customer"
    exit
    ies 1 customer 1 vpn 1 create
        description "Default Ies description for service id 1"
        subscriber-interface "ies-1-172.16.0.0" create
            address 172.16.0.0/12
            group-interface "grp-1-35782656-1" create
                dhcp
                server 172.16.200.200
                trusted
                lease-populate 2000
                gi-address 172.16.0.0
                no shutdown
            exit
            diameter-application-policy "diamAppPlcy"
        sap 1/1/4:1 create
```

```

description "sap-grp-1"
sub-sla-mgmt
  def-sub-profile "sub_prof"
  def-sla-profile "sla_prof"
  def-app-profile "app_prof_1"
  sub-ident-policy "sub_ident_A_1"
  multi-sub-sap 2
  no shutdown
exit
exit
exit
exit
service-name "ACG Ies 1"
no shutdown
exit

```

Now verify the configuration and connectivity towards the PCRF by running the following command:

```

*A:BNG-1# show aaa diameter-peer-policy "ppol"
=====
Diameter Peer Policy : ppol
=====
Last Mgmt Change      : 05/30/2014 18:53:38
=====
Diameter Config Values
=====
Origin Host           : router.workstation.be
Origin Realm          : lucent.com
Connection Timer       : 5                      Source Address      : 0.0.0.0
Transaction Timer      : 5                      Router              : Base
Watchdog Timer         : 10
Vendor Support         : 3GPP (default)
Python Policy          : N/A
=====
Peer Name              Oper  PSM State      Susp  Cooldown  Pref  Order  Pri/Sec
=====
ppeer0                 Yes   I-Open        No    -         50   1      Primary
=====
*A:BNG-1#

```

The Peer-State-Machine State (PSM), as per RFC 3588, has the value I-OPEN indicating that the peer is operational. The “I-” stands for Initiator state, in this case the BNG is the initiator.

A detailed look into the traffic statistics between the PCEF and the PCRF (Gx controller) can be viewed using a show statistics command (see below). These statistics provide a breakdown of the messages exchanged:

```

*A:BNG-1# show aaa diameter-peer-policy "ppol" peer "ppeer0" statistics
=====
Diameter Peer Policy : ppol (statistics)
=====
Diameter Peer          : ppeer0
time statistics cleared : 05/30/2014 18:53:38
=====

```

Configuration

```
Client initiated tx/rx                               Server initiated tx/rx
-----
TCP Send Failed           : 0                      TCP Send Failed           : 0
Diam Rx Drop Count (Resps): 0                      Diam Rx Drop Count (Reqs): 0
Diam Tx Requests          : 313                    Diam Rx Requests          : 204
Diam Rx Responses         : 313                    Diam Tx Responses         : 204
Pending Messages          : 0
Request Timeouts          : 0
-----
Diameter message breakdown
-----
CCR initial Tx            : 111                    CCA initial Rx           : 111
CCR update Tx             : 88                      CCA update Rx            : 88
CCR terminate Tx          : 11                      CCA terminate Rx         : 11
CER Tx                    : 1                      CEA Rx                   : 1
DWR Tx                    : 102                    DWA Rx                   : 102
DWR Rx                    : 0                      DWA Tx                   : 0
ASR Rx                    : 0                      ASA Tx                   : 0
RAR Rx                    : 204                    RAA Tx                   : 204
DPR Tx                    : 0                      DPA Rx                   : 0
DPR Rx                    : 0                      DPA Tx                   : 0
=====
*A:BNG-1#
```


Step 2. Configuring AA application profiles and ASOs (high-level)

To illustrate the use of application profiles and ASO overrides using Gx RAR messages, four ASOs and 2 appProfiles are defined, see below.

“app_prof_1” is the default app-profile used when a subscriber is created on AA.

```
configure
  application-assurance
    group 129:34883 create
      policy
        begin
          app-service-options
            characteristic "permitDNS" persist-id 1 create
              value "no"
              value "yes"
              default-value "yes"
            exit
            characteristic "permitRDP" persist-id 2 create
              value "no"
              value "yes"
              default-value "yes"
            exit
            characteristic "permitHTTP" persist-id 3 create
              value "no"
              value "yes"
              default-value "yes"
            exit
          exit
        app-profile "app_prof_1" create
          description "Application Profile Id app_prof_1"
          divert
        exit
        app-profile "app_prof_2" create
          description "Application Profile Id app_prof_2"
          divert
        exit
```

Step 3. Configuring AA applications filters (high-level)

First create the application group, as follows.

```
configure isa
  application-assurance-group 129 create
    primary 3/2
    backup 1/2
    partitions
    divert-fc be
    no shutdown
  exit
```

Then create the partition and associated charging groups, application groups, applications, etc.

```
configure
  application-assurance
    group 129:34883 create
      policy
        begin
          charging-group "0_rated" create
            export-id 1
          exit
          charging-group "default_charge_group" create
            export-id 255
          exit
          default-charging-group "default_charge_group"
          app-group "Other" create
            export-id 8
          exit
          app-group "Peer to Peer" create
            export-id 3
          exit
          app-group "Remote Connectivity" create
            export-id 4
          exit
          app-group "Unknown"
            charging-group "0_rated"
            export-id 1
          exit
          app-group "Web" create
            export-id 10
          exit
          application "DNS" create
            description "default-description for application DNS"
            app-group "Other"
            export-id 12
          exit
          application "BitTorrent" create
            app-group "Peer to Peer"
            export-id 3
          exit
          application "HTTP" create
            description "default-description for application HTTP"
            app-group "Web"
```

```

        export-id 26
    exit
    application "RDP" create
        description "default-description for application RDP"
        app-group "Remote Connectivity"
        export-id 61
    exit
    application "Unknown"
        charging-group "0_rated"
        export-id 1
    exit
exit
commit
exit
exit
exit

```

Example app-filter definitions defining HTTP, DNS, Bittorrent and RDP applications are show below.

```

configure
    application-assurance
        group 129:34883
            policy
                begin
                app-filter
                    entry 6 create
                        description "default-description for AppFilter entry 6"
                        protocol eq "rdp"
                        ip-protocol-num eq tcp
                        application "RDP"
                        no shutdown
                    exit
                    entry 9 create
                        description "default-description for AppFilter entry 9"
                        protocol eq "dns"
                        ip-protocol-num eq udp
                        server-port eq range 53 55
                        application "DNS"
                        no shutdown
                    exit
                    entry 20 create
                        description "default-description for AppFilter entry 20"
                        protocol eq "bittorrent"
                        ip-protocol-num eq tcp
                        application "BitTorrent"
                        no shutdown
                    exit
                    entry 38 create
                        description "default-description for AppFilter entry 38"
                        protocol eq "http"
                        ip-protocol-num eq tcp
                        server-port gt 8738
                        application "HTTP"
                        no shutdown
                    exit
                exit
            exit
        exit
    exit

```

Configuration

```
        commit
    exit
exit
exit
```

Note: The focus of this example is on the definition of app-filters and/or AQPs. These are listed above (and below) for illustration purposes. The “sample” AQP configurations and app-filters shown here should not be used in a real-life configuration. Their configuration should follow the information in [Application Assurance — Application Identification and User-Defined Applications on page 19](#).

Example AQP configurations for blocking DNS, RDP and HTTP traffic are listed below.

```
configure
  application-assurance
    group 129:34883
      policy
        begin
          app-qos-policy
            entry 2 create
            match
              application eq "DNS"
              characteristic "permitDNS" eq "no"
            exit
            action
              drop
            exit
            no shutdown
          exit
          entry 3 create
          match
            application eq "HTTP"
            characteristic "permitHTTP" eq "no"
            ip-protocol-num neq 0
          exit
          action
            drop
          exit
          no shutdown
        exit
        entry 4 create
        match
          application eq "RDP"
          app-group eq "Remote Connectivity"
          characteristic "permitRDP" eq "no"
          ip-protocol-num neq udp
        exit
        action
          drop
        exit
        no shutdown
      exit
    exit
  commit
exit
```

```

exit
exit

```

When an ESM subscriber is created, it is associated with the default AA app-profile, as seen using the show command below.

```

*A:BNG-1>show>app-assure>group# aa-sub esm "sub_172.16.0.2" summary
=====
Application-Assurance Subscriber Summary (realtime)
=====
AA-Subscriber           : sub_172.16.0.2 (esm)
ISA assigned            : 3/2
App-Profile             : app_prof_1
App-Profile divert      : Yes
Capacity cost           : 1
Aarp Instance Id        : N/A
HTTP URL Parameters     : (Not Specified)
Last HTTP Notified Time : N/A
-----
Traffic                  Octets                Packets                Flows
-----
From subscriber:
  Admitted                0                    0                    0
  Denied                  0                    0                    0
  Active flows             0
To subscriber:
  Admitted                0                    0                    0
  Denied                  0                    0                    0
  Active flows             0
Flow counts:
  Terminated             0
  Short duration           0
  Med duration             0
  Long duration            0
Total flow duration : 0 seconds
-----
Top App-Groups            Octets                Packets                Flows
-----
None
-----
Application Service Options (ASO)
-----
Characteristic            Value                Derived from
-----
permitDNS                  yes                  default
permitRDP                  yes                  default
permitHTTP                 yes                  default
=====
*A:BNG-1>show>app-assure>group#

```

After the PCRF sends out AppProfile and ASO override AVPs, using either PCC or ADC rules, in RAR messages (as shown below) it can be seen that the new parameters (new profile and new values for permitDNS and permitHTTP ASOs) are updated for that ESM subscriber.

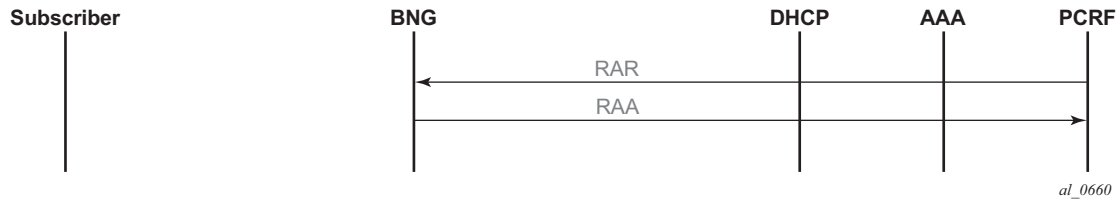


Figure 37: PCRF AVPs Override Call Flow Diagram

```

adc-rule-install (1092) V----- [184]
  vendor-id TGPP
  data [172] (Grouped)
    adc-rule-definition (1094) V----- [172]
      vendor-id TGPP
      data [160] (Grouped)
        adc-rule-name (1096) V----- [32]
          vendor-id TGPP
          data [20] (UTF8String) : aa-functions:appprof
      AA-Functions (1001) V----- [128]
        vendor-id ALU
        data [116] (Grouped)
          AA-Profile-Name (1002) V----- [17]
            vendor-id ALU
            data [5] (UTF8String) : app_prof 2
          AA-App-Service-Options (1003) V----- [48]
            vendor-id ALU
            data [36] (Grouped)
              AA-App-Serv-Options-Name (1004) V----- [17]
                vendor-id ALU
                data [5] (UTF8String) : permitDNS
              AA-App-Serv-Options-Value (1005) V----- [16]
                vendor-id ALU
                data [4] (UTF8String) : no
            AA-App-Service-Options (1003) V----- [48]
              vendor-id ALU
              data [36] (Grouped)
                AA-App-Serv-Options-Name (1004) V----- [18]
                  vendor-id ALU
                  data [6] (UTF8String) : permitHTTP
                AA-App-Serv-Options-Value (1005) V----- [14]
                  vendor-id ALU
                  data [2] (UTF8String) : no
  
```

al_0661

Figure 38: RAR Containing ASOs and AppProfile Override AVPs Example

```

*A:BNG-1>show>app-assure>group# aa-sub esm "sub_172.16.0.2" summary
=====
Application-Assurance Subscriber Summary (realtime)
=====
AA-Subscriber      : sub_172.16.0.2 (esm)
ISA assigned       : 3/2
App-Profile        : app_prof_2
App-Profile divert : Yes
Capacity cost      : 1
  
```

Aarp Instance Id : N/A
 HTTP URL Parameters : (Not Specified)
 Last HTTP Notified Time : N/A

Traffic	Octets	Packets	Flows

From subscriber:			
Admitted	0	0	0
Denied	0	0	0
Active flows			0
To subscriber:			
Admitted	0	0	0
Denied	0	0	0
Active flows			0
Flow counts:			
Terminated			0
Short duration			0
Med duration			0
Long duration			0
Total flow duration :	0 seconds		

Top App-Groups	Octets	Packets	Flows

None			

Application Service Options (ASO)

Characteristic	Value	Derived from
permitDNS	no	dyn-override
permitRDP	yes	default
permitHTTP	no	dyn-override

Step 4. Configuring AA Usage Monitoring

Once the applications, application groups and/or charging groups are defined and configured (see previous steps), the operator needs:

- to enable the collection of per-subscriber statistics so they can be used for Gx based usage-monitoring. This step is not needed for any app/appgrp or charging group that is already enabled for per-subscriber statistics. In other words, if XML or RADIUS accounting is enabled for a given app/appgrp or charging group, then Gx usage-monitoring is also automatically enabled.
- to enable usage-monitoring for the given AA group:partition.

```
config
  application-assurance
    group 129:34883
      statistics
        aa-sub
          usage-monitoring
          app-group "Unknown" export-using accounting-policy
                                   radius-accounting-policy
          charging-group "0_rated" export-using accounting-policy
                                   radius-accounting-policy
          charging-group "default_charge_group" export-using
                                   accounting-policy
          radius-accounting-policy
          application "BitTorrent" no-export
        exit
```

In the example above:

- The usage-monitoring command is used to enable Gx usage monitoring for the specified AA partition.
- The aa-group and charging-group commands specify which charging groups and AA groups are selected for export. In this case *0-rated*, *Unknown*, and *default-charging-group* are selected for RADIUS accounting and they automatically qualify for Gx-usage monitoring.
- The BitTorrent application however needs to be explicitly configured as “no-export” as it needs to be enabled for Gx-usage monitoring.

The operator can display the number of usage monitoring rules for a given subscriber. This is shown below after the ESM subscriber is created, but before any ADC rules are installed for usage-monitoring by PCRF, so AA reports that no rules apply (“0”).

```
*A:BNG-1>show>app-assure>group# aa-sub esm "alcatel_A_1" usage-monitor status
=====
Application-Assurance Subscriber "alcatel_A_1" (esm)
Usage Monitor Status
=====
```

Type	Name	Oper Status


```
-----
-----
No. of rules: 0
=====
```

```
*A:BNG-1>show>app-assure>group#
```

The PCRF then sends a RAR message with a usage monitoring ADC or PCC rule for the BitTorrent application to set the usage thresholds for BitTorrent for the ESM subscriber “alcatel_A_1” to (in bytes):

Input (from sub)	1378168
Output (to sub)	1381148
Total traffic (up and down)	18446744073709551614

```
adc-rule-install (1092) V----- [96]
  vendor-id TGPP
  data [84] (Grouped)
    adc-rule-definition (1094) V----- [84]
      vendor-id TGPP
      data [72] (Grouped)
        adc-rule-name (1096) V----- [20]
          vendore-id TGPP
          data [8] (UTF8String) whatever
          tdf-application-id (1088) V-----[22]
            vendor-id ALU
            data [10] (UTF8String) : BitTorrent
            monitoring-key (1066) V----- [25]
              vendor-id TGPP
              data [13] (UTF8String) : torrentmonkey

usage-monitoring-information (1067) V----- [80]
  vendor-id TGPP
  data [68] (Grouped)
    monitoring-key (1066) V----- [25]
      vendor-id TGPP
      data [13] (UTF8String) : torrentmonkey
    granted-service-units (431) ----- [24]
      data [16] (Grouped)
        cc-input-octets (412) ----- [16]
          data [8] (Unsigned64) : 1378168
        cc-output-octets (414) ----- [16]
          data [8] (Unsigned64) : 1378168
        cc-total-octets (421) ----- [16]
          data [8] (Unsigned64) : 18446744073709551614
    monitoring-key (1068) V----- [16]
      vendor-id TGPP
      data [4] (Enumerated) : 2 : ADC RULE LEVEL
```

al_0662

Figure 39: RAR Containing Usage Monitoring ADC Rules Example

This is then reflected on the AA-ISA:

```
*A:BNG-1>show>app-assure>group# aa-sub esm "alcatel_A_1" usage-monitor status
=====
Application-Assurance Subscriber "alcatel_A_1" (esm)
Usage Monitor Status
=====
Type                Name                Oper Status
-----
application         BitTorrent                active
-----
No. of rules: 1
=====
*A:BNG-1>show>app-assure>group#
```

Note the “active” oper status is set since there is at least one usage monitoring threshold associated with this application.

Given that there is no traffic flowing yet to or from the subscriber the counters currently are “0”:

```
*A:BNG-1>show>app-assure>group# aa-sub esm "alcatel_A_1" usage-monitor count
=====
Application-Assurance Subscriber "alcatel_A_1" (esm)
Usage Monitor Credit Statistics
=====
Application: "BitTorrent"
Direction      Status                Granted                Used      % Used
-----
to sub         valid                1378168                0          0%
from sub       valid                1381148                0          0%
both           valid                18446744073709551614  0          0%
=====
*A:BNG-1>show>app-assure>group#
```

The status is set to “valid” since a threshold (or Grant) is received.

When, at a later stage, traffic starts flowing again usage-monitor subscriber statistics are updated as shown below.

```
*A:BNG-1>show>app-assure>group# aa-sub esm "alcatel_A_1" usage-monitor count
=====
Application-Assurance Subscriber "alcatel_A_1" (esm)
Usage Monitor Credit Statistics
=====
Application: "BitTorrent"
Direction      Status                Granted                Used      % Used
-----
to sub         valid                1378168                137816     10%
from sub       valid                1381148                13781      1%
both           valid                18446744073709551614  151597     5%
=====
*A:BNG-1>show>app-assure>group#
```

The PCRF can also at the same time set ADC or PCC rules for other applications (such as the *0_rated* and the *default_charging_group* charging groups).

In the following case, the PCRF installs an ADC usage monitoring rule for:

- Charging group: “0-rated”, but without usage thresholds
- Charging group: “default_charge_group”, and sets only a threshold for “to sub” traffic.

This results in having a usage policy for the “0-rated” charging group installed but this is not active since there are no grants associated with it:

```
*A:BNG-1>show>app-assure>group# aa-sub esm "alcatel_A_1" usage-monitor status
=====
Application-Assurance Subscriber "alcatel_A_1" (esm)
Usage Monitor Status
=====
Type                Name                Oper Status
-----
application         BitTorrent          active
charging-group      0_rated             inactive
charging-group      default_charge_group active
-----
No. of rules: 3
=====
*A:BNG-1>show>app-assure>group#
```

Note that the “inactive” status for the “0-rated” charging group is due to no grants being received.

Moreover, detailed counters show:

```
*A:BNG-1>show>app-assure>group# aa-sub esm "alcatel_A_1" usage-monitor count
=====
Application-Assurance Subscriber "alcatel_A_1" (esm)
Usage Monitor Credit Statistics
=====
Application: "BitTorrent"
Direction  Status      Granted      Used      % Used
-----
to sub     valid       1378168      137816    10%
from sub   valid       1381148      13781     1%
both       valid       18446744073709551614  151597    5%
-----
Charging-Group: "0_rated"
Direction  Status      Granted      Used      % Used
-----
to sub     invalid     n/a          0         n/a
from sub   invalid     n/a          0         n/a
both       invalid     n/a          0         n/a
-----
Charging-Group: "default_charge_group"
Direction  Status      Granted      Used      % Used
-----
to sub     valid       1000000      1378084    100%
from sub   invalid     n/a          1574      n/a
```

Configuration

```
both          invalid          n/a          1379658          n/a
=====
*A:BNG-1>show>app-assure>group#
```

Again, the “invalid” status above reflects the fact that no grants have been received.

Conclusion

The introduction of the diameter (/Gx) control feature on the 7x50 BNG enables operators to consolidate policy management systems used in wire-line and wireless environments into a single system. This provides an increase in operational efficiency as mobile and fixed networks convergence gains more traction.

This example illustrates how policy control and usage monitoring of the 7x50 BNG Application Assurance services can be achieved over standard 3GPP Diameter Gx protocol.

Deterministic Large Scale NAT44

In This Chapter

This section provides information about deterministic large scale NAT44 configurations.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 244](#)
- [Overview on page 245](#)
- [Configuration on page 249](#)
- [Conclusion on page 282](#)

Applicability

This example is applicable to 7750 SR systems and 7450 ESS systems in mixed mode equipped with an MS-ISA on an IOM3-XP/XP-b using chassis mode B, C or D.

The configuration was tested on release 11.0R3.

Overview

Deterministic Network Address Translation (NAT) is a mode of operation where mappings between the NAT subscriber and the outside IP address and port range are allocated at the time of configuration.

In deterministic NAT for Large Scale NAT IPv4-to-IPv4 (LSN44) subscribers, each LSN44 subscriber is permanently mapped to an outside IP address and a dedicated (deterministic) port-block based on a specific algorithm.

Logging is not needed in this case as the reverse mapping can be obtained using the reverse of the above algorithm.

A deterministic LSN44 subscriber can have only one deterministic port-block that can (optionally) be extended by one or multiple dynamic port-blocks in case all ports in deterministic port-block are exhausted.

In case an LSN44 subscriber has been assigned both deterministic and dynamic port blocks, logging for the dynamic port-block allocation/de-allocation is required.

A scalable logging solution for dynamic port-blocks is achievable using RADIUS or IPFIX.

Logging for dynamic port-blocks is out of the scope of this example.

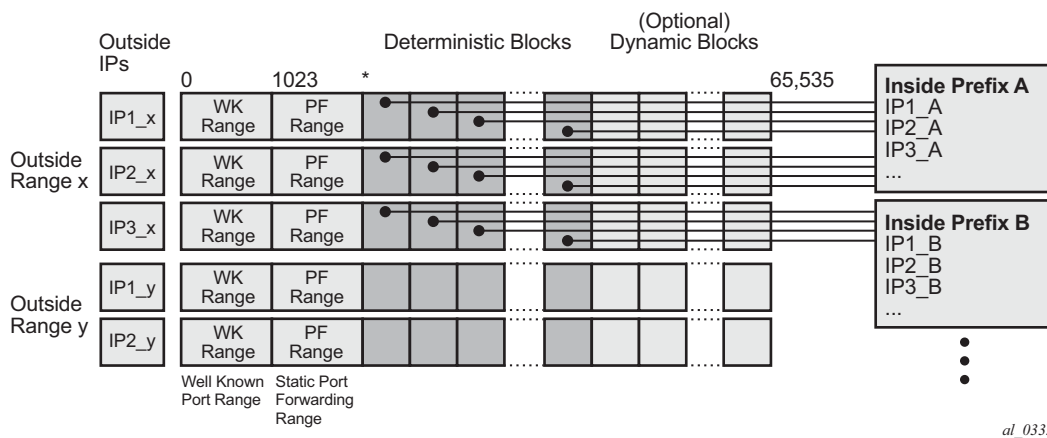


Figure 40: Deterministic NAT Mapping

Algorithm

The deterministic NAT algorithm makes a predictable mapping between the (inside IP, routing instance) and the (outside IP, routing instance, deterministic port block).

The algorithm is revertive, meaning that a given (outside IP, routing instance, deterministic port block) will derive a given (Inside IP, Routing Instance).

The algorithm is loosely based on the draft RFC draft-donley-behave-deterministic-cgn-00.txt, which allows for the dynamic expansion of the port-blocks once the ports in the original deterministic port-block are exhausted.

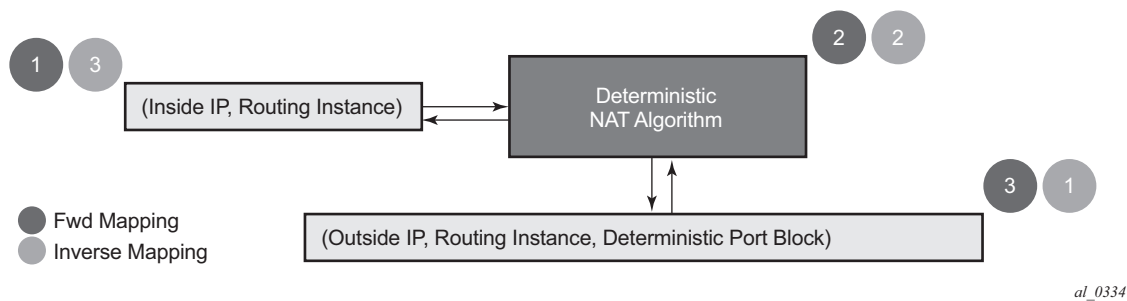
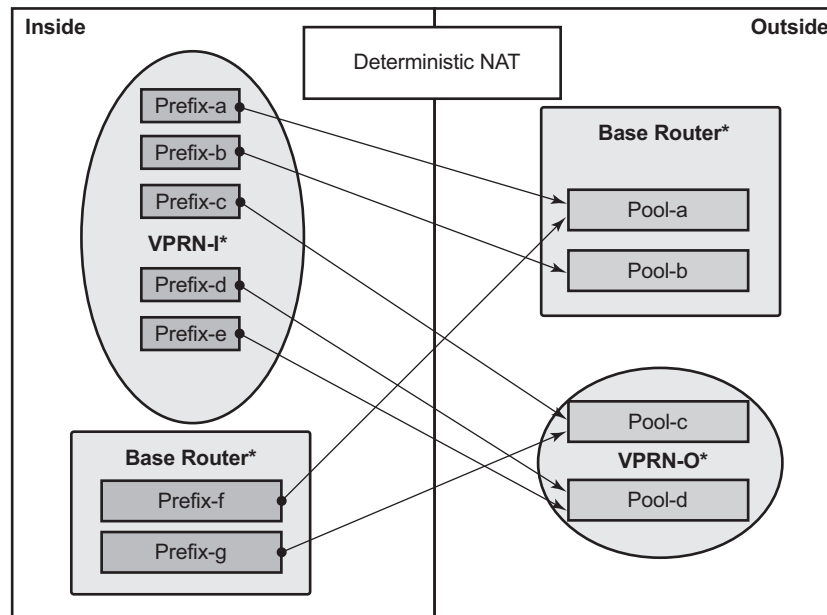


Figure 41: Deterministic NAT Algorithm

Deterministic Mapping

Any inside prefix in any routing instance can be mapped to any pool in any routing instance.

In deterministic NAT, prefixes from multiple routing instances can be mapped to the same outside pool, also prefixes from a single inside routing instance can be selectively mapped to different outside pools.



* Routing-Based NAT cannot be used if inside/outside routing instances are the same

al_0335

Figure 42: Deterministic Mapping: Inside -> Outside Routing Instances

Mapping Rules

A deterministic LSN44 subscriber is mapped to only one deterministic block which can further be extended to multiple dynamic blocks if ports within the deterministic block are exhausted.

The subscriber-limit is the number of subscribers that can be deterministically mapped to an outside IP address (i.e. compression ratio) and **MUST** be a power of 2.

The total number of deterministic ports (DetP) per outside IP address is determined by the number of subscribers per outside IP address and the number of deterministic ports per subscriber.

The remaining ports (DynP) beyond the deterministic port range up to 65535 will be dedicated for dynamic use when a deterministic block is exhausted.

Every host using an inside prefix is guaranteed one dedicate block in the deterministic port ranges.

If the inside prefix length is $m < 32-n$, where $2^n = \text{subscriber-limit}$, then the prefix must be broken into pieces so that all hosts (subscriber-limit) in each piece maps exactly to one outside IP address.

- For example, if there is an inside prefix 192.168.0.0/23, here $m=23$; and the subscriber-limit is also set to 256, then $n=8$. This results in $23 < 24$ ($32-8$) and so this inside prefix has to be broken into 2 pieces, in other words this inside prefix will fit into 2 outside IP addresses, each of 256 port-blocks.

In case that the prefix length is $m \geq 32-n$, where $2^n = \text{subscriber-limit}$, then all hosts from the configured prefix are mapped to the same outside IP.

- For example, if there is an inside prefix 192.168.1.0/25, here $m=25$ and there can be at most 128 hosts, and the subscriber-limit is set to 256, then $n=8$. This results in $25 > 24$ ($32-8$), so definitely 128 hosts can fit in one outside IP as there are 256 available port-blocks, in other words this inside prefix will fit into one outside IP where 128 blocks have been used out of the 256 port-blocks available, and the rest (256-128) are wasted.

Overbooking of the outside address pool is not supported in deterministic NAT.

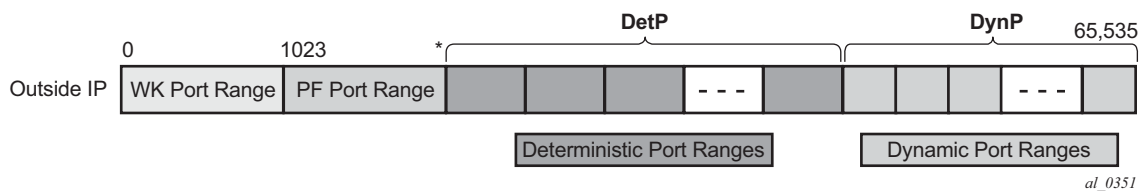
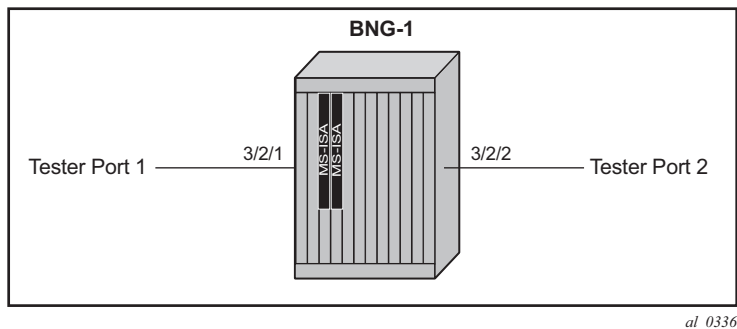


Figure 43: Deterministic Mapping: Outside IP Port-Blocks/Ranges

Configuration



al_0336

Figure 44: Test Topology

Configuration Pre-Requisites

Chassis mode, card, and MDA configuration.

```
configure
  system
    chassis-mode d
  exit all

configure
  card 3
    card-type iom3-xp
    mda 1
      mda-type isa-bb
      no shutdown
    exit
    no shutdown
  exit
  card 4
    card-type iom3-xp
    mda 1
      mda-type isa-bb
      no shutdown
    exit
    no shutdown
  exit all
```

Note: Private address ranges are used in outside pools within this example but normally public address ranges would be used.

Configure a NAT group

Create the nat-group, and add the MS-ISAs created above to the nat-group; up to 10 MS-ISAs of type isa-bb can be configured under the nat-group.

```
configure isa
    nat-group 1 create
        active-mda-limit 2
        mda 3/1
        mda 4/1
        no shutdown
exit all
```

Configuration Commands

A NAT **outside pool** is configured using the following command:

```
configure {router | service vprn <service-id>}
    nat
        outside
            pool <nat-pool-name> [nat-group <nat-group-id> type <pool-type> create]
                port-reservation {blocks <num-blocks> | ports <num-ports>}
                port-forwarding-range <range-end>
                subscriber-limit <subscriber-limit>
                deterministic
                port-reservation <num-ports>
            exit
                address-range <start-ip-address> <end-ip-address> create
            exit
        exit
    exit
exit
```

where:

nat-pool-name — Specifies the name of the NAT pool up to 32 characters max.

nat-group-id — Specifies the NAT group ID. The values are 1 — 4.

pool-type — Species the pool type (**large-scale**).

num-blocks — Specifies the number of port-blocks per IP address. Setting num-blocks to one (1) for large scale NAT will enable 1:1 NAT for IP addresses in this pool The values are 1 — 64512

num-ports — Specifies the number of ports per block. The values are 1 — 32256

range-end — Specifies the end of the port range available for port forwarding. The values are 1023 — 65535

subscriber-limit — Specifies the maximum number of subscribers per IP address.

A power of 2 (2^n) number for deterministic NAT

[1,2,4,8,16,32,64,128,256,512,1024,2048, 4096, 8192,16384, 32768]

1..65535 for non-deterministic NAT

default: 65535 for non-deterministic

num-ports — Specifies the number of ports in a deterministic port block that is allocated and dedicated to a single subscribers during the configuration phase. The values are 1..65535

start-ip-address — Specifies the beginning IP address in a.b.c.d form.

end-ip-address — Specifies the ending IP address in a.b.c.d. form.

Notes:

→ When the subscriber-limit equals 1, each subscriber is mapped to a single outside IP address, though the NAPT (port translation) function is still performed.

→ 1:1 NAT mode in combination with deterministic NAT is not supported.

A NAT **policy** is configured using the following command:

```
configure service nat
nat-policy <nat-policy-name> [create]
  block-limit <[1..40]>
  pool <nat-pool-name> {router <router-instance> | service-name <service-name>}
exit
```

where:

nat-policy-name — Specifies the NAT policy name up to 32 characters max.

block-limit —The max number of deterministic plus dynamic port blocks that can be assigned to a single inside IP address. In other words, the maximum number of dynamic port blocks that can be assigned to an inside IP address when the deterministic port block is exhausted equals (block-limit - 1).

nat-pool-name — Specifies the NAT pool name up to 32 characters max.

router-instance — Specifies the router instance the pool belongs to, either by router name or service ID. : <router-name>|<service-id>

The router name values are **Base** or *service-id* [1..2147483647]

service-name — Specifies the name of the service up to 64 characters max.

A NAT **inside prefix** is configured using the following command:

```
configure [router| service vprn <service-id>]
  nat
    inside
      deterministic
        classic-lsn-max-subscriber-limit <max>
        prefix <ip-prefix/length> subscriber-type <nat-sub-type> nat-policy <nat-policy-
name> create
          map start <lsn-sub-address> end <lsn-sub-address> to <outside-ip-address>
          no shutdown
          exit
        exit
      exit
    exit
  exit
```

where:

max — The power of 2 (2^n) number that must match the largest subscriber limit number in a deterministic pool referenced from this inside routing instance. The range for this command is the same as the subscriber-limit command under the pool hierarchy. The values are 1,2,4,8 — 2768

ip-prefix/length — A prefix on the inside encompassing subscribers that will be deterministically mapped to an outside IP address and port block in the corresponding pool.

<i><ip-prefix/ip-pref*></i>	<i><ipv4-prefix>/<ipv4-prefix-length> |</i> <i><ipv6-prefix>/<ipv6-prefix-length></i>
<i><ipv4-prefix></i>	a.b.c.d (host bits must be 0)
<i><ipv4-prefix-length></i>	[0..32]
<i><ipv6-prefix></i>	x:x:x:x:x:x:x (eight 16-bit pieces) x:x:x:x:x:x:d.d.d.d x - [0..FFFF]H d - [0..255]D
<i><ipv6-prefix-length></i>	[0..128]
<i><nat-sub-type></i> :	classic-lsn-sub
<i><nat-policy-name></i>	Specifies a NAT policy name up to 32 characters in length.

- classic-lsn-max-subscriber-limit:
 - Should be greater than the largest subscriber-limit of all pools referenced by the NAT policies within the corresponding inside routing instance.
 - Must be configured before any inside prefix configuration.
 - Must be 2^n and affects the ingress hashing of deterministic subscribers and also non-deterministic subscribers in case both are configured under the same inside router instance.

Three cases are now configured to demonstrate the use of deterministic and dynamic port-block usage:

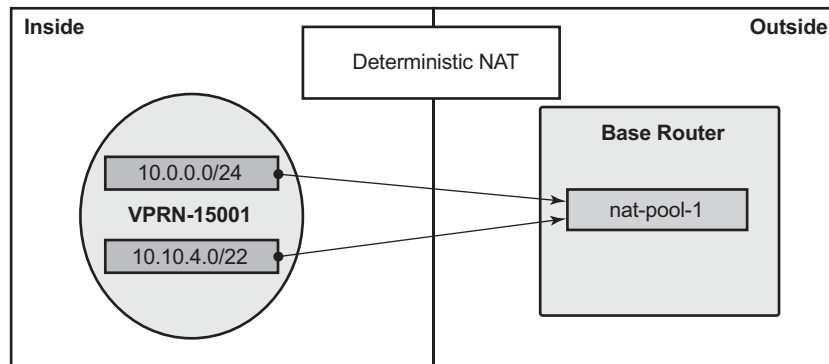
- [Case 1 on page 254](#): Mapping multiple prefixes from the same VRF into the same outside pool.
- [Case 2 on page 264](#): Mapping multiple prefixes from the same VRF into different outside pools.
- [Case 3 on page 271](#): Mapping overlapping prefixes from different VRFs into the same outside pool.

In each case all of the traffic is NATed.

Case 1

Configured with:

- Mapping multiple prefixes from the same VRF into the same outside pool.
- NAT all traffic.



al_0337

Figure 45: Case 1

The NAT **outside pool** is configured as follows:

```
configure router nat
  outside
    pool "nat-pool-1" nat-group 1 type large-scale create
    port-reservation ports 180
    port-forwarding-range 4023
    subscriber-limit 128
    deterministic
    port-reservation 300
    exit
    address-range 192.168.0.1 192.168.0.100 create
    exit
    no shutdown
exit all
```

The NAT **policy** is configured as follows:

```
configure service nat
  nat-policy "nat-policy-1" create
  block-limit 4
  pool "nat-pool-1" router Base
exit all
```

The NAT **inside prefix** is configured as follows:

```
configure service vprn 15001 nat
    inside
    destination-prefix 0.0.0.0/0
    deterministic
    classic-lsn-max-subscriber-limit 256
    prefix 10.0.0.0/24 subscriber-type classic-lsn-sub
        nat-policy "nat-policy-1" create
        map start 10.0.0.0 end 10.0.0.255 to 192.168.0.1
        no shutdown
    exit
    prefix 10.10.4.0/22 subscriber-type classic-lsn-sub
        nat-policy "nat-policy-1" create
        map start 10.10.4.0 end 10.10.7.255 to 192.168.0.3
        no shutdown
exit all
```

Notes:

- The **classic-lsn-max-subscriber-limit** value should be greater or equal to the largest subscriber-limit of all pools referenced by NAT policies within the corresponding inside routing instance. It must be 2^n and affects ingress hashing of deterministic subscribers.
- **map** statements are automatically created when the prefix is created and it is **no shutdown**.

Show commands

- Prefix 10.0.0.0/24
 - Since the subscriber-limit is 128 in this case, the 10.0.0.0/24 prefix will be broken into two smaller prefixes each of /25, each will be mapped into a specific outside IP address.
 - To show Large Scale NAT (LSN) hosts for inside routing instance 15001 for the first /25 prefix and the mapping to which outside IP, the following command can be used:

```
show router 15001 nat lsn-hosts inside-ip-prefix 10.0.0.0/25
=====
Large-Scale NAT hosts for router 15001
=====
Inside IP      Out-Router    Outside IP
-----
10.0.0.0       Base          192.168.0.1
10.0.0.1       Base          192.168.0.1
<snip>
10.0.0.127     Base          192.168.0.1
-----
No. of hosts: 128
=====
```

Configuration Pre-Requisites

To show LSN hosts for the inside routing instance 15001 for the second /25 prefix and the mapping to which outside IP, the following command can be used:

```
show router 15001 nat lsn-hosts inside-ip-prefix 10.0.0.128/25
=====
Large-Scale NAT hosts for router 15001
=====
Inside IP      Out-Router    Outside IP
-----
10.0.0.128     Base         192.168.0.2
10.0.0.129     Base         192.168.0.2
<snip>
10.0.0.255     Base         192.168.0.2
-----
No. of hosts: 128
=====
```

To show LSN blocks on the outside routing instance “Base” for the first inside IP within 10.0.0.0/24 prefix, the following command can be used:

```
show router nat lsn-blocks inside-ip 10.0.0.0
=====
Large-Scale NAT blocks for Base
=====
192.168.0.1 [4024..4323]
Pool                                : nat-pool-1
Policy                             : nat-policy-1
Started                             : 2013/07/21 09:30:20
Inside router                       : vprn15001
Inside IP address                   : 10.0.0.0
-----
Number of blocks: 1
=====
```

To show LSN blocks on the outside routing instance “Base” for the last inside IP within 10.0.0.0/24 prefix, the following command can be used:

```
show router nat lsn-blocks inside-ip 10.0.0.255
=====
Large-Scale NAT blocks for Base
=====
192.168.0.2 [42124..42423]
Pool                                : nat-pool-1
Policy                             : nat-policy-1
Started                             : 2013/07/21 09:30:20
Inside router                       : vprn15001
Inside IP address                   : 10.0.0.255
-----
Number of blocks: 1
=====
```

→ Prefix 10.10.4.0/22

- Since the subscriber-limit is 128 in this case, the 10.10.4.0/22 prefix will be broken into 8 smaller prefixes each of /25, each will be mapped into a specific outside IP address.
- To show LSN hosts for the inside routing instance 15001 for the first /25 prefix and the mapping to which outside IP, the following command can be used:

```
show router 15001 nat lsn-hosts inside-ip-prefix 10.10.4.0/25
=====
Large-Scale NAT hosts for router 15001
=====
Inside IP          Out-Router      Outside IP
-----
10.10.4.0          Base           192.168.0.3
10.10.4.1          Base           192.168.0.3
<snip>
10.10.4.127        Base           192.168.0.3
-----
No. of hosts: 128
=====
```

To show LSN hosts for the inside routing instance 15001 for the last /25 prefix and the mapping to which outside IP, the following command can be used:

```
show router 15001 nat lsn-hosts inside-ip-prefix 10.10.7.128/25
=====
Large-Scale NAT hosts for router 15001
=====
Inside IP          Out-Router      Outside IP
-----
10.10.7.128        Base           192.168.0.10
10.10.7.129        Base           192.168.0.10
<snip>
10.10.7.255        Base           192.168.0.10
-----
No. of hosts: 128
=====
```

To show LSN blocks on the outside routing instance **Base** for the first inside IP within 10.10.4.0/24 prefix, the following command can be used:

```
show router nat lsn-blocks inside-ip 10.10.4.0
=====
Large-Scale NAT blocks for Base
=====
192.168.0.3 [4024..4323]
Pool                               : nat-pool-1
Policy                             : nat-policy-1
```

Configuration Pre-Requisites

```
Started : 2013/07/21 09:30:20
Inside router : vprn15001
Inside IP address : 10.10.4.0
```

```
-----
Number of blocks: 1
=====
```

To show LSN blocks on the outside routing instance **Base** for the last inside IP within 10.10.4.0/24 prefix, the following command can be used:

```
show router nat lsn-blocks inside-ip 10.10.7.255
=====
Large-Scale NAT blocks for Base
=====
192.168.0.10 [42124..42423]
Pool : nat-pool-1
Policy : nat-policy-1
Started : 2013/07/21 09:30:26
Inside router : vprn15001
Inside IP address : 10.10.7.255
-----
Number of blocks: 1
=====
```

Mapping results

According to this configuration, each inside IP address has one deterministic block of 300 ports and can have up to three dynamic blocks (block-limit = 4) each of 180 ports, allowing a maximum of $300 + 3 * 180 = 840$ flows.

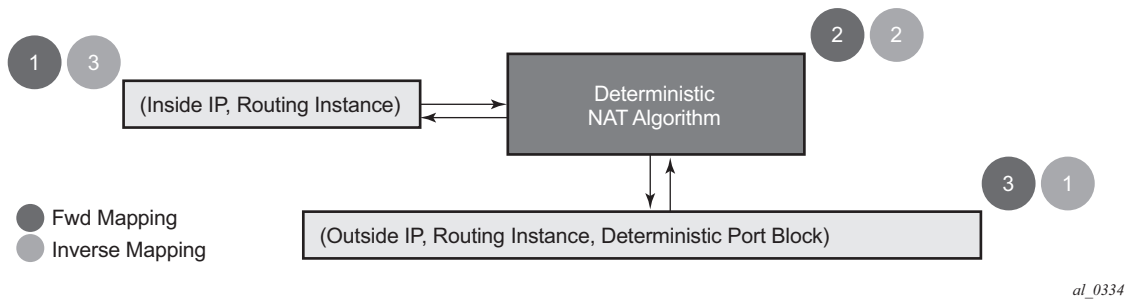


Figure 46: Case 1 Results

Sending Flows

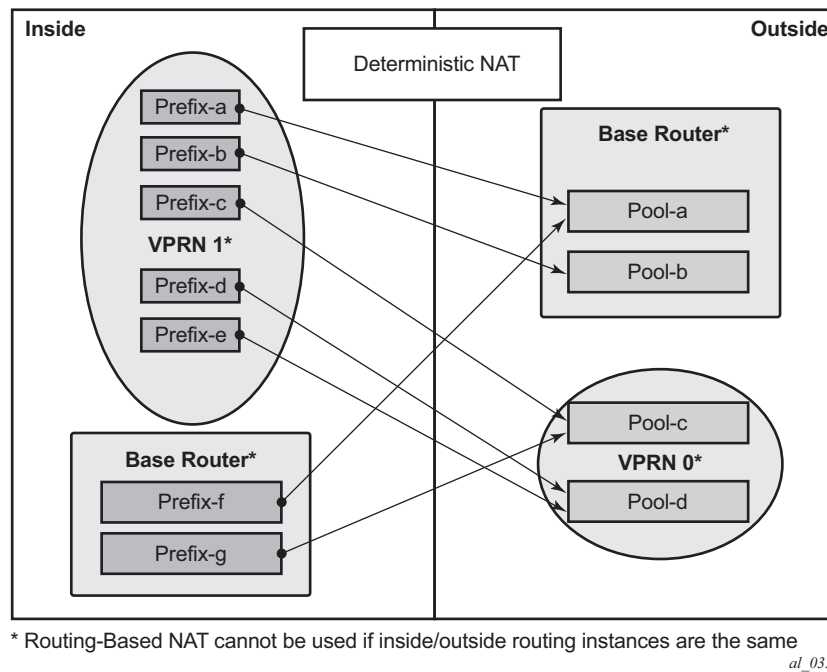


Figure 47: Case 1 Flows

For the inside IP 10.0.0.1 several UDP flows will be sent and both the deterministic and dynamic blocks mappings will be verified.

When sending UDP flows ≤ 300 Flows

- All flows are mapped to a single deterministic block since the number of ports in a deterministic block is 300.
- There is no logging; since no dynamic blocks are used, and only the deterministic block is used.
- To show LSN blocks on the outside routing instance **Base** and the outside ports allocated for the inside IP 10.0.0.1, the following command can be used:

```
show router nat lsn-blocks inside-ip 10.0.0.1
=====
Large-Scale NAT blocks for Base
=====
192.168.0.1 [4324..4623]
Pool                               : nat-pool-1
Policy                             : nat-policy-1
Started                            : 2013/07/21 09:30:20
Inside router                      : vprn15001
Inside IP address                  : 10.0.0.1
-----
Number of blocks: 1
=====
```

When increasing number of flows such that : $301 \leq \text{Flows} \leq 480$

- In addition to the deterministic block (300 ports), there will be an extension by 1 dynamic block of 180 ports (port-reservation=180).
- Logging occurs for the dynamic port-block.
- To show LSN blocks on the outside routing instance **Base** and the outside ports allocated for the inside IP 10.0.0.1, the following command can be used:

```
show router nat lsn-blocks inside-ip 10.0.0.1
=====
Large-Scale NAT blocks for Base
=====
192.168.0.1 [4324..4623]
Pool                               : nat-pool-1
Policy                             : nat-policy-1
Started                            : 2013/07/21 09:30:20
Inside router                      : vprn15001
Inside IP address                  : 10.0.0.1

192.168.0.1 [42424..42603]
Pool                               : nat-pool-1
```



```
Policy                : nat-policy-1
Started               : 2013/07/21 09:33:21
Inside router         : vprn15001
Inside IP address     : 10.0.0.1
```

```
-----
Number of blocks: 2
=====
```

Logging is verified using Log 99 (in case event-control **nat** events are generated) which shows the mapping details to the new dynamic block as follows:

```
137 2013/07/21 09:33:21.90 UTC MINOR: NAT #2012 Base NAT
"{1} Map 192.168.0.1 [42424-42603] MDA 4/1 -- 276824065 classic-lsn-sub vprn15001
10.0.0.1 at 2013/07/21 09:33:21"
```

When increasing number of flows such that: $481 \leq \text{Flows} \leq 660$

- In addition to the deterministic block (300 ports), there will be an extension by 2 dynamic blocks of 180 ports each.
- Logging occurs for the dynamic port-blocks.
- To show LSN blocks on the outside routing instance **Base** and the outside ports allocated for the inside IP 10.0.0.1, the following command is used:

```
show router nat lsn-blocks inside-ip 10.0.0.1
=====
Large-Scale NAT blocks for Base
=====
192.168.0.1 [4324..4623]
Pool                : nat-pool-1
Policy              : nat-policy-1
Started             : 2013/07/21 09:30:20
Inside router       : vprn15001
Inside IP address   : 10.0.0.1

192.168.0.1 [42424..42603]
Pool                : nat-pool-1
Policy              : nat-policy-1
Started             : 2013/07/21 09:33:21
Inside router       : vprn15001
Inside IP address   : 10.0.0.1

192.168.0.1 [42604..42783]
Pool                : nat-pool-1
Policy              : nat-policy-1
Started             : 2013/07/21 09:35:44
Inside router       : vprn15001
Inside IP address   : 10.0.0.1
-----
Number of blocks: 3
=====
```

Logging is verified using Log 99 (in case event-control **nat** events are generated) which shows the mapping details to the new dynamic block as follows:

```
138 2013/07/21 09:35:44.20 UTC MINOR: NAT #2012 Base NAT
"{2} Map 192.168.0.1 [42604-42783] MDA 4/1 -- 276824065 classic-lsn-sub vprn15001
10.0.0.1 at 2013/07/21 09:35:44"
```

When increasing number of flows such that $:661 \leq \text{Flows} \leq 840$

- In addition to the deterministic block (300 ports), there will be an extension by 3 dynamic blocks of 180 ports each.
- Logging occurs for the dynamic port-blocks.
- To show LSN blocks on the outside routing instance “Base” and the outside ports allocated for the inside IP 10.0.0.1, the following command can be used:

```
show router nat lsn-blocks inside-ip 10.0.0.1
=====
Large-Scale NAT blocks for Base
=====
192.168.0.1 [4324..4623]
Pool                               : nat-pool-1
Policy                             : nat-policy-1
Started                           : 2013/07/21 09:30:20
Inside router                      : vprn15001
Inside IP address                  : 10.0.0.1

192.168.0.1 [42424..42603]
Pool                               : nat-pool-1
Policy                             : nat-policy-1
Started                           : 2013/07/21 09:33:21
Inside router                      : vprn15001
Inside IP address                  : 10.0.0.1

192.168.0.1 [42604..42783]
Pool                               : nat-pool-1
Policy                             : nat-policy-1
Started                           : 2013/07/21 09:35:44
Inside router                      : vprn15001
Inside IP address                  : 10.0.0.1

192.168.0.1 [42784..42963]
Pool                               : nat-pool-1
Policy                             : nat-policy-1
Started                           : 2013/07/21 09:37:08
Inside router                      : vprn15001
Inside IP address                  : 10.0.0.1
-----
Number of blocks: 4
=====
```

Logging is verified using Log 99 (in case event-control **nat** events are generated) which shows the mapping details to the new dynamic block as follows:

```
139 2013/07/21 09:37:08.10 UTC MINOR: NAT #2012 Base NAT
"{3} Map 192.168.0.1 [42784-42963] MDA 4/1 -- 276824065 classic-lsn-sub vprn15001
10.0.0.1 at 2013/07/21 09:37:08"
```

When increasing number of flows such that :Flows > 840

- No more extension by dynamic blocks (block-limit = 4) allowed.
- Any flows more than 840 will be dropped and the relevant NAT statistics incremented.
- To verify NAT statistics, firstly check the NAT group/member and MS-ISA associated with the outside IP 192.168.0.1/32:

```
show router route-table 192.168.0.1/32
=====
Route Table (Router: Base)
=====
Dest Prefix[Flags]                                Type    Proto    Age          Pref
      Next Hop[Interface Name]                      Metric
-----
192.168.0.1/32                                     Remote  NAT      00h07m50s    0
      NAT outside to mda 4/1                          0
-----
No. of Routes: 1
Flags: L = LFA nexthop available    B = BGP backup route available
      n = Number of times nexthop is repeated
=====
```

To check which group/member does this MS-ISA belong to, the following command can be used:

```
show isa nat-group 1 members
=====
ISA Group 1 members
=====
Group Member    State      Mda  Addresses  Blocks    Se-% Hi Se-Prio
-----
1      1      active    3/1  4          1024      < 1  N  0
1      2      active    4/1  6          1536      < 1  N  0
-----
No. of members: 2
=====
```

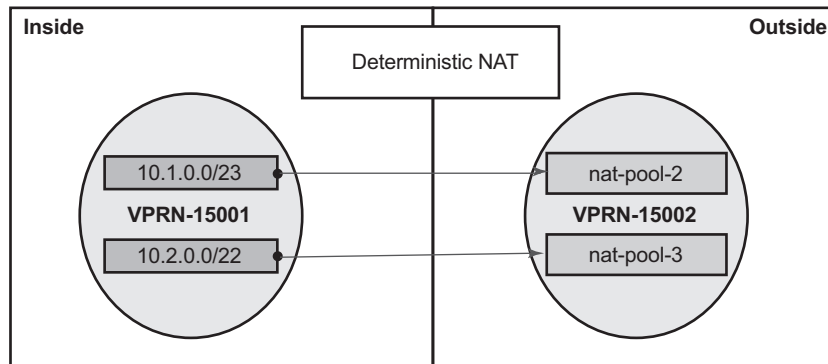
To verify relevant statistics for this NAT group/member, the following command can be used:

```
show isa nat-group 1 member 2 statistics | match "no ip or port"
no ip or port                                     : 2135
```

Case 2

Configured with:

- Mapping multiple prefixes from the same VRF into different outside pools.
- NAT all traffic.



al_0340

Figure 48: Case 2

The NAT **outside pools** are configured as follows:

```
configure service vprn 15002 nat
  outside
    pool "nat-pool-2" nat-group 1 type large-scale create
      port-reservation ports 80
      subscriber-limit 256
      deterministic
      port-reservation 180
    exit
    address-range 192.168.2.1 192.168.2.200 create
    exit
    no shutdown
  exit
  pool "nat-pool-3" nat-group 1 type large-scale create
    port-reservation ports 120
    port-forwarding-range 4023
    subscriber-limit 64
    deterministic
    port-reservation 840
  exit
  address-range 192.168.3.1 192.168.3.200 create
  exit
  no shutdown
exit all
```

The NAT **policies** are configured as follows:

```
configure service nat
    nat-policy "nat-policy-2" create
        block-limit 4
        pool "nat-pool-2" router 15002
    exit
    nat-policy "nat-policy-3" create
        block-limit 2
        pool "nat-pool-3" router 15002
    exit
exit all
```

The NAT **inside prefix** is configured as follows:

```
configure service vprn 15001 nat
    inside
        destination-prefix 0.0.0.0/0
        deterministic
        classic-lsn-max-subscriber-limit 256
        prefix 10.1.0.0/23 subscriber-type classic-lsn-sub
            nat-policy "nat-policy-2" create
            map start 10.1.0.0 end 10.1.1.255 to 192.168.2.1
            no shutdown
        exit
        prefix 10.2.0.0/22 subscriber-type classic-lsn-sub
            nat-policy "nat-policy-3" create
            map start 10.2.0.0 end 10.2.3.255 to 192.168.3.1
            no shutdown
    exit
exit all
```

Show commands

- Prefix 10.1.0.0/23
 - Since the subscriber-limit is 256 in this case, the 10.1.0.0/23 prefix will be broken into two smaller prefixes each of /24, each will be mapped into a specific outside IP address.
 - To show Large Scale NAT (LSN) hosts for the inside routing instance 15001 for the first /24 prefix and the mapping to which outside IP, the following command can be used:

```
show router 15001 nat lsn-hosts inside-ip-prefix 10.1.0.0/24
=====
Large-Scale NAT hosts for router 15001
=====
Inside IP      Out-Router    Outside IP
-----
10.1.0.0       15002         192.168.2.1
```

Configuration Pre-Requisites

```
10.1.0.1          15002          192.168.2.1
<snip>
10.1.0.255        15002          192.168.2.1
-----
No. of hosts: 256
=====
```

To show LSN hosts for the inside routing instance 15001 for the second /24 prefix and the mapping to which outside IP, the following command can be used:

```
show router 15001 nat lsn-hosts inside-ip-prefix 10.1.1.0/24
=====
Large-Scale NAT hosts for router 15001
=====
Inside IP      Out-Router  Outside IP
-----
10.1.1.0       15002       192.168.2.2
10.1.1.1       15002       192.168.2.2
<snip>
10.1.1.255     15002       192.168.2.2
-----
No. of hosts: 256
=====
```

To show LSN blocks on the outside routing instance 15002 for the first inside IP within 10.1.0.0/23 prefix, the following command can be used:

```
show router 15002 nat lsn-blocks inside-ip 10.1.0.0
=====
Large-Scale NAT blocks for vprn15002
=====
192.168.2.1 [1024..1203]
Pool                               : nat-pool-2
Policy                             : nat-policy-2
Started                            : 2013/07/21 09:55:49
Inside router                       : vprn15001
Inside IP address                   : 10.1.0.0
-----
Number of blocks: 1
=====
```

To show LSN blocks on the outside routing instance 15002 for the last inside IP within 10.1.0.0/23 prefix, the following command can be used:

```
show router 15002 nat lsn-blocks inside-ip 10.1.1.255
=====
Large-Scale NAT blocks for vprn15002
=====
192.168.2.2 [46924..47103]
Pool                               : nat-pool-2
Policy                             : nat-policy-2
Started                            : 2013/07/21 09:55:49
Inside router                       : vprn15001
Inside IP address                   : 10.1.1.255
```

```
-----
Number of blocks: 1
=====
```

- Prefix 10.2.0.0/22
 - Since the subscriber-limit is 64 in this case, the 10.2.0.0/22 prefix will be broken into 16 smaller prefixes each of /26, each will be mapped into a specific outside IP address.
 - To show LSN hosts for the inside routing instance 15001 for the first /26 prefix and the mapping to which outside IP, the following command can be used:

```
show router 15001 nat lsn-hosts inside-ip-prefix 10.2.0.0/26
=====
Large-Scale NAT hosts for router 15001
=====
Inside IP      Out-Router    Outside IP
-----
10.2.0.0       15002         192.168.3.1
10.2.0.1       15002         192.168.3.1
<snip>
10.2.0.63      15002         192.168.3.1
-----
No. of hosts: 64
=====
```

To show LSN hosts for the inside routing instance 15001 for last /26 prefix and mapping to which outside IP, the following command can be used:

```
show router 15001 nat lsn-hosts inside-ip-prefix 10.2.3.192/26
=====
Large-Scale NAT hosts for router 15001
=====
Inside IP      Out-Router    Outside IP
-----
10.2.3.192     15002         192.168.3.16
10.2.3.193     15002         192.168.3.16
<snip>
10.2.3.255     15002         192.168.3.16
-----
No. of hosts: 64
=====
```

Configuration Pre-Requisites

To show LSN blocks on the outside routing instance 15002 for the first inside IP within 10.2.0.0/22 prefix, the following command can be used:

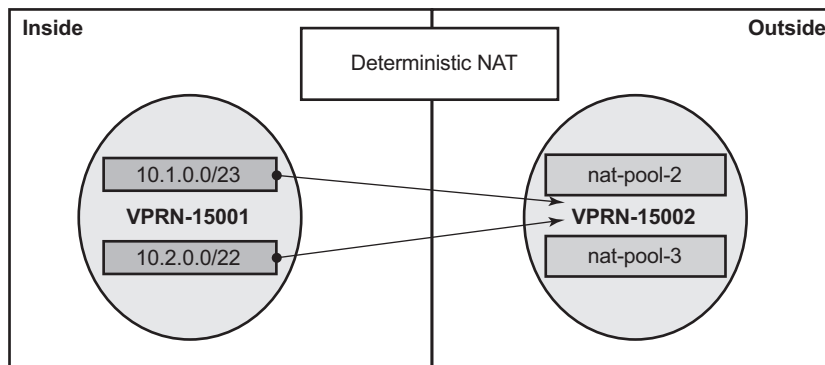
```
show router 15002 nat lsn-blocks inside-ip 10.2.0.0
=====
Large-Scale NAT blocks for vprn15002
=====
192.168.3.1 [4024..4863]
Pool                               : nat-pool-3
Policy                             : nat-policy-3
Started                           : 2013/07/21 09:56:23
Inside router                      : vprn15001
Inside IP address                  : 10.2.0.0
-----
Number of blocks: 1
=====
```

To show LSN blocks on the outside routing instance 15002 for the last inside IP within 10.2.0.0/22 prefix, the following command can be used:

```
show router 15002 nat lsn-blocks inside-ip 10.2.3.255
=====
Large-Scale NAT blocks for vprn15002
=====
192.168.3.16 [56944..57783]
Pool                               : nat-pool-3
Policy                             : nat-policy-3
Started                           : 2013/07/21 09:56:23
Inside router                      : vprn15001
Inside IP address                  : 10.2.3.255
-----
Number of blocks: 1
=====
```


Mapping results

- Prefix 10.1.0.0/23
 - According to this configuration, each inside IP address has one deterministic block of 180 ports and can have up to three dynamic blocks (block-limit =4) each of 80 ports, allowing a maximum of $180+3*80 = 420$ flows.
- Prefix 10.2.0.0/22
 - According to this configuration, each inside IP address has one deterministic block of 840 ports, and can have up to one dynamic block (block-limit =2) of 120 ports, allowing a maximum of $840+120 = 960$ flows.



al_0340

Figure 49: Case 2 Prefix 10.1.0.0/23 Results

Configuration Pre-Requisites

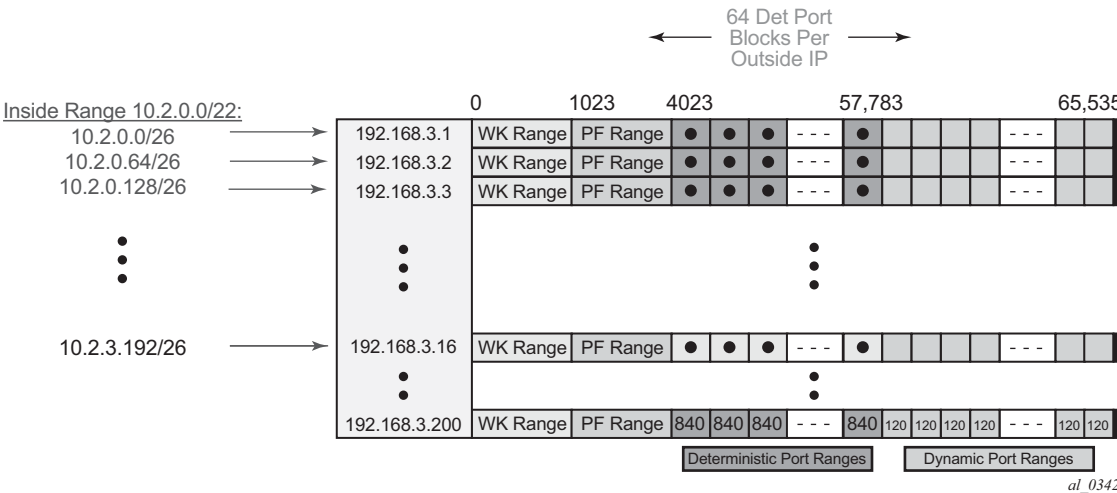
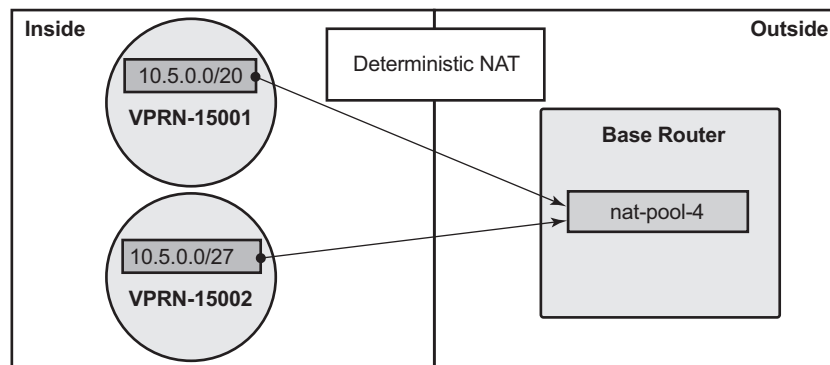


Figure 50: Case 2 Prefix 10.2.0.0/22 Results

Case 3

Configured with:

- Mapping overlapping prefixes from different VRFs into the same outside pool.
- NAT all traffic.



al_0343

Figure 51: Case 3

The NAT **outside pool** is configured as follows:

```
configure router nat
  outside
    pool "nat-pool-4" nat-group 1 type large-scale create
    port-reservation ports 461
    port-forwarding-range 4023
    subscriber-limit 64
    deterministic
    port-reservation 500
  exit
  address-range 192.168.4.1 192.168.4.100 create
  exit
  no shutdown
exit all
```

The NAT **policy** is configured as follows:

```
configure service nat
  nat-policy "nat-policy-4" create
  block-limit 4
  pool "nat-pool-4" router Base
exit all
```

The NAT **inside prefix** is configured as follows:

Configuration Pre-Requisites

```
configure service vprn 15001 nat
  inside
    destination-prefix 0.0.0.0/0
    deterministic
    classic-lsn-max-subscriber-limit 256
    prefix 10.5.0.0/20 subscriber-type classic-lsn-sub
                                nat-policy "nat-policy-4" create
    map start 10.5.0.0 end 10.5.15.255 to 192.168.4.1
    no shutdown
exit all

configure service vprn 15002 nat
  inside
    destination-prefix 0.0.0.0/0
    deterministic
    classic-lsn-max-subscriber-limit 128
    prefix 10.5.0.0/27 subscriber-type classic-lsn-sub
                                nat-policy "nat-policy-4" create
    map start 10.5.0.0 end 10.5.0.31 to 192.168.4.65
    no shutdown
exit all
```

Show commands

- Prefix 10.5.0.0/20 (VPRN 15001)
 - Since the subscriber-limit is 64 in this case, the 10.5.0.0/20 prefix will be broken into 64 smaller prefixes each of /26, each will be mapped into a specific outside IP address.
 - To show Large Scale NAT (LSN) hosts for the inside routing instance 15001 for the first /26 prefix and the mapping to which outside IP, the following command can be used:

```
show router 15001 nat lsn-hosts inside-ip-prefix 10.5.0.0/26
=====
Large-Scale NAT hosts for router 15001
=====
Inside IP      Out-Router      Outside IP
-----
10.5.0.0       Base            192.168.4.1
10.5.0.1       Base            192.168.4.1
<snip>
10.5.0.63      Base            192.168.4.1
-----
No. of hosts: 64
=====
```

To show Large Scale NAT (LSN) hosts for the inside routing instance 15001 for the last /26 prefix and mapping to which outside IP, the following command can be used:

```
show router 15001 nat lsn-hosts inside-ip-prefix 10.5.15.192/26
=====
```

```

Large-Scale NAT hosts for router 15001
=====
Inside IP      Out-Router    Outside IP
-----
10.5.15.192    Base                192.168.4.64
10.5.15.193    Base                192.168.4.64
<snip>
10.5.15.255    Base                192.168.4.64
-----
No. of hosts: 64
=====

```

To show LSN blocks on the outside routing instance **Base** for the first inside IP within 10.5.0.0/20 prefix, the following command can be used:

```

show router nat lsn-blocks inside-ip 10.5.0.0 inside-router 15001
=====
Large-Scale NAT blocks for Base
=====
192.168.4.1 [4024..4523]
Pool                                : nat-pool-4
Policy                              : nat-policy-4
Started                             : 2013/07/21 10:18:39
Inside router                       : vprn15001
Inside IP address                    : 10.5.0.0
-----
Number of blocks: 1
=====

```

To show LSN blocks on the outside routing instance **Base** for the last inside IP within 10.5.0.0/20 prefix, the following command can be used:

```

show router nat lsn-blocks inside-ip 10.5.15.255 inside-router 15001
=====
Large-Scale NAT blocks for Base
=====
192.168.4.64 [35524..36023]
Pool                                : nat-pool-4
Policy                              : nat-policy-4
Started                             : 2013/07/21 10:18:39
Inside router                       : vprn15001
Inside IP address                    : 10.5.15.255
-----
Number of blocks: 1
=====

```

Configuration Pre-Requisites

- Prefix 10.5.0.0/27 (VPRN 15002)
 - Since the subscriber-limit is 64 in this case, the 10.5.0.0/27 prefix will be mapped into one outside IP address.
 - To show LSN hosts for the inside routing instance 15002 for the 10.5.0.0/27 prefix and the mapping to which outside IP, the following command can be used:

```
show router 15002 nat lsn-hosts inside-ip-prefix 10.5.0.0/27
=====
Large-Scale NAT hosts for router 15002
=====
Inside IP          Out-Router      Outside IP
-----
10.5.0.0           Base           192.168.4.65
10.5.0.1           Base           192.168.4.65
<snip>
10.5.0.31          Base           192.168.4.65
-----
No. of hosts: 32
=====
```

To show LSN blocks on the outside routing instance 15002 for the first inside IP within 10.5.0.0/27 prefix, the following command can be used:

```
show router nat lsn-blocks inside-ip 10.5.0.0 inside-router 15002
=====
Large-Scale NAT blocks for Base
=====
192.168.4.65 [4024..4523]
Pool                                     : nat-pool-4
Policy                                 : nat-policy-4
Started                               : 2013/07/21 10:19:40
Inside router                         : vprn15002
Inside IP address                     : 10.5.0.0
-----
Number of blocks: 1
=====
```

To show LSN blocks on the outside routing instance 15002 for the last inside IP within 10.5.0.0/27 prefix, the following command can be used:

```
show router nat lsn-blocks inside-ip 10.5.0.31 inside-router 15002
=====
Large-Scale NAT blocks for Base
=====
192.168.4.65 [19524..20023]
Pool                                     : nat-pool-4
Policy                                 : nat-policy-4
Started                               : 2013/07/21 10:19:40
Inside router                         : vprn15002
Inside IP address                     : 10.5.0.31
-----
Number of blocks: 1
=====
```

Mapping results

- According to this configuration, each inside IP address within VPRN 15001 has one deterministic block of 500 ports and can have up to three dynamic blocks (block-limit=4) each of 461 ports, allowing a maximum of $500+3*461 = 1883$ flows.
- According to this configuration each inside IP address within VPRN 15002 has one deterministic block of 500 ports and can have up to three dynamic blocks (block-limit=4) each of 461 ports, allowing a maximum of $500+3*461 = 1383$ flows.
- For VPRN 15002, since the number of LSN subscribers (32) is less than the number of deterministic blocks (64), then 32 deterministic blocks will be wasted, specifically $32*500 = 16,000$ ports will be wasted which is not good in terms of capacity planning.

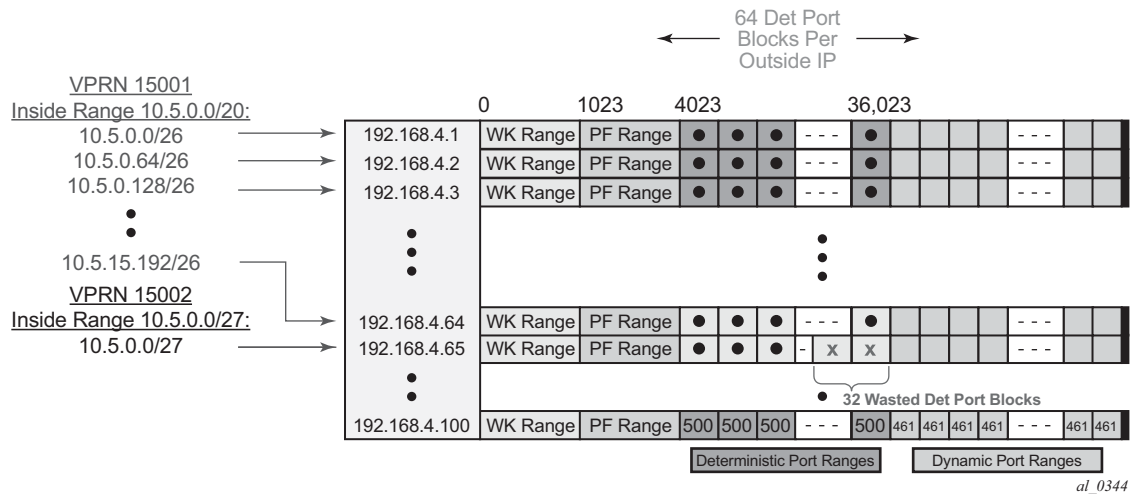


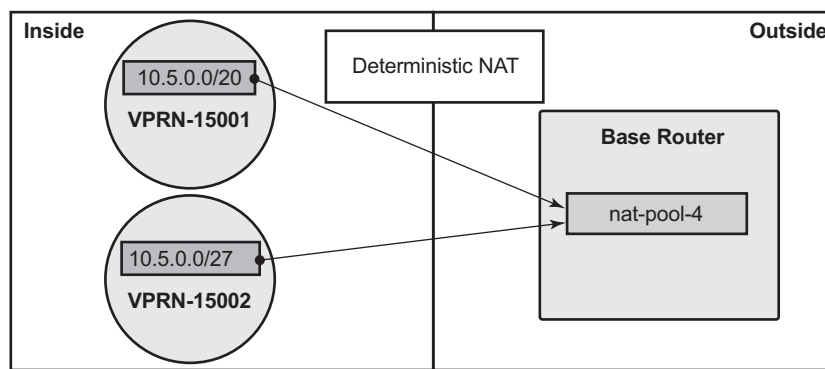
Figure 52: Case 3 Results

Inverse Mapping

In deterministic LSN44, the inside IP addresses are mapped to outside IP addresses and corresponding port-blocks based on deterministic algorithm. The inverse mapping that reveals the subscriber identity behind the NAT is based on the reversal of this algorithm.

Inverse mappings can be done either online or offline:

- Online — Locally on the 7x50 node, via CLI (MIB)
- Offline — Externally, via a Python Script. The purpose of such an offline approach is to provide fast queries without accessing the 7x50.



al_0343

Figure 53: Inverse Mapping Approach

Online Approach

A **tools** command is available which shows the reverse mapping (outside to inside) for deterministic NAT instead of using logging.

```
tools dump nat deterministic-mapping outside-ip <ipv4-address> router <router-instance>
outside-port <[1..65535]>
```

```
<ipv4-address>      : a.b.c.d
<router-instance>   : <router-name>|<service-id>
                    router-name   - "Base"
                    service-id    - [1..2147483647]
```

Using Case 3 as an example:

To obtain (inside IP, inside routing instance) the inverse mapping for a specific (outside IP, outside routing instance, outside port) is done as follows:

```
tools dump nat deterministic-mapping outside-ip 192.168.4.1 router "Base" outside-port
4024
```

```
classic-lsn-sub inside router 15001 ip 10.5.0.0 -- outside router Base ip 192.168.4.1 port
4024 at Sun Jul 21 10:32:44 UTC 2013
```

```
tools dump nat deterministic-mapping outside-ip 192.168.4.65 router "Base" outside-port
4024
```

```
classic-lsn-sub inside router 15002 ip 10.5.0.0 -- outside router Base ip 192.168.4.65
port 4024 at Sun Jul 21 10:33:38 UTC 2013
```

Offline Approach

The purpose of such an offline approach is to provide fast queries without the need to directly query the 7x50.

This is achieved by generating and exporting a Python script for reverse querying, which is a manual operation that needs to be repeated every time there is configuration change in deterministic NAT.

The script is exported (manually) to the external system.

To configure remote the location for the Python script the following command is used:

```
configure service nat deterministic-script location <remote-url>
```

remote-url — A remote location where the script is stored:

```
[ {ftp://tftp://} <login>:<pswd>@ <remote-locn>/][<file-path>]
```

Maximum length is 180 characters.

Once the script location is specified, the script can be exported to that location using the following command:

```
admin nat save-deterministic-script
```

Using the following command the status of the script can be checked, and whether it is necessary to re-save (export) the script or not:

```
show service nat deterministic-script
=====
Deterministic NAT script data
=====
Location                : ftp://*:~*10.10.10.10/pub/python/deterministic-
                           nat.py
Save needed              : no
Last save result         : success
Last save time           : 2013/07/21 10:35:36
=====
```

The external system must have Python scripting language installed with the following modules: getopt, math, os, socket, and sys.

The Python script can then be run on the external server; the parameters are as follows:

```
user@external-server$ ./deterministic-nat.py
Usage: deterministic-nat.py {{DIRECTION PARAMS}} | -h[elp] }
where DIRECTION := { -f[orward] | -b[ackward] }
where PARAMS := { -s[ervice] -a[ddress] -p[ort] }
```

where `deterministic-nat.py` is the name of the python script previously exported.

Example usage:

A forward query

```
user@external-server$./deterministic-nat.py -f -s 15001 -a 10.0.0.1
```

```
classic-lsn-sub has public ip address 192.168.0.1 from service 0 and is using ports [4324  
- 4623]
```

A reverse query

```
user@external-server$./deterministic-nat.py -b -s 0 -a 192.168.0.1 -p 4325
```

```
classic-lsn-sub has private ip address 10.0.0.1 from service 15001
```

Simultaneous Support of Deterministic and Non-Deterministic NAT

Deterministic NAT can be used simultaneously with non-deterministic NAT within the same inside routing instance. However, they cannot share the same pool.

An outside pool can be only deterministic (although expandable by dynamic ports blocks) or non-deterministic at any given time (a non-deterministic pool is a pool that contains dynamic port-blocks only).

The following show a configuration using deterministic NAT simultaneously with non-deterministic NAT.

The NAT **outside** pools are configured as follows:

```
configure router nat
  outside
    pool "nat-pool-1" nat-group 1 type large-scale create
      port-reservation ports 180
      port-forwarding-range 4023
      subscriber-limit 128
      deterministic
      port-reservation 300
    exit
    address-range 192.168.0.1 192.168.0.100 create
    exit
    no shutdown
  exit
  pool "nat-pool-Non-Deterministic" nat-group 1
    type large-scale create
    address-range 192.168.7.1 192.168.7.100 create
    exit
    no shutdown
exit all
```

The NAT **policies** are configured as follows:

```
configure service nat
  nat-policy "nat-policy-1" create
    block-limit 4
    pool "nat-pool-1" router Base
  exit
  nat-policy "nat-policy-Non-Deterministic" create
    pool "nat-pool-Non-Deterministic" router Base
exit all
```

The NAT **inside prefixes** are configured as follows:

```
configure service vprn 15001
  nat
    inside
      destination-prefix 0.0.0.0/0
      deterministic
      classic-lsn-max-subscriber-limit 128
      prefix 10.0.0.0/24 subscriber-type classic-lsn-sub
        nat-policy "nat-policy-1" create
      map start 10.0.0.0 end 10.0.0.255 to 192.168.0.1
      no shutdown
    exit
  nat-policy "nat-policy-Non-Deterministic"
exit all
```

In this example, the inside IP prefixes that do not match any of the deterministic prefixes will be NATed using a non-deterministic pool.

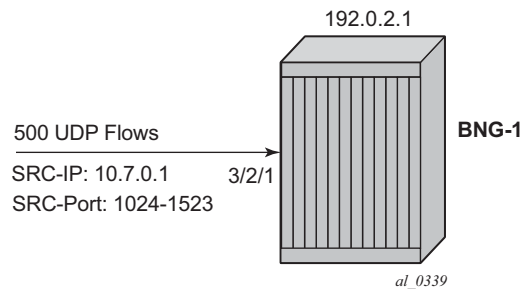


Figure 54: Sending flows: Det + non-Det NAT

To check which NAT pool/NAT policy is used for NATing the inside IP 10.7.0.1, the following command can be used:

```
show router nat lsn-blocks inside-ip 10.7.0.1
=====
Large-Scale NAT blocks for Base
=====
192.168.7.50 [1024..1527]
Pool                               : nat-pool-Non-Deterministic
Policy                             : nat-policy-Non-Deterministic
Started                            : 2013/07/21 10:59:59
Inside router                       : vprn15001
Inside IP address                   : 10.7.0.1
-----
Number of blocks: 1
=====
```

Conclusion

This example provides the commands required for configuring deterministic LSN44 NAT. Both deterministic as well as non-deterministic NAT are supported, with simultaneous operation being possible.

Inverse query can be done online or offline to retrieve the NAT mappings. Logging is not needed as long as there are no dynamic blocks assigned to LSN44 subscriber.

IP/GRE Termination

In This Chapter

This section describes advanced IP/GRE termination configurations.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 284](#)
- [Summary on page 285](#)
- [Overview on page 286](#)
- [Configuration on page 289](#)
- [Conclusion on page 311](#)

Applicability

This note is applicable only to 7750 SR-7 and SR-12 systems and was tested on release 9.0R8. IP/GRE tunnel termination requires an MS-ISA equipped on IOM2-20g or IOM3-XP. IP/GRE is not supported in a 7450 ESS (even with mixed mode) or 7710 SR chassis. Also it is not supported by the MS-ISA-E (the non-encrypted version of the MS-ISA).

Note: The following syntax changes were introduced in release 10.0R8 with the support for IP-in-IP tunneling:

1. The definition for a GRE tunnel before 10.0R8 was:

```
interface "int-gre-tunnel" tunnel create
  sap tunnel-1.private:1 create
  gre-tunnel "gre-tunnel-1" to 10.0.0.2 create
```

From 10.0R8 onward, the **gre-tunnel** parameter has been replaced by the **ip-tunnel** parameter together with a sub-parameter **gre-header** to identify this to be a GRE tunnel. In addition, the **to ip-address** parameter has been deprecated and replaced with the sub-parameter **dest-ip**.

The above configuration becomes:

```
interface "int-gre-tunnel" tunnel create
  sap tunnel-1.private:1 create
  ip-tunnel "gre-tunnel-1" create
    dest-ip 10.0.0.2
    gre-header
```

2. The **show gre tunnel** command has been replaced by the **show ip tunnel** command.

Summary

The 7x50 previously only supported GRE SDP tunnels which use pseudowire encapsulation. Starting with SR-OS 8.0R5, the 7750 SR-7 and SR-12 support tunneling IPv4 packets in an IPv4 GRE tunnel. A common use case is remote access to a VPRN over a public IP network because IP/GRE tunneling allows encapsulated packets to follow a path based on the outer IP header which is useful when the inner IP packet cannot or should not be forwarded natively over this path.

This section provides configuration and troubleshooting commands for IP/GRE termination.

Overview

Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE) allows packets of one protocol, the payload protocol, to be encapsulated by packets of another protocol called the delivery protocol. A GRE packet has an Outer Delivery Header, GRE Header and Payload Packet (Figure 55).

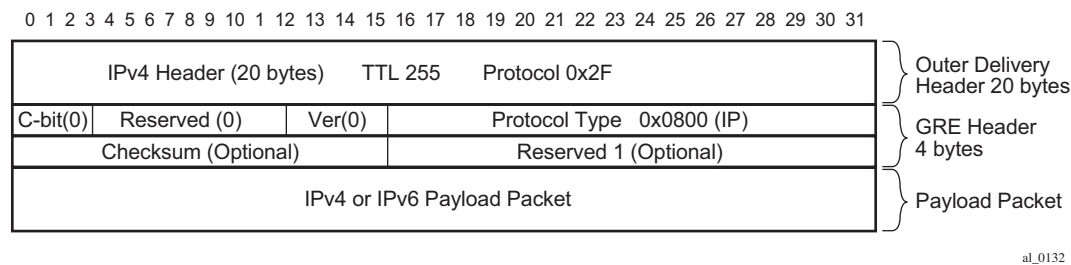


Figure 55: GRE Packet Format

The following information discusses the outer delivery and GRE header for outgoing traffic.

- Outer Delivery header
 - The source address in the IPv4 delivery header is the configured source address.
 - The destination address in the IPv4 delivery header is the configured remote-ip (or backup-remote-ip) address.
 - The IP protocol value in the IPv4 delivery header is 0x02F or 47 (GRE).
 - The DSCP in the IPv4 Outer Delivery header is:
 - Set to the value configured for the tunnel.
 - Otherwise, the DSCP value from the Payload Packet is copied into the Outer Delivery header.
 - The TTL in the IPv4 Outer Delivery header is set to 255.
- GRE Header
 - The Checksum (C) bit in the GRE header is set to 0 (no checksum present).
 - The version in the GRE header is 0.
 - The protocol type in the GRE header is 0x0800 for IPv4.

The following information discusses the outer delivery and GRE header for incoming traffic:

- Outer Delivery header
 - If the packet is a fragment (More Fragments=1, non-zero fragment offset), it is dropped.
 - If the Checksum (C) bit in the GRE header is set then the included checksum is validated; if the checksum is incorrect, the packet is discarded.
 - If the version in the GRE header is not 0 the packet is discarded.
 - If the source/destination address pair in the IPv4 delivery header is any other combination the packet is dropped.
- GRE Header
 - If the Checksum (C) bit in the GRE header is set then the included checksum is validated; if the checksum is incorrect the packet is discarded.
 - If the version in the GRE header is not 0 the packet is discarded.

7750 SR-12/SR-7 Implementation

Encapsulation, de-encapsulation and other datapath operations related to IP/GRE are handled by the isa-tunnel MDA.

Note that for GRE tunnels configured as SDPs (which are not covered by this section), no isa-tunnel MDA is required.

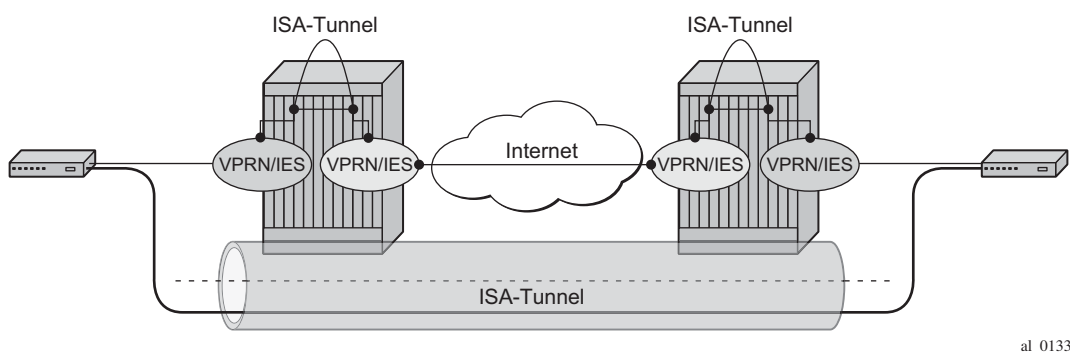


Figure 56: 7x50 Implementation

From SR-OS 8.0R5, the 7750 SR-7 and SR-12 supports the IP/GRE tunnels with static routes and BGP only. IPv6, BFD, OSPF, IS-IS, RIP and multicast are not supported.

From SR-OS 9.0R1, IP/GRE tunnels have been enhanced by adding the support of OSPFv2 and BFD on private tunnel interfaces (used with static routes, OSPFv2 or BGP) and GRE protection by tunneling into an IPSec tunnel.

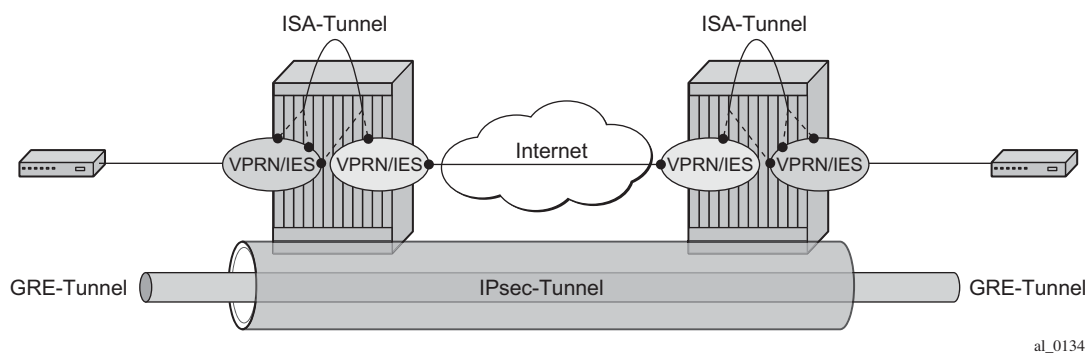


Figure 57: IP/GRE over IPSec Tunnel

Configuration

Tunnel ISA MDA

From SR-OS 8.0 R5, the isa-tunnel MDA supports IP/GRE and IPSec tunnels.

```
*A:PE-1#configure card 1 mda 1 mda-type "isa-tunnel"
```

To check the MDA configuration:

```
*A:PE-1# show mda
=====
MDA Summary
=====
Slot  Mda    Provisioned   Equipped   Admin   Operational
      Mda-type Mda-type      Mda-type   State    State
-----
snip-
  1      2      isa-tunnel    isa-ms     up       up
```

Tunnel Groups and Tunnel Group Restrictions

The first step of the GRE tunnel configuration is to configure a tunnel-group.

```
*A:PE-1# configure isa tunnel-group ?
- tunnel-group <tunnel-group-id> [create]
- no tunnel-group <tunnel-group-id>

<tunnel-group-id>      : [1..16]
<create>               : keyword - mandatory while creating an entry.
```

Chassis-mode B or higher is required.

```
*A:PE-11# configure isa tunnel-group 1 create
MINOR: IPSECGRPMGR #1008 Chassis mode B or higher is required
```

A tunnel group can have one tunnel-ISA designated primary and optionally one tunnel-ISA designated backup. When a GRE tunnel is created it is assigned to the primary tunnel-ISA in its tunnel group. If the primary tunnel-ISA fails, the backup tunnel-ISA (if not already claimed by another tunnel-group) takes over for the failed card.

```
*A:PE-1>config>isa>tunnel-grp#
[no] backup      - Configure ISA-Tunnel-Group backup ISA
[no] description - Configure the ISA group description
[no] primary     - Configure ISA-Tunnel-Group primary ISA
[no] shutdown    - Administratively enable/disable an ISA-Tunnel-Group
```

Tunnel Groups and Tunnel Group Restrictions

```
A:PE-1>config>isa# info
-----
      tunnel-group 1 create
        primary 1/2
        backup 2/1
        no shutdown
      exit
-----
```

The failed tunnels are re-established using a cold-standby on the backup tunnel-ISA (cold standby means the backup tunnel-ISA has no state or configuration information about the tunnels prior to the failure).

A tunnel-ISA cannot be primary for more than one tunnel group.

```
*A:PE-1>config>isa>tunnel-grp# primary 1/2
MINOR: IPSECGRPMGR #1003 The specified MDA is primary in another Tunnel Group
```

A tunnel-ISA cannot be primary in one tunnel group and backup in another tunnel group.

```
*A:PE-1>config>isa>tunnel-grp# backup 1/2
MINOR: IPSECGRPMGR #1003 The specified MDA is primary in another Tunnel Group
```

To check the isa tunnel-group:

```
*A:PE-1# show isa tunnel-group
=====
ISA Tunnel Groups
=====
Tunnel      PrimaryIsa   BackupIsa    ActiveIsa    Admin    Oper
GroupId                               State      State
-----
1           1/2          2/1          1/2          Up       Up
```

To check the number of the GRE tunnels:

```
*A:PE-1# show gre tunnel count
-----
GRE Tunnels: 1
```

To check all gre-tunnels:

```
*A:PE-1# show gre tunnel
=====
GRE Tunnels
=====
TunnelName      LocalAddress    SvcId      Admn
SapId           RemoteAddress   DlvrySvcId Oper
To             Bkup RemAddr    DSCP       Oper Rem Addr
-----
gre-tunnel-1    192.168.1.1    1          Up
```

```

tunnel-1.private:1          192.168.0.1      2      Up
10.0.0.2                   None             192.168.0.1
protected-gre-tunnel       192.168.4.1      3      Up
tunnel-1.private:5        192.168.3.1      3      Up
10.0.0.5                   None             192.168.3.1
-----
GRE Tunnels: 2
=====

```

To check the detailed tunnel information:

```

*A:PE-1# show gre tunnel "gre-tunnel-1"
=====
GRE Tunnel Configuration Detail
=====
Service Id      : 1                Sap Id          : tunnel-1.private:1
Tunnel Name     : gre-tunnel-1
Description     : None
Target Address  : 10.0.0.2         Delivery Service : 2
Admin State     : Up               Oper State      : Up
Source Address  : 192.168.1.1      Oper Remote Addr : 192.168.0.1
Remote Address  : 192.168.0.1      Backup Address   :
DSCP            : None
Oper Flags      : None

=====
GRE Tunnel Statistics: gre-tunnel-1
=====
Errors Rx       : 0                Errors Tx       : 0
Pkts Rx         : 7                Pkts Tx        : 7
Bytes Rx        : 532              Bytes Tx        : 364
Key Ignored Rx  : 0                Too Big Tx      : 0
Seq Ignored Rx  : 0
Vers Unsup. Rx  : 0
Invalid Chksum Rx: 0
Loops Rx        : 0

```

Interfaces

The interface toward the Internet (or WAN):

- Can be a network interface or VPRN/IES interface.
- Provide IP reachability.

The tunnel public interface:

- Can be an IES or VPRN interface.
- Represents the public side of the tunnel-ISA.

The delivery VPRN/IES service (the service connected to the Internet) must have at least one IP interface associated with a public tunnel SAP in order to receive and process GRE encapsulated packets.

The public tunnel SAP type has the format **tunnel-id.private|public:tag** (where the *id* corresponds to the tunnel group) as shown in the following example.

```
*A:PE-1>config>service>ies>if# sap ?

tunnel-id      - tunnel-<id>.<private|public>:<tag>

*A:PE-1>config>service>ies# info
-----
      interface "int-tunnel-public" create
      address 192.168.1.2/30
      tos-marking-state untrusted
      sap tunnel-1.public:1 create
      exit
    exit
no shutdown
```

Mask /32 is not supported on the public tunnel.

```
*A:PE-1>config>service>ies# interface "tunnel-public" sap tunnel-1.public:1 create
INFO: PIP #1288 Cannot bind when there are /32 or /128 addresses configured
```

The tunnel private interface:

- Can be an IES or VPRN interface.
- Represents the private side of the tunnel-ISA.

The private tunnel SAP has the format **tunnel-id.private|public:tag** (where the *id* corresponds to the tunnel-group) as shown in the following CLI example where an unprotected GRE tunnel is configured under the SAP.

```
*A:PE-1>config>service>vprn>if# sap ?

tunnel-id      - tunnel-<id>.<private|public>:<tag>

*A:PE-1>config>service>vprn# info
-----
---snip--
        interface "int-gre-tunnel" tunnel create
        address 10.0.0.1/30
        ip-mtu 1476
        bfd 100 receive 100 multiplier 3
        sap tunnel-1.private:1 create
        gre-tunnel "gre-tunnel-1" to 10.0.0.2 create
---snip---
```

It is not mandatory to have the same tag (internal dot1q) in private and public GRE tunnels.

```
sap tunnel-1.private:1 <=> sap tunnel-1.public:2
```

Unprotected GRE Tunnel Configuration

To associate an unprotected GRE tunnel with a private tunnel SAP the **gre-tunnel** command is configured under the SAP context.

```
*A:PE-1>config>service>vprn# info
-----
---snip---
        interface "gre-tunnel" tunnel create
            address 10.0.0.1/30
            ip-mtu 1476
            sap tunnel-1.private:1
            gre-tunnel "gre-tunnel" to 10.0.0.2
---snip---
```

The **to** keyword followed by the private IP address of the remote tunnel endpoint is mandatory.

If this remote IP address is not within the subnet of the local private endpoint then the tunnel will not come up.

Under the **gre-tunnel** command, configure the following parameters:

- The source address of the GRE tunnel. This is the source IPv4 address of GRE encapsulated packets sent by the delivery service. It must be an address in the subnet of the associated public tunnel SAP interface.
- The remote IP address. If this address is reachable in the delivery service (there is a route) then this is the destination IPv4 address of GRE encapsulated packets sent by the delivery service.
- The backup remote IP address. If the remote IP address of the tunnel is not reachable then this is the destination IPv4 address of GRE encapsulated packets sent by the delivery service.
- The delivery service. This is the identifier or name of the IES or VPRN service where GRE encapsulated packets are injected and terminated. The delivery service can be the same service where the private tunnel SAP interface resides.
- The DSCP marking in the outer IP header of GRE encapsulated packets. If this is not configured then the default copies the DSCP from the inner IP header to the outer IP header.

```
*A:PE-1>config>service>vprn# info
-----
---snip---
        interface "gre-tunnel" tunnel create
            address 10.0.0.1/30
            ip-mtu 1476
            bfd 100 receive 100 multiplier 3
            sap tunnel-1.private:1 create
```

```
gre-tunnel "gre-tunnel-1" to 10.0.0.2 create
source 192.168.1.1
remote-ip 192.168.0.1
delivery-service 2
dscp af22
no shutdown
exit
```

- A private tunnel SAP can have only one GRE tunnel (per SAP).

```
*A:PE-1>config>service>vprn>if>sap# gre-tunnel "gre-tunnel-2" to 10.0.0.2 create
MINOR: SVCNMR #5120 Only one GRE tunnel allowed per SAP
```

IP/GRE Tunneling via Static Route

A static route can reference the GRE tunnel directly (by next-hop IP address) or the GRE tunnel can be the resolved next-hop for an indirect static route ([Figure 58](#)).

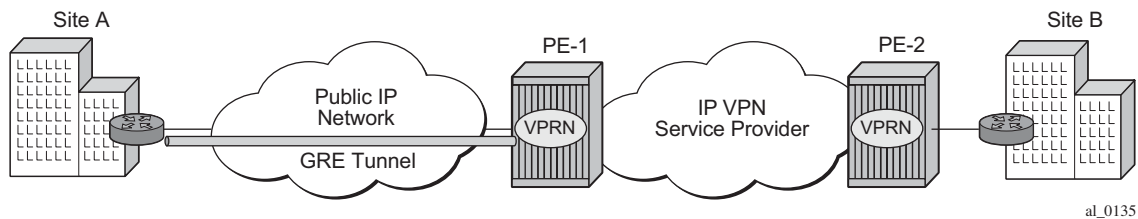


Figure 58: GRE for Remote Access to a VPRN Service

The details of both ends on the GRE tunnel, at site A and PE-1, are shown in [Figure 59](#).

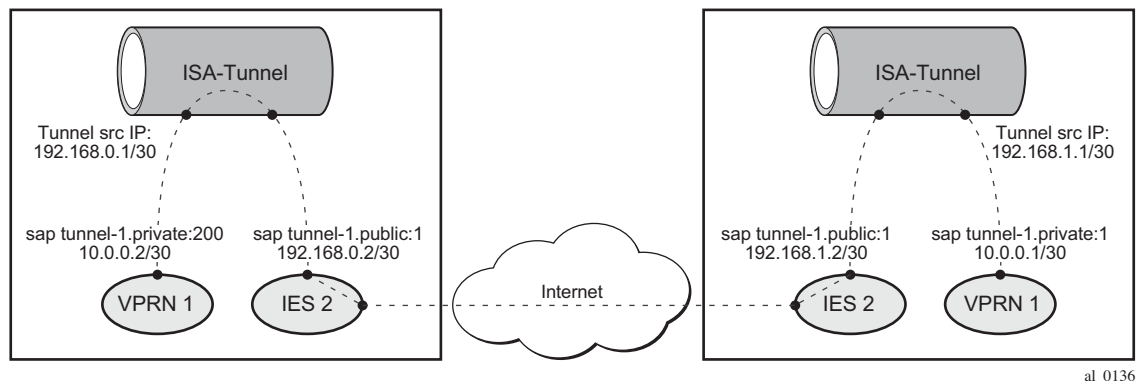


Figure 59: IP/GRE Tunneling via Static Route

The following shows the configuration of PE-1.

```
A:PE-1# configure service vprn 1
A:PE-1>config>service>vprn# info
-----
route-distinguisher 64496:1
vrf-target target:64496:1
interface "int-gre-tunnel" tunnel create
  address 10.0.0.1/30
  ip-mtu 1476
```

```

    sap tunnel-1.private:1 create
    gre-tunnel "gre-tunnel-1" to 10.0.0.2 create
        source 192.168.1.1
        remote-ip 192.168.0.1
        delivery-service 2
        no shutdown
    exit
exit
static-route 172.16.1.1/32 next-hop 10.0.0.2

```

To check the static route status:

```

*A:PE-1# show router 1 static-route
=====
Static Route Table (Service: 1)  Family: IPv4
=====

```

Prefix	Next Hop	Tag	Met	Pref	Type	Act
		Interface				
172.16.1.1/32		0	1	5	NH	Y
	10.0.0.2	int-gre-tunnel				

```

-----
No. of Static Routes: 1

```

IP/GRE Tunneling via BGP Peering

In this section, the configuration has BGP running inside the GRE tunnel (the only supported routing protocol in SR-OS 8.0R5).

```
*A:PE-1>config>service>vprn# info
-----
router-id 192.0.2.2
autonomous-system 64496
route-distinguisher 64496:1
vrf-target target:64496:1
interface "int-gre-tunnel" tunnel create
address 10.0.0.1/30
ip-mtu 1476
sap tunnel-1.private:1 create
  gre-tunnel "gre-tunnel-1" to 10.0.0.2 create
    source 192.168.1.1
    remote-ip 192.168.0.1
    delivery-service 2
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
static-route 172.16.1.1/32 next-hop 10.0.0.2
bgp
  local-as 64496
  router-id 192.0.2.2
  group "group-1"
    type internal
    local-as 64496
    local-address 172.32.1.1
    neighbor 172.16.1.1
  exit
exit
no shutdown
exit
```

It is mandatory to configure the autonomous-system under the VPRN otherwise the BGP neighboring will not be established.

To check the BGP status:

```
*A:PE-1# show router 1 bgp neighbor
=====
BGP Neighbor
=====
Peer   : 172.16.1.1
Group  : group-1
-----
Peer AS      : 64496      Peer Port      : 179
Peer Address : 172.16.1.1
Local AS     : 64496      Local Port     : 49554
Local Address : 172.32.1.1
Peer Type    : Internal
State        : Established Last State      : Active
---snip---
```

IP/GRE Tunneling via OSPFv2 Peering

From SR-OS 9.0R1, OSPFv2 can be run on IES and VPRN IP interfaces associated with private GRE tunnel SAPs.

All OSPF features are supported including area 0 and non-area 0 support, virtual links, authentication, BFD, configurable protocol timers.

```
*A:PE-1>config>service>vprn# info
-----
router-id 192.0.2.2
route-distinguisher 64496:1
vrf-target target:64496:1
interface "int-gre-tunnel" tunnel create
address 10.0.0.1/30
ip-mtu 1476
bfd 100 receive 100 multiplier 3
sap tunnel-1.private:1 create
gre-tunnel "gre-tunnel-1" to 10.0.0.2 create
source 192.168.1.1
remote-ip 192.168.0.1
delivery-service 2
no shutdown
exit
exit
exit
ospf
area 0.0.0.0
interface "int-gre-tunnel"
exit
interface "int-CE-1"
interface-type point-to-point
exit
exit
exit
no shutdown
```

To check the OSPF status:

```
*A:PE-1# show router 1 ospf neighbor
=====
OSPF Neighbors
=====
Interface-Name      Rtr Id      State      Pri  RetxQ  TTL
Area-Id
-----
int-gre-tunnel      192.0.2.1   Full       1    0      30
0.0.0.0
-----
No. of Neighbors: 1
=====
```

IP/GRE Tunneling via OSPFv2 Peering

To check the OSPF routes:

```
*A:PE-1# show router 1 route-table protocol ospf
=====
Route Table (Service: 1)
=====
Dest Prefix[Flags]                                Type   Proto   Age           Pref
      Next Hop[Interface Name]                      Metric
-----
172.16.1.1/32                                     Remote OSPF    00h04m58s    10
      10.0.0.2                                     10
-----
```


IP/GRE Tunneling Protection using IPsec Tunnel Mode

To provide protection against the potential threats (such as spoofing) the GRE packets can be encrypted and authenticated using IPsec.

In SR-OS 9.0R1 GRE packets receive IPsec protection by forwarding them, after encapsulation by one tunnel-ISA, into an IPsec tunnel supported by another (or the same) tunnel-ISA.

Note that when configuring GRE protection by an IPsec tunnel:

- A GRE tunnel and its protecting IPsec tunnel may belong to the same or different tunnel-groups (the same tunnel-group is assumed in the example below).
- A GRE tunnel and its protecting IPsec tunnel may be assigned to the same tunnel-ISA (if they belong to the same tunnel-group) or different tunnel-ISAs.
- A single IPsec tunnel can protect one or more GRE tunnels in addition to other IP traffic that meets the IPsec security policy.
- The private IPsec tunnel SAP interface and public GRE tunnel SAP interface are always part of the same VPRN. The private GRE tunnel SAP interface can be part of this same VPRN or a different VPRN.

In the following example the GRE tunnel and its protecting IPsec tunnel belong to the same tunnel group.

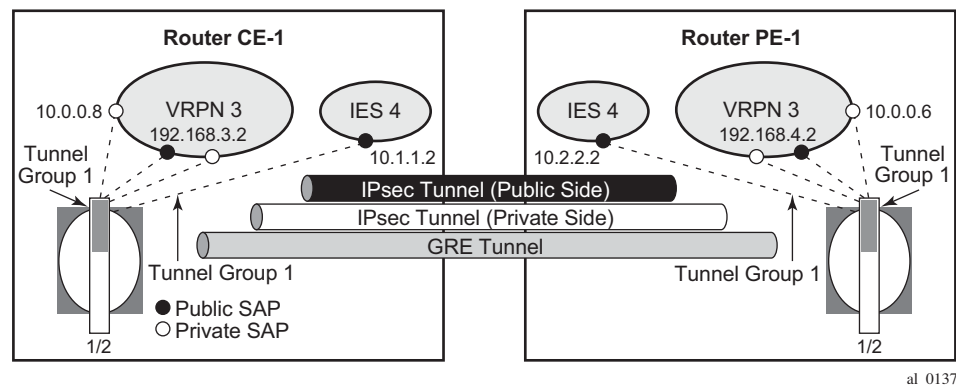


Figure 60: Example GRE over IPsec Tunnel

IPSec Configuration

An ike-policy and ipsec-transform must be configured as shown below.

```
*A:PE-1>config>ipsec# info
-----
    ike-policy 1 create
      dh-group 5
    exit
    ipsec-transform 1 create
      esp-encryption-algorithm aes256
    exit
-----
```

The public/private side of the GRE tunnel and the private side of the IPSec tunnel are in the same VPRN, as shown in the following configuration example.

```
*A:PE-1# configure service vprn 3
*A:PE-1>config>service>vprn# info
-----
    ipsec
      security-policy 1 create
        entry 1 create
          local-ip 192.168.4.0/24
          remote-ip 192.168.3.0/24
        exit
      exit
    exit
    route-distinguisher 64496:3
    vrf-target target:64496:3
    interface "int-private-ipsec-1" tunnel create
      sap tunnel-1.private:3 create
        ipsec-tunnel "ipsec-tunnel-for-gre-tunnel" create
          security-policy 1
          local-gateway-address 10.2.2.1 peer 10.1.1.1 delivery-service 4
          dynamic-keying
            ike-policy 1
            pre-shared-key "ALU"
            transform 1
          exit
          no shutdown
        exit
      exit
    exit
    interface "int-public-gre-1" create
      address 192.168.4.2/24
      sap tunnel-1.public:4 create
    exit
  exit
  interface "int-private-gre-1" tunnel create
    address 10.0.0.6/30
    sap tunnel-1.private:5 create
      gre-tunnel "protected-gre-tunnel" to 10.0.0.5 create
        source 192.168.4.1
        remote-ip 192.168.3.1
        delivery-service 3
```

```

no shutdown
exit
exit
exit
static-route 192.168.3.0/24 ipsec-tunnel "ipsec-tunnel-for-gre-tunnel"
no shutdown

```

The following displays a configuration example of the public side of the IPSec tunnel:

```

*A:PE-1>config>service>ies# info
-----
interface "public-ipsec-1" create
address 10.2.2.2/24
tos-marking-state untrusted
sap tunnel-1.public:3 create
exit
exit

```

To check the GRE tunnel:

```

*A:PE-1# show gre tunnel
=====
GRE Tunnels
=====

```

TunnelName	LocalAddress	SvcId	Admn
SapId	RemoteAddress	DlvrySvcId	Oper
To	Bkup RemAddr	DSCP	Oper Rem Addr
protected-gre-tunnel	192.168.4.1	3	Up
tunnel-1.private:5	192.168.3.1	3	Up
10.0.0.5		None	192.168.3.1

```

-----

```

To check the GRE tunnel info:

```

*A:PE-1# show gre tunnel "gre-tunnel-1"
=====
GRE Tunnel Configuration Detail
=====

```

Service Id	: 1	Sap Id	: tunnel-1.private:1
Tunnel Name	: gre-tunnel-1		
Description	: None		
Target Address	: 10.0.0.2	Delivery Service	: 2
Admin State	: Up	Oper State	: Up
Source Address	: 192.168.1.1	Oper Remote Addr	: 192.168.0.1
Remote Address	: 192.168.0.1	Backup Address	:
DSCP	: None		
Oper Flags	: None		

```

=====
GRE Tunnel Statistics: gre-tunnel-1
=====

```

Errors Rx	: 0	Errors Tx	: 0
Pkts Rx	: 9164	Pkts Tx	: 14176
Bytes Rx	: 703812	Bytes Tx	: 750429

IPSec Configuration

```
Key Ignored Rx      : 0                Too Big Tx          : 0
Seq Ignored Rx      : 0
Vers Unsup. Rx      : 0
Invalid Chksum Rx   : 0
Loops Rx            : 0
```

By default the IPSec tunnel is down if it is not used by any traffic.

```
*A:PE-1# show ipsec tunnel
=====
IPsec Tunnels
=====
TunnelName          LocalAddress      SvcId      Admn   Keying
  SapId              RemoteAddress      DlvrySvcId Oper   Sec
                               Plcy
-----
ipsec-tunnel-for-gre-tunnel  10.2.2.1          3           Up    Dynamic
  tunnel-1.private:3        10.1.1.1          4           Down    1
-----
```

Once it is used by any traffic the status will be changed to be up.

```
*A:PE-1# ping router 3 10.0.0.5
PING 10.0.0.5 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 10.0.0.5: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=4.64ms.
64 bytes from 10.0.0.5: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=4.54ms.
64 bytes from 10.0.0.5: icmp_seq=3 ttl=64 time=4.42ms.
64 bytes from 10.0.0.5: icmp_seq=4 ttl=64 time=5.01ms.
64 bytes from 10.0.0.5: icmp_seq=5 ttl=64 time=4.40ms.
```

To check the IPSec tunnel:

```
*A:PE-1# show ipsec tunnel
=====
IPsec Tunnels
=====
TunnelName          LocalAddress      SvcId      Admn   Keying
  SapId              RemoteAddress      DlvrySvcId Oper   Sec
                               Plcy
-----
ipsec-tunnel-for-gre-tunnel  10.2.2.1          3           Up    Dynamic
  tunnel-1.private:3        10.1.1.1          4           Up     1
-----
IPsec Tunnels: 1
=====
```

BFD Support on Private Tunnel Interfaces

The SR-OS 9.0R1 introduces support for BFD on IP interfaces associated with private GRE tunnel SAPs. The BFD state of the interface can be used by static routes, OSPFv2 and/or BGP configured on the interface. It is not used to trigger a switch over to the backup remote IP address of the GRE tunnel.

The following displays a static-route example:

```
*A:PE-1>config>service>vprn# info
-----
router-id 192.0.2.2
route-distinguisher 64496:1
vrf-target target:64496:1
interface "int-gre-tunnel" tunnel create
address 10.0.0.1/30
ip-mtu 1476
bfd 100 receive 100 multiplier 3
sap tunnel-1.private:1 create
gre-tunnel "gre-tunnel-1" to 10.0.0.2 create
source 192.168.1.1
remote-ip 192.168.0.1
delivery-service 2
no shutdown
exit
exit
static-route 172.16.1.1/32 next-hop 10.0.0.2 bfd-enable
```

To check the BFD session:

```
*A:PE-1# show router 1 bfd session
=====
BFD Session
=====
```

Interface	State	Tx Intvl	Rx Intvl	Multipl
Remote Address	Protocols	Tx Pkts	Rx Pkts	Type
gre-tunnel	Up (3)	100	100	3
10.0.0.2	static	N/A	N/A	cpm-np

```
-----
No. of BFD sessions: 1
=====
```

The following displays an OSPF example:

```
*A:PE-1>config>service>vprn# info
-----
router-id 192.0.2.2
route-distinguisher 64496:1
vrf-target target:64496:1
interface "int-gre-tunnel" tunnel create
address 10.0.0.1/30
ip-mtu 1476
bfd 100 receive 100 multiplier 3
sap tunnel-1.private:1 create
gre-tunnel "gre-tunnel-1" to 10.0.0.2 create
source 192.168.1.1
remote-ip 192.168.0.1
delivery-service 2
no shutdown
exit
exit
exit
ospf
area 0.0.0.0
interface "int-gre-tunnel"
bfd-enable
exit
---snip---
```

To check the BFD session:

```
*A:PE-1# show router 1 bfd session
=====
BFD Session
=====
```

Interface	State	Tx Intvl	Rx Intvl	Multipl
Remote Address	Protocols	Tx Pkts	Rx Pkts	Type
int-gre-tunnel	Up (3)	100	100	3
10.0.0.2	ospf2	N/A	N/A	cpm-np

```
-----
```

The following displays a BGP example:

```
*A:PE-1>config>service>vprn# info
-----
router-id 192.0.2.2
autonomous-system 64496
route-distinguisher 64496:1
vrf-target target:64496:1
interface "int-gre-tunnel" tunnel create
address 10.0.0.1/30
ip-mtu 1476
bfd 100 receive 100 multiplier 3
sap tunnel-1.private:1 create
gre-tunnel "gre-tunnel-1" to 10.0.0.2 create
source 192.168.1.1
remote-ip 192.168.0.1
```

```

        delivery-service 2
        no shutdown
    exit
exit
static-route 172.16.1.1/32 next-hop 10.0.0.2
bgp
    local-as 64496
    router-id 192.0.2.2
    group "group-1"
        type internal
        local-as 64496
        local-address 172.32.1.1
        neighbor 172.16.1.1
        bfd-enable
    exit
exit
no shutdown
exit

```

To check the BFD session:

```

*A:PE-1# show router 1 bfd session
=====
BFD Session
=====
Interface          State          Tx Intvl  Rx Intvl  Multipl
Remote Address     Protocols      Tx Pkts   Rx Pkts   Type
-----
int-CE-1           Up (3)         100       100       3
172.16.1.1         bgp            N/A       N/A       cpm-np
-----
No. of BFD sessions: 1
=====

```

IP/GRE Termination – Advanced Topics

DSCP Value of Outer Delivery Header

- Default behavior — The DSCP value from the Payload header is copied into the outer GRE header. This is a one to one copy and no QoS classifications are required. It is performed when no DSCP value is configured under the private gre-tunnel.
- Non Default behavior — DSCP is configured under the private SAP (example below using af41).

```
interface "gre-tunnel" tunnel create
address 10.0.0.1/30
sap tunnel-1.private:200 create
gre-tunnel "gre-tunnel" to 10.0.0.2
source 192.168.11.2
remote-ip 192.168.10.2
delivery-service 21
dscp af41
```

The log filter output: TOS=88 (DSCP=af41) in the public network.

```
Maximum entries configured : 1000
Number of entries logged   : 2
2010/12/13 18:26:15 Ip Filter: 10:10 Desc:
SAP: 1/1/1 Direction: Egress Action: Forward
Src MAC: 1c-2c-01-01-00-01 Dst MAC: 1c-2d-01-01-00-01 EtherType: 0800
Src IP: 192.168.11.2 Dst IP: 192.168.10.2 Flags: 0 TOS: 88 TTL: 254
```

IP-MTU

It is possible to configure the IP MTU of a private tunnel SAP interface. This sets the maximum IP packet size payload (including IP header) that can be sent into the tunnel (it applies to the packet size before the tunnel encapsulation is added).

```
vprn 1 customer 1 create
router-id 172.17.1.1
autonomous-system 65000
route-distinguisher 65000:1
interface "gre-tunnel" tunnel
address 10.0.0.1/30
ip-mtu 1476
sap tunnel-1.private:201
```


When an IPv4 packet needs to be forwarded to the tunnel and is larger than IP MTU bytes:

- If the DF bit is clear, the payload packet is IP fragmented to the MTU size prior to tunnel encapsulation.
- If the DF bit is set, the payload packet is discarded.

The IP-MTU range supported is from 512 to 9000 bytes.

To display information about the tunnel operational MTU.

```
*A:PE-1# show router 1 interface "gre-tunnel" detail | match MTU
IP Oper MTU      : 1476                      ICMP Mask Reply : True
```

Statistics and Accounting

Collect-stats can be configured under public and private SAPs.

For Public SAPs:

```
*A:PE-1>config>service>ies>if# sap tunnel-1.public:2 collect-stats
```

For Private SAPs:

```
*A:PE-1>config>service>vprn>if# sap tunnel-1.private:2 collect-stats
```

Filtering, Policing and QoS

An ip-filter and QoS policy can be applied to the ingress and egress traffic of the private and public SAPs.

Public SAPs:

```
*A:PE-1>config>service>vprn>if# info
-----
---snip---
      sap tunnel-1.private:1 create
      ingress
      qos 10
      filter ip 1
      exit
      egress
      qos 10
      filter ip 1
      exit
```

Private SAPs:

```
*A:PE-1>config>service>ies>if# info
-----
      address 192.168.1.2/30
      tos-marking-state untrusted
      sap tunnel-1.public:1 create
        ingress
          qos 10
          filter ip 1
        exit
      egress
        qos 10
        filter ip 1
      exit
```

Mirroring

The public and private SAPs can be mirrored.

```
*A:PE-1# show debug
debug
  mirror-source 99
    sap tunnel-1.private:3 egress ingress
    sap tunnel-1.public:1 egress ingress
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
```

Conclusion

This section provides configuration and show commands for IP/GRE termination.

L2TP Network Server

In This Chapter

This section provides information about L2TP network servers (LNS).

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 314](#)
- [Overview on page 315](#)
- [Configuration on page 318](#)
- [Conclusion on page 353](#)

Applicability

This feature is applicable to 7750 SR-7/12 with at least one MS-ISA installed in an IOM3-XP (or later).

The configuration was tested on release 11.0.R7.

Overview

The Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP) is a tunneling protocol commonly used to transport PPP sessions from an initiator known as an L2TP Access Concentrator (LAC) to an L2TP Network Server (LNS). L2TP is typically used for wholesaling residential broadband services. In this scenario, the LAC resides in the wholesaler's network and has a Layer-2 connection to an access concentrator such as a DSLAM. The LAC acts as the responder during the discovery phase (if PPPoE is used) and during PPP Link Control Protocol (LCP) negotiation. The LAC also performs an initial authentication of the subscriber. A successful authentication, typically from RADIUS, indicates to the LAC that PPP frames from this subscriber should be tunneled to an LNS at the indicated IP address. The LAC then tunnels the PPP frames from this subscriber over an L2TP tunnel to the LNS, where the PPP session is actually terminated. The terminology should be clear: **PPP sessions** are carried inside **L2TP tunnels**.

L2TP uses two types of messages; control messages and data messages. Control messages are used in the establishment, maintenance, and tearing down of tunnels and sessions. In order to provide extensibility and maximize interoperability, the payloads of control messages are encoded using Attribute Value Pairs (AVPs), some of which are applicable to all control messages, and some of which are specific to particular control messages. The L2TP header contains sequence number fields that must be present in control messages to allow for a reliable L2TP control channel that guarantees delivery. Data messages are used to encapsulate PPP frames being carried over the tunnel. Data messages are not retransmitted if packet loss occurs.

L2TP has a common fixed header format for both control and data messages, and a Type (T) bit in the header is used to indicate whether the packet is a control (1) or data (0) message. The L2TP packet is then carried in a transport protocol, and although the specifications allow L2TP to be directly encapsulated over Frame Relay, ATM, and UDP/IP, the latter is used almost exclusively.

The objective of this example is to provide a generic overview of how to configure the 7750 SR to support the LNS and LTS (L2TP Tunnel Switching) functions.

Test Topology

The simple test topology used through this example is shown below. Both the LAC and the LNS participate in IS-IS and LDP, together with PE-1. All three devices form part of AS 64496 and peer using iBGP for the VPN-IPv4 Address Family. None of these protocols is mandatory for supporting LNS functionality; L2TP packets can ingress the system over any network interface as native IP or encapsulated as IP in MPLS, or through an IES/VPRN IP interface (SAP) as native IP. The MPLS data-plane within the test topology is chosen purely because of its simplicity and flexibility. Tester T1 simulates a DSLAM and one or more PPP clients, and is connected directly to the LAC. Although the LAC in this topology is a 7750 SR router, the configuration requirements of that device are beyond the scope of this example. Tester T2 provides a traffic source/sink capability and is connected directly to PE-1.

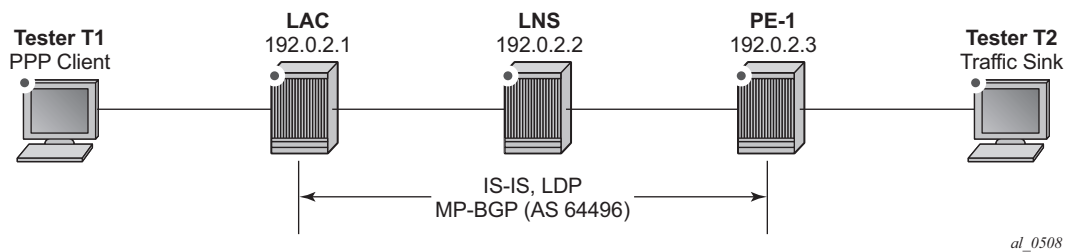


Figure 61: Test Topology

Hardware Configuration

To support LNS (and LTS) functionality at least one MS-ISA card is required, which must be configured as MDA type isa-bb, and must be housed in the carrier IOM, an IOM3-XP (or IOM3-XP-B/C). The MS-ISA performs L2TP data-plane encapsulation and de-capsulation, whereas the subscriber processing (Enhanced Subscriber Management or ESM) for PPP sessions is implemented within the carrier IOM.

```
card 5
  card-type iom3-xp
  mda 1
    mda-type isa-bb
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
```

The MS-ISA is then configured to become a member of an **lms-group**. Up to six MS-ISAs can be configured to belong to one or more lms-groups. When two or more MS-ISAs belong to the same lms-group, by default PPP sessions are load-balanced over those MS-ISAs on a per-session basis.

```
isa
  lms-group 1 create
    mda 5/1
    no shutdown
  exit
```

Configuration

ESM Base Configuration

For completeness, the following outputs contain the base ESM configuration that is applied to subscribers instantiated at the LNS throughout this example. Deviations from these base parameters are explicitly called out.

The SLA-Profile and Sub-Profile configurations have minimal parameters. The SLA-Profile uses the default ingress/egress QoS policy of 1, while the **no qos-marking-from-sap** command ensures that any subsequent marking is inherited from the egress QoS policy referenced in the SLA-profile, and not taken from the egress SAP. In order to do on-line accounting through RADIUS, the Sub-Profile also calls the relevant RADIUS accounting policy. Finally, the **sub-ident-policy** is configured with **use-direct-map-as-default** for the **sub-profile-map** and **sla-profile-map**, which means that the strings passed from RADIUS in the Vendor Specific Attributes (VSAs) **Alc-Subs-Prof-Str** and **Alc-SLA-Prof-Str** are interpreted verbatim so they are not used as string input to a mapping function.

```
subscriber-mgmt
  sla-profile "ESM-SLA-PROF" create
    egress
      no qos-marking-from-sap
    exit
  exit
  sub-profile "ESM-SUB-PROF" create
    radius-accounting-policy "AAA-ACCT-POLICY"
  exit
  sub-ident-policy "all-subscribers" create
    sub-profile-map
      use-direct-map-as-default
    exit
    sla-profile-map
      use-direct-map-as-default
    exit
  exit
exit
```

Whilst it is entirely possible to authenticate subscribers locally using a local user database (LUDB), the more widely deployed approach is to use RADIUS, and this approach is therefore used implicitly throughout this example. The next output shows the **authentication-policy AAA-AUTH-POLICY** and **radius-accounting-policy AAA-ACCT-POLICY**. Both policies reference the **radius-server-policy AAA-SUB-MGMT**, which provides the context to configure the source-address to use for RADIUS messages and an associated routing context. The **radius-server-policy** then references a RADIUS server AAA-RADIUS, which in turn allows for configuration of the server IP address, the secret key to be used for message exchanges, and any other optional port configuration.

The intention is not to provide a complete description of all of the RADIUS parameters as this would distract from the objective of this example.

```

subscriber-mgmt
  authentication-policy "AAA-AUTH-POLICY" create
    accept-authorization-change
    pppoe-access-method pap-chap
    include-radius-attribute
      nas-port-id
      nas-identifier
      access-loop-options
      calling-station-id remote-id
    exit
  radius-server-policy "AAA-SUB-MGMT"
exit
radius-accounting-policy "AAA-ACCT-POLICY" create
  no queue-instance-accounting
  session-accounting interim-update host-update
  update-interval 120
  include-radius-attribute
    circuit-id
    framed-ip-addr
    nas-identifier
    nas-port-id
    nas-port-type
    sla-profile
    sub-profile
    subscriber-id
  exit
  session-id-format number
  use-std-acct-attributes
  radius-server-policy "AAA-SUB-MGMT"
exit
aaa
  radius-server-policy "AAA-SUB-MGMT" create
    servers
      router "Base"
      source-address 192.0.2.2
      server 1 name "AAA-RADIUS"
    exit
  exit
router
  radius-server
    server "AAA-RADIUS" address 172.20.148.7 secret <secret> hash2 create
    accept-coa
    pending-requests-limit 1024
  exit
exit
exit

```

Basic LNS Configuration

To illustrate the building blocks that are required to implement LNS functionality, a VPRN is used between the LAC and the LNS supporting an L2TP tunnel and terminating PPP sessions at the LNS. The required configuration for this VPRN at the LNS is shown in the following output. The unicast VPRN parameters such as **route-distinguisher** and **vrf-import/vrf-export** are not discussed here, only the parameters that are relevant to subscriber termination, which are equally applicable to VPRN and/or IES services.

The interface **loopback** represents a logical loopback interface which is used as the LNS endpoint address in L2TP signaling. The LAC has a corresponding interface with IP address 192.168.0.1. It also represents the unnumbered interface address referenced in the **subscriber-interface** context, meaning this IP address is used for the purpose of IPCP negotiation with incoming PPP sessions. Within the **subscriber-interface** context, the **group-interface** has a different definition than a conventional ESM **group-interface**. A conventional **group-interface** has one or more SAPs belonging to the same port or LAG. However, in the context of LNS, there are no SAPs. The group-interface also might terminate sessions within the same L2TP tunnel which are anchored on different MS-ISAs in a common lns-group. To accommodate this, the **group-interface** has the **creation-time** attribute **lns**. This attribute essentially means that the group-interface can terminate subscribers from more than one port/LAG; where port/LAG is interpreted as different MS-ISAs.

The **group-interface** then provides a **sap-parameters** context that allows for configuration of **sub-sla-mgmt** parameters that would typically be found under a SAP. These parameters are applicable to all subscribers terminated on this group-interface. In the example shown, only the **sub-ident-policy** is configured; hence there is an expectation that other ESM parameters such as **sla-profile**, **sub-profile**, and **subscriber-id**, will be learned from a different source (in this example, they will be learned from RADIUS).

The static route blackholes prefix 10.48.127.0/24, ensuring this prefix is added to the route-table. Subscribers are allocated /32 addresses from this range, which must be advertised upstream to PE-1 to ensure end-to-end IP connectivity. This is facilitated through the **vrf-export policy** (not shown for conciseness).

Within the **l2tp** context, there exists a hierarchy of groups and tunnels. Groups reside directly under the **l2tp** context, and tunnels reside within the group context. Groups are intended to administratively organize tunnels that may share a common use or contain common parameters. The L2TP tunnel characteristics can be inherited from the group context, or overridden within the **tunnel** context. In the group context shown in the output below, the **lns-group 1** command refers to the **lns-group** previously configured at the ISA level. This is followed by the **local-address** command that indicates an IP address to be used as a source address for L2TP signaling. The **ppp** context then defines the characteristics of how the PPP session will be established. In this case, the authentication mechanism is CHAP, and the previously configured RADIUS **authentication-policy** is used to authenticate the user. During the PPP session set-up, the LAC negotiates LCP and authentication parameters with the subscriber. Two AVPs, the **Proxy LCP** AVP and the **Proxy Authentication** AVP allow this information to be forwarded by the LAC to the LNS. This

information can be accepted by the LNS, allowing PPP to continue with negotiation of IPCP, or it can be rejected, in which case the LNS initiates a new round of NCP and PPP authentication. The **proxy-authentication** and **proxy-lcp** commands allow the information contained in these AVPs to be accepted.

Finally, the **tunnel** context provides the context for explicit configuration related to this L2TP tunnel. The **peer** command indicates the far-end (LAC) IP address to which L2TP messages are addressed. The **password** is used to authenticate the far-end tunnel initiator, and is used in conjunction with the **challenge** parameter to implement a CHAP-like authentication mechanism. The default behavior is to never challenge the initiator (LAC); hence the **challenge always** setting is the inverse of this behavior. The **remote-name** is used to provide an additional level of security. When the Start Control Connection Request (SCCRQ) is received from the LAC to initiate the tunnel set-up it carries a mandatory **Host Name** AVP. The value of this AVP is compared to the name configured in the **remote-name**, and only tunnels with matching names are accepted. In a similar manner, the **local-name** parameter is used to populate the Host Name AVP sent by the LNS in the SCCRQ, and can be used as a similar security feature at the LAC.

When two or more MS-ISAs belong to the same lns-group, by default PPP sessions are load-balanced over those MS-ISAs on a per-session basis. Although it is not shown in the configuration example below, it is worth highlighting that within each L2TP group context, an option exists to load-balance on a per-L2TP tunnel basis using the **load-balance-method per-tunnel** command. This can be useful, for example, when multiple sessions are received from a single subscriber (for example MLPPP member links) which must be handled within the same MS-ISA.

```
service
  vprn 1 customer 1 create
    vrf-import vrf1-import
    vrf-export vrf1-export
    route-distinguisher 64496:1
    auto-bind ldp
    interface "loopback" create
      address 192.168.0.2/32
      loopback
    exit
    subscriber-interface "LNS-SUB-INT" create
      unnumbered 192.168.0.2
      group-interface "LNS-GROUP-INT" lns create
        sap-parameters
          sub-sla-mgmt
          sub-ident-policy "all-subscribers"
        exit
      exit
    exit
  exit
  static-route 10.48.127.0/24 black-hole
  l2tp
    group "L2TP-GROUP-1" create
      lns-group 1
      local-address 192.168.0.2
      ppp
        authentication chap
        authentication-policy "AAA-AUTH-POLICY"
        keepalive 10 hold-up-multiplier 3
```

Basic LNS Configuration

```
        proxy-authentication
        proxy-lcp
    exit
    tunnel "L2TP-TUNNEL-1" create
        challenge always
        local-name "LNS"
        peer 192.168.0.1
        remote-name "LAC"
        password <password> hash2
        no shutdown
    exit
    no shutdown
exit
no shutdown
exit
no shutdown
exit
```

As previously described, RADIUS is used to authenticate the subscriber, which upon successful authentication returns the ESM parameters, Subscriber-ID (**Alc-Subsc-ID-Str**), SLA-Profile (**Alc-SLA-Prof-Str**), and Sub-Profile (**Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str**) as needed for instantiating the subscriber in SR OS. These parameters could be obtained locally on the LNS using the **def-sub-id**, **def-sla-profile** and **def-sub-profile** commands under the **group-interface sap-parameters**. This enables a mechanism to provide default parameters in the absence of obtaining them from another source. However, passing them from RADIUS has some benefits, such as:

- It is comparatively easy to provide different SLA- and Sub-Profiles to different users, which can be used to differentiate service levels.
- If a RADIUS infrastructure is in place and used to provide ESM parameters, it is comparatively easy to extend that infrastructure to provide for mid-session changes of those parameters (such as **sla-profile** and **sub-profile**) using a Change of Authorization (CoA).

The next output provides an example of a RADIUS users file entry for the test subscriber. In addition to the afore-mentioned ESM parameters, the Alc-Serv-ID VSA is used to indicate the service number in which this subscriber must be terminated (in this case VPRN 1 as previously configured), while the Alc-Interface VSA is used to indicate the relevant group-interface within that service. If it is intended that all PPP sessions ingressing on a particular L2TP group are all to be terminated within a common service and group-interface, it is not necessary to send the Alc-Serv-ID and Alc-Interface VSAs from RADIUS to indicate the service and group-interface, but rather a default service and group-interface can be specified within the **ppp** context of the l2tp group using the parameter **default-group-interface <name> service-id <number>**. The remainder of the attributes in the output are well-known standard attributes.

```
subscriber1@isp.net      Cleartext-Password := "password"
                        Alc-Subsc-ID-Str = "subscriber1@isp.net",
                        Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str = "ESM-SUB-PROF",
                        Alc-SLA-Prof-Str = "ESM-SLA-PROF",
                        Alc-Serv-Id = "1",
                        Alc-Interface = "LNS-GROUP-INT",
```

```
Service-Type = Framed-User,  
Framed-Protocol = PPP,  
Framed-IP-Address = 10.48.127.27,
```

L2TP Tunnel Set-up

Before the PPP session can be terminated at the LNS, an L2TP tunnel must be established between the LAC and LNS. This is achieved using a three-way control message exchange of Start-Control-Connection-Request (SCCRQ), Start-Control-Connection-Reply (SCCRP), and Start-Control-Connection-Connected (SCCN). All of these messages are explicitly acknowledged by the peer using the sequence numbers (number sent, number received) in the L2TP header, thereby creating a reliable control channel. The acknowledgment can be piggy-backed in a corresponding control message, or it can be an explicit acknowledgment using a control packet with only an L2TP header, known as a Zero-Length Body (ZLB) message.

The SCCRQ is used to initialize the tunnel between LAC and LNS, and although it can be sent by either the LAC or LNS, it is typically sent by the LAC towards the LNS (as in this example). The SCCRQ contains a number of mandatory AVPs, denoted by the M-bit in the AVP header (set to 1), including Message Type, Protocol Version, Host Name, Framing Capabilities, and Assigned Tunnel ID. It can also contain a number of optional AVPs, such as Vendor Name, and Firmware Revision, which can be ignored by the recipient if they are unrecognized.

```
7 2014/02/14 16:16:01.03 GMT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 L2TP(v2, ctrl, ingress)
"L2TP(v2, ctrl, ingress): UDP 192.168.0.1:1701 -> 192.168.0.2:1701
tunnel 0 session 0, ns 0 nr 0, flags:, reserved=0
  AVP MessageType(0,0), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    StartControlConnectionRequest(1)
  AVP ProtocolVersion(0,2), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    version=1, revision=0
  AVP HostName(0,7), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    "LAC"
  AVP WindowSize(0,10), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    64
  AVP FramingCapabilities(0,3), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    sync=no, async=no
  AVP BearerCapabilities(0,4), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    digital=yes, analogue=no
  AVP FirmwareRevision(0,6), flags:, reserved=0
    2816
  AVP VendorName(0,8), flags:, reserved=0
    "Alcatel-Lucent"
  AVP AssignedTunnelId(0,9), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    12763"
```

The SCCRP is sent in response to the SCCRQ and is used to indicate that the parameters in the SCCRQ were acceptable and that the establishment of the L2TP tunnel can continue. The SCCRP contains the same mandatory AVPs and can contain the same optional AVPs as the SCCRQ, but an additional optional AVP is the Challenge AVP which is included as a result of the **challenge** **always** and **password** parameters configured within the **tunnel** context.


```

8 2014/02/14 16:16:01.03 GMT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 L2TP(v2, ctrl, egress)
"L2TP(v2, ctrl, egress): UDP 192.168.0.2:1701 -> 192.168.0.1:1701
tunnel 12763 session 0, ns 0 nr 1, flags:, reserved=0
  AVP MessageType(0,0), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    StartControlConnectionReply(2)
  AVP ProtocolVersion(0,2), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    version=1, revision=0
  AVP HostName(0,7), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    "LNS"
  AVP WindowSize(0,10), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    64
  AVP FramingCapabilities(0,3), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    sync=no, async=no
  AVP BearerCapabilities(0,4), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    digital=yes, analogue=no
  AVP FirmwareRevision(0,6), flags:, reserved=0
    2816
  AVP VendorName(0,8), flags:, reserved=0
    "Alcatel-Lucent"
  AVP AssignedTunnelId(0,9), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    10439
  AVP Challenge(0,11), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    b1 97 6c f2 b2 ec a9 7c 48 ec c9 7f f0 66 a5 b4
    a8 33 bb 4d cb 2f db 50 c3 28 73 e3 61 99 f6 45
    48 d0 90 ae 29 52 a9 c7 3b 11 65 f6 bd 62 a4 33 "

```

The response to the SCCRP, and the completion of the three-way message exchange is the SCCN. The only mandatory AVP for the SCCN is the Message Type, and since the SCCRP contained a Challenge AVP, the SCCN also contains an AVP Challenge Response. If this response is not satisfactory to the LNS, it generates a Stop-Control-Connection-Notification (StopCCN) with a result code indicating that the requester is not authorized, and subsequently removes any associated tunnel state.

```

9 2014/02/14 16:16:01.03 GMT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 L2TP(v2, ctrl, ingress)
"L2TP(v2, ctrl, ingress): UDP 192.168.0.1:1701 -> 192.168.0.2:1701
tunnel 10439 session 0, ns 1 nr 1, flags:, reserved=0
  AVP MessageType(0,0), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    StartControlConnectionConnected(3)
  AVP ChallengeResponse(0,13), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    0c fb ce d3 e6 38 2a 41 d7 9a 8e a4 fa a7 df ff "

```

With a successful three-way exchange completed, the L2TP tunnel is established. A snapshot view of all L2TP tunnels within the relevant routing context can be displayed using the command in the following output. The Loc-Tu-ID and Rem-Tu-ID are the local and remote tunnel IDs passed in the Assigned Tunnel Id AVP in the SCCRP and SCCRQ respectively. The Conn ID, or connection ID, is a locally significant parameter used for the purpose of identifying a particular tunnel, and is a 32-bit representation of the local tunnel Id ($10439 * 65536 = 684130304$). It is the connection ID that is used, for example, in event log entries for this tunnel. The state is shown as **establishedIdle**, meaning that although the tunnel is up and established, there are currently no PPP sessions active within the tunnel.

L2TP Tunnel Set-up

```
*A:LNS# show router 1 l2tp tunnel
=====
Conn ID      Loc-Tu-ID Rem-Tu-ID State                Blacklist-state  Ses Active
  Group                                           Ses Total
  Assignment
-----
684130304   10439    12763    establishedIdle    not-blacklisted    0
  L2TP-GROUP-1
  L2TP-TUNNEL-1
-----
No. of tunnels: 1
=====
```

Once a tunnel is established, maintenance and health-checking of that tunnel is achieved using a keepalive mechanism that employs Hello control messages. The Hello message contains only one AVP, the **Message Type** AVP, which indicates it is a Hello message. The Hello messages operate asynchronously between the peers. There is no echo request and echo response function, but simply a Hello followed by an acknowledgment. The Hello is acknowledged in the same way as other control messages, using either piggy-backing or ZLB acknowledgments. This asynchronous behavior allows for either end of the tunnel to be configured for different Hello intervals (they are not negotiated), or even for one end not send Hellos at all.

```
89 2014/02/18 17:40:47.16 GMT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 L2TP(v2, ctrl, egress)
"L2TP(v2, ctrl, egress): UDP 192.168.0.2:1701 -> 192.168.0.1:1701
tunnel 10131 session 0, ns 1 nr 2, flags:, reserved=0
  AVP MessageType(0,0), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
  Hello(6) "

90 2014/02/18 17:40:47.17 GMT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 L2TP(v2, ctrl, ingress)
"L2TP(v2, ctrl, ingress): UDP 192.168.0.1:1701 -> 192.168.0.2:1701
tunnel 8744 session 0, ns 2 nr 2, flags:, reserved=0"
```

The Hello interval at the LNS is configurable under the `l2tp`, `group`, or `tunnel` contexts using the **hello-interval** parameter. The range is 60 to 3600 seconds, with the default being 300 seconds. The **hello-interval infinite** option suppresses sending of Hellos. If the system sends a Hello message and does not get an acknowledgment, it will re-transmit the Hello message as many times as the value of the **max-retries-estab** parameter, each time with an exponential¹ back-off. The **max-retries-estab** parameter can be configured in the `l2tp`, `group`, or `tunnel` contexts. The default value is 5, and if no acknowledgment is received before this value is exceeded, the tunnel is declared down and a StopCCN is sent towards the peer.

The StopCCN is a message that can be generated by either LAC or LNS and is used to inform its peer that the tunnel is being closed. This implicitly means that all PPP sessions carried within that tunnel are also being closed without any associated control messages for those sessions. The StopCCN must contain the **Message Type** and **Tunnel ID** AVPs, and additionally carries a **Result**

1. The retry interval starts with 1 second and doubles on each retry with a maximum-interval of 8 seconds. For example, using a `max-retries-estab` value of 7 results in a retry of [1, 2, 4, 8, 8, 8 seconds]

Code AVP with result code and error code fields to indicate to the peer the reason for the tunnel closure.

```
15 2014/02/18 16:54:58.89 GMT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 L2TP(v2, ctrl, ingress)
"L2TP(v2, ctrl, ingress): UDP 192.168.0.1:1701 -> 192.168.0.2:1701
tunnel 12234 session 0, ns 2 nr 1, flags:, reserved=0
  AVP MessageType(0,0), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    StopControlConnectionNotification(4)
  AVP ResultCode(0,1), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    result-code: "generalRequestToClearControlConnection"(1), error-code: "n
oGeneralError"(0)
    error-msg: "operator request"
  AVP AssignedTunnelId(0,9), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    5826"
```

The tunnel **Connection Id** can be used as an additional argument to display the details of a particular tunnel when multiple tunnels are present. The following output is an example of this taken just after the L2TP tunnel has been closed by the LAC peer, and is intentionally taken at this time to illustrate the purpose of some of the fields shown in the output. The State is moved to **closedByPeer**, and the Stop CCN Result field and Error Message field respectively contain the result code and error code of the Result Code AVP received from the LAC in the StopCCN. Because the tunnel is now in a closedByPeer state, all state and information related to this tunnel is removed from the system after a period defined by the Destruct Timeout (shown in the output as Destruct TO). The intention of the Destruct Timeout is to retain information about the tunnel closure which might aid operational communities. The default value as shown is 60 seconds, but it can be configured using the **destruct-timeout** parameter in the l2tp, group, or tunnel contexts. The remainder of the fields in the output are the operational parameters of the tunnel and are self-explanatory.

```
*A:LNS# show router 1 l2tp tunnel connection-id 684130304 detail
=====
L2TP Tunnel Status
=====

Connection ID: 684130304
State          : closedByPeer
IP             : 192.168.0.2
UDP            : 1701
Peer IP        : 192.168.0.1
Peer UDP       : 1701
Tx dst-IP      : 192.168.0.1
Tx dst-UDP     : 1701
Rx src-IP      : 192.168.0.1
Rx src-UDP     : 1701
Name           : LNS
Remote Name    : LAC
Assignment ID  : L2TP-TUNNEL-1
Group Name     : L2TP-GROUP-1
Acct. Policy   : N/A
Error Message  : operator request

Tunnel ID      : 10439
Remote Conn ID : 836435968
Remote Tunnel ID : 12763
```

L2TP Tunnel Set-up

Preference	: 50	Receive Window	: 64
Hello Interval (s)	: 300		
Idle TO (s)	: infinite	Destruct TO (s)	: 60
Max Retr Estab	: 5	Max Retr Not Estab	: 5
Session Limit	: 32767	AVP Hiding	: never
Transport Type	: udpIp	Challenge	: always
Time Started	: 02/14/2014 16:16:01	Time Idle	: N/A
Time Established	: 02/14/2014 16:16:01	Time Closed	: 02/14/2014 16:35:51
Stop CCN Result	: generalReq	General Error	: noError
Blacklist-state	: not-blacklisted		

=====

PPP Session Set-up

Once the L2TP tunnel is in place, the process of establishing a PPP session can commence. Once again there is a three-way control message exchange used for establishing a session within an L2TP tunnel, consisting of the Incoming-Call-Request (ICRQ), Incoming-Call-Reply (ICRP), and Incoming-Call-Connected (ICCN). Given that they are control messages, they are all explicitly acknowledged using piggybacking or ZLB acknowledgments.

The ICRQ is sent from the LAC to the LNS to indicate that it has received an incoming call (PPP session) and that a session needs to be established between the two peers for this call. The ICRQ provides enough information about the call for the LNS to make a decision about whether it should answer the call or not. The ICRQ contains the Message Type and Assigned Session ID AVPs as well as a Call Serial Number AVP, which can be used on both the LAC and LNS as an easy reference to the call for troubleshooting purposes. The ICRQ can also carry optional AVPs including Calling Number and Access Line Information AVPs (RFC 5515) such as Circuit ID, Remote ID, Actual Data Rate Upstream, and Actual Data Rate Downstream.

```
70 2014/02/19 11:05:35.74 GMT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprnl L2TP(v2, ctrl, ingress)
"L2TP(v2, ctrl, ingress): UDP 192.168.0.1:1701 -> 192.168.0.2:1701
tunnel 8010 session 0, ns 5 nr 23, flags:, reserved=0
  AVP MessageType(0,0), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    IncomingCallRequest(10)
  AVP AssignedSessionId(0,14), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    7886
  AVP CallSerialNumber(0,15), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    18
  AVP CallingNumber(0,22), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    "BBEU4966723450"
  AVP AgentCircuitId(3561,1), flags:, reserved=0
    "dslaml42-atm4/2/7:0.101"
  AVP AgentRemoteId(3561,2), flags:, reserved=0
    "BBEU4966723450"
  AVP ActDataRateUp(3561,129), flags:, reserved=0
    2048000
  AVP ActDataRateDown(3561,130), flags:, reserved=0
    8192000"
```

The ICRP is sent by the LNS towards the LAC in response to the ICRQ to indicate that the parameters in the ICRQ were acceptable, and that the LAC should go ahead and proceed with the call. The ICRP contains only two AVPs; the Message Type and the Assigned Session ID. Note that the Assigned Session ID values are local to each peer as opposed to a negotiated or agreed-upon value.

```
72 2014/02/19 11:05:35.75 GMT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprnl L2TP(v2, ctrl, egress)
"L2TP(v2, ctrl, egress): UDP 192.168.0.2:1701 -> 192.168.0.1:1701
tunnel 173 session 7886, ns 23 nr 6, flags:, reserved=0
  AVP MessageType(0,0), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    IncomingCallReply(11)
  AVP AssignedSessionId(0,14), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    26097"
```

The final message in the three-way exchange used for establishing sessions within the tunnel is the ICCN. It is sent by the LAC to the LNS to indicate that the call has been answered, so the L2TP session is moved to the **established** state. It also provides additional information on parameters that were used to answer the call which may not have been available when the ICRQ was sent (although it is likely that in most cases they were available). At a minimum, the ICCN must contain the Message Type, Framing Type and TX Connect Speed AVPs. The TX Connect Speed defines the speed in bits-per-second from the perspective of traffic flowing from the LAC towards the subscriber (i.e. the LAC downstream rate) and, for best accuracy, can be derived by the LAC from the PPP Broadband Forum Access Line Characteristic tags inserted by the access node (Appendix C TR-101). The TX Connect Speed can be useful for indirect setting of a Hierarchical QoS (H-QoS) aggregate rate. It is indirect because the LNS cannot infer and set an aggregate rate based directly on the TX Connect Speed AVP, but rather the TX Connect Speed is passed to RADIUS (using the **include-radius-attribute access-loop-option** parameter in the authentication-policy), which in turn may pass the aggregate rate to the LNS in a QoS override VSA. This is discussed further in the QoS section.

A number of optional AVPs can also be present providing information from the LCP negotiation between the LAC and client. These include Initial Receive, Last Transmit and Last Receive LCP Config Requests, together with Proxy Authentication Type, Name, Challenge and Response. These parameters allow the LNS to either force a renegotiation of LCP, or to continue with the PPP session and move onto the IPCP phase. The final AVP present in the ICCN shown is the RX Connect Speed AVP, which is the opposite of the TX Connect Speed and defines the speed in bits-per-second from the perspective of traffic flowing from the subscriber towards the LAC.

```
74 2014/02/19 11:05:35.76 GMT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 L2TP(v2, ctrl, ingress)
"L2TP(v2, ctrl, ingress): UDP 192.168.0.1:1701 -> 192.168.0.2:1701
tunnel 8010 session 26097, ns 6 nr 24, flags:, reserved=0
  AVP MessageType(0,0), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    IncomingCallConnected(12)
  AVP FramingType(0,19), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    sync=no, async=no
  AVP TxConnectSpeed(0,24), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    8192000
  AVP InitialRxLcpConfReq(0,26), flags:, reserved=0
    05 06 0f 09 4b f8 01 04 ff fb
    [5] Magic-Number: 0x0f094bf8
    [1] MRU: 65531
  AVP LastTxLcpConfReq(0,27), flags:, reserved=0
    01 04 05 d4 03 05 c2 23 05 05 06 7f 59 e9 8a
    [1] MRU: 1492
    [3] Authentication-Protocol: 0xc223 (CHAP), Algorithm = 5 (MD5)
    [5] Magic-Number: 0x7f59e98a
  AVP LastRxLcpConfReq(0,28), flags:, reserved=0
    05 06 0f 09 4b f8 01 04 ff fb
    [5] Magic-Number: 0x0f094bf8
    [1] MRU: 65531
  AVP ProxyAuthenType(0,29), flags:, reserved=0
    chap(2)
  AVP ProxyAuthenName(0,30), flags:, reserved=0
    "subscriber1@isp.net"
  AVP ProxyAuthenChallenge(0,31), flags:, reserved=0
    a9 42 72 2b 62 2a 71 a2 71 ce 20 06 bf a7 6d e8
```

```

4f 3a 45 c3 46 10 93 4f 1c 46 46 79 a4 05 11 4e
47 03 f9
AVP ProxyAuthenId(0,32), flags:, reserved=0
id=1, reserved=0
AVP ProxyAuthenResponse(0,33), flags:, reserved=0
fa a3 27 06 1d fe f4 9f 8c 72 a9 ac b8 5e 1b a8
AVP RxConnectSpeed(0,38), flags:, reserved=0
2048000"

```

On completion of the three-way control message exchange required for session set-up, the LNS authenticates the user in the incoming call. In this example RADIUS is used, which returns the standard and Vendor-Specific attributes previously defined in the users file. A successful authentication allows the LNS to move to the IPCP phase with the subscriber. In this example, RADIUS returns the IP address in the standard attribute Framed-IP-Address, but equally local pooling with a DHCP server could be used. For conciseness, the IPCP phase is not detailed within this example because the process is reasonably well-known and understood. However, on completion of IPCP the subscriber is instantiated and the L2TP session becomes active. The Tunnel-ID and Session-ID parameters are locally generated numbers that are passed in L2TP control messages. As previously described, the Connection Id is a locally significant parameter that is a 32-bit representation of the local tunnel Id ($8010 * 65536 = 524943360$). The ID field is again a locally significant parameter used to identify the L2TP session, and is again represented as a 32-bit number. It is derived from a sum of the Control Connection ID plus the Session ID ($524943360 + 26097 = 524943360$).

```

*A:LNS# show router 1 l2tp session
=====
L2TP Session Summary
=====
ID                Control Conn ID    Tunnel-ID    Session-ID    State
-----
524969457         524943360          8010         26097         established
subscriber1@isp.net
interface: LNS-GROUP-INT
service-id: 1
10.48.127.27
-----
No. of sessions: 1
=====

```

The PPP session is also in the subscriber-host table of VPRN 1 and a forwarding state of **Fwding** indicates that all attributes and resources associated with this subscriber are correctly installed and activated within the system. The subscriber username is shown, as is its MAC address and IP address. The IP address has an origin of IPCP. The fact that a MAC address is displayed here is somewhat misleading because this is a PPP over L2TP session, which does not have a MAC address present in any of its headers. When the MS-ISA removes the L2TP header it converts the PPP packet to PPPoE for ease of subsequent processing. As a result of this, the MS-ISA generates a fake MAC address, and this is the MAC address shown. The displayed SAP 5/1/lms-esm:1.486 is automatically generated by the system. Each operational MS-ISA that is part of the lms-group creates two internal objects, known as lms-net and lms-esm. These objects essentially represent a network-side (lms-net) and subscriber-side (lms-esm) of each MS-ISA.

When the first L2TP session within this service is established the system creates one lns-esm SAP where the first two digits indicate the MDA slot (5/1) where the MS-ISA is installed, and the last two numbers are the internal Q-in-Q tags used through the MS-ISA (1.486)². If there are more than one MS-ISA active in the lns-group, a second session would be load-balanced onto this MS-ISA, and a second lns-esm SAP would be created, until a maximum of six SAPs is reached, which represents the maximum number of supported active MS-ISA boards.

```
*A:LNS# show service id 1 subscriber-hosts
=====
Subscriber Host table
=====
Sap                Subscriber
  IP Address
  MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin      Fwding State
-----
[5/1/lns-esm:1.486] subscriber1@isp.net
10.48.127.27
00:00:1f:4a:65:f1  1          IPCP          Fwding
-----
Number of subscriber hosts : 1
=====
```

It is also possible to view the internal lns-net object, shown in the next output as interface name **tmnx_lns-in-5/1** with port number **5/1/lns-net:1***. To further clarify (and reiterate), the lns-esm and lns-net are simply internal objects used to route L2TP traffic through the MS-ISA board. Upstream traffic (subscriber to LNS) ingresses through lns-net into the MS-ISA where the L2TP header is decapsulated before PPP packets are presented to the service group-interface through lns-esm. Downstream traffic (LNS to subscriber) passes through lns-esm into the MS-ISA where the PPP packets are encapsulated in L2TP before egressing through lns-net and being routed towards the destination.

```
*A:LNS# show service id 1 interface
=====
Interface Table
=====
Interface-Name      Adm      Opr (v4/v6)  Type      Port/SapId
  IP-Address                                     PfxState
-----
loopback            Up       Up/Down      VPRN      loopback
192.168.0.2/32      n/a
LNS-SUB-INT         Up       Up/Down      VPRN S*    subscriber
Unnumbered If[192.168.0.2] n/a
LNS-GROUP-INT       Up       Up/Down      VPRN G*    bbg-5.lns-esm
_tmnx_lns-in-5/1    Up       Up/Down      VPRN      5/1/lns-net:1*
-                   -
-----
Interfaces : 4
=====
```

- The internal Q-in-Q tag value is of little relevance, but for informational purposes is derived from the group-interface If index.

Wholesale/Retail

In the example configuration used so far the L2TP tunnel/session is terminated in VPRN 1, and the subscriber is also terminated in the same VPRN 1. However, a common requirement is to build per-customer VRFs (VPRNs), particularly for business users. To meet this requirement, the so-called ‘Wholesale/Retail’ model is used, which provides a mechanism to terminate the subscriber in a different service context from the service which actually terminated the L2TP tunnel/session.

To achieve this, a second service is created which becomes the ‘Retail VRF’, or customer-specific VRF, and the previously defined VPRN 1 becomes the Wholesale VRF (which actually requires no further configuration). The necessary configuration for the Retail VRF is shown below and its parameters have been previously explained. Although they may seem obvious, there are a couple of points that are worth revisiting. The **vrf-import** and **vrf-export** parameters are used to reference policies to import/export VPN-IPv4/v6 prefixes with the customer-specific Route-Target Extended Communities. Given that a different routing context and unique Route-Targets are used for this Retail VRF, it is perfectly feasible to re-use the same IP address in VPRN 2 as was used in VPRN 1 for the unnumbered subscriber-interface. The group-interface has a different name from the group-interface in VPRN 1, but this is simply for illustration purposes and both group-interfaces can have the same name if a standard naming convention is required. More importantly, the group-interface must have the creation-time attribute **lns** to allow subscriber termination without SAPs. The static route blackholes prefix 10.10.148.0/24, ensuring this prefix is added to the route-table. This IP address range is used to allocate addresses to subscribers, and is therefore advertised in VPN-IPv4.

```

service
  vprn 2 customer 1 create
    vrf-import "vrf2-import"
    vrf-export "vrf2-export"
    route-distinguisher 64496:2
    auto-bind ldp
    interface "loopback" create
      address 192.168.0.2/32
      loopback
    exit
    subscriber-interface "VPRN2-SUB-INT" create
      unnumbered 192.168.0.2
      group-interface "VPRN2-GROUP-INT" lns create
        sap-parameters
          sub-sla-mgmt
          sub-ident-policy "all-subscribers"
        exit
      exit
    exit
  exit
  static-route 10.10.148.0/24 black-hole
  no shutdown
exit

```

In addition to the Retail VRF configuration, the RADIUS entry for the subscriber returns **Alc-Serv-Id** VSA with a value of 2 to indicate the Retail VRF Service Id, while the **Alc-Interface** VSA refers to the group-interface name within that Retail VRF.

```
subscriber2@isp.net      Cleartext-Password := "password"
                        Alc-Subsc-ID-Str = "subscriber2@isp.net",
                        Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str = "ESM-SUB-PROF",
                        Alc-SLA-Prof-Str = "ESM-SLA-PROF",
                        Alc-Serv-Id = "2",
                        Alc-Interface = "VPRN2-GROUP-INT",
                        Service-Type = Framed-User,
                        Framed-Protocol = PPP,
                        Framed-IP-Address = 10.10.148.22
```

In this Wholesale/Retail scenario, the high-level functions are as follows:

- The L2TP tunnel and session are terminated in the Wholesale VRF (in this example, VPRN 1).
- When the LNS receives the ICCN for the session, it authenticates the user (in this example via RADIUS).

RADIUS returns the Retail VRF service Id and group-interface. If RADIUS returns IP address information this address is used for the purpose of IPCP negotiation with the subscriber within the Retail VRF (in this example, VPRN 2). If RADIUS does not return IP address information, it can be derived from either of the following:

- A DHCP client function within the group-interface, which is used to obtain an IP address from a local or remote DHCP server.
- The local-address-assignment feature, which directly accesses a local DHCP server through an internal procedure call (the server pool name must be learned through RADIUS, LUDB, or default-pool-name).

Once the subscriber is activated, the PPP session and subscriber-host can be seen in VPRN 2. The description field of the **show service id 2 ppp session** command is however somewhat misleading. It is automatically concatenated from the VPRN that terminated the L2TP tunnel, the tunnel Connection Id, the local tunnel Id, and the L2TP session Id. It should not be misinterpreted as meaning that the subscriber has been terminated in VPRN 1.

```
*A:LNS# show service id 2 ppp session
=====
PPP sessions for service 2
=====
User-Name
  Descr.
      Up Time      Type  Termination      IP/L2TP-Id/Interface-Id MC-Stdby
-----
subscriber2@isp.net
  vprn:1 connid:524964710 tid:8010 sid:21350
      0d 00:00:10   oL2tp local      10.10.148.22
-----
```

No. of PPP sessions: 1

=====

QoS

To this point the subscriber PPP sessions terminated by the LNS have been instantiated using the default SAP-ingress/egress QoS policies (policy 1), with a single queue and no use of H-QoS. This section demonstrates the use of slightly more complex QoS policies that employ H-QoS, with the intention of providing an overview of those capabilities.

For subscriber termination in broadband networks it is fairly commonplace to use one or more policers on ingress, and not apply an aggregate rate-limit on ingress (upstream) traffic. Whilst this is possible in SR OS for general ESM subscriber termination, policers are not supported when the system is functioning as an LNS. It is therefore necessary to use one or more queues on ingress with the usual considerations with regard to the use of service-queuing or shared-queuing. Conversely, on egress (downstream) it is common to see more than one queue in use for different services, particularly for business services, with an aggregate rate applied to the subscriber through the use of H-QoS. For example, assume that there are three classes in use; Best-Effort (BE), Assured-Forwarding (AF), and Expedited Forwarding (EF). This section will look at two ways to achieve this. Firstly using a conventional H-QoS scheduler, and secondly using an egress Port-Scheduler.

The SAP-ingress QoS policy classifies traffic into three Forwarding Classes (FCs) and maps those FCs to a single queue. Ingress traffic is not rate-limited (default PIR in queue 1 is max), and queue 1 is not mapped to a parent H-QoS scheduler.

```
qos
  sap-ingress 10 create
    queue 1 create
    exit
    queue 11 multipoint create
    exit
    fc "af" create
      queue 1
    exit
    fc "be" create
      queue 1
    exit
    fc "ef" create
      queue 1
    exit
    dscp be fc "be"
    dscp ef fc "ef"
    dscp af31 fc "af"
  exit
```

A scheduler policy is created having a single a tier 1 scheduler with a rate-limit of 8Mb/s.

```
qos
  scheduler-policy "Subscriber-Aggregate-Policy" create
    tier 1
      scheduler "Aggregate-Rate" create
        rate 8000
      exit
```

```

        exit
    exit

```

The SAP-egress QoS policy performs egress classification and maps classified traffic to the relevant FC, which in turn is mapped to its own queue. All queues are mapped to the previously configured tier 1 scheduler **Aggregate-Rate** such that queue 3 (EF) is allocated bandwidth first, and queue 1 (BE) and 2 (AF) are allocated bandwidth next in a 1:4 ratio.

```

qos
  sap-egress 10 create
    queue 1 create
      parent "Aggregate-Rate" level 2 weight 20
    exit
    queue 2 best-effort create
      parent "Aggregate-Rate" level 2 weight 80
    exit
    queue 3 expedite create
      parent "Aggregate-Rate" cir-level 3
      rate 1024 cir 1024
    exit
    fc af create
      queue 2
    exit
    fc be create
      queue 1
    exit
    fc ef create
      queue 3
    exit
    dscp be fc "be"
    dscp ef fc "ef"
    dscp af31 fc "af"
  exit

```

To this point, the QoS configuration is no different from a typical SAP-level QoS application. To make it applicable to ESM, the previously configured SAP-ingress and SAP-egress QoS policies must be referenced in the ingress/egress contexts of the sla-profile, respectively. Equally, the H-QoS scheduler-policy must be referenced in the ingress/egress contexts of the sub-profile. In this example, H-QoS is only used on egress, and as a result the scheduler-policy is referenced only in the egress context.

```

subscriber-mgmt
  sla-profile "ESM-SLA-PROF" create
    ingress
      qos 10
    exit
  exit
  egress
    qos 10
    exit
    no qos-marking-from-sap
  exit
exit
sub-profile "ESM-SUB-PROF" create

```

```

collect-stats
radius-accounting-policy "AAA-ACCT-POLICY"
egress
    scheduler-policy "Subscriber-Aggregate-Policy"
    exit
exit
exit

```

The queues assigned to the subscriber through the above SAP-ingress/egress QoS policies, together with accumulative statistics can be viewed using the **show service active-subscribers subscriber <name> detail** command (real time rates can be seen using the **monitor** command). The H-QoS scheduler hierarchy, with the SAP-egress queues mapped as child queues to a parent scheduler can be validated using the command **show qos scheduler-hierarchy subscriber <name> egress**. The **detail** argument as an extension of this command provides a significant amount of detail on real-time bandwidth allocated to each queue by the scheduler in the within-CIR and above-CIR passes. It also provides a useful snapshot on offered traffic loads in Kb/s on a per-queue basis.

```

*A:LNS# show qos scheduler-hierarchy subscriber "subscriber2@isp.net" egress
=====
Scheduler Hierarchy - Subscriber subscriber2@isp.net
=====
Egress Scheduler Policy : Subscriber-Aggregate-Policy
-----
Root (Egr)
| slot(5)
|--(S) : Aggregate-Rate
|
|   |--(Q) : Sub=subscriber2@isp.net:ESM-SLA-PROF 2->5/1/lms-esm:1.481->3
|   |--(Q) : Sub=subscriber2@isp.net:ESM-SLA-PROF 2->5/1/lms-esm:1.481->2
|   |--(Q) : Sub=subscriber2@isp.net:ESM-SLA-PROF 2->5/1/lms-esm:1.481->1
|
=====

```

The advantage of using conventional H-QoS schedulers is that they can be applied universally on ingress and egress to provide a subscriber aggregate rate capability. The disadvantage of this approach is that the aggregate rate defined in the scheduler-policy (or overridden in the sub-profile) cannot be dynamically overridden from RADIUS using the QoS-override VSA (**Alc-Subscriber-QoS-Override**). If ingress H-QoS is not a requirement, but the ability to override the subscriber egress aggregate-rate is, then H-QoS should be implemented using an egress port-scheduler.

The egress port-scheduler is functionally the same as a conventional H-QoS scheduler in the manner with which it arbitrates bandwidth across its child queues. However, it has some notable differences:

- It is applied at the egress port level. Any queue that uses that egress port to which it is applied that is not explicitly mapped to a port-scheduler is considered an orphan queue. Orphan queues are not serviced by the port-scheduler until all of its child queues have been serviced.
- Unlike conventional H-QoS schedulers that include only Ethernet overhead, the port-scheduler includes Preamble and Inter-Frame Gap for each packet.
- It is supported only on Ethernet ports, and only on egress.
- The egress aggregate rate applied to the subscriber can be overridden from RADIUS.

The first bullet point above is significant from an LNS perspective. In general, after ESM handling, downstream traffic for subscribers egresses the system over a physical port. This is not the case for L2TP subscribers, which are passed through to the MS-ISA for L2TP encapsulation before egressing the LNS (and in fact could egress the system on any number of physical ports). It is therefore not possible to apply the port-scheduler policy to the egress port in the conventional manner, and what is needed is a mechanism to apply the port-scheduler policy to the logical internal ports that interface to the MS-ISA. To achieve this, an intermediate object known as a **port-policy** is used, which, when configured, references the **port-scheduler** policy, and which subsequently is applied to the relevant **lns-group**.

Create the port-scheduler-policy.

```
qos
  port-scheduler-policy "egress-port-scheduler" create
exit
```

Create the port-policy and reference the previously configured port-scheduler policy.

```
port-policy "isa-port-policy" create
  egress-scheduler-policy "egress-port-scheduler"
exit
```

Attach the port-policy to the lns-group containing the MS-ISA.

```
isa
  lns-group 1 create
    mda 5/1
    port-policy "isa-port-policy"
    no shutdown
exit
```

Once the **port-scheduler** policy and **port-policy** are in place, the subscriber QoS can reference it. The QoS configuration previously used for conventional H-QoS schedulers differs in both the **sap-egress** policy and **sub-profile** when an egress **port-scheduler** is used. The queues within the **sap-egress** policy are each configured to be parented to the egress port-scheduler using the **port-parent** keyword (as opposed the **parent** keyword used for conventional H-QoS schedulers).

```

qos
  sap-egress 10 create
    queue 1 create
      port-parent level 2 weight 20
    exit
    queue 2 best-effort create
      port-parent level 2 weight 80
    exit
    queue 3 expedite create
      port-parent cir-level 3
      rate 1024 cir 1024
    exit
  fc af create
    queue 2
  exit
  fc be create
    queue 1
  exit
  fc ef create
    queue 3
  exit
  dscp be fc "be"
  dscp ef fc "ef"
  dscp af31 fc "af"
exit

```

The sub-profile contains no reference to scheduler policies, but instead contains a per-subscriber egress aggregate rate in Kb/s, defined through the **agg-rate-limit** parameter.

```

subscriber-mgmt
  sub-profile "ESM-SUB-PROF" create
    radius-accounting-policy "AAA-ACCT-POLICY"
    egress
      agg-rate-limit 8000
    exit
  exit
exit

```

Once again, the queues assigned to the subscriber through the above SAP-ingress/egress QoS policies, together with accumulative statistics can be viewed using the **show service active-subscribers subscriber <name> detail** command (real time rates can be seen using the **monitor** command). The scheduler SAP-egress queues mapped as child queues to a port-scheduler can be validated using the **show qos scheduler-hierarchy subscriber <name> egress** command. The **detail** argument as an extension of this command provides a significant amount of detail on bandwidth allocated to each queue by the scheduler in the within-CIR and above-CIR passes. It also provides a useful snapshot on offered traffic loads in Kb/s on a per-queue basis. Alternatively, all of the child queues and orphans mapped to the port-scheduler can be displayed using the **show qos scheduler-hierarchy port <slot/mda/lms-esm>** command, again with the optional **detail** argument.

```

*A:LNS# show qos scheduler-hierarchy subscriber "subscriber2@isp.net" egress
=====
Scheduler Hierarchy - Subscriber subscriber2@isp.net
=====

```


Egress Scheduler Policy :

```
-----
Root (Egr)
| slot(5)
|--(Q) : Sub=subscriber2@isp.net:ESM-SLA-PROF 2->5/1/lms-esm:1.481->3 (Port 5/1/lms-esm)
|
|--(Q) : Sub=subscriber2@isp.net:ESM-SLA-PROF 2->5/1/lms-esm:1.481->2 (Port 5/1/lms-esm)
|
|--(Q) : Sub=subscriber2@isp.net:ESM-SLA-PROF 2->5/1/lms-esm:1.481->1 (Port 5/1/lms-esm)
|
=====
```

With the previously configured QoS policies and schedulers in place, the aggregate rate limit in use for the subscriber can be viewed using the **show service active-subscribers subscriber <name> detail** command. There are three fields in this output that are of interest here. The **E. Agg Rate Limit** field shows the configured rate-limit in the sub-profile and is therefore relatively static. The **RADIUS Rate-Limit** field shows the aggregate rate received by RADIUS using the **Alc-Subscriber-QoS-Override** VSA, which overrides any rate-limit statically configured in the sub-profile. Finally, the **Oper-Rate-Limit** shows the static or RADIUS-received rate-limit, minus any other H-QoS adjustments, such as Multicast H-QoS adjustment (snooping on IGMP joins) or ANCP line-rate adjustments.

```
*A:LNS# show service active-subscribers subscriber "subscriber2@isp.net" detail | match
expression "E. Agg Rate Limit|RADIUS Rate-Limit|Oper-Rate-Limit"
E. Sched. Policy : N/A                               E. Agg Rate Limit: 8000
RADIUS Rate-Limit: N/A
Oper-Rate-Limit : 8000
```

Overriding the **agg-rate-limit** defined in the sub-profile can be done as part of the RADIUS Access-Accept, or through a Change of Authorization (CoA), and as previously outlined uses the **Alc-Subscriber-QoS-Override** VSA. This override function can be used, for example, to reconcile the LNS aggregate rate with the subscriber downstream rate learned through the TxConnectSpeed AVP in the ICCN message from the LAC. This ensures that the LNS does not overwhelm any downstream access node, and ensures that the LNS is responsible for all QoS scheduling in the event of congestion. In the following example, an override of the aggregate rate to 10Mb/s is sent as a CoA.

```
7 2014/02/21 16:37:23.94 GMT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 management RADIUS
"RADIUS: Receive
  Change of Authorization(43) id 117 len 66 from 172.20.148.7:37006 vrid 4095
    SESSION ID [44] 22 C482020000018C53077F48
    VSA [26] 16 Alcatel(6527)
      SUBSCRIBER QOS OVERRIDE [126] 14 e:r:rate=10000
"
```

Re-issuing the **show service active-subscribers subscriber <name> detail** command after the CoA shows that the **RADIUS Rate-Limit** field and the **Oper-Rate-Limit** field both correctly show 10Mb/s.

```
*A:LNS# show service active-subscribers subscriber "subscriber2@isp.net" detail | match
expression "E. Agg Rate Limit|RADIUS Rate-Limit|Oper-Rate-Limit"
```

QoS

E. Sched. Policy : N/A
RADIUS Rate-Limit: 10000
Oper-Rate-Limit : 10000

E. Agg Rate Limit: 8000

Propagating QoS Markings to L2TP/MPLS Headers

It is often desirable to mark the L2TP header (DCSP) or MPLS header (EXP) based on the class of service that is carried in the encapsulated subscriber IP payload. In general, when a packet is classified and mapped to an FC on ingress, that FC value is carried in the internal switch fabric header and is present when the packet is egressing the node. In the case of L2TP traffic however, the operation becomes a little more complex due to the fact that traffic transits the MS-ISA board with subscriber QoS implemented 'mid-chassis'.

In the upstream direction (from subscriber to LNS), traffic arrives encapsulated in L2TP at the ingress IOM, and is passed through the MS-ISA via the internal object lns-net. When traffic exits the MS-ISA through lns-esm as native IP, it is subject to subscriber ingress QoS implemented on the (MS-ISA) carrier IOM. Traffic is classified and mapped to an FC at this point, and that FC mapping is maintained in the switch fabric header. As a result, marking of traffic is effected by the network egress QoS policy.

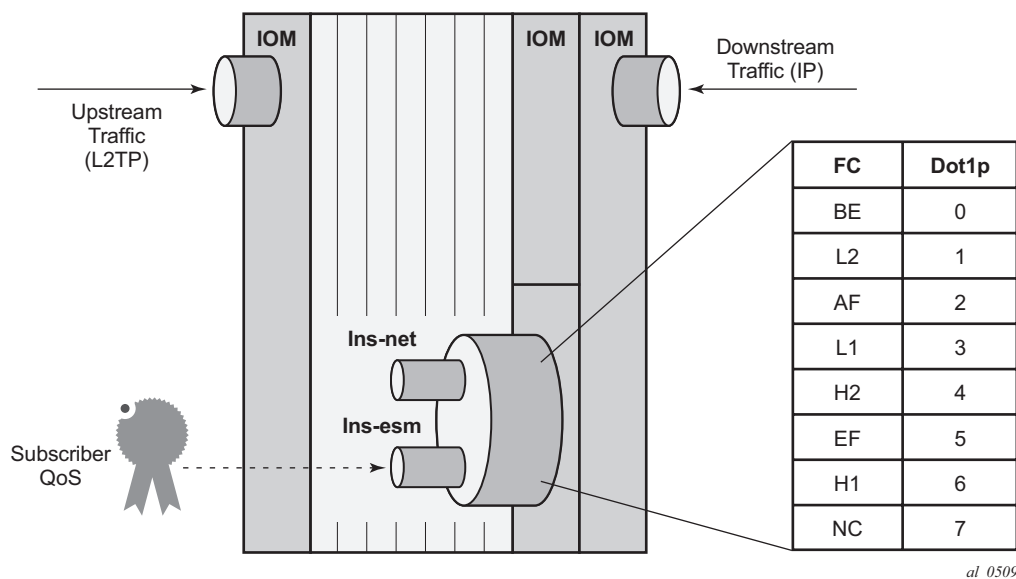


Figure 62: Ingress/Egress QoS Processing

In the downstream direction (from LNS to subscriber), traffic arrives at the ingress IOM as native IP and is diverted to the MS-ISA via the lns-esm internal object. At the lns-esm, the traffic is subject to subscriber egress QoS. When the traffic is passed through lns-esm to the MS-ISA for L2TP encapsulation, internal Q-in-Q VLAN tags are attached as previously described. As the lns-esm is effectively a SAP-egress, the internal switch fabric header containing the FC marking is removed at this point, and, as a result FC information is lost.

Propagating QoS Markings to L2TP/MPLS Headers

Therefore, in order to allow for FC-continuity through the MS-ISA, the system implements a queue-group at the ingress of lns-net that has a dot1p to FC mapping as shown in the preceding figure. Assuming a SAP-egress QoS policy that employs FCs BE, AF and EF, the QoS policy would include the additional configuration to implement the appropriate dot1p marking as shown in the following output. When traffic arrives at lns-net, it is classified and mapped into the appropriate FCs, and the associated FC mapping included in the switch fabric header. At network egress, the L2TP packet is then subject to marking as defined in the network egress QoS policy.

```
qos
  sap-egress 10 create
    queue 1 create
    exit
    queue 2 best-effort create
    exit
    queue 3 expedite create
    exit
    fc af create
      queue 2
      dot1p 2
    exit
    fc be create
      queue 1
      dot1p 0
    exit
    fc ef create
      queue 3
      dot1p 5
    exit
    dscp be fc "be"
    dscp ef fc "ef"
    dscp af31 fc "af"
  exit
```

Framed-Route

The majority of residential services in broadband networks have a single registered 32-bit IPv4 address on the WAN side of the RG and a private (RFC 1918) network on the LAN side. Traffic from the LAN towards the BNG (and Internet) is thereafter subject to Network Address and Port Translation (NAPT). However, a common requirement for delivery of business services is the ability for the BNG to recognize one or more IP subnets on the LAN side of the RG that is not subject to NAT, and the subscriber prefix is a route to a network. This is achieved using the standard RADIUS **Framed-Route** attribute, or dynamic BGP peering. Both serve the function of allowing one or more subnets to be learned at the LNS with a next-hop IP address of the RG WAN.

To provide an example of the use of Framed-Route, the Retail VRF VPRN 2 is again used, and in fact requires no modification in order to support subscribers with Framed-Routes. In general ESM, where Framed-Route is used, there is a requirement to configure **anti-spoof type nh-mac**, but for LNS SAPs this is the default. The RADIUS users file is updated to return a Framed-Route attribute for prefix 10.128.46.0/24 with a next-hop determined by the subscriber IP prefix. The prefix has a metric of 10, and has a tag of value 200, which may be used for example, for routing policy.

```
subscriber2@isp.net      Cleartext-Password := "password1"
                        Alc-Subsc-ID-Str = "subscriber2@isp.net",
                        Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str = "ESM-SUB-PROF",
                        Alc-SLA-Prof-Str = "ESM-SLA-PROF",
                        Alc-Serv-Id = "2",
                        Alc-Interface = "VPRN2-GROUP-INT",
                        Service-Type = Framed-User,
                        Framed-Protocol = PPP,
                        Framed-IP-Address = 10.10.148.22,
                        Framed-Route = "10.128.46.0/24 0.0.0.0 10 tag 200",
```

In SR OS, a prefix learned through the Framed-Route attribute is known internally as a **Managed Route**. Once the subscriber is instantiated, the presence of the Managed Route can be verified as installed.

```
*A:LNS# show service id 2 ppp session detail | match "Managed Routes" post-lines 5
Managed Routes
```

IP Address	Status	Metric	Tag	Pref
10.128.46.0/24	installed	10	200	0

The Managed Route can also be seen present in the VPRN routing-table, learned through protocol **Managed**.

```
*A:LNS# show router 2 route-table protocol managed
=====
Route Table (Service: 2)
=====
```

Framed-Route

Dest Prefix[Flags]	Type	Proto	Age	Pref
Next Hop[Interface Name]			Metric	
10.128.46.0/24	Remote	Managed	01h41m18s	0
10.10.148.22			10	

No. of Routes: 1

Flags: L = LFA nexthop available B = BGP backup route available
 n = Number of times nexthop is repeated

=====

L2TP Tunnel Switching (LTS)

In general, L2TP tunnels are established directly between LAC and LNS. However, if there are a large number of LAC devices (and therefore a large number of L2TP tunnels), it may be desirable to perform some aggregation of these tunnels before presenting them to the LNS. This is implemented by one or more LNS devices performing the function of an L2TP Tunnel Switch (LTS). The LTS terminates multiple L2TP tunnels from the LAC(s), and sources a single L2TP tunnel towards the target LNS, switching L2TP sessions from one tunnel to another tunnel accordingly.

SR OS supports LTS functionality, and from a configuration perspective it requires no more than L2TP being placed in a no shutdown state in the required routing context if the relevant attributes are returned from RADIUS. As with LNS functions, at least one MS-ISA is required to support LTS functions. In this example, VPRN 1 is used with the previously defined configuration. To recap, this VPRN has a single L2TP group "L2TP-GROUP-1", and within that group, a single tunnel defined "L2TP-TUNNEL-1" that terminates the tunnel from the LAC. To demonstrate LTS functionality, the LAC continues to function as a LAC, the LNS functions as an LTS, and PE-1 becomes the LNS.

The RADIUS users file for subscriber1@isp.net is modified to include a number of additional attributes and VSAs. As previously described, the **Alc-Serv-Id** and **Alc-Interface** define the service ID and group-interface where the subscriber is terminated, and this can be any IES or VPRN service. The **Alc-Tunnel-Serv-Id** VSA is used to identify the service from which the L2TP tunnel is initiated. This can be the same service in which the subscriber is terminated, or it can be a different service. If it is a different service, then the minimum requirement is that L2TP is placed in a no shutdown state. In this example, the subscriber is terminated in service VPRN 1 and the L2TP tunnel is also initiated from service VPRN 1. The remaining attributes are standard attributes defined in RFC 2868 for L2TP tunnel set-up. Note that the Tunnel-Assignment-Id attribute is used to maintain the concept of groups and tunnels, where Tunnel-Assignment-Id:0 is used to indicate the group name and Tunnel-Assignment-Id:1 is used to indicate the tunnel name. This provides sufficient information for the LTS to be able to initiate an L2TP tunnel without any requirement for nodal configuration above that already configured.

```
subscriber1@isp.net      Cleartext-Password := "password1"
                        Alc-Subsc-ID-Str = "subscriber1@isp.net",
                        Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str = "ESM-SLA-PROF",
                        Alc-SLA-Prof-Str = "ESM-SUB-PROF",
                        Alc-Serv-Id = "1",
                        Alc-Interface = "LNS-GROUP-INT",
                        Alc-Tunnel-Serv-Id = 1,
                        Tunnel-Assignment-Id:0 = "RADIUS-returned-Tunnel-Group",
                        Tunnel-Type:1 += L2TP,
                        Tunnel-Medium-Type:1 += IP,
                        Tunnel-Server-Endpoint:1 += 192.168.0.3,
                        Tunnel-Password:1 += "password",
                        Tunnel-Assignment-Id:1 += "RADIUS-returned-Tunnel-Name",
                        Tunnel-Client-Auth-Id = "LTS",
```

L2TP Tunnel Switching (LTS)

The LAC forwards the PPP session into the LAC to LTS tunnel, and after the LTS receives the ICCN from the LAC, it proceeds in authenticating the subscriber. RADIUS returns the above attributes with sufficient information for the LTS to instantiate the subscriber and initiates an L2TP tunnel/session with PE-1, the target LNS. The LNS then authenticates the user once more, this time providing it with IP address information through IPCP negotiation. This interaction between PPP client and LNS is transparent to the LTS, which is responsible for switching PPP packets between L2TP sessions. However, the user is instantiated in the system as a fully-fledged subscriber.

```
*A:LNS# show service id 1 ppp session
=====
PPP sessions for service 1
=====
User-Name
  Descr.
      Up Time          Type  Termination      IP/L2TP-Id/Interface-Id MC-Stdby
-----
subscriber1@isp.net
  vprn:1 connid:864561329 tid:13192 sid:10417
      0d 16:21:58   oL2tp lac          557659129
-----
No. of PPP sessions: 1
=====
```

Within VPRN 1 there are two L2TP tunnels active. The first entry with Connection Id 557645824 belongs to group **RADIUS-returned-Tunnel-Group** (derived from RADIUS attribute Tunnel-Assignment-Id:0) and has tunnel name **RADIUS-returned-Tunnel-Name** (derived from RADIUS attribute Tunnel-Assignment-Id:1). This is the tunnel from LTS to LNS, and it is in the **Established** state and has one session active. The second entry with Connection Id 864550912 is the statically defined tunnel from the LAC, belonging to the CLI-configured group L2TP-GROUP-1 with tunnel name L2TP-TUNNEL-1. This tunnel is also in the **Established** state, with one session active.

```
*A:LNS# show router 1 l2tp tunnel
=====
Conn ID      Loc-Tu-ID Rem-Tu-ID State          Blacklist-state  Ses Active
Group                                     Ses Total
Assignment
-----
557645824   8509      9488      established    not-blacklisted  1
  RADIUS-returned-Tunnel-Group
  RADIUS-returned-Tunnel-Name
864550912   13192     7204      established    not-blacklisted  1
  L2TP-GROUP-1
  L2TP-TUNNEL-1
-----
No. of tunnels: 2
=====
```


Equally, within VPRN 1 there are two L2TP sessions active for subscriber subscriber1@isp.net. Session ID 557659129 is carried in Tunnel-ID 8509, which, as shown in the previous output, is the tunnel towards the LNS, while session ID 864561329 is carried in Tunnel-ID 13192, which is the tunnel towards the LAC.

```
*A:LNS# show router 1 l2tp session
=====
L2TP Session Summary
=====
ID                Control Conn ID    Tunnel-ID    Session-ID    State
-----
557659129         557645824         8509         13305         established
864561329         864550912         13192        10417         established
subscriber1@isp.net
interface: LNS-GROUP-INT
service-id: 1
557659129
-----
No. of sessions: 2
=====
```

IPv6

The deployment of IPv6 into residential broadband networks dictates some design choices, or perhaps even some enforced IPv6 address allocation mechanisms. Bridged or Routed Residential Gateways (RGs). Numbered or unnumbered WAN. Stateful (DHCPv6) or stateless (Stateless Address Auto-Configuration, or SLAAC) address assignment. The purpose of this example is not to show every possibility, but simply to demonstrate that enabling IPv6 is possible at the LNS, just as if this were a conventional BNG doing PPP Termination and Aggregation (PTA). This example uses a widely adopted approach of dual-stack Routed RG with DHCPv6 Prefix Delegation.

The configuration of VPRN 2 is modified to include some IPv6 parameters. In the subscriber-interface the **delegated-prefix-len** parameter is set to **variable** to indicate that prefixes delegated to subscribers may be of varying length (the default delegated prefix length is /64). The **allow-unmatching-prefixes** parameter tells the subscriber-interface to operate in an IPv6 unnumbered mode, allowing IPv6 addresses to be allocated to subscribers that do not fall within the range of any IPv6 subnet defined under the subscriber-interface. Within the group-interface, the **ipv6** context places router-advertisements into a no shutdown state and has the **managed-configuration** flag set to indicate that stateful (DHCPv6) address configuration is to be used.

There is also a **dhcp6 proxy-server** enabled, that provides an interworking function between RADIUS (where the Delegated Prefix will be learned from) and the DHCPv6 client. The proxy will take the RADIUS-provided prefix and responds to the clients Solicit message with an DHCPv6 Advertise message containing the delegated prefix (IA_PD). Because the DHCPv6 messages from the client need to be received over the subscriber PPP session, the proxy-server is configured to allow this using the **client-applications ppp** command. Finally, there is a static-route to black-hole the /48 IPv6 prefix. The client is allocated a /64 prefix from this range and this static-route is used to provide an aggregated upstream prefix advertisement.

```
vrf-import "vrf2-import"
vrf-export "vrf2-export"
route-distinguisher 64496:2
auto-bind ldp
interface "loopback" create
    address 192.168.0.2/32
    loopback
exit
subscriber-interface "VPRN2-SUB-INT" create
    unnumbered 192.168.0.2
    ipv6
        delegated-prefix-len variable
        allow-unmatching-prefixes
    exit
group-interface "VPRN2-GROUP-INT" lns create
    ipv6
        router-advertisements
        managed-configuration
        no shutdown
    exit
    dhcp6
        proxy-server
        client-applications ppp
```

```

        no shutdown
    exit
exit
exit
sap-parameters
    sub-sla-mgmt
        sub-ident-policy "all-subscribers"
    exit
exit
oper-up-while-empty
exit
exit
static-route 10.10.148.0/24 black-hole
static-route 2A00:8010:1B00::/48 black-hole
no shutdown

```

The RADIUS users file entry for subscriber2@isp.net is also modified to return the IPv6 Delegated Prefix using the standard attribute **Delegated-IPv6-Prefix**.

```

subscriber2@isp.net    Cleartext-Password := "password1"
                      Alc-Subsc-ID-Str = "subscriber2@isp.net",
                      Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str = "ESM-SUB-PROF",
                      Alc-SLA-Prof-Str = "ESM-SLA-PROF",
                      Alc-Serv-Id = "2",
                      Alc-Interface = "VPRN2-GROUP-INT",
                      Service-Type = Framed-User,
                      Framed-Protocol = PPP,
                      Framed-IP-Address = 10.10.148.22,
                      Delegated-IPv6-Prefix = 2001:db8:1b00:100::/64

```

After the PPP LCP phase and RADIUS authentication, the LNS is aware that the subscriber also has IPv6 enabled (in this case because it received the **Delegated-IPv6-Prefix** attribute). As a result, the LNS begins to negotiate both IPCP and IPv6CP with the client. For IPv6CP, only an Interface-ID is negotiated, for which the LNS uses an EUI-64 extended version of the chassis MAC address. Once IPv6CP negotiation is completed, the client can initiate a DHCPv6 Solicit for a delegated prefix (IA_PD option). After a successful Advertise/Request/Reply exchange the subscriber is instantiated as dual-stack IPv4/IPv6.

```

*A:LNS# show service active-subscribers subscriber "subscriber2@isp.net"
=====
Active Subscribers
=====
-----
Subscriber subscriber2@isp.net (ESM-SUB-PROF)
-----
-----
(1) SLA Profile Instance sap:[5/1/lms-esm:1.481] - sla:ESM-SLA-PROF
-----
-----
IP Address          MAC Address          PPPoE-SID Origin
-----
10.10.148.22        00:00:1f:4a:65:44 1          IPCP
2001:DB8:1B00:100::/64

```

00:00:1f:4a:65:44 1 PPP-DHCP6

Conclusion

SR OS offers a comprehensive feature-set for LNS implementations. The MS-ISA provides the hardware-assist for L2TP encapsulation/de-capsulation while the carrier IOM implements conventional subscriber management functions.

Multi-Chassis IPSec Redundancy

In This Chapter

This section provides information about multi-chassis IPSec redundancy configurations.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 356](#)
- [Overview on page 357](#)
- [Configuration on page 359](#)
- [Conclusion on page 394](#)

Applicability

This feature is applicable to 7750 SR-7/12/12e with IOM3-XP or IMMs and chassis mode D and the 7450 ESS-6/7/12 with IOM3-XP or IMM in mixed mode.

The configuration was tested on release 12.0.R1.

Overview

Multi-Chassis IPSec redundancy (MC-IPSec) is a stateful inter-chassis IPSec failover mechanism. IPSec tunnel states are synchronized between the master and standby chassis. A tunnel-group failure on the master or a master chassis failure could trigger MC-IPSec failover to the standby chassis.

The following are some highlights of this feature:

- IKEv2 only
- Multi-active tunnel-group only
- The granularity of failover is tunnel-group, which means a specific tunnel-group could failover to the standby chassis independent of other tunnel-groups on the master chassis
- Supports both static and dynamic LAN-to-LAN tunnel

This feature has the following building blocks:

- Master election
 - MIMP (MC-IPSec Mastership Protocol) runs between chassis to elect master, MIMP run for each tunnel-group independently
- Synchronization
 - MCS (Multi-Chassis Synchronization) syncs IPSec states between chassis
- Routing
 - MC-IPSec-aware routing attracts traffic to the master chassis
 - Shunting support
 - MC-IPSec aware VRRP

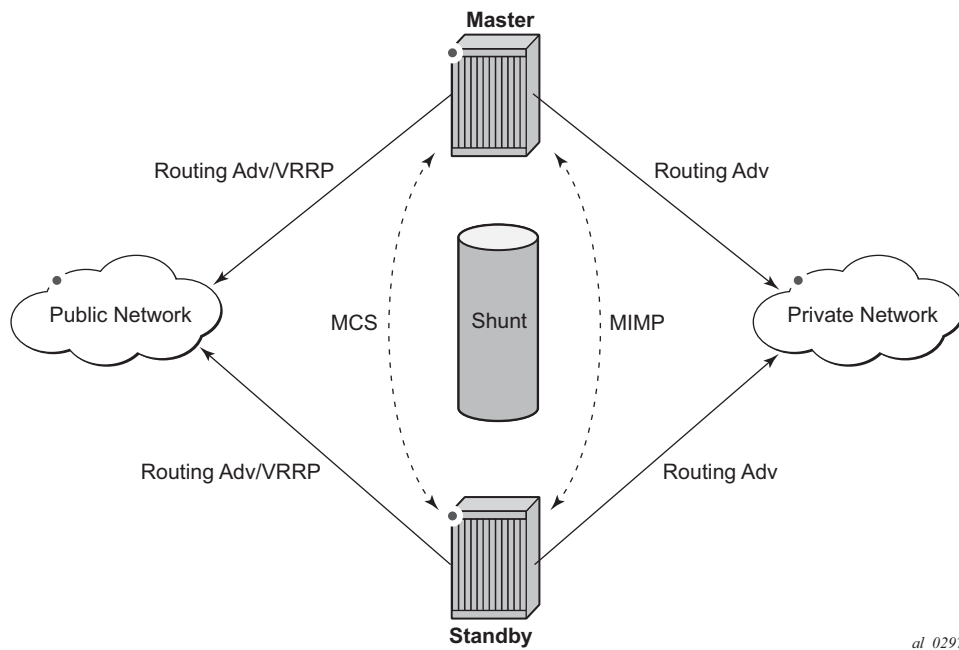


Figure 63: MC-IPSec Architecture

The fundamentals of MC-IPSec are:

- Only the master processes ESP and IKE traffic. If the standby receives traffic, it could shunt it to the master if possible. The traffic will be discarded if the standby fails to shunt the traffic.
- Same local gateway address should be provisioned on both chassis.
- MC-IPSec does not synchronize configurations.
- MC-IPSec aware routing attracts traffic to the master in both public and private service. This is achieved by exporting the corresponding IPsec routes to the routing protocol via a route policy and setting a different routing metric according to the MC-IPSec state.
- In case of a Layer 2 public network, MC-IPSec aware VRRP could be used to trigger VRRP switchover upon MC-IPSec switchover.
- MCS syncs IPsec states between chassis so that existing IPsec tunnels do not need to be re-established upon switchover.
- MIMP elects mastership between two chassis, and it could also detect chassis failure and tunnel-group failure; a central BFD session could be bound to the MIMP to achieve fast chassis failure detection.

Configuration

The test topology is shown in [Figure 64](#).

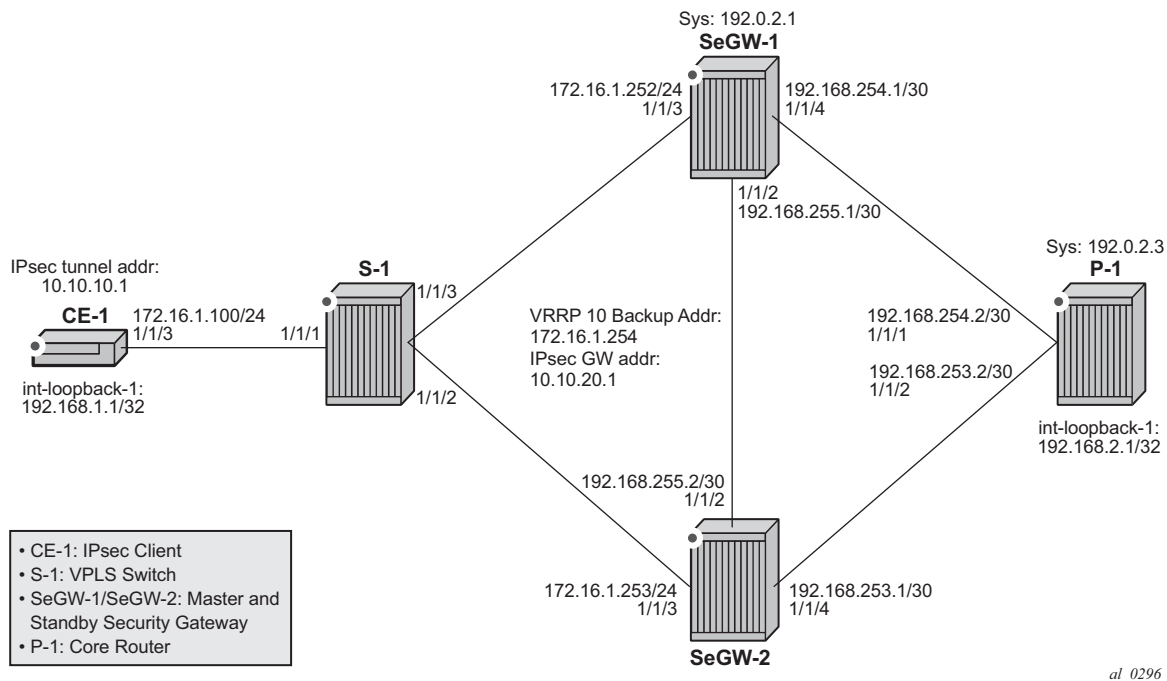


Figure 64: Test Topology

Test setup:

- An IPsec tunnel is initiated by CE-1 and terminated on the master of SeGW-1/SeGW-2.
- IES 1 and VPRN 2 are the public and private services, respectively, on SeGW-1/SeGW-2/CE-1.
- VPRN 2 is also configured on P-1.
- Static LAN-to-LAN tunnel with pre-shared key.
- Local VPLS service 100 on S-1 to simulate a layer2 switch.
- VRRP 10 between SeGW-1 and SeGW-2 to provide a backup address 192.168.1.254, which is also the default next-hop for CE-1.
- VRRP policy 1 is bound to VRRP 10 to change the in-use priority upon MC-IPsec switchover.
- OSPF is the IGP running in the base routing instance between SeGW-1, SeGW-2 and P-1.

- MP-BGP is running between SeGW-1, SeGW-2 and P-1 for exchanging VPRN 2's routes.
- A ping between loopback interface address: 192.168.1.1 on CE-1 and 192.168.2.1 on P-1 in VPRN 2 is used to verify the connectivity over the IPsec tunnel.

The MC-IPSec configuration commands are shown below.

```
config>redundancy>multi-chassis>
  peer <ip-address> [create]
    sync
      ipsec
        tunnel-group <tunnel-group-id> sync-tag <tag-name> [create]
    mc-ipsec
      bfd-enable
      discovery-interval <interval-1> [boot <interval-2>]
      hold-on-neighbor-failure <multiplier>
      keep-alive-interval <interval>
      tunnel-group <tunnel-group-id> [create]
        peer-group <tunnel-group-id>
        priority <priority>
        shutdown

config>router>policy-options>policy-statement>entry>from>
  state ipsec-master-with-peer|ipsec-non-master|ipsec-master-without-peer
  protocol ipsec

config>service>ies>if>
config>service>vprn>if>
  static-tunnel-redundant-next-hop <ip-address>
  dynamic-tunnel-redundant-next-hop <ip-address>

config>isa>tunnel-grp>
  ipsec-responder-only

config>vrrp>policy>priority-event>
  mc-ipsec-non-forwarding <tunnel-grp-id>
    hold-clear <seconds>
    hold-set <seconds>
    priority <priority-level> explicit
```

Parameters:

- **peer <ip-address> [create]** — This command creates or enters a multi-chassis peer. The peer's address by default is the peer's system address. This can be changed on the peer using the **config>redundancy>multi-chassis>peer>source-address** command.
- **sync>ipsec** — This command enables MCS to synchronize IPsec states.
- **tunnel-group <tunnel-group-id> sync-tag <tag-name> [create]** — This command enables MCS to synchronize the IPsec states of the specified tunnel-group. The **sync-tag** parameter is used to match peer's tunnel-group. The tunnel-group states with same sync-tag on both chassis will be synced.
- **mc-ipsec** — This command enters the multi-chassis IPsec configuration context.

- **bfd-enable** — This command enables tracking a central BFD session, if the BFD session goes down, then the system considers the peer is down and changes the mc-ipsec status of the configured tunnel-group accordingly.

The BFD session uses the source address of MCS as its source address and the MCS peer address as the destination address. Other BFD parameters are configured with the **bfd** command on the interface that the MCS source address resides on.

Configuration of this command is optional.

- **discovery-interval** *<interval-1>* [**boot** *<interval-2>*] — This command specifies the time interval that the tunnel-group stays in “Discovery” state. Interval-1 is used as discovery-interval when a new tunnel-group is added to multi-chassis redundancy (mp-ipsec); interval-2 is used as discovery-interval after system boot-up, it is optional, and when it is not specified, interval-1’s value will be used. Both intervals have a default value of 300 seconds.
- **hold-on-neighbor-failure** *<multiplier>* — This command specifies the number of keep-alive failures before considering the peer to be down. Default is 3.
- **keep-alive-interval** *<interval>* — This command specifies the time interval of the mastership election protocol keep-alive packets. Default value is 1 seconds, range: 0.5 ~ 50 seconds.
- **tunnel-group** *<tunnel-group-id>* [**create**] — This command enables multi-chassis redundancy for the specified tunnel-group, or enters an already configured tunnel-group context. The configured tunnel-groups could failover independently.
- **peer-group** *<tunnel-group-id>* — This command specifies the corresponding tunnel-group id on the peer node. The peer tunnel-group id is not necessary equal to local tunnel-group id.
- **priority** *<priority>* — This command specifies the local priority of the tunnel-group, this is used to elect a master, where the higher number wins. If the priorities are the same, then the peer which has more active ISAs wins; if priority and the number of active ISAs are same, then the peer with higher IP address wins. Default value is 100, range: 0..255
- **shutdown** — This command disables the multi-chassis redundancy for the specified tunnel-group
- **state ipsec-master-with-peer|ipsec-non-master|ipsec-master-without-peer** — These commands specify the mc-ipsec state in a “from” statement of a route policy entry.
ipsec-master-with-peer: The corresponding tunnel-group is Master with peer reachable.
ipsec-master-without-peer: The corresponding tunnel-group is Master with peer unreachable.
ipsec-non-master: The corresponding tunnel-group is **not** Master.
- **protocol ipsec** — This command specifies the IPsec as protocol in a “from” statement of a route policy entry. **protocol ipsec** means the /32 local gateway routes (of both static and dynamic tunnels) and reverse route of dynamic tunnel.
- **static-tunnel-redundant-next-hop** *<ip-address>*
dynamic-tunnel-redundant-next-hop *<ip-address>* — This command specifies the

redundant next-hop address on a public or private IPsec interface (with public or private tunnel-sap) for a static/dynamic IPsec tunnel. The specified next-hop address will be used by the standby node to shunt traffic to the master in case it receives any traffic.

The next-hop address will be resolved in the routing table of the corresponding service.

Notes:

→ Shunting is supported over:

- Directly connected SAP
- Spoke SDP terminated IP interface

→ Shunting over auto-bind tunnel is not supported.

→ Shunting will not work if the tunnel-group is down.

- **ipsec-responder-only** — With this command configured, the system will only act as IKE responder except for the automatic CHILD_SA rekey upon MC-IPsec switchover.

This command is required for MC-IPsec support of static LAN-to-LAN tunnel

- **mc-ipsec-non-forwarding** *<tunnel-grp-id>* — This command creates a new VRRP policy priority event: **mc-ipsec-non-forwarding**. It will be triggered whenever the specified tunnel-group enters non-forwarding state.
- **hold-clear** *<seconds>* — This command configures hold time before clearing the event. Default value is 0 seconds. Range: 0..86400 seconds
- **hold-set** *<seconds>* — This command configures hold time before setting the event. Default value is 0 seconds. Range: 0..86400 seconds
- **priority** *<priority-level>* **explicit** — This command sets the VRRP in-use priority to the configured value upon the event. Default value is 0, range: 0..254

Before starting

- The system time of SeGW-1 and SeGW-2 must be the same. Otherwise, this feature will not work. Using a time sync protocol like NTP/SNTP is the recommended method.
- SeGW-1 and SeGW-2 must be IP reachable in the base routing instance because both MCS and MIMP run in the base routing instance.

Step 0: Configure CE-1.

- IES 1 and VPRN 2 are the public and private service.
 - A static default route points to the VRRP backup address 172.16.1.254.
 - Static IPSec tunnel “tunnel-1” with local address 10.10.10.1 and remote address 10.10.20.1.
 - A loopback interface in VPRN 2 with address 192.168.1.1/32, which is used as source address for the ping traffic in later step.
- The ping traffic is used to test the connectivity between CE-1 and P-1 over IPSec tunnel “tunnel-1”.

```
#-----
echo "Router (Network Side) Configuration"
#-----
router
  interface "int-CE1-S1"
    address 172.16.1.100/24
    port 1/1/3
    no shutdown
  exit
  interface "system"
    no shutdown
  exit
  autonomous-system 64496
#-----
echo "Static Route Configuration"
#-----
  static-route 0.0.0.0/0 next-hop 172.16.1.254
#-----
echo "IPsec Configuration"
#-----
  ipsec
    ike-policy 1 create
    ike-version 2
    dpd
  exit
  ipsec-transform 1 create
  exit
exit
#-----
echo "Service Configuration"
#-----
```

Configuration

```
service
  ies 1 customer 1 create
    interface "int-IPsec-Public-1" create
      address 10.10.10.254/24
      tos-marking-state untrusted
      sap tunnel-1.public:1 create
    exit
  exit
  no shutdown
exit
vprn 2 customer 1 create
  ipsec
    security-policy 1 create
      entry 10 create
        local-ip 192.168.1.1/32
        remote-ip 192.168.2.1/32
      exit
    exit
  exit
  route-distinguisher 64496:2
  interface "int-loopback-1" create
    address 192.168.1.1/32
    loopback
  exit
  interface "int-IPsec-private-1" tunnel create
    sap tunnel-1.private:1 create
      ipsec-tunnel "tunnel-1" create
        security-policy 1
          local-gateway-address 10.10.10.1 peer 10.10.20.1
          delivery-service 1
        dynamic-keying
          ike-policy 1
          pre-shared-key "ALU"
          transform 1
        exit
      no shutdown
    exit
  exit
  exit
  static-route 192.168.2.1/32 ipsec-tunnel "tunnel-1"
  no shutdown
exit
exit
```

Step 1. Configure S-1.

- A local VPLS service 3 to simulate a layer2 switch between CE-1, SeGW-1 and SeGW-2.

```
vpls 3 customer 1 create
  stp
    shutdown
  exit
  sap 1/1/1 create
  exit
  sap 1/1/2 create
  exit
  sap 1/1/3 create
```



```

        exit
    no shutdown
exit

```

Step 2. Configure P-1

- P-1 simulates the core network router, which connects to both SeGW-1 and SeGW-2.
- A loopback interface with address 192.168.2.1/32 in VPRN 2 is the destination address of the ping traffic from CE-1.
- MP-BGP session between P-1 and SeGW-1/SeGW-2 to receive 192.168.1.1/32 route in VPRN 2.
- GRE spoke SDPs to connect to SeGW-1 and SeGW-2.

```

#-----
echo "Router (Network Side) Configuration"
#-----
router
    interface "int-P1-SeGW1"
        address 192.168.254.2/30
        port 1/1/1
        no shutdown
    exit
    interface "int-P1-SeGW2"
        address 192.168.253.2/30
        port 1/1/2
        no shutdown
    exit
    interface "system"
        address 192.0.2.3/32
        no shutdown
    exit
    autonomous-system 64496
#-----
echo "OSPFv2 Configuration"
#-----
    ospf
        area 0.0.0.0
            interface "system"
                no shutdown
            exit
            interface "int-P1-SeGW1"
                no shutdown
            exit
            interface "int-P1-SeGW2"
                no shutdown
            exit
        exit
    exit
#-----
echo "Service Configuration"
#-----
    service
        sdp 200 create

```

Configuration

```
        far-end 192.0.2.1
        signaling off
        keep-alive
            shutdown
        exit
        no shutdown
    exits
    sdp 300 create
        far-end 192.0.2.2
        signaling off
        keep-alive
            shutdown
        exit
        no shutdown
    exit
    vpn 2 customer 1 create
        route-distinguisher 64496:2
        vrf-target target:64496:2
        interface "int-loopback-1" create
            address 192.168.2.1/32
            loopback
        exit
        spoke-sdp 200 create
            description "SDP to SeGW-1"
        exit
        spoke-sdp 300 create
            description "SDP to SeGW-2"
        exit
        no shutdown
    exit
exit
#-----
echo "BGP Configuration"
#-----
    bgp
        group "MPBGP"
            family vpn-ipv4
            peer-as 64496
            neighbor 192.0.2.1
            exit
            neighbor 192.0.2.2
            exit
        exit
        no shutdown
    exit
exit
```

Step 3. Configure IPSec tunnel on SeGW-1.

- The tunnel-group must be in multi-active mode before MC-IPSec can be enabled for it.
- Interface "int-Redundant-1" is a spoke-sdp terminated interface, which is used for shunting.
- SDP 100 and 200 are the GRE SDP towards SeGW-2 and P-1.
- IPSec tunnel "tunnel-1" is the tunnel to CE-1; both SeGW-1 and SeGW-2 use same local gateway address: 10.10.20.1.

```
#-----
echo "ISA Configuration"
#-----
    isa
        tunnel-group 1 create
            ipsec-responder-only
            multi-active
            mda 1/2
            no shutdown
        exit
    exit
#-----
echo "Router (Network Side) Configuration"
#-----
    router
        interface "int-SeGW1-P1"
            address 192.168.254.1/30
            port 1/1/4
            no shutdown
        exit
        interface "int-SeGW1-SeGW2"
            address 192.168.255.1/30
            port 1/1/2
            no shutdown
        exit
        interface "system"
            address 192.0.2.1/32
            bfd 100 receive 100 multiplier 3
            no shutdown
        exit
        autonomous-system 64496
#-----
echo "Static Route Configuration"
#-----
    static-route 10.10.10.0/24 next-hop 172.16.1.100
#-----
echo "OSPFv2 Configuration"
#-----
    ospf
        area 0.0.0.0
            interface "system"
                no shutdown
            exit
            interface "int-SeGW1-SeGW2"
                no shutdown
            exit
```

Configuration

```
        interface "int-SeGW1-P1"
            no shutdown
        exit
    exit
exit
#-----
echo "IPsec Configuration"
#-----
    ipsec
        ike-policy 1 create
        ike-version 2
        ipsec-lifetime 7200
        isakmp-lifetime 172800
    exit
    ipsec-transform 1 create
    exit
exit
#-----
echo "Service Configuration"
#-----
    service
        sdp 100 create
            signaling off
            far-end 192.0.2.2
            keep-alive
            shutdown
        exit
        no shutdown
    exit
    sdp 200 create
        signaling off
        far-end 192.0.2.3
        keep-alive
        shutdown
    exit
    no shutdown
exit
    ies 1 customer 1 create
        interface "int-SeGW1-S1" create
            address 172.16.1.252/24
            vrrp 10
                backup 172.16.1.254
                priority 200
                policy 1
                ping-reply
            exit
            sap 1/1/3 create
            exit
        exit
        interface "int-IPsec-Public-1" create
            address 10.10.20.254/24
            tos-marking-state untrusted
            sap tunnel-1.public:1 create
            exit
            static-tunnel-redundant-next-hop 192.168.255.2
        exit
        no shutdown
    exit
vprn 2 customer 1 create
```

```

ipsec
  security-policy 1 create
    entry 10 create
      local-ip 192.168.2.1/32
      remote-ip 192.168.1.1/32
    exit
  exit
exit
vrf-export "IPsec-to-MPBGP"
route-distinguisher 64496:2
vrf-target target:64496:2
interface "int-IPsec-Private-1" tunnel create
  sap tunnel-1.private:1 create
    ipsec-tunnel "tunnel-1" create
      security-policy 1
      local-gateway-address 10.10.20.1 peer 10.10.10.1
                                     delivery-service 1
      dynamic-keying
        ike-policy 1
        pre-shared-key "ALU"
        transform 1
      exit
      no shutdown
    exit
  exit
  static-tunnel-redundant-next-hop 192.168.20.2
exit
interface "int-Redundant-1" create
  address 192.168.20.1/30
  spoke-sdp 100:20 create
    ingress
      vc-label 2049
    exit
    egress
      vc-label 2048
    exit
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
static-route 192.168.1.1/32 ipsec-tunnel "tunnel-1"
spoke-sdp 100 create
  description "SDP to SeGW-2"
exit
spoke-sdp 200 create
  description "SDP to P-1"
exit
no shutdown
exit
exit

```

Step 4. Enable MC-IPSec for tunnel-group 1 on SeGW-1

- Create a multi-chassis peer for SeGW-2 by using SeGW-2's system address.
- Enable MCS for IPSec and tunnel-group 1.
- Enable MC-IPSec for tunnel-group with a configured priority 200.
- Bind a central BFD session to MC-IPSec from system interface.

```
*A:SeGW-1>config>redundancy# info
-----
multi-chassis
  peer 192.0.2.2 create
  sync
    ipsec
    tunnel-group 1 sync-tag "tag-1" create
    no shutdown
  exit
mc-ipsec
  bfd-enable
  tunnel-group 1 create
    peer-group 1
    priority 200
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
no shutdown
exit
exit
-----
*A:SeGW-1>config>router# info
-----
interface "system"
  address 192.0.2.1/32
  bfd 100 receive 100 multiplier 3
  no shutdown
exit
```

Step 5. Configure MC-IPsec aware routing on SeGW-1.

- Export static route 192.168.1.1/32 in VPRN 2 to P-1 by using route-policy "IPsec-to-MPBGP".
- Set the local preference of the 192.168.1.1/32 according to the MC-IPsec state:
 - ipsec-master-with-peer: 200
 - ipsec-non-master: 100
 - ipsec-master-without-peer: 200

State “ipsec-master-without-peer” could be used to attract traffic to the designated master in case of “Dual Master” (meaning two chassis lose the MIMP connection in base routing instance). In this example, SeGW-1 has local preference 200 and SeGW-2 has local preference 100 for ipsec-master-without-peer.

- Apply the policy “IPsec-to-MPBGP” in VPRN 2.

```
#-----
echo "Policy Configuration"
#-----
    policy-options
        begin
        prefix-list "CE1-Internal"
            prefix 192.168.1.1/32 exact
        exit
        community "vprn2" members "target:64496:2"
        policy-statement "IPsec-to-MPBGP"
            entry 10
                from
                    prefix-list "CE1-Internal"
                    state ipsec-master-with-peer
                exit
                action accept
                    community add "vprn2"
                    local-preference 200
                exit
            exit
            entry 20
                from
                    prefix-list "CE1-Internal"
                    state ipsec-non-master
                exit
                action accept
                    community add "vprn2"
                    local-preference 100
                exit
            exit
            entry 30
                from
                    prefix-list "CE1-Internal"
                    state ipsec-master-without-peer
                exit
                action accept
                    community add "vprn2"
                    local-preference 200
```

Configuration

```
        exit
    exit
    default-action accept
        community add "vprn2"
    exit
exit
commit
exit
#-----
echo "BGP Configuration"
#-----
    bgp
        group "MPBGP"
            family vpn-ipv4
            peer-as 64496
            neighbor 192.0.2.2
            exit
            neighbor 192.0.2.3
            exit
        exit
        no shutdown
    exit
exit
-----
A:SeGW-1>config>service>
    vprn 2 customer 1 create
    vrf-export "IPsec-to-MPBGP"
    ...
```


Step 6. Configure MC-IPSec-aware VRRP on SeGW-1.

- VRRP instance needs to be in preempt mode.
- Use “mc-ipsec-non-forwarding” priority event to lower the in-use VRRP priority upon MC-IPSec switchover, which makes sure VRRP and MC-IPSec have the same master.
- Apply the vrrp-policy on interface "int-SeGW1-S1" of IES 1.
→ This only needs to be configured on the designated VRRP master, in this case, SeGW-1.

```
*A:SeGW-1>config>vrrp# info
-----
policy 1
  priority-event
    mc-ipsec-non-forwarding 1
    priority 50 explicit
  exit
exit
exit
-----
*A:SeGW-1>config>service>ies# info
-----
interface "int-SeGW1-S1" create
  address 172.16.1.252/24
  vrrp 10
    backup 172.16.1.254
    priority 200
    policy 1
    ping-reply
  exit
  sap 1/1/3 create
  exit
exit
```

Step 7. Repeat Step 3 to Step 5 on SeGW-2.

```
#-----
echo "ISA Configuration"
#-----
    isa
        tunnel-group 1 create
            ipsec-responder-only
            multi-active
            mda 1/2
            no shutdown
        exit
    exit
#-----
echo "Redundancy Configuration"
#-----
    redundancy
        multi-chassis
            peer 192.0.2.1 create
                sync
                ipsec
                tunnel-group 1 sync-tag "tag-1" create
                no shutdown
            exit
            mc-ipsec
                bfd-enable
                tunnel-group 1 create
                    peer-group 1
                    priority 150
                    no shutdown
                exit
            exit
            no shutdown
        exit
    exit
exit

#-----
echo "Router (Network Side) Configuration"
#-----
    router
        interface "int-SeGW2-P1"
            address 192.168.253.1/30
            port 1/1/4
            no shutdown
        exit
        interface "int-SeGW2-SeGW1"
            address 192.168.255.2/30
            port 1/1/2
            no shutdown
        exit
        interface "system"
            address 192.0.2.2/32
            bfd 100 receive 100 multiplier 3
            no shutdown
        exit
        autonomous-system 64496
#-----
```

```

echo "Static Route Configuration"
#-----
static-route 10.10.10.0/24 next-hop 172.16.1.100
#-----
echo "OSPFv2 Configuration"
#-----
ospf
area 0.0.0.0
interface "system"
no shutdown
exit
interface "int-SeGW2-SeGW1"
no shutdown
exit
interface "int-SeGW2-P1"
no shutdown
exit
exit
exit

#-----
echo "IPsec Configuration"
#-----
ipsec
ike-policy 1 create
ike-version 2
ipsec-lifetime 7200
isakmp-lifetime 172800
exit
ipsec-transform 1 create
exit
exit

#-----
echo "Service Configuration"
#-----
service
sdp 100 create
far-end 192.0.2.1
signaling off
keep-alive
shutdown
exit
no shutdown
exit
sdp 300 create
far-end 192.0.2.3
signaling off
keep-alive
shutdown
exit
no shutdown
exit
ies 1 customer 1 create
interface "int-SeGW2-S1" create
address 172.16.1.253/24
vrrp 10
backup 172.16.1.254
ping-reply
exit

```

Configuration

```
        sap 1/1/3 create
        exit
    exit
    interface "int-IPsec-Public-1" create
        address 10.10.20.254/24
        tos-marking-state untrusted
        sap tunnel-1.public:1 create
        exit
        static-tunnel-redundant-next-hop 192.168.255.1
    exit
    no shutdown
exit
vprn 2 customer 1 create
    ipsec
        security-policy 1 create
            entry 10 create
                local-ip 192.168.2.1/32
                remote-ip 192.168.1.1/32
            exit
        exit
    exit
    vrf-export "IPsec-to-MPBGP"
    route-distinguisher 64496:2
    vrf-target target:64496:2
    interface "int-IPsec-Private-1" tunnel create
        sap tunnel-1.private:1 create
        ipsec-tunnel "tunnel-1" create
            security-policy 1
            local-gateway-address 10.10.20.1 peer 10.10.10.1
                                                    delivery-service 1

            dynamic-keying
                ike-policy 1
                pre-shared-key "ALU"
                transform 1
            exit
            no shutdown
        exit
    exit
    static-tunnel-redundant-next-hop 192.168.20.1
exit
    interface "int-Redundant-1" create
        address 192.168.20.2/30
        spoke-sdp 100:20 create
            ingress
                vc-label 2048
            exit
            egress
                vc-label 2049
            exit
            no shutdown
        exit
    exit
    static-route 192.168.1.1/32 ipsec-tunnel "tunnel-1"
    spoke-sdp 100 create
        description "SDP to SeGW-1"
    exit
    spoke-sdp 300 create
        description "SDP to P-1"
    exit
```

```

        no shutdown
    exit
exit
#-----
echo "Router (Service Side) Configuration"
#-----
    router
#-----
echo "Policy Configuration"
#-----
    policy-options
    begin
    prefix-list "CE1-Internal"
        prefix 192.168.1.1/32 exact
    exit
    community "vprn2" members "target:64496:2"
    policy-statement "IPsec-to-MPBGP"
        entry 10
            from
                prefix-list "CE1-Internal"
                state ipsec-master-with-peer
            exit
            action accept
                community add "vprn2"
                local-preference 200
            exit
        exit
        entry 20
            from
                prefix-list "CE1-Internal"
                state ipsec-non-master
            exit
            action accept
                community add "vprn2"
                local-preference 100
            exit
        exit
        entry 30
            from
                prefix-list "CE1-Internal"
                state ipsec-master-without-peer
            exit
            action accept
                community add "vprn2"
                local-preference 100
            exit
        exit
        default-action accept
            community add "vprn2"
        exit
    exit
    commit
exit
#-----
echo "BGP Configuration"
#-----
    bgp
        group "MPBGP"
            family vpn-ipv4

```

Configuration

```
peer-as 64496
neighbor 192.0.2.1
exit
neighbor 192.0.2.3
exit
exit
no shutdown
exit
exit
```

Step 8. Verify the MC-IPsec status on SeGW-1 and SeGW-2.

- Verify that SeGW-1 is the master and SeGW-2 is the standby for tunnel-group 1 because SeGW-1 has higher priority 200.
- Verify that SeGW-1 is the VRRP 10 master and SeGW-2 is the backup.

```
A:SeGW-1# show redundancy multi-chassis mc-ipsec peer 192.0.2.2
=====
Multi-Chassis MC-IPsec
=====
Peer Name       : (Not Specified)
Peer Addr       : 192.0.2.2
Keep Alive Intvl: 1.0 secs           Hold on Nbr Fail       : 3
Discovery Intvl : 300 secs           Discovery Boot Intvl  : 300 secs
BFD             : Enable
Last update     : 04/04/2014 10:23:35

=====
Multi-Chassis IPsec Multi Active Tunnel-Group Table
=====
ID              Peer Group    Priority  Admin State  Mastership
-----
1               1              200      Up           master
-----
Multi Active Tunnel Group Entries found: 1
=====
=====
A:SeGW-1#
```

```
A:SeGW-2# show redundancy multi-chassis mc-ipsec peer 192.0.2.1
=====
Multi-Chassis MC-IPsec
=====
Peer Name       : (Not Specified)
Peer Addr       : 192.0.2.1
Keep Alive Intvl: 1.0 secs           Hold on Nbr Fail       : 3
Discovery Intvl : 300 secs           Discovery Boot Intvl  : 300 secs
BFD             : Enable
Last update     : 04/04/2014 10:23:50

=====
Multi-Chassis IPsec Multi Active Tunnel-Group Table
=====
ID              Peer Group    Priority  Admin State  Mastership
-----
1               1              150      Up           standby
-----
Multi Active Tunnel Group Entries found: 1
=====
=====
A:SeGW-2#
```

```
A:SeGW-1# show router vrrp instance
=====
VRRP Instances
```

Configuration

```
=====
Interface Name          VR Id Own Adm  State      Base Pri  Msg Int
                        IP      Opr  Pol Id      InUse Pri  Inh Int
-----
int-SeGW1-S1           10    No  Up   Master      200      1
                        IPv4      Up   1          200      No
    Backup Addr: 172.16.1.254
-----
Instances : 1
=====
A:SeGW-1#

A:SeGW-2# show router vrrp instance
=====
VRRP Instances
=====
Interface Name          VR Id Own Adm  State      Base Pri  Msg Int
                        IP      Opr  Pol Id      InUse Pri  Inh Int
-----
int-SeGW2-S1           10    No  Up   Backup      100      1
                        IPv4      Up   n/a        100      No
    Backup Addr: 172.16.1.254
-----
Instances : 1
=====
A:SeGW-2#
```


Step 9. Trigger the tunnel-1 setup on CE-1 by sending pings.

```

A:CE-1# ping router 2 192.168.2.1
PING 192.168.2.1 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 192.168.2.1: icmp_seq=2 ttl=63 time=2.35ms.
64 bytes from 192.168.2.1: icmp_seq=3 ttl=63 time=2.31ms.
64 bytes from 192.168.2.1: icmp_seq=4 ttl=63 time=2.28ms.
64 bytes from 192.168.2.1: icmp_seq=5 ttl=63 time=2.27ms.
Request timed out. icmp_seq=1.

---- 192.168.2.1 PING Statistics ----
5 packets transmitted, 4 packets received, 20.00% packet loss
round-trip min = 2.27ms, avg = 2.30ms, max = 2.35ms, stddev = 0.031ms
A:CE-1#

A:CE-1# show ipsec tunnel
=====
IPsec Tunnels
=====
TunnelName          LocalAddress      SvcId      Admn   Keying
  SapId              RemoteAddress     DlvrySvcId Oper    Sec
                               Plcy
-----
tunnel-1             10.10.10.1        2           Up     Dynamic
  tunnel-1.private:1  10.10.20.1        1           Up       1
-----
IPsec Tunnels: 1
=====
A:CE-1#

```

Step 10. Verify that the tunnel status on SeGW-1/SeGW-2 is “up”.

- Verify that MCS database is in-sync, so the tunnel status is “up” on both chassis.
- Verify P-1 receives two 192.168.1.1/32 VPN IPv4 routes, the route from SeGW-1 has local preference 200, and the one from SeGW-2 has 100.

```
A:SeGW-1# show ipsec tunnel
=====
IPsec Tunnels
=====
TunnelName      LocalAddress      SvcId      Admn   Keying
  SapId          RemoteAddress     DlvrySvcId Oper    Sec
                                   Plcy
-----
tunnel-1        10.10.20.1        2          Up     Dynamic
  tunnel-1.private:1  10.10.10.1        1          Up      1
-----
IPsec Tunnels: 1
=====
A:SeGW-1#
```

```
A:SeGW-2# show ipsec tunnel
=====
IPsec Tunnels
=====
TunnelName      LocalAddress      SvcId      Admn   Keying
  SapId          RemoteAddress     DlvrySvcId Oper    Sec
                                   Plcy
-----
tunnel-1        10.10.20.1        2          Up     Dynamic
  tunnel-1.private:1  10.10.10.1        1          Up      1
-----
IPsec Tunnels: 1
=====
A:SeGW-2#
```

```
A:SeGW-2# show redundancy multi-chassis sync
=====
Multi-chassis Peer Table
=====
Peer
-----
Peer IP Address      : 192.0.2.1
Description           : (Not Specified)
Authentication        : Disabled
Source IP Address     : 192.0.2.2
Admin State           : Enabled
Warm standby          : No
Remote warm standby   : No
-----
Sync-status
-----
Client Applications   : IPsec
Sync Admin State      : Up
Sync Oper State       : Up
```

```

Sync Oper Flags      :
DB Sync State        : inSync
Num Entries           : 2
Lcl Deleted Entries  : 0
Alarm Entries         : 0
OMCR Standby Entries : 0
OMCR Alarm Entries    : 0
Rem Num Entries       : 2
Rem Lcl Deleted Entries : 0
Rem Alarm Entries     : 0
Rem OMCR Standby Entries: 0
Rem OMCR Alarm Entries : 0
=====
=====
A:SeGW-2#

A:P-1# show router bgp routes vpn-ipv4
=====
BGP Router ID:192.0.2.3      AS:64496      Local AS:64496
=====
Legend -
Status codes : u - used, s - suppressed, h - history, d - decayed, * - valid
Origin codes : i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete, > - best, b - backup
=====
BGP VPN-IPv4 Routes
=====

```

Flag	Network	LocalPref	MED
	NextHop	Path-Id	Label
	As-Path		
u*>i	64496:2:192.168.1.1/32	200	None
	192.0.2.1	None	262143
	No As-Path		
*i	64496:2:192.168.1.1/32	100	None
	192.0.2.2	None	262143
	No As-Path		
u*>i	64496:2:192.168.20.0/30	100	None
	192.0.2.1	None	262143
	No As-Path		
*>i	64496:2:192.168.20.0/30	100	None
	192.0.2.2	None	262143
	No As-Path		

```

-----
Routes : 4
=====
A:P-1#

```

Step 11. Trigger MC-IPSec switchover by shutting down the MS-ISA.

- Verify the VRRP/MC-IPSec state on SeGW-1 is “master”, SeGW-2 is “backup”/”standby”.
- Shutdown the MS-ISA on SeGW-1, which is currently Master.
- Verify that the MC-IPSec state of tunnel-group 1 on SeGW-1 becomes “notEligible”, SeGW-2 becomes “master”.

Note: notEligible means the tunnel-group is down, refer to the SR OS MS-ISA Guide for details description of MIMP states.

- Verify that the VRRP state on SeGW-1 becomes “backup” and SeGW-2 becomes “master”. This is triggered by MC-IPSec switchover, configured via mc-ipsec-non-forwarding event in vrrp-policy 1.

```
A:SeGW-1# show redundancy multi-chassis mc-ipsec peer 192.0.2.2
=====
Multi-Chassis MC-IPsec
=====
Peer Name       : (Not Specified)
Peer Addr       : 192.0.2.2
Keep Alive Intvl: 1.0 secs           Hold on Nbr Fail      : 3
Discovery Intvl : 300 secs           Discovery Boot Intvl  : 300 secs
BFD             : Enable
Last update     : 04/04/2014 10:23:35
=====
Multi-Chassis IPsec Multi Active Tunnel-Group Table
=====
ID              Peer Group   Priority  Admin State  Mastership
-----
1               1             200      Up           master
-----
Multi Active Tunnel Group Entries found: 1
=====
A:SeGW-1#
```

```
A:SeGW-1# show router vrrp instance
=====
VRRP Instances
=====
Interface Name          VR Id Own  Adm  State      Base Pri  Msg Int
                        IP      Opr  Pol Id      InUse Pri  Inh Int
-----
int-SeGW1-S1            10   No   Up   Master     200      1
                        IPv4      Up   1      200      No
      Backup Addr: 172.16.1.254
-----
Instances : 1
=====
A:SeGW-1#
```

```
A:SeGW-2# show redundancy multi-chassis mc-ipsec peer 192.0.2.1
```

```

=====
Multi-Chassis MC-IPsec
=====
Peer Name      : (Not Specified)
Peer Addr      : 192.0.2.1
Keep Alive Intvl: 1.0 secs          Hold on Nbr Fail      : 3
Discovery Intvl : 300 secs          Discovery Boot Intvl : 300 secs
BFD            : Enable
Last update    : 04/04/2014 10:23:50

```

```

=====
Multi-Chassis IPsec Multi Active Tunnel-Group Table
=====
ID           Peer Group   Priority Admin State   Mastership
-----
1            1             150    Up            standby
-----

```

Multi Active Tunnel Group Entries found: 1

```

=====
A:SeGW-2#

```

A:SeGW-2# show router vrrp instance

```

=====
VRRP Instances
=====
Interface Name          VR Id Own Adm State      Base Pri  Msg Int
                        IP      Opr  Pol Id    InUse Pri  Inh Int
-----
int-SeGW2-S1            10   No  Up   Backup    100      1
                        IPv4      Up   n/a      100      No
Backup Addr: 172.16.1.254
-----

```

Instances : 1

```

=====
A:SeGW-2#

```

*A:SeGW-1# configure card 1 mda 2 shutdown

*A:SeGW-1# show redundancy multi-chassis mc-ipsec peer 192.0.2.2

```

=====
Multi-Chassis MC-IPsec
=====
Peer Name      : (Not Specified)
Peer Addr      : 192.0.2.2
Keep Alive Intvl: 1.0 secs          Hold on Nbr Fail      : 3
Discovery Intvl : 300 secs          Discovery Boot Intvl : 300 secs
BFD            : Enable
Last update    : 04/04/2014 10:23:35

```

```

=====
Multi-Chassis IPsec Multi Active Tunnel-Group Table
=====
ID           Peer Group   Priority Admin State   Mastership
-----

```

Configuration

```
-----
1          1          200      Up          notEligible
-----
Multi Active Tunnel Group Entries found: 1
=====
*A:SeGW-1#

*A:SeGW-1# show router vrrp instance
=====
VRRP Instances
=====
Interface Name          VR Id Own Adm  State      Base Pri  Msg Int
                        IP          Opr  Pol Id      InUse Pri  Inh Int
-----
int-SeGW1-S1           10   No  Up   Backup    200      1
                        IPv4      Up   1          50      No
    Backup Addr: 172.16.1.254
-----
Instances : 1
=====
*A:SeGW-1#

A:SeGW-2# show redundancy multi-chassis mc-ipsec peer 192.0.2.1
=====
Multi-Chassis MC-IPsec
=====
Peer Name      : (Not Specified)
Peer Addr      : 192.0.2.1
Keep Alive Intvl: 1.0 secs          Hold on Nbr Fail      : 3
Discovery Intvl : 300 secs          Discovery Boot Intvl  : 300 secs
BFD             : Enable
Last update     : 04/04/2014 10:23:50
=====
Multi-Chassis IPsec Multi Active Tunnel-Group Table
=====
ID      Peer Group  Priority Admin State  Mastership
-----
1       1          150    Up           master
-----
Multi Active Tunnel Group Entries found: 1
=====
A:SeGW-2#

A:SeGW-2# show router vrrp instance
=====
VRRP Instances
=====
Interface Name          VR Id Own Adm  State      Base Pri  Msg Int
                        IP          Opr  Pol Id      InUse Pri  Inh Int
-----
int-SeGW2-S1           10   No  Up   Master     100      1
                        IPv4      Up   n/a        100      No
```

```
Backup Addr: 172.16.1.254
-----
Instances : 1
=====
A:SeGW-2#
```

Step 12. Trigger the MC-IPSec switchover by rebooting SeGW-1.

- Restore state as in Step 10 (before the MC-IPSec switchover).
 - Note: The MC-IPSec switchover could be triggered manually with the **tools perform redundancy multi-chassis mc-ipsec force-switchover tunnel-group 1** command.
- Verify the VRRP/MC-IPSec state on SeGW-1 is “master”, SeGW-2 is “backup”/”standby”.
- Reboot SeGW-1 which is the current Master.
- Verify the MC-IPSec state of tunnel-group 1 on SeGW-2 becomes “eligible” during SeGW-1 rebooting.
- Verify the VRRP state on SeGW-2 becomes “master” during SeGW-1 reboot.
- After SeGW-1 comes up, verify MC-IPSec state of tunnel-group 1 is “discovery” initially, and then becomes “standby”;
 - Note: The “discovery” state means system has not established the MIMP session with peer yet.
- Verify the MC-IPSec state of tunnel-group 1 on SeGW-2 becomes “master” when SeGW-1 becomes “standby”.
- After SeGW-1 comes up, verify the VRRP state is “backup”.

```
*A:SeGW-1# show redundancy multi-chassis mc-ipsec peer 192.0.2.2
=====
Multi-Chassis MC-IPsec
=====
Peer Name      : (Not Specified)
Peer Addr      : 192.0.2.2
Keep Alive Intvl: 1.0 secs          Hold on Nbr Fail      : 3
Discovery Intvl : 300 secs          Discovery Boot Intvl : 300 secs
BFD             : Enable
Last update     : 04/04/2014 10:23:35
=====
Multi-Chassis IPsec Multi Active Tunnel-Group Table
=====
ID              Peer Group    Priority  Admin State  Mastership
-----
1               1              200      Up           master
-----
Multi Active Tunnel Group Entries found: 1
=====
*A:SeGW-1#

*A:SeGW-1# show router vrrp instance
=====
VRRP Instances
=====
Interface Name      VR Id Own Adm  State      Base Pri  Msg Int
                   IP      Opr  Pol Id      InUse Pri  Inh Int
-----
```



```

int-SeGW1-S1                10    No  Up   Master      200      1
                             IPv4    Up   1          200      No
    Backup Addr: 172.16.1.254
-----
Instances : 1
=====
*A:SeGW-1#

A:SeGW-2# show redundancy multi-chassis mc-ipsec peer 192.0.2.1
=====
Multi-Chassis MC-IPsec
=====
Peer Name      : (Not Specified)
Peer Addr      : 192.0.2.1
Keep Alive Intvl: 1.0 secs          Hold on Nbr Fail      : 3
Discovery Intvl : 300 secs          Discovery Boot Intvl : 300 secs
BFD             : Enable
Last update     : 04/04/2014 10:23:50

=====
Multi-Chassis IPsec Multi Active Tunnel-Group Table
=====
ID              Peer Group    Priority  Admin State  Mastership
-----
1               1              150      Up           standby
-----
Multi Active Tunnel Group Entries found: 1
=====
A:SeGW-2#

A:SeGW-2# show router vrrp instance
=====
VRRP Instances
=====
Interface Name          VR Id Own Adm  State      Base Pri  Msg Int
                        IP      Opr Pol Id      InUse Pri  Inh Int
-----
int-SeGW2-S1            10    No  Up   Backup     100      1
                        IPv4    Up   n/a      100      No
    Backup Addr: 172.16.1.254
-----
Instances : 1
=====
A:SeGW-2#

A:SeGW-1# admin reboot
Are you sure you want to reboot (y/n)? y

A:SeGW-2# show redundancy multi-chassis mc-ipsec peer 192.0.2.1
=====
Multi-Chassis MC-IPsec
=====
Peer Name      : (Not Specified)
Peer Addr      : 192.0.2.1

```

Configuration

```
Keep Alive Intvl: 1.0 secs          Hold on Nbr Fail      : 3
Discovery Intvl : 300 secs          Discovery Boot Intvl : 300 secs
BFD              : Enable
Last update      : 04/04/2014 10:23:50
=====
Multi-Chassis IPsec Multi Active Tunnel-Group Table
=====
ID          Peer Group    Priority  Admin State  Mastership
-----
1           1             150      Up           eligible
-----
Multi Active Tunnel Group Entries found: 1
=====
A:SeGW-2#

A:SeGW-2# show router vrrp instance
=====
VRRP Instances
=====
Interface Name          VR Id Own Adm  State      Base Pri  Msg Int
                   IP      Opr  Pol Id      InUse Pri  Inh Int
-----
int-SeGW2-S1           10   No   Up   Master     100      1
                   IPv4      Up   n/a      100      No
    Backup Addr: 172.16.1.254
-----
Instances : 1
=====
A:SeGW-2#

SeGW-1 comes up.

A:SeGW-1# show redundancy multi-chassis mc-ipsec peer 192.0.2.2
=====
Multi-Chassis MC-IPsec
=====
Peer Name      : (Not Specified)
Peer Addr      : 192.0.2.2
Keep Alive Intvl: 1.0 secs          Hold on Nbr Fail      : 3
Discovery Intvl : 300 secs          Discovery Boot Intvl : 300 secs
BFD            : Enable
Last update     : 04/04/2014 10:58:07
=====
Multi-Chassis IPsec Multi Active Tunnel-Group Table
=====
ID          Peer Group    Priority  Admin State  Mastership
-----
1           1             200      Up           discovery
-----
Multi Active Tunnel Group Entries found: 1
=====
A:SeGW-1#
```

```
A:SeGW-1# show redundancy multi-chassis mc-ipsec peer 192.0.2.2
=====
Multi-Chassis MC-IPsec
=====
Peer Name       : (Not Specified)
Peer Addr       : 192.0.2.2
Keep Alive Intvl: 1.0 secs           Hold on Nbr Fail       : 3
Discovery Intvl : 300 secs           Discovery Boot Intvl  : 300 secs
BFD              : Enable
Last update     : 04/04/2014 10:58:07

=====
Multi-Chassis IPsec Multi Active Tunnel-Group Table
=====
ID              Peer Group   Priority  Admin State  Mastership
-----
1               1             200      Up           standby
-----
Multi Active Tunnel Group Entries found: 1
=====
=====
A:SeGW-1#
```

```
A:SeGW-1# show router vrrp instance
=====
VRRP Instances
=====
Interface Name          VR Id  Own  Adm  State      Base Pri  Msg Int
                        IP      Opr  Pol Id      InUse Pri  Inh Int
-----
int-SeGW1-S1            10     No   Up   Backup     200       1
                        IPv4    Up   1     50         No
      Backup Addr: 172.16.1.254
-----
Instances : 1
=====
=====
A:SeGW-1#
```

```
A:SeGW-2# show redundancy multi-chassis mc-ipsec peer 192.0.2.1
=====
Multi-Chassis MC-IPsec
=====
Peer Name       : (Not Specified)
Peer Addr       : 192.0.2.1
Keep Alive Intvl: 1.0 secs           Hold on Nbr Fail       : 3
Discovery Intvl : 300 secs           Discovery Boot Intvl  : 300 secs
BFD              : Enable
Last update     : 04/04/2014 10:23:50

=====
Multi-Chassis IPsec Multi Active Tunnel-Group Table
=====
ID              Peer Group   Priority  Admin State  Mastership
-----
1               1             150      Up           master
-----
Multi Active Tunnel Group Entries found: 1
```

Configuration

```
=====
=====
A:SeGW-2#
```

Configuration Guidelines

The following is a list of configuration and operational guidelines that the user should follow for MC-IPSec:

- To avoid high CPU load and issues in some complex cases, the following are suggestions for configuring IKEv2 lifetime:
 1. Both IKE_SA and CHILD_SA lifetime on MC-IPSec chassis (SeGW-1 and SeGW-2) should be around 3 times larger than on the IPSec peer (CE-1).
 2. With the first rule, the lifetime of the side with smaller lifetime should NOT be too small (these being the default values):
 - IKE_SA: ≥ 86400 seconds
 - CHILD_SA: ≥ 3600 seconds
 3. With the first rule, on the side with smaller lifetime, the IKE_SA lifetime should be at least 3 times larger than CHILD_SA lifetime.
- IKE protocol is the control plane of IPSec, so IKE packet should be treated as high QoS priority in end-to-end path of public service.
 - On public interface, a sap-ingress qos policy should be configured to ensure IKE packet gets high QoS priority.
- Configure responder-only under tunnel-group for static LAN-to-LAN tunnel.
- Enable DPD (Dead Peer Detection) on peer side, configure “no dpd” on MC-IPSec chassis side.
- Direct and redundant physical link between MC-IPSec chassis should be configured with enough bandwidth for MCS and shunting traffic, and proper QoS configuration to make sure the MIMP/MCS packet treated as high priority traffic.
- System time must be same on both MC-IPSec chassis.
- Check and make sure the protection status is "nominal" on both chassis before you do a controlled switchover. Protection status could be displayed via command “show redundancy multi-chassis mc-ipsec peer <addr>”.
- Wait at least 5 minutes between two consecutive switchovers if possible to prevent a second switchover happening before the standby is ready to take over mastership.

Conclusion

MC-IPSec provides a stateful multi-chassis IPSec redundancy solution. This is very important in a carrier grade network, especially in applications like mobile backhaul where high value 3G/4G mobile service run over IPSec tunnels.

NAT in Combination with ESM

In This Chapter

This section provides information about Network Address Translation (NAT) in combination with Enhanced Subscriber Management (ESM).

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 396](#)
- [Overview on page 397](#)
- [Configuration on page 400](#)
- [Conclusion on page 420](#)

Applicability

This example is applicable to 7750 SR-7 and SR-12 and was tested on release 8.0R6. It is required to have at least one Multi-Service ISA (MS-ISA) card equipped in an IOM3-XP. Chassis mode B or higher is required.

The Alcatel-Lucent 7750 SR-7 and SR-12 supports Source Network Address and Port Translation (SNAPT aka N:1) and Source Network Address Translation (SNAT aka 1:1) to provide continuity of legacy IPv4 services during the migration to native IPv6.

The 7750 SR-7SR-/12 can operate in two different modes known as:

- Large Scale NAT
- Layer 2-Aware NAT = NAT in combination with Enhanced Subscriber Management (ESM)

This configuration note is restricted to the Layer 2-Aware NAT.

Overview

Layer 2-Aware NAT performs source address and port translation as commonly deployed for shared Internet access. The 7750 SR with NAT is used to provide consumer broadband or business Internet customers access to IPv4 internet resources with a shared pool of IPv4 addresses, such as may occur with the IPv4 exhaustion.

TCP/UDP connections use ports for multiplexing, with 65536 ports available for every IP address. Whenever many hosts are trying to share a single public IP address there is a chance of port collision where two different hosts may use the same source port for a connection. The resultant collision is avoided in SNAPT devices by translating the source port and tracking this in a stateful manner. All SNAPT devices are stateful in nature and must monitor connection establishment and traffic to maintain translation mappings.

In most circumstances, SNAPT requires the inside host to establish a connection to the public Internet host or server before a mapping and translation will occur. With the initial outbound IP packet, the SNAPT knows the inside IP, inside port, remote IP, remote port and protocol. L2-Aware NAT will also take into account the subscriber identification string. With this information the SNAPT device can select an IP and port combination (referred to as outside IP and outside port) from its pool of addresses and create a unique mapping for this flow of data.

Any traffic returned from the server will use the outside IP and outside port in the destination IP/port fields matching the unique NAT mapping. The mapping then provides the inside IP and inside port for translation.

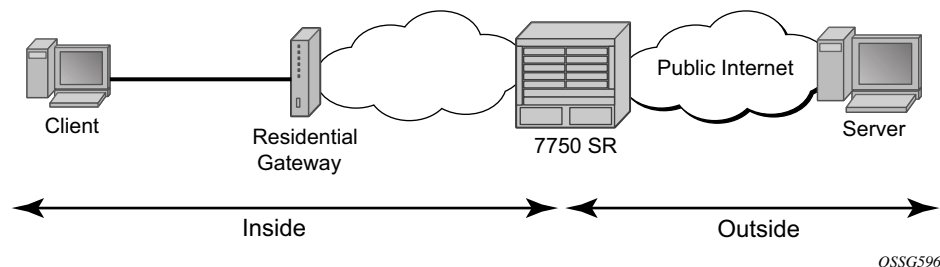


Figure 65: Network Address Translation Overview

L2-Aware NAT supports the following ESM hosts:

- IP over Ethernet (IPoE)
- PPP over Ethernet (PPPoE)
- L2TP Network Server (LNS)

L2-Aware NAT is not supported on static- or arp-hosts.

L2-Aware NAT makes the differentiation between two interfaces. The inside interface, towards the residential gateway and the outside interface, towards the public network, as seen in Figure 1. The outside IP needs to be a public IP address.

NAT is supported in the base and VPRN routing contexts. NAT can originate in a VPRN routing context and exit through a base or VPRN routing context. L2-Aware NAT allows reusing IP address towards residential customers.

A typical flow-session will be recorded using the following fields:

- Subscriber identification string
- Inside IP Outside IP
- Inside port Outside port
- Inside VRFid Outside VRFid

This configuration note will focus on the NAT configuration and functionality. For completeness other configuration will be given, but not explained in detail. Two IPoE clients will be set up with the same IP address inside one VPRN. One PPPoE client will be set up inside a different VPRN as the public VPRN.

Server Functionality Behind NAT

Applications which operate as servers (such as HTTP, SMTP, etc) or Peer-to-Peer (P2P) applications can have difficulty when operating behind an SNAPT because traffic from the Internet can reach the NAT without a mapping in place.

Different methods can be employed to overcome this, including:

- Port forwarding
- STUN support
- Application Layer Gateways (ALG)

The 7750 SR supports all three methods following the best-practice RFC for TCP (RFC 5382, *NAT Behavioral Requirements for TCP*) and UDP (RFC 4787, *Network Address Translation (NAT) Behavioral Requirements for Unicast UDP*). Port Forwarding setup, supported in this release through SNMP only, allows servers which operate on well-known ports <1024 (such as HTTP and SMTP) to request the appropriate outside port for permanent allocation.

STUN is facilitated by the support of Endpoint-Independent Filtering and Endpoint-Independent Mapping (RFC 4787) in the NAT device, allowing STUN-capable applications to detect the NAT and allow inbound P2P connections for that specific application. Many new voice over IP clients and instant messaging chat applications are STUN capable.

Application Layer Gateways (ALG) allow the NAT to monitor the application running over TCP or UDP and make appropriate changes in the NAT translations accordingly. The 7750 SR has an FTP ALG enabled following the recommendation of RFC 5382, *NAT Behavioral Requirements for TCP*.

Configuration

Hardware Configuration

L2-aware NAT is implemented today in the 7750-SR7 and SR12 using the MS-ISA MDA hosted in an IOM3-XP. The MS-ISA card is a multi-purpose MDA which can be used for multiple applications like LNS, video (FCC/RET/VQE), AA (application assurance/DPI), tunneling (GRE/IPSEC), etc. This approach allows re-deploying the same hardware in a different software configuration for other purposes once the IPv4 to IPv6 transition is completed.

For L2-Aware NAT, configure the MS-ISA as an ISA-BB (BroadBand) MDA which allows running L2-aware NAT, LNS and carrier grade-NAT (CG-NAT) simultaneously on the configured MDA. CG-NAT or large scale NAT is set-up independently of ESM subscriber hosts.

```
configure card 1
    card-type iom3-xp
...
    mda 2
        mda-type isa-bb
    exit
exit all
```

An ISA NAT-group needs to be created. A NAT-group can host up to 6 MDA(s) for load-sharing or providing resilience when an MS-ISA fails. Multiple NAT groups can be created to achieve hardware separation between e.g. residential and business customers.

```
configure isa nat-group 1
    description "L2 Aware NAT Group"
    active-mda-limit 1
    mda 1/2
    no shutdown
exit all
```

The active-mda-limit controls the number of MS-ISA MDA's which can be used as active members of the NAT group. Each active card will be assigned sessions/flows and will process traffic. The backup cards are cold standby; they are used only in case of a failure of one (or more) of the active cards. Load balancing over the active cards is done using the source ip address in the upstream, and the outside destination IP in the downstream direction. Public IP address pools are assigned to a specific card, thus resulting in both upstream and downstream traffic flowing through the same MS-ISA card.

All MS-ISA cards (active + backup) need to be configured under the ISA NAT group.

Service Configuration

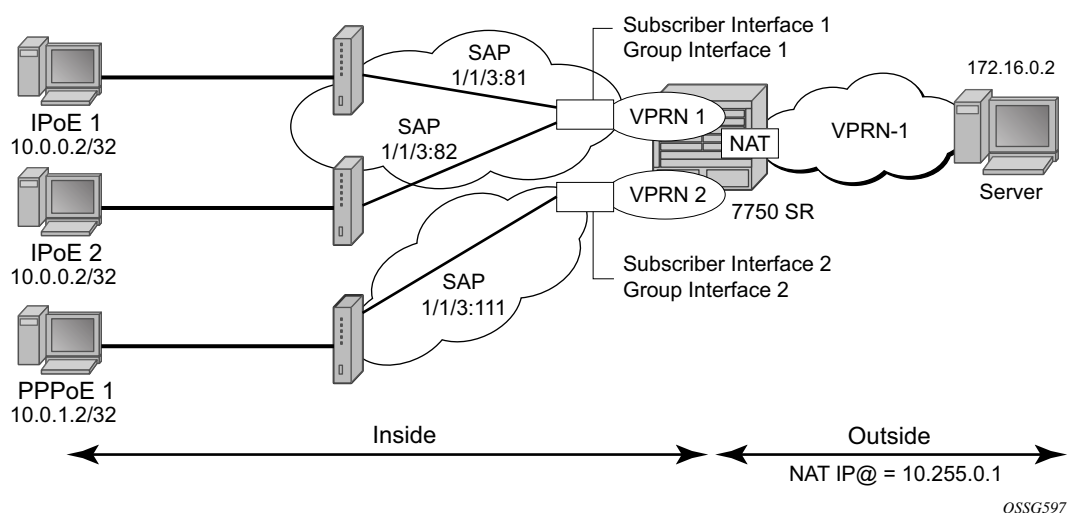


Figure 66: Setup Topology

The setup used for this note is depicted in [Figure 66](#) and [Figure 67](#). There are three clients:

1. IPoE_1 going to SAP 1/1/3:81 in VPRN 1 (NAT to VPRN 1)
2. IPoE_2 going to SAP 1/1/3:82 in VPRN 1 (NAT to VPRN 1)
3. PPPoE_1 going to SAP 1/1/3:111 in VPRN 2 (NAT to VPRN 1)

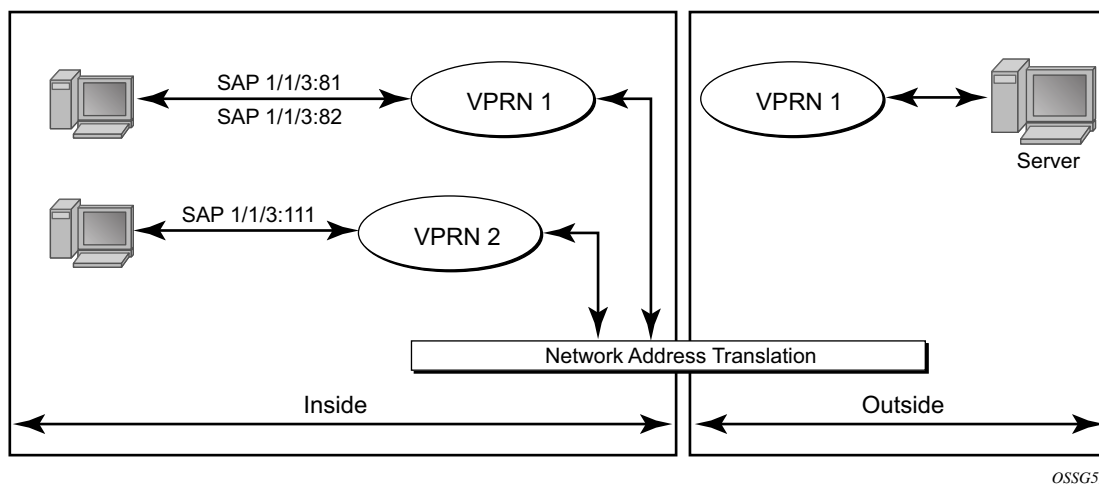


Figure 67: Simplified Routing Topology

Initial Service and Enhanced Subscriber Management Configuration

The initial service and ESM configuration is given below for VPRN 1. This VPRN contains subscriber interface sub-int-1 with group interface group-int-ipoe-cpe, in routed central office (CO). There are two SAPs under the group interface, 1/1/3:81 and 1/1/3:82. The subscribers are IP over Ethernet subscribers. Upon receiving a DHCP request the subscriber will first be authenticated using radius authentication. A DHCP emulation server is configured under the group interface.

```
configure service vprn 1
  route-distinguisher 64500:1
  vrf-target target:64500:1
  interface "int-PE-1-servers" create
    address 172.16.0.1/30
    sap 1/1/4:110 create
    exit
  exit
  subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
    address 10.0.0.254/24
    dhcp
      gi-address 10.0.0.254 src-ip-addr
    exit
  group-interface "group-int-ipoe-cpe" create
    arp-populate
    dhcp
      proxy-server
        emulated-server 10.0.0.254
        lease-time hrs 1
        no shutdown
      exit
      trusted
      lease-populate 10
      gi-address 10.0.0.254 src-ip-addr
      no shutdown
    exit
    authentication-policy "radiusAuth"
    sap 1/1/3:81 create
      sub-sla-mgmt
        sub-ident-policy "sub-ident-all"
        multi-sub-sap 10
        no shutdown
      exit
    exit
    sap 1/1/3:82 create
      sub-sla-mgmt
        sub-ident-policy "sub-ident-all"
        multi-sub-sap 10
        no shutdown
      exit
    exit
  exit
  exit
  exit
  no shutdown
exit all
```

All parameters are returned by the radius server, including all ESM strings as well as IP address, mask, default gateway and session timeout.

The RADIUS user configuration is given below. The users's mac-address is used to authenticate the IPoE of PPPoE sessions.

```
00:0c:29:9d:10:2d      Cleartext-Password := "admin"
                        Alc-Subsc-ID-Str = "ipoe_sub_00:0c:29:9d:10:2d",
                        Alc-SLA-Prof-Str = "sla-profile-nat",
                        Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str = "sub-profile-nat",
                        Framed-IP-Address = 10.0.0.2,
                        Framed-IP-Netmask = 255.255.255.0,
                        Alc-Default-Router = 10.0.0.254,
                        Session-Timeout = 3600
00:0c:29:34:cc:74      Cleartext-Password := "admin"
                        Alc-Subsc-ID-Str = "ipoe_sub_00:0c:29:34:cc:74",
                        Alc-SLA-Prof-Str = "sla-profile-nat",
                        Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str = "sub-profile-nat",
                        Framed-IP-Address = 10.0.0.2,
                        Framed-IP-Netmask = 255.255.255.0,
                        Alc-Default-Router = 10.0.0.254,
                        Session-Timeout = 3600

00:0c:29:1d:44:34 Auth-Type := Local, User-Password == "admin"
                        Alc-Subsc-ID-Str = "pppoe_sub_{User-Name}",
                        Alc-SLA-Prof-Str = "sla-profile-nat",
                        Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str = "sub-profile-nat",
                        Framed-IP-Address = 10.0.1.2,
                        Framed-IP-Netmask = 255.255.255.0,
                        Alc-Default-Router = 10.0.1.254
```

The subscriber management policies are as follows.

```
configure subscriber-mgmt
  authentication-policy "radiusPPP" create
    password "B707GD4VdMqISRo2VWbZqn14IyuUXUdb" hash2
    radius-authentication-server
      router "management"
      server 1 address 172.16.40.108 secret "j3VRf4lH1u1XI/RJOb4LkE" hash2
    exit
  exit
  authentication-policy "radiusAuth" create
    password "2VL2PrE6sZJRQPY6ipW7ifwOFyEsqb/k" hash2
    radius-authentication-server
      router "management"
      server 1 address 172.16.15.58 secret "j3VRf4lH1u./Gx3thvq7Tk" hash2
    exit
  exit
  sla-profile "sla-profile-nat" create
  exit
  sub-profile "sub-profile-nat" create
  exit
  sub-ident-policy "sub-ident-all" create
    sub-profile-map
      use-direct-map-as-default
  exit
```

Service Configuration

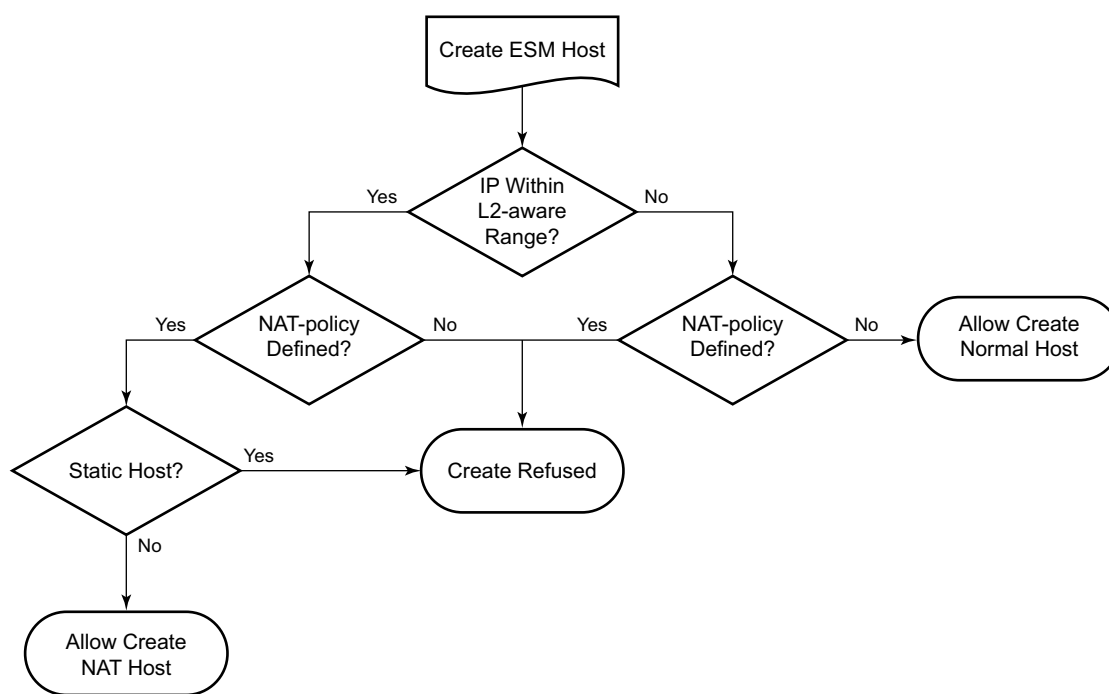
```
        sla-profile-map
        use-direct-map-as-default
    exit
    exit
exit all
```

The initial service and ESM configuration is given below for VPRN 2. This VPRN contains subscriber interface sub-int-2 with group interface group-int-pppoe-cpe, in routed CO. There is one SAP under the group interface, 1/1/3:111. The subscribers are PPP over Ethernet, using radius as authentication method.

```
configure service vprn 2
    route-distinguisher 64500:2
    vrf-target target:64500:2
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-2" create
        address 10.0.1.254/24
        group-interface "group-int-pppoe-cpe" create
            authentication-policy "radiusPPP"
            sap 1/1/3:111 create
                sub-sla-mgmt
                    sub-ident-policy "sub-ident-all"
                    multi-sub-sap 10
                    no shutdown
            exit
        exit
    pppoe
        session-limit 10
        sap-session-limit 10
        no shutdown
    exit
    exit
    exit
    no shutdown
exit all
```


Successful Creation of a NAT Subscriber

When a subscriber-host is created and a NAT-policy is defined, its inside IP address should fall within the L2-Aware range (see next section). If this is not the case the subscriber-host creation will fail. As mentioned before NAT is not supported on static-hosts. The subscriber-host creation is shown in [Figure 68](#). If the subscriber-host does not get an inside or outside IP address, it would not be able to communicate with any servers on the outside.



OSSG599

Figure 68: Subscriber-Host Creation Flow

NAT Inside Configuration

The residential gateway subnets which are to be NATed need to be configured under the nat inside L2-Aware context. For this configuration note all subscribers belonging to VPRN 1 will be allocated an address in subnet 10.0.0.0/24. All subscribers belonging to VPRN 2 will be allocated an IP address in subsnet 10.0.1.0/24. Hosts in these services within these subnets will be subject to L2-Aware NAT if they have the correct nat-policy in their subscriber profile.

The actual address configured here will act as the local IP address of the system. Hosts connected to the inside service will be able to ARP for this address. To verify connectivity, a host can also ping the address. This address is typically used as next hop of the default route of a L2-Aware host.

```
configure service vprn 1
    nat
        inside
            l2-aware
                address 10.0.0.254/24
            exit
        exit
    exit
exit all

configure service vprn 2
    nat
        inside
            l2-aware
                address 10.0.1.254/24
            exit
        exit
    exit
exit all
```

NAT Outside Configuration

The NAT outside pool needs to be configured on the VPRN facing the outside world, e.g. the public internet. The NAT outside pool controls the NAT type, which in this case is l2-aware, and the NAT group to send the traffic to.

These addresses will be used to as source addresses for all packets in the upstream direction (toward the public internet) and as destination address for all packets in the downstream direction.

```
configure service vprn 1
    nat
        outside
            pool "nat-outside-pool-1" nat-group 1 type l2-aware create
            port-reservation blocks 128
            address-range 10.255.0.1 10.255.0.10 create
            exit
            no shutdown
        exit
    exit
exit
```

The port-reservation command specifies the number of port-blocks (blocks of consecutive usable port numbers) per IP address. In this configuration, each public IP address is subdivided into 128 port blocks which can be used for NAT, that results in 504 public ports per block.

Binding Inside NAT, Outside NAT and ESM Host

In order to bind the inside part of the NAT with the outside part a nat-policy needs to be created, under the service nat level. The outside nat-pool, which is associated with the VPRN instance in this example, and outside IP addresses, is configured under the nat-policy.

```
configure service nat
    nat-policy "nat-l2aware-vprn1" create
        pool "nat-outside-pool-1" router 1
    exit
```

This nat-policy is then associated to the different subscribers by means of the subscriber profile. The ESM host traffic will be diverted to the NAT device.

```
configure subscriber-mgmt sub-profile "sub-profile-nat"
    nat-policy "nat-l2aware-vprn1"
exit all
```

The nat-policy also controls the following parameters:

Filtering — Two filtering modes are available, endpoint-independent (default configuration) and address-and-port dependent filtering. The filtering behavior will control which upstream packets are transmitted (based on the existing sessions). If endpoint-independent filtering is configured, any outside host/port can use mappings the NAT has created to send traffic to the inside. If address-and-port-dependent filtering is selected, only packets from the same destination and port which created the mapping will be processed.

Port limits — A number of ports can be reserved for prioritized sessions. A session is considered as a priority-session depending on its forwarding class. High and low watermarks can be configured to trigger alarms based on the port usage.

The reserved resources mean that if the resources get down to the level that there is only the reserved amount left, this leftover can only be used by priority sessions, not taking into account the amount of priority sessions already set up at that point.

Example: By default each host is assigned 504 outside ports. 100 of these ports can be reserved for the EF and H1 forwarding classes. As soon as any given host reaches 404 utilized outside ports, the remaining 100 will only be used for EF or H1 sessions.

Priority sessions — The forwarding classes for which the sessions should be prioritized in terms of port or session assignment can be configured here. Multiple forwarding classes can be configured.

Session limits — A maximum number of sessions can be configured for each subscriber associated with this nat-policy. A number of sessions can be reserved for prioritized sessions. Sessions are prioritized based on forwarding class. High and low watermarks can be configured to trigger alarms based on the session usage.

Notes:

- The reserved sessions and reserved ports are not the same. A user can have many applications contacting the same destination. Many different source ports will be used, therefore many different outside ports. A user can have one application contacting many different destinations. The same source port, but many different destination IP addresses will be used. Only one outside port is consumed, but many sessions exist.
- It is possible to configure a reserved ports session-limit on the nat-group as well. In case both per Layer 2 aware host and per nat-group limits are configured the most restrictive will be enforced.

Timeouts — Several timeouts can be configured.

- icmp-query: Timeout applied to an ICMP query session.
- tcp-established: The idle timeout applied to a TCP session in the established state.
- tcp-syn: The timeout applied to a TCP session in the SYN state.
- tcp-time-wait: Time-wait assassination is enabled by default to quickly remove TCP mappings in the time-wait state.
- tcp-transitory: The idle timeout applied to a TCP session in a transitory state. TCP transition between SYN and Open.
- udp: All udp streams (with exceptions of udp-initial and udp-dns).
- udp-initial: UDP mapping timeout applied to new sessions. Applicable when only 1 UDP packet is sent.
- udp-dns: Only traffic to destination UDP port 53

Advanced Topics

RADIUS Accounting

RADIUS accounting is extended with a new attribute, nat-port-range, reporting the NAT port range in use by the subscriber. In order to configure RADIUS accounting, first the RADIUS accounting policy must be created.

```
configure subscriber-mgmt radius-accounting-policy "nat-accounting" create
    update-interval 5
    include-radius-attribute
        mac-address
        nat-port-range
        subscriber-id
    exit
    radius-accounting-server
        router "management"
        server 1 address 172.16.15.58 secret "j3VRf4lH1u./Gx3thvq7Tk" hash2
    exit
exit all
```

The configuration specifies which attributes to include in the radius accounting messages towards the configured server. The update interval is specified in minutes. Every 5 minutes an update will be sent to the radius accounting server.

Then this RADIUS accounting policy must be attached to the subscriber profile.

```
configure subscriber-mgmt sub-profile "sub-profile-nat"
    nat-policy "nat-l2aware-vprn1"
    radius-accounting-policy "nat-accounting"
```

Hardware Resource Monitoring

It is possible to define watermarks to monitor the actual usage of sessions and/or ports. For each watermark, a high and a low value have to be set (as a percentage). Once the high value is reached, a notification will be sent. As soon as the usage drops below the low watermark, another notification (trap) will be sent.

Watermarks can be defined on nat-group, pool and policy level.

- Nat-group — Watermarks can be configured to monitor the total number of sessions on an MDA

```
configure isa nat-group 1
    session-limits
        watermarks high 90 low 80
    exit
exit all
```

- Pool — Watermarks can be configured to monitor the total number of blocks in use in a pool

```
configure service vprn 1 nat outside pool "nat-outside-pool-1"
    watermarks high 90 low 80
exit all
```

- Policy — In the policy it is possible to define watermarks on session and port usage. The usage per subscriber will be monitored.

```
configure service nat nat-policy "nat-l2aware-vprn1"
    port-limits
        watermarks high 90 low 80
    exit
    session-limits
        watermarks high 90 low 80
    exit
exit all
```

Outside IP Address Range Management

From an operational point of view it may be required to unprovision an outside IP address range. To that end, the **drain** has been introduced. If configured, no new sessions will be set up using this address-range. Existing mappings will cease to exist only when the session ends (tcp fin, fin ack, ack) or other timeout mechanism.

```
configure service vprn 1
    nat
        outside
            pool "nat-outside-pool-1" nat-group 1 type l2-aware create
                port-reservation blocks 128
                address-range 10.255.0.1 10.255.0.10 create
                    drain
                exit
            exit
        exit
    exit
exit all
```

When all sessions have drained the address-range can be unprovisioned.

Quality of Service

NAT is fully transparent in terms of quality of service. The quality of service is determined on ingress into the service router. A forwarding class is assigned to each packet and is retained throughout the whole router.

For L2-aware NAT a virtual port exists on the carrier IOM, nat-in-l2. This port is modelled as a network port with per FC queues both on ingress and egress. On network-ingress per destination queues are implemented, making sure head of line blocking cannot happen.

Operation

The MS-ISA card should be in operational up state.

```
A:PE-1# show mda
=====
MDA Summary
=====
```

Slot	Mda	Provisioned Mda-type	Equipped Mda-type	Admin State	Operational State
1	1	m20-1gb-xp-sfp	m20-1gb-xp-sfp	up	up
	2	isa-bb	isa-ms	up	up

```
=====
A:PE-1#
```

The NAT group should be configured, with at least one pool of outside IP addresses associated with it.

```
A:PE-1# show isa nat-group 1
=====
ISA NAT Group 1
=====
L2 Aware NAT Group

Admin state      : inService      Operational state : inService
Active MDA limit : 1              Reserved sessions : 0
High Watermark (%) : (Not Specified) Low Watermark (%) : (Not Specified)
Last Mgmt Change : 01/18/2011 13:27:40
=====
ISA NAT Group 1 members
=====
```

Group Member	State	Mda	Addresses	Blocks	Se-%	Hi	Se-Prio
1	active	1/2	1	3	< 1	N	0

```
-----
No. of members: 1
=====
```

The following table describes the **show isa nat-group** output fields.

Field	Description
Group	This is the group-id
Member	All members will be listed with associated parameters
State	The operational state of each member
MDA	The MDA position of the member
Addresses	The number of outside ip addresses assigned to the member
Blocks	The number of allocated port-blocks
Se-%	The actual session usage in percentage
Hi	High watermark reached (Y/N)
Se-Prio	The configured number of priority sessions

```
A:PE-1# show isa nat-group 1 associations
=====
ISA NAT Group 1 pool associations
=====
Pool                               Router
-----
nat-outside-pool-1                vprn1
-----
No. of pools: 1
=====
```

The subscriber-hosts should be created correctly.

```
A:PE-1# show service id 1 subscriber-hosts
=====
Subscriber Host table
=====
Sap      Subscriber
  IP Address
  MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin      Fwding State
-----
1/1/3:81          ipoe_sub_00:0c:29:9d:10:2d
  10.0.0.2
    00:0c:29:9d:10:2d  N/A      DHCP      Fwding
1/1/3:82          ipoe_sub_00:0c:29:34:cc:74
  10.0.0.2
    00:0c:29:34:cc:74  N/A      DHCP      Fwding
-----
Number of subscriber hosts : 2
=====
```

```
A:PE-1# show service id 2 subscriber-hosts
=====
Subscriber Host table
=====
Sap          Subscriber
  IP Address
  MAC Address  PPPoE-SID Origin  Fwding State
-----
1/1/3:111    pppoe_sub_00:0c:29:1d:44:34
  10.0.1.2
    00:0c:29:1d:44:34  1      IPCP      Fwding
-----
Number of subscriber hosts : 1
=====
```

The associated L2-Aware NAT subscriber-hosts are visible from CLI. The associated group, member and ports can be viewed using this command.

```
A:PE-1# show service nat l2-aware-subscribers
=====
Layer-2-Aware NAT subscribers
=====
Subscriber          Policy          Router          Group/Member
  Outside IP                      Ports
-----
ipoe_sub_00:0c:29:34:cc:74  nat-l2aware-vprn1  1  1/1
  10.255.0.1                1  1024-1527
ipoe_sub_00:0c:29:9d:10:2d  nat-l2aware-vprn1  1  1/1
  10.255.0.1                1  1528-2031
pppoe_sub_00:0c:29:1d:44:34  nat-l2aware-vprn1  1  1/1
  10.255.0.1                1  2032-2535
-----
No. of subscribers: 3
=====
```

```
A:PE-1# show service active-subscribers
=====
Active Subscribers
=====
Subscriber ipoe_sub_00:0c:29:34:cc:74 (sub-profile-nat)
-----
NAT Policy: nat-l2aware-vprn1
Outside IP: 10.255.0.1 (vprn1)
Ports      : 1024-1527
-----
(1) SLA Profile Instance sap:1/1/3:82 - sla:sla-profile-nat
-----
IP Address          MAC Address          PPPoE-SID Origin
-----
10.0.0.2            00:0c:29:34:cc:74  N/A      DHCP
```

```
-----
Subscriber ipoe_sub_00:0c:29:9d:10:2d (sub-profile-nat)
-----
NAT Policy: nat-l2aware-vprn1
Outside IP: 10.255.0.1 (vprn1)
Ports      : 1528-2031
-----

(1) SLA Profile Instance sap:1/1/3:81 - sla:sla-profile-nat
-----
IP Address      MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin
-----
10.0.0.2        00:0c:29:9d:10:2d N/A      DHCP
-----

Subscriber pppoe_sub_00:0c:29:1d:44:34 (sub-profile-nat)
-----
NAT Policy: nat-l2aware-vprn1
Outside IP: 10.255.0.1 (vprn1)
Ports      : 2032-2535
-----

(1) SLA Profile Instance sap:1/1/3:111 - sla:sla-profile-nat
-----
IP Address      MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin
-----
10.0.1.2        00:0c:29:1d:44:34 1      IPCP
-----

Number of active subscribers : 3
=====
```

Traffic arriving on the 7750 SR from the outside should be routed to the correct MS-ISA card (=NAT device).

The route table of VPRN 1 indicates that all traffic towards publicly visible IP addresses are routed to the NAT device, group 1 member 1. In other words all packets coming from the outside towards the 10.255.0.1 to 10.255.0.10 IP addresses are sent to the NAT device.

```
A:PE-1# show router 1 route-table
=====
Route Table (Service: 1)
=====
Dest Prefix      Type      Proto      Age      Pref
  Next Hop[Interface Name]      Metric
-----
10.0.0.0/24      Local     Local      04d18h09m  0
  sub-int-1              0
10.255.0.1/32    Remote    Static     04d23h15m  5
  NAT outside: group 1 member 1      1
10.255.0.2/31    Remote    Static     04d23h15m  5
  NAT outside: group 1 member 1      1
```

```

10.255.0.4/30                               Remote Static 04d23h15m 5
      NAT outside: group 1 member 1          1
10.255.0.8/31                               Remote Static 04d23h15m 5
      NAT outside: group 1 member 1          1
10.255.0.10/32                              Remote Static 04d23h15m 5
      NAT outside: group 1 member 1          1
172.16.0.0/30                               Local  Local  04d22h44m  0
      int-PE-1-servers                       0
-----
No. of Routes: 7
=====

```

```

A:PE-1# show router 2 route-table
=====
Route Table (Service: 2)
=====
Dest Prefix                                Type  Proto  Age           Pref
      Next Hop[Interface Name]              Metric
-----
10.0.1.0/24                               Local  Local  03d20h14m  0
      sub-int-2                             0
-----
No. of Routes: 1
=====

```

Individual sessions are viewed through a tools dump command.

```

*A:PE-1# tools dump nat sessions
=====
Matched 6 sessions on Slot #1 MDA #2
=====
Owner      : L2-aware Subscr pppoe_sub_00:0c:29:1d:44:34
Router     : 2
Flow Type  : TCP                               Timeout (sec) : 7408
Inside IP Addr : 10.0.1.2                     Inside Port    : 1065
Outside IP Addr : 10.255.0.1                   Outside Port   : 2037
Foreign IP Addr : 172.16.0.2                   Foreign Port   : 21
-----
Owner      : L2-aware Subscr pppoe_sub_00:0c:29:1d:44:34
Router     : 2
Flow Type  : ICMP                             Timeout (sec)  : 59
Inside IP Addr : 10.0.1.2                     Inside Identifier : 512
Outside IP Addr : 10.255.0.1                   Outside Identifier : 2034
Foreign IP Addr : 172.16.0.2
-----
Owner      : L2-aware Subscr ipoe_sub_00:0c:29:9d:10:2d
Router     : 3
Flow Type  : ICMP                             Timeout (sec)  : 59
Inside IP Addr : 10.0.0.2                     Inside Identifier : 1024
Outside IP Addr : 10.255.0.1                   Outside Identifier : 1536
Foreign IP Addr : 172.16.0.2
-----
Owner      : L2-aware Subscr ipoe_sub_00:0c:29:9d:10:2d
Router     : 3
Flow Type  : TCP                               Timeout (sec)  : 7369
Inside IP Addr : 10.0.0.2                     Inside Port    : 1070
Outside IP Addr : 10.255.0.1                   Outside Port   : 1538

```

Operation

```
Foreign IP Addr      : 172.16.0.2          Foreign Port        : 21
-----
Owner                : L2-aware Subscr ipoe_sub_00:0c:29:34:cc:74
Router               : Base
Flow Type            : TCP                  Timeout (sec)       : 7439
Inside IP Addr       : 10.0.0.2             Inside Port         : 1035
Outside IP Addr      : 10.255.0.1           Outside Port        : 1043
Foreign IP Addr      : 172.16.0.2          Foreign Port        : 80
-----
Owner                : L2-aware Subscr ipoe_sub_00:0c:29:34:cc:74
Router               : Base
Flow Type            : ICMP                 Timeout (sec)       : 59
Inside IP Addr       : 10.0.0.2             Inside Identifier    : 512
Outside IP Addr      : 10.255.0.1           Outside Identifier    : 1034
Foreign IP Addr      : 172.16.0.2
-----
=====
```

The resources on the MS-ISA can also be viewed through a **tools dump** command.

```
A:PE-1# tools dump nat isa resources mda 1/2
Resource Usage for Slot #1 Mda #2:
```

	Total	Allocated	Free
Flows	4194304	0	4194304
Policies	256	1	255
Port-ranges	262144	3	262144
Ports	201326592	0	201326592
IP-addresses	1024	1	1024
Large-scale hosts	131072	0	131072
L2-aware subscribers	65536	3	65536
L2-aware hosts	65536	3	65536
Delayed ICMP's	200	0	200
FTP ALG session	65536	0	65536

The alarm configuration can be verified for the NAT related traps.

```
A:PE-1# show log event-control "nat"
=====
Log Events
=====
Application
ID#      Event Name                                     P  g/s    Logged    Dropped
-----
2001 tmnxNatPlL2AwBlockUsageHigh                       WA  gen      1         0
2002 tmnxNatIsaMemberSessionUsageHigh                   WA  gen      0         0
2003 tmnxNatPlLsnMemberBlockUsageHigh                   WA  gen      0         0
2004 tmnxNatLsnSubIcmpPortUsageHigh                     WA  gen      0         0
2005 tmnxNatLsnSubUdpPortUsageHigh                      WA  gen      0         0
2006 tmnxNatLsnSubTcpPortUsageHigh                      WA  gen      0         0
2007 tmnxNatL2AwSubIcmpPortUsageHigh                    WA  gen      0         0
2008 tmnxNatL2AwSubUdpPortUsageHigh                     WA  gen      0         0
2009 tmnxNatL2AwSubTcpPortUsageHigh                     WA  gen      0         0
2010 tmnxNatL2AwSubSessionUsageHigh                    WA  gen      0         0
2011 tmnxNatLsnSubSessionUsageHigh                      WA  gen      0         0
```

```

2012 tmnxNatPlBlockAllocationLsn      MI sup      0      0
2013 tmnxNatPlBlockAllocationL2Aw     MI sup      0      9
2014 tmnxNatResourceProblemDetected   MI gen      0      0
2015 tmnxNatResourceProblemCause      MI gen      0      0
=====

```

RADIUS accounting information can be verified using the **debug router radius detail** command.

```

1 2011/01/19 18:35:22.25 CAT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 management RADIUS
"RADIUS: Accounting Request
  policy nat-accounting"

2 2011/01/19 18:35:22.25 CAT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 management RADIUS
"RADIUS: Transmit
  Accounting-Request(4) 172.16.15.58:1813 id 5 len 295
    STATUS TYPE [40] 4 Interim-Update(3)
    NAS IP ADDRESS [4] 4 172.16.15.96
    SESSION ID [44] 71 ipoe_sub_00:0c:29:9d:10:2d@1/1/3:81@sla-profile-nat_2011/
01/18 14:10:09
    SESSION TIME [46] 4 95113
    EVENT TIMESTAMP [55] 4 1295454922
    VSA [26] 172 Alcatel(6527)
      SUBSC ID STR [11] 26 ipoe_sub_00:0c:29:9d:10:2d
      SUBSC NAT PORT RANGE [121] 27 10.255.0.1 1528-2031 router 1
      CHADDR [27] 17 00:0c:29:9d:10:2d
      INPUT_INPROF_OCTETS_64 [19] 10 0x00010000000000000000
      INPUT_OUTPROF_OCTETS_64 [20] 10 0x000100000000000076e86e
      INPUT_INPROF_PACKETS_64 [23] 10 0x00010000000000000000
      INPUT_OUTPROF_PACKETS_64 [24] 10 0x00010000000000001733c
      OUTPUT_INPROF_OCTETS_64 [21] 10 0x000100000000000076ea5c
      OUTPUT_OUTPROF_OCTETS_64 [22] 10 0x00010000000000000000
      OUTPUT_INPROF_PACKETS_64 [25] 10 0x00010000000000001733d
      OUTPUT_OUTPROF_PACKETS_64 [26] 10 0x00010000000000000000

```

Conclusion

L2-Aware NAT allows the delivery of an IPv4 NAT service to ESM subscribers.

This chapter shows the configuration of L2-Aware NAT together with the associated show outputs which can be used verify and troubleshoot it.

Triple Play Service Delivery Architecture

In This Section

This section provides TPSDA configuration information for the following topics:

- [ARP Hosts on page 423](#)
- [Bridged CO on page 451](#)
- [Diameter Application NASREQ on page 493](#)
- [Diameter Inter-Chassis Redundancy on page 509](#)
- [ESM Basics on page 533](#)
- [ESM IPv4: Multicast in a Wholesale/Retail Scenario on page 581](#)
- [ESM IPv4: Multicast with Redirection on page 597](#)
- [ESM IPv4: Multicast with SRRP on page 635](#)
- [ESM SLAAC Prefix Assignment via Local Address Server on page 669](#)
- [ESMv4: PPPoE Hosts on page 691](#)
- [ESMv6: IPoE Dual Stack Hosts on page 743](#)
- [ESMv6: PPPoE Dual Stack Hosts on page 787](#)
- [Establishing a Diameter Peering Session on page 823](#)
- [Flexible Authentication Model in ESM on page 839](#)
- [Ingress Multicast Path Management on page 885](#)
- [IPv4 DHCP Hosts on page 929](#)
- [L2TP for Subscriber Access — LAC on page 975](#)
- [Local User Database Basics on page 1037](#)
- [Local User Database for DHCPv4 Server on page 1071](#)
- [Managed SAPs with Routed CO on page 1095](#)
- [Multi-Chassis Ring Layer 2 with Enhanced Subscriber Management on page 1129](#)

In This Section

- [Python Cache Support for ESM Applications on page 1163](#)
- [RADIUS-Triggered Dynamic Data Service Provisioning on page 1189](#)
- [Raw Formatting of DHCPv4/v6 Options in ESM on page 1235](#)
- [Routed CO on page 1271](#)
- [Subscriber Redundancy for Routed-CO on page 1319](#)
- [WiFi Aggregation and Offload — Basic Open SSID on page 1353](#)
- [WiFi Aggregation and Offload — Basic Secure SSID with Distributed RADIUS Proxy on page 1379](#)
- [WiFi Aggregation and Offload — IPv4/v6 Dual-Stack UEs on page 1405](#)
- [WiFi Aggregation and Offload — Migrant User Support on page 1427](#)
- [WiFi Aggregation and Offload — Open SSID with DSM and Lawful Intercept on page 1443](#)

In This Chapter

This section describes advanced ARP host configurations.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 424](#)
- [Summary on page 425](#)
- [Overview on page 426](#)
- [Configuration on page 427](#)
- [Conclusion on page 450](#)

Applicability

This section describes ARP hosts and is applicable to the 7450 ESS and 7750 SR series and was tested on SR-OS 13.0 R3.

Summary

In business access area, both DHCP and PPPoE are used. However, it is possible that CPE network facing interfaces are statically configured. In such cases, the first packet the network on the user side sees is ARP to the Broadband Service Aggregator (BSA) or Broadband Service Router (BSR) interface. In order to accommodate such configurations, Alcatel-Lucent Enhanced Subscriber Management (ESM) feature set supports the ARP host.

In practice, this means that authentication, self-provisioning and Service Level Agreement (SLA) enforcement can be triggered by reception of ARP packets.

The BRAS node will learn the IP-MAC association based on received arp-request packet and will provision subscriber-hosts based on results from RADIUS authentication, the same way this would happen through DHCP or PPPoE.

This section provides configuration and troubleshooting commands for ARP hosts. Features common to other host types and not unique to arp-hosts are not described in this note. (Not exhaustive list: RADIUS managed routes, routed subscriber with dynamic BGP peering, Wholesale/Retail, Managed SAPs configurations, ESM related host limitation mechanisms, host High-Availability, multi-chassis peer synchronization).

Knowledge of the Alcatel-Lucent Triple Play Service Delivery Architecture (TPSDA) concepts is assumed throughout this document.



Warning:

- Enhanced Subscriber Management and RADIUS authentication are mandatory for the use of ARP hosts.

Overview

ARP host is supported in bridged CO (VPLS) and routed CO (Subscriber Interface). It is triggered by the first ARP packet from the host. ARP host is also supported in a wholesale/retail context and on managed SAPs (MSAP).

The IP and MAC addresses are extracted from the ARP request. They are copied in the access-request message sent to the RADIUS server:

- RADIUS attribute [1] Username = IP address
- Alcatel-Lucent VSA [26][27] Client Hardware Address = MAC address

RADIUS will, on successful authentication, reply with an access-accept message on which the ESM will create the ARP host. ESM string assignment options are out of the scope for this scenario.

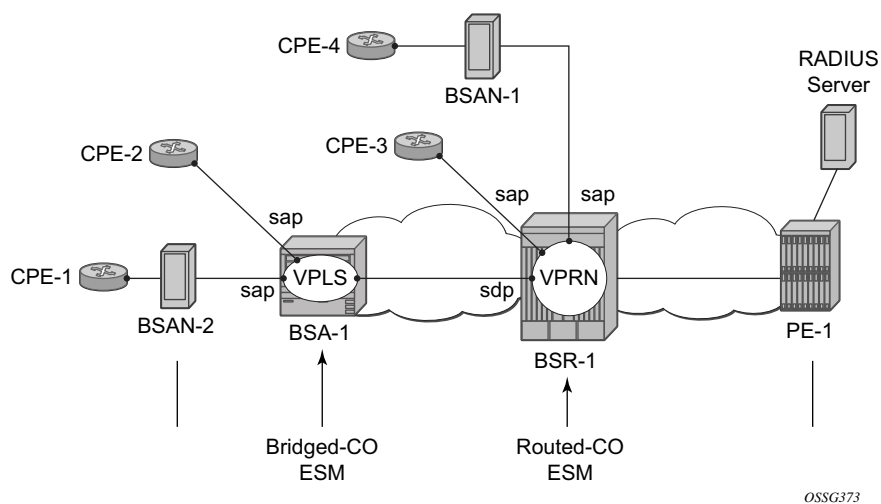


Figure 69: Bridged CO and Routed CO Example

Configuration

ARP Hosts in a Bridged CO Environment

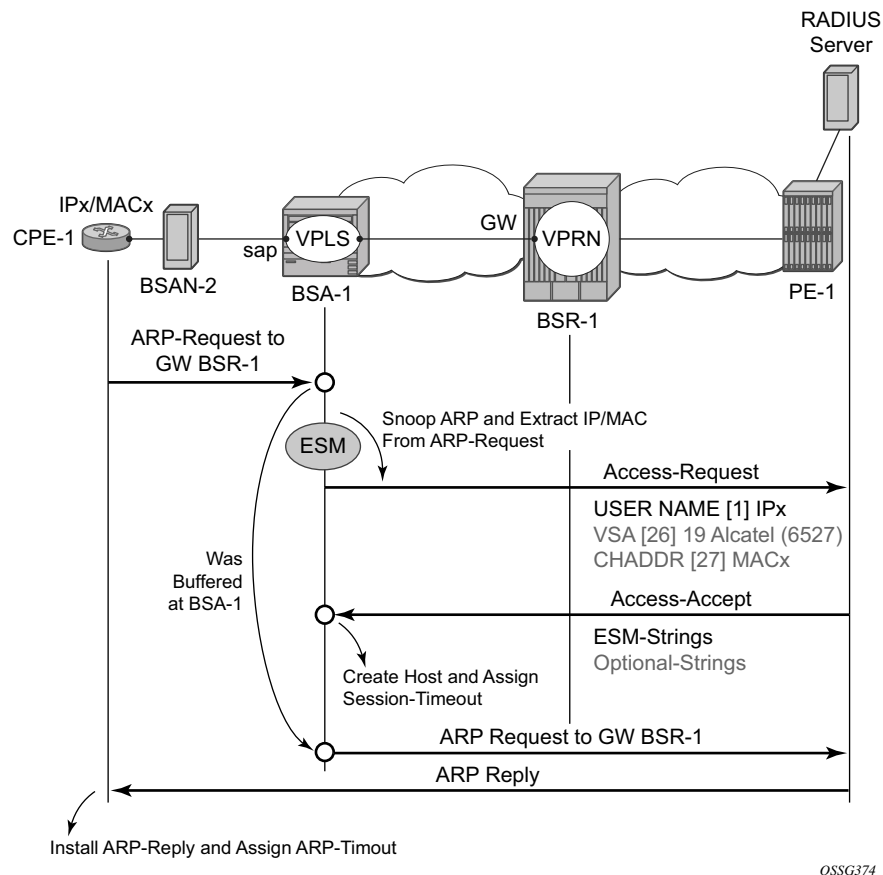


Figure 70: ARP Hosts in a Bridged CO Environment Example

ARP-host-specific enabling for Bridged CO is achieved by a composite service; a VPLS on the BSA node and a VPRN/IES on the BSR node. RADIUS authentication and subscriber management, which mandates IP-MAC or NH-MAC type anti-spoofing, are mandatory for ARP hosts.

ARP Hosts in a Bridged CO Environment

```
# on BSA-1
configure
  service
    vpls 2 customer 1 create
      description "ARP host - Bridged CO"
      stp
        shutdown
      exit
      sap 1/1/1:1 create
        authentication-policy "authentication-1"
        anti-spoof ip-mac
        sub-sla-mgmt
          sub-ident-policy "sub-id-default"
          multi-sub-sap 10
          no shutdown
        exit
        arp-host
          no shutdown
        exit
      exit
    spoke-sdp 12:2 create
    exit
  no shutdown
exit
```

The RADIUS authentication policy does not require specific parameter settings. The RADIUS username attribute will contain always the host IP address which makes the authentication policy parameter user-name-format irrelevant for ARP hosts.

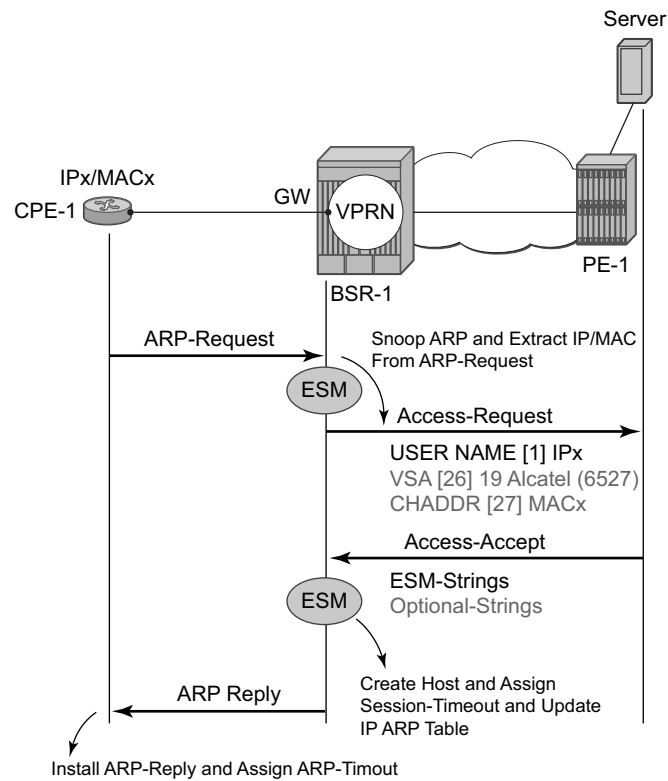
```
configure
  subscriber-mgmt
    authentication-policy "authentication-1" create
      password ALU
      radius-authentication-server
        server 1 address 172.16.1.1 secret ALU
      exit
      re-authentication # optional if re-authentication is required
      accept-authorization-change # optional if RADIUS Disconnect is required
  exit
```

The CPE ARPs are snooped and the first CPE ARP triggers a RADIUS accept-request and subsequent ARPs will trigger RADIUS re-authentication only if the ARP host configurable min-auth-interval is expired and the above re-authentication parameter is set. The initial ARP is only forwarded to the BSR-1 upon successful RADIUS authentication by means of a RADIUS access-accept message. The same RADIUS access-accept message and passing the several session limit checks, triggers the creation of the host.

The BSR-1 node requires a VPRN/IES as part of the composite service. No ARP-host-specific parameters are required on the BSR-1 for the bridged CO model.


```
# on BSR-1
configure service
  vprn 1 customer 1 create
    route-distinguisher 64496:1
    auto-bind-tunnel
      resolution-filter
        ldp
      exit
    resolution filter
  exit
  vrf-target target:64496
  interface "int-BSA1-p2mp-1" create
    description "ARP host - Bridged CO" address 10.2.0.6/29
    ip-mtu 1500
    spoke-sdp 21:2 create
  exit
exit
```

ARP Hosts in a Routed CO Environment



OSSG375

Figure 71: ARP Hosts in a Routed CO Environment Example

ARP-host-specific enabling for routed CO is identical for VPRN and IES services. RADIUS authentication and subscriber management, which mandates IP-MAC or NH-MAC type anti-spoofing, are mandatory for ARP hosts.

The initial ARP will, only upon successful RADIUS authentication and passing the several sessions limit checks, create the ARP host. The ARP reply or update of the IP ARP table is not performed on any unsuccessful RADIUS authentication.

```

# on BSR-1
configure service
  vprn 1 customer 1 create
    route-distinguisher 64496:1
    auto-bind-tunnel
      resolution-filter
        ldp
      exit
    resolution filter
  exit

vrf-target target:64496:1
subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
  description "ARP host - Routed CO" address 10.1.0.6/29
  group-interface "group-int-1" create
    authentication-policy "authentication-1"
    sap 1/1/1:1 create
      anti-spoof ip-mac
      sub-sla-mgmt
        sub-ident-policy "sub-id-default"
        no shutdown
      exit
    exit
  arp-host
    no shutdown
  exit
exit

```

RADIUS User Configuration Bridged/Routed CO

The username in the RADIUS access request is always the statically configured IP address from the CPE and configured as key in the RADIUS users file. The RADIUS Framed-Route attribute is not required and is silently ignored (if returned to BSA/BSR node).

```
"10.1.0.1"      Auth-Type := Local, User-Password == ALU
                  Alc-Subsc-ID-Str = "arp-host-routed-%{User-name}",
                  Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str = "sub-profile-1",
                  Alc-SLA-Prof-Str = "sla-profile-1"

"10.2.0.1"      Auth-Type := Local, User-Password == ALU
                  Alc-Subsc-ID-Str = "arp-host-bridged-%{User-name}",
                  Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str = "sub-profile-1",
                  Alc-SLA-Prof-Str = "sla-profile-1"
```

Setup and Debugging of ARP Host

Identical methodologies, for bridged or Routed CO, are used to debug/setup and troubleshoot ARP hosts. Routed CO is used as an example through the rest of this section on ARP hosts.

There are two modes of ARP host debugging: all and dropped-only. The dropped-only mode shows all cases where the creation of the ARP host will be unsuccessful.

By default, all ARP hosts enabled under a service will be monitored. More specific filtering on a particular IP, MAC or SAP is optional.

All main traps are by default cyclically logged in log-id 99 and can be viewed anytime.

```
debug service id 1 arp-host mode all
```

ARP host mandate RADIUS authentication and a separate debug option is available for RADIUS interaction.

```
debug radius detail
```

CPE-3 with statically configured IP1 10.1.0.1 sends an ARP to the BSR-1 gateway.

```
1 2015/06/22 15:48:00.72 CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base RADIUS
"RADIUS: Transmit
  Access-Request(1) 172.16.1.1:1812 id 2 len 79 vrid 1 pol authentication-1
    USER NAME [1] 8 10.1.0.1
    PASSWORD [2] 16 gy3yhtT5dF9YYilHtiNNk
    NAS IP ADDRESS [4] 4 192.0.2.2
    VSA [26] 19 Alcatel(6527)
    CHADDR [27] 17 00:00:0a:01:00:01
"
```

```

2 2015/06/22 15:48:00.74 CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base RADIUS
"RADIUS: Receive
  Access-Accept(2) id 2 len 94 from 172.16.1.1:1812 vrid 1 pol authentication-1
    VSA [26] 26 Alcatel(6527)
      SUBSC ID STR [11] 24 arp-host-routed-10.1.0.1
    VSA [26] 15 Alcatel(6527)
      SUBSC PROF STR [12] 13 sub-profile-1
    VSA [26] 15 Alcatel(6527)
      SLA PROF STR [13] 13 sla-profile-1
"

3 2015/06/22 15:48:00.75 CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 ARP Host
"ARP Host: Created ARP host
  VPRN 1, SAP 1/1/1:1

  IP: 10.1.0.1
  MAC: 00:00:0a:01:00:01
"

A:BSR-1# show log log-id 99
--- snipped ---
58 2015/06/22 15:48:00.73 CEST WARNING: SVCMgr #2500 Base Subscriber created
"Subscriber arp-host-routed-10.1.0.1 has been created in the system"

```

The user name in the RADIUS access-request contains the CPE's IP address independent from the user-name-format defined in the authentication policy. The MAC address of the ARP host is included in the RADIUS access-request as VSA (Alc-Client-Hardware-Addr) independent on the include-radius-attribute mac-address parameter from the authentication policy.

The **show service id 1 arp-host** command displays all active ARP hosts on this service.

```

A:BSR-1# show service id 1 arp-host
=====
ARP host table, service 1
=====
IP Address      Mac Address      Sap Id      Remaining      MC
                Time                               Stdby
-----
10.1.0.1        00:00:0a:01:00:01 1/1/1:1      03h59m23s
-----
Number of ARP hosts : 1
=====
A:BSR-1#

```

More specific filters such as **sap**, **ip-address**, **mac** and others can be used to show dedicated ARP hosts created on the BSR.

```

A:BSR-1# show service id 1 arp-host ip-address 10.1.0.1 detail
=====
ARP hosts for service 1
=====
Service ID      : 1
IP Address      : 10.1.0.1
MAC Address     : 00:00:0a:01:00:01
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1

```

Setup and Debugging of ARP Host

```
Group-interface      : group-int-1
SAP                  : 1/1/1:1
Remaining Time       : 03h59m15s

Sub-Ident            : "arp-host-routed-10.1.0.1"
Sub-Profile-String   : "sub-profile-1"
SLA-Profile-String   : "sla-profile-1"
App-Profile-String   : ""
ARP host ANCP-String : ""
ARP host Int Dest Id : ""
Category-Map-Name    : ""

RADIUS-User-Name     : "10.1.0.1"

Session Timeout (s)  : 14400
Start Time           : 06/22/2015 15:48:00
Last Auth             : 06/22/2015 15:48:00
Last Refresh          : 06/22/2015 15:48:00
Persistence Key       : N/A
```

```
-----
Number of ARP hosts : 1
=====
```

```
A:BSR-1#
```

Dynamically created ARP hosts are added as /32 addresses in the routing table marked with protocol type Sub Mgmt. Routes with this protocol type are not exported into vpn-ipv4 by the default vrf-target policy. A separate vrf-export policy is required to achieve this.

```
A:BSR-1# show router 1 route-table 10.1.0.0/24 longer
```

```
=====
Route Table (Service: 1)
```

Dest Prefix[Flags]	Type	Proto	Age	Pref
Next Hop[Interface Name]			Metric	
10.1.0.0/29	Local	Local	00h04m21s	0
sub-int-1			0	
10.1.0.1/32	Remote	Sub Mgmt	00h00m56s	0
[group-int-1]			0	

```
-----
No. of Routes: 2
```

```
Flags: n = Number of times nexthop is repeated
```

```
B = BGP backup route available
```

```
L = LFA nexthop available
```

```
S = Sticky ECMP requested
```

```
=====
A:BSR-1#
```

Specific ARP host counters can be shown or cleared using the CLI command **show/clear service id 1 ARP host statistics**.

```
A:BSR-1# show service id 1 arp-host statistics
```

```
=====
ARP host statistics
=====
```

```

Num Active Hosts          : 1
Received Triggers         : 5
Ignored Triggers          : 3
Ignored Triggers (overload) : 0
SHCV Checks Forced        : 0
Hosts Created             : 1
Hosts Updated             : 1
Hosts Deleted             : 0
Authentication Requests Sent : 4
=====
A:BSR-1#

```

The ARP hosts mandate Enhanced Subscriber managed (ESM) and therefore an anti-spoofing configuration (IP-MAC or NH-MAC). The anti-spoofing table with active hosts can be viewed with the command **show service id 1 subscriber-hosts**.

```

A:BSR-1# show service id 1 subscriber-hosts
=====
Subscriber Host table
=====
Sap              Subscriber
  IP Address
  MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin      Fwding State
-----
1/1/1:1          arp-host-routed-10.1.0.1
  10.1.0.1
    00:00:0a:01:00:01  N/A      ARP-Host      Fwding
-----
Number of subscriber hosts : 1
=====
A:BSR-1#

```

An ARP host can be manually deleted from the system using one of the two following methods:

- **clear service id 1 arp-host**
- RADIUS disconnect message

Using the first method, **clear service id 1 arp-host** and omitting any more specific parameter than ARP host will result in the removal of all ARP hosts in this service. Extra filters like **ip-address**, **mac** or **sap-id** are used to remove a specific ARP host.

```

*A:BSR-1# clear service id 1 arp-host
  - arp-host {all | mac <ieee-address> | sap <sap-id> | ip-address <ip-address[/mask]> }
  - arp-host {port <port-id> | {inter-dest-id <intermediate-destination-id> | no-inter-dest-id} [port <port-id>] }
  - arp-host statistics [sap <sap-id> | interface <interface-name>]

A:BSR-1# clear service id 1 arp-host ip-address 10.1.0.1

```

Setup and Debugging of ARP Host

Using the second method, RADIUS disconnect always result in the removal of a unique host because **nas-port-id** and **framed-ip-address** are mandatory parameters in the RADIUS disconnect message. This RADIUS disconnect message is used also for other host-types.

```
nas-port-id = 1/1/1:1
framed-ip-address=10.1.0.1
```

RADIUS disconnect messages are, for security reasons, rejected by default and are allowed instead of enabled by setting **accept-authorization-change** parameter in the authentication policy. The **debug radius detail** command and **show subscriber-mgmt authentication coa-statistics** can be used during troubleshooting.

```
10 2015/06/22 15:51:08.43 CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base RADIUS
"RADIUS: Receive
  Disconnect Request(40) id 247 len 44 from 172.16.1.1:46749 vrid 1
    SESSION ID [44] 22 02DAFF00000000255881288
"

11 2015/06/22 15:51:08.42 CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base RADIUS
"RADIUS: Transmit
  Disconnect Ack(41) 172.16.1.1:46749 id 247 len 26 vrid 1 pol authentication-1
    TERMINATE CAUSE [49] 4 Admin Reset(6)
"

12 2015/06/22 15:51:08.43 CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 ARP Host
"ARP Host: Removed ARP host
  VPRN 1, SAP 1/1/1:1

  IP: 10.1.0.1
  MAC: 00:00:0a:01:00:01
"
```

In both cases the ARP host with an IP address is removed from the system together with all related state information (such as an anti-spoof filter and an IP ARP entry).

ARP Host Session Timeout

The ARP host session timeout is a time value between 300 and 14400 seconds and becomes the remaining time at the moment the first ARP request results in a successful host creation.

The host is removed from the system at the moment the remaining time becomes zero. The reset of remaining time to session timeout is done by any subsequent arp-request or arp-reply for this host.

The default assigned session timeout at ARP host creation time is 14400 seconds but this value can be overruled by the optional RADIUS attribute session-Timeout and not by the node group-interface arp-timeout parameter.

RADIUS values lower than 300 seconds will be silently adjusted to 300 seconds and values above 14400 seconds are topped silently to 14400 seconds.

```
"10.1.0.1"    Auth-Type := Local, User-Password == ALU
              Alc-Subsc-ID-Str = "arp-host-routed-#{User-name}",
              Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str = "sub-profile-1",
              Alc-SLA-Prof-Str = "sla-profile-1",
              Session-Timeout = 300 # value in seconds
```

```
A:BSR-1# show service id 1 arp-host
```

```
=====
ARP host table, service 1
=====
IP Address      Mac Address      Sap Id            Remaining      MC
                  Time                               Stdbby
-----
10.1.0.1        00:00:0a:01:00:01 1/1/1:1          00h04m56s
-----
Number of ARP hosts : 1
=====
```

```
A:BSR-1#
```

```
A:BSR-1# show service id 1 arp-host ip-address 10.1.0.1 detail
```

```
=====
ARP hosts for service 1
=====
Service ID      : 1
IP Address      : 10.1.0.1
MAC Address     : 00:00:0a:01:00:01
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface : group-int-1
SAP             : 1/1/1:1
Remaining Time  : 00h04m39s

Sub-Ident       : "arp-host-routed-10.1.0.1"
Sub-Profile-String : "sub-profile-1"
SLA-Profile-String : "sla-profile-1"
App-Profile-String : ""
ARP host ANCP-String : ""
ARP host Int Dest Id : ""
Category-Map-Name : ""
```

ARP Host Session Timeout

```
RADIUS-User-Name      : "10.1.0.1"

Session Timeout (s)   : 300
Start Time            : 06/22/2015 15:53:11
Last Auth             : 06/22/2015 15:53:11
Last Refresh         : 06/22/2015 15:53:11
Persistence Key       : N/A
-----
Number of ARP hosts : 1
=====
A:BSR-1#
```

Typical time related parameters of the ARP host are:

Table 8: ARP Host Time-Related Parameters

Parameter	Comment
Session Timeout	Time value in seconds and retrieved by default or by the RADIUS Accept message and pasted into the remaining time at the moment of ARP host creation or RADIUS re-authentication.
Remaining Time	The remaining time before the ARP host is deleted from the system (updated each time an ARP request/reply is seen for this host).
Start Time	Time and date when this host was created (first ARP received).
Last Auth	Time and date when this host was last RADIUS authenticated.
Last Refresh	Time and date when last ARP was received for this host.

ARP hosts do not have an expiry timer in the ARP table and have type **managed**.

```
A:BSR-1# show service id 1 arp 10.1.0.1
=====
ARP Table
=====
IP Address      MAC Address      Type    Expiry    Interface    SAP
-----
10.1.0.1        00:00:0a:01:00:01 Managed 00h00m00s group-int-1    1/1/1:1
=====
A:BSR-1#
```

An automatic mechanism is foreseen to handle the possible asynchrony between the ARP session timeout values installed on the BSR and the ARP timeouts installed on the CPE. This mechanism is mostly effective in case the timeout on the CPE exceeds the timeout on the BSR. In this case, the BSR session would expire, resulting in a host removal with a deletion of the corresponding

anti-spoof entry because the CPE ARP request arrives too late. This CPE ARP request will however recreate the session but requires the complete setup of the host RADIUS authentication included. This mechanism causes unwanted service interruption for this ARP host.

A better approach, which is implemented in an automatic way, and illustrated in [Figure 72](#) is an ARP request triggered from the BSR towards the CPE prior to the session timeout. A CPE ARP reply will then reset the remaining lifetime of the ARP host to the session timeout. If the ARP reply is received outside the **min-auth-interval** window and the parameter re-authentication from the authentication policy is set, then RADIUS re-authentication is executed. This re-authentication mechanism is described further in the throttling toward the RADIUS section.

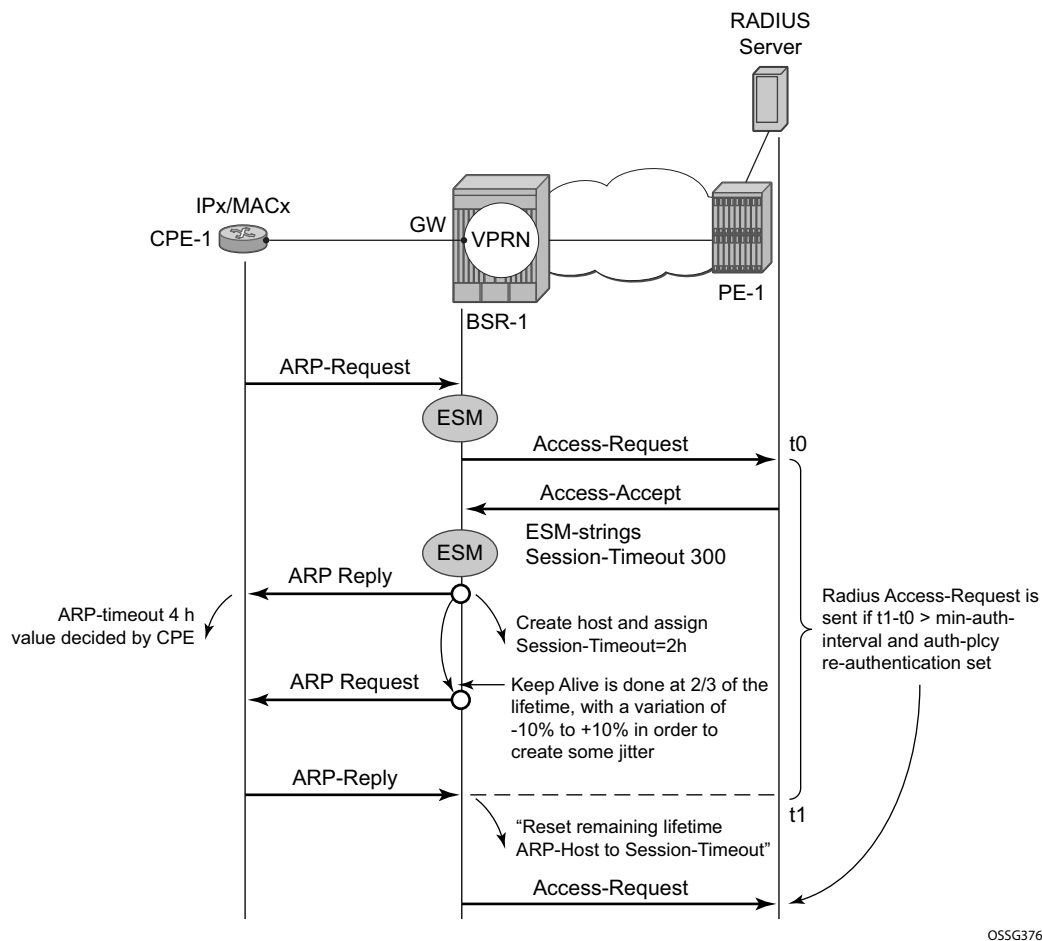


Figure 72: ARP Host Session Timeout Example

This mechanism, also known as automatic Subscriber Host Connectivity Verification (SHCV), will prevent that the host will be deleted and re-created, resulting in undesired service interruptions, in case asynchronous CPE-BSR ARP session values would be used.

ARP Host Session Timeout

The **debug service id 1 host-connectivity-verify** command shows the sequence of events and can be used during troubleshooting. Debugging and ARP host counters show the automatic SHCV mechanism with an active CPE.

```
4 2015/06/25 16:32:45.21 CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 SHCV
"SHCV: Forced Check Scheduled
  1/1/1:1
  ARP host 10.1.0.1 00:00:0a:01:00:01"

5 2015/06/25 16:32:46.11 CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 SHCV
"SHCV: Forced Check
  1/1/1:1
  ARP host 10.1.0.1 00:00:0a:01:00:01"

6 2015/06/25 16:32:46.12 CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 SHCV
"SHCV: Received Reply
  1/1/1:1
  ARP host 10.1.0.1 00:00:0a:01:00:01"

7 2015/06/25 16:32:46.12 CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 ARP Host
"ARP Host: Updated ARP host
  VPRN 1, SAP 1/1/1:1

  IP: 10.1.0.1
  MAC: 00:00:0a:01:00:01
"

8 2015/06/25 16:34:29.34 CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 SHCV
"SHCV: Received Reply
  1/1/1:1
  ARP host 10.1.0.1 00:00:0a:01:00:01"

9 2015/06/25 16:34:29.34 CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 ARP Host
"ARP Host: Updated ARP host
  VPRN 1, SAP 1/1/1:1

  IP: 10.1.0.1
  MAC: 00:00:0a:01:00:01
"
```

```
A:BSR-1# show service id 1 arp-host statistics
```

```
=====
ARP host statistics
=====
```

Num Active Hosts	: 1
Received Triggers	: 3
Ignored Triggers	: 0
Ignored Triggers (overload)	: 0
SHCV Checks Forced	: 1
Hosts Created	: 1
Hosts Updated	: 2
Hosts Deleted	: 0
Authentication Requests Sent	: 1

```
=====
A:BSR-1#
```

CPEs that are not active and therefore do not respond to ARP requests as part of the automatic SHCV check will be rechecked three times with 10 second intervals.

The number of retries and the interval cannot be changed. A trap is generated, but the ARP host is not removed and will remain until the session-timeout expires or until the host will revive. This mechanism is displayed in [Figure 73](#).

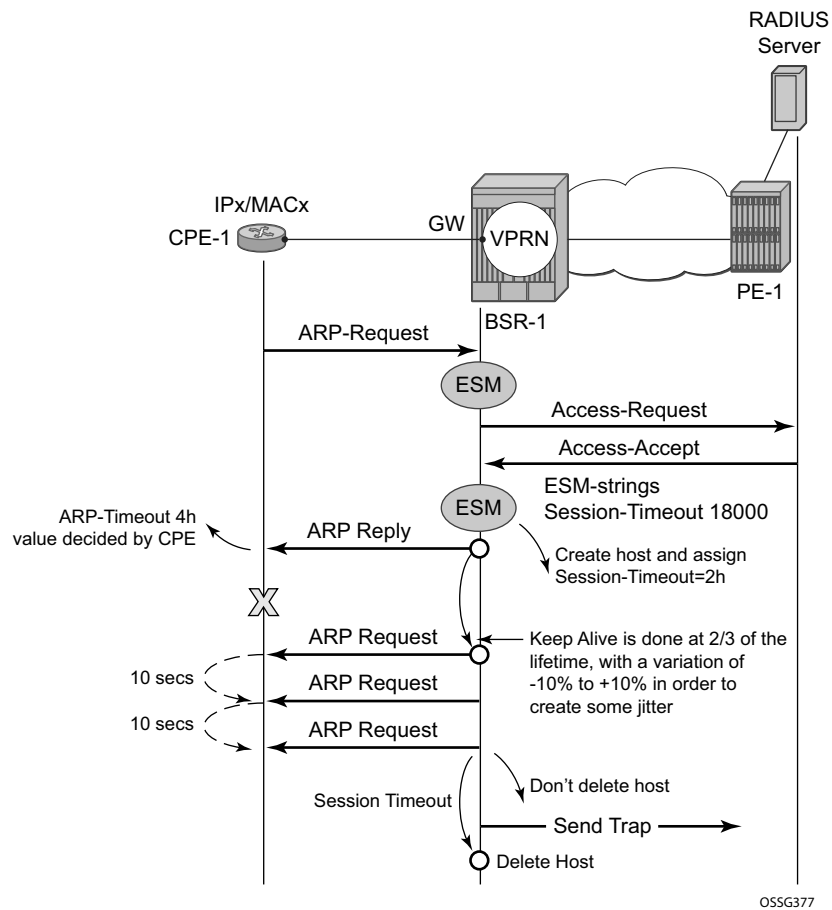


Figure 73: Trap Generation Example

```

16 2015/06/25 16:42:38.21 CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 SHCV
"SHCV: Forced Check Scheduled
  1/1/1:1
  ARP host 10.1.0.1 00:00:0a:01:00:01"

17 2015/06/25 16:42:39.11 CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 SHCV
"SHCV: Forced Check
  1/1/1:1
  ARP host 10.1.0.1 00:00:0a:01:00:01"

```

ARP Host Session Timeout

```
18 2015/06/25 16:42:49.11 CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 SHCV
"SHCV: Forced Check
  1/1/1:1
  ARP host 10.1.0.1 00:00:0a:01:00:01"

19 2015/06/25 16:42:59.11 CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 SHCV
"SHCV: Forced Check
  1/1/1:1
  ARP host 10.1.0.1 00:00:0a:01:00:01"

20 2015/06/25 16:43:09.11 CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 SHCV
"SHCV: Connectivity Lost
  1/1/1:1
  ARP host 10.1.0.1 00:00:0a:01:00:01"

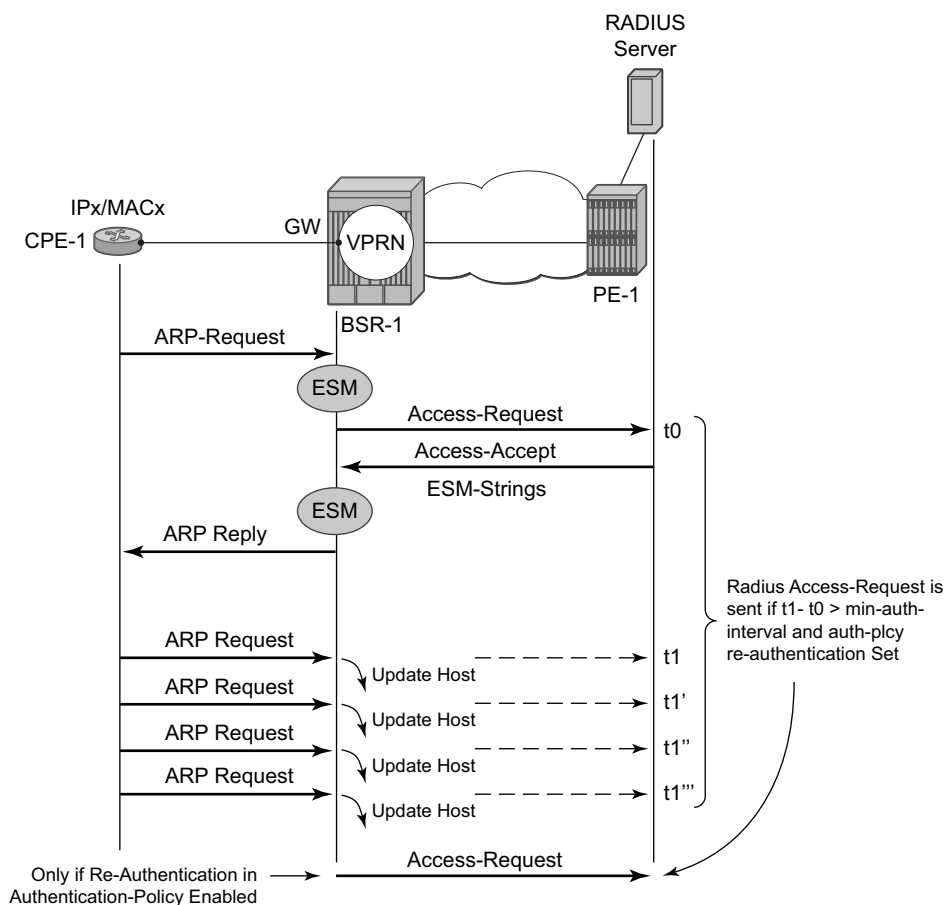
21 2015/06/25 16:43:10.21 CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 ARP Host
"ARP Host: Removed ARP host
  VPRN 1, SAP 1/1/1:1

  IP: 10.1.0.1
  MAC: 00:00:0a:01:00:01
"
```

Throttling Toward RADIUS

A new ARP request from the ARP host will trigger RADIUS re-authentication only when the min-auth-interval is expired. The minimum RADIUS authentication interval between two consecutive authentication attempts for the same ARP host is by default 15 minutes but can range between 1 and 6000 minutes.

```
configure
service
  vprn 1 customer 1 create
  --snip--
  arp-host
    min-auth-interval 60 # value in minutes
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
```



OSSG378

Figure 74: Throttling Toward RADIUS Example

Throttling Toward RADIUS

```
A:BSR-1# show service id 1 arp-host detail
=====
ARP hosts for service 1
=====
Service ID           : 1
IP Address           : 10.1.0.1
MAC Address          : 00:00:0a:01:00:01
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : group-int-1
SAP                  : 1/1/1:1
Remaining Time       : 00h04m31s

Sub-Ident            : "arp-host-routed-10.1.0.1"
Sub-Profile-String   : "sub-profile-1"
SLA-Profile-String   : "sla-profile-1"
App-Profile-String   : ""
ARP host ANCP-String : ""
ARP host Int Dest Id : ""
Category-Map-Name    : ""

RADIUS-User-Name     : "10.1.0.1"

Session Timeout (s)  : 300
Start Time           : 06/22/2015 15:59:32
Last Auth            : 06/22/2015 15:59:32
Last Refresh         : 06/22/2015 16:00:33
Persistence Key      : N/A
-----
Number of ARP hosts : 1
=====
A:BSR-1#
```


ARP Host Mobility

In order for ARP host mobility to function, host-connectivity-verification must **not** be enabled. This is different compared to DHCP host mobility.

The implementation for routed CO is displayed in [Figure 75](#) and works the same for bridged CO. The **mac-pinning** command in routed CO context has no influence on this behavior.

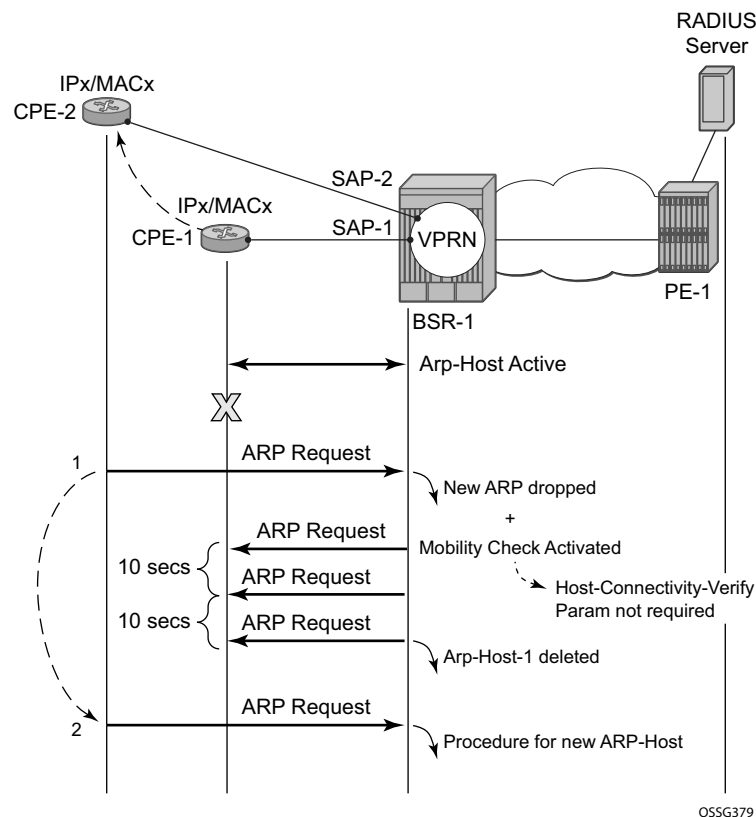


Figure 75: ARP Host Mobility Example

ARP Host Persistency

ARP hosts can be made persistent across reboots and do not differ with other host types like DHCP hosts.

```
configure system
    persistence
        subscriber-mgmt
            location cf3:
        exit
    exit
```

The persistence key and the index into the persistency file are linked to the ARP host at host creation time.

```
A:BSR-1# show service id 1 arp-host detail
=====
ARP hosts for service 1
=====
Service ID           : 1
IP Address           : 10.1.0.1
MAC Address          : 00:00:0a:01:00:01
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : group-int-1
SAP                  : 1/1/1:1
Remaining Time       : 00h04m32s

Sub-Ident            : "arp-host-routed-10.1.0.1"
Sub-Profile-String   : "sub-profile-1"
SLA-Profile-String   : "sla-profile-1"
App-Profile-String   : ""
ARP host ANCP-String : ""
ARP host Int Dest Id : ""
Category-Map-Name    : ""

RADIUS-User-Name     : "10.1.0.1"

Session Timeout (s)  : 300
Start Time           : 06/22/2015 15:59:32
Last Auth             : 06/22/2015 15:59:32
Last Refresh          : 06/22/2015 16:03:33
Persistence Key       : 0x00000000
-----
Number of ARP hosts : 1
=====
*A:BSR-1#
```

The content of the stored record is viewed with the **tools dump persistency** command using the **persistency** key as a record number.

```
*A:BSR-1# tools dump persistence submgt record 0x00000000
-----
Persistence Record
-----
Client      : submgt
```

```

Persist-Key : 0x00000000
Filename    : cf3:\submgmt.011
Entries     : Index  FedHandle  Last Update          Action Valid
              000040 0x00000000 2015/06/22 14:01:31 (UTC) ADD      Yes
Data        : 243 bytes

```

```

Host Type      : ARP host
Service ID     : 1
SAP ID         : 1/1/1:1
NH MAC         : 00:00:0a:01:00:01
Created        : 2015/06/22 13:59:32 (UTC)
IP             : 10.1.0.1
Session Timeout: 300 (seconds)
RADIUS Fallback: NO
Acct-Sess-Id   : 02DAFF00000008558814C4
Multi-Sess-Id  : 02DAFF00000009558814C4
Class Attr     : 0 bytes
User-Name      : "10.1.0.1"
host is authenticated by radius: true
Subscriber-Id  : "arp-host-routed-10.1.0.1"
Sub-Profile-Str: "sub-profile-1"
SLA-Profile-Str: "sla-profile-1"

```

```
*A:BSR-1#
```

Session Limitation Options

The maximum number of allowed arp-hosts in a bridged CO model can be configured by the per SAP parameter `host-limit` in the range of 1 to 32767.

```
configure
service
  vpls 2
  --snip
  sap 1/1/3:1
    arp-host
      host-limit 1          # default value 1
      no shutdown
    exit
  exit
exit
```

The maximum number of allowed arp-hosts in a routed CO model can be configured by the per group interface parameter `host-limit` in the range of 1 to 32767 and/or by the **sap-host-limit** parameter.

```
configure
service
  vprn 1
  --snip--
  arp-host
    host-limit 1          # default value
    sap-host-limit 1      # default value
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
```



Warning:

- Specific ESM-related host limit mechanisms such as **sla-profile host-limit** and **sub-sla-mgmt multi-sub-sap** apply also for ARP hosts but are not further elaborated in this section.

Debugging **arp-host mode dropped-only** indicates the dropped reason and a logging trap is included in the standard log 99.

```
56 2015/06/22 16:08:35.37 CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 ARP Host
"ARP Host: Dropped trigger
  VPRN 1, SAP 1/1/1:1

  Problem: Interface limit (1) of ARP hosts reached

  IP: 10.1.0.2
  MAC: 00:00:0a:01:00:02
"

*A:BSR-1# show log log-id 99
--- snipped ---
78 2015/06/22 16:08:55.52 CEST WARNING: SVCNMR #2520 vprn1 ARP Host Population Error
"ARP host table population error on SAP 1/1/1:1 in service 1 - Interface limit (1) of ARP
hosts reached"
```

Increasing the **sap-host-limit** to 100 and the host-limit to 2000 results in the following summary:

```
*A:BSR-1# show service id 1 arp-host summary
=====
ARP host Summary, service 1
=====
Interface Name           Used      Provided  Admin State
-----
group-int-1              1         2000      inService
-----
Interfaces: 1            1
-----
=====
*A:BSR-1#
```

Conclusion

This note provides configuration and troubleshooting commands for dynamic ARP hosts. ARP hosts can be instantiated in a Layer 2 bridged CO (VPLS) environment as well as in a Layer 3 Routed CO (IES/VPNN subscriber interface) context.

In This Chapter

This section provides information about Bridged CO model of Triple Play Service Delivery Architecture (TPSDA).

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 452](#)
- [Summary on page 453](#)
- [Overview on page 454](#)
- [Configuration on page 460](#)
- [Conclusion on page 491](#)

Applicability

This section is applicable to the 7750 SR and 7450 ESS series and was tested on SR-OS 7.0 R4. Chassis mode B or higher must be used. The 7750 SR-c4 is supported from 8.0R4 and higher. This note is related only to the use of IPv4 DHCP hosts.

Summary

This section provides information about basic technology, network topology and configuration examples which are used in Bridged CO model of Triple Play Service Delivery Architecture (TPSDA). Regardless of aggregation technologies which are used by customers Alcatel-Lucent offers flexible and easy to use methodology to manage DHCP subscribers in Layer 2 domain and distribute subscriber management intelligence across multiple nodes.

Knowledge of the Alcatel-Lucent Triple Play Service Delivery Architecture (TPSDA) concepts is assumed throughout this section.

Overview

Bridged CO is a basic TPSDA model and implies that access nodes are united in one Layer 2 aggregation network and VPLS is used as a primary technology for these purposes. This fact allows the use of subscriber management functionality on BSA nodes. Bridged CO network topology is shown in [Figure 76](#).

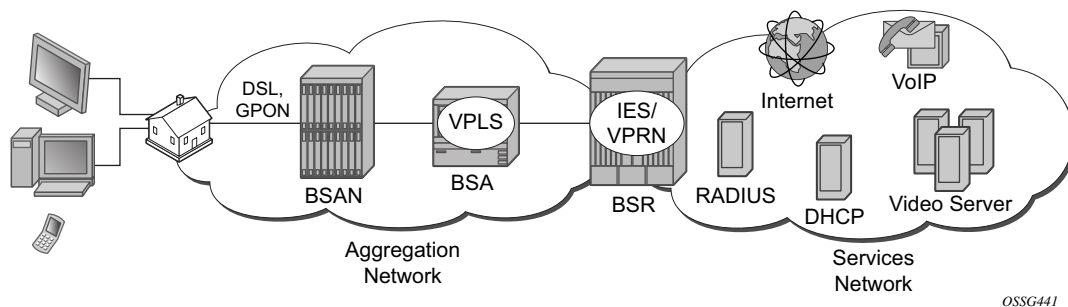


Figure 76: Bridged CO Network Topology

Following types of nodes are defined in Bridged CO model:

- Broadband Service Access Node (BSAN) — Access node connected to Layer 2 domain to aggregate all traffic from subscribers (IP DSLAM, ethernet switch).
- Broadband Services Aggregator (BSA) — Layer 2 node, which is capable for subscriber management in VPLS service (7450 ESS).
- Broadband Service Router (BSR) — Layer 3 node, which is capable for routing and service allocation (7750 SR).

As any model, Bridged CO introduces several key concepts that must be determined in advance. Major ones are presented in [Figure 77](#) and include:

- Subscriber— A set of hosts belonging to a single connection line (switch port, DSL line)
- Subscriber host — Unique customer device (could be PC, IP phone, STB, routed CPE).
- Subscriber-profile — Configured entity which defines the aggregate QoS for all hosts within a subscriber context.
- SLA-profile — Configured entity which defines QoS policies and filters for a subset of hosts within a subscriber context.

- Subscriber identification policy — Configured entity which defines the python script for dynamic subscriber host identification
- Authentication policy — Configured entity which defines the RADIUS servers to use for dynamic subscriber host identification
- Subscriber identification string — 32 characters identification string which uniquely identifies a subscriber on a node.

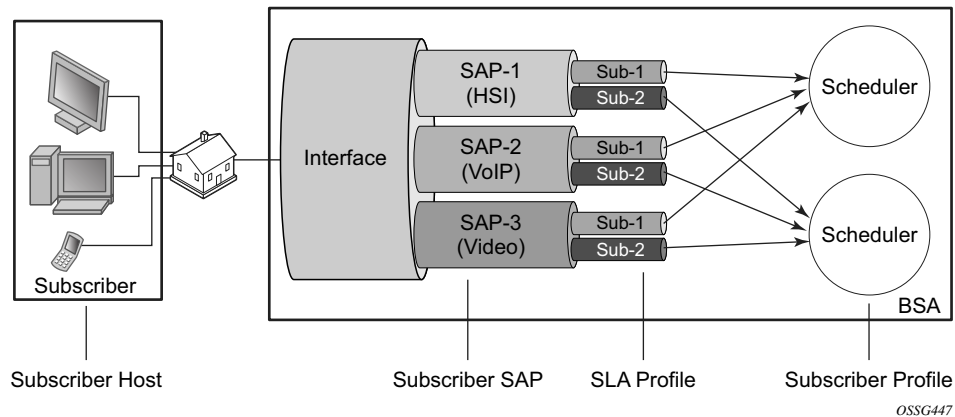


Figure 77: Key Concepts of Bridged CO Model

For normal operation each subscriber has to get several parameters / attributes:

- Subscriber-ID — Attribute, which uniquely identifies subscriber on the node and used as index key in subscriber database
- IP parameters — Attributes, which allows host to get access to services
- Subscriber profile and SLA — Profile for subscriber host ?a set of filters and QoS policies.
- Lease time — Period when subscriber parameters are kept in subscriber database on the node.

There are several methods how to get each of these parameters:

- Static
- Python scripts
- RADIUS
- DHCP

Each of the subscriber parameters could be defined in several ways simultaneously. In this case use the following algorithm for selecting:

Step 1. For subscriber profile

Step 1.1 A lookup in the **subscriber-explicit-map** is performed with the *sub-ident* string returned by the Python script, RADIUS or statically configured. If a matching entry is found, the sub-profile-name (if defined) is taken. If no entry was found go to [Step 1.2](#).

```
A:BSA>config>subscr-mgmt# info
explicit-subscriber-map
entry key "Sub-1" sub-profile "sub-profile-1" sla-profile "sla-profile-1"
```

Step 1.2 If a sub-ident-policy is defined on the SAP, a lookup is done on its sub-profile-map with the sub-profile string from the script. The sub-profile-name is taken from the entry. If no entry was found go to [Step 1.3](#).

```
A:BSA>config>service>vpls>sap# info
sub-sla-mgmt
sub-ident-policy "sub-ident-policy-1"

A:BSA>config>subscr-mgmt# info
sub-ident-policy "sub-ident-policy-1" create
sub-profile-map
entry key "sub-1" sub-profile "sub-profile-1"
```

Step 1.3 If provisioned, the sub-profile-name is taken from the def-sub-profile attribute on the SAP. If no entry was found go to [Step 1.4](#).

```
A:BSA>config>service>vpls>sap# info
sub-sla-mgmt
def-sub-profile "sub-profile-1"
```

Step 1.4 If a sub-profile with the name **default** is provisioned. If no entry was found DHCP Ack is dropped.

```
A:BSA>config>subscr-mgmt# info
sub-profile "default" create
```

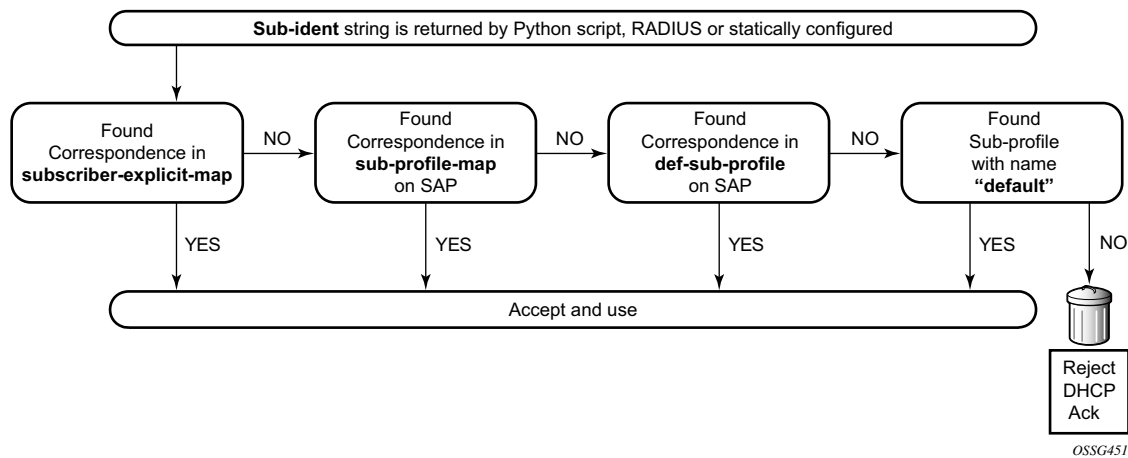


Figure 78: Flow Chart for Subscriber-Profile Identification Algorithm

Step 2. For SLA profile

Step 2.1 The sla-profile-name is taken from the sub-ident string (returned by the Python script, RADIUS or statically configured) in the subscriber-explicit-map. If no entry was found go to [Step 2.2](#).

```
A:BSA>config>subscr-mgmt# info
explicit-subscriber-map
entry key "Sub-1" sub-profile "sub-profile-1" sla-profile "sla-profile-1"
```

Step 2.2 A lookup with the sla-profile string from the script is done in the sla-profile-map of the sub-profile found earlier. The corresponding sla-profile-name is used. If no entry was found go to [Step 2.3](#):

```
A:BSA>config>subscr-mgmt# info
sub-profile "sub-profile-1" create
sla-profile-map
entry key "sla-1" sla-profile "sla-profile-1"
```

Step 2.3 The sla-profile-name is taken from sla-profile-map of the sub-ident-policy configured on the SAP. The corresponding sla-profile-name is used. If no entry was found go to [Step 2.4](#).

```
A:BSA>config>service>vpls>sap# info
sub-sla-mgmt
sub-ident-policy "sub-ident-policy-1"

A:BSA>config>subscr-mgmt# info
sub-ident-policy "sub-ident-policy-1" create
sla-profile-map
entry key "sla-1" sla-profile "sla-profile-1"
```

Step 2.4 The *sla-profile-name* is taken from the *def-sla-profile* attribute on the SAP. If no entry was found DHCP Ack is dropped.

```
A:BSA>config>service>vpls>sap# info
sub-sla-mgmt
def-sla-profile "sla-profile-1"
```

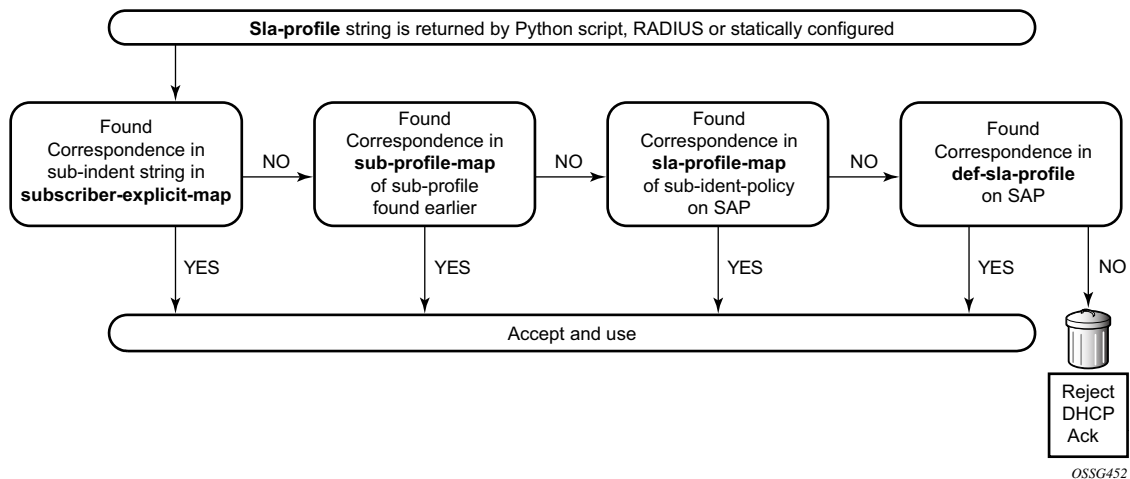


Figure 79: Flowchart for SLA-Profile Identification Algorithm

Note: static configuration has priority over RADIUS configuration and RADIUS has priority over DHCP/Python scripts.

Note: each host can have different SLA-profile, while sub-profile applies to whole subscriber. The last definition of sub-profile will force all previously defined hosts to change their sub-profile.

Bridged CO supports typical access node connection models, such as:

- One VLAN per service (ESM for subscriber differentiation and SAP for service)
- One VLAN per subscriber (SAP for subscriber differentiation and QoS flag for service)
- One VLAN per access node (ESM for subscriber differentiation and QoS flag for service)

Each of these modes has its pros and cons, but this is out of scope of this document.

This configuration guide focuses on configuration of one subscriber with three different hosts. VLAN per service is used as mode of subscriber aggregation and mixed RADIUS and DHCP as subscriber identification method. IP termination is done in IES service of BSR.

Correlation of BSA/BSR services and subscriber hosts is presented in [Table 9](#).

Table 9: Correlation of Hosts and BSA/BSR Services

	BSA (Service/Features)	BSR (Service/Features)
Host-1 ca:00:0c:54:00:08	VPLS-100 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DHCP proxy server • SAP/SDP DHCP snoop • Sub-Ident origin via RADIUS • Sla/Sub-profiles via RADIUS • IP options via RADIUS 	IES-100
Host-2 ca:01:08:10:00:08	VPLS-200 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SAP/SDP DHCP snoop • Sub-Ident origin through RADIUS • Sla/Sub-profiles through RADIUS • IP options through DHCP 	IES-200 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DHCP relay
Host-3 ca:02:02:d0:00:08	VPLS-300 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SAP/SDP DHCP snoop • Sub-Ident origin through DHCP • Sla/Sub-profiles through DHCP • IP options through DHCP 	IES-300 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DHCP relay

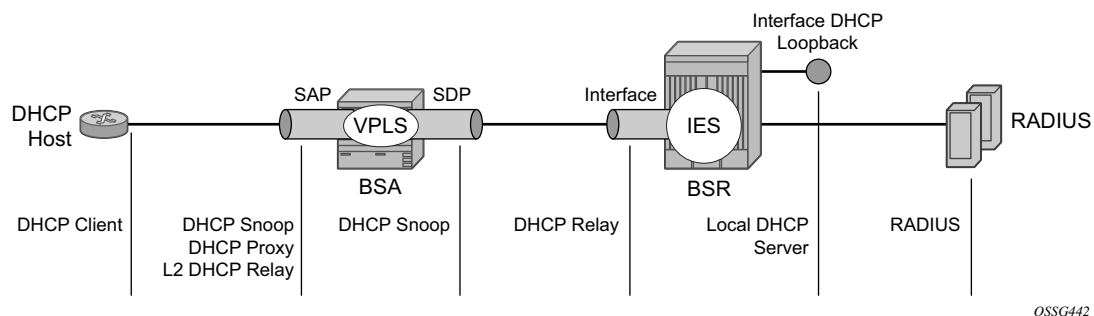
Different methods of authentication and address allocation were chosen for demonstration purposes. The customer is not limited to one method and can use a combination of methods as presented in this guide.

The following entities should be configured in advanced. Refer to the appropriate platform user guide for specific information. See [Preface on page 29](#) for a list of documents.

- Basic router configuration (interfaces, routing protocols, MPLS)
- External RADIUS server
- External/Local DHCP server

The diagram illustrates a Service Provider Network Architecture. At the top, a customer premises (house) is connected to a VPLS (Virtual Private Local Service) node, which is labeled 'SAP 1/1/1'. This VPLS node is connected to a BSR (Border Service Router) node. The BSR node is connected to an IES/VRPN (Internet Edge/Service Provider Network) node. The IES/VRPN node is connected to a cloud representing the Internet. The Internet cloud contains a VoIP (Voice over IP) node and a Video Server node. The BSR node is also connected to a RADIUS node. Below the main network, three VLANs (VLAN 100, VLAN 200, and VLAN 300) are shown. Each VLAN is connected to a VPLS node (VPLS-100, VPLS-200, and VPLS-300) via a 'spoke-sdp' (Service Data Path) connection. These VPLS nodes are connected to IES nodes (IES-100, IES-200, and IES-300) via a 'spoke-sdp' connection. The IES nodes are connected to the Internet cloud. The diagram also shows various network devices like routers and switches, and a central cloud representing the Internet.

Bridged CO model requires certain techniques and features to be used on different nodes. Major methods are presented in [Figure 81](#).



Advanced Configuration Guide for 7450 ESS, 7750 SR and 7950 XRS - Part II

The following configuration steps are required:

Step 1. On BSA

Step 1.1 Configure subscriber management profiles

Step 1.1.1 Configure sla profiles

Step 1.1.2 Configure subscriber profiles

Step 1.1.3 Configure subscriber identification policies

Step 1.1.4 Configure authentication and accounting policies if required

Step 1.2 Configure VPLS service

Step 1.2.1 Configure split horizon group

Step 1.2.2 Configure SAP

Step 1.2.2.1 Configure anti-spoofing filters

Step 1.2.2.2 Configure DHCP snooping

Step 1.2.2.3 Configure optional parameters (lease split, L2 DHCP relay agent, etc.)

Step 1.2.2.4 In case of RADIUS authentication apply authentication policy

Step 1.2.2.5 Configure ESM

Step 1.2.3 Configure SDP

Step 1.2.3.1 Configure DHCP snooping

Step 2. On BSR

Step 2.1 Configure IES service

Step 2.1.1 Configure IP interface

Step 2.1.1.1 Configure DHCP relay agent if required

Basic ESM Configuration on BSA

Subscriber management is enabled on BSA in Bridged CO model. A relevant configuration is presented below. SLA and subscriber profiles show the default configurations. The authentication policy appeals to RADIUS server 192.0.2.5. The subscriber identification policy is configured to use DHCP Option 254 to transfer custom attributes (subscriber-id, sla-profile, sub-profile, etc.)

```
A:BSA>config>subscr-mgmt# info
    authentication-policy "auth-policy-1" create
        password password-1
        radius-authentication-server
            router "management"
            server 1 address 192.0.2.5 secret ALU
        exit
    include-radius-attribute
        circuit-id
        remote-id
        nas-port-id
        nas-identifier
    exit
exit
sla-profile "sla-profile-1" create
exit
sla-profile "sla-profile-2" create
exit
sla-profile "sla-profile-3" create
exit
sla-profile "sla-profile-default" create
exit
sub-profile "sub-profile-1" create
exit
sub-profile "sub-profile-default" create
exit
sub-ident-policy "sub-ident-policy-1" create
    sub-profile-map
        use-direct-map-as-default
    exit
    sla-profile-map
        use-direct-map-as-default
    exit
    strings-from-option 254
exit
```

The **string-from-option 254** command is shared in-built dhcp-server of BSR. Using this option, the DHCP server could transmit subscriber identification options such the subscriber-id, sla-profile-string, and sub-profile-string.

BSA/BSR Configuration for Host-1 Operation

The test subscriber has three hosts. Host-1 gets all necessary information from RADIUS server.

Table 10: BSA/BSR Configuration for Host-1 Operation

	BSA (Service/Features)	BSR (Service/Features)
Host-1 ca:00:0c:54:00:08	VPLS-100 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DHCP proxy server • SAP/SDP DHCP snoop • Sub-Ident origin through RADIUS • Sla/Sub-profiles through RADIUS • IP options through RADIUS 	IES-100

In this case BSA takes role of DHCP proxy with DHCP server emulation. DHCP snooping on the SAP must be enabled. Anti-spoofing filters on the SAP must be enabled. An authentication policy must be applied on the SAP.

```

vpls 100 customer 1 create
  split-horizon-group "RSHG-1" residential-group create
  exit
--snip--
sap 1/1/4:100 split-horizon-group "RSHG-1" create
  dhcp
    snoop
    lease-populate 400
    proxy-server
      emulated-server 10.0.1.253
      no shutdown
    exit
    no shutdown
  exit
  authentication-policy "auth-policy-1"
  anti-spoof ip-mac
  sub-sla-mgmt
    def-sub-id string "default-subscriber"
    def-sub-profile "sub-profile-default"
    def-sla-profile "sla-profile-default"
    sub-ident-policy "sub-ident-policy-1"
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
spoke-sdp 12:100 create
exit
no shutdown
exit

```

On BSR IES-100, the service is configured with a pure IP interface, which plays role of DG for host-1.

```
ies 100 customer 1 create
  interface "int-host-1" create
    address 10.0.1.254/24
    spoke-sdp 21:100 create
  exit
exit
no shutdown
exit
```

BSA/BSR Configuration for Host-2 Operation

The test subscriber has three hosts. Host-2 gets subscriber-id and sla/sub-profiles information from RADIUS server and IP options from DHCP server.

Table 11: BSA/BSR Configuration for Host-2 Operation

	BSA (Service/Features)	BSR (Service/Features)
Host-2 ca:01:08:10:00:08	VPLS-200 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SAP/SDP DHCP snoop • Sub-Ident origin through RADIUS • Sla/Sub-profiles through RADIUS • IP options through DHCP 	IES-200 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DHCP relay

DHCP snooping on the SAP and SDP must be enabled. Anti-spoofing filters on the SAP must be enabled.

```
vpls 200 customer 1 create
  split-horizon-group "RSHG-1" residential-group create
  exit
--snip--
  sap 1/1/4:200 split-horizon-group "RSHG-1" create
    dhcp
      snoop
      lease-populate 400
      no shutdown
    exit
    authentication-policy "auth-policy-1"
    anti-spoof ip-mac
    sub-sla-mgmt
      def-sub-id string "default-subscriber"
      def-sub-profile "sub-profile-default"
```

```

        def-sla-profile "sla-profile-default"
        sub-ident-policy "sub-ident-policy-1"
        no shutdown
    exit
exit
spoke-sdp 12:200 create
    dhcp
        snoop
    exit
exit
no shutdown
exit

```

On BSR IES-200, the service is configured with an IP interface which as the DG for Host-2. DHCP relay must be configured to transform broadcast DHCP discover message into unicast and send it to DHCP server for processing.

```

ies 200 customer 1 create
    interface "int-host-2" create
        address 10.0.2.254/24
        dhcp
            server 192.0.2.4
            trusted
            no shutdown
        exit
    spoke-sdp 21:200 create
    exit
exit
no shutdown
exit

```

BSA/BSR Configuration for Host-3 Operation

The test subscriber has three hosts. Host-3 receives all necessary information from the DHCP server.

Table 12: BSA/BSR Configuration for Host-3 Operation

	BSA (Service/Features)	BSR (Service/Features)
Host-3 ca:02:02:d0:00:08	VPLS-300 * SAP/SDP DHCP snoop * Sub-Ident origin through DHCP * Sla/Sub-profiles through DHCP * IP options through DHCP	IES-300 * DHCP relay

DHCP snooping on the SAP and SDP must be enabled. Anti-spoofing filters on the SAP must be enabled.

```

vpls 300 customer 1 create
  split-horizon-group "RSHG-1" residential-group create
  exit
---- snip ----
sap 1/1/4:300 split-horizon-group "RSHG-1" create
  dhcp
    snoop
    lease-populate 400
    no shutdown
  exit
  anti-spoof ip-mac
  sub-sla-mgmt
    def-sub-id string "default-subscriber"
    def-sub-profile "sub-profile-default"
    def-sla-profile "sla-profile-default"
    sub-ident-policy "sub-ident-policy-1"
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
spoke-sdp 12:300 create
  dhcp
    snoop
  exit
exit
no shutdown
exit

```

On BSR IES-300, the service is configured with IP interface, which plays role of DG for host-3. DHCP relay must be configured to transform broadcast DHCP discover message into unicast and send it to DHCP server for processing.

```
ies 300 customer 1 create
  interface "int-host-3" create
    address 10.0.3.254/24
    dhcp
      server 192.0.2.4
      trusted
      no shutdown
    exit
    spoke-sdp 21:300 create
    exit
  exit
  no shutdown
exit
```

RADIUS Configuration Bridged CO

The username in the RADIUS access request is configurable and could be one of the following formats1:

- mac — MAC Source Address of the DHCP DISCOVER message
- circuit-id — Taken from option 82 in the received DHCP message. If no circuit-id can be found, the DHCP-msg is rejected.
- tuple — Concatenation of MAC source address and circuit-ID
- ascii-converted-circuit-id — Identical to circuit-id, but the user name will be sent to the RADIUS server as a string of hex digits
- ascii-converted-tuple — Identical to tuple, but the circuit-id part of the user name will be sent to the RADIUS server as a string of hex digits

Note: Refer to [IPv4 DHCP Hosts on page 929](#) for detailed information about how to use different options.

```
A:BSA>config>subscr-mgmt>auth-plcy# user-name-format
- user-name-format <format> [append domain-name]
- no user-name-format

<format>                : mac|circuit-id|tuple|ascii-converted-circuit-id|
                        ascii-converted-tuple
```

For simplicity, MAC format is used in this guide.

There are two hosts configured in the users file on RADIUS server:

- a:00:0c:54:00:08 — The mac address of host-1 host [VPLS/IES 100]. For host-1 all necessary parameters are returned: subscriber-id, sla/sub-profiles, IP parameters and lease time.
- a:01:08:10:00:08 — The mac address of host-2 host [VPLS/IES 200]. For host-2 only subscriber-id, sla/sub-profiles are returned, while ip parameters and lease time are returned from DHCP server.

```
ca:00:0c:54:00:08 Auth-Type := Local, User-Password == "password-1"
                  Alc-Subsc-ID-Str = "sub-id-1",
                  Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str == "sub-profile-1",
                  Alc-SLA-Prof-Str == "sla-profile-1",
                  Framed-IP-Address = 10.0.1.1,
                  Framed-IP-Netmask = 255.255.255.0,
                  Alc-Default-Router = 10.0.1.254,
                  Session-Timeout = 6000

ca:01:08:10:00:08 Auth-Type := Local, User-Password == "password-1"
                  Alc-Subsc-ID-Str = "sub-id-1",
                  Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str == "sub-profile-1",
                  Alc-SLA-Prof-Str == "sla-profile-2"
```


Local DHCP Server Configuration Bridged CO

In the setup local DHCP server is used with reference to local user database.

```
A:BSR>config>router>dhcp# info
    local-dhcp-server "dhcp-server-1" create
        user-db "user-db-1"
        pool "pool-1" create
            subnet 10.0.2.0/24 create
            exit
            subnet 10.0.3.0/24 create
            exit
        exit
    no shutdown
exit
```

Note: Subnets must be configured, even if all IP parameters are returned from local user DB. Without this option, DHCP server do not return IP parameters.

The local user database is configured on BSR. Identification is done via MAC address of a host, which is taken from DHCP-Discover message. There are several possibilities to identify DHCP host. **match-list** command is used for this purpose.

```
*A:BSR>config>subscr-mgmt>loc-user-db>dhcp# match-list
- no match-list
- match-list <dhcp-match-type-1> [<dhcpmatch-type-2>...(up to 4 max)]

<dhcp-match-type>      : circuit-id|mac|option60|remote-id|sap-id|service-id|
                        string|system-id
```

There are two hosts configured:

- a:01:08:10:00:08 — mac address of host-2 [VPLS/IES 200]. DHCP returns ip address, subnet mask and default route.
- a:02:02:d0:00:08 — mac address of host-3 [VPLS/IES 300]. DHCP returns all necessary parameters: subscriber-id, sla/sub-profiles and all ip options.

```
A:BSR>config>subscr-mgmt# info
    local-user-db "user-db-1" create
        dhcp
            match-list mac
            host "host-2" create
                host-identification
                    mac ca:01:08:10:00:08
                exit
                address 10.0.2.1
                options
                    subnet-mask 255.255.255.0
                    default-router 10.0.2.254
                exit
```

Basic ESM Configuration on BSA

```
        no shutdown
    exit
    host "host-3" create
        host-identification
            mac ca:02:02:d0:00:08
        exit
        address 10.0.3.1
        identification-strings 254 create
            subscriber-id "sub-id-1"
            sla-profile-string "sla-profile-3"
            sub-profile-string "sub-profile-1"
        exit
        options
            subnet-mask 255.255.255.0
            default-router 10.0.3.254
        exit
        no shutdown
    exit
exit
no shutdown
exit
```

Setup Procedures and Debugging

Subscriber/Host Verification

The initialization of all active subscribers and hosts can be shown using the **show service active-subscribers** command. Different options can be used to filter the output of the command.

```
A:BSA# show service active-subscribers
=====
Active Subscribers
=====
-----
Subscriber sub-id-1 (sub-profile-1)
-----
-----
(1) SLA Profile Instance sap:1/1/4:100 - sla:sla-profile-1
-----
IP Address      MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin
-----
10.0.1.1        ca:00:0c:54:00:08 N/A             DHCP
-----
(2) SLA Profile Instance sap:1/1/4:200 - sla:sla-profile-2
-----
IP Address      MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin
-----
10.0.2.1        ca:01:08:10:00:08 N/A             DHCP
-----
(3) SLA Profile Instance sap:1/1/4:300 - sla:sla-profile-3
-----
IP Address      MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin
-----
10.0.3.1        ca:02:02:d0:00:08 N/A             DHCP
-----
Number of active subscribers : 1
=====
A:BSA#
```

Hierarchy of subscriber hosts is represented in a convenient form using following command.

```
A:BSA# show service active-subscribers hierarchy
=====
Active Subscriber hierarchy
=====
-- sub-id-1 (sub-profile-1)
|
|-- sap:1/1/4:100 - sla:sla-profile-1
|   |
|   |-- 10.0.1.1 - ca:00:0c:54:00:08 - N/A (DHCP)
|   |
|   |
|-- sap:1/1/4:200 - sla:sla-profile-2
|   |
|   |-- 10.0.2.1 - ca:01:08:10:00:08 - N/A (DHCP)
|   |
|   |
|
```

```
-- sap:1/1/4:300 - sla:sla-profile-3
-- 10.0.3.1 - ca:02:02:d0:00:08 - N/A (DHCP)
```

Host-1 Setup Debug

The Host-1 setup process is shown in [Figure 82](#).

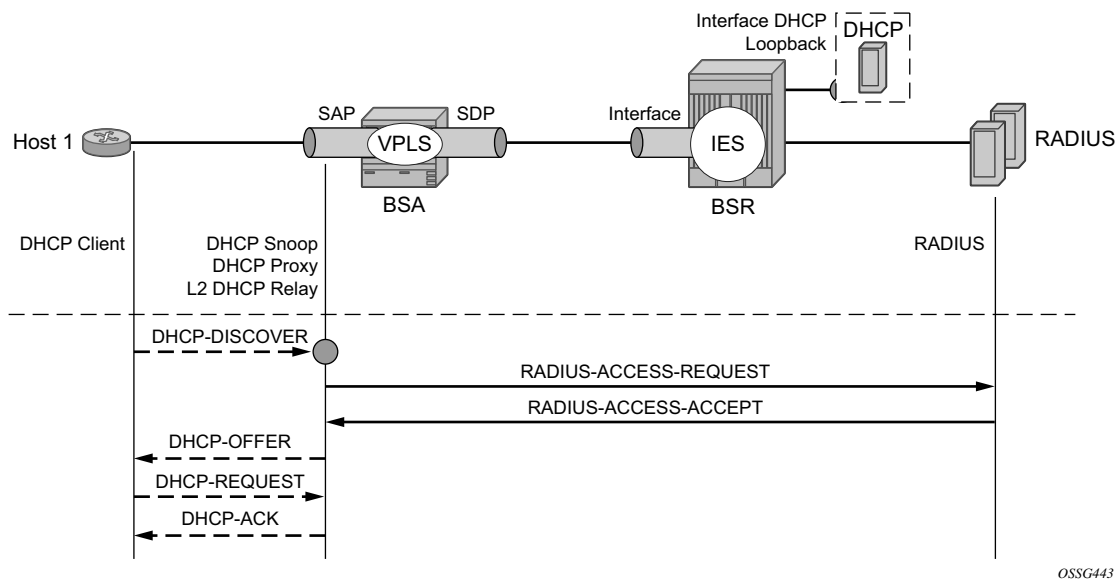


Figure 82: Host-1 Setup Process

Host-1 sends DHCP discover message in VLAN 100 to BSA. BSA plays role of DHCP proxy server and transforms DHCP discover into RADIUS access-request message. After receiving RADIUS access-accept BSA transforms it to DHCP Ack message. Session setup process could be represented using debug commands:

```
A:BSA# debug service id 100 dhcp mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
A:BSA# debug service id 100 dhcp detail-level medium
A:BSA# debug radius detail
18 2009/12/15 06:31:56.63 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base SVCMMGR
"SVCMMGR: RX DHCP Packet
  VPLS 100, SAP 1/1/4:100

BootRequest to UDP port 67
ciaddr: 0.0.0.0      yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
siaddr: 0.0.0.0      giaddr: 0.0.0.0
chaddr: ca:00:0c:54:00:08  xid: 0xd42
```

```

    DHCP options:
    [53] Message type: Discover
--snip--
"
19 2009/12/15 06:31:56.63 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 management RADIUS
"RADIUS: Access-Request
    user ca:00:0c:54:00:08 policy auth-policy-1"
20 2009/12/15 06:31:56.63 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 management RADIUS
"RADIUS: Transmit
    Access-Request(1) 192.0.2.5:1812 id 69 len 85
        USER NAME [1] 17 ca:00:0c:54:00:08
        PASSWORD [2] 16 lkhSVrFePQ0A0Xc4ZyMwMk
        NAS IP ADDRESS [4] 4 192.0.2.1
        NAS PORT TYPE [61] 4 Ethernet(15)
        NAS PORT ID [87] 9 1/1/4:100
        NAS IDENTIFIER [32] 3 BSA
"
21 2009/12/15 06:31:56.73 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 management RADIUS
"RADIUS: Receive
    Access-Accept(2) id 69 len 108 from 138.203.18.79:1812
        VSA [26] 10 Alcatel(6527)
            SUBSC ID STR [11] 8 sub-id-1
        VSA [26] 15 Alcatel(6527)
            SUBSC PROF STR [12] 13 sub-profile-1
        VSA [26] 15 Alcatel(6527)
            SLA PROF STR [13] 13 sla-profile-1
        FRAMED IP ADDRESS [8] 4 10.0.1.1
        FRAMED IP NETMASK [9] 4 255.255.255.0
        VSA [26] 6 Alcatel(6527)
            DEFAULT ROUTER [18] 4 10.0.1.254
        SESSION TIMEOUT [27] 4 6000
"
22 2009/12/15 06:31:56.73 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base SVCMMGR
"SVCMMGR: TX DHCP Packet
    VPLS 100, SAP 1/1/4:100

    BootReply to UDP port 68
    ciaddr: 0.0.0.0 yiaddr: 10.0.1.1
    siaddr: 10.0.1.253 giaddr: 0.0.0.0
    chaddr: ca:00:0c:54:00:08 xid: 0xd42

    DHCP options:
    [53] Message type: Offer
--snip--
"
23 2009/12/15 06:31:57.57 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base SVCMMGR
"SVCMMGR: RX DHCP Packet
    VPLS 100, SAP 1/1/4:100

    BootRequest to UDP port 67
    ciaddr: 0.0.0.0 yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
    siaddr: 0.0.0.0 giaddr: 0.0.0.0
    chaddr: ca:00:0c:54:00:08 xid: 0xd42

    DHCP options:
    [53] Message type: Request
--snip--
"

```

Basic ESM Configuration on BSA

```
24 2009/12/15 06:31:57.57 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base SVCMMGR
"SVCMMGR: TX DHCP Packet
  VPLS 100, SAP 1/1/4:100

  BootReply to UDP port 68
  ciaddr: 0.0.0.0          yiaddr: 10.0.1.1
  siaddr: 10.0.1.253       giaddr: 0.0.0.0
  chaddr: ca:00:0c:54:00:08 xid: 0xd42

  DHCP options:
  [53] Message type: Ack
--snip
```

The number of snooped/forwarded/dropped/proxied DHCP packets can be checked using the **show service id 100 dhcp statistics** command.

```
A:BSA# show service id 100 dhcp statistics
=====
DHCP Statistics, service 100
=====
Client Packets Snooped           : 2
Client Packets Forwarded         : 0
Client Packets Dropped           : 0
Client Packets Proxied (RADIUS)  : 2
Client Packets Proxied (Lease-Split) : 0
Server Packets Snooped           : 0
Server Packets Forwarded         : 0
Server Packets Dropped           : 0
DHCP RELEASES Spoofed           : 0
DHCP FORCERENEWS Spoofed        : 0
=====
A:BSA#
```

Connectivity of Host-1 could be checked with the **show service id 100 subscriber-hosts** command. Different options can be used to filter output of the command.

```
A:BSA# show service id 100 subscriber-hosts detail
=====
Subscriber Host table
=====
Sap          IP Address      MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin
Subscriber
-----
1/1/4:100    10.0.1.1        ca:00:0c:54:00:08 N/A      DHCP
sub-id-1
-----
Sub Profile      : sub-profile-1
SLA Profile      : sla-profile-1
App Profile      : N/A
-----
Number of subscriber hosts : 1
```

The DHCP lease state can be checked with the **show service id 100 dhcp lease-state** command. Different options can be used to filter output of a command.

```

A:BSA# show service id 100 dhcp lease-state detail
=====
DHCP lease states for service 100
=====
Service ID           : 100
IP Address           : 10.0.1.1
Client HW Address    : ca:00:0c:54:00:08
SAP                  : 1/1/4:100
Remaining Lifetime   : 01h33m41s
Persistence Key      : N/A
Sub-Ident            : "sub-id-1"
Sub-Profile-String   : "sub-profile-1"
SLA-Profile-String   : "sla-profile-1"
--snip--
Sub-Ident origin     : Radius
Strings origin       : Radius
Lease Info origin    : Radius
--snip--
Radius User-Name     : "ca:00:0c:54:00:08"
-----
Number of lease states : 1
=====
A:BSA#

```

Host-2 Setup Debug

Host-1 setup process is displayed in [Figure 83](#).

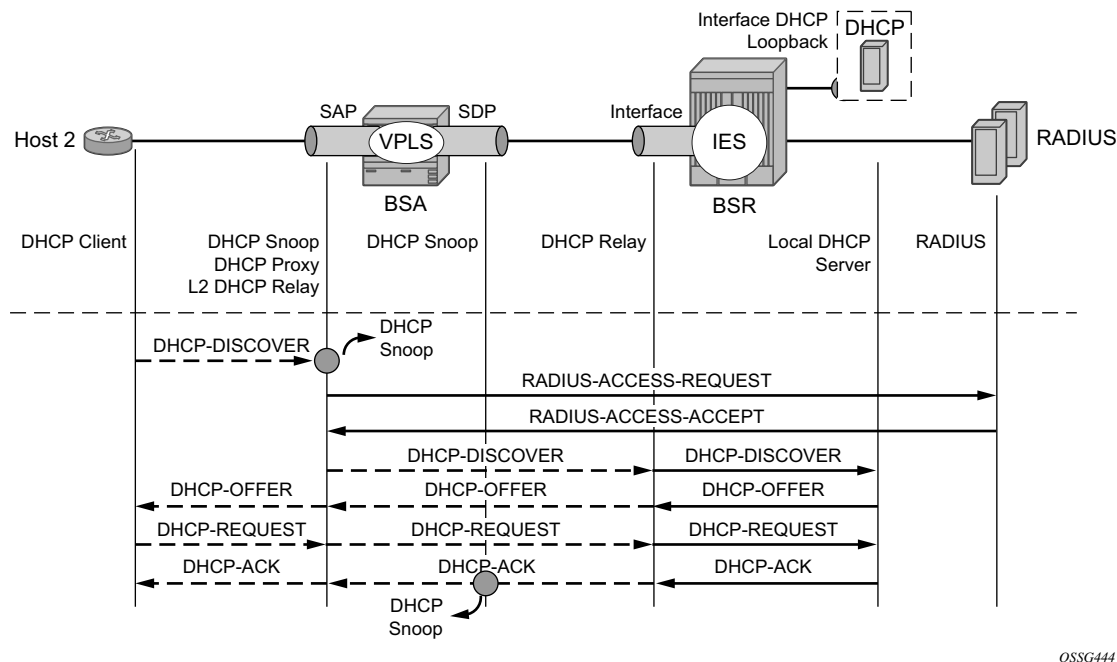


Figure 83: Host-2 Setup Process

Host-2 sends DHCP discover message in VLAN 200 to BSA. Host-2 is authenticated through RADIUS and gets subscriber-id, sla/sub-profiles. DHCP Discover message is flooded in VPLS service and reaches IP interface on BSA, where DHCP relay is configured. Session setup process could be represented using debug commands:

```
A:BSA# debug service id 200 dhcp mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
A:BSA# debug service id 200 dhcp detail-level medium
A:BSA#
*A:BSA#
18 2009/12/15 13:00:36.28 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base SVCNMR
"SVCNMR: RX DHCP Packet
  VPLS 200, SAP 1/1/4:200

BootRequest to UDP port 67
ciaddr: 0.0.0.0      yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
siaddr: 0.0.0.0      giaddr: 0.0.0.0
chaddr: ca:01:08:10:00:08  xid: 0xfc8

DHCP options:
[53] Message type: Discover
```



```
--snip--

19 2009/12/15 13:00:36.28 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 management RADIUS
"RADIUS: Access-Request
  user ca:01:08:10:00:08  policy auth-policy-1"

20 2009/12/15 13:00:36.28 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 management RADIUS
"RADIUS: Transmit
  Access-Request(1) 192.0.2.5:1812 id 80  len 85
    USER NAME [1] 17 ca:01:08:10:00:08
    PASSWORD [2] 16 .czdppt/0qAsqKqStbvnV.
    NAS IP ADDRESS [4] 4 192.0.2.1
    NAS PORT TYPE [61] 4 Ethernet(15)
    NAS PORT ID [87] 9 1/1/4:200
    NAS IDENTIFIER [32] 3 BSA
"

21 2009/12/15 13:00:36.34 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 management RADIUS
"RADIUS: Receive
  Access-Accept(2) id 80  len 78 from 138.203.18.79:1812
    VSA [26] 10 Alcatel(6527)
      SUBSC ID STR [11] 8 sub-id-1
    VSA [26] 15 Alcatel(6527)
      SUBSC PROF STR [12] 13 sub-profile-1
    VSA [26] 15 Alcatel(6527)
      SLA PROF STR [13] 13 sla-profile-2
"

22 2009/12/15 13:00:36.34 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base SVCMMGR
"SVCMMGR: TX DHCP Packet
  flooding in VPLS 200

  BootRequest to UDP port 67
  ciaddr: 0.0.0.0          yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
  siaddr: 0.0.0.0          giaddr: 0.0.0.0
  chaddr: ca:01:08:10:00:08  xid: 0xfc8

  DHCP options:
  [53] Message type: Discover
--snip--"

23 2009/12/15 13:00:36.35 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base SVCMMGR
"SVCMMGR: RX DHCP Packet
  VPLS 200, spoke-sdp 12:200

  BootReply to UDP port 68
  ciaddr: 0.0.0.0          yiaddr: 10.0.2.1
  siaddr: 192.0.2.4        giaddr: 0.0.0.0
  chaddr: ca:01:08:10:00:08  xid: 0xfc8

  DHCP options:
  [53] Message type: Offer
--snip--"

24 2009/12/15 13:00:36.34 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base SVCMMGR
"SVCMMGR: TX DHCP Packet
  VPLS 200, SAP 1/1/4:200

  BootReply to UDP port 68
  ciaddr: 0.0.0.0          yiaddr: 10.0.2.1
```

Basic ESM Configuration on BSA

```
siaddr: 192.0.2.4      giaddr: 0.0.0.0
chaddr: ca:01:08:10:00:08  xid: 0xfc8

DHCP options:
[53] Message type: Offer
--snip--

25 2009/12/15 13:00:36.46 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base SVCNMR
"SVCNMR: RX DHCP Packet
  VPLS 200, SAP 1/1/4:200

  BootRequest to UDP port 67
  ciaddr: 0.0.0.0      yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
  siaddr: 0.0.0.0      giaddr: 0.0.0.0
  chaddr: ca:01:08:10:00:08  xid: 0xfc8

  DHCP options:
  [53] Message type: Request
  --snip--

26 2009/12/15 13:00:36.46 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base SVCNMR
"SVCNMR: TX DHCP Packet
  flooding in VPLS 200

  BootRequest to UDP port 67
  ciaddr: 0.0.0.0      yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
  siaddr: 0.0.0.0      giaddr: 0.0.0.0
  chaddr: ca:01:08:10:00:08  xid: 0xfc8

  DHCP options:
  [53] Message type: Request
  --snip--

27 2009/12/15 13:00:36.47 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base SVCNMR
"SVCNMR: RX DHCP Packet
  VPLS 200, spoke-sdp 12:200

  BootReply to UDP port 68
  ciaddr: 0.0.0.0      yiaddr: 10.0.2.1
  siaddr: 192.0.2.4    giaddr: 0.0.0.0
  chaddr: ca:01:08:10:00:08  xid: 0xfc8

  DHCP options:
  [53] Message type: Ack
  --snip--

28 2009/12/15 13:00:36.46 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base SVCNMR
"SVCNMR: TX DHCP Packet
  VPLS 200, SAP 1/1/4:200

  BootReply to UDP port 68
  ciaddr: 0.0.0.0      yiaddr: 10.0.2.1
  siaddr: 192.0.2.4    giaddr: 0.0.0.0
  chaddr: ca:01:08:10:00:08  xid: 0xfc8

  DHCP options:
  [53] Message type: Ack
  --snip--
```

DHCP relay is enabled in service IES-200 on BSR.

A:BSR# debug router ip dhcp mode egr-ingr-and-dropped

A:BSR#

*A:BSR#

17 2009/12/15 13:00:36.34 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base PIP

"PIP: DHCP

instance 1 (Base), interface index 6 (int-host-2),
received DHCP Boot Request on Interface int-host-2 (1/1/2) Port 67

H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb) H/W Address Length: 6
ciaddr: 0.0.0.0 yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
siaddr: 0.0.0.0 giaddr: 0.0.0.0
chaddr: ca:01:08:10:00:08 xid: 0xfc8

DHCP options:

[53] Message type: Discover

--snip--"

18 2009/12/15 13:00:36.34 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base PIP

"PIP: DHCP

instance 1 (Base),
transmitted DHCP Boot Request to 192.0.2.4 Port 67

H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb) H/W Address Length: 6
ciaddr: 0.0.0.0 yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
siaddr: 0.0.0.0 giaddr: 10.0.2.254
chaddr: ca:01:08:10:00:08 xid: 0xfc8

DHCP options:

[53] Message type: Discover

--snip--"

19 2009/12/15 13:00:36.35 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base PIP

"PIP: DHCP

instance 1 (Base),
received DHCP Boot Reply on 192.0.2.4 Port 67

H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb) H/W Address Length: 6
ciaddr: 0.0.0.0 yiaddr: 10.0.2.1
siaddr: 192.0.2.4 giaddr: 10.0.2.254
chaddr: ca:01:08:10:00:08 xid: 0xfc8

DHCP options:

[53] Message type: Offer

--snip--"

20 2009/12/15 13:00:36.35 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base PIP

"PIP: DHCP

instance 1 (Base), interface index 6 (int-host-2),
transmitted DHCP Boot Reply to Interface int-host-2 (spoke-21:200) Port 68

H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb) H/W Address Length: 6
ciaddr: 0.0.0.0 yiaddr: 10.0.2.1
siaddr: 192.0.2.4 giaddr: 0.0.0.0
chaddr: ca:01:08:10:00:08 xid: 0xfc8

DHCP options:

[53] Message type: Offer

Basic ESM Configuration on BSA

```
--snip--"

21 2009/12/15 13:00:36.47 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base PIP
"PIP: DHCP
instance 1 (Base), interface index 6 (int-host-2),
    received DHCP Boot Request on Interface int-host-2 (1/1/2) Port 67

    H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb)  H/W Address Length: 6
    ciaddr: 0.0.0.0           yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
    siaddr: 0.0.0.0           giaddr: 0.0.0.0
    chaddr: ca:01:08:10:00:08  xid: 0xfc8

    DHCP options:
    [53] Message type: Request
--snip--"

22 2009/12/15 13:00:36.47 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base PIP
"PIP: DHCP
instance 1 (Base),
    transmitted DHCP Boot Request to 192.0.2.4 Port 67

    H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb)  H/W Address Length: 6
    ciaddr: 0.0.0.0           yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
    siaddr: 0.0.0.0           giaddr: 10.0.2.254
    chaddr: ca:01:08:10:00:08  xid: 0xfc8

    DHCP options:
    [53] Message type: Request
--snip--"

23 2009/12/15 13:00:36.47 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base PIP
"PIP: DHCP
instance 1 (Base),
    received DHCP Boot Reply on 192.0.2.4 Port 67

    H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb)  H/W Address Length: 6
    ciaddr: 0.0.0.0           yiaddr: 10.0.2.1
    siaddr: 192.0.2.4         giaddr: 10.0.2.254
    chaddr: ca:01:08:10:00:08  xid: 0xfc8

    DHCP options:
    [53] Message type: Ack
--snip--"

24 2009/12/15 13:00:36.47 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base PIP
"PIP: DHCP
instance 1 (Base), interface index 6 (int-host-2),
    transmitted DHCP Boot Reply to Interface int-host-2 (spoke-21:200) Port 68

    H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb)  H/W Address Length: 6
    ciaddr: 0.0.0.0           yiaddr: 10.0.2.1
    siaddr: 192.0.2.4         giaddr: 0.0.0.0
    chaddr: ca:01:08:10:00:08  xid: 0xfc8

    DHCP options:
    [53] Message type: Ack
--snip--"
```

The number of snooped/forwarded/dropped/proxied DHCP packets could be checked using the **show service id 200 dhcp statistics** command.

```
A:BSA# show service id 200 dhcp statistics
=====
DHCP Statistics, service 200
=====
Client Packets Snooped           : 2
Client Packets Forwarded         : 2
Client Packets Dropped           : 0
Client Packets Proxied (RADIUS)  : 0
Client Packets Proxied (Lease-Split) : 0
Server Packets Snooped           : 2
Server Packets Forwarded         : 2
Server Packets Dropped           : 0
DHCP RELEASEs Spoofed           : 0
DHCP FORCERENEWs Spoofed        : 0
=====
A:BSA#
```

The connectivity of Host-2 can be verified with the **show service id 200 subscriber-hosts** command. Different options can be used to filter output of the command.

```
A:BSA# show service id 200 subscriber-hosts detail
=====
Subscriber Host table
=====
Sap      IP Address      MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin
Subscriber
-----
1/1/4:200      10.0.2.1        ca:01:08:10:00:08 N/A      DHCP
sub-id-1
-----
Sub Profile      : sub-profile-1
SLA Profile      : sla-profile-2
App Profile      : N/A
-----
Number of subscriber hosts : 1
=====
A:BSA#
```

DHCP lease state can be verified with the **show service id 200 dhcp lease-state** command. Different options can be used to filter output of the command.

```
A:BSA# show service id 200 dhcp lease-state detail
=====
DHCP lease states for service 200
=====
Service ID           : 200
IP Address           : 10.0.2.1
Client HW Address    : ca:01:08:10:00:08
SAP                  : 1/1/4:200
Remaining Lifetime   : 09d23h44m
Persistence Key      : N/A
Sub-Ident            : "sub-id-1"
Sub-Profile-String   : "sub-profile-1"
SLA-Profile-String   : "sla-profile-2"
--snip--
Sub-Ident origin     : Radius
Strings origin       : Radius
Lease Info origin    : DHCP
--snip--
Radius User-Name     : "ca:01:08:10:00:08"
-----
Number of lease states : 1
=====
A:BSA#
```

Host-3 Setup Debug

The Host-3 setup process is presented in [Figure 84](#).

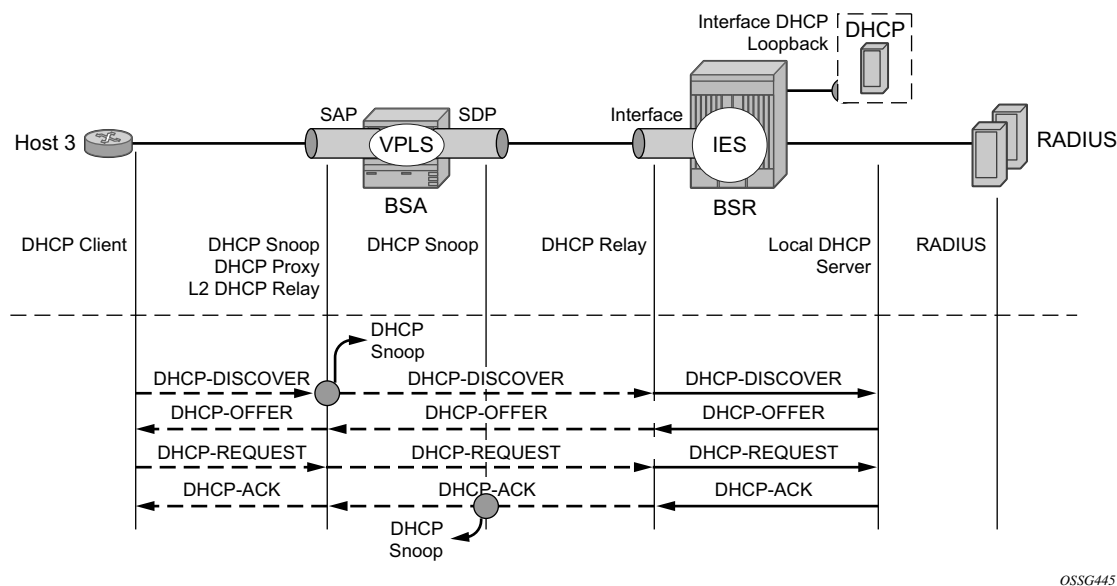


Figure 84: Host-3 Setup Process

Host-3 sends DHCP a discover message in VLAN 300 to BSA. Host-3 receives all parameters from the DHCP server using pre-configured Option 254. A DHCP discover message is flooded in VPLS service and reaches IP interface on BSA where DHCP relay is configured. The session setup process can be represented using debug commands.

```
A:BSA# debug service id 300 dhcp mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
A:BSA# debug service id 300 dhcp detail-level medium
*A:BSA#
33 2009/12/15 13:02:34.39 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base SVCMMGR
"SVCMMGR: RX DHCP Packet
  VPLS 300, SAP 1/1/4:300

  BootRequest to UDP port 67
  ciaddr: 0.0.0.0          yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
  siaddr: 0.0.0.0          giaddr: 0.0.0.0
  chaddr: ca:02:02:d0:00:08  xid: 0x2a6

  DHCP options:
  [53] Message type: Discover
--snip--
"
34 2009/12/15 13:02:34.38 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base SVCMMGR
"SVCMMGR: TX DHCP Packet
  flooding in VPLS 300

  BootRequest to UDP port 67
```

Basic ESM Configuration on BSA

```
ciaddr: 0.0.0.0          yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
siaddr: 0.0.0.0          giaddr: 0.0.0.0
chaddr: ca:02:02:d0:00:08  xid: 0x2a6

DHCP options:
[53] Message type: Discover
--snip--
"
35 2009/12/15 13:02:34.40 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base SVCNMR
"SVCNMR: RX DHCP Packet
  VPLS 300, spoke-sdp 12:300

BootReply to UDP port 68
ciaddr: 0.0.0.0          yiaddr: 10.0.3.1
siaddr: 192.0.2.4        giaddr: 0.0.0.0
chaddr: ca:02:02:d0:00:08  xid: 0x2a6

DHCP options:
[53] Message type: Offer
--snip--
"
36 2009/12/15 13:02:34.40 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base SVCNMR
"SVCNMR: TX DHCP Packet
  VPLS 300, SAP 1/1/4:300

BootReply to UDP port 68
ciaddr: 0.0.0.0          yiaddr: 10.0.3.1
siaddr: 192.0.2.4        giaddr: 0.0.0.0
chaddr: ca:02:02:d0:00:08  xid: 0x2a6

DHCP options:
[53] Message type: Offer
--snip--
"
37 2009/12/15 13:02:34.52 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base SVCNMR
"SVCNMR: RX DHCP Packet
  VPLS 300, SAP 1/1/4:300

BootRequest to UDP port 67
ciaddr: 0.0.0.0          yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
siaddr: 0.0.0.0          giaddr: 0.0.0.0
chaddr: ca:02:02:d0:00:08  xid: 0x2a6

DHCP options:
[53] Message type: Request
--snip--
"
38 2009/12/15 13:02:34.52 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base SVCNMR
"SVCNMR: TX DHCP Packet
  flooding in VPLS 300

BootRequest to UDP port 67
ciaddr: 0.0.0.0          yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
siaddr: 0.0.0.0          giaddr: 0.0.0.0
chaddr: ca:02:02:d0:00:08  xid: 0x2a6

DHCP options:
[53] Message type: Request
--snip--
```



```

"
39 2009/12/15 13:02:34.53 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base SVCMMGR
"SVCMMGR: RX DHCP Packet
  VPLS 300, spoke-sdp 12:300

  BootReply to UDP port 68
  ciaddr: 0.0.0.0          yiaddr: 10.0.3.1
  siaddr: 192.0.2.4        giaddr: 0.0.0.0
  chaddr: ca:02:02:d0:00:08  xid: 0x2a6

  DHCP options:
    [53] Message type: Ack
--snip--
"
40 2009/12/15 13:02:34.53 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base SVCMMGR
"SVCMMGR: TX DHCP Packet
  VPLS 300, SAP 1/1/4:300

  BootReply to UDP port 68
  ciaddr: 0.0.0.0          yiaddr: 10.0.3.1
  siaddr: 192.0.2.4        giaddr: 0.0.0.0
  chaddr: ca:02:02:d0:00:08  xid: 0x2a6

  DHCP options:
    [53] Message type: Ack
--snip--

```

DHCP relay is enabled in service IES-300 on the BSR.

```

A:BSR# debug router ip dhcp mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
*A:BSR#
29 2009/12/15 13:02:34.39 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base PIP
"PIP: DHCP
instance 1 (Base), interface index 7 (int-VoD),
  received DHCP Boot Request on Interface int-VoD (1/1/2) Port 67

  H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb)  H/W Address Length: 6
  ciaddr: 0.0.0.0          yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
  siaddr: 0.0.0.0          giaddr: 0.0.0.0
  chaddr: ca:02:02:d0:00:08  xid: 0x2a6

  DHCP options:
    [53] Message type: Discover
--snip--
30 2009/12/15 13:02:34.39 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base PIP
"PIP: DHCP
instance 1 (Base),
  transmitted DHCP Boot Request to 192.0.2.4 Port 67

  H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb)  H/W Address Length: 6
  ciaddr: 0.0.0.0          yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
  siaddr: 0.0.0.0          giaddr: 10.0.3.254
  chaddr: ca:02:02:d0:00:08  xid: 0x2a6

  DHCP options:
    [53] Message type: Discover
--snip--
"

```

Basic ESM Configuration on BSA

```
31 2009/12/15 13:02:34.39 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base PIP
"PIP: DHCP
instance 1 (Base),
    received DHCP Boot Reply on 192.0.2.4 Port 67

    H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb)  H/W Address Length: 6
    ciaddr: 0.0.0.0            yiaddr: 10.0.3.1
    siaddr: 192.0.2.4          giaddr: 10.0.3.254
    chaddr: ca:02:02:d0:00:08  xid: 0x2a6

    DHCP options:
    [53] Message type: Offer
--snip--
"
32 2009/12/15 13:02:34.39 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base PIP
"PIP: DHCP
instance 1 (Base), interface index 7 (int-VoD),
    transmitted DHCP Boot Reply to Interface int-VoD (spoke-21:300) Port 68

    H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb)  H/W Address Length: 6
    ciaddr: 0.0.0.0            yiaddr: 10.0.3.1
    siaddr: 192.0.2.4          giaddr: 0.0.0.0
    chaddr: ca:02:02:d0:00:08  xid: 0x2a6

    DHCP options:
    [53] Message type: Offer
--snip--
"
33 2009/12/15 13:02:34.53 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base PIP
"PIP: DHCP
instance 1 (Base), interface index 7 (int-VoD),
    received DHCP Boot Request on Interface int-VoD (1/1/2) Port 67

    H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb)  H/W Address Length: 6
    ciaddr: 0.0.0.0            yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
    siaddr: 0.0.0.0            giaddr: 0.0.0.0
    chaddr: ca:02:02:d0:00:08  xid: 0x2a6

    DHCP options:
    [53] Message type: Request
--snip--
"
34 2009/12/15 13:02:34.53 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base PIP
"PIP: DHCP
instance 1 (Base),
    transmitted DHCP Boot Request to 192.0.2.4 Port 67

    H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb)  H/W Address Length: 6
    ciaddr: 0.0.0.0            yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
    siaddr: 0.0.0.0            giaddr: 10.0.3.254
    chaddr: ca:02:02:d0:00:08  xid: 0x2a6

    DHCP options:
    [53] Message type: Request
--snip--
"
35 2009/12/15 13:02:34.53 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base PIP
"PIP: DHCP
instance 1 (Base),
```

```

received DHCP Boot Reply on 192.0.2.4 Port 67

H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb)  H/W Address Length: 6
ciaddr: 0.0.0.0           yiaddr: 10.0.3.1
siaddr: 192.0.2.4         giaddr: 10.0.3.254
chaddr: ca:02:02:d0:00:08  xid: 0x2a6

DHCP options:
[53] Message type: Ack
--snip--
36 2009/12/15 13:02:34.53 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base PIP
"PIP: DHCP
instance 1 (Base), interface index 7 (int-VoD),
transmitted DHCP Boot Reply to Interface int-VoD (spoke-21:300) Port 68

H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb)  H/W Address Length: 6
ciaddr: 0.0.0.0           yiaddr: 10.0.3.1
siaddr: 192.0.2.4         giaddr: 0.0.0.0
chaddr: ca:02:02:d0:00:08  xid: 0x2a6

DHCP options:
[53] Message type: Ack
--snip--"

```

The number of snooped/forwarded/dropped/proxied DHCP packets can be verified with the using **show service id 300 dhcp statistics** command.

```

A:BSA# show service id 300 dhcp statistics
=====
DHCP Statistics, service 300
=====
Client Packets Snooped           : 2
Client Packets Forwarded         : 2
Client Packets Dropped           : 0
Client Packets Proxied (RADIUS)  : 0
Client Packets Proxied (Lease-Split) : 0
Server Packets Snooped           : 2
Server Packets Forwarded         : 2
Server Packets Dropped           : 0
DHCP RELEASEs Spoofed           : 0
DHCP FORCERENEWS Spoofed        : 0
=====
A:BSA#

```

The connectivity of Host-3 can be verified with the **show service id 300 subscriber-hosts** command. Different options can be used to filter output of a command.

```

A:BSA# show service id 300 subscriber-hosts detail
=====
Subscriber Host table
=====
Sap          IP Address      MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin
Subscriber
-----

```

Basic ESM Configuration on BSA

```
1/1/4:300          10.0.3.1          ca:02:02:d0:00:08 N/A          DHCP
  sub-id-1
-----
Sub Profile       : sub-profile-1
SLA Profile       : sla-profile-3
App Profile       : N/A
-----
Number of subscriber hosts : 1
=====
A:BSA#
```

The DHCP lease state could be checked with the **show service id 300 dhcp lease-state** command. Different options can be used to filter output of a command.

```
A:BSA# show service id 300 dhcp lease-state detail
=====
DHCP lease states for service 300
=====
Service ID       : 300
IP Address       : 10.0.3.1
Client HW Address : ca:02:02:d0:00:08
SAP              : 1/1/4:300
Remaining Lifetime : 09d23h52m
Persistence Key   : N/A
Sub-Ident        : "sub-id-1"
Sub-Profile-String : "sub-profile-1"
SLA-Profile-String : "sla-profile-3"
--snip--
Sub-Ident origin  : DHCP
Strings origin    : DHCP
Lease Info origin : DHCP
--snip--
Radius User-Name   : ""
-----
Number of lease states : 1
=====
A:BSA#
```

Advanced Topics

Limiting Number of Subscribers

This topic is discussed in DHCP hosts. Refer to [IPv4 DHCP Hosts on page 929](#) for detailed information.

```

vpls 100 customer 1 create
--snip--
sap 1/1/4:100 split-horizon-group "RSHG-1" create
--snip--
sub-sla-mgmt
--snip--
multi-sub-sap 2

```

Limiting Number of Lease States

This topic is discussed in DHCP hosts. Refer to [IPv4 DHCP Hosts on page 929](#) for detailed information.

```

vpls 100 customer 1 create
--snip--
sap 1/1/4:100 split-horizon-group "RSHG-1" create
dhcp
lease-populate 400

```

Limiting Number of Host Per SLA-Profile

This topic is discussed in DHCP hosts. Refer to [IPv4 DHCP Hosts on page 929](#) for detailed information.

```

subscriber-mgmt
sla-profile "sla-profile-1" create
host-limit 1 [remove-oldest]

```

Subscriber Host Connectivity Verification

This topic is discussed in DHCP hosts. Refer to [IPv4 DHCP Hosts on page 929](#) for detailed information.

```
vp1s 100 customer 1 create
  sap 1/1/4:100 split-horizon-group "RSHG-1" create
    host-connectivity-verify source-ip 10.1.0.253 source-mac 1e:54:ff:00:00:00
interval 1 action remove
```

```
A:BSA# show service id 100 host-connectivity-verify statistics
=====
Host connectivity check statistics
=====
Svc   SapId/      DestIp      Timestamp      Time since   Oper
Id    SdpId      Address     last-reply/conn-lost  Reply/Lost  State
-----
100   1/1/4:100  10.0.1.1    12/15/2009 09:04:06  0d 00:00:11 Up
-----
1 host-connectivity states : 1 Up / 0 Down / 0 Retry pending
=====
A:BSA#
```

Lease Split

This topic is discussed in DHCP hosts. Refer to [IPv4 DHCP Hosts on page 929](#) for detailed information.

```
vp1s 100 customer 1 create
  --snip--
  sap 1/1/4:100 split-horizon-group "RSHG-1" create
    dhcp
      proxy-server
      lease-time hrs 1
```

DHCP Option 82

This topic is discussed in DHCP hosts. Refer to [IPv4 DHCP Hosts on page 929](#) for detailed information.

Conclusion

This note provides configuration and troubleshooting commands for Bridged CO model.

Diameter Application NASREQ

In This Chapter

This section provides information about Diameter Application NASREQ.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 494](#)
- [Overview on page 495](#)
- [Configuration on page 499](#)
- [Conclusion on page 508](#)

Applicability

This configuration note is applicable to the 7750 SR. The configuration was tested on release 13.0.R3.

Overview

NASREQ is defined in RFC 7155, *Diameter Network Access Server Application*, (obsoletes RFC 4005). Because NASREQ is a Diameter application, it uses the Diameter base protocol defined in RFC 6733, *Diameter Base Protocol*. The purpose of NASREQ in 7750 SR Release 13.0 is to provide subscriber authentication and authorization. NASREQ provides functionality that is also available for RADIUS, but uses the Diameter protocol instead.

NASREQ complements the other Diameter applications supported in the SR OS:

- Gx provides advanced authorization capabilities for subscribers and usage monitoring, and interfaces with a Policy and Charging Rules Function (PCRF).
- Gy or Diameter Credit Control Application (DCCA) provides on-line charging functionality, and interfaces with an On-line Charging Server (OCS).
- NASREQ provides subscriber authentication and authorization, and interfaces with an AAA server.

These three Diameter applications use the Diameter base protocol, which is described in the [Establishing a Diameter Peering Session on page 823](#) chapter of this Advanced Configuration Guide. That chapter also describes the configuration of the Diameter base protocol, which is very similar for all supported Diameter applications, and is not repeated in this chapter.

When a subscriber connects to the BNG, NASREQ is triggered, as would have been the case with RADIUS authentication. The following figure shows a sample call flow for NASREQ and Gx applications when an IPoE/IPv4 subscriber connects. The supported NASREQ messages are Authentication and Authorization Request (AAR) and Authentication and Authorization Answer (AAA), and the BNG assumes that the AAA server does not maintain session state. Therefore, there is no need for the BNG to send a message to the AAA server to indicate when the subscriber has ended the session; for example, by sending a DHCP release. The BNG negotiates with the AAA server that it expects a stateless behavior by sending the Auth-Session-State AVP with value NO_STATE_MAINTAINED (1) as defined in RFC 6733, and the AAA server has to confirm that by sending back the AVP with the same value.

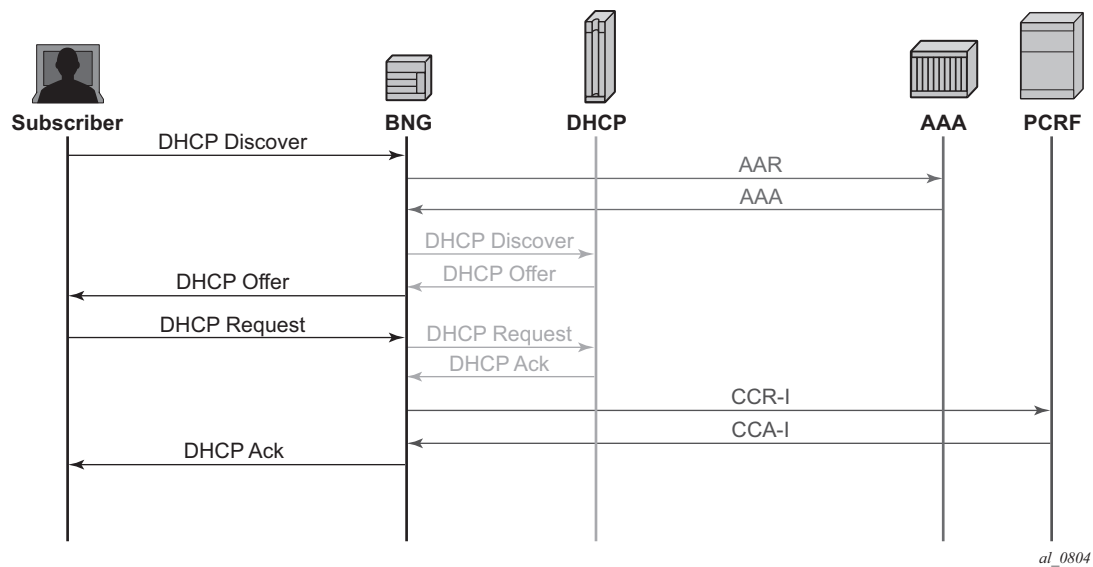


Figure 85: NASREQ Trigger

As shown in [Figure 85](#), NASREQ is triggered when the DHCP discover is received, while Gx, using the Credit Control Request (CCR-I) and Credit Control Answer (CCA-I) messages, is triggered at the end, after the IP address allocation.

After the subscriber is authenticated, no re-authentication is required, except for IPoE subscribers, when there is a DHCP renew and the relay agent information changes.

Supported NASREQ AVPs in AAA are listed in the **7750 SR Gx AVPs Reference Guide**, and include the following AVPs:

- Standard NASREQ authorization AVPs supported:

AVP #	AVP Name
7	Framed-Protocol
8	Framed-IP-Address
9	Framed-IP-Netmask
22	Framed-Route
25	Class
88	Framed-Pool

AVP #	AVP Name
97	Framed-IPv6-Prefix
99	Framed-IPv6-Route
100	Framed-IPv6-Pool

- Vendor-specific NASREQ authorization AVPs supported:

AVP #	AVP Name
v-6527-9	Alc-Primary-DNS
v-6527-10	Alc-Secondary-Dns
v-6527-11	Alc-Subsc-ID-Str
v-6527-12	Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str (Gx)
v-6527-13	Alc-SLA-Prof-Str (Gx)
v-6527-16	Alc-ANCP-Str
v-6527-17	Alc-Retail-Serv-Id
v-6527-18	Alc-Default-Router
v-6527-28	Alc-Int-Dest-Id-Str (Gx)
v-6527-29	Alc-Primary-Nbns
v-6527-30	Alc-Secondary-Nbns
v-6527-31	Alc-MSAP-Serv-Id
v-6527-32	Alc-MSAP-Policy

AVP #	AVP Name
v-6527-33	Alc-MSAP-Interface
v-6527-45	Alc-App-Prof-Str (Gx)
v-6527-99	Alc-IPv6-Address
v-6527-105	Alc-IPv6-Primary-Dns
v-6527-106	Alc-IPv6-Secondary-Dns
v-6527-131	Alc-Delegated-IPv6-Pool
v-6527-161	Alc-Delegated-IPv6-Prefix- Length
v-6527-174	Alc-Lease-Time
v-6527-181	Alc-SLAAC-IPv6-Pool

All the NASREQ AVPs are also supported by RADIUS, and their meaning is described in the RADIUS AVP Reference Guide. Most of the NASREQ AVPs are related to IP address assignment to the subscriber and service selection in the case of managed SAPs and/or wholesale/retail. These AVPs are not available in Gx, because Gx is triggered after service selection and IP address assignment. The four AVPs marked with **Gx** in the preceding list are supported by both NASREQ and Gx. If both the AAA server and PCRF return the same attribute, but with a different value, then the value from the PCRF will be used to create the subscriber.

Overview

The AAA server authenticates a subscriber based on a password. For DHCP, the password is configured in the BNG because DHCP cannot provide a subscriber password, and for PPP, the authentication is performed through PAP or CHAP.

Configuration

Configuration of NASREQ is performed in four steps:

- Step 1.** Configure a Diameter peer policy.
- Step 2.** Configure a Diameter application policy.
- Step 3.** Assign the Diameter application policy.
- Step 4.** Apply a Python policy (optional).

In the first step, the Diameter peer policy configures the Diameter base protocol and is described in the [Establishing a Diameter Peering Session on page 823](#) chapter. Note that it is possible to enable both Gx and NASREQ at the same time in one Diameter peer policy:

```
configure aaa diameter-peer-policy "DSC.NASREQ.Gx.39.122"
    applications gx nasreq
```

In this example, the same Diameter connection will be used for both Gx and NASREQ.

In the second step, the Diameter application policy configures the NASREQ application. An example configuration of a Diameter application policy for NASREQ follows:

```
configure subscriber-mgmt diameter-application-policy "DSC.NASREQ"
    description "Diameter application policy for Nasreq to DSC 39.122"
    application nasreq
    diameter-peer-policy "DSC.NASREQ.Gx.39.122"
    nasreq
        password "5bBaQIsc4It1Ji/WjmPu2oVb2Bg883Om3ex1mCs8xYE" hash2
        user-name-format circuit-id
        user-name-operation append-domain domain "MyDomain"
        include-avp
            circuit-id
            nas-port-id prefix-type user-string prefix-string "MyBNG"\
                suffix-type user-string suffix-string "Belgium"
            nas-port-type
            remote-id
        exit
    exit
```

The application nasreq has to be specified. Contrary to the Diameter peer policy, only one application can be enabled in the Diameter application policy. If both Gx and NASREQ need to use the same Diameter peer policy, two Diameter application policies have to be configured, both referring to the same Diameter peer policy with the command diameter-peer-policy.

The password command configures the password to be used for IPoE subscribers toward the AAA server. For PPP subscribers, the subscriber credentials will come from the PAP or CHAP authentication.

The AAA server needs the identity of the subscriber, which is in the User-Name AVP. The username can be configured with the command `user-name-format`. Options for the username format are, for example:

- MAC address (with or without `giaddr`),
- circuit-id from the relay agent information (for example, DHCP Option 82 for IPv4),
- information from DHCP option 60 and 61 (which contain the Client-id and Vendor-Class information),
- and NAS port Id.

The username can be further formatted with the command `user-name-operation`, which applies to both IPoE and PPP subscribers. This command allows you to add, remove, or replace a domain name. The domain name is defined as the part of the username that follows the first `@` symbol in the username; for example, if the username is `MyName@MyISP.com`, then the domain name in this example is `MyISP.com`. If a domain name is added, and there is already a domain name, then the second domain name will be added after the first one, and a dot (.) will be used as separator between the 2 domain names. For example, with the preceding configuration, if the circuit-id is `1/1/1`, then the resulting username will be `1/1/1@MyDomain`, and if the circuit-id is `1/1/1@DSLAM1`, then the username will be `1/1/1@DSLAM1.MyDomain`.

The following extra AVPs can be included with the command `include-avp`:

- circuit-id and remote-id from the relay agent information (for example, Option 82 in DHCP),
- nas-port,
- nas-port-id,
- called-station-id,
- calling-station-id.

The `nas-port-id` can include a prefix string and a suffix string or circuit-id/remote-id as suffix. The value for `nas-port-type` can be specified, but if `nas-port-type` is enabled without a value, then it will be derived from the type of the actual `nas-port-id`. In the preceding example, the `nas-port-id` is prepended with the string `MyBNG` and the string `Belgium` is appended to the `nas-port-id`. If the `nas-port-id` is, for example, `1/1/4:3001` (that is the subscriber is connecting to SAP `1/1/4:3001`), then the eventual `nas-port-id` value with the preceding configuration will be `MyBNG 1/1/4:3001Belgium` and the `nas-port-type` will be 15, indicating Ethernet.

If an AVP contains a MAC address, the format of the MAC address can be specified as follows:

```
configure subscriber-mgmt diameter-application-policy \
    "DSC.NASREQ" nasreq mac-format
- mac-format <mac-format>
- no mac-format

<mac-format>          : like ab:   for 00:0c:f1:99:85:b8
```



```

or   XY-   for 00-0C-F1-99-85-B8
or   mmmm. for 0002.03aa.abff
or   xx     for 000cf19985b8

```

The format will be applied to all AVPs containing MAC addresses; for example, User-Name and Calling-Station-id AVPs.

If more than one AAA server is used for redundancy, the Diameter peer policy has to be configured with a peer per AAA server, and in the Diameter application policy, the failure handling has to be configured. Recommended configuration options for failure handling are:

- if there is one AAA, and new sessions have to be accepted when the AAA is down, then configure the Diameter application policy as follows:

```
on-failure failover disabled handling continue
```
- if there is one AAA, and new sessions have to be rejected when the AAA is down, then configure the Diameter application policy as follows:

```
on-failure failover disabled handling terminate
```
- if there are two or more AAA servers, configure the Diameter application policy as follows:

```
on-failure failover enabled handling retry-and-terminate
```

The TX-timer for NASREQ is also configurable and is 10 seconds by default. The TX-timer is the time that the BNG waits to get an answer from the AAA server before applying the configured failure handling.

In the third and last mandatory step, the Diameter application policy has to be applied using the command `diameter-auth-policy` to any of the following:

- group interface in a VPRN or IES
- local user database (LUDB)
- capture SAP

The fourth configuration step is optional and allows a Python script to modify the AAR and AAA messages. A sample script that copies the User-Name AVP into the Subscription-Id AVP is as follows:

```

file type cf3:/dsc_subscriber_id
File: dsc_subscriber_id
-----
from binascii import *
from alc import diameter

def getint_b2a_hex(val):
    return int(b2a_hex(val),16)

def byte_to_binary(n):
    return ''.join(str((n & (1 << i)) and 1) for i in reversed(range(8)))

```

Configuration

```
def hex_to_binary(h):
    return ''.join(byte_to_binary(ord(b)) for b in unhexlify(h))

def checkbitset(byte, index):
    return ((byte & (1 << index)) != 0)

def checkRequestOrReply():
    if checkbitset(int(hex_to_binary(b2a_hex(diameter.flags))), 7) is True:
        return 'R'
    else:
        return 'A'

# prints only for debug purpose
# print "Script Name - subscr_avp_modify.py add Subscription-ID"

if getint_b2a_hex(diameter.code) == 265 and checkRequestOrReply() == 'R':
    try:
        username = diameter.get_avps(1, 0)[0][1]
        if username != "":
            # prints only for debug purpose
            # print "username is " + str(username)
            diameter.set_grouped_avps(443, 0, [('@', { (450, 0): [('@', '\x00\x00\x00\x04')],
            (444, 0): [('@', str(username))]}]))
    except Exception, err: print "Python FAILED to fetch username"

=====
```

The preceding Python script can be configured in a Python policy as follows:

```
configure python python-script "dsc_subscriber_id" create
    primary-url "cf3:/dsc_subscriber_id"
    no shutdown
exit

configure python python-policy "dsc_subscriber_id" create
    description "add Subscription-Id to NASREQ AAR"
    diameter aar direction egress script "dsc_subscriber_id"
exit
```

The Python policy applies the script to the AAR messages in the egress direction. In a similar way, Python scripts can also be applied to AAA messages in the ingress direction.

After the Python policy has been configured, it has to be applied in the Diameter peer policy:

```
configure aaa diameter-peer-policy "DSC.NASREQ.Gx.39.122" \
    python-policy "dsc_subscriber_id"
```

With this configuration, all Diameter application policies that are using this Diameter peer policy will have their AAR messages (in the egress direction) modified, according to the Python script.

Troubleshooting

The operational state of the Diameter application policy can be shown with the following command. The command shows configuration details, as well as where the policy is applied. In the output, the policy is applied to the group interface **to_STC** in VPRN 10001 and to the capture SAP 1/1/5:* in VPLS 20002.

```
show subscriber-mgmt diameter-application-policy "DSC.NASREQ"
=====
DIAMETER application policy "DSC.NASREQ"
=====
Description                : Diameter application policy for Nasreq to DSC 39.
                           : 122
Session failover           : enabled
Failover handling          : terminate
Peer policy                : DSC.NASREQ.Gx.39.122
Application                : nasreq
Tx timer (s)              : 10
Last management change     : 06/18/2015 12:58:47
-----
NASREQ
-----
Include AVP                : circuit-id
                           : remote-id
                           : called-station-id
                           : calling-station-id
                           : nas-port-id
                           : nas-port-type

Calling-Station-Id type    : sap-string
NAS-Port-Id prefix type    : user-string
NAS-Port-Id prefix        : MyBNG
NAS-Port-Id suffix type    : user-string
NAS-Port-Id suffix        : Belgium
NAS-Port-Type type        : standard

User name format           : circuit-id
User name operation        : append-domain
Domain name                : MyDomain
MAC address format        : aa:
Last management change     : 06/18/2015 12:58:56
=====
No interfaces found using diameter-application-policy "DSC.NASREQ".
=====
Interfaces using diameter-auth-policy "DSC.NASREQ"
=====
Interface-name             Service-id Type
-----
to_STC                     10001      VPRN
-----
No. of interfaces: 1
=====
VPLS SAP's with diameter-auth-policy "DSC.NASREQ"
-----
Service    SAP
-----
```

Troubleshooting

```
20002      1/1/5:*
```

```
-----  
No. of SAP's: 1  
-----
```

Debugging of NASREQ is performed at the layer of the Diameter base protocol where the NASREQ specific messages have to be enabled. For example, to debug NASREQ, a debug configuration could be as follows:

```
debug  
  diameter  
    detail-level high  
    no dest-realm  
    no diameter-peer  
    no diameter-peer-policy  
    message-type aar aaa  
    no origin-realm  
  exit  
exit
```

The **message-type aar** and **aaa** are specific for NASREQ. If a Python script is used, the Python script could be debugged as follows:

```
debug  
  python  
    python-script "dsc_subscriber_id"  
    script-all-info  
  exit  
exit  
exit
```

Following is a debug output example of a DHCP Discover, AAR, and AAA for the previous configuration example.

```
69 2015/06/19 14:47:33.69 CET MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn10001 PIP  
"PIP: DHCP  
instance 16 (10001), interface index 3 (to_STC),  
  received DHCP Boot Request on Interface to_STC (1/1/4:3001) Port 67  
  
H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb)  H/W Address Length: 6  
ciaddr: 0.0.0.0           yiaddr: 0.0.0.0  
siaddr: 0.0.0.0           giaddr: 0.0.0.0  
chaddr: 00:10:95:00:00:01  xid: 0x11  
  
DHCP options:  
[82] Relay agent information: len = 23  
      [1] Circuit-id: 1/1/1  
      [2] Remote-id: stefaaansremote  
[53] Message type: Discover  
[57] Max msg size: 576  
[61] Client id: (hex) 01 00 10 95 00 00 01  
[51] Lease time: 60  
[12] Host name: client_Port //5/11-0-0
```

```

[55] Param request list: len = 5
      1 Subnet mask
      6 Domain name server
     15 Domain name
     33 Static route
     44 NETBIOS name server
[255] End

Hex Packet Dump:
01 01 06 00 00 00 00 11 00 00 80 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 10 95 00 00 01 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 10 95 00 00 01 33 04 00 00 00 3c 0c 16 63 6c 69 65 6e 74 5f 50 6f 72 74
20 2f 2f 35 2f 31 31 2d 30 2d 30 37 05 01 06 0f 21 2c 52 17 01 05 31 2f 31
2f 31 02 0e 73 74 65 66 61 61 6e 73 72 65 6d 6f 74 65 ff 00
"

70 2015/06/19 14:47:33.68 CET MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base Python Output
"Python Output: dsc_subscriber_id
"

71 2015/06/19 14:47:33.69 CET MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base Python Result
"Python Result: dsc_subscriber_id
Diameter AVP code 443, SET
    '('@', '\\x00\\x00\\x01\\xc2@\\x00\\x00\\x0c\\x00\\x00\\x00\\x04\\x00\\x00\\x01
\\xbc@\\x00\\x00\\x161/1/1@MyDomain\\x00\\x00') "
"

72 2015/06/19 14:47:33.69 CET MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn10000 DIAMETER
"DIAMETER: Message Transmission
AAR from [DSC.NASREQ.Gx.39.122, DSC.39.122] to 10.40.15.4:3868
Header
  ver 1 len 340 flags RP----- code 265
  app-id 1 hbh-id 15215 e2e-id 3204428864
AVPs
  session-Id (263) -M----- [39]
    data [31] (UTF8String) : wlangw-2.SRrealm;1434532511;259
  auth-appl-id (258) -M----- [12]
    data [4] (Unsigned32) : 1 : Nasreq
  origin-host (264) -M----- [24]
    data [16] (DiameterIdentity) : wlangw-2.SRrealm
  origin-realm (296) -M----- [15]
    data [7] (DiameterIdentity) : SRrealm
  destination-realm (283) -M----- [16]
    data [8] (DiameterIdentity) : dscrealm
  auth-request-type (274) -M----- [12]
    data [4] (Enumerated) : 3 : AUTHORIZE_AUTHENTICATE
  nas-port-id (87) -M----- [31]
    data [23] (UTF8String) : MyBNG 1/1/4:3001Belgium
  nas-port-type (61) -M----- [12]
    data [4] (Enumerated) : 15 : Ethernet
  origin-state-id (278) -M----- [12]

```

Troubleshooting

```
data [4] (Unsigned32) : 1434532511
user-name (1) -M----- [22]
data [14] (UTF8String) : 1/1/1@MyDomain
user-password (2) -M----- [16]
data [8] (OctetString) : 0x69 70 74 61 63 31 32 33
auth-session-state (277) -M----- [12]
data [4] (Enumerated) : 1 : NO_STATE_MAINTAINED
agent-circuit-id (1) VM----- [17]
vendor-id DSL_FORUM
data [5] (OctetString) : 0x31 2f 31 2f 31
agent-remote-id (2) VM----- [26]
vendor-id DSL_FORUM
data [14] (OctetString) : 0x73 74 65 66 61 61 6e 73 72 65 6d 6f 74 65
subscription-id (443) -M----- [44]
data [36] (Grouped)
  subscription-id-type (450) -M----- [12]
  data [4] (Enumerated) : 4 : private
  subscription-id-data (444) -M----- [22]
  data [14] (UTF8String) : 1/1/1@MyDomain

01 00 01 54 c0 00 01 09 00 00 00 01 00 00 3b 6f
be ff b4 40 00 00 01 07 40 00 00 27 77 6c 61 6e
67 77 2d 32 2e 53 52 72 65 61 6c 6d 3b 31 34 33
34 35 33 32 35 31 31 3b 32 35 39 00 00 00 01 02
40 00 00 0c 00 00 00 01 00 00 01 08 40 00 00 18
77 6c 61 6e 67 77 2d 32 2e 53 52 72 65 61 6c 6d
00 00 01 28 40 00 00 0f 53 52 72 65 61 6c 6d 00
00 00 01 1b 40 00 00 10 64 73 63 72 65 61 6c 6d
00 00 01 12 40 00 00 0c 00 00 00 03 00 00 00 57
40 00 00 1f 4d 79 42 4e 47 20 31 2f 31 2f 34 3a
33 30 30 31 42 65 6c 67 69 75 6d 00 00 00 00 3d
40 00 00 0c 00 00 00 0f 00 00 01 16 40 00 00 0c
55 81 3a 9f 00 00 00 01 40 00 00 16 31 2f 31 2f
31 40 4d 79 44 6f 6d 61 69 6e 00 00 00 00 00 02
40 00 00 10 69 70 74 61 63 31 32 33 00 00 01 15
40 00 00 0c 00 00 00 01 00 00 00 01 c0 00 00 11
00 00 0d e9 31 2f 31 2f 31 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 02
c0 00 00 1a 00 00 0d e9 73 74 65 66 61 61 6e 73
72 65 6d 6f 74 65 00 00 00 00 01 bb 40 00 00 2c
00 00 01 c2 40 00 00 0c 00 00 00 04 00 00 01 bc
40 00 00 16 31 2f 31 2f 31 40 4d 79 44 6f 6d 61
69 6e 00 00
"

73 2015/06/19 14:47:33.70 CET MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn10000 DIAMETER
"DIAMETER: Message Reception
AAA from 10.40.15.4:3868 to [DSC.NASREQ.Gx.39.122, DSC.39.122]
Header
  ver 1 len 160 flags -P----- code 265
  app-id 1 hbh-id 15215 e2e-id 3204428864
AVPs
  session-Id (263) -M----- [39]
  data [31] (UTF8String) : wlangw-2.SRrealm;1434532511;259
  origin-host (264) -M----- [22]
  data [14] (DiameterIdentity) : vm122.dscrealm
  origin-realm (296) -M----- [16]
  data [8] (DiameterIdentity) : dscrealm
  auth-appl-id (258) -M----- [12]
  data [4] (Unsigned32) : 1 : Nasreq
```

```

result-code (268) -M----- [12]
  data [4] (Unsigned32) : 2001 : DIAM_RESCODE_SUCCESS
auth-request-type (274) -M----- [12]
  data [4] (Enumerated) : 3 : AUTHORIZE_AUTHENTICATE
auth-session-state (277) -M----- [12]
  data [4] (Enumerated) : 1 : NO_STATE_MAINTAINED
origin-state-id (278) -M----- [12]
  data [4] (Unsigned32) : 1426768161

01 00 00 a0 40 00 01 09 00 00 00 01 00 00 3b 6f
be ff b4 40 00 00 01 07 40 00 00 27 77 6c 61 6e
67 77 2d 32 2e 53 52 72 65 61 6c 6d 3b 31 34 33
34 35 33 32 35 31 31 3b 32 35 39 00 00 00 01 08
40 00 00 16 76 6d 31 32 32 2e 64 73 63 72 65 61
6c 6d 00 00 00 00 01 28 40 00 00 10 64 73 63 72
65 61 6c 6d 00 00 01 02 40 00 00 0c 00 00 00 01
00 00 01 0c 40 00 00 0c 00 00 07 d1 00 00 01 12
40 00 00 0c 00 00 00 03 00 00 01 15 40 00 00 0c
00 00 00 01 00 00 01 16 40 00 00 0c 55 0a c1 21
"

```

Note that in the preceding example, the AAR contains a subscription-id AVP. This AVP is not included by default by the BNG, and also cannot be included by CLI, but it is added by the Python script `dsc_subscriber_id`.

Conclusion

This chapter describes NASREQ that provides subscriber authentication and authorization. NASREQ is based on Diameter, which is an evolution of RADIUS.

Diameter Inter-Chassis Redundancy

In This Chapter

This section provides information about Diameter inter-chassis redundancy.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 510](#)
- [Overview on page 511](#)
- [Configuration on page 520](#)
- [Conclusion on page 532](#)

Applicability

This chapter is applicable to 7750 SR.

The configuration was tested on release 13.0.R3.

Overview

A multi-homed broadband network gateway (BNG) setup consists of two physical BNGs, with one BNG providing redundancy for the other BNG (providing inter-chassis redundancy). To support Diameter for a multi-homed BNG setup, two solutions are possible:

1. Each physical BNG has a unique Diameter hostname/realm and establishes Diameter connections to its peers. This means that both physical BNGs have their Diameter connections up at the same time. This solution does not make use of the Diameter proxy supported by SR OS.
2. Using the SR OS Diameter proxy, both physical BNGs share the same Diameter hostname/realm, and only one physical BNG establishes a Diameter connection to its peers. In this way, the server only sees one logical BNG. The Diameter proxy is supported for the Gx and NASREQ Diameter applications.

With stateful Diameter applications, multiple messages are sent during a Diameter session. For instance, in the case of Gx, a single session has at least one credit control request-initial (CCR-I) message and one CCR-termination (CCR-T) message, and possibly also CCR-update (CCR-U) messages. With the first solution above, when a BNG switchover occurs during the session, the CCR-I and CCR-T messages are sent by different physical BNGs with different origin-host/realm. This might not be accepted by some policy and charging rules functions (PCRFs) that do not support a change of origin-host/realm during a session. With the second solution, all messages belonging to the same Diameter session will have the same origin-host/realm, irrespective of which BNG is active. However, having two devices deliberately configured with the same Diameter hostname and realm might confuse servers and Diameter Routing Agents (DRAs) as to where to send the Diameter messages.

With stateless Diameter applications, both solutions are suitable because only one message is sent during the Diameter session. There cannot be a change of origin-host/realm for a session when there is a BNG switchover.

The second solution, based on Diameter proxy, consists of three components as shown in [Figure 86](#):

- ESM
- Diameter client
- Diameter proxy

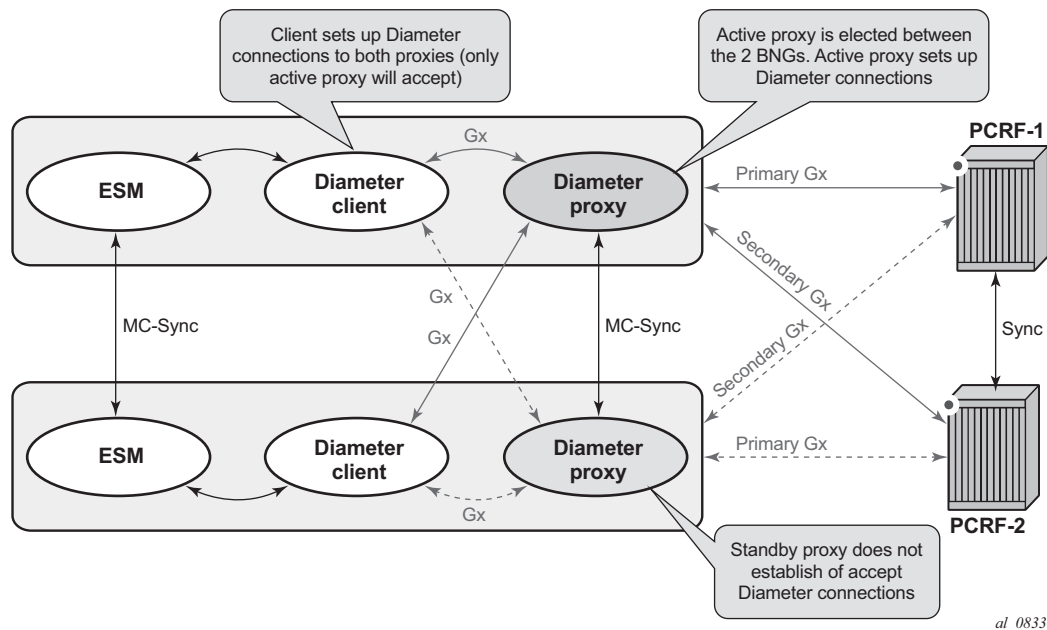


Figure 86: Diameter Proxy Implementation

Figure 86 shows two physical BNGs; each of them have a Diameter client and proxy configured. The Diameter client will establish Diameter connections to the proxy, and in turn the proxy will establish Diameter connections to its peers in the network (PCRF, authorization, authentication and accounting (AAA), DRA, and so on).

An active and standby proxy will be selected, based on the highest chassis MAC address in a non-revertive way. When a proxy boots up, it first checks whether there is another proxy that is active. If it does not detect another active proxy within 10 min, this proxy will be selected as the active one. Only the active proxy will establish Diameter connections to the network, while the standby proxy will not establish any Diameter connections. This is indicated by the dotted lines in [Figure 86](#).

The Diameter clients are configured with two Diameter peers, one to each proxy, and will try to establish both Diameter connections. However, only the active Diameter proxy will accept incoming Diameter connections. The standby proxy will reject any incoming Diameter connections by responding with a TCP-RST each time a client tries to connect.

The Diameter connection from the client to the proxy on the same physical BNG can be an internal connection, that is, it does not leave the BNG but it is a Diameter connection with the same functionality as an external connection.

When a subscriber connects to a Gx enabled BNG, a CCR-I is sent to the PCRF, see [Figure 87](#). If the ESM master and the active proxy are on the same BNG, the CCR-I is sent from the client to the proxy on the same physical BNG:

1. A subscriber connects to the network; for example, by sending a DHCP Discover.
2. The BNG with the master subscriber routed redundancy protocol (SRRP) state or active MC-LAG link (called the session-owning node) will trigger the Diameter client to send a CCR-I.
3. The Diameter client generates a CCR-I and sends it to the active Diameter proxy, in this case using the internal Diameter connection.
4. The proxy sends the CCR-I to the PCRF.
5. The PCRF sends back the credit control answer CCA-I to the Diameter client via the Diameter proxy.
6. The Diameter proxy sends the CCA-I to the Diameter client using the internal Diameter connection.
7. The Diameter client sends a notification message to ESM.
8. ESM continues connecting the subscriber to the network.

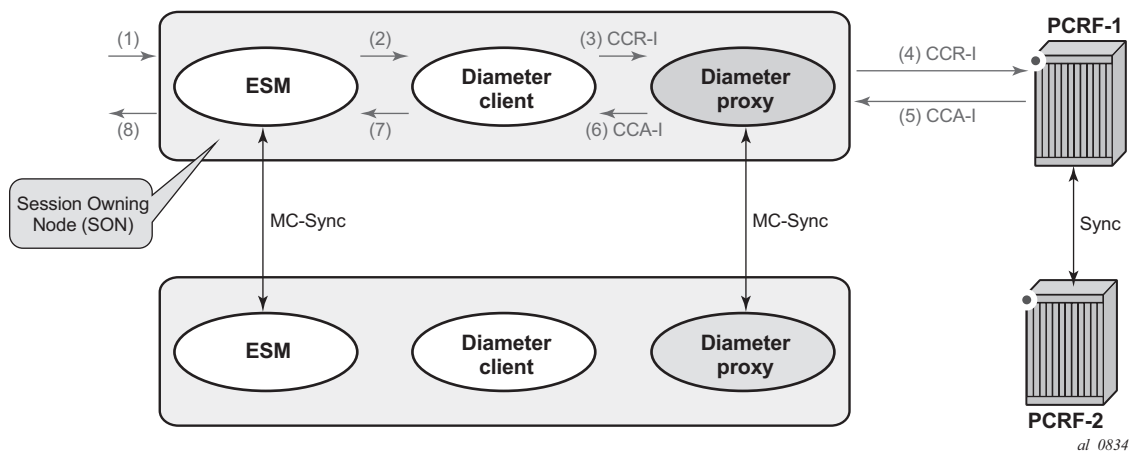


Figure 87: Subscriber Connecting to BNG Hosting Active Diameter Proxy

If the active proxy is not on the session-owning node, the scenario differs slightly, see [Figure 88](#). In this case, the CCR-I in step 3 is sent from the session owning node to the proxy on the other

BNG, and similarly, in Step 7, the CCA-I is sent from the proxy to the other BNG, using the external Diameter connection.

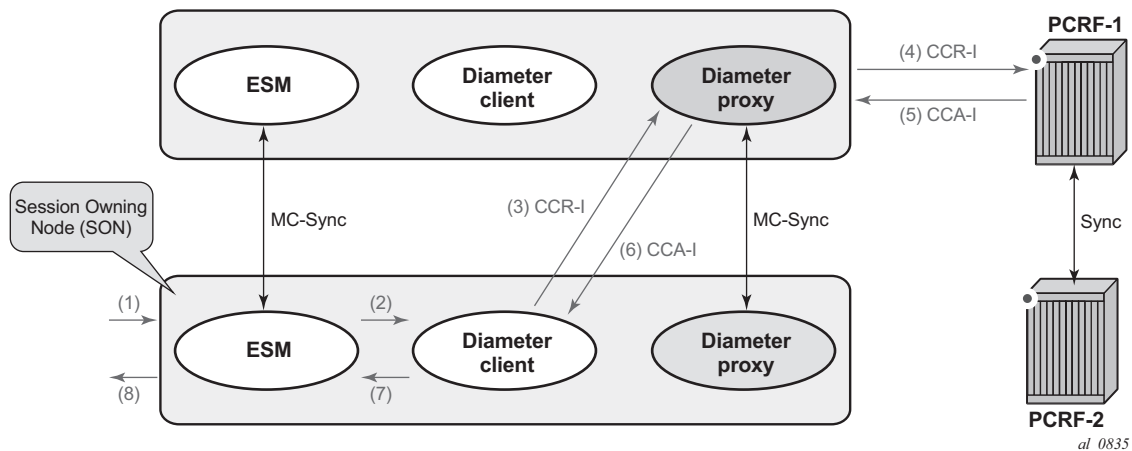


Figure 88: Subscriber Connecting to BNG Hosting Standby Diameter Proxy

The Diameter proxy does not modify the Diameter packet except for the hop-by-hop identifier field in the Diameter header and the Origin-State-Id (OSI) AVP. This means that the Diameter client has to use the hostname/realm of the PCRF as the destination host/realm. Similarly, the PCRF will use the hostname/realm of the Diameter client as origin-host/realm, instead of the hostname/realm of the Diameter proxy. The exception will be the Diameter Capability messages, exchanged with the PCRF and originated by the Diameter proxy.

The Diameter proxy does not maintain any session state, so no session state information has to be synchronized with the other BNG. The Diameter proxy only synchronizes information that is needed for the Diameter connections to the network. This includes the chassis MAC address for active proxy selection and the OSI. Synchronizing the OSI results in a constant value for the OSI after a switchover to the other proxy; therefore, the Diameter server will not notice a restart of the BNG.

Although the Diameter proxy does not maintain any session state, it maintains the transaction state. This means that the transaction state is created when a request is sent to the network, and the state is removed when the answer is received and forwarded to the client, or when the transaction timer expires (by default 10 s) if no answer is received. This transaction state is maintained to know which client to send the answer messages to. For instance, when the Diameter proxy receives a CCA-I, it looks up the transaction state to find out which client originated the request. It

then forwards the answer message to that client, and clears the transaction state. The handling of re-authorization request (RAR) messages is different because when a RAR message is received, there is no transaction state. In this case, the proxy will send the RAR message to both clients, and the client on the session-owning node will process this message and reply with a re-authorization answer (RAA) message. The client on the other BNG will ignore the RAR message.

IP Addressing

The Diameter client has one IP address, while the proxy has two IP addresses: one toward the client, and one toward the server. This is shown in [Figure 89](#).

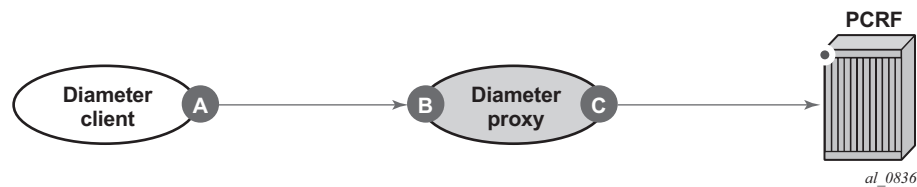


Figure 89: Diameter IP Addressing

The Diameter client will use IP address A to originate Diameter connections toward the Diameter proxy, and will use IP address B as the IP destination address. The Diameter proxy will listen on IP address B for incoming Diameter connections, and will use IP address C as the IP source address for outgoing Diameter connections. All IP addresses can be in the same virtual private routed network (VPRN), or in a different VPRN, as long as IP routing from IP address A to IP address B is available. IP address B and C can also be the same IP address. The IP addresses must belong to an IP interface (for example, a loopback IP address).

Retransmissions

The Diameter proxy does not retransmit any messages with the exception of retransmissions at the TCP layer. Retransmissions at the Diameter level are done by the Diameter client; therefore, the proxy does not have to do these. When the client retransmits at the Diameter level, the T-bit (retransmission bit) is set in the Diameter header to indicate that it is a retransmitted message. The Diameter proxy will route messages based on the T-bit (see also [Figure 90](#)):

- If the proxy receives a Diameter message without the T-bit set, the message is forwarded to the primary Diameter connection.

Retransmissions

- If the proxy receives a Diameter message with the T-bit set, the message is forwarded to the secondary Diameter connection.

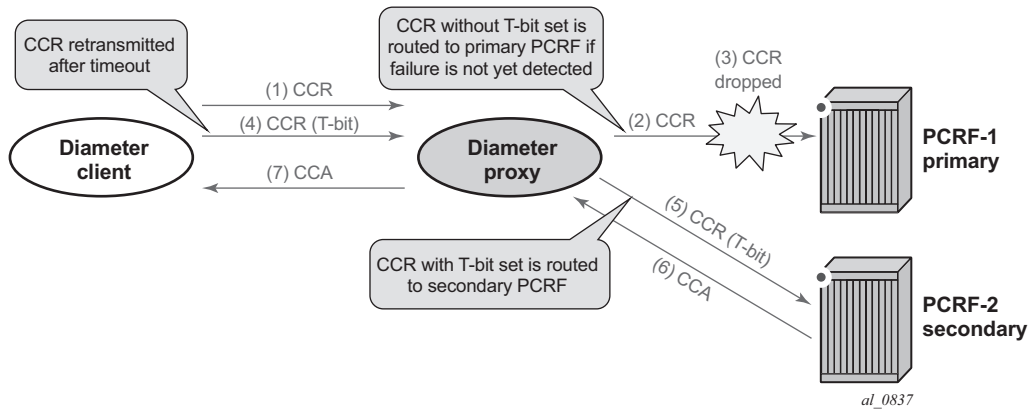


Figure 90: Retransmission Scenario

In the example of [Figure 90](#), the client sends a CCR message to the proxy (1). The proxy forwards this CCR to the primary PCRF (2), but somewhere the message gets dropped (3). The client will timeout (based on the transaction timer) and retransmit the CCR with the T-bit set (4). The proxy forwards this CCR to the secondary PCRF (5), which will respond (6), and this response is forwarded to the client (7).

To generate a retransmitted message at the Diameter level on the Diameter client, the transaction timer has to expire and the failure handling parameter has to be set to *retry-and-terminate* or *continue*. For instance, in the case of Gx, both options will retransmit a CCR-I with the T-bit set. If no response to the retransmitted CCR-I message is received, failure handling *retry-and-terminate* will reject the host, while failure handling *continue* will accept the host. Note: The Diameter client retransmits the same Diameter message to the same Diameter proxy only if there is just one Diameter peering connection open. This is typically the case in this scenario because the standby Diameter proxy rejects all incoming connections. If a secondary Diameter peering connection is open in the client, the retransmission is sent to that Diameter connection.

If the proxy receives a message with the T-bit set, and it only has a primary connection, then this message will be sent to the primary connection.

Proxy Switchover

A switchover to the other proxy is performed in the following cases:

- the BNG managing the active proxy goes down
- all Diameter connections on the active proxy go down

For fast convergence toward the new active proxy, it is advised to configure short-duration connection timers, transaction timers, and watchdog timers (see the [Establishing a Diameter Peering Session on page 823](#) chapter for an explanation of these timers). This will speed up the detection of failed Diameter connections, and also the establishment of new Diameter connections. The new proxy can only become active and fully operational when it has established at least one Diameter connection to the network, and both Diameter clients have detected the failed proxy and re-established Diameter connections to the new active proxy.

The scenario for a failing proxy is shown in [Figure 91](#).

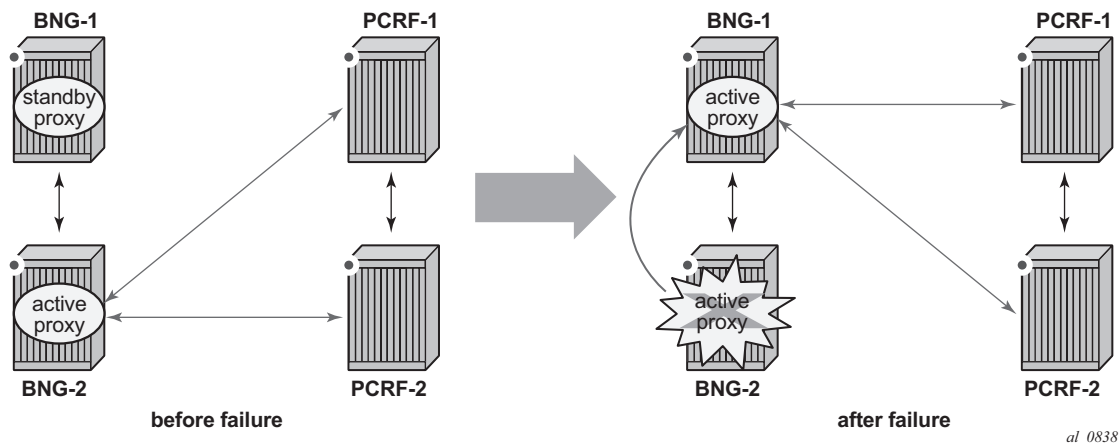


Figure 91: Scenario with Failing Diameter Proxy

First, both BNGs are operational and BNG-2 is the active proxy while BNG-1 is the standby proxy. Only BNG-2 will establish Diameter connections to the servers (PCRFs in this example). When BNG-2 goes down, the PCRFs will detect the BNG failure (if watchdogs have been enabled in the PCRF) and remove the Diameter connection to the failed BNG. In parallel, BNG-1 detects that BNG-2 is down and starts establishing the Diameter connections to the PCRFs, and as soon as one of them is up, the BNG-1 proxy goes to active state.

[Figure 92](#) and [Figure 93](#) show the same scenario, but also for failing Diameter connections. [Figure 92](#) shows that, after the failure of a Diameter connection to one PCRF, there is no

switchover. When there is a second failure, while the Diameter connection to PCRF-1 is still down, a proxy switchover occurs although BNG-2 stays up, as shown in [Figure 93](#).

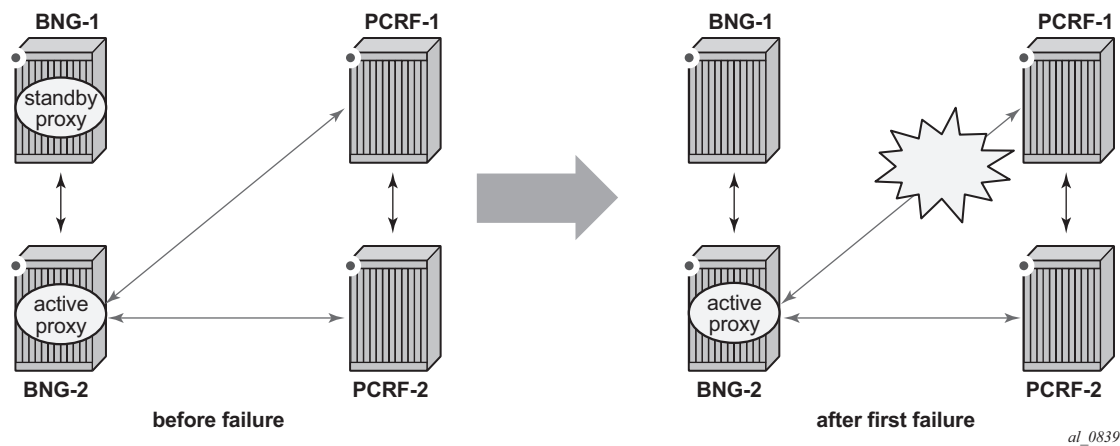


Figure 92: Scenario with One Diameter Connection Failing

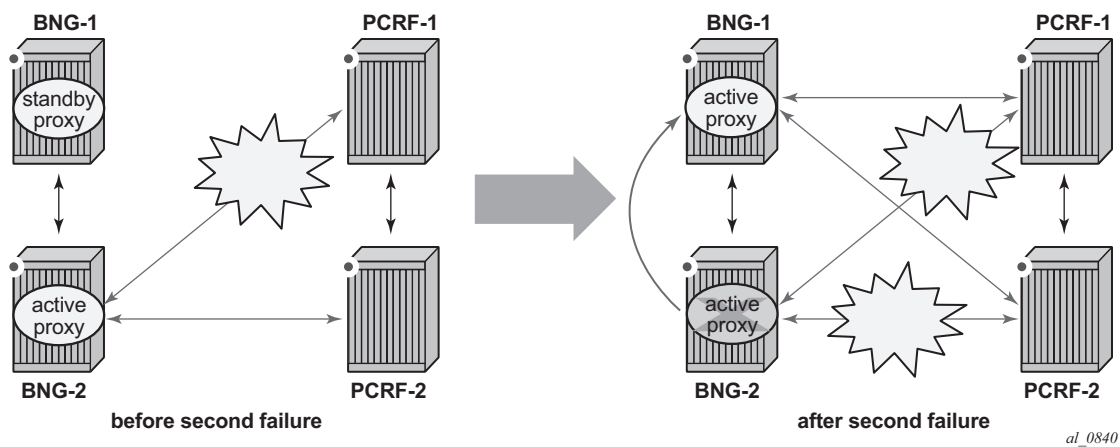


Figure 93: Scenario with Both Diameter Connections Failing

Access Node Gateway Change Trigger

In the case of Gx, the BNG originating the CCR-I message can optionally include the Access Node Gateway address (AN_GW_ADDRESS) containing the system IP address. Because there are now two BNGs, each having their own system IP address, the AN_GW_ADDRESS can change during the lifetime of a Diameter session. In [Figure 94](#), BNG-1 is the ESM/SRRP master when the subscriber sends a DHCP discover. Consequently, BNG-1 originates the CCR-I with AN_GW_ADDRESS 10.0.0.2, which is its own system IP address. When BNG-1 fails, BNG-2 will take over and can optionally generate a CCR-U with the new AN_GW_ADDRESS, its own system IP address (10.0.0.11 in this example). BNG-2 will only do this if the PCRF has enabled event trigger 21 in the CCA-I. If the PCRF did not enable this event trigger, the PCRF will not be aware that BNG-2 became the new ESM/SRRP master. However, this should not have any effect on the correct behavior of the BNGs and the PCRF; therefore, this event trigger is an optional, informational event trigger. Note: Even without this event trigger, the PCRF will detect a failing Gx session to BNG-1 if watchdogs have been enabled in the PCRF.

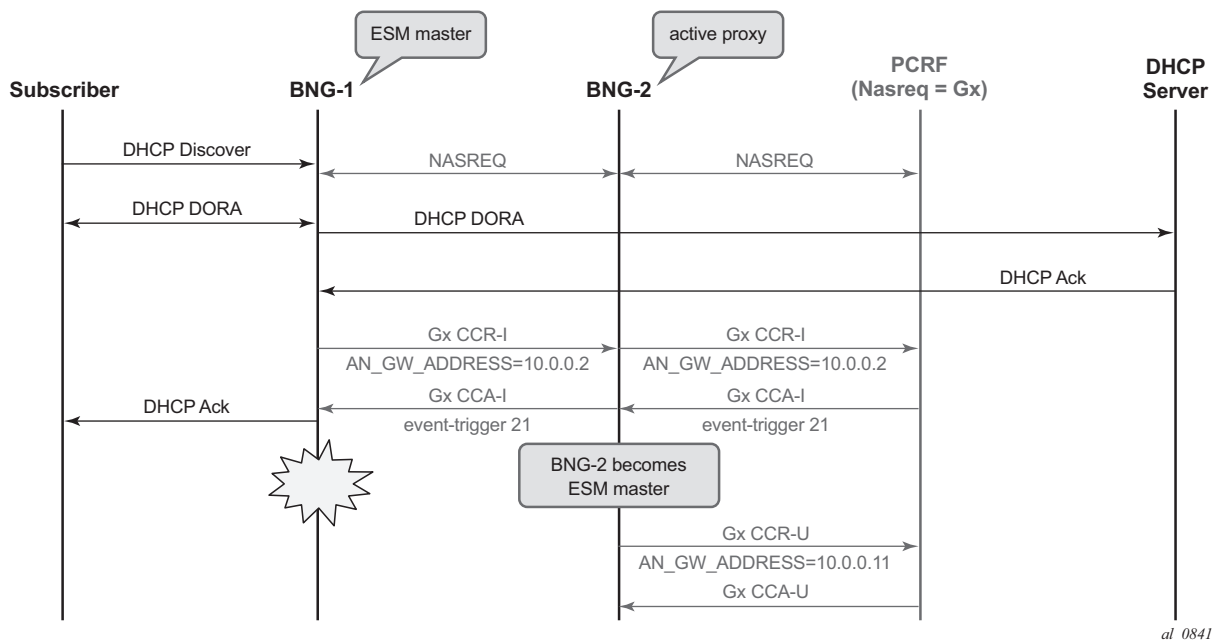


Figure 94: Access Node Gateway Change Trigger

Configuration

To configure Diameter inter-chassis redundancy with Diameter proxy, four parts have to be configured:

1. multi-homed BNGs
2. Diameter client
3. Diameter proxy MC-Sync
4. Diameter proxy

The first two parts are common to ESM and to Diameter applications such as Gx and NASREQ, which means that these two first parts are not Diameter-proxy specific. The parts apply equally to single-chassis or dual-chassis configuration. The first part configures SRRP with MC-Sync and, optionally, a shunt tunnel.

The second part configures the Diameter client, which is unaware of whether it is interfacing directly with a Diameter proxy, an external DRA, or a PCRF. However, in multi-chassis redundancy with Diameter proxy, the destination host/realm and the IP addresses must be configured in the following way:

- The destination host/realm must be the AAA/PCRF host/realm and not the host/realm of the proxy.
- The destination IP address must be the IP address of the proxy and not the IP address of the AAA/PCRF.

An example configuration of two multi-homed BNGs follows. The realm of the AAA/PCRF is **dscrealm**. The IP address of the proxy on BNG-1 is 10.23.3.131 and the IP address of the proxy on BNG-2 is 10.23.4.131.

For example, the configuration of BNG-1 could be as follows:

BNG-1:

```
configure aaa diameter-peer-policy "DIAMETER.CLIENT"
  applications gx nasreq
  connection-timer 1
  origin-host "bngclient.geo.SRrealm"
  origin-realm "SRrealmClient"
  python-policy "dsc_subscriber_id"
  router 10000
  source-address 10.23.3.132
  peer "Proxy.Local" create
    address 10.23.3.131
    destination-realm "dscrealm"
    preference 10
    no shutdown
  exit
  peer "Proxy.Remote" create
```

```

        address 10.23.4.131
        destination-realm "dscrealm"
        preference 20
        no shutdown
    exit

```

For example, the configuration of the Diameter client on BNG-2 could be as follows:

BNG-2:

```

configure aaa diameter-peer-policy "DIAMETER.CLIENT"
    applications gx nasreq
    connection-timer 1
    origin-host "bngclient.geo.SRrealm"
    origin-realm "SRrealmClient"
    python-policy "dsc_subscriber_id"
    router 10000
    source-address 10.23.4.132
    peer "Proxy.Local" create
        address 10.23.4.131
        destination-realm "dscrealm"
        preference 10
        no shutdown
    exit
    peer "Proxy.Remote" create
        address 10.23.3.131
        destination-realm "dscrealm"
        preference 20
        no shutdown
    exit

```

Note: Both BNGs use the same origin-host (bngclient.geo.SRrealm) and the same origin-realm (**SRrealmClient**).

After the Diameter peer policy has been configured, it can be used in a Diameter application policy, which can be applied to the group interface or SAP. An example (minimal) configuration of a Gx Diameter application policy, using the previously defined Diameter peer policy with its assignment to a group interface, follows:

```

configure subscriber-mgmt diameter-application-policy "DIAMETER.Gx"
    description "Diameter application policy for Gx to Diameter Proxy"
    application gx
    diameter-peer-policy "DIAMETER.CLIENT"

configure service vprn 10001
    <...snip...>
    subscriber-interface "to_subscribers" create
        <...snip...>
        group-interface "to_STC" create
            <...snip...>
            diameter-application-policy "DIAMETER.Gx"

```

Configuration

In the third configuration part, the MC-Sync for the Diameter proxy has to be enabled. This is done by adding **diameter-proxy** in the multi-chassis redundancy configuration, as shown in the following example for BNG-1 (10.0.0.2) and BNG-2 (10.0.0.11):

BNG-1:

```
configure redundancy
multi-chassis
  peer 10.0.0.11 create
    source-address 10.0.0.2
    sync
    diameter-proxy
    srrp
    sub-mgmt ipoe pppoe
    port 3/2/4 sync-tag "stc" create
    exit
    no shutdown
  exit
  no shutdown
exit
exit
```

BNG-2:

```
configure redundancy
multi-chassis
  peer 10.0.0.2 create
    source-address 10.0.0.11
    sync
    diameter-proxy
    srrp
    sub-mgmt ipoe pppoe
    port 1/1/1 sync-tag "stc" create
    exit
    no shutdown
  exit
  no shutdown
exit
exit
```

In the preceding configuration, only the **diameter-proxy** command is specific to the Diameter proxy configuration and all the rest is part of the regular multi-homed BNG configuration in part 1.

The fourth part is the actual Diameter proxy configuration and it re-uses the Diameter client configuration commands with three exceptions:

- when creating the Diameter peer policy, the role “proxy” has to be enabled.
- the Diameter peer policy of the proxy does not have to be assigned to any group interface or SAP.

- proxy configuration has to be added, which contains the MCS-Peer IP address referring to the configuration in the previous part, and the IP address and VPRN for incoming Diameter connections.

For example, the Diameter proxy configuration for BNG-1 and BNG-2 could be as follows:

BNG-1:

```
configure aaa diameter-peer-policy "DIAMETER.PROXY" role proxy create
  applications gx nasreq
  connection-timer 1
  origin-host "bng.geo.SRrealm"
  origin-realm "SRrealm"
  router 10000
  source-address 10.23.3.130
  peer "DSC.39.118" create
    address 10.40.15.5
    destination-realm "dscrealm"
    preference 20
    no shutdown
  exit
  peer "DSC.39.122" create
    address 10.40.15.4
    destination-realm "dscrealm"
    preference 10
    no shutdown
  exit
  proxy
    mcs-peer 10.0.0.11 sync-tag "stc"
    router 10000 address 10.23.3.131
    no shutdown
  exit
```

BNG-2:

```
configure aaa diameter-peer-policy "DIAMETER.PROXY" role proxy create
  applications gx nasreq
  connection-timer 1
  origin-host "bng.geo.SRrealm"
  origin-realm "SRrealm"
  router 10000
  source-address 10.23.4.130
  peer "DSC.39.118" create
    address 10.40.15.5
    destination-realm "dscrealm"
    preference 20
    no shutdown
  exit
  peer "DSC.39.122" create
    address 10.40.15.4
    destination-realm "dscrealm"
    preference 10
    no shutdown
  exit
  proxy
    mcs-peer 10.0.0.2 sync-tag "stc"
```

Configuration

```
router 10000 address 10.23.4.131
no shutdown
exit
```

Optionally, Python can be applied to all Diameter connections (see [Figure 95](#)):

- at the Diameter client side on the Diameter connection to the proxy.
- at the Diameter proxy side on the Diameter connection coming from the client.
- at the Diameter proxy side on the Diameter connection going to the network.

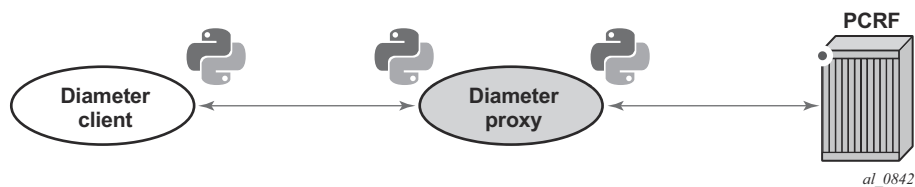


Figure 95: Python for Diameter Connections

When using Python, the script has to be applied to the correct message type and direction. For example, if the following Python policy is applied to the proxy Diameter peer policy, the scripts are applied to the CCR messages toward the PCRF (egress direction) and to the CCA messages toward the client (egress direction), see [Figure 96](#):

```
python-policy "change_ipcan" create
diameter ccr direction egress script "change_ipcan"
diameter cca direction egress script "change_ipcan_answer"
exit
```

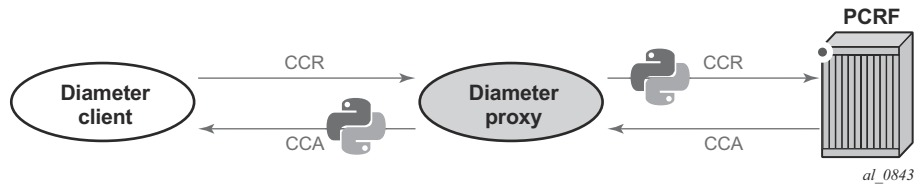


Figure 96: Python Example

Troubleshooting

The state of the Diameter client can be verified with the following command:

```
# show aaa diameter-peer-policy "DIAMETER.CLIENT"
=====
Diameter Peer Policy : DIAMETER.CLIENT
=====
Last Mgmt Change      : 06/16/2015 13:05:25
Applications          : gx nasreq
Role                  : client
Description            : (Not Specified)
-----
Diameter Config Values
-----
Origin Host           : bngclient.geo.SRrealm
Origin Realm          : SRrealmClient
Connection Timer       : 1                               Source Address      : 10.23.3.132
Transaction Timer      : 30 (default)                     Router              : 10000
Watchdog Timer         : 30 (default)
Vendor Support         : 3GPP (default)
Python Policy          : dsc_subscriber_id
-----
Peer Name              Oper  PSM State      Susp  Cooldown  Pref  Order  Pri/Sec
-----
Proxy.Local            Yes   Wait-Conn-Ack No    -          10    -      -
Proxy.Remote           Yes   I-Open         No    -          20    1      Primary
=====
```

Because the Diameter client is unaware that it is interfacing with a proxy, there is no proxy-specific information in this output. However, the standby proxy does not accept incoming Diameter connections; therefore, the connection on the client to this standby proxy will not be in I-Open state. In the preceding example, the peer “Proxy.Remote” is in I-Open state, indicating that this is the peer toward the active proxy (which is on BNG-2 in this example).

The CLI command was taken on BNG-1. Similar information can be seen on BNG-2, but there the Diameter connection toward the local proxy is in I-Open state:

```
# show aaa diameter-peer-policy "DIAMETER.CLIENT"
=====
Diameter Peer Policy : DIAMETER.CLIENT
=====
Last Mgmt Change      : 06/16/2015 12:47:14
Applications          : gx nasreq
Role                  : client
Description            : (Not Specified)
-----
Diameter Config Values
-----
Origin Host           : bngclient.geo.SRrealm
Origin Realm          : SRrealmClient
Connection Timer       : 1                               Source Address      : 10.23.4.132
Transaction Timer      : 30 (default)                     Router              : 10000
```

```

Watchdog Timer      : 30 (default)
Vendor Support      : 3GPP (default)
Python Policy       : dsc_subscriber_id
-----
Peer Name           Oper  PSM State      Susp  Cooldown  Pref  Order  Pri/Sec
-----
Proxy.Local         Yes   I-Open         No    -         10    1      Primary
Proxy.Remote        Yes   Wait-Conn-Ack No    -         20    -      -
=====

```

The Diameter proxy can be verified with a similar CLI command (see the following). There are three parts in this CLI command that are specific for the proxy:

- Diameter proxy shows the administrative state and operational state. The out-of-service state means that the proxy is not active, while the in-service state means that the proxy is operational and active, that is, establishing Diameter connections and processing Diameter messages. The out-of-service state means that the proxy is either not operational or that it is standby until the other proxy fails. For the rest, this part shows the MCS specific information for the proxy.
- Proxy multi-chassis redundancy shows which proxy is the active one (the local or the remote proxy). The possible states of the proxy are:
 - Active — The proxy is active; this also means that it has at least one Diameter connection in I-Open state.
 - activeWait — The proxy is selected to become active, but is still setting up the Diameter connections with the Diameter server(s).
 - standbyWait — The proxy is waiting for its multi-chassis synchronization (MCS) partner to become active; a proxy cannot become standby as long the other side is not active.
 - proxySwitchoverReq — The proxy was active and is becoming standby.

Besides the state information, this part also shows the synchronized information (MAC address and OSI). The controller is the BNG with the highest MAC address (independent of whether it is active or standby), and the controller MAC address is its MAC address. Because MAC addresses do not change, the controller also does not change, except if the controller goes down, or a BNG detects a higher MAC address than the current one. If a BNG does not detect another BNG, that BNG declares itself as controller. Because the controller has the highest MAC address, it is the controller that becomes active when there is no active proxy or there is a conflict and a new selection has to be made.

- Client-side peers show the incoming Diameter connections from the clients. On the BNG with the standby proxy, there will be no incoming Diameter connections (in this example, BNG-1 has the standby proxy, so no client-side peers).

BNG-1:

```
# show aaa diameter-peer-policy "DIAMETER.PROXY"
=====
Diameter Peer Policy : DIAMETER.PROXY
=====
Last Mgmt Change      : 06/16/2015 13:05:25
Applications          : gx nasreq
Role                  : proxy
Description            : (Not Specified)
-----
Diameter Config Values
-----
Origin Host           : bng.geo.SRrealm
Origin Realm          : SRrealm
Connection Timer       : 1                      Source Address      : 10.23.3.130
Transaction Timer      : 30 (default)           Router              : 10000
Watchdog Timer         : 30 (default)
Vendor Support         : 3GPP (default)
Python Policy          : N/A
-----
Diameter proxy
-----
Proxy administrative state : enabled
Proxy operational state    : out-of-service
Router                     : 10000
IP address                 : 10.23.3.131
MCS peer IP address       : 10.0.0.11
MCS sync tag              : stc
Last management change     : 06/16/2015 13:05:25
-----
Proxy multi-chassis redundancy
-----

```

	Local	Remote
State	standby	active
Origin-State-Id	1434460525	1434460525
MAC address	00:03:fa:14:2b:a7	00:21:05:9b:b8:24
Controller MAC address	00:21:05:9b:b8:24	00:21:05:9b:b8:24
Controller	No	Yes

```
-----
Peer Name          Oper  PSM State    Susp  Cooldown  Pref  Order  Pri/Sec
-----
DSC.39.118         Yes  Closed      No    -         20   -      -
DSC.39.122         Yes  Closed      No    -         10   -      -
No client-side peers found.
=====
```

BNG-2:

```
# show aaa diameter-peer-policy "DIAMETER.PROXY"
=====
Diameter Peer Policy : DIAMETER.PROXY
=====
Last Mgmt Change      : 06/16/2015 12:47:14
Applications          : gx nasreq
Role                  : proxy
Description            : (Not Specified)
-----
Diameter Config Values
-----
Origin Host           : bng.geo.SRrealm
Origin Realm          : SRrealm
Connection Timer       : 1                      Source Address      : 10.23.4.130
Transaction Timer      : 30 (default)           Router              : 10000
Watchdog Timer         : 30 (default)
Vendor Support         : 3GPP (default)
Python Policy          : N/A
-----
Diameter proxy
-----
Proxy administrative state : enabled
Proxy operational state    : in-service
Router                     : 10000
IP address                 : 10.23.4.131
MCS peer IP address       : 10.0.0.2
MCS sync tag               : stc
Last management change     : 06/16/2015 12:47:14
-----
Proxy multi-chassis redundancy
-----

```

	Local	Remote
State	active	standby
Origin-State-Id	1434460525	1434460525
MAC address	00:21:05:9b:b8:24	00:03:fa:14:2b:a7
Controller MAC address	00:21:05:9b:b8:24	00:21:05:9b:b8:24
Controller	Yes	No

```
-----
Peer Name      Oper  PSM State    Susp  Cooldown  Pref  Order  Pri/Sec
-----
DSC.39.118     Yes  I-Open       No    -         20   2      Secondary
DSC.39.122     Yes  I-Open       No    -         10   1      Primary
-----
Client-side peers
-----
IP address      TCP port  PSM state
-----
10.23.3.132     58664    r-open
10.23.4.132     61960    r-open
=====
```

The preceding command shows the IP address and TCP port of the incoming Diameter connections. The following command can be used to get the statistics of these connections:

```
# show aaa diameter-peer-policy "DIAMETER.PROXY" statistics client-side-peer-ip
10.23.3.132 port 58664
=====
Client-side peer statistics
=====
IP address           : 10.23.3.132
TCP port             : 58664
time statistics cleared : 06/17/2015 12:21:36
=====
Client initiated tx/rx          Server initiated tx/rx
-----
TCP Send Failed                : 0                TCP Send Failed                : 0
Diam Rx Drop Count (Reqs)      : 0                Diam Rx Drop Count (Resps)    : 0
Diam Rx Requests               : 13818          Diam Tx Requests               : 21085
Diam Tx Responses              : 13818          Diam Rx Responses              : 21085
Pending Messages               : 0
Lifetime Timeouts              : 0

Client initiated tx/rx          Server initiated tx/rx
-----
CCR initial Rx                 : 1                CCA initial Tx                 : 1
CCR update Rx                  : 1                CCA update Tx                  : 1
CCR terminate Rx               : 1                CCA terminate Tx               : 1
CER Rx                         : 1                CEA Tx                         : 1
DWR Rx                         : 13814            DWA Tx                         : 13814
DWR Tx                         : 21085            DWA Rx                         : 21085
ASR Tx                         : 0                ASA Rx                         : 0
RAR Tx                         : 0                RAA Rx                         : 0
DPR Tx                         : 0                DPA Rx                         : 0
DPR Rx                         : 0                DPA Tx                         : 0
AAR Rx                         : 0                AAA Tx                         : 0
```

The output shows the number of messages per message type that have been sent or received.

Because the Diameter proxy uses the chassis MAC address, it might be useful to view this MAC address. This address can be shown with the following command:

BNG-1:

```
# show chassis
--- snipped ---
Base MAC address : 00:03:fa:14:2b:a7
```

BNG-2:

```
# show chassis
--- snipped ---
Base MAC address : 00:21:05:9b:b8:24
```

Debug is available at all of the following connections (see [Figure 97](#)):

- at the Diameter client side on the Diameter connection to the proxy.
- at the Diameter proxy side on the Diameter connection coming from the client.
- at the Diameter proxy side on the Diameter connection going to the network.

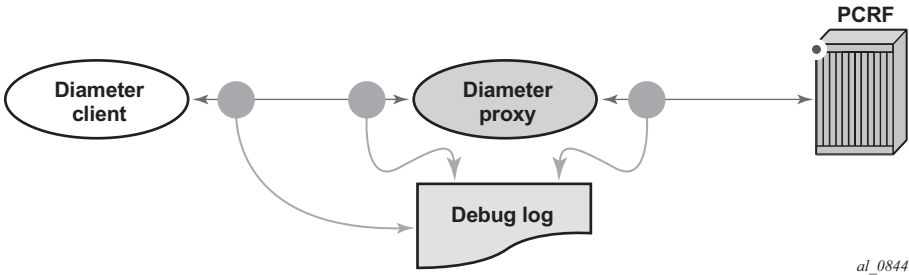


Figure 97: Diameter Debugging Points

These three connections mean that, if all debugs are enabled, all messages are displayed three times in the debug log. The same debug commands as for the client apply to the proxy:

```
# debug diameter
- diameter
- no diameter

[no] dest-realm      - Restrict output to a specific destination-realm
    detail-level    - Configure the detail level of debug output
[no] diameter-peer  - Restrict output to a specific peer
[no] diameter-peer-* - Restrict output to a specific policy
[no] message-type   - Restrict output to specific message-types
[no] origin-realm   - Restrict output to a specific origin-realm
```

The following traps are generated by the Diameter proxy:

- `tmnxDiamPpPrxMcLocStateChanged` is generated each time the proxy changes state.
- `tmnxDiamPrxMessageDropped` is generated each time the proxy drops a message because it is unable to process it.

```
# show log event-control "diameter"
Application
ID#      Event Name                                     P   g/s    Logged    Dropped
-----
2001 tmnxDiamPolicyPeerStateChange                     MI  thr    38443     0
2002 tmnxDiamAppMessageDropped                         MI  thr     0       0
2003 tmnxDiamAppSessionFailure                         MI  thr     0       0
2004 tmnxDiamSessionEvent                             MI  thr     0       0
```

Diameter Inter-Chassis Redundancy

2005	tmnxDiamPpPrxMcLocStateChanged	MI	thr	3	0
2006	tmnxDiamPrxMessageDropped	MI	thr	0	0
=====					

Conclusion

This chapter describes the Diameter proxy, which can be used in case a multi-homed BNG configuration (inter-chassis redundancy) is used. The proxy ensures that both BNGs use the same Diameter hostname/realm and that the AAA/PCRF in the network only sees one logical BNG. The benefit is that all messages belonging to the same Diameter session will have the same origin-host/realm, irrespective of which BNG is active.

In This Chapter

This section provides information about Enhanced Subscriber Management.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 534](#)
- [Summary on page 535](#)
- [Overview on page 537](#)
- [Configuration on page 540](#)
- [Conclusion on page 579](#)

Applicability

This chapter is applicable to 7450 ESS, 7750 SR and 7710 SR series and was tested on SR OS 11.0.R4. Chassis mode b or higher must be used.

Summary

Subscriber management in general includes the following functions:

- subscriber host authentication, identification, addressing, authorization and accounting:
 - authentication – Check whether the subscriber host is allowed access via a Local User Data Base (LUDB) or via a RADIUS server.
 - identification – Fetch the data to use for the subscriber host, including the definition of the subscriber-ID.
 - addressing – Fetch the address information to use, IPv4 and/or IPv6.
 - authorization – Check what the subscriber host is allowed to do.
 - accounting – Both off-line charging (RADIUS and XML) and on-line charging (RADIUS credit control and Diameter credit control application) are supported.
- subscriber host instantiation, based on:
 - A protocol (DHCP, PPPoE/oA/oEoA or ARP) for dynamic hosts, and started through a trigger packet.
 - A static configuration for static hosts.
- subscriber QoS - Ensure per service and per application SLAs, based on:
 - the overall subscriber rate
 - subscriber profiles
 - service level agreement profiles
- subscriber security:
 - Avoid malicious access through anti-spoofing and based on access control lists (ACLs) / IP-filters.
 - DDOS mitigation.
- subscriber persistency – The subscriber state is written to flash-disk (a.k.a. persistent data) and automatically restored on node reboot.
- subscriber resiliency – The subscriber state is retained in case of a node failure in redundant environments, through Multi Chassis Synchronization (MCS).
- subscriber troubleshooting, using:
 - OAM test.
 - mirroring.
 - debugging and event logging.

Enhanced Subscriber Management (ESM) implies subscriber management functions are applied at subscriber level. Subscriber hosts are created, and all of the features listed above apply.

Summary

Basic Subscriber Management (BSM) implies subscriber management functions are applied at SAP level. Only a subset of the functions listed above apply.

This example gives an overview of the ESM data required to perform subscriber management functions, and how the ESM data is organized.

Overview

The following terminology is used extensively in Alcatel-Lucent's Triple Play Service Delivery Architecture (TPSDA) and is key to understanding ESM:

- device
- subscriber host
- subscriber

A device is equipment located at the customer premises. Example devices are computers, smart-phones, set-top boxes, etc including the Residential Gateway (RGW) providing the connection towards the Internet. The RGW is connected to the access network using an XDSL-connection, a PON-connection, etc.

A subscriber is a collection of subscriber hosts connected to a single RGW. The subscriber is identified by its subscriber-ID, a character string of 16 characters maximum which is used for administrative purposes.

Unlike devices, which are physical entities, subscribers and subscriber hosts are logical entities. These are created dynamically and resources are allocated when a device connects to the network and becomes active.

The following host types are recognized by the Broadband Network Gateway (BNG):

- DHCP hosts
- PPPoE hosts
- ARP hosts

The BNG uses the combination of following parameters to uniquely identify a single subscriber host:

- SAP-id
- IP-address
- MAC-address
- session-ID (PPPoE only)

Multiple subscriber hosts can be associated with a single device.

[Figure 98](#) shows a bridged RGW scenario. Subscriber-1 has two devices, device-1 and device-2. Device-1 is a dual stack PPPoE device and is assigned an IPv4 address for host-1 and an IPv6 SLAAC prefix for host-2, both running over a single PPPoE session. Device-2 is a single stack IPoE device and is assigned an IPv4 address for host-3.

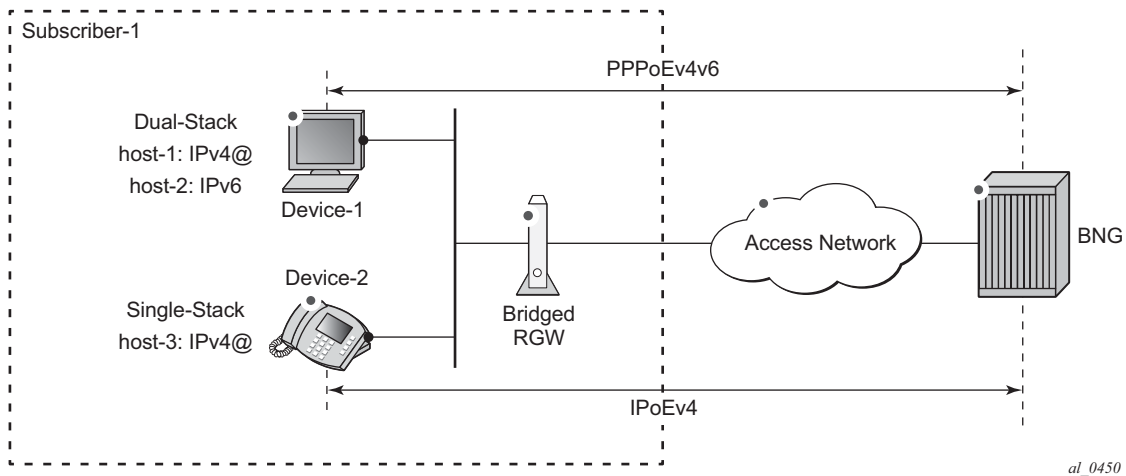


Figure 98: Bridged RGW Scenario

Figure 99 shows a routed dual stack RGW scenario. Subscriber-2 has two devices but they are hidden behind the RGW. The IP-addresses used by these devices are not known by the BNG. The RGW contains three hosts:

- Host-1 is assigned an outside IPv4 address, which the RGW uses for Network Address Translation (NAT).
- Host-2 is assigned an IPv6 wan host address or SLAAC prefix, which the RGW uses towards the outside network.
- Host-3 is assigned an IPv6 prefix for prefix delegation, which the RGW uses for allocating IPv6 addresses to IPv6 capable devices in the home network.

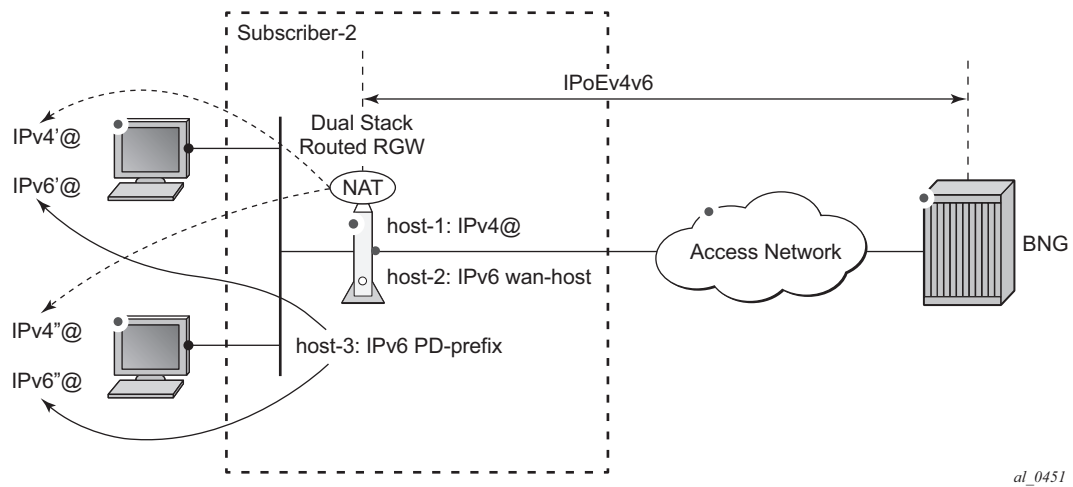


Figure 99: Routed RGW Scenario

Detailed information on both scenarios can be found in [ESMv6: IPoE Dual Stack Hosts on page 743](#) and the [ESMv6: PPPoE Dual Stack Hosts on page 787](#) respectively.

Configuration

Figure 100 shows two objects closely related to subscribers and subscriber hosts:

- SLA profile
- Subscriber profile

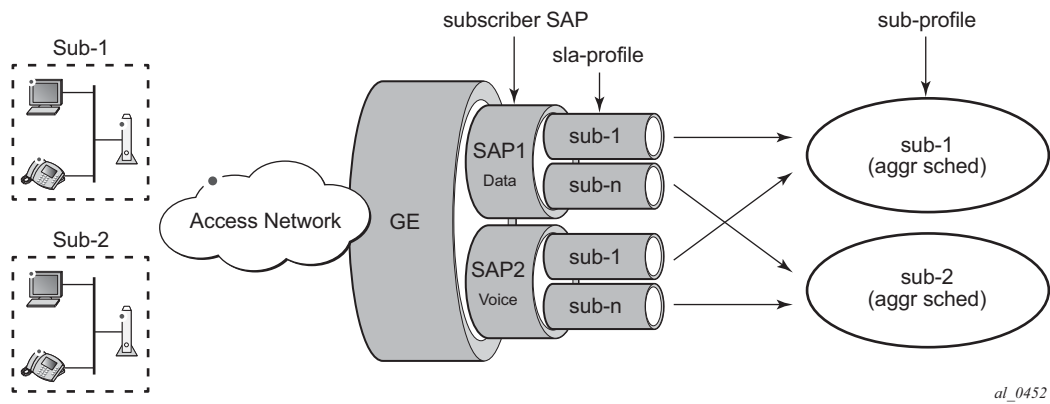


Figure 100: SLA-Profile and Sub-Profile

SLA Profile

A Service Level Agreement profile (SLA profile) is a template identified by name (maximum 32 chars) which defines:

- per service QoS settings as part of the QoS policy (ingress and egress):
 - queue/policer
 - scheduling/priority levels
 - bandwidth limits (CIR/PIR) and queue/policer depths (MBS/CBS)
 - classification
 - (re-)marking
- IP-filters for IPv4 and/or IPv6 (ingress and egress):
 - Access Control Lists (ACL)/Filters
- host-limit
- credit-control

An example SLA profile is shown below.

```
configure
subscriber-mgmt
sla-profile "sla-prof-1" create
  ingress
    qos 100
  exit
  egress
    qos 100
  exit
exit
exit
```

An instance of the sla-profile is created at host instantiation time.

The SLA profile enforces traffic control on a per service per subscriber basis. When multiple hosts for the same subscriber use the same SLA profile they share the same set of queues/policers as long as they are on the same SAP. The combined traffic for these hosts is controlled by the settings defined in the SLA profile.

Subscriber Profile

The subscriber profile (sub-profile) is a template identified by name (maximum 32 chars) which defines:

- per subscriber QoS settings:
 - aggregate rate (egress only)
 - scheduler policy (ingress and egress)
 - policer control policy (ingress and egress)
- the accounting profile (RADIUS or XML)
- multicast parameters (igmp-policy, etc.)
- Network Address Translation (NAT) parameters
- the ANCP (Access Node Control Protocol) parameters
- the default sla-profile mappings
- etc.

An example subscriber profile is shown below.

```
configure
  subscriber-mgmt
    sub-profile "sub-prof-1" create
      ingress
        policer-control-policy "pol-ctrl-1"
      exit
    exit
    egress
      scheduler-policy "down-1"
    exit
  exit
exit
```

An instance of the sub-profile is created at host instantiation time.

The sub-profile enforces traffic control on a per subscriber basis. The aggregate traffic of all hosts of a particular subscriber is controlled by the settings defined in the sub-profile, as long as the subscriber hosts are terminated on the same card.

QoS details are out of the scope of this example.

Subscriber SAP

A subscriber SAP is a SAP in a VPLS (Bridged CO model, which is not covered), VPRN or IES service (both in the Routed CO model) on which the queues/policers and other resources are allocated and de-allocated on a per subscriber basis.

A static SAP is a subscriber SAP when sub-sla-mgmt is enabled and becomes operational when in the no shutdown state. Multiple subscribers can connect through this SAP simultaneously when multi-sub-sap is enabled.

```
configure
service
  ies 1
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1"
    group-interface "grp-int-1-1"
    sap 1/1/1:101 create
      description "data SAP for DLSAM-1"
      sub-sla-mgmt
        multi-sub-sap 400
        --- snip ---
        no shutdown
      exit
    exit
  exit
```

Single SAP parameters (profiled-traffic-only and non-sub-traffic) are taken into account only when multi-sub-sap is left at its default of 1.

Subscriber Host Identification and Instantiation

The general subscriber host identification (authentication) process is depicted in [Figure 101](#) and encompasses fetching the ESM data for a connecting device.

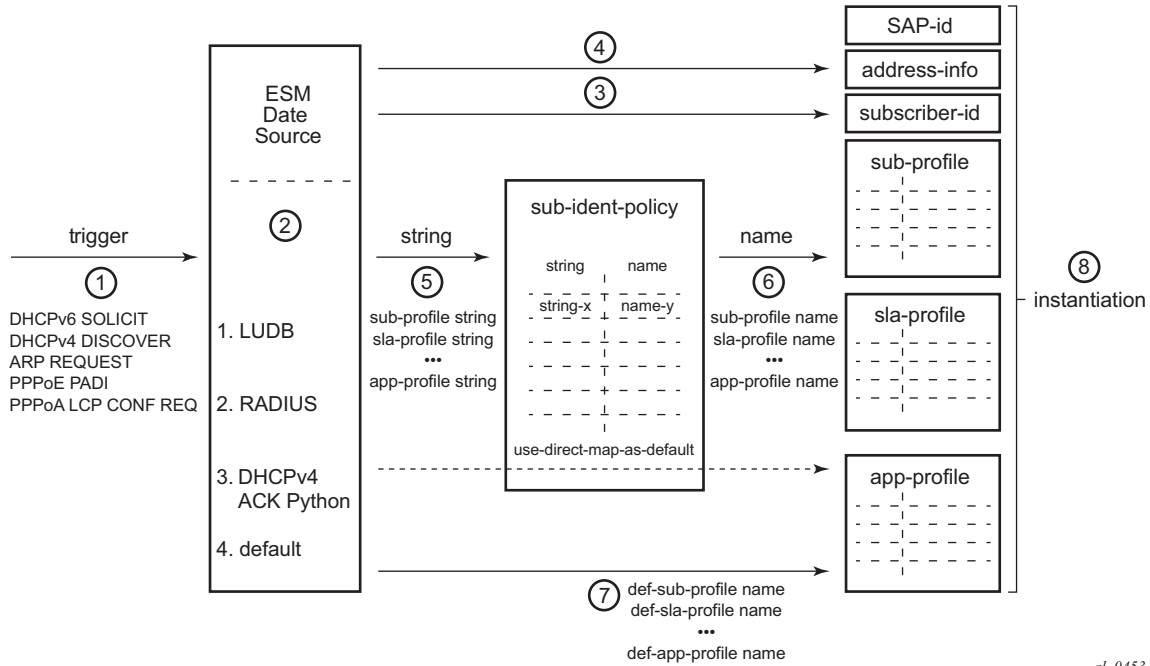


Figure 101: Subscriber Host Identification and Instantiation Process

ESM data is organized as a set of profiles which control the behavior of individual subscribers and subscriber hosts.

Static hosts are instantiated using the manually provisioned ESM data.

For dynamic hosts, the host identification and instantiation process is started by a trigger message (1 in [Figure 101](#)) which can be one of the following:

- DHCPv4 DISCOVER
- DHCPv6 SOLICIT
- PPPoE PADI
- PPPoA LCP Configuration Request
- ARP REQUEST

The following types of ESM data are distinguished as mandatory or optional ESM data.

Mandatory ESM data is:

- address information (IPv4 and/or IPv6)
- subscriber ID
- sub-profile data
- sla-profile data

Optional ESM data includes:

- app-profile data
- inter-dest-id
- Access Node Control Protocol (ANCP) data

A host is instantiated only when all mandatory ESM data is available for that host.

The ESM data sources (2) are consulted in following predefined sequence:

1. LUDB
2. RADIUS
3. DHCPv4 ACK python
4. Default

The ESM data sources provide:

- the subscriber-id (3)
- the profile strings (5)

Address information (IPv4 and/or IPv6) (4) can be provided by:

- the LUDB or RADIUS ESM data sources
- a DHCP server

The LUDB, RADIUS or DHCPv4 ACK python ESM data sources provide profile strings (5) which have a maximum length of 16 characters. They must be translated into profile names (6) which have a maximum length of 32 characters. The profile name is the key to access the actual profile data. The ESM data source *default* directly returns profile names (7), which do not need any translation.

Subscriber Host Identification and Instantiation

The ESM string to profile name translation is defined in configurable mapping tables which are part of the subscriber identification policy (sub-ident-policy). Mapping tables can be defined for:

- the sub-profile
- the sla-profile
- the app-profile

In case no mapping is needed because the strings and names are set to the same set of values, then a subscriber identification policy is needed with the attribute *use-direct-map-as-default*. (See section [Subscriber Identification Policy](#).)

Note the subscriber-id does not need to be translated.

The instantiation process (8) ensures the subscriber host is created:

- The subscriber host is added to the active subscriber list.
- Resources (queues, policers, filters, etc) are allocated for SLA enforcement.
- Status information is updated.

As a result the system starts forwarding user data to and from that subscriber host.

A subscriber is instantiated as soon as the first subscriber host for this subscriber is instantiated, and deleted when the last subscriber host for this subscriber is deleted.

Subscriber Identification Policy

The subscriber identification policy is identified by name and defines:

- a description (optional)
- the sub-profile map
- the sla-profile map
- the app-profile map (optional)
- the location of a DHCPv4 ACK python script (optional):
 - primary, secondary and tertiary locations are possible
- the DHCP option used to get the identification strings from (optional)

A subscriber identification policy is needed for dynamic hosts only. In that case one of the ESM data sources from [Figure 101](#) is used.

Using a python script for subscriber host identification and instantiation is restricted to IPv4 hosts when triggered by the DHCPv4 ACK message.

The first example has no explicit mappings.

```
configure
  subscriber-mgmt
    sub-ident-policy "sub-id-pol-1" create
      description "direct mapping policy"
      sub-profile-map
        use-direct-map-as-default
      exit
      sla-profile-map
        use-direct-map-as-default
      exit
      app-profile-map
        use-direct-map-as-default
      exit
    exit
```

The second example contains explicit mappings.

```
configure
  subscriber-mgmt
    sub-ident-policy "sub-id-pol-2" create
      description "explicit mapping policy"
      sub-profile-map
        entry key "sub-string-1" sub-profile "sub-prof-1"
        entry key "sub-string-2" sub-profile "sub-prof-2"
        entry key "sub-string-3" sub-profile "sub-prof-3"
      exit
      sla-profile-map
        entry key "sla-string-1" sla-profile "sla-prof-1"
```

Subscriber Identification Policy

```
        entry key "sla-string-2" sla-profile "sla-prof-2"
        entry key "sla-string-21" sla-profile "sla-prof-20"
        entry key "sla-string-22" sla-profile "sla-prof-20"
    exit
exit
```

Note that multiple strings can be mapped to the same profile, as the example above shows.

The subscriber identification policy is applied at SAP level in the sub-sla-mgmt context, as shown below.

```
configure
service
  ies 1
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
    --- snip ---
    group-interface "grp-int-1-1" create
    --- snip ---
    sap 1/1/1:111 create
      sub-sla-mgmt
        def-sub-profile "sub-prof-1"
        def-sla-profile "sla-prof-1"
        sub-ident-policy "sub-id-pol-1"
        multi-sub-sap 400
        no shutdown
      exit
    exit
  exit
exit
```


Combining Multiple ESM Data Sources

Multiple ESM data sources from [Figure 101](#) can be consulted for instantiating a subscriber host. When multiple ESM data sources are used, they are accessed in following sequence:

1. LUDB
2. RADIUS
3. DHCPv4 ACK python
4. Default

The outputs from the different data sources are merged. Data is appended as explained in the Flexible Authentication Model in ESM section of this guide.

Default ESM Data Profiles

Default ESM data profiles are used when the other ESM data sources (LUDB, RADIUS, DHCPv4 ACK python) only provide partial data, or no data at all. The default data complements the data provided by the data sources in order to get the full set of ESM data needed for host instantiation.

Default ESM data profiles are defined per SAP in the sub-sla-mgmt context, as shown in the following example.

```
configure
  service
    ies 1
      subscriber-interface "sub-int-1-1"
      group-interface "grp-int-1-1"
      sap 1/1/1:111 create
        sub-sla-mgmt
          def-sub-profile "sub-prof-1"
          def-sla-profile "sla-prof-1"
          sub-ident-policy "sub-id-pol-1"
          multi-sub-sap 400
          no shutdown
        exit
      exit
    exit
  exit
```

Address Information

Address information for both IPv4 as well as IPv6 is provided to subscriber hosts using a DHCPv4/v6 server, an LUDB or a RADIUS server.

The IPv4 and IPv6 address information encompasses:

- IPv4 and/or IPv6 address/mask and prefix
- default gateway (in IPv6 announced through RA messages)
- DNS server(s)
- etc

The following cases can be distinguished to obtain an IPv4 or IPv6 address/prefix upon LUDB/RADIUS authentication:

- LUDB/RADIUS returns a unique IPv4/IPv6 address/prefix, directly.
- LUDB/RADIUS returns a pool name, which then is resolved to a unique IP address/prefix through:
 - a DHCP server,
 - or Local Address Assignment (LAA).
- LUDB/RADIUS does not return a unique IPv4/IPv6 address/prefix, nor a pool-name. In that case a DHCP server is contacted using a gi-address or link-address to obtain an address/prefix.

Configuring a DHCP server is out of the scope of this example.

Direct Address Assignment using LUDB/RADIUS

In the example shown in [Figure 102](#), a unique IP address is retrieved from LUDB/RADIUS. No interaction with a DHCP server is needed at all.

This scenario applies to IPoE (DHCPv4, DHCPv6 and SLAAC) as well as to PPPoE (IPCP, DHCPv6, and SLAAC).

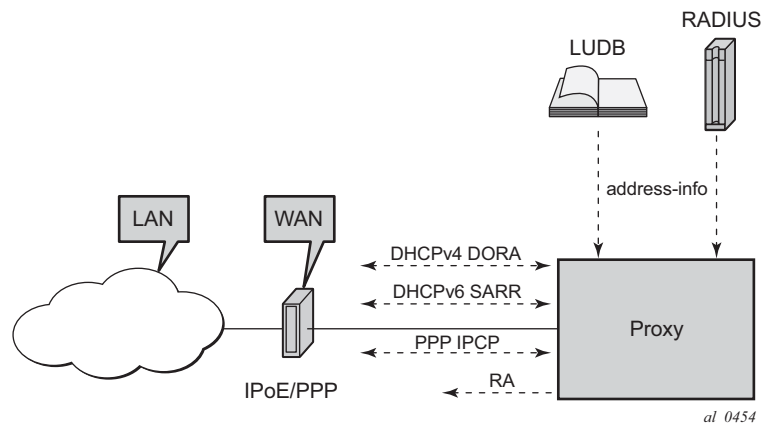


Figure 102: Direct Address Assignment using LUDB/RADIUS

DHCP clients require a DHCP server address in the DHCP messages, and as such a *server-id* (IPv6) and/or an *emulated-server* (IPv4) must be configured, see the example below. IPCP and SLAAC do not require a DHCP server so these commands can be omitted.

```
configure
  service
    ies 1
      subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
        --- snip ---
      group-interface "grp-int-1-1" create
        ipv6
          dhcp6
            --- snip ---
            proxy-server
              server-id duid-11
              client-applications dhcp ppp
              no shutdown
            exit
          exit
        exit
      arp-populate
      dhcp
        proxy-server
          emulated-server 10.1.1.254
          no shutdown
        exit
```

Address Information

```
        --- snip ---  
exit
```

The emulated-server address must be a unique address in one of the subnets allowed on this subscriber interface.

Indirect Address Assignment using a DHCP server

In the example shown in [Figure 103](#), the IPv4/IPv6 address/prefix is obtained from a DHCP server, using a pool-name as returned by LUDB/RADIUS.

The DHCP server (DHCPv4/DHCPv6) can be co-located with the BNG node (internal DHCP server) or can be external to the BNG node.

This scenario applies to both DHCPv4/DHCPv6 as well as to PPP. PPP relies on an internal DHCP client and communicates with the PPP client through IPCP.

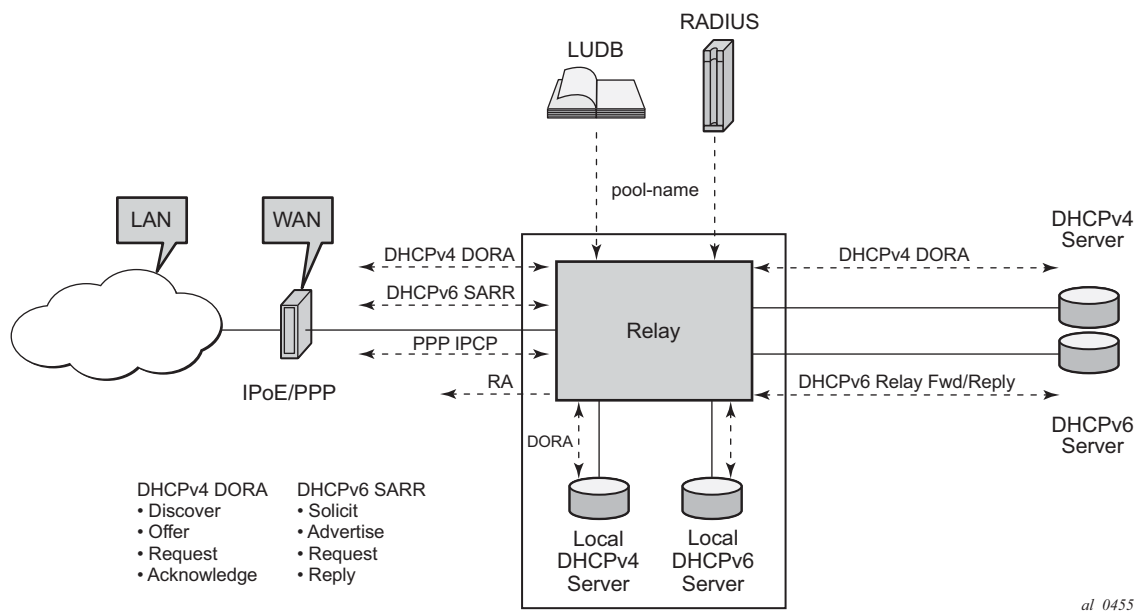


Figure 103: Indirect Address Assignment using a DHCP Server

Relaying is configured for IPv4 and for IPv6 separately, at group-interface level.

The DHCPv4 relay agent is configured in the `dhcp` context:

- *gi-address* – The gateway IPv4-address used by the relay-agent.
- *server* - The DHCP server IPv4-address, 10.11.11.11 in the example.
- *client-applications dhcp ppp*
→ The DHCP server accepts requests for DHCP and for PPP.
- *option* – The options added/removed to/from messages towards the server. In the example the circuit-id, the remote-id and the pool-name are added.

- *trusted* – This parameter ensures that DHCP messages with option 82 included and the gi-address set to zero are being processed instead of being dropped.

The DHCPv6 relay agent is configured in the ipv6 dhcp6 relay context:

- *server* - The DHCP server IPv6 address, 2001:DB8::11 in the example.
- *client-applications dhcp ppp*

The DHCP server accepts requests for DHCP and for PPP.

```
configure
service
  ies 1
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1"
      --- snip ---
    group-interface "grp-int-1-1"
      ipv6
        --- snip ---
        dhcp6
          relay
            server 2001:DB8::11
            client-applications dhcp ppp
            no shutdown
          exit
        exit
      exit
    exit
  dhcp
    option
      action replace
      circuit-id
      remote-id
      vendor-specific-option
      pool-name
    exit
  exit
  server 10.11.11.1
  trusted
  lease-populate 100
  client-applications dhcp ppp
  gi-address 10.1.1.254
  no shutdown
exit
```

Indirect Address Assignment using LAA

In the example shown in [Figure 104](#) LUDB/RADIUS returns a pool-name which is resolved into an IP address using Local Address Assignment (LAA). LAA is implemented using a procedure call to an internal DHCP server, and not through the typical DHCPv4 DORA or DHCPv6 SARR sequence.

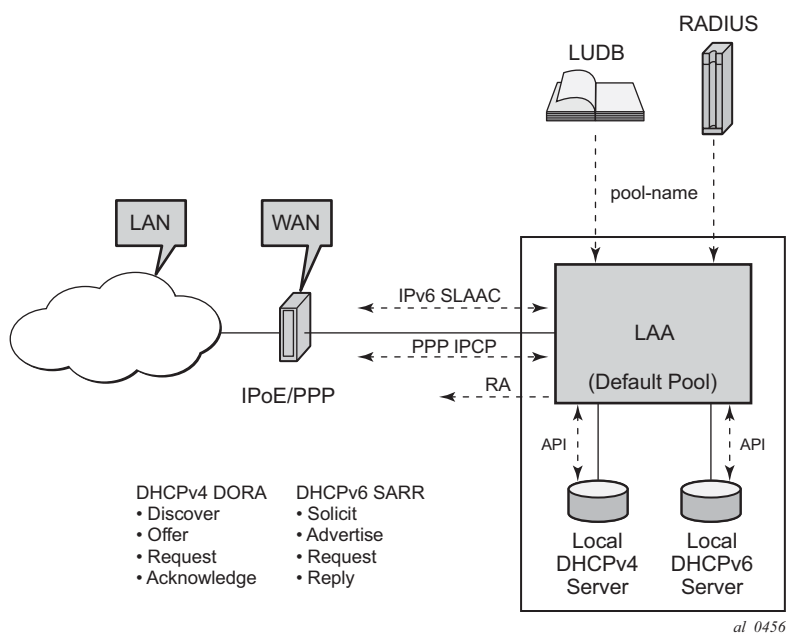


Figure 104: Indirect Address Assignment using LAA

This scenario applies to PPPv4 hosts as well as to IPv6 SLAAC hosts. LAA can also be used to provide the IA-NA address in DHCPv6 proxy scenarios where an LUDB or a RADIUS server provides an IPv6 Delegated Prefix (Delegated-IPv6-Prefix) and an IPv6 WAN Address Pool (Framed-IPv6-Pool).

LAA is configured at group-interface level and overrules the relay scenario for the IPCP DHCP client (PPP) when both are configured.

The IPv4 parameters are configured in the local-address-assignment context:

- *server* – The internal DHCPv4 server to contact, identified by name.
- *default-pool* – Defines the pool name to use in case neither the LUDB nor the RADIUS server provides a pool-name.
- *client-application* – ppp-v4.

The IPv6 parameters are configured in the local-address-assignment ipv6 context:

- *server* – the DHCPv6 server to contact, identified by name.
- *client-application* – ppp-slaac and/or ipoe-wan.

An example is show below.

```
configure
service
  ies 1
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
      --- snip ---
    group-interface "grp-int-1-1" create
      local-address-assignment
        server "int-dhcp-v4"
        client-application ppp-v4
        default-pool "pool4-2"
      ipv6
        server "int-dhcp-v6"
        client-application ppp-slaac ipoe-wan
      exit
    no shutdown
  exit
```

LAA details are out of the scope of this example.

ESM Data Retrieval Examples

The following ESM data source scenarios are examined below:

- static host ESM data retrieval
- dynamic host ESM data retrieval:
 - RADIUS
 - LUDB + RADIUS access

DHCPv4 ACK python details are out of the scope of this example.

ESM Data Retrieval for Static Hosts

The example below shows the creation of a static host. The IP address is mandatory, a MAC address is optional.

```
configure
service
  ies 1
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1"
    group-interface "grp-int-1-1"
    sap 1/1/1:111
    description "sap for customer 1"
    static-host ip 10.1.1.101 create
    sla-profile "sla-prof-2"
    sub-profile "sub-prof-2"
    subscriber 03-7654321
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
```

Identification is not needed for static hosts: the subscriber-id, sub-profile and sla-profile used, are configured explicitly. Instantiation takes place at host creation time (**no shutdown**).

The following command shows the details for a single static host. The forwarding state is *Not Fwding*, meaning that no traffic can be forwarded to and from that host in this state.

ESM Data Retrieval Examples

```
*A:BNG# show service id 1 static-host ip-address 10.1.1.101 detail
=====
Static Hosts for service 1
=====
Sap                IP Address      Configured MAC   Dynamic MAC
Subscriber          Admin State      Fwding State
-----
1/1/1:111          10.1.1.101      N/A              N/A
03-7654321         Up              Not Fwding
-----
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : grp-int-1-1
Sub Profile          : sub-prof-2
SLA Profile          : sla-prof-2
App Profile          : N/A
-----
Number of static hosts : 1
=====
*A:BNG# #
```

Once the MAC address of the host is learned through the ARP protocol, the forwarding state is set to *Fwding* and traffic now can be forwarded to and from that host.

```
*A:BNG# show service id 1 static-host
=====
Static Hosts for service 1
=====
Sap                IP Address      Configured MAC   Dynamic MAC
Subscriber          Admin State      Fwding State
-----
1/1/1:111          10.1.1.101      N/A              00:00:00:99:99:99
03-7654321         Up              Fwding
-----
Number of static hosts : 1
=====
*A:BNG# #
```

ESM Data Retrieval through RADIUS

A RADIUS server can provide ESM data, including:

- subscriber-id
- address information
- sub-profile-string
- sla-profile-string
- etc.

The BNG sends a RADIUS Access-Request including the User-Name attribute identifying the host for authentication purposes. The User-Name format is configurable on the BNG:

- MAC-address
- circuit-ID, remote-ID
- user@domain
- etc.

An excerpt from the Free-RADIUS user file used for this example is shown below. The first line of a block contains the User-Name with the credentials.

```
00:00:00:22:22:22    Auth-Type := Local, Cleartext-Password := ""
    Alc-Subsc-ID-Str = "sub-22",
    Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str = "sub-string-1",
    Alc-SLA-Prof-Str = "sla-string-1"

BSAN64|40|1/1/2:300 Auth-Type := Local, User-Password == "LetMeIn"
    Alc-Subsc-ID-Str = "subscriber-300",
    Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str = "subpro1-string",
    Alc-SLA-Prof-Str = "slapro1-string",
    Session-Timeout = 600

sub202@provider    Cleartext-Password := "sub202"
    Alc-Subsc-ID-Str = "sub-44",
    Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str = "sub-string-3",
    Alc-SLA-Prof-Str = "sla-string-22",
    Framed-IP-Address = 10.2.1.202,
    Framed-IP-Netmask = 255.255.255.0
```

The lines following the User-Name with the credentials lists the attributes the RADIUS server returns after successfully authenticating the user, and include:

- Alc-Subsc-ID-Str
- Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str
- Alc-SLA-Prof-Str

- Framed-IP-Address
 - Framed-IP-Netmask
 - etc.
-

Authentication Policy

An authentication policy is needed for retrieval of the data from a RADIUS server, indirectly indicating the RADIUS server(s) to contact.

The following steps are needed to create an authentication policy:

1. Define one or more RADIUS servers.
2. Define a RADIUS server policy.
3. Define an authentication policy.

Step 1. The example defines a single RADIUS server, indicating the name, the address and the secret to use.

```
configure
router
radius-server
server "server-1" address 192.168.202.84 secret secret-1 create
exit
```

Step 2. The radius-server-policy refers to the server defined above. In this example the Base router is used to reach the RADIUS server.

```
configure
aaa
radius-server-policy "rad-serv-pol-1" create
description "Radius AAA server policy"
servers
router "Base"
server 1 name "server-1"
exit
exit
```

Step 3. The authentication policy specifies to include the circuit-id and the remote-id attributes towards the RADIUS server as well as the radius-server-policy to use. Multiple authentication policies can be defined.

```
configure
subscriber-mgmt
authentication-policy "auth-pol-1" create
pppoe-access-method pap-chap
include-radius-attribute
circuit-id
remote-id
exit
```

```
radius-server-policy "rad-serv-pol-1"
```

The authentication policy is applied at a group-interface. The example below shows both group interfaces using the same authentication policy.

```
configure
service
  ies 1
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1"
    group-interface "grp-int-1-1"
      -- snip --
      authentication-policy "auth-pol-1"
      -- snip -
    exit
    group-interface "grp-int-1-2"
      -- snip --
      authentication-policy "auth-pol-1"
      -- snip -
    exit
```

DHCP Host

The following command shows the strings returned by the RADIUS server for the DHCPv4 host with MAC-address 00:00:00:22:22:22.

```
A:BNG# show service id 1 dhcp lease-state mac 00:00:00:22:22:22 detail
=====
DHCP lease states for service 1
=====
Service ID           : 1
IP Address           : 10.1.1.9
Client HW Address    : 00:00:00:22:22:22
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : grp-int-1-1
SAP                  : 1/1/1:112
Up Time              : 0d 00:03:30
Remaining Lease Time : 9d 23:56:30
Remaining SessionTime: N/A
Persistence Key      : N/A

Sub-Ident            : "sub-22"
Sub-Profile-String   : "sub-string-2"           # profile string before translation
SLA-Profile-String   : "sla-string-2"           # profile string before translation
App-Profile-String   : ""
Lease ANCP-String    : ""
Lease Int Dest Id    : ""
Category-Map-Name    : ""

--- snip ---

Lease-Time           : 10d 00:00:00
DHCP Server Addr     : 10.11.11.1
Radius User-Name     : "00:00:00:22:22:22"
-----
Number of lease states : 1
=====
A:BNG#
```

The strings returned by the RADIUS server are translated according the subscriber identification profile for retrieval of the actual profile data.

The actual profiles being used can be found using following command.

```
*A:BNG# show service id 1 subscriber-hosts mac 00:00:00:22:22:22 detail
=====
Subscriber Host table
=====
Sap                Subscriber
  IP Address
  MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin      Fwding State
-----
1/1/1:112          sub-22
  10.1.1.6
    00:00:00:22:22:22  N/A      DHCP      Fwding
-----
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : grp-int-1-1
Sub Profile          : sub-prof-2      # profile name after translation
SLA Profile          : sla-prof-2      # profile name after translation
App Profile          : N/A
Egress Q-Group       : N/A

--- snip ---

-----
Number of subscriber hosts : 1
=====
*A:BNG#
```

PPP Host

The following command shows the strings returned by the RADIUS server for the PPP host with user-name sub202@provider.

```
*A:BNG# show service id 1 ppp session user-name sub202@provider detail
=====
PPP sessions for service 1
=====

User-Name           : sub202@provider

Description          : svc:1 sap:1/1/1:212 mac:00:00:00:44:44:44 sid:1
Up Time              : 0d 00:17:13
Type                 : oE
Termination          : local
IP/L2TP-Id/If-Id     : 10.2.1.202
MC-Standby           : No
Session Time Left    : N/A

--- snip ---

Subscriber           : "sub-44"
Sub-Profile-String    : "sub-string-3" # profile string before translation
SLA-Profile-String    : "sla-string-22" # profile string before translation
ANCP-String           : ""
Int-Dest-Id           : ""
App-Profile-String    : ""
Category-Map-Name     : ""

--- snip ---

Radius Class          :
Radius User-Name      : sub202@provider
--- snip ---
-----
No. of sessions: 1
=====
*A:BNG# #
```


The actual profiles being used can be found using following command.

```
*A:BNG# show service id 1 subscriber-hosts mac 00:00:00:44:44:44 detail
=====
Subscriber Host table
=====
Sap                Subscriber
  IP Address
  MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin      Fwding State
-----
1/1/1:212          sub-44
  10.2.1.202
    00:00:00:44:44:44    1          IPCP          Fwding
-----
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-2
Group-interface      : grp-int-2-1
Sub Profile           : sub-prof-3    # profile name after translation
SLA Profile           : sla-prof-20   # profile name after translation
App Profile           : N/A

--- snip ---

-----
Number of subscriber hosts : 1
=====
*A:BNG#
```

For both the DHCPv4 host as well as the PPPv4 host, the output aligns with the data provided by the RADIUS server and the defined profile maps.

ESM Data Retrieval through a Local User Database

A Local User Database (LUDB) can provide ESM data for DHCP and PPP hosts, including:

- subscriber-id
- address information
- sub-profile string
- sla-profile string
- MSAP service-id
- retail service-id
- etc.

Retrieval of data in an LUDB requires matching criteria, which can be one of the following items, or a combination of the following items, including:

- MAC-address
- circuit-id/remote-id
- username
- SAP-id
- etc.

The example below defines an LUDB named *ludb-1* which matches DHCP hosts by means of MAC address, and PPP hosts by means of username.

```
configure
  subscriber-mgmt
    local-user-db "ludb-1" create
    dhcp
      match-list mac
      host "host-121" create
      host-identification
        mac 00:00:00:aa:aa:aa
      exit
      address 10.1.1.121
      identification-strings 254 create
        subscriber-id "sub-121"
        sla-profile-string "sla-string-3"
        sub-profile-string "sub-string-2"
      exit
      options
        subnet-mask 255.255.255.0
        default-router 10.1.1.254
      exit
      ipv6-wan-address-pool "pool6-2"
      ipv6-delegated-prefix-pool "pool6-2"
      no shutdown
    exit
```

```

        host "host-122" create
            host-identification
                mac 00:00:00:bb:bb:bb
            exit
            auth-policy "auth-pol-1"
            no shutdown
        exit
    exit
ppp
    match-list username
    host "host-123" create
        host-identification
            username "user@domain"
        exit
        address 10.1.1.123/32
        password pap user
        identification-strings 254 create
            subscriber-id "sub-123"
            sla-profile-string "sla-string-3"
            sub-profile-string "sub-string-1"
        exit
        no shutdown
    exit
exit
no shutdown
exit

```

Note:

- The entire LUDB can be disabled.
- Individual host entries can be disabled.

An LUDB can be applied at group interface level in different contexts:

- dhcp
- ipv6 dhcp6
- ppp
- pppoe

For the LUDB to provide ESM data, no authentication policy may be applied at group interface level, and the LUDB itself must be in the no shutdown state.

The following example shows the LUDB named *ludb-1* applied to group-interface *grp-int-1-2* in the dhcp and the pppoe context.

ESM Data Retrieval Examples

```
configure
service
  ies 1
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1"
      address 10.1.1.254/24
      address 10.1.2.254/24
      group-interface "grp-int-1-2"
        dhcp
          --- snip ---
          gi-address 10.1.1.254
          user-db "ludb-1"
          no shutdown
        exit
      no authentication-policy
      sap 1/1/1:121 create
        sub-sla-mgmt
          def-sub-profile "sub-prof-1"
          def-sla-profile "sla-prof-1"
          sub-ident-policy "sub-id-pol-1"
          multi-sub-sap
          no shutdown
        exit
      exit
    sap 1/1/1:122 create
      sub-sla-mgmt
        def-sub-profile "sub-prof-1"
        def-sla-profile "sla-prof-1"
        sub-ident-policy "sub-id-pol-1"
        multi-sub-sap
        no shutdown
      exit
    exit
  pppoe
    session-limit 100
    user-db "ludb-1"
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
```

For *host-121*, with MAC-address 00:00:00:aa:aa:aa, all ESM data is provided by the LUDB. The detailed DHCP lease state shows the actual profile strings, the subscriber-ID and the IP address used. The Lease Info origin is set to UserDb.

```

A:BNG# show service id 1 dhcp lease-state mac 00:00:00:aa:aa:aa detail
=====
DHCP lease states for service 1
=====
Service ID           : 1
IP Address           : 10.1.1.121
Client HW Address    : 00:00:00:aa:aa:aa
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : grp-int-1-2
SAP                  : 1/1/1:121
--- snip ---
Sub-Ident            : "sub-121"
Sub-Profile-String   : "sub-string-2"
SLA-Profile-String   : "sla-string-3"
--- snip ---
Lease Info origin    : UserDb
--- snip ---
Ip-Netmask           : 255.255.255.0
Broadcast-Ip-Addr    : 10.1.1.255
Default-Router       : 10.1.1.254
Primary-Dns          : N/A
Secondary-Dns        : N/A
--- snip ---
Relay Agent Information
  Circuit Id         : BNG|1|grp-int-1-2|1/1/1:121
Radius User-Name     : ""
-----
Number of lease states : 1
=====
*A:BNG#

```

The detailed DHCPv6 lease state for the same host is shown below. The Lease State info now is DHCP for both IA-NA as well as for IA-PD where the IA-NA and the IA-PD are allocated by the DHCP server based on the ipv6-wan-address-pool and the ipv6-delegated-prefix-pool respectively, as indicated by the LUDB.

```

*A:BNG# show service id 1 dhcp6 lease-state mac 00:00:00:aa:aa:aa detail
=====
DHCP lease states for service 1
=====
Service ID           : 1
IP Address           : 2001:DB8:201::1/128
Client HW Address    : 00:00:00:aa:aa:aa
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : grp-int-1-2
SAP                  : 1/1/1:121
--- snip ---
Sub-Ident            : "sub-121"
Sub-Profile-String   : "sub-string-2"
SLA-Profile-String   : "sla-string-3"
--- snip ---
Pool Name            : "pool6-2"
Dhcp6 Server Addr    : 2001:DB8::11
--- snip ---
Lease Info origin    : DHCP
--- snip ---
Radius User-Name     : ""

```

ESM Data Retrieval Examples

```
-----
Service ID           : 1
IP Address           : 2001:DB8:202::/56
Client HW Address    : 00:00:00:aa:aa:aa
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : grp-int-1-2
SAP                  : 1/1/1:121
--- snip ---
Sub-Ident            : "sub-121"
Sub-Profile-String   : "sub-string-2"
SLA-Profile-String   : "sla-string-3"
--- snip ---
Pool Name            : "pool6-2"
Dhcp6 Server Addr    : 2001:DB8::11
--- snip ---
Lease Info origin    : DHCP
--- snip ---
Radius User-Name     : ""
-----
Number of lease states : 2
=====
*A:BNG#
```

Because only an authentication policy is defined for *host-122*, with MAC address 00:00:00:bb:bb:bb, the profile strings and the subscriber-ID are provided by the RADIUS server. The IP address is provided by the DHCP server. The Lease Info origin is set to DHCP.

```
A:BNG# show service id 1 dhcp lease-state mac 00:00:00:bb:bb:bb detail
=====
DHCP lease states for service 1
=====
Service ID           : 1
IP Address           : 10.1.1.5
Client HW Address    : 00:00:00:bb:bb:bb
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : grp-int-1-2
SAP                  : 1/1/1:122
--- snip ---
Sub-Ident            : "sub-122"
Sub-Profile-String   : "sub-string-3"
SLA-Profile-String   : "sla-string-1"
--- snip ---
Lease Info origin    : DHCP

Ip-Netmask           : 255.255.255.0
Broadcast-Ip-Addr    : N/A
Default-Router       : 10.1.1.254
--- snip ---
Lease-Time           : 10d 00:00:00
DHCP Server Addr     : 10.11.11.1

Relay Agent Information
  Circuit Id         : BNG|1|grp-int-1-2|1/1/1:122
  Radius User-Name   : "00:00:00:bb:bb:bb"
-----
Number of lease states : 1
=====
A:BNG#
```

For *host-123*, the subscriber-ID, the profile strings and the IP-address are provided by the LUDB. Similar to *host-121*, no interaction with a RADIUS server is needed at all. The IP origin is set to local-user-db.

```
A:BNG# show service id 1 ppp session user-name "user@domain" detail
=====
PPP sessions for service 1
=====

User-Name          : user@domain

Description        : svc:1 sap:1/1/1:122 mac:00:00:00:cc:cc:cc sid:1
Up Time            : 0d 00:46:10
Type               : oE
-- snip --
PPP MTU            : 1492
PPP Auth-Protocol  : PAP
PPP User-Name      : user@domain

Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface     : grp-int-1-2

IP Origin          : local-user-db
DNS Origin         : none
NBNS Origin        : none

Subscriber        : "sub-123"
Sub-Profile-String : "sub-string-1"
SLA-Profile-String : "sla-string-3"
-- snip --
IP Address        : 10.1.1.123/32
-- snip --
Circuit-Id         :
Remote-Id          :

Radius Session-TO   : N/A
Radius Class        :
Radius User-Name    :
Logical-Line-Id     :
=====
No. of sessions: 1
=====
A:BNG#
```

LUDB details are out of the scope of this example.

Optional ESM Data

Limits

The maximum number of hosts, subscribers, sessions and leases are checked during the host instantiation process, and can be defined at following levels:

- sla-profile level: host-limit
- sap-level: multi-sub-sap
- group-interface level: lease-populate, session-limit, sap-session-limit

The sla-profile optionally defines a maximum number of hosts allowed by this profile. An example is shown below.

```
configure
subscriber-mgmt
  sla-profile "sla-prof-3" create
    host-limit 4
  ingress
    qos 100
  exit
  egress
    qos 100
  exit
exit
exit
```

By default only hosts from a single subscriber can connect through a SAP. This condition can be lifted as follows.

```
configure
service
  ies 1
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1"
    group-interface "grp-int-1-1" sub-sla-mgmt
    sap 1/1/1:112 create
      sub-sla-mgmt
        def-sub-profile "sub-prof-1"
        def-sla-profile "sla-prof-1"
        sub-ident-policy "sub-id-pol-2"
        multi-sub-sap
        no shutdown
      exit
    exit
  exit
```


The maximum number of leases assigned to subscriber hosts by the DHCP server can be defined at group interface level as follows.

```
configure
service
  ies 1
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1"
      address 10.1.1.254/24
      group-interface "grp-int-1-1"
        dhcp
          proxy-server
            emulated-server 10.1.1.254
            no shutdown
          exit
          server 10.11.11.1
          trusted
          lease-populate 100
          client-applications dhcp ppp
          gi-address 10.1.1.254
          no shutdown
        exit
      exit
```

The maximum number of sessions for PPP as well as for PPPoE, including the sap-session-limit, is also defined at group interface level, as the example below shows.

```
configure
service
  ies 1
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1"
      group-interface "grp-int-1-1"
        ppp
          session-limit 50
        exit
        pppoe
          session-limit 40
          sap-session-limit 30
          no shutdown
        exit
      exit
```

Filtering

Filter policies allow for selectively dropping, forwarding or redirecting ingress/egress traffic. They are also known as access control lists (ACLs) and can optionally be included in the SLA-profile.

An example sla-profile with IP-filters is show below.

```
configure
  subscriber-mgmt
    sla-profile "sla-prof-3" create
      host-limit 4
      ingress
        qos 100
      exit
      ip-filter 1
      ipv6-filter 1
    exit
    egress
      qos 100
    exit
    ip-filter 2
    ipv6-filter 2
  exit
```

Filter policies must be defined before they can be used in an SLA profile.

Accounting

Accounting policies define how to count the traffic for billing purposes on a per service basis. Two types of accounting are available:

- RADIUS accounting
- XML accounting

For RADIUS accounting, the accounting data is stored on the RADIUS accounting server. For XML accounting, the accounting data is stored locally on a flash-disk on the node.

The example below shows the definition of a radius-accounting-policy and reuses the radius-server-policy defined before.

```
configure
  subscriber-mgmt
    radius-accounting-policy "rad-acct-pol-1" create
      host-accounting interim-update
      update-interval 5
      include-radius-attribute
        framed-ip-addr
      sla-profile
```

```

        sub-profile
    exit
    radius-accounting-server
        router "Base"
        server 1 address 192.168.202.84 secret secret-1
    exit
    radius-server-policy "rad-serv-pol-1"
exit

```

The radius-accounting policy is referred to from the SUB profile as shown in the example below.

```

configure
    subscriber-mgmt
        sub-profile "sub-prof-1" create
            radius-accounting-policy "rad-acct-pol-1"
        ingress
            policer-control-policy "pol-ctrl-1"
        exit
    exit
    egress
        scheduler-policy "down-1"
    exit
    exit
exit

```

For XML accounting, an accounting policy is referred to from the SUB profile.

```

configure
    subscriber-mgmt
        sub-profile "sub-prof-2" create
            accounting-policy 10
            collect-stats
        ingress
            scheduler-policy "sched-up-1"
        exit
    egress
        scheduler-policy "sched-down-1"
    exit
    exit
exit

```

The **collect-stats** command activates the generation of accounting files.

Accounting policies must be defined before they can be used in a SUB profile.

RADIUS accounting and XML accounting details are out of the scope of this example.

Application Profile

An application profile is needed for supporting Application Assurance.

Traffic is diverted to an MS-ISA MDA which processes the traffic according the application profile, which for that purpose is assigned to:

- an ESM subscriber, or an group of ESM subscribers
- a SAP
- a spoke SDP

ESM subscribers are assigned an application profile either statically or dynamically.

The example below shows the assignment of an application profile to a static host.

```
configure
  service
    ies 1
      subscriber-interface "sub-int-1"
        group-interface "grp-int-1-1"
          sap 1/1/1:111
            description "sap for customer 1"
            static-host ip 10.1.1.101 create
              app-profile "app-prof-3"
              sla-profile "sla-prof-2"
              sub-profile "sub-prof-1"
              subscriber 03-7654321
              no shutdown
            exit
          exit
        exit
      exit
    exit
```

For dynamic hosts, the same rules apply as for the sub-profile scribe and the sla-profile, meaning that the app-profile can be found through:

1. LUDB
2. RADIUS
3. DHCPv4 ACK python
4. Default

The example below shows the assignment of a default application profile at the SAP level.

```
configure
service
  ies 1
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1"
      group-interface "grp-int-1-1" sub-sla-mgmt
        sap 1/1/1:112 create
          sub-sla-mgmt
            def-sub-profile "sub-prof-1"
            def-sla-profile "sla-prof-1"
            def-app-profile "app-prof-1"
            sub-ident-policy "sub-id-pol-2"
            multi-sub-sap
            no shutdown
          exit
        exit
      exit
    exit
```

Application profiles must be defined before they can be referenced.

Application Assurance and Application Assurance subscribers details are out of the scope of this example.

Intermediate Destinations

An intermediate destination is an aggregation point in the network and identified through the intermediate destination identity (inter-dest-id).

Most typically Access Nodes (ANs) are considered intermediate destinations.

The inter-dest-id is an optional per subscriber attribute.

The intermediate destination is used in the BNG for supporting QoS, as an example:

- By shaping the aggregate rate of all egress traffic of subscribers connected to an AN to prevent congestion of the link towards that AN.
- To ensure fairness amongst the subscriber hosts connected to that AN. For that purpose the inter-dest-id is linked to an hierarchical scheduler via a virtual port (Vport).

The example below shows the assignment of the inter-dest-id to a static host.

```
configure
service
  ies 1
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1"
    group-interface "grp-int-1-1"
    sap 1/1/1:111
    description "sap for customer 1"
    static-host ip 10.1.1.101 create
      inter-dest-id "bsan-1"
      sla-profile "sla-prof-2"
      sub-profile "sub-prof-1"
      subscriber 03-7654321
      no shutdown
    exit
  exit
```

The inter-dest-id does not to be translated.

Intermediate destination details are out of the scope of this example.

Conclusion

This chapter explains basic ESM concepts including the definition of subscribers and subscriber hosts. The host identification and instantiation process was explained, indicating the mandatory and optional ESM data fetched during the process (address information, sub-profile, sla-profile, app-profile, inter-dest-id, etc.). The address information retrieval process was explained. The different sources from where the ESM data can originate were mentioned, including some examples. Also the sub-ident-policy and the authentication-policy, needed during the identification and instantiation process, are explained in detail.

ESM IPv4: Multicast in a Wholesale/Retail Scenario

In This Chapter

This section describes ESM IPv4 multicast configurations in a wholesale/retail scenario.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 582](#)
- [Overview on page 583](#)
- [Configuration on page 585](#)
- [Conclusion on page 596](#)

Applicability

This configuration example is applicable to the 7750 SR-7/12/12e with IOM3-XP and IMMs, the 7450 ESS -7/12 chassis in mixed mode with IOM3-XP and IMMs, and also to the 7750 SR-c4/12 platforms, and requires chassis mode C as a minimum. Note that the 7450 will only operate as an L2TP Access Concentrator (LAC) for L2TP services.

The configuration was tested on release 11.0.R1 and covers both IPoE and PPPoE subscribers.

Overview

Alcatel-Lucent's Triple Play Service Delivery Architecture (TPSDA) allows operators to integrate High Speed Internet (HSI), voice and video services within a single network infrastructure. The goal of this configuration example is to provide a walk through of a wholesale/retail multicast setup.

There are two wholesale/retail models in TPSDA. In the first model, the retail service is co-located with the wholesale service whereas in the second model, for PPP services only, the retail service is on a separate BNG. The network topology shown in [Figure 105](#) is the first model. It consists of two 7750s; BNG-1 is a wholesaler Broadband Network Gateway (BNG) with the retail service co-located and the second is a retailer router. [Figure 106](#) shows the second model where the retail service is a separate router and the connection between the wholesale and retail utilizes L2TP. The 7450 in both cases is used as an aggregation switch to aggregate all subscribers.

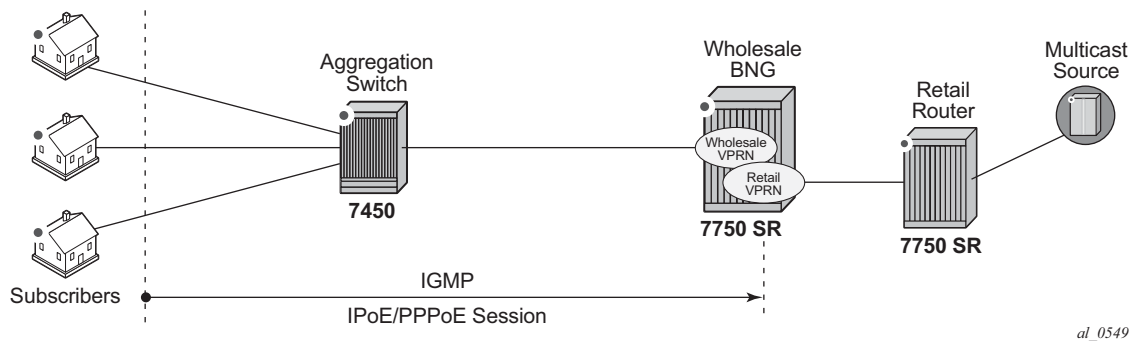


Figure 105: Wholesale/Retail Model 1

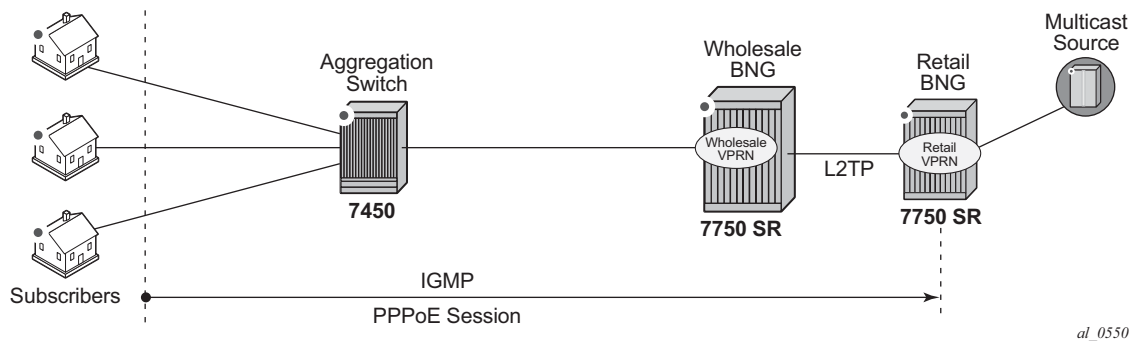


Figure 106: Wholesale/Retail Model 2

The second 7750 is connected directly to the multicast source. On the access side, the BNG is connected to an aggregation switch aggregating both PPPoE and IPoE subscribers.

There are two basic requirements for a subscriber to receive multicast streams. First, the group interface for the subscribers must have IGMP enabled. Second, the Enhanced Subscriber Management (ESM) subscriber must be allowed to receive multicast streams by having IGMP enabled. When both requirements are met, the BNG will process the subscribers' IGMP messages, otherwise, IGMP messages are dropped. All customer premise device (CPE) originated IGMP messages are aggregated via the 7450 and passed onto the wholesale BNG. It is always the retail VPRN that processes the IGMP messages. The wholesale VPRN SAPs performs the forwarding of the actual multicast streams.

Configuration

Note that a basic knowledge of multicast and ESM is assumed.

ESM Wholesale-Retail Multicast

There are various ways to provide wholesale and retail multicast function.

- For the IPoE and PPPoE Layer 3 wholesale/retail model, the wholesale and the retail services reside on separate VPRNs.
- For the PPPoE Layer 2 wholesale/retail model, L2TP is used.

ESM Layer 3 Wholesale-Retail Multicast

Figure 107 depicts a Layer 3 wholesale/retail scenario for both IPoE and PPPoE. The first BNG contains both the wholesale and retail configuration. There are two options for the retail BNG to deliver the multicast streams to the wholesale BNG:

1. MVPN between the BNGs
or
2. If using a routed interface between the BNGs, multicast routing is required.

This example will use the second option for delivery of the multicast streams in order to keep the configuration simple.

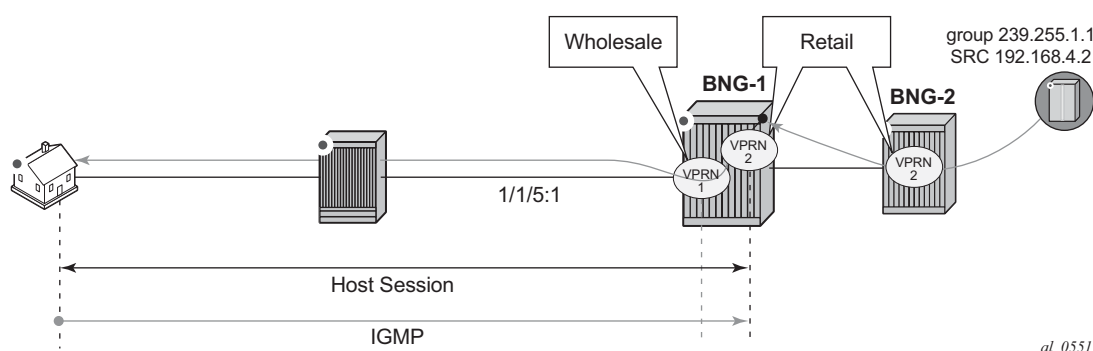


Figure 107: Layer 3 Wholesale/Retail

Step 1. Below is a configuration extract from the wholesale service on BNG-1 with the group interface added to IGMP. This configuration applies to both IPoE and PPPoE.

```
*A:BNG-1> config>service>vprn>sub-if# info
-----
      unnumbered "system"
      group-interface "wholesale-sub-int-1" create
      dhcp
        client-applications dhcp ppp
        no shutdown
      exit
      authentication-policy "auth-policy-1"
      sap 1/1/5:1 create
        sub-sla-mgmt
          def-sub-id use-sap-id
          def-sub-profile "multicast-profile-1"
          def-sla-profile "sla-profile-1"
          sub-ident-policy "sub-ident-policy-1"
          multi-sub-sap 10
          no shutdown
        exit
      exit
      pppoe
        session-limit 10
        sap-session-limit 10
        no shutdown
      exit
    exit
  igmp
    group-interface "wholesale-group-int-1"
      no shutdown
    exit
  no shutdown
exit
```

Step 2. Also on BNG-1, a separate VPRN is configured for the retailer. The retail configuration is a little different from the wholesale configuration. Below is a configuration extract from the retail VPRN with IGMP enabled. This configuration is applicable to both IPoE and PPPoE. The multicast streams received in the retail VPRN are forwarded to the wholesale VPRN. Other retail VPRNs can offer multicast streams as well, and the same multicast addresses can be re-used as long as the address is assigned to a different retail VPRN.

```
*A:BNG-1> config>service>vprn# info
-----
      route-distinguisher 65536:2
      subscriber-interface "retail-sub-int-1" fwd-service 1
        fwd-subscriber-interface "wholesale-sub-int-1" create
      address 10.255.255.254/8
      dhcp
        server 192.168.0.1
        client-applications dhcp ppp
        gi-address 10.255.255.254
        lease-populate 10
        no shutdown
```

```

        exit
    exit
    igmp
        group-interface fwd-service 1 "wholesale-group-int-1"
        no shutdown
    exit
    exit
    ospf 192.168.2.2
        area 0.0.0.0
            interface "system"
            no shutdown
        exit
        interface "retail-sub-int-1"
        no shutdown
    exit
        interface "int-BNG-1-BNG-2"
        no shutdown
    exit
    exit
    exit
    pim
        interface "int-BNG-1-BNG-2"
    exit
    exit

```

Step 3. Per host replication is mandatory in a wholesale/retail scenario. A single wholesale SAP might be shared among different retailers. A wholesale host that has requested a multicast group will always have the multicast delivered directly. Other hosts on the SAPs might belong to a different retailer and therefore 1) retailers might not have the same multicast group and sources and 2) their bandwidth should not be impacted by other hosts' multicast. Per-host replication is configured in the **igmp-policy** *igmp-policy-1*. This is mandatory for both IPoE and PPPoE subscribers.

```

*A:BNG 1> config>subscr-mgmt>igmp-policy# info
-----
    per-host-replication

```

Step 4. The interfaces are added to OSPF and to PIM on the retail BNG that is connected to the multicast source.

```

*A:BNG-2> config>service>vprn# info
-----
    ospf
        area 0.0.0.0
            interface "system"
            no shutdown
        exit
        interface "int-BNG-2-BNG-1"
        no shutdown
    exit
        interface "int-multicast-source"
        no shutdown
    exit
    exit
    exit

```

ESM Layer 3 Wholesale-Retail Multicast

```
pim
  interface "int-BNG-2-BNG-1"
  exit
  interface "int-multicast-source"
  exit
  rp
    static
      address 192.168.4.1
      group-prefix 224.0.0.0/4
    exit
  exit
exit
exit
```

With the above the configuration, the wholesale/retail setup is ready to process IGMP messages. Now send an IGMPv3 request to the wholesale SAP. The (S,G) is (192.168.4.2, 239.255.1.1) and the subscriber IP address is 10.0.0.2. The output below shows that the (S,G) is not registered in the wholesale VPRN but is in the retail VPRN.

```
*A:BNG-1> show router 1 igmp group
=====
IGMP Interface Groups
=====
IGMP Host Groups
=====
IGMP SAP Groups
=====
No Matching Entries
=====

*A:BNG-1> show router 2 igmp group
=====
IGMP Interface Groups
=====
IGMP Host Groups
=====
(192.168.4.2,239.255.1.1)
  Fwd List   : 10.0.0.2           Up Time : 0d 00:13:01
=====
IGMP SAP Groups
=====
-----
(*,G)/(S,G) Entries : 1
=====
```


To view all subscribers' (S,G) pairs, use the following command.

```
*A:BNG-1> show service active-subscribers igmp detail
=====
Active Subscribers Detail
=====
Subscriber                               IGMP-Policy
  HostAddr                               GrpItf                               NumGroups
    GrpAddr                               Type                               Up-Time                               Mode
      SrcAddr                               Type                               Blk/Fwd
-----
video_user_01                             igmp-policy-1
  10.0.0.2                               whole-sale                               1
    239.255.1.1                             Dynamic                               0d 01:37:55           Include
      192.168.4.2                             Dynamic                               Fwd
-----
Number of Subscribers : 1
=====
```

Only the retail VPRN is responsible for processing the IGMP messages. Therefore to troubleshoot a wholesale/retail setup, debug is only relevant on the retail router instance.

```
debug
  router "2"
    igmp
      group-interface fwd-service "1" "whole-sale"
      host "10.0.0.2"
      packet mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
    exit
  exit

7648 2013/05/24 16:59:41.02 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn2 IGMP[14]
"IGMP[14]: RX-PKT
[013 07:56:53.680] IGMP host 10.0.0.2 V3 PDU: 10.0.0.2 -> 224.0.0.22 pduLen
20
  Type: V3 REPORT maxrespCode 0x0 checksum 0xddf6
  Num Group Records: 1
  Group Record 0
  Type: ALW_NEW_SRCS, AuxDataLen 0, Num Sources 1
  Mcast Addr: 239.255.1.1
  Source Address List
    192.168.4.2

"

7649 2013/05/24 16:59:41.02 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn2 IGMP[vprn2 inst 1
4]
"IGMP[vprn2 inst 14]: igmpIfGroupAdd
Adding 239.255.1.1 to IGMP host 10.0.0.2 database"

7650 2013/05/24 16:59:41.02 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn2 IGMP[vprn2 inst 1
4]
"IGMP[vprn2 inst 14]: igmpProcessGroupRec
Process group rec ALW_NEW_SRCS received on host 10.0.0.2 for group 239.255.1.1 i
n mode INCLUDE. Num srcs 1"
```

```
7651 2013/05/24 16:59:41.02 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn2 IGMP[vprn2 inst 1
4]
"IGMP[vprn2 inst 14]: igmpIfSrcAdd
Adding i/f source entry for host 10.0.0.2 (192.168.4.2,239.255.1.1) to IGMP fwdList
Database, redir if N/A"
```

The same **debug** command can be used for troubleshooting IGMP leave messages as shown below.

```
7652 2013/05/24 16:59:43.90 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn2 IGMP[14]
"IGMP[14]: RX-PKT
[013 07:56:56.560] IGMP host 10.0.0.2 V3 PDU: 10.0.0.2 -> 224.0.0.22 pduLen
20
    Type: V3 REPORT maxrespCode 0x0 checksum 0xdcf6
    Num Group Records: 1
        Group Record 0
            Type: BLK_OLD_SRCS, AuxDataLen 0, Num Sources 1
            Mcast Addr: 239.255.1.1
            Source Address List
                192.168.4.2

"

7653 2013/05/24 16:59:43.90 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn2 IGMP[vprn2 inst 1
4]
"IGMP[vprn2 inst 14]: igmpProcessGroupRec
Process group rec BLK_OLD_SRCS received on host 10.0.0.2 for group 239.255.1.1 i
n mode INCLUDE. Num srcs 1"

7654 2013/05/24 16:59:43.90 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn2 IGMP[vprn2 inst 1
4]
"IGMP[vprn2 inst 14]: igmpProcessIfSrcTimerExp
Source Timer expired for IGMP host 10.0.0.2 (192.168.4.2,239.255.1.1)"

7655 2013/05/24 16:59:43.90 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn2 IGMP[vprn2 inst 1
4]
"IGMP[vprn2 inst 14]: igmpIfSrcDel
Deleting i/f source entry for host 10.0.0.2 (192.168.4.2,239.255.1.1) from IGMP Dat
abase. DeleteFromAvl: 1 !Redir 0"

7656 2013/05/24 16:59:43.90 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn2 IGMP[vprn2 inst 1
4]
"IGMP[vprn2 inst 14]: igmpIfGroupDel
Deleting 239.255.1.1 from IGMP host 10.0.0.2 database"
```

ESM L2TP Wholesale/Retail Multicast

As previously mentioned, the other option for PPPoE wholesale/retail is to use an L2TP connection as shown in [Figure 108](#). LAC-1 contains the wholesale configuration while LNS-1 contains the retail configuration.

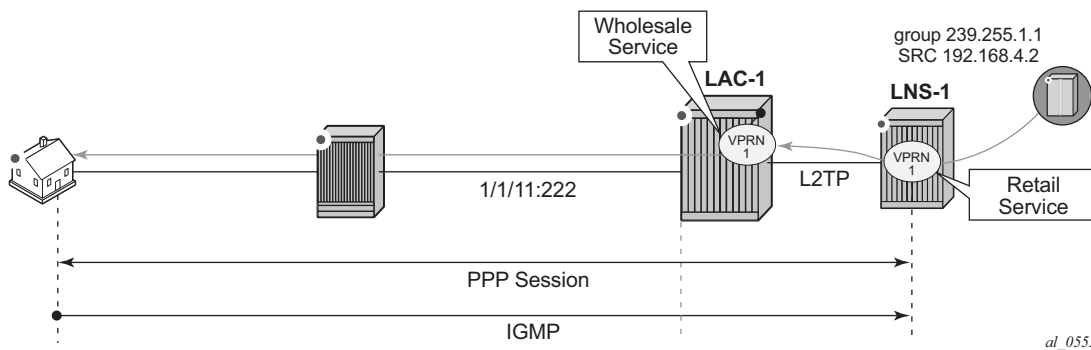


Figure 108: L2TP Wholesale-Retail Multicast

Below is a configuration extract for the wholesale L2TP Access Concentrator (LAC) in the wholesale service. It is using the local database, under the **pppoe user-db** configuration, to authenticate the subscriber. The wholesale LAC does not process any IGMP messages so it passes all messages to the retailer LNS.

```
*A:LAC-1> config>service>vprn>sub-if# info
-----
description "L2TP"
unnumbered "system"
group-interface "LAC-sub-int-1" create
  sap 1/1/11:222 create
  sub-sla-mgmt
    def-sub-id use-sap-id
    def-sub-profile "multicast-profile-1"
    def-sla-profile "sla-profile-1"
    sub-ident-policy "sub-ident-policy-1"
    multi-sub-sap 10
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
pppoe
  session-limit 10
  sap-session-limit 10
  user-db "ppp-db-1"
  no shutdown
exit
exit
l2tp
  group "l2tp-group-1" create
```

```
tunnel "tunnel-1" create
    auto-establish
    local-name "LAC"
    peer 192.0.2.3
    no shutdown
exit
no shutdown
exit
no shutdown
```

The retailer BNG serves as the L2TP Network Server (LNS). Below is a configuration extract for the LNS. IGMP must be enabled on the ESM group-interface in the retail service.

```
*A:LNS-1> config>service>vprn>sub-if# info
-----
address 10.255.255.254/8
group-interface "LNS-group-int-1" lns create
    sap-parameters
        sub-sla-mgmt
            def-sub-id use-sap-id
            def-sub-profile "multicast-profile-1"
            def-sla-profile "sla-profile-1"
            sub-ident-policy "sub-ident-policy-1"
            multi-sub-sap 10
            no shutdown
        exit
    exit
    dhcp
        server 192.168.0.1
        client-applications ppp
        gi-address 10.255.255.254
        lease-populate 10
        no shutdown
    exit
exit
l2tp
    group "l2tp-group-1" create
        tunnel "tunnel-1" create
            lns-group 1
            ppp
                authentication-policy "auth-policy-1"
                default-group-interface "LNS-group-int-1" service-id 1
                mtu 1500
                proxy-authentication always
                proxy-lcp always
            exit
            remote-name "LAC"
            no shutdown
        exit
        no shutdown
    exit
    no shutdown
igmp
    group-interface "LNS-group-int-1"
        no shutdown
    exit
    no shutdown
```

With the above configuration applied, the wholesale/retail multicast setup can be verified. Firstly, send an IGMP message from the subscriber, the example below uses IGMPv3. The (S,G) sent is (192.168.4.2, 239.255.1.1) from the subscriber with IP address 10.0.0.2. The show commands below can be used to verify the multicast group being sent to the subscriber.

```
*A:LNS-1> show service active-subscribers igmp detail
=====
Active Subscribers Detail
=====
Subscriber
  HostAddr      IGMP-Policy
  GrpAddr      GrpItf
  SrcAddr      Type           Up-Time           NumGroups
                                     Mode
                                     Blk/Fwd
-----
LNS1-pppoe-sub-01      igmp-policy-1
  10.0.0.2             LNS
  239.255.1.1          Dynamic          0d 00:04:41       1
  192.168.4.2          Dynamic                                     Include
                                                                Fwd
-----

Number of Subscribers : 1
=====
```

The IGMP group is not seen in the wholesale router instance (as shown by the first output below on LAC-1), however, it is seen in the retail router instance (as shown by the second output below on LNS-1).

```
*A:LAC-1> show router 1 igmp group
=====
IGMP Interface Groups
=====
IGMP Host Groups
=====
IGMP SAP Groups
=====
No Matching Entries
=====
```

```
*A:LNS-1> show router 1 igmp group
=====
IGMP Interface Groups
=====
IGMP Host Groups
=====
(192.168.4.2,239.255.1.1)
  Fwd List   : 10.0.0.2           Up Time : 0d 00:08:27
=====
IGMP SAP Groups
=====
```

```
(* ,G)/(S,G) Entries : 1
```

```
=====
```

Only the retail BNG (LNS-1) is responsible for processing the IGMP messages. Therefore to troubleshoot ESM multicast for an L2TP service, the following debug commands are used on the LNS.

```
debug
router "1"
  igmp
    group-interface "LNS-01"
    host "10.0.0.2"
    packet mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
  exit
exit
7604 2013/05/24 16:55:49.46 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 IGMP[8]

"IGMP[8]: RX-PKT
[013 07:53:02.120] IGMP host 10.0.0.2 V3 PDU: 10.0.0.2 -> 224.0.0.22
pduLen 20
  Type: V3 REPORT maxrespCode 0x0 checksum 0xddf6
  Num Group Records: 1
    Group Record 0
      Type: ALW_NEW_SRCS, AuxDataLen 0, Num Sources 1
      Mcast Addr: 239.255.1.1
      Source Address List
        192.168.4.2

"

7605 2013/05/24 16:55:49.46 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 IGMP[vprn1 inst 8
]
"IGMP[vprn1 inst 8]: igmpIfGroupAdd
Adding 239.255.1.1 to IGMP host 10.0.0.2 database"

7606 2013/05/24 16:55:49.46 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 IGMP[vprn1 inst 8
]
"IGMP[vprn1 inst 8]: igmpProcessGroupRec
Process group rec ALW_NEW_SRCS received on host 10.0.0.2 for group 239.255.1.1 in mode
INCLUDE. Num srcs 1"

7607 2013/05/24 16:55:49.46 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 IGMP[vprn1 inst 8
]
"IGMP[vprn1 inst 8]: igmpIfSrcAdd
Adding i/f source entry for host 10.0.0.2 (192.168.4.2,239.255.1.1) to IGMP fwd
List Database, redir if N/A"
```

The IGMP leave messages can also be seen in the debug, as shown below.

```
7615 2013/05/24 16:58:06.38 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 IGMP[8]
"IGMP[8]: RX-PKT
[013 07:55:19.040] IGMP host 10.0.0.2 V3 PDU: 10.0.0.2 -> 224.0.0.22
pduLen 20
```

```

Type: V3 REPORT maxrespCode 0x0 checksum 0xdcf6
Num Group Records: 1
  Group Record 0
    Type: BLK_OLD_SRCS, AuxDataLen 0, Num Sources 1
    Mcast Addr: 239.255.1.1
    Source Address List
      192.168.4.2

"

7616 2013/05/24 16:58:06.38 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 IGMP[vprn1 inst 8
]
"IGMP[vprn1 inst 8]: igmpProcessGroupRec
Process group rec BLK_OLD_SRCS received on host 10.0.0.2 for group 239.255.1.1 in mode
INCLUDE. Num srcs 1"

7617 2013/05/24 16:58:06.38 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 IGMP[vprn1 inst 8
]
"IGMP[vprn1 inst 8]: igmpProcessIfSrcTimerExp
Source Timer expired for IGMP host 10.0.0.2 (192.168.4.2,239.255.1.1)"

7618 2013/05/24 16:58:06.38 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 IGMP[vprn1 inst 8
]
"IGMP[vprn1 inst 8]: igmpIfSrcDel
Deleting i/f source entry for host 10.0.0.2 (192.168.4.2,239.255.1.1) from IGMP
Database. DeleteFromAvl: 1 !Redir 0"

7619 2013/05/24 16:58:06.38 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 IGMP[vprn1 inst 8
]
"IGMP[vprn1 inst 8]: igmpIfGroupDel
Deleting 239.255.1.1 from IGMP host 10.0.0.2 database"

```

Conclusion

Multicast is an essential part of Triple Play Services. The SR/ESS TPSDA solution offering is much more than a baseline multicast delivery, it includes individual subscriber awareness and provides each retailer a separate routing context to manage their own multicast content. Subscriber awareness allows for the fine tuning of each subscriber multicast experience and also for troubleshooting on a per subscriber basis. This example provides a complete configuration walk through for multicast delivery for both IPoE and PPPoE in a wholesale/retail model.

ESM IPv4: Multicast with Redirection

In This Chapter

This section describes ESM IPv4 multicast with redirection configurations.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 598](#)
- [Overview on page 599](#)
- [Configuration on page 601](#)
- [Conclusion on page 633](#)

Applicability

This example is applicable to all 7750 SR-12 with IOM3-XP and IMMs, and needs chassis mode c as a minimum. This is also supported on 7450 ESS chassis in mixed mode and also on 7750 SR-c4/12 platform.

The configuration was tested on release 11.0R1 and covers both IPoE and PPPoE subscribers.

Overview

Alcatel-Lucent's Triple Play Service Delivery Architecture (TPSDA) allows operators to integrate High Speed Internet (HSI), voice, and video services within a single network infrastructure. The goal of this example is to walk through a TPSDA multicast architecture with redirection. The topics are divided into the following sections:

- ESM (Enhanced Subscriber management) multicast baseline configuration
- Single BNG with redirection
- SRRP BNG configuration with static SAP
- IPoE ESM multicast configuration
- PPPoE ESM multicast configuration
- Subscriber Routed Redundancy Protocol (SRRP)
 - Multi-Chassis Synchronization (MCS) walk through

The network topology displayed in Figure 1 shows a typical TPSDA setup. It consists of three 7750s and a single 7450. Two 7750s are configured as Broadband Network Gateways (BNGs) and the third 7750 is configured as a P router. The 7450 is used as an aggregation switch to aggregate all subscribers. In [ESM IPv4: Multicast with SRRP on page 635](#), multicast is directly distributed to a subscriber through a subscriber SAP. This example walks through another popular model which redirects all multicast streams to a common routed interface for all subscribers. When multicast is put on the common routed interface, one single copy of a multicast stream is delivered to multiple subscribers. In this model, per-subscriber replication of multicast streams is done on an access node or on the aggregation network in order to minimize the bandwidth consumed by the multicast traffic in access/aggregation.

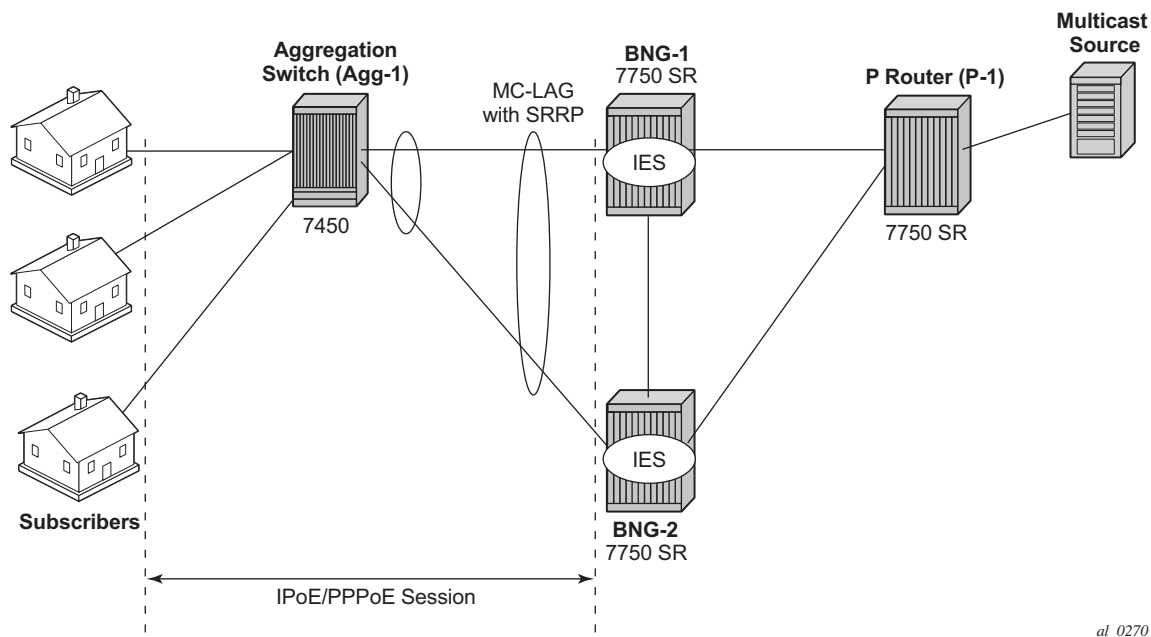


Figure 109: Network Topology Overview

Figure 109 shows two BNGs configured with SRRP to provide redundancy. The P router is connected to the multicast source and is connected to both BNGs. The connections between the BNGs and the P router, and the multicast source and the P router, are also running PIM to provide multicast delivery. On the access side, the two BNGs are connected to an aggregation switch via MC-LAG aggregating the traffic for both PPPoE and IPoE subscribers. The BNGs facing the subscriber side are IGMP aware and will respond to any subscribers' IGMP requests.

There are two requirements for a subscriber to receive multicast streams. First, the ESM group-interface must have IGMP enabled. Second, the customization of each subscriber's subscriber profile to allow them to receive multicast streams. When both requirements are met, the BNG will process the subscribers' IGMP messages, otherwise, IGMP messages are simply dropped. All customer premise device (CPE) IGMP messages are aggregated via the 7450 and passed onto the BNGs. Since the BNGs are running SRRP, the SRRP master is the only BNG processing and answering the IGMP messages. Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM) is then used between the BNG and the P router to request the multicast streams. If PIM is successful in retrieving the multicast group, the multicast stream is forwarded towards the individual subscribers. This is the typical multicast delivery for TPSDA.

Configuration

This example builds on the ESM multicast foundation discussed in [ESM IPv4: Multicast with SRRP on page 635](#). It starts with a single BNG setup with redirection.

ESM Multicast Interface Redirection

Figure 110 shows a popular ESM multicast model that redirects all multicast streams to a dedicated router interface. When configuring a redirected interface be aware that:

1. Redirection between Global Routing Table (GRT) interfaces and VPRN interfaces is not supported
 - GRT interfaces are interfaces that reside in the base router or in an IES.
2. Redirection can be performed between interfaces in the GRT or between the interfaces in any VPRN (even different VPRNs).

The following steps start with a simple ESM multicast configuration for BNG, without redirection.

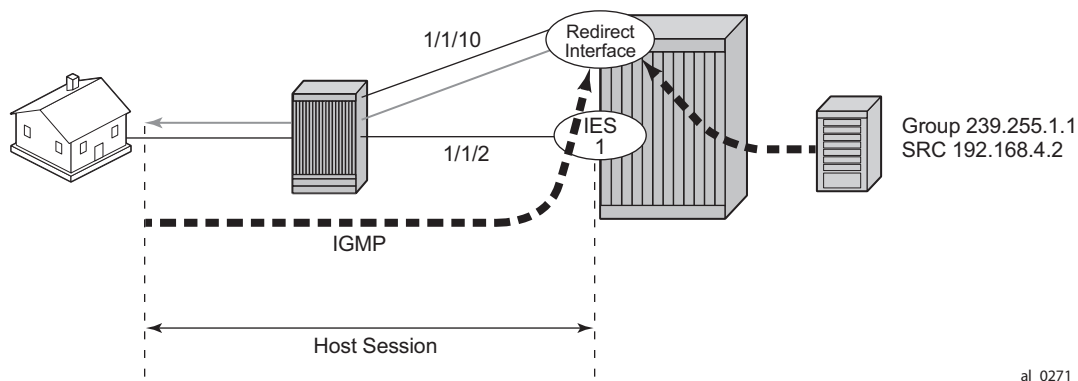


Figure 110: Single BNG Setup with Multicast Redirection

Step 1. Below is the BNG-1 configuration without multicast redirection. Subscribers are located in the 10.0.0.0/8 subnet. The multicast stream (S,G) is (192.168.4.2, 239.255.1.1). The local DHCP server is also on BNG-1.

```
*A:BNG-1>config>router>info
#-----
echo "Local DHCP Server Configuration"
#-----
dhcp
```

ESM Multicast Interface Redirection

```
local-dhcp-server "dhcp-local-server" create
  use-gi-address scope pool
  pool "pool-1" create
    subnet 10.0.0.0/8 create
      options
        subnet-mask 255.0.0.0
        default-router 10.255.255.254
      exit
    address-range 10.0.0.10 10.0.0.254
  exit
exit
no shutdown
exit
exit
#-----
echo "IP Configuration"
#-----
interface "dhcp-lb1"
  address 192.168.0.1/32
  loopback
  local-dhcp-server "dhcp-local-server"
  no shutdown
exit

*A:BNG-1>config>service>ies# info
-----
description "BNG-1"
interface "int-multicast-source" create
  address 192.168.4.1/30
  sap 1/1/2 create
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
  address 10.255.255.254/8
  group-interface "group-int-1" create
    srrp-enabled-routing
    dhcp
      server 192.168.0.1
      gi-address 10.255.255.254
      lease-populate 10
      no shutdown
    exit
  authentication-policy "auth-policy-1"
  sap 1/1/5:4 create
    sub-sla-mgmt
      multi-sub-sap 10
      no shutdown
    exit
  exit
  pppoe
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
exit

*A:BNG-1>config>router# info
interface "system"
  address 192.0.2.1/32
```

```

        no shutdown
    exit
    igmp
        group-interface "group-int-1"
        no shutdown
    exit
exit
pim
    interface "int-multicast-source"
    no shutdown
    rp
        static
        address 192.0.2.1
        group-prefix 224.0.0.0/4
    exit
    exit
exit
exit

*A:BNG-1> config subscr-mgmt
    igmp-policy "igmp-policy-1" create
    exit
exit all
sub-profile "multicast-profile-1" create
    igmp-policy "igmp-policy-1"
exit all

```

Step 2. Configure a router interface to redirect all multicast streams to, and then include the router interface in IGMP.

```

*A:BNG-1> config>service>ies# info
-----
        interface "redirected" create
        address 192.168.10.1/30
        sap 1/1/10 create
        exit
    exit

*A:BNG-1>config>router# info
    igmp
        interface "redirected"
-----

```

Step 3. Define a router redirection policy. This will redirect every (S,G) towards the redirected interface.

```

*A:BNG-1> config>router>policy-options# info
-----
    policy-statement "mcast_redirect_if"
        default-action accept
        multicast-redirection fwd-service 1 "redirected"
    exit
exit

```

Step 4. Apply the redirection policy created above in the igmp policy.

```
*A:BNG-1> config>subscr-mgmt>igmp-policy# info
-----
redirection-policy "mcast_redirect_if"
-----
```

From this point on all multicast streams will be redirected to the “redirected” interface.

Now send an IGMPv3 join message and then use the *show router igmp group* command to verify that all multicast streams are redirected. In this example IGMPv3 is used with an (S,G) of (192.168.4.2, 239.255.1.1). The host has the IP address 10.0.0.10. Below is the output for PPPoE and for IPoE subscribers, shown separately.

Step 5a. Redirection with PPPoE subscribers: Viewing the multicast groups. In the PPPoE case, the multicast (S,G) shows up on both the redirected interface and the host.

```
*A:BNG-1> show router igmp group
=====
IGMP Interface Groups
=====
(192.168.4.2,239.255.1.1)                Up Time : 0d 00:00:04
Fwd List : redirected
=====
IGMP Host Groups
=====
(192.168.4.2,239.255.1.1)                Up Time : 0d 00:00:04
Fwd List : 10.0.0.10
=====
IGMP SAP Groups
=====
-----
(*,G)/(S,G) Entries : 2
=====
```

Step 5b. Redirection with IPoE subscribers: Viewing the multicast groups. In the IPoE case, the multicast (S,G) shows up on both the redirected interface and the SAP.

```
*A:BNG-1> show router igmp group
=====
IGMP Interface Groups
=====
(192.168.4.2,239.255.1.1)                Up Time : 0d 00:00:04
Fwd List : redirected
=====
IGMP Host Groups
=====
=====
IGMP SAP Groups
=====
(192.168.4.2,239.255.1.1)                Up Time : 0d 00:00:04
Fwd List : 10.0.0.10
```



```
-----
(*,G)/(S,G) Entries : 2
=====
```

Now the “redirected” interface is the only interface sending out multicast streams. The first command shows that the group interface does not register any multicast group (Num-Groups=0). The second command displays all multicast group are registered against the redirected interface (Num-Groups=1).

```
*A:BNG-1> show router igmp group-interface
```

```
=====
IGMP Group-Interfaces
=====
FwdSvc Group-Interface      Adm/Opr-State      Import-Policy
      SAP                  Adm/Opr-Version      Num-Groups
-----
1      group-int-1          Up/Up              none
      1/1/2                3/3                0
-----
Group-Interfaces = 1, SAPs = 1
=====
```

```
*A:BNG-1> show router igmp interface
```

```
=====
IGMP Interfaces
=====
Interface      Adm  Oper  Querier      Cfg/Opr Num  Policy
              Version Groups
-----
redirected      Up   Up    192.168.10.1  3/3    1    none
-----
Interfaces : 1
=====
```

Debug facilities can be used to troubleshoot multicast redirection issues. The output below shows the multicast is redirected to a regular routed interface after an IGMP join.

```
7017 2013/05/24 09:27:50.65 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[9]
"IGMP[9]: RX-PKT
[013 00:25:03.310] IGMP host 10.0.0.10 V3 PDU: 10.0.0.10 -> 224.0.0.22 pduLen
20
    Type: V3 REPORT maxrespCode 0x0 checksum 0xddf6
    Num Group Records: 1
        Group Record 0
            Type: ALW_NEW_SRCS, AuxDataLen 0, Num Sources 1
            Mcast Addr: 239.255.1.1
            Source Address List
                192.168.4.2

"

7018 2013/05/24 09:27:50.65 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[ies1 inst 9
]
"IGMP[ies1 inst 9]: igmpIfGroupAdd
Adding 239.255.1.1 to IGMP host 10.0.0.10 database"

7019 2013/05/24 09:27:50.65 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[ies1 inst 9
]
"IGMP[ies1 inst 9]: igmpProcessGroupRec
Process group rec ALW_NEW_SRCS received on host 10.0.0.10 for group 239.255.1.1 i
n mode INCLUDE. Num srcs 1"

7020 2013/05/24 09:27:50.66 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[ies1 inst 9
]
"IGMP[ies1 inst 9]: igmpIfSrcAdd
Adding i/f source entry for host 10.0.0.10 (192.168.4.2,239.255.1.1) to IGMP fwdList
Database, redir if interface redirected [ifIndex 13]"
```

The output below shows what happens when an IGMP leave message is sent so that the multicast stream is no longer being forwarded.

```
7024 2013/05/24 09:29:29.85 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[9]
"IGMP[9]: RX-PKT
[013 00:26:42.510] IGMP host 10.0.0.10 V3 PDU: 10.0.0.10 -> 224.0.0.22 pduLen
20
    Type: V3 REPORT maxrespCode 0x0 checksum 0xdcf6
    Num Group Records: 1
        Group Record 0
            Type: BLK_OLD_SRCS, AuxDataLen 0, Num Sources 1
            Mcast Addr: 239.255.1.1
            Source Address List
                192.168.4.2

"

7025 2013/05/24 09:29:29.85 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[ies1 inst 9
]
"IGMP[ies1 inst 9]: igmpProcessGroupRec
Process group rec BLK_OLD_SRCS received on host 10.0.0.10 for group 239.255.1.1 i
n mode INCLUDE. Num srcs 1"
```

```

7026 2013/05/24 09:29:29.85 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[ies1 inst 9
]
"IGMP[ies1 inst 9]: igmpProcessIfSrcTimerExp
Source Timer expired for IGMP host 10.0.0.10 (192.168.4.2,239.255.1.1)"

7027 2013/05/24 09:29:29.85 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[ies1 inst 9
]
"IGMP[ies1 inst 9]: igmpIfSrcDel
Deleting i/f source entry for host 10.0.0.10 (192.168.4.2,239.255.1.1) from IGMP Dat
abase. DeleteFromAvl: 1 Redir 0"

7028 2013/05/24 09:29:29.85 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[ies1 inst 9
]
"IGMP[ies1 inst 9]: igmpIfGroupDel
Deleting 239.255.1.1 from IGMP host 10.0.0.10 database"

7029 2013/05/24 09:29:29.85 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP MCS[9]
"IGMP MCS[9]: TX-MCS Data (Glb1Del)
host 10.0.0.10
Key Type: HostGroup, Len: 13, Host : 10.0.0.10, Grp Addr: 239.255.1.1
Data Type: Group, Len: 16, Ver: 0, RecType: 1, Compat Mode: 3,
Num Fwd Srcs: 0, Num Blk Srcs: 0
"

7030 2013/05/24 09:29:29.85 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[ies1 inst 9
]
"IGMP[ies1 inst 9]: igmpMcsDelIfGroup
Deleting MCS entry for host 10.0.0.10, group 239.255.1.1, Glb"

```

ESM SRRP with MC-LAG

Figure 111 shows a numbered SRRP setup with MC-LAG SAPs serving both IPoE and PPPoE subscribers. [ESM IPv4: Multicast with SRRP on page 635](#) covers the configuration of regular SRRP SAPs, consequently this example provides configuration guidelines to use a different type of SAP: SRRP MC-LAG SAPs. Note that redirection on SRRP SAPs without MC-LAG is also supported. The configuration of the RADIUS server is out of the scope of this example.

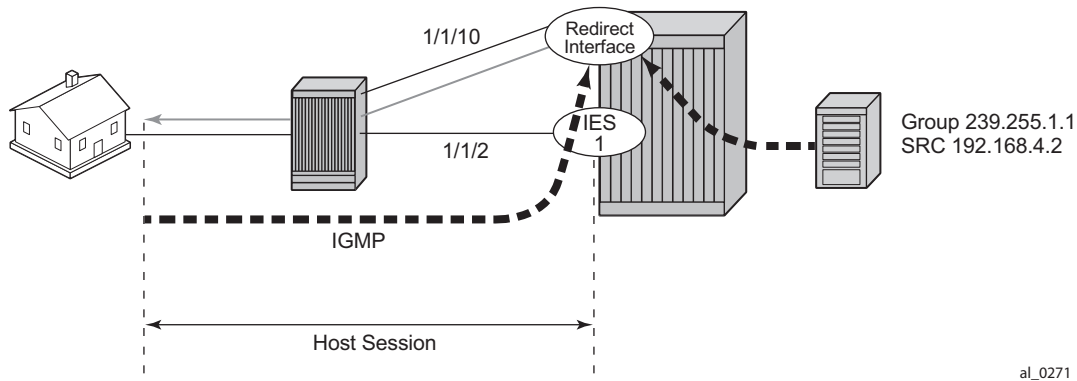


Figure 111: Network Topology with MC-LAG

The baseline configuration for BNG-1 is shown below without any IGMP configuration. The configuration begins with the MC-LAG configuration. ESM is configured in an IES service but it is also possible to configure ESM in a VPRN. The redirection interface must be in the same routing instance as the group-interface, this applies to both regular SRRP SAPs and MC-LAG SAPs. In the following example, the MC-LAG is **lag-1**, customer data traffic is using VLAN 4, MC-LAG control traffic is using VLAN 5, and the redirected multicast streams are using VLAN 4094.

```
A:BNG-1>config>lag# info
-----
mode access
encap-type dot1q
port 1/1/5 priority 1
lacp active administrative-key 32768
no shutdown

A:BNG-1>config>redundancy# info
-----
multi-chassis
peer 192.0.2.2 create
mc-lag
lag 1 lacp-key 1 system-id 00:00:00:00:00:01 system-priority 100
no shutdown
exit
sync
```

```

        igmp
        srrp
        sub-mgmt ipoe pppoe
        port lag-1 create
            range 4-4 sync-tag "mclagdata"
            range 5-5 sync-tag "mclagcontrol"
        exit
        no shutdown
    exit
    no shutdown
exit
exit

```

A:BNG-1>config>service>ies# info

```

-----
description "BNG-1"
redundant-interface "Mclink-BNG-1-BNG-2" create
    address 192.168.1.0/31
    ip-mtu 1500
    spoke-sdp 1:1 create
        no shutdown
    exit
exit
interface "int-BNG-1-P-1" create
    address 192.168.2.1/30
    sap 1/1/2 create
        no shutdown
    exit
exit
interface "lag-redirected" create
    address 192.168.10.253/24
    vrrp 1
        backup 192.168.10.254
    exit
    sap lag-1:4094 create
    exit
exit
subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
    address 10.255.255.253/8 gw-ip-address 10.255.255.254 track-srrp 1
    group-interface "group-int-1" create
        dhcp
            server 192.168.0.1
            gi-address 10.255.255.253
            lease-populate 10
            no shutdown
        exit
        authentication-policy "auth-policy-1"
        redundant-interface "Mclink-BNG-1-BNG-2"
        sap lag-1:1 create
            sub-sla-mgmt
                def-sub-id use-sap-id
                def-sub-profile "multicast-profile-1"
                def-sla-profile "sla-profile-1"
                sub-ident-policy "sub-ident-policy-1"
                multi-sub-sap 10
                no shutdown
            exit
        exit
    exit
    sap lag-1:5 create

```

ESM SRRP with MC-LAG

```
        exit
        srrp 4 create
            message-path lag-1:5
            priority 200
            no shutdown
        exit
        pppoe
            no shutdown
        exit
    exit
exit

*A:BNG-1>config>router# info
#-----
echo "IP Configuration"
#-----
    interface "int-BNG-1-BNG-2"
        address 192.168.6.1/30
        port 1/1/1:1
        no shutdown
    exit
    interface "system"
        address 192.0.2.1/32
        bfd 100 receive 100 multiplier 3
        no shutdown
    exit
    autonomous-system 65536
#-----
echo "OSPFv2 Configuration"
#-----
    ospf
        traffic-engineering
        area 0.0.0.0
            interface "system"
                no shutdown
            exit
            interface "int-BNG-1-BNG-2"
                interface-type point-to-point
                metric 10000
                no shutdown
            exit
            interface "sub-int-1"
                no shutdown
            exit
            interface "int-BNG-1-P-1"
                no shutdown
            exit
            interface "lag-redirected"
                no shutdown
            exit
        exit
    exit
    pim
        interface "int-to_P_router"
    exit
```

The baseline configuration for BNG-2 is shown below without IGMP configuration. The default SRRP priority for BNG-2 is lower than the SRRP priority for BNG-1 and hence BNG-2 will be in standby mode.

```
A:BNG-2>config>lag# info
-----
mode access
encap-type dot1q
port 1/1/5 priority 1
lacp active administrative-key 32768
no shutdown

A:BNG-2>config>redundancy# info
-----
multi-chassis
peer 192.0.2.1 create
  mc-lag
    lag 1 lacp-key 1 system-id 00:00:00:00:00:01 system-priority 100
    no shutdown
  exit
  sync
    igmp
    srrp
    sub-mgmt ipoe pppoe
    port lag-1 create
      range 4-4 sync-tag "mclagdata"
      range 5-5 sync-tag "mclagcontrol"
    exit
    no shutdown
  exit
  no shutdown
exit
exit
```

```
A:BNG-2>config>service>ies# info
-----
description "BNG SRRP1"
redundant-interface "Mclink-BNG-1-BNG-2" create
  address 192.168.1.1/31
  ip-mtu 1500
  spoke-sdp 1:1 create
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
interface "lag-redirected" create
  address 192.168.10.252/24
  vrrp 2
    backup 192.168.10.254
  exit
  sap lag-1:4094 create
  exit
exit
interface "int-BNG-2-P-1" create
  address 192.168.3.1/30
  sap 1/1/2 create
    no shutdown
```

```

        exit
    exit
subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
    address 10.255.255.252/8 gw-ip-address 10.255.255.254 track-srrp 1
group-interface "group-int-1" create
    dhcp
        server 192.168.0.1
        lease-populate 10
        gi-address 10.255.255.252
        no shutdown
    exit
    authentication-policy "auth-policy-1"
    redundant-interface "MCLink-BNG-1-BNG-2"
    sap lag-1:4 create
        sub-sla-mgmt
            def-sub-id use-sap-id
            def-sub-profile "multicast-profile-1"
            def-sla-profile "sla-profile-1"
            sub-ident-policy "sub-ident-policy-1"
            multi-sub-sap 10
            no shutdown
        exit
    exit
    sap lag-1:5 create
    exit
    srrp 1 create
        message-path lag-1:5
        no shutdown
    exit
    pppoe
        no shutdown
    exit

    exit
exit

*A:BNG-2>config>router# info
#-----
echo "IP Configuration"
#-----
    interface "int-BNG-2-BNG-1"
        address 192.168.6.1/30
        port 1/1/1:1
        no shutdown
    exit
    interface "system"
        address 192.0.2.2/32
        bfd 100 receive 100 multiplier 3
        no shutdown
    exit
    autonomous-system 65536
#-----
echo "OSPFv2 Configuration"
#-----
    ospf
        traffic-engineering
        area 0.0.0.0
            interface "system"
                no shutdown

```



```

exit
interface "int-BNG-2-BNG-1"
    interface-type point-to-point
    metric 10000
    no shutdown
exit
interface "sub-int-1"
    no shutdown
exit
interface "lag-redirected"
    no shutdown
exit
interface "int-BNG-2-P-1"
    no shutdown
exit
exit
exit
pim
    interface "int-BNG-2-P-1"
exit

```

The baseline configuration for the 7450 aggregation switch is shown below. It has a LAG interface configured. There are two VPLSs. The first is VPLS 1 which is used to receive all redirected multicast traffic on VLAN 4094. The second is VPLS 2 which is responsible for passing all subscriber traffic on VLAN 4.

```

A:Agg-1>config>lag# info
-----
mode access
encap-type dot1q
port 1/1/2
port 1/1/3
lacp active administrative-key 1
no shutdown

*A:Agg-1>config>service>info
vpls 1 customer 1 create
    sap lag-1:4094 create
        no shutdown
    exit
    sap 1/1/1:4094 create
        no shutdown
    exit
no shutdown
exit

*A:Agg-1>config>service>info
vpls 2 customer 1 create
    sap lag-1:4 create
        no shutdown
    exit
    sap 1/1/1:4 create
        no shutdown
    exit
no shutdown

```

```
exit
```

The baseline configuration for the P router is shown below. It is now responsible for DHCP address assignment (moved from BNG-1 in the previous configuration to allow for redundant operations in case of failure of either BNG-1 or BNG-2) and is also attached to the multicast source.

```
*A:P-router>config>router>info
#-----
echo "Local DHCP Server Configuration"
#-----
    dhcp
        local-dhcp-server "dhcp-local-server" create
        use-gi-address scope pool
        pool "pool-01" create
        subnet 10.0.0.0/8 create
        options
            subnet-mask 255.0.0.0
            default-router 10.255.255.254
        exit
        address-range 10.0.0.10 10.0.0.254
    exit
    exit
    no shutdown
    exit
exit
#-----
echo "IP Configuration"
#-----
    interface "dhcp-lb1"
        address 192.168.0.1/32
        loopback
        local-dhcp-server "dhcp-local-server"
        no shutdown
    exit
    interface "int-P-1-BNG-1"
        address 192.168.2.2/30
        port 1/1/2
        no shutdown
    exit
    interface "int-P-1-BNG-2"
        address 192.168.3.2/30
        port 1/1/3
        no shutdown
    exit
    interface "P-1-multicast-source"
        address 192.168.4.1/30
        port 1/1/1
        no shutdown
    exit
    interface "system"
        address 192.0.2.3/32
        no shutdown
    exit
#-----
    ospf
```

```
area 0.0.0.0
    interface "system"
        no shutdown
    exit
    interface "int-P-1-BNG-1"
        no shutdown
    exit
    interface "int-P-1-BNG-2"
        no shutdown
    exit
    interface "P-1-multicast-source"
        no shutdown
    exit
exit
pim
    interface "int-P-1-BNG-1"
    exit
    interface "int-P-1-BNG-2"
    exit
    interface "P-1-multicast-source"
    exit
exit
```

Enable IGMP on Group Interface and Redirect Interface on the BNGs

The configuration below shows how to add the group-interface and redirect interface to IGMP. If ESM is configured in a VPRN, each VPRN will have its own IGMP instance. Remember to apply the following configuration to both BNG-1 and BNG-2.

```
*A:BNG-1>config>router>igmp# info
-----
      group-interface "group-int-1"
        no shutdown
      exit
      interface "lag-redirected"
        no shutdown
      exit
```

Next, the IGMP policy is configured to redirect all multicast to a dedicated interface. The following configuration outlines the steps necessary to enable multicast redirection.

Step 1. Define a router redirection policy. This will redirect every (S,G) towards the redirected interface.

```
*A:BNG-1> config>router>policy-options# info
-----
      policy-statement "mcast_redirect_if"
        default-action accept
        multicast-redirection fwd-service 1 "lag-redirected"
      exit
    exit
```

Step 2. Apply the redirection policy to the igmp-policy.

```
*A:BNG-1> config>subscr-mgmt>igmp-policy# info
-----
      redirection-policy "mcast_redirect_if"
    -----
```

Step 3. Add multi-chassis synchronization of the redirected interface. This will synchronize the IGMP state on this MC-LAG interface.

```
*A:BNG-1>config>redundancy# info
-----
      multi-chassis
        peer 192.0.2.2 create
        sync
          port lag-1 create
            range 4-4 sync-tag "mclagdata"
            range 5-5 sync-tag "mclagcontrol"
            range 4094-4094 sync-tag "mclagmulticast"
          igmp
          srrp
```

```
sub-mgmt ipoe ppoe  
exit  
no shutdown
```

ESM IGMP IPoE walkthrough

With the baseline configuration applied, the BNG is ready to process IGMP messages and deliver multicast streams to the subscribers through the redirected interface. Figure 4 shows the message flow for IPoE subscribers requesting and receiving multicast traffic. The key points are highlighted in the dotted box:

- The group-interface and redirect interface must have IGMP enabled.
- The subscriber must be associated with an IGMP-policy via sub-profile.

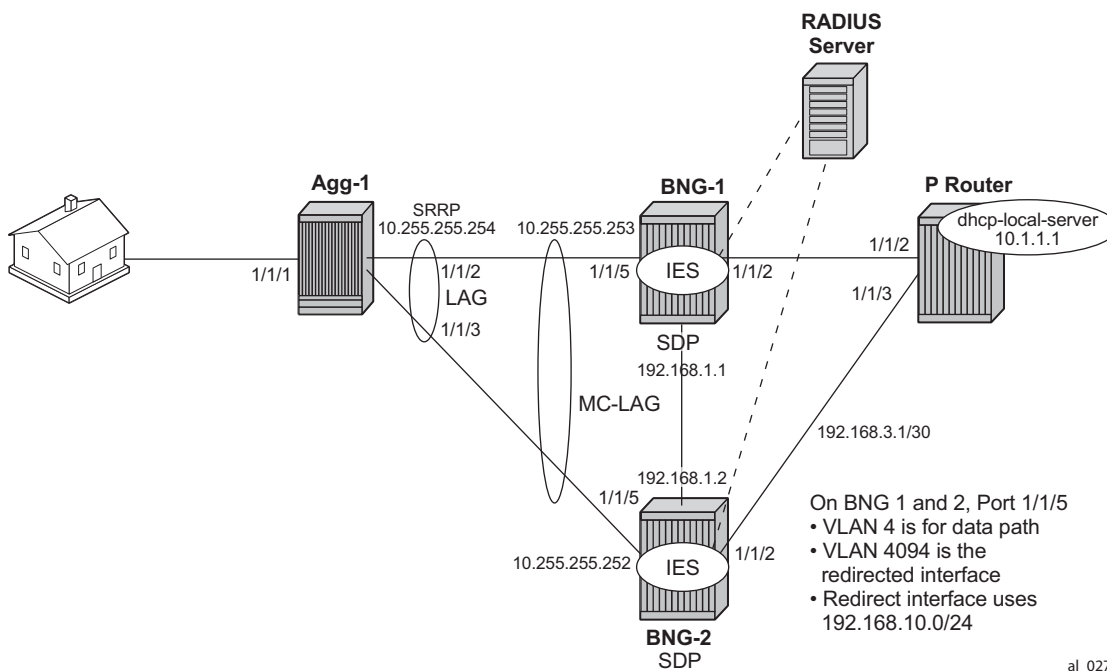


Figure 112: IPoE Multicast Message Flow

To verify the (ESM enabled) group-interface and the redirect interface are ready for multicast, use the show commands as indicated below. Remember the IES service ID is 1, the group-interface name is **group-int-1** and the interface name is **lag-redirected**.

Step 1. Verify if the group-interface and redirected interface have IGMP enabled.

```
*A:BNG-1> show router igmp group-interface
=====
IGMP Group-Interfaces
=====
FwdSvc Group-Interface           Adm/Opr-State      Import-Policy
      SAP                      Adm/Opr-Version    Num-Groups
-----
```

```

1  group-int-1                               Up/Up          none
   lag-1:4                                   3/3            0
-----
Group-Interfaces = 1, SAPs = 1
=====
*A:BNG-1> show router igmp interface
=====
IGMP Interfaces
=====
Interface          Adm  Oper Querier      Cfg/Opr Num  Policy
                   Up   Down 0.0.0.0      3/3      0
                   Version Groups
-----
lag-redirected      Up   Down 0.0.0.0      3/3      0
                   none
-----
Interfaces : 1
=====

```

Step 2. Ensure the subscriber is associated with an IGMP-policy. Since the IGMP-policy is associated with a subscriber-profile, verification of an IGMP-policy is performed via the sub-profile.

```

*A:BNG-1> show subscriber-mgmt sub-profile "multicast-profile-1"
=====
Subscriber Profile multicast-profile-1
=====
Description      : (Not Specified)
I. Sched. Policy : N/A
E. Sched. Policy : N/A
I. Policer Ctrl. : N/A
E. Policer Ctrl. : N/A
Q Frame-Based Ac*: Disabled
Acct. Policy     : N/A
Rad. Acct. Pol.  : N/A
Dupl. Acct. Pol. : N/A
ANCP Pol.        : N/A
HostTrk Pol.     : N/A
IGMP Policy      : igmp-policy-1
Sub. MCAC Policy : N/A
NAT Policy       : N/A
Def. Encap Offset: none
Avg Frame Size   : N/A
Preference       : 5
-----
HSMMDA-2
-----
I. Qos Policy     : 1
E. Qos Policy     : 1
E. Agg Rate Limit: Max
E. WRR Policy     : N/A
Pkt Byte Offset  : add 0*
-----
Last Mgmt Change : 05/14/2013 10:12:49
=====
* indicates that the corresponding row element may have been truncated.

```

After the verification, the BNGs are ready to deliver multicast streams. Next, initiate an IGMP report from a subscriber requesting a multicast channel. In this example, IGMPv3 with SSM is used. If the IPoE subscriber is receiving multicast through the subscriber SAP then the IGMP group will be associated with the SAP. Since redirection is used, the IGMP group is associated with the redirected interface instead. The output below shows that when an IGMP message is received and processed, an (S,G) binding is associated with the redirected interface. The example uses an IGMPv3 SSM message requesting (192.168.4.2, 239.255.1.1). The subscriber IP address is 10.0.0.2.

```
*A:BNG-1> show router igmp group
=====
IGMP Interface Groups
=====
(192.168.4.2,239.255.1.1)          Up Time : 0d 00:00:12
  Fwd List : lag-redircetd
=====
IGMP Host Groups
=====
(192.168.4.2,239.255.1.1)
  Fwd List : 10.0.0.2              Up Time : 0d 00:00:12
=====
IGMP SAP Groups
=====
-----
(*,G)/(S,G) Entries : 2
=====
```

Next, verify the individual subscribers and their IGMP information. First verify the IGMP policy related to the subscriber.

```
*A:BNG-1> show service active-subscribers igmp detail
=====
Active Subscribers Detail
=====
Subscriber                               IGMP-Policy
HostAddr                                GrpItf
GrpAddr                                Type          Up-Time
SrcAddr                                Type
-----
video_user_01                           igmp-policy-1
  10.0.0.2                               sub-int-1      1
    239.255.1.1                         Dynamic       0d 00:01:26   Include
    192.168.4.2                         Dynamic                               Fwd
-----
Number of Subscribers : 1
=====
```

Since the IGMP-policy controls bandwidth, interoperability and restricts multicast groups, it is useful to view what is defined in the IGMP-policy if the subscriber fails to receive multicast streams.


```
*A:BNG-1> show subscriber-mgmt igmp-policy "igmp-policy-1"
=====
IGMP Policy igmp-02
=====
Import Policy          :
Admin Version          : 3
Num Subscribers        : 1
Host Max Group         : No Limit
Host Max Sources       : No Limit
Host Max Group Sources : No Limit
Fast Leave             : yes
Redirection Policy     : mcast_redirect_if
Per Host Replication   : no
Egress Rate Modify     : no
Mcast Reporting Destination Name :
Mcast Reporting Admin State : Disabled
=====
```

Below is a command to view the (S,G)s that all subscribers are requesting. Notice that the operational status for the host is not forwarding (notFwding), this is because multicast is not delivered directly over the subscriber SAP. All multicast traffic is delivered over the redirected interface instead.

```
*A:BNG-1> show router igmp hosts detail
=====
IGMP Host 10.0.0.2
=====
Oper Status      : notFwding   MacAddress      : 00:00:10:10:10:12
Oper version     : 3           Subscriber     : video_user_01
Num Groups       : 1           GrpItf        : sub-int-1
Max Grps Till Now: 1           IGMP-Policy   : igmp-policy-1
PPPoE SessionId  : N/A
FwdSvcId        : 1           Max Srcs Allow*: No Limit
Max Grps Allowed : No Limit   Max Grp Srcs A*: No Limit
-----
IGMP Group
-----
Group Address    : 239.255.1.1   Up Time       : 0d 00:02:38
Expires         : Not running   Mode          : Include
V1 Host Timer    : Not running   Type          : Dynamic
V2 Host Timer    : Not running   Compat Mode: IGMP Version 3
Redir.SvcId      : 1           Redir.Intf    : lag-redirected
-----
Source Address   Expires      Type          Fwd/Blk
-----
192.168.4.2      0d 00:01:42  Dynamic      Fwd
-----
Hosts : 1
=====
```

ESM IGMP PPPoE Walkthrough

The same baseline configuration is used for PPPoE subscriber. [Figure 113](#) shows the message flow for delivery of multicast streams to PPPoE subscribers.

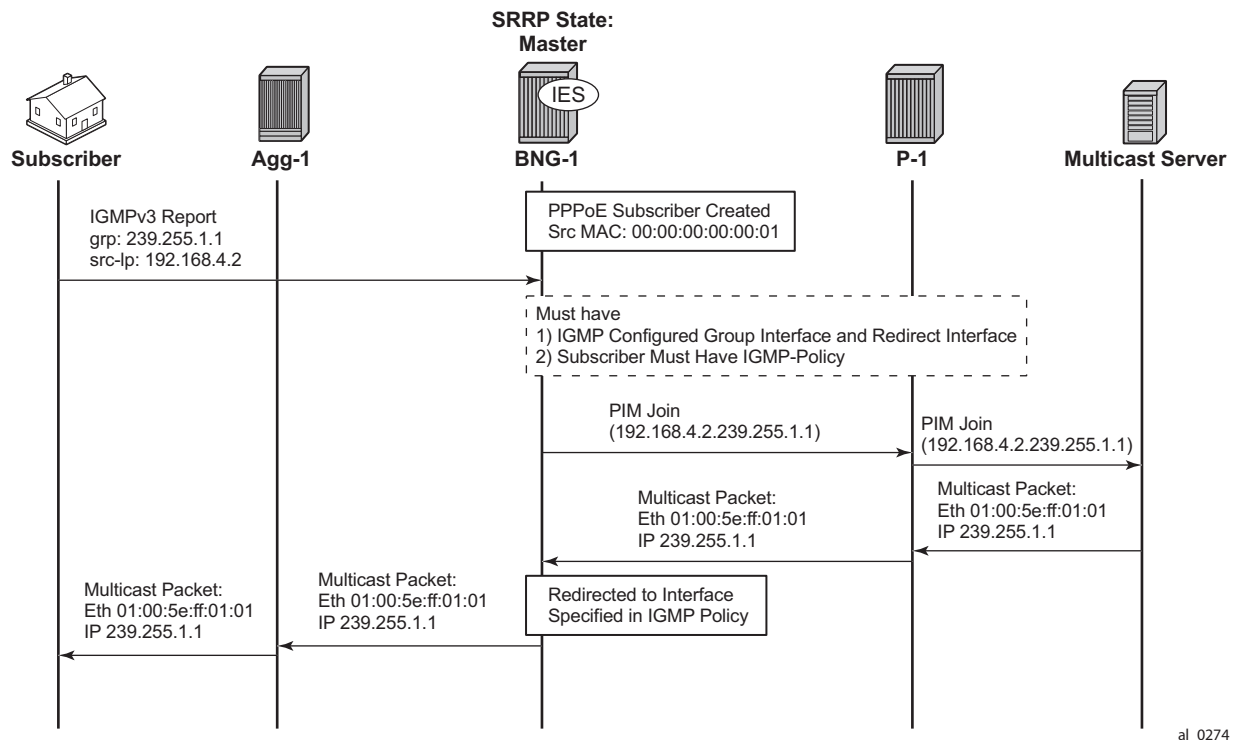


Figure 113: PPPoE Multicast Flow

The important items are highlighted in the dotted box. By default, PPPoE subscribers receive multicast streams via Ethernet unicast over subscriber SAPs. PPPoE does not have a multicast mechanism and requires all data traffic to be unicast. However, because multicast streams are redirected, the streams are sent as multicast at both Layers 2 and 3 (the Layer 2 header will have a multicast destination MAC address and the Layer 3 header will have a multicast destination IP address).

Verify the IGMP on the group-interface. It shows very little difference from the IPoE group interface. No multicast streams are delivered directly over the subscriber SAP group-interface.

```

*A:BNG-1> show router igmp group-interface detail
=====
IGMP Group-Interfaces
=====
FwdSvc/Grp-Intf      : 1/group-int-1
Admin-Status         : Up
Oper-Status          : Up
  
```

```

Import-Policy      : none
Router-Alert-Check : Enabled
MCAC Policy Name   :
MCAC Max Unconst BW: no limit
MCAC In use Mand BW: 0
MCAC In use Opnl BW: 0
Subnet-Check       : Enabled
Sub-Hosts-Only     : Enabled
MCAC Const Adm St  : Enable
MCAC Max Mand BW   : no limit
MCAC Avail Mand BW : unlimited
MCAC Avail Opnl BW : unlimited

```

```

-----
SAP                  : lag-1:4
Admin/Oper version: 3/3
Max Groups Allowed: No Limit
Max Sources Allow*: No Limit
Max Grp Srcs Allo*: No Limit
Num Groups           : 0
Max Groups Till Now: 0

```

```

-----
Group-Interfaces = 1, SAPs = 1

```

```

=====
* indicates that the corresponding row element may have been truncated.

```

All multicast streams should be delivered over the redirected interface. The output below shows the IGMP group for a PPPoE subscriber and also that the multicast stream is associated with the redirected interface. The (S,G) is (192.168.4.2, 239.255.1.1) and the subscriber IP address is 10.0.0.2.

```

*A:BNG-1> show router igmp group
=====
IGMP Interface Groups
=====
(192.168.4.2,239.255.1.1)          Up Time : 0d 00:05:15
  Fwd List : lag-redircetd
=====
IGMP Host Groups
=====
(192.168.4.2,239.255.1.1)
  Fwd List : 10.0.0.2              Up Time : 0d 00:05:15
=====
IGMP SAP Groups
=====
-----
(*,G)/(S,G) Entries : 2
=====

```

The following output shows all the subscribers and the (S,G)s they have joined. Note that there is only one PPPoE subscriber and the multicast stream is redirected.

```

*A:BNG-1> show router igmp hosts detail
=====
IGMP Host 10.0.0.2
=====
Oper Status      : Up      MacAddress      : 52:e0:50:bd:00:00
Oper version     : 3        Subscriber     : user-ppp-1
Num Groups       : 1        GrpItf       : group-int-1
Max Grps Till Now: 1        IGMP-Policy  : igmp-policy-1
PPPoE SessionId  : 1        Next query time: 0d 00:01:47
FwdSvcId        : 1        Max Srcs Allow*: No Limit
Max Grps Allowed : No Limit Max Grp Srcs A*: No Limit

```

ESM IGMP PPPoE Walkthrough

```
IGMP Group
-----
Group Address      : 239.255.1.1    Up Time       : 0d 00:00:36
Expires           : Not running    Mode          : Include
V1 Host Timer     : Not running    Type          : Dynamic
V2 Host Timer     : Not running    Compat Mode: IGMP Version 3
Redir.SvcId       : 1              Redir.Intf   : lag-redirected
-----
Source Address     Expires         Type          Fwd/Blk
-----
192.168.4.2        0d 00:04:03    Dynamic       Fwd
-----
Hosts : 1
=====
* indicates that the corresponding row element may have been truncated.
```

To view the (S,G)s of a single subscriber, use the following command.

```
*A:BNG-1> show service active-subscribers igmp subscriber "user-ppp-1" detail
=====
Active Subscribers Detail
=====
Subscriber                               IGMP-Policy
HostAddr                                GrpItf
GrpAddr                                Type          Up-Time
SrcAddr                                Type          Blk/Fwd
-----
user-ppp-1                               igmp-policy-1
10.0.0.2                                group-int-1
239.255.1.1                             Dynamic       0d 00:02:07    Include
192.168.4.2                             Dynamic       Fwd
-----
Number of Subscribers : 1
=====
```

ESM IGMP MCS

The BNGs are configured with SRRP for both IPoE and PPPoE subscribers. This provides stateful redundancy when the master BNG fails. The SRRP master BNG will be the only BNG processing and answering IGMP messages, while the standby BNG synchronizes the state information of all subscribers via MCS in real time. In the event of a failure, the standby takes over and starts processing all IGMP messages. As the standby BNG has the full state information of all subscribers, including the (S,G)s they have joined, PIM starts sending joins for those (S,G)s immediately after failover. Restoration of all multicast streams happens quickly and relies on the PIM configuration and the underlying routing infrastructure. Note that the PIM command *non-dr-attract-traffic* can be used to reduce the failover outage by attracting multicast to the non designated PIM router.

The following output shows the items that are synchronized between the BNGs. To reduce the ESM multicast restoration time, it is important that all subscriber related data (IPoE, PPPoE, SRRP and IGMP) are kept in sync. BNG-1 has system IP address 192.0.2.1 and BNG-2 has system IP address 192.0.2.2.

```
*A:BNG-1> show redundancy multi-chassis sync peer 192.0.2.2 detail
=====
Multi-chassis Peer Table
=====
Peer
-----
Peer IP Address       : 192.0.2.2
Description           : (Not Specified)
Authentication        : Disabled
Source IP Address     : 192.0.2.1
Admin State           : Enabled
-----
Sync-status
-----
Client Applications   : IGMP SUBMGMT-IPOE SUBMGMT-PPPOE SRRP
Sync Admin State      : Up
Sync Oper State       : Up
DB Sync State         : inSync
Num Entries           : 15
Lcl Deleted Entries   : 0
Alarm Entries         : 0
Rem Num Entries       : 15
Rem Lcl Deleted Entries : 0
Rem Alarm Entries     : 0
=====
MCS Application Stats
=====
Application           : igmp
Num Entries           : 1
Lcl Deleted Entries   : 0
Alarm Entries         : 0
-----
Rem Num Entries       : 1
Rem Lcl Deleted Entries : 0
Rem Alarm Entries     : 0
```

```
-----
Application          : subMgmtIpoe
Num Entries          : 1
Lcl Deleted Entries  : 0
Alarm Entries        : 0
-----
Rem Num Entries      : 1
Rem Lcl Deleted Entries : 0
Rem Alarm Entries    : 0
-----
Application          : srrp
Num Entries          : 14
Lcl Deleted Entries  : 0
Alarm Entries        : 0
-----
Rem Num Entries      : 14
Rem Lcl Deleted Entries : 0
Rem Alarm Entries    : 0
-----
Application          : subMgmtPppoe
Num Entries          : 1
Lcl Deleted Entries  : 0
Alarm Entries        : 0
-----
Rem Num Entries      : 1
Rem Lcl Deleted Entries : 0
Rem Alarm Entries    : 0
-----
=====
```

To check the details of the sync data across the BNGs, a tools command giving a detailed description of the IGMP information synced across MCS can be used.

```
*A:BNG-1> tools dump redundancy multi-chassis sync-database application igmp detail
```

If no entries are present for an application, no detail will be displayed.

FLAGS LEGEND: ld - local delete; da - delete alarm; pd - pending global delete

Peer Ip 192.0.2.2

```
Application IGMP
Sap-id          Client Key
SyncTag         DLen  Flags   timeStamp
deleteReason code and description
-----
lag-1:4094      Host=10.0.0.2, HostGroup=239.255.1.1
mclagdata      20    -- -- -- 07/03/2013 15:20:49
0x0
lag-1:4         Group=239.255.1.1
mclagmulticast 20    -- -- -- 07/03/2013 15:20:49
0x0
```

The following totals are for:

peer ip ALL, port/lag ALL, sync-tag ALL, application IGMP

Valid Entries: 2

```
Locally Deleted Entries:      0
Locally Deleted Alarmed Entries: 0
Pending Global Delete Entries: 0
```

ESM IGMP Debug

Debug facilities allow for real-time monitoring of events happening on the system. This includes tools for debugging ESM multicast streams.

First enable the required debug on the system, then send an IGMP message to join a multicast group (S,G). The message used in this example is an IGMPv3 message with SSM.

Below is the debug information for an ESM IGMP report message at packet level.

```
debug
  router
    igmp
      packet mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
    exit
  exit

2977 2013/05/23 13:01:45.43 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 IGMP[9]
"IGMP[9]: RX-PKT
[012 03:58:58.090] IGMP host 10.0.0.2 V3 PDU: 10.0.0.2 -> 224.0.0.22 pduLen
20
  Type: V3 REPORT maxrespCode 0x0 checksum 0xddf7
  Num Group Records: 1
    Group Record 0
      Type: ALW_NEW_SRCS, AuxDataLen 0, Num Sources 1
      Mcast Addr: 239.255.1.1
      Source Address List
        192.168.4.2

"
```

Below is the debug information for an ESM IGMP host. Notice the multicast stream is redirected to the LAG interface and that an MCS entry is installed for the new IGMP group.

```
debug
  router
    igmp
      host "10.0.0.2"
    exit
  exit

9 2013/07/03 15:26:32.74 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[ies1 inst 9]
"IGMP[ies1 inst 9]: igmpIfGroupAdd
Adding 239.255.1.1 to IGMP host 10.0.0.2 database"

10 2013/07/03 15:26:32.74 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[ies1 inst 9]
"IGMP[ies1 inst 9]: igmpProcessGroupRec
Process group rec ALW_NEW_SRCS received on host 10.0.0.2 for group 239.255.1.1 i
n mode INCLUDE. Num srcs 1"

11 2013/07/03 15:26:32.74 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[ies1 inst 9]
"IGMP[ies1 inst 9]: igmpIfSrcAdd
Adding i/f source entry for host 10.0.0.2 (192.168.4.2,239.255.1.1) to IGMP fwdList"
```



```
Database, redir if interface lag-redirected [ifIndex 16]"
```

```
12 2013/07/03 15:26:32.73 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[ies1 inst 9]
"IGMP[ies1 inst 9]: igmpMcsAddIfGroup
Building MCS entry for host 10.0.0.2, group 239.255.1.1"
```

Below is the debug information for ESM IGMP when MCS sync is enabled. The MCS sends a sync message for the redirect interface.

```
debug
router
  igmp
    mcs "lag-redirected"
  exit
exit
```

```
20 2013/07/03 15:28:26.20 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP MCS[9]
"IGMP MCS[9]: TX-MCS Data
interface lag-redirected [ifIndex 16]
Key Type: Group, Len: 9, Grp Addr: 239.255.1.1
Data Type: Group, Len: 20, Ver: 0, RecType: 1, Compat Mode: 3,
Num Fwd Srcs: 1, Num Blk Srcs: 0
Fwd Sources:
  192.168.4.2
"
```

```
21 2013/07/03 15:28:26.20 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP MCS[9]
"IGMP MCS[9]: TX-MCS Data
interface lag-redirected [ifIndex 16]
Key Type: Group, Len: 9, Grp Addr: 239.255.1.1
Data Type: Group, Len: 20, Ver: 0, RecType: 1, Compat Mode: 3,
Num Fwd Srcs: 1, Num Blk Srcs: 0
Fwd Sources:
  192.168.4.2
"
```

The corresponding debug information for ESM IGMP MCS sync on BNG-2 looks as follows:

```
2 2013/07/03 20:30:24.97 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP MCS[5]
"IGMP MCS[5]: RX-MCS Data
interface lag-redirected [ifIndex 15]
Key Type: Group, Len: 9, Grp Addr: 239.255.1.1
Data Type: Group, Len: 20, Ver: 0, RecType: 1, Compat Mode: 3,
Num Fwd Srcs: 1, Num Blk Srcs: 0
Fwd Sources:
  192.168.4.2
"
```

The same debug commands can be used for viewing IGMP leave messages. Below is the debug information for an ESM IGMP leave at the packet level. The leave report message received over the subscriber SAP results in the multicast stream being stopped on the redirected interface, after ensuring no other CPE devices still require the multicast streams (by means of a query).

```
debug
  router
    igmp
      packet mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
    exit
  exit

37 2013/07/03 15:32:10.05 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[9]
"IGMP[9]: RX-PKT
[001 03:23:17.050] IGMP host 10.0.0.2 V3 PDU: 10.0.0.2 -> 224.0.0.22 pduLen
20
  Type: V3 REPORT maxrespCode 0x0 checksum 0xddf3
  Num Group Records: 1
    Group Record 0
      Type: BLK_OLD_SRCS, AuxDataLen 0, Num Sources 1
      Mcast Addr: 239.255.1.1
      Source Address List
        192.168.4.2

"

38 2013/07/03 15:32:10.05 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[9]
"IGMP[9]: TX-PKT
[001 03:23:17.050] IGMP interface lag-redircetd [ifIndex 16] V3 PDU: 192.168.10.253
-> 239.255.1.1 pduLen 16
  Type: QUERY maxrespCode 0xa checksum 0xf26d
  GroupAddr: 239.255.1.1
    S bit 0, QRV 2, Encoded-QQIC 125, NumSources 1
    Source Address List:
      192.168.4.2

"

39 2013/07/03 15:32:11.36 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[9]
"IGMP[9]: TX-PKT
[001 03:23:18.370] IGMP interface lag-redircetd [ifIndex 16] V3 PDU: 192.168.10.253
-> 239.255.1.1 pduLen 16
  Type: QUERY maxrespCode 0xa checksum 0xf26d
  GroupAddr: 239.255.1.1
    S bit 0, QRV 2, Encoded-QQIC 125, NumSources 1
    Source Address List:
      192.168.4.2

"
```

Below is the debug information for an ESM IGMP host showing various IGMP events. The MCS also signals the removal of the IGMP entry in the database.

```
debug
  router
    igmp
      host "192.168.0.10"
    exit
  exit
```

```
44 2013/07/03 15:33:06.00 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[ies1 inst 9]
"IGMP[ies1 inst 9]: igmpProcessGroupRec
Process group rec BLK_OLD_SRCS received on host 10.0.0.2 for group 239.255.1.1 i
n mode INCLUDE. Num srcs 1"

45 2013/07/03 15:33:06.00 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[ies1 inst 9]
"IGMP[ies1 inst 9]: igmpProcessIfSrcTimerExp
Source Timer expired for IGMP host 10.0.0.2 (192.168.4.2,239.255.1.1)"

46 2013/07/03 15:33:06.00 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[ies1 inst 9]
"IGMP[ies1 inst 9]: igmpIfSrcDel
Deleting i/f source entry for host 10.0.0.2 (192.168.4.2,239.255.1.1) from IGMP Data
base. DeleteFromAvl: 1 Redir 0"

47 2013/07/03 15:33:06.00 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[ies1 inst 9]
"IGMP[ies1 inst 9]: igmpIfGroupDel
Deleting 239.255.1.1 from IGMP host 10.0.0.2 database"

48 2013/07/03 15:33:05.99 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[ies1 inst 9]
"IGMP[ies1 inst 9]: igmpMcsDelIfGroup
Deleting MCS entry for host 10.0.0.2, group 239.255.1.1, Glb"

49 2013/07/03 15:33:05.99 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[ies1 inst 9]
"IGMP[ies1 inst 9]: igmpMcsDelIfGroup
Deleting MCS entry for host 10.0.0.2, group 239.255.1.1, Glb"

50 2013/07/03 15:33:06.00 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[ies1 inst 9]
"IGMP[ies1 inst 9]: igmpMcsDelIfGroup
Deleting MCS entry for host 10.0.0.2, group 239.255.1.1, Glb"
```

The debug information when MCS removes the entry on BNG-1 is shown below. Notice MCS also triggers the backup BNG to remove the multicast stream.

```
debug
  router
    igmp
      mcs "group-int-1"
    exit
  exit
```

```
69 2013/07/03 15:34:42.43 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP MCS[9]
"IGMP MCS[9]: TX-MCS Data
interface lag-redirected [ifIndex 16]
Key Type: Group, Len: 9, Grp Addr: 239.255.1.1
Data Type: Group, Len: 20, Ver: 0, RecType: 1, Compat Mode: 3,
```

ESM IGMP Debug

```
Num Fwd Srcs: 1, Num Blk Srcs: 0
Fwd Sources:
    192.168.4.2
"

70 2013/07/03 15:34:42.43 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP MCS[9]
"IGMP MCS[9]: TX-MCS Data
interface lag-redirected [ifIndex 16]
Key Type: Group, Len: 9, Grp Addr: 239.255.1.1
Data Type: Group, Len: 20, Ver: 0, RecType: 1, Compat Mode: 3,
Num Fwd Srcs: 1, Num Blk Srcs: 0
Fwd Sources:
    192.168.4.2
"

71 2013/07/03 15:34:44.36 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP MCS[9]
"IGMP MCS[9]: TX-MCS Data (GlblDel)
interface lag-redirected [ifIndex 16]
Key Type: Group, Len: 9, Grp Addr: 239.255.1.1
Data Type: Group, Len: 16, Ver: 0, RecType: 1, Compat Mode: 3,
Num Fwd Srcs: 0, Num Blk Srcs: 0
"

72 2013/07/03 15:34:44.37 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP MCS[9]
"IGMP MCS[9]: TX-MCS Data (GlblDel)
interface lag-redirected [ifIndex 16]
Key Type: Group, Len: 9, Grp Addr: 239.255.1.1
Data Type: Group, Len: 16, Ver: 0, RecType: 1, Compat Mode: 3,
Num Fwd Srcs: 0, Num Blk Srcs: 0
"
```

The debug information on BNG-2 shows the sync message received over MCS for the removal of the multicast (S,G).

```
13 2013/07/03 20:34:44.37 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP MCS[5]
"IGMP MCS[5]: RX-MCS Data
interface lag-redirected [ifIndex 15]
Key Type: Group, Len: 9, Grp Addr: 239.255.1.1
Data Type: Group, Len: 20, Ver: 0, RecType: 1, Compat Mode: 3,
Num Fwd Srcs: 1, Num Blk Srcs: 0
Fwd Sources:
    192.168.4.2
"
```

Conclusion

Multicast is an essential part of Triple Play Services. The SR 7750 TPSDA solution is much more than a baseline multicast delivery, it includes individual subscriber awareness and offers a full state redundancy option. Subscriber awareness allows for fine tuning of subscriber multicast settings and for troubleshooting on a per subscriber basis. Full state redundancy reduces failover time and ensures high availability of multicast services. This example provided a complete configuration walk through of both the IPoE and PPPoE SRRP model with redirection. All multicast streams can be redirected to a dedicated interface for all subscribers to receive.

ESM IPv4: Multicast with SRRP

In This Chapter

This section describes ESM IPv4 multicast with SRRP configurations.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 636](#)
- [Overview on page 637](#)
- [Configuration on page 639](#)
- [Conclusion on page 667](#)

Applicability

This example is applicable to all 7750 SR-12 with IOM3-XP and IMMs, and needs chassis mode c as a minimum. This is also supported on 7450 ESS chassis in mixed-mode and 7750 SR-c4/12 platform.

The configuration was tested on release 11.0R1 and covers both IPoE and PPPoE subscribers.

Overview

Alcatel-Lucent's Triple Play Service Delivery Architecture (TPSDA) has allowed operators to integrate High Speed Internet (HSI), voice, and video services within a single network infrastructure. The goal of this section is to walk through the configuration of a redundant TPSDA multicast architecture and the configuration of advanced multicast filters. The topics are divided into the following sections:

- Enhanced Subscriber Management (ESM) multicast baseline configuration
 - IGMP configuration on ESM group interface
 - ESM IGMP-policy configuration
- PPPoE ESM multicast configuration
- IPoE ESM multicast configuration
- IGMP Subscriber Router Redundancy Protocol (SRRP)
 - Multi-Chassis Synchronization (MCS) walkthrough
- Advanced ESM IGMP configurations
 - Filter list

The network topology displayed in [Figure 114](#) shows a typical TPSDA setup. It consists of three 7750s and a single 7450. Two 7750s are configured as Broadband Network Gateways (BNGs) and the third 7750 is configured as a P router. The 7450 is used as an aggregation switch to aggregate all subscribers.

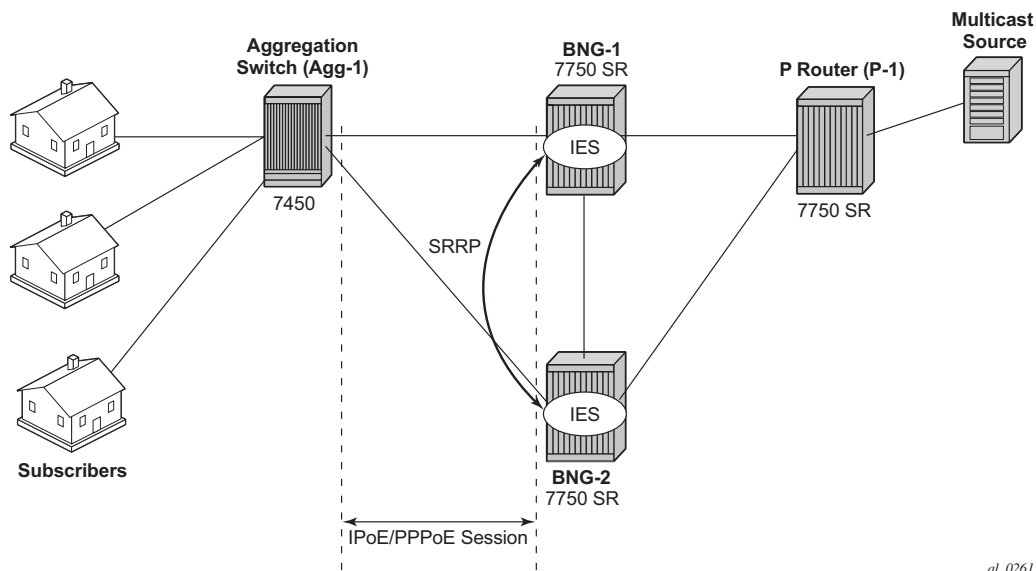


Figure 114: Network Topology Overview

Both BNGs are configured with SRRP to provide redundancy. Note that SRRP is only used for redundancy purposes. SRRP is not mandatory for supporting multicast. The P router is connected to the multicast source and to the network side of both BNGs. The connections between the BNGs and the P router are also running PIM to provide multicast delivery. On the access side, the two BNGs are connected to an aggregation switch which aggregates the traffic originating from both PPPoE and IPoE subscribers. The BNGs are IGMP capable and will respond to subscribers' IGMP requests.

There are two requirements to enable multicast delivery using ESM. First, the ESM group interface must have IGMP enabled. Second, the ESM subscribers must be configured with an IGMP-policy to receive multicast. When both requirements are met, the BNG will process the subscribers' IGMP messages, otherwise, IGMP messages are simply ignored and dropped. All customer premise device (CPE) IGMP messages are aggregated via the 7450 and passed to the BNGs. Since the BNGs are running SRRP, the SRRP master is the only BNG processing and answering the IGMP messages. Protocol Independent Multicasting (PIM) is then used between the BNG and the P router to request the multicast content. If PIM is successful in retrieving the multicast group, the multicast stream is forwarded towards the subscribers. This is the typical multicast delivery model for TPSDA.

Configuration

This section expects a basic knowledge of ESM.

ESM SRRP Configuration Overview

Figure 115 shows the addressing scheme used in the setup. The example uses numbered SRRP subscriber interfaces with static SAPs serving both IPoE and PPPoE subscribers. The configuration of the RADIUS server is out of the scope of this example.

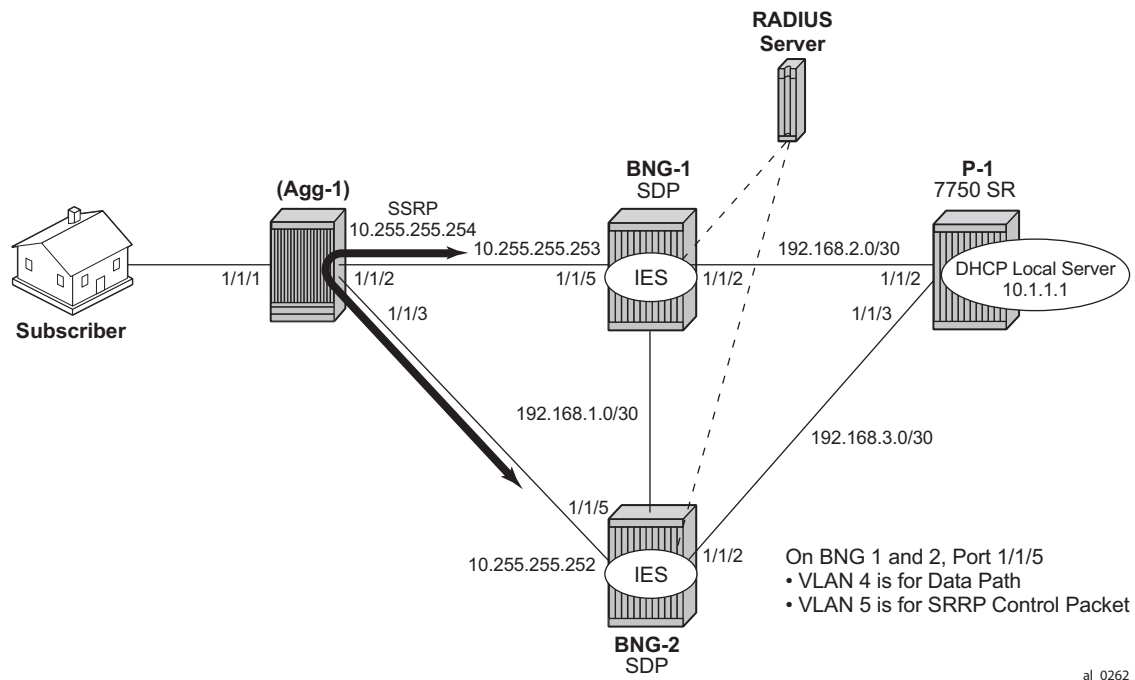


Figure 115: Network Topology Used for the Testing

ESM SRRP Configuration Overview

The baseline configuration for BNG-1 is shown below without any IGMP configuration. The subscriber-interface is configured in an IES, though it is also possible to configure the subscriber-interface in a VPRN. OSPF and PIM are also provisioned to provide routing and multicast capabilities. The SRRP configuration with priority 100 ensures BNG-1 is the master when both BNGs are active as the SRRP priority for BNG-2 is lower.

```
*A:BNG-1>config>service>ies# info
-----
description "BNG-1"
redundant-interface "MClink-BNG-1-BNG-2" create
  address 192.168.1.0/31
  ip-mtu 1500
  spoke-sdp 1:1 create
  no shutdown
exit
exit
interface "Int-BNG-1-P-1" create
  address 192.168.2.1/30
  sap 1/1/2 create
  no shutdown
exit
exit
subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
  address 10.255.255.253/8 gw-ip-address 10.255.255.254 track-srrp 1
  group-interface "group-int-1" create
    dhcp
      server 192.168.0.1
      lease-populate 10
      client-applications dhcp ppp
      gi-address 10.255.255.253
      no shutdown
    exit
  authentication-policy "auth-policy-1"
  redundant-interface "MClink-BNG-1-BNG-2"
  sap 1/1/5:4 create
    sub-sla-mgmt
      def-sub-id use-sap-id
      def-sub-profile "multicast-profile-1"
      def-sla-profile "sla-profile-1"
      sub-ident-policy "sub-ident-policy-1"
      multi-sub-sap 10
      no shutdown
    exit
  exit
  sap 1/1/5:5 create
  exit
  srrp 1 create
    message-path 1/1/5:5
    priority 100
    no shutdown
  exit
  pppoe
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
exit
```

```

A:BNG-1>config>router# info
    ospf
        traffic-engineering
        area 0.0.0.0
            interface "system"
                no shutdown
            exit
            interface "int-BNG-1-BNG-2"
                interface-type point-to-point
                metric 10000
                no shutdown
            exit
            interface "sub-int-1"
                no shutdown
            exit
            interface "int-BNG-1-P-1"
                no shutdown
            exit
        exit
    exit
    pim
        interface "nt-BNG-1-P-1"
        exit
        no shutdown

```

The baseline configuration for BNG-2 is shown below without any IGMP configuration. The default SRRP priority for BNG-2 is lower than the SRRP priority for BNG-1 and hence BNG-2 will be in standby mode.

```

*A:BNG-2>config>service>ies# info
-----
    description "BNG-2"
    redundant-interface "MClink-BNG-2-BNG-1" create
        address 192.168.1.1/31
        ip-mtu 1500
        spoke-sdp 1:1 create
        no shutdown
    exit
    exit
    interface "int-BNG-2-P-1" create
        address 192.168.3.1/30
        sap 1/1/2 create
        no shutdown
    exit
    exit
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
        address 10.255.255.252/8 gw-ip-address 10.255.255.254 track-srrp 1
        group-interface "group-int-1" create
            dhcp
                server 192.168.0.1
                lease-populate 10
                client-applications dhcp ppp
                gi-address 10.255.255.252
                no shutdown
            exit
            authentication-policy "auth-policy-1"
            redundant-interface "MClink-BNG-2-BNG-1"

```

ESM SRRP Configuration Overview

```
sap 1/1/5:4 create
  sub-sla-mgmt
    def-sub-id use-sap-id
    def-sub-profile "multicast-profile-1"
    def-sla-profile "sla-profile-1"
    sub-ident-policy "sub-ident-policy-1"
    multi-sub-sap 10
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
sap 1/1/5:5 create
exit
srrp 1 create
  message-path 1/1/5:5
  no shutdown
exit
pppoe
  no shutdown
exit

exit
exit

*A:BNG-2>config>router# info
ospf
  traffic-engineering
  area 0.0.0.0
    interface "system"
      no shutdown
    exit
    interface "int-BNG-2-BNG-1"
      interface-type point-to-point
      metric 10000
      no shutdown
    exit
    interface "sub-int-1"
      no shutdown
    exit
    interface "int-BNG-2-P-1"
      no shutdown
    exit
  exit
exit
pim
  interface "int-BNG-2-P-1"
  exit
  no shutdown
exit
```

The baseline configuration for the 7450 aggregation switch is shown below. Two VPLS services are configured. The first VPLS, VPLS 1, is responsible for passing the SRRP control traffic over VLAN 5. The second VPLS, VPLS 2, is responsible for passing all subscriber data traffic over VLAN 4.

```
*A:Agg-1>config>service>info
    vpls 1 customer 1 create
        sap 1/1/2:5 create
            no shutdown
        exit
        sap 1/1/3:5 create
            no shutdown
        exit
    no shutdown
    exit
    vpls 2 customer 1 create
        sap 1/1/2:4 create
            no shutdown
        exit
        sap 1/1/3:4 create
            no shutdown
        exit
        sap 1/1/1:4 create
            no shutdown
        exit
    no shutdown
    exit
```

The baseline configuration on the P router is shown below. The P router has a local DHCP server configured and performs the DHCP address assignment. It is also attached to the multicast source and uses PIM to deliver multicast streams.

```
*A:P-1>config>router>info
#-----
echo "Local DHCP Server Configuration"
#-----
    dhcp
        local-dhcp-server "dhcp-local-server" create
            use-gi-address scope pool
            pool "pool-1" create
                subnet 10.0.0.0/8 create
                    options
                        subnet-mask 255.0.0.0
                        default-router 10.255.255.254
                    exit
                address-range 10.0.0.10 10.0.0.254
            exit
        exit
        no shutdown
    exit
exit
#-----
echo "IP Configuration"
#-----
    interface "dhcp-lb1"
        address 192.168.0.1/32
```

ESM SRRP Configuration Overview

```
        loopback
        local-dhcp-server "dhcp-local-server"
        no shutdown
    exit
    interface "int-P-1-BNG-1"
        address 192.168.2.2/30
        port 1/1/2
        no shutdown
    exit
    interface "int-P-1-BNG-2"
        address 192.168.3.2/30
        port 1/1/3
        no shutdown
    exit
    interface "P-1-multicast-source"
        address 192.168.4.1/30
        port 1/1/1
        no shutdown
    exit
    interface "system"
        address 192.0.2.3/32
        no shutdown
    exit

#-----
    ospf
        area 0.0.0.0
            interface "system"
                no shutdown
            exit
            interface "int-P-1-BNG-1"
                no shutdown
            exit
            interface "int-P-1-BNG-2"
                no shutdown
            exit
            interface "P-1-multicast-source"
                no shutdown
            exit
        exit
    exit
    pim
        interface "int-P-1-BNG-1"
        exit
        interface "int-P-1-BNG-2"
        exit
        interface "P-1-multicast-source"
        exit
    exit
```


Enable IGMP on Group Interfaces

The configuration below adds the group interface to IGMP. If the subscriber-interface is configured in a VPRN, each VPRN will have its individual IGMP instance. Add the group-interface to the IGMP instance.

```
*A:BNG-1>config>router>igmp# info
-----
group-interface "group-int-1"
no shutdown
exit
```

Placing the group-interface into IGMP is the first step required to deliver multicast content. The options available in this IGMP context can be classified into two categories:

1. Bandwidth and multicast group management
2. Interoperability

[no] disable-router*	- Enable/disable the IGMP router alert check option
[no] import	- Import a policy to filter IGMP packets
[no] max-groups	- Configure the maximum number of groups for this group-interface
[no] max-grp-sources	- Configure the maximum number of group sources for this group-interface
[no] max-sources	- Configure the maximum number of sources for this group-interface
[no] mcac	+ Configure multicast CAC policy and constraints for this interface
[no] shutdown	- Administratively enable/disable the interface
[no] sub-hosts-only	- Enable/disable the IGMP traffic from known hosts only
[no] subnet-check	- Enable/disable local subnet checking for IGMP
[no] version	- Configure the version of IGMP

The bandwidth and multicast group management options are:

- Import — Used for white-listing or black-listing multicast groups in the IGMP control plane. More configuration detail is offered in a later section.
- Max-groups — Controls the maximum number of groups (channels) allowed on the group interface.
- Max-sources — Controls the maximum number of sources of the multicast streams on a group interface.
- Max-grp-sources — Specifies the maximum number of multicast group and source pairs for a group-interface.
- MCAC — Multicast Connection Admission Control (MCAC) is a bandwidth management feature to control the amount of multicast content a group interface is allowed to receive. It can also be applied at subscriber level to offer a hierarchical control. Multicast bandwidth can be controlled on a per subscriber basis.

Enable IGMP on Group Interfaces

The interoperability options available are:

- Router alert — enable or disable router alert processing.
- Sub-hosts-only — Only subscriber originated IGMP messages are accepted and anything else is ignored. Sometimes, IGMP message might not arrive directly from the subscriber. For example, an aggregation switch or DSLAM residing between the CPE and the BNG might perform IGMP proxy. The switch/DSLAM will insert its own source IP-address in place of the subscriber.

It should be noted that, when an IGMP proxy is used, the identity of the subscriber is lost (since the original source IP of the IGMP message is replaced).

- Subnet-check — IGMP messages will be checked against the group interface subnet. All IGMP messages with a source address that is not in the local subnet are dropped.
- Version — The RFCs define 3 versions of IGMP, all of them are supported by SROS.

It must be noted that when subscribers are sending IGMPv1 or v2 in a bridged LAN, suppression of IGMP messages can occur. If an IGMP host detects the presence of another host reporting for the same multicast group, it will suppress its own IGMP report message and silently receive the multicast stream. When IGMP messages are suppressed, the BNG might not be able to account for the real multicast bandwidth consumption of each subscriber. IGMPv3, on the other hand, forces all hosts to send IGMP reports. This guarantees that the BNG identifies each subscriber's IGMP request.

ESM IGMP Policy

In addition to enabling IGMP on the group interface, the subscriber must be allowed to receive multicast content through an IGMP policy. For this purpose, the IGMP-policy is associated with the subscriber's subscriber-profile. Therefore during authentication, either RADIUS, the local user database (LUDB), or the default-sub-profile should return a sub-profile with an IGMP policy. The provisioning requires two steps:

Step 1: Create the IGMP policy.

```
*A:BNG-1> config subscr-mgmt
      igmp-policy "igmp-policy-1" create
      exit
```

Step 2: Add the IGMP policy to a subscriber-profile.

```
*A:BNG-1> config subscr-mgmt
      sub-prof "multicast-profile-1"
      igmp-policy "igmp-policy-1"
```

The above configuration is the minimum requirement for a subscriber to receive multicast streams. The different options inside an IGMP policy are:

```
[no] description      - Description for the IGMP policy
[no] egress-rate-mo*  - Configure the egress rate modification
[no] fast-leave       - Enable/disable IGMP fast-leave processing
[no] import           - Specify the import policy to filter IGMP packets
[no] max-num-groups   - Configure the max number of multicast groups
[no] max-num-grp-so*  - Configure the max number of multicast group sources
[no] max-num-sources  - Configure the max number of multicast sources
[no] mcast-reporting  + Configure the mcast reporting
[no] per-host-repli*  - Enable/disable IGMP per-host-replication processing
[no] redirection-po*  - Specify the IGMP redirection policy
      static          + Add/remove IGMP static group membership
[no] version          - Configure the version of IGMP
```

Again, two groups of options are available: the bandwidth and multicast group management options, and the interoperability options.

Bandwidth and multicast group management options:

- Import — Used for white-listing and black-listing multicast groups. This allows the import policy to be defined per subscriber.
- Max-num-group — Limits the maximum multicast groups for the group interface. This limits the groups per subscriber.
- Max-num-sources — Limits the maximum multicast sources for the group interface. This limits the sources per subscriber.

- **Max-num-grp-sources** — Limits the maximum multicast group and source pairs for the group interface.
- **Egress-rate-modify** — This feature adjusts the subscriber queue bandwidth according to multicast consumption. It is used in conjunction with MCAC. An MCAC policy defines the bandwidth consumption per multicast group. As a subscriber joins a multicast group, the bandwidth of the multicast channel is subtracted from the subscriber queue bandwidth. The remaining bandwidth is what the subscriber can use for all other services.

Interoperability options:

- **Fast-leave** — Enables the router to withdraw the multicast group quickly when receiving an IGMP leave message without any last query. This should be used in a subscriber per SAP (dot1q or qinq) model.
- **Static** — This allows the provisioning of static multicast groups that the subscriber will receive regardless of any IGMP report. The static multicast group can be Source Specific Multicast (SSM) based.
- **Per-host-replication** — SR OS has the capability to replicate a multicast source per subscriber. For example, if 10 subscribers are requesting the same multicast group, then 10 multicast streams are replicated and delivered individually to each subscriber. PPPoE requires service delivery to be point to point. To achieve this, the Ethernet header destination address is the subscriber's source MAC. The IP layer destination remains as the multicast group that the subscriber requested. For IPoE, without per-host replication, the standard multicast MAC representing the multicast group is used as the destination MAC address when delivering the multicast content to the subscribers. When per-host replication is used for IPoE subscribers, the destination MAC address will be the host's own MAC address and the IP destination will remain as the multicast group that the subscriber is interested in. The multicast content is then delivered to the subscriber via MAC learning as a unicast stream.

It should be noted that when per-host-replication is enabled, all multicast content will be using the subscriber queues. It is no longer necessary to use egress-rate-modify as mentioned above.

- **Redirection-policy** — Another popular model for multicast deployment is to redirect all multicast content to another interface instead of sending the content directly to the subscriber. All subscribers use a common VLAN to receive the multicast content.

ESM IGMP IPoE Walkthrough

With the baseline configuration applied, the BNG is ready to process IGMP messages and deliver multicast. [Figure 116](#) shows a flow for IPoE subscribers requesting and receiving multicast traffic. The key items are highlighted in dotted box:

1. The ESM group-interface must have IGMP enabled
2. The subscriber must be associated with an IGMP-policy via sub-profile.

The subscriber sends an IGMPv3 report using (192.168.4.2, 239.255.1.1).

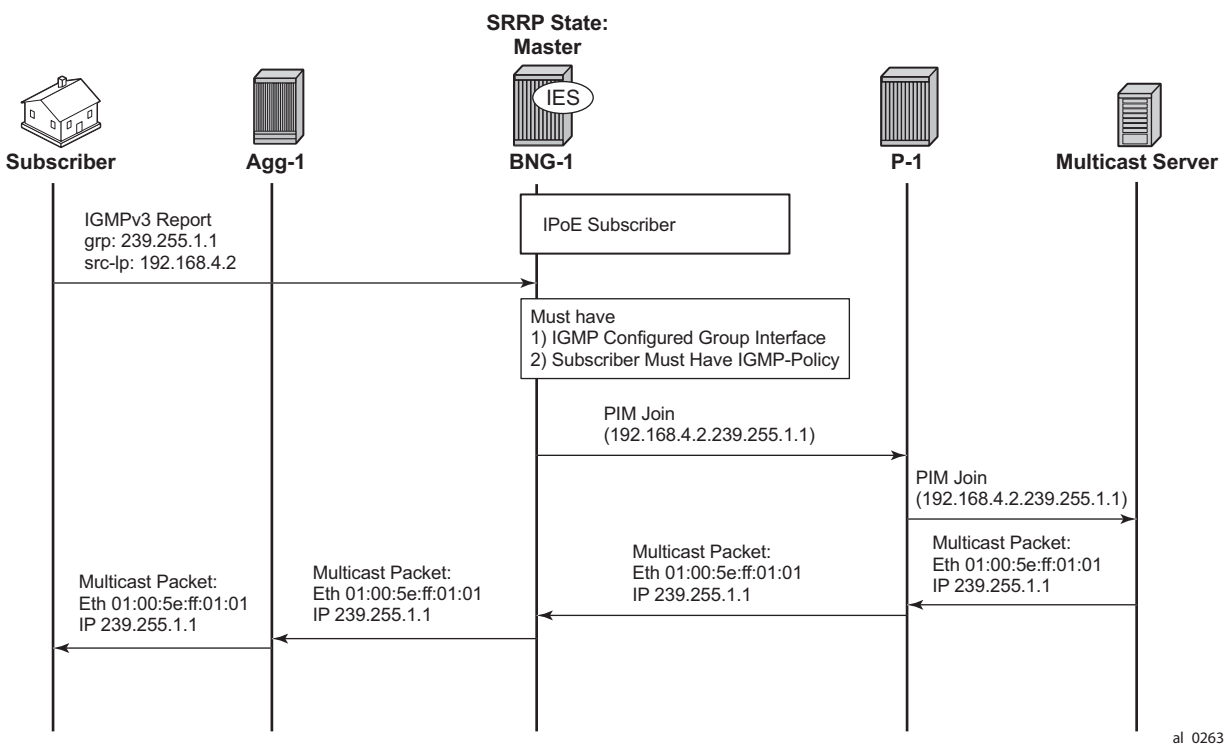


Figure 116: IPoE Subscriber Multicast Flow

To verify that the group interface is ready for multicast, use the **show** command as indicated below. Remember that the IES service id is 1 and the group-interface name is *group-int-1*.

Step 1: Verify if the group-interface has IGMP enabled.

```

*A:BNG-1> show router igmp group-interface
=====
IGMP Group-Interfaces
=====
  
```

ESM IGMP IPoE Walkthrough

FwdSvc	Group-Interface SAP	Adm/Opr-State Adm/Opr-Version	Import-Policy Num-Groups
1	group-int-1 1/1/5:4	Up/Up 3/3	none 0

Group-Interfaces = 1, SAPs = 1

Step 2: Ensure the subscriber is associated with an IGMP-policy. Since the IGMP-policy is associated with a subscriber-profile, verifying the IGMP-policy is achieved via sub-profile.

```
*A:BNG-1> show subscriber-mgmt sub-profile "multicast-profile-1"
=====
Subscriber Profile multicast-profile-1
=====
Description      : (Not Specified)
I. Sched. Policy : N/A
E. Sched. Policy : N/A
I. Policer Ctrl. : N/A
E. Policer Ctrl. : N/A
Q Frame-Based Ac*: Disabled
Acct. Policy     : N/A
Rad. Acct. Pol.  : N/A
Dupl. Acct. Pol. : N/A
ANCP Pol.       : N/A
HostTrk Pol.    : N/A
IGMP Policy      : igmp-policy-1
Sub. MCAC Policy : N/A
NAT Policy       : N/A
Def. Encap Offset: none
Avg Frame Size   : N/A
Preference       : 5
E. Agg Rate Limit: Max
Collect Stats    : Disabled
Encap Offset Mode: none

-----
HSMDB-2
-----
I. Qos Policy    : 1
E. Qos Policy    : 1
E. Agg Rate Limit: Max
E. WRR Policy    : N/A
Pkt Byte Offset  : add 0*

-----
Last Mgmt Change : 05/14/2013 10:12:49
=====
* indicates that the corresponding row element may have been truncated.
```

After the verification, the BNGs are ready to deliver multicast content.

First, initiate an IGMP report from a subscriber requesting a multicast channel. In this example, IGMPv3 SSM is used. IPoE by default replicates per-SAP. If the IGMP message was successfully received and processed, an (S,G) binding will be associated with the subscriber SAP.

In this case, the IGMPv3 SSM message requests (192.168.4.2, 239.255.1.1). The subscriber host is assigned an IP address of 10.0.0.24. To verify the IGMP message was successfully processed, check that the (S,G) is learned on the IGMP instance. The example below shows a successful IGMP message processed by the BNG, the (S,G) is registered against the subscriber SAP.

```

*A:BNG-1> show router igmp group
=====
IGMP Interface Groups
=====
IGMP Host Groups
=====
IGMP SAP Groups
=====
(192.168.4.2,239.255.1.1)
  Fwd List   : 1/1/5:4                      Up Time : 0d 00:00:08
-----
(*,G)/(S,G) Entries : 1
=====

```

For more IGMP details on the group interface, including maximum multicast groups and bandwidth management, use the following command:

```

*A:BNG-1> show router igmp group-interface detail
=====
IGMP Group-Interfaces
=====
FwdSvc/Grp-Intf   : 1/group-int-1
Admin-Status      : Up                      Oper-Status      : Up
Import-Policy     : none                    Subnet-Check     : Disabled
Router-Alert-Check : Enabled                 Sub-Hosts-Only   : Disabled
MCAC Policy Name   :                       MCAC Const Adm St : Enable
MCAC Max Unconst BW: no limit                MCAC Max Mand BW  : no limit
MCAC In use Mand BW: 0                       MCAC Avail Mand BW : unlimited
MCAC In use Opnl BW: 0                       MCAC Avail Opnl BW : unlimited
-----
SAP                : 1/1/5:4
Admin/Oper version: 3/3                      Num Groups       : 1
Max Groups Allowed: No Limit                 Max Groups Till Now: 1
Max Sources Allow*: No Limit
Max Grp Srcs Allo*: No Limit
-----
Group-Address      : 239.255.1.1             Up Time          : 0d 00:04:05
Expires            : N/A                     Mode             : include
V1 Host Timer      : Not running              Type             : dynamic
V2 Host Timer      : Not running              Compat Mode      : IGMP Version 3
-----
GrpSrc-Address     Expires                    Type             Fwd/Blk
-----
192.168.4.2        0d 00:03:50                dynamic          Fwd
-----
Group-Interfaces = 1, SAPs = 1
=====
* indicates that the corresponding row element may have been truncated.

```

If the subscriber fails to receive multicast traffic, check if the subscriber has an associated IGMP policy with the following command. If the subscriber entry is missing, make sure the subscriber has a sub-profile that is tied to an IGMP-policy.

ESM IGMP IPoE Walkthrough

```
*A:BNG-1> show service active-subscribers igmp detail
=====
Active Subscribers Detail
=====
Subscriber                               IGMP-Policy
HostAddr                                GrpItf          NumGroups
GrpAddr                                Type            Mode
SrcAddr                                Type            Blk/Fwd
-----
Subscriber-1                            igmp-policy-1
-----
Number of Subscribers : 1
```

Another possibility for failing to receive multicast traffic could be due to the control mechanisms inside the IGMP-policy such as: bandwidth control, multicast groups restrictions, and interoperability options. Use the following command to view the IGMP policy configured control parameters.

```
*A:BNG-1> show subscriber-mgmt igmp-policy "igmp-policy-1"
=====
IGMP Policy igmp-policy-1
=====
Import Policy                          :
Admin Version                          : 3
Num Subscribers                        : 0
Host Max Group                         : No Limit
Host Max Sources                       : No Limit
Host Max Group Sources                 : No Limit
Fast Leave                            : yes
Redirection Policy                     :
Per Host Replication                   : no
Egress Rate Modify                     : no
Mcast Reporting Destination Name       :
Mcast Reporting Admin State            : Disabled
=====
```

Below is a command to view the (S,G)s that all subscribers are requesting. Since the system has only one subscriber, this example only shows one host.

```
*A:BNG-1> show router igmp hosts detail
=====
IGMP Host 10.0.0.24
=====
Oper Status      : Up           MacAddress       : 00:00:10:10:10:11
Oper version     : 3            Subscriber       : Subscriber-1
Num Groups       : 1            GrpItf          : group-int-1
Max Grps Till Now: 1            IGMP-Policy     : igmp-policy-1
PPPoE SessionId : N/A          Next query time: 0d 00:01:52
FwdSvcId         : 1            Max Srcs Allow*: No Limit
Max Grps Allowed : No Limit     Max Grp Srcs A*: No Limit
-----
IGMP Group
-----
Group Address    : 239.255.1.1    Up Time         : 0d 00:02:46
Expires         : Not running    Mode            : Include
```



```

V1 Host Timer   : Not running   Type       : Dynamic
V2 Host Timer   : Not running   Compat Mode: IGMP Version 3
Redir.SvcId     : N/A           Redir.Intf  : N/A

```

```

-----
Source Address  Expires      Type       Fwd/Blk
-----
192.168.4.2     0d 00:04:09   Dynamic    Fwd
-----

```

```

Hosts : 1

```

To check for an individual subscriber and its requested (S,G)s, the following command can be used.

```

*A:BNG-1> show service active-subscribers igmp subscriber "Subscriber-2" detail
=====
Active Subscribers Detail
=====
Subscriber                               IGMP-Policy
  HostAddr                               GrpItf                               NumGroups
    GrpAddr                               Type                               Up-Time                               Mode
      SrcAddr                             Type                               Blk/Fwd
-----
Subscriber-1                             igmp-policy-1
  10.0.0.24                             group-int-1                               1
    239.255.1.1                         Dynamic                               0d 00:01:26       Include
      192.168.4.2                       Dynamic                               Fwd
-----
Number of Subscribers : 1
=====

```

ESM IGMP PPPoE Walkthrough

IGMP message processing and delivery of multicast content for PPPoE subscribers is considered next. [Figure 117](#) shows the message flow for multicast content delivery to PPPoE subscribers.

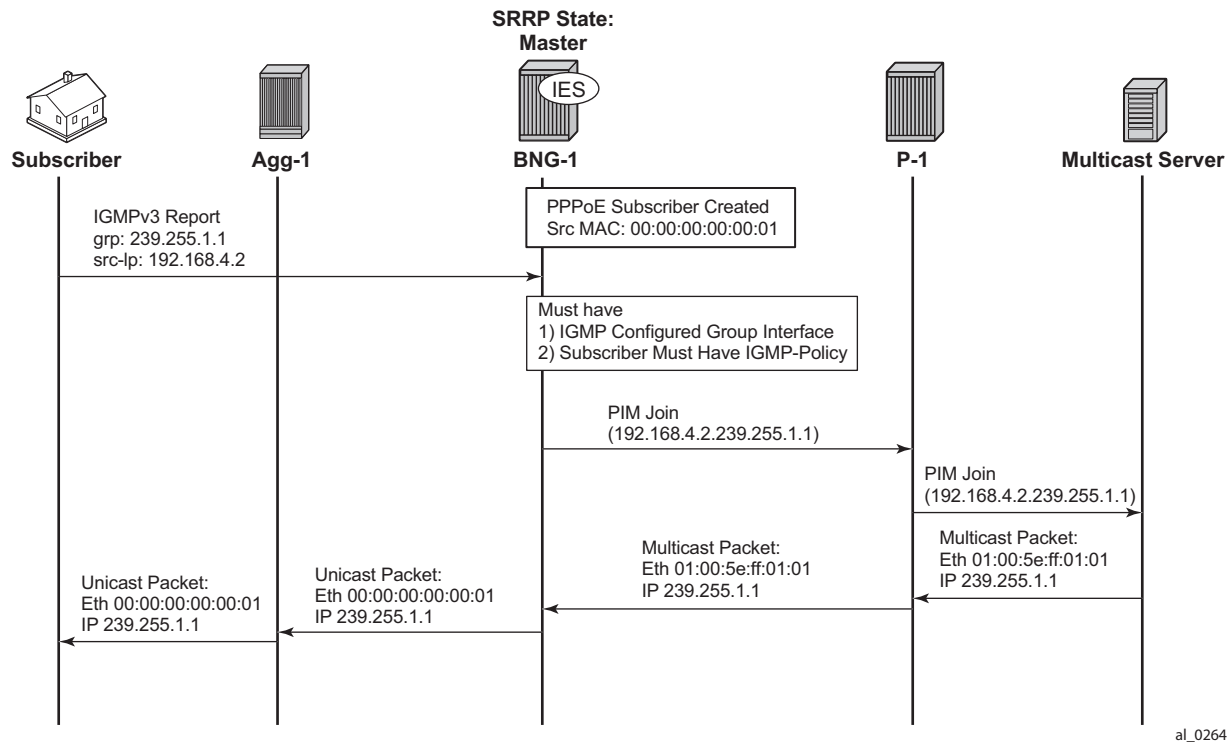


Figure 117: PPPoE Multicast Flow

As stated earlier, the important configuration aspects are highlighted in the dotted box. The main difference between IPoE subscribers and PPPoE subscribers is the multicast data path. PPPoE subscribers receive multicast content via Ethernet unicast while IPoE subscribers receive multicast content via Ethernet multicast. PPPoE natively does not have a multicast mechanism and requires all data traffic to be unicast. Even if the subscribers are on the same SAP, multicast content is replicated per subscriber. To achieve this, the IP header indicates a multicast address while the Ethernet header destination MAC address is changed to the subscriber’s MAC address.

Step 1: Verify the group interface. It is very similar to the output for the IPoE group interface.

```
*A:BNG-1> show router igmp group-interface detail
=====
IGMP Group-Interfaces
```

```

=====
FwdSvc/Grp-Intf      : 1/group-int-1
Admin-Status         : Up
Import-Policy        : none
Router-Alert-Check   : Enabled
MCAC Policy Name     : 
MCAC Max Unconst BW  : no limit
MCAC In use Mand BW  : 0
MCAC In use Opnl BW  : 0
Oper-Status          : Up
Subnet-Check         : Enabled
Sub-Hosts-Only       : Enabled
MCAC Const Adm St    : Enable
MCAC Max Mand BW     : no limit
MCAC Avail Mand BW   : unlimited
MCAC Avail Opnl BW   : unlimited
-----
SAP                   : 1/1/5:4
Admin/Oper version: 3/3
Max Groups Allowed: No Limit
Max Sources Allow*: No Limit
Max Grp Srcs Allo*: No Limit
-----
Group-Interfaces = 1, SAPs = 1
=====
* indicates that the corresponding row element may have been truncated.

```

Next an IGMPv3 message is sent towards the BNG. The (S,G) is (192.168.4.2, 239.255.1.1). The PPPoE subscriber is assigned an IP address of 10.0.0.12.

The output below shows the key difference between a PPPoE subscriber and an IPoE subscriber. PPPoE multicast content is replicated per host and not per SAP. This output shows this clearly as the multicast group is associated with the host and not with the SAP.

```

*A:BNG-1> show router igmp group
=====
IGMP Interface Groups
=====
IGMP Host Groups
=====
(192.168.4.2,239.255.1.1)
  Fwd List   : 10.0.0.12      Up Time : 0d 17:19:08
=====
IGMP SAP Groups
=====
-----
(*,G)/(S,G) Entries : 1
=====

```

The next command shows all of the subscribers and all the (S,G)s joined. In this case there is only one PPPoE subscriber.

```

*A:BNG-1> show router igmp hosts detail
=====
IGMP Host 10.0.0.12
=====
Oper Status      : Up      MacAddress       : 52:e0:50:bd:00:00
Oper version     : 3        Subscriber      : User-ppp-1
Num Groups       : 1        GrpItf         : group-int-1
Max Grps Till Now: 1        IGMP-Policy    : igmp-policy-1
PPPoE SessionId  : 1        Next query time: 0d 00:01:47

```

ESM IGMP PPPoE Walkthrough

```
FwdSvcId          : 1          Max Srcs Allow*: No Limit
Max Grps Allowed  : No Limit   Max Grp Srcs A*: No Limit
```

----- IGMP Group

```
-----
Group Address      : 239.255.1.1   Up Time       : 0d 00:00:36
Expires            : Not running   Mode           : Include
V1 Host Timer      : Not running   Type           : Dynamic
V2 Host Timer      : Not running   Compat Mode: IGMP Version 3
Redir.SvcId        : N/A          Redir.Intf    : N/A
-----
```

```
Source Address      Expires      Type           Fwd/Blk
-----
```

```
192.168.4.2        0d 00:04:03   Dynamic        Fwd
-----
```

```
Hosts : 1
```

```
=====
* indicates that the corresponding row element may have been truncated.
```

To view each individual subscriber and their respective (S,G)s, use the command below.

```
*A:BNG-1> show service active-subscribers igmp subscriber "user02" detail
```

===== Active Subscribers Detail

```
=====
Subscriber          IGMP-Policy
HostAddr            GrpItf          NumGroups
GrpAddr             Type           Up-Time      Mode
SrcAddr             Type           Blk/Fwd
-----
User-ppp-1          igmp-policy-1
10.0.0.12            group-int-1          1
239.255.1.1          Dynamic            0d 00:02:07   Include
192.168.4.2          Dynamic            Fwd
-----
```

```
Number of Subscribers : 1
```

```
=====
```

ESM IGMP MCS

The BNGs are configured with SRRP for both IPoE and PPPoE subscribers. This provides stateful redundancy when the master BNG fails. The master BNG will be the only one processing and answering IGMP messages. The standby BNG does not perform any IGMP processing and receives updates through MCS for all subscribers in real time. In the event of a failure, the standby will become active and starts processing all IGMP messages. The standby will also immediately trigger PIM joins for all of the subscribers's (S,G)s. This is all possible because the standby is always synchronized with the master BNG prior to the failover. Restoration of all multicast channels should happen quickly after the failover and depends on both the PIM configuration and the underlying routing infrastructure.

The key parameters for MCS for ESM multicast are: syncing of subscribers (ipoe, pppoe), SRRP and IGMP. Below is the redundancy configuration for BNG-1 and BNG-2.

```
*A:BNG-1>config>redundancy# info
-----
multi-chassis
  peer 192.0.2.2 create
  sync
    igmp
    srrp
    sub-mgmt ipoe pppoe
    port 1/1/5 create
      range 4-4 sync-tag "sub"
      range 5-5 sync-tag "srrp"
    exit
  no shutdown
exit
no shutdown
exit
exit
```

The following command displays the number of entries being synced across the BNGs.

```
*A:BNG-1> show redundancy multi-chassis sync peer 192.0.2.2 detail
=====
Multi-chassis Peer Table
=====
Peer
-----
Peer IP Address      : 192.0.2.2
Description          : (Not Specified)
Authentication       : Disabled
Source IP Address    : 192.0.2.1
Admin State          : Enabled
-----
Sync-status
-----
Client Applications  : IGMP SUBMGMT-IPOE SUBMGMT-PPPOE SRRP
Sync Admin State     : Up
Sync Oper State      : Up
```

```

DB Sync State      : inSync
Num Entries        : 15
Lcl Deleted Entries : 0
Alarm Entries      : 0
Rem Num Entries    : 15
Rem Lcl Deleted Entries : 0
Rem Alarm Entries  : 0
=====
MCS Application Stats
=====
Application        : igmp
Num Entries        : 1
Lcl Deleted Entries : 0
Alarm Entries      : 0
-----
Rem Num Entries    : 1
Rem Lcl Deleted Entries : 0
Rem Alarm Entries  : 0
-----
Application        : subMgmtIpo
Num Entries        : 1
Lcl Deleted Entries : 0
Alarm Entries      : 0
-----
Rem Num Entries    : 1
Rem Lcl Deleted Entries : 0
Rem Alarm Entries  : 0
-----
Application        : srrp
Num Entries        : 14
Lcl Deleted Entries : 0
Alarm Entries      : 0
-----
Rem Num Entries    : 14
Rem Lcl Deleted Entries : 0
Rem Alarm Entries  : 0
-----
Application        : subMgmtPppoe
Num Entries        : 1
Lcl Deleted Entries : 0
Alarm Entries      : 0
-----
Rem Num Entries    : 1
Rem Lcl Deleted Entries : 0
Rem Alarm Entries  : 0
-----
=====

```

To check the details of the synchronized data across the BNGs, use the command below. It provides a detailed description of the IGMP information synced across MCS.

```
*A:BNG-1> tools dump redundancy multi-chassis sync-database application igmp detail
```

If no entries are present for an application, no detail will be displayed.

FLAGS LEGEND: ld - local delete; da - delete alarm; pd - pending global delete

Peer Ip 192.0.2.2

Application IGMP

Sap-id	Client Key	DLen	Flags	timeStamp
SyncTag	deleteReason code and description			

1/1/5:4	Host=10.0.0.10, HostGroup=239.255.1.1			
sub		20	-- -- --	05/23/2013 13:05:31
0x0				

The following totals are for:

peer ip ALL, port/lag ALL, sync-tag ALL, application IGMP

Valid Entries:	1
Locally Deleted Entries:	0
Locally Deleted Alarmed Entries:	0
Pending Global Delete Entries:	0

ESM IGMP Debug

There are many debug features for ESM multicast. Debug allows real-time monitoring of all events happening on the system and can assist operators with troubleshooting. First enable debug on the system, then send an IGMP message to join a multicast group (S,G). Again the IGMP message used in this case is IGMPv3 with SSM. Below is the debug information for ESM IGMP at packet level.

```
debug
router
  igmp
    packet mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
  exit
exit

2977 2013/05/23 13:01:45.43 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 IGMP[9]
"IGMP[9]: RX-PKT
[012 03:58:58.090] IGMP host 10.0.0.10 V3 PDU: 10.0.0.10 -> 224.0.0.22 pduLen
20
  Type: V3 REPORT maxrespCode 0x0 checksum 0xddf7
  Num Group Records: 1
  Group Record 0
    Type: ALW_NEW_SRCS, AuxDataLen 0, Num Sources 1
    Mcast Addr: 239.255.1.1
    Source Address List
      192.168.4.2

"
```

Below is the debug information for ESM IGMP at host level and the associated IGMP events.

```
debug
router
  igmp
    host "10.0.0.10"
  exit
exit

2978 2013/05/23 13:01:45.43 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[ies1 inst 9
]
"IGMP[ies1 inst 9]: igmpIfGroupAdd
Adding 239.255.1.1 to IGMP host 10.0.0.10 database"

2979 2013/05/23 13:01:45.43 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[ies1 inst 9
]
"IGMP[ies1 inst 9]: igmpProcessGroupRec
Process group rec ALW_NEW_SRCS received on host 10.0.0.10 for group 239.255.1.1 i
n mode INCLUDE. Num srcs 1"

2980 2013/05/23 13:01:45.43 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[ies1 inst 9
]
"IGMP[ies1 inst 9]: igmpIfSrcAdd
Adding i/f source entry for host 10.0.0.10 (192.168.4.2,239.255.1.1) to IGMP fwdList
Database, redir if N/A"
```


Below is the debug information for ESM IGMP if MCS synchronization is enabled.

```
debug
  router
    igmp
      mcs "group-int-1"
    exit
  exit

2981 2013/05/23 13:01:45.44 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[ies1 inst 9
]
"IGMP[ies1 inst 9]: igmpMcsAddIfGroup
Building MCS entry for host 10.0.0.10, group 239.255.1.1"
```

The same debug commands can be used for viewing subscribers IGMP leave messages. Below is the debug information for ESM IGMP at packet level.

```
debug
  router
    igmp
      packet mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
    exit
  exit

2982 2013/05/23 13:02:23.75 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[9]
"IGMP[9]: RX-PKT
[012 03:59:36.410] IGMP host 10.0.0.10 V3 PDU: 10.0.0.10 -> 224.0.0.22 pduLen
20
  Type: V3 REPORT maxrespCode 0x0 checksum 0xdcf7
  Num Group Records: 1
    Group Record 0
      Type: BLK_OLD_SRCS, AuxDataLen 0, Num Sources 1
      Mcast Addr: 239.255.1.1
      Source Address List
        192.168.4.2
```

Below is the debug information for ESM IGMP at host level and the associated IGMP events.

```
debug
  router
    igmp
      host "10.0.0.10"
    exit
  exit

2983 2013/05/23 13:02:23.75 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[ies1 inst 9
]
"IGMP[ies1 inst 9]: igmpProcessGroupRec
Process group rec BLK_OLD_SRCS received on host 10.0.0.10 for group 239.255.1.1 i
n mode INCLUDE. Num srcs 1"

2984 2013/05/23 13:02:23.75 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[ies1 inst 9
]
"IGMP[ies1 inst 9]: igmpProcessIfSrcTimerExp"
```

ESM IGMP Debug

```
Source Timer expired for IGMP host 10.0.0.10 (192.168.4.2,239.255.1.1)"

2985 2013/05/23 13:02:23.75 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[ies1 inst 9
]
"IGMP[ies1 inst 9]: igmpIfSrcDel
Deleting i/f source entry for host 10.0.0.10 (192.168.4.2,239.255.1.1) from IGMP Dat
abase. DeleteFromAvl: 1 !Redir 0"

2986 2013/05/23 13:02:23.75 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[ies1 inst 9
]
"IGMP[ies1 inst 9]: igmpIfGroupDel
Deleting 239.255.1.1 from IGMP host 10.0.0.10 database"
```

The debug information when MCS removes the entry on the standby BNG is shown below.

```
debug
  router
    igmp
      mcs "group-int-1"
    exit
  exit

2987 2013/05/23 13:02:23.75 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[ies1 inst 9
]
"IGMP[ies1 inst 9]: igmpMcsDelIfGroup
Deleting MCS entry for host 10.0.0.10, group 239.255.1.1, Glb"

2988 2013/05/23 13:02:23.75 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[ies1 inst 9
]
"IGMP[ies1 inst 9]: igmpMcsDelIfGroup
Deleting MCS entry for host 10.0.0.10, group 239.255.1.1, Glb"

2989 2013/05/23 13:02:23.75 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[ies1 inst 9
]
"IGMP[ies1 inst 9]: igmpMcsDelIfGroup
Deleting MCS entry for host 10.0.0.10, group 239.255.1.1, Glb"
```

IGMP Control Plane Filters

IGMP control plane filtering can be applied at the router level and/or subscriber level (IGMP-policy). The filter list contains multicast groups (S,G) and is provisioned at the router level in the policy-options context. The filter can be applied either as a black-list or a white-list.

Step 1: Provision a prefix list for the multicast group (G). The configuration below is an example showing the various options possible for the prefix list. The only one used in this configuration is the prefix 239.255.1.1/32.

```
*A:BNG-1> config>router>policy-options#
  prefix-list "igmp-prefix-list-1"
    prefix 239.255.1.1/32 exact
    prefix 239.255.2.0/24 longer
    prefix 239.255.3.0/24 prefix-length-range 24-25
    prefix 239.255.4.0/24 through 25
  exit
```

Step 2a: Option 1 white-list, used below.

Provision a router policy. In the example below a white-list is configured, allowing only the prefix list specified and reject everything else. Source-address configuration is also possible for IGMP v3 (S,G).

```
*A:BNG-1> config>router>policy-options#
  policy-statement "igmp-white-list-1"
    entry 10
      from
        group-address "igmp-prefix-list-1"
        source-address 192.168.4.2
      exit
      action accept
    exit
  exit
  default-action reject
exit
```

Step 2b: Option 2 black-list, not used below.

Provision a router policy. Here, a black-list is configured, denying the prefix list and accepting everything else. Again, source-address configuration is also possible for IGMP v3 (S,G).

```
*A:BNG-1> config>router>policy-options#
  policy-statement "igmp-black-list-1"
    entry 10
      from
        group-address "igmp-prefix-list-1"
        source-address 192.168.4.2
      exit
      action reject
    exit
  exit
  default-action accept
```

```
exit
```

Step 3a: Hierarchical filter, group-interface.

The filter can be applied in two places. First, at router/group-interface level, this will apply to all subscribers connected to the group interface.

```
*A:BNG-1> config>router
      igmp
        group-interface "group-int-1"
          import "igmp-white-list-1"
          no shutdown
        exit
      no shutdown
    exit
```

Step 3b: Hierarchical filter, subscriber level.

The group-interface filter takes precedence over the subscriber level filter. After the group-interface applies its filter against the incoming IGMP messages, the individual subscriber defined IGMP filters will be applied to the remaining IGMP messages.

```
*A:BNG-1> config>subscr-mgmt>igmp-policy# info
-----
      import "igmp-white-list-1"
```

Use the **debug** command to verify that the policy is performing correctly for the host. Note that group 239.255.1.2 is not in the white-list and so is dropped.

```
debug
  router
    igmp
      group-interface "group-int-1"
      host "10.0.0.10"
      packet mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
      mcs
    exit
  exit

3310 2013/05/23 14:51:55.69 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[9]
"IGMP[9]: RX-PKT
[012 05:49:08.350] IGMP host 10.0.0.10 V3 PDU: 10.0.0.10 -> 224.0.0.22 pduLen
20
  Type: V3 REPORT maxrespCode 0x0 checksum 0xe1f6
  Num Group Records: 1
  Group Record 0
  Type: MODE_IS_INCL, AuxDataLen 0, Num Sources 1
  Mcast Addr: 239.255.1.2
  Source Address List
    192.168.4.2

"

3311 2013/05/23 14:51:55.69 EST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 ies1 IGMP[ies1 inst 9
```

```
]
"IGMP[ies1 inst 9]: igmpParseV3Report
IGMP V3 policy DROP on host 10.0.0.10, from host 10.0.0.10, grpAddr 239.255.1.2,
srcAddr 192.168.4.2"
```

IGMP Data Plane Filters

IGMP data plane filter utilize the ip-filter defined in the sla-profile. Again the filter can be used as a black-list or a white-list.

Step 1: Configure an ip-filter. Below is an example of a black-list filter.

```
*A:BNG-1> config>filter>ip-filter$ info
-----
default-action forward
entry 1 create
  match
    dst-ip 239.255.1.1/32
  exit
  action drop
exit
```

Step 2: Apply the configured ip filter into an sla-profile. Since multicast content is sent towards the subscriber, it is applied to the sla-profile egress.

```
*A:BNG-1> config>subscr-mgmt>sla-prof# info
-----
egress
  ip-filter 1
  exit
exit
-----
```

To view the statistics of the filter applied to the subscribers use the following command.

```
*A:BNG-1> show filter ip 1 counters
=====
IP Filter
=====
Filter Id      : 1                               Applied      : Yes
Scope         : Template                       Def. Action   : Forward
Radius Ins Pt: n/a
CrCtl. Ins Pt: n/a
RadSh. Ins Pt: n/a
Entries       : 1
Description   : (Not Specified)
-----
Filter Match Criteria : IP
-----
Entry         : 1
Ing. Matches  : 0 pkts
Egr. Matches  : 0 pkts
=====
```

Conclusion

Multicast is an essential part of Triple Play Services. The SR 7750 TPSDA solution offers much more than a baseline multicast delivery, it includes individual subscriber awareness and a full state redundancy option. Subscriber awareness allows for the fine tuning of each subscriber's multicast experience and also for troubleshooting on a per subscriber basis. Full state redundancy reduces failover time and ensures high availability of the services offered. This example provides a complete configuration walkthrough of both the IPoE and PPPoE SRRP models.

For operators wanting to further control and restrict individual subscriber's multicast content, ESM has a comprehensive set of both control path filtering and data path filtering.

ESM SLAAC Prefix Assignment via Local Address Server

In This Chapter

This section provides information about ESM SLAAC prefix assignment via local address server.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 670](#)
- [Overview on page 671](#)
- [Configuration on page 673](#)
- [Conclusion on page 689](#)

Applicability

This chapter is applicable to the 7750 SR-12 with Input/Output Module IOM3-XP and Integrated Media Module (IMM), and requires chassis mode C as a minimum. This feature is also supported on the 7450 ESS chassis in mixed-mode and the 7750 SR-c4/7/12 platform.

The configuration was tested on release 13.0.R1 and supports both Internet Protocol over Ethernet (IPoE) and Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet (PPPoE) subscribers.

Overview

Alcatel-Lucent Triple Play Service Delivery Architecture (TPSDA) supports IPv6 address/prefix assignment through Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP), Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP), and Stateless Address Auto-Configuration (SLAAC). This chapter provides a configuration example of SLAAC prefix assignment via the local address server.

The network topology shown in [Figure 118](#) shows a TPSDA setup. The setup consists of a 7750 SR serving as a Broadband Network Gateway (BNG). The 7450 is used as a Layer 2 switch aggregating all subscriber traffic.

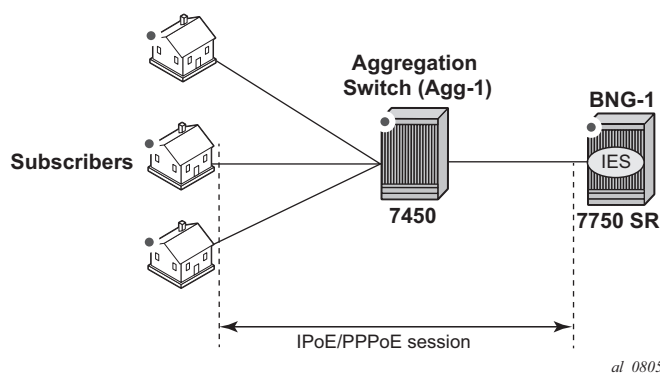


Figure 118: TPSDA Network Topology

There are two methods available for subscriber SLAAC prefix assignment. The first method, not covered in this chapter, is to pre-define a static SLAAC prefix for each subscriber on the BNG, in a Local User Database (LUDB) or via a RADIUS AAA server. With such a configuration, the database would contain hundreds of thousands of /64 SLAAC prefixes, each with their associated host. Every time a subscriber moved to a new location (a new subnet), the allocation of a new prefix within the new subnet would be required, followed by a manual update of the database.

The second method, covered in this chapter, is to simplify SLAAC prefix assignment. A local address server is configured to dynamically assign SLAAC prefixes to hosts. Only a SLAAC pool name is obtained from RADIUS or LUDB after a successful subscriber authentication. This pool name is then used to assign a SLAAC prefix to the subscriber, out of the named address pool.

Using a local pool for SLAAC prefix assignment provides the following advantages:

- Reduces the configuration required on the RADIUS server, the local user database (LUDB), and the BNG to a few lines;
- Removes the complexity of managing actual prefixes in a database;
- Reduces configuration errors; for example, accidentally assigning the same prefix to two different subscribers.

The local address server already has tools, logs, and monitoring features for prefix management, such as prefix depletion and subnet migration. Service providers can rely on the local address server to assist in SLAAC prefix assignment.

Configuration

This guide assumes a basic knowledge of ESM.

Different Types of SLAAC Hosts

SLAAC is supported for both PPP and IP over Ethernet hosts. The local address server can be enabled for either or both host types on a group interface level.

PPP SLAAC Hosts

PPP IPv4 hosts rely on IPCP to retrieve an IPv4 address. However, IPv6CP does not assign IPv6 addresses or prefixes to the host. PPP hosts rely on router solicitations (RSs) or DHCPv6 to obtain IPv6 addresses/prefixes.

PPP SLAAC hosts creation requires three configuration steps.

Step 1. Following is a baseline PPP subscriber management configuration on the BNG.

```
*A:BNG-1>config>service>ies# info
-----
description "BNG-1"
subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
  ipv6
    subscriber-prefixes
      prefix 2001:db8::/32 wan-host
    exit
  exit
group-interface "group-int-1" create
  ipv6
    router-advertisements
      prefix-options
        autonomous
      exit
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
sap 1/1/5:4 create
  sub-sla-mgmt
    def-sub-id use-sap-id
    def-sub-profile "sub-profile-1"
    def-sla-profile "sla-profile-1"
    sub-ident-policy "sub-ident-policy-1"
    multi-sub-sap 10
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
pppoe
```

```

no shutdown
exit
exit
exit

```

Step 2. A DHCPv6 server is used as the local address server to assign SLAAC prefixes. It is possible to reuse the same pool for both DHCPv6 and SLAAC address/prefix assignment. For SLAAC hosts, the keyword `wan-host` is required.

```

*A:P-1>config>router>info
#-----
echo "Local DHCP Server Configuration"
#-----
dhcp6
    local-dhcp-server "dhcp6-server-1" create
    use-pool-from-client
    pool "pool-v6-1" create
    prefix 2001:db8::/32 wan-host create
    exit
exit

```

Step 3. On the PPP group interface, configure the local address server. Specify that the local address server is to be used for client application `ppp-slaac`. The server name must match the name configured for the DHCPv6 server (step 2). The DHCPv6 server is reused as the local address server.

```

*A:BNG-1>config>service>ies>sub-if>grp-if# info
#-----
    local-address-assignment
    ipv6
        client-application ppp-slaac
        server "dhcp6-server-1"
    exit
    no shutdown
exit
exit
exit

```

There are two options for supplying a SLAAC pool name for a PPP host: RADIUS and LUDB.

Option 1: During PPP authentication, RADIUS can return the SLAAC pool name attribute along with other subscriber attributes. Note: Remove the `user-db` configuration from `pppoe` when using RADIUS authentication. Add an authentication policy to the group interface to enable RADIUS authentication.

```

*A:BNG-1>config>service>ies>sub-if>grp-if# info
#-----
    authentication-policy "auth-policy-1"
exit
exit

```

Then, add the attribute Alc-SLAAC-IPv6-Pool to the RADIUS database. The following is an example from a freeradius clients file.

```
user_ppp_01 Auth-Type := CHAP,    Cleartext-Password := password
        Alc-SLA-Prof-Str = "sla-profile-1",
        Alc-Subsc-ID-Str = "home-ppp-1",
        Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str = "sub-profile-1",
        Alc-SLAAC-IPv6-Pool = pool-v6-1,
        Alc-PPP-Force-IPv6CP = 1
```

Option 2: During PPP authentication, an LUDB can return the SLAAC pool name attribute along with other subscriber attributes. Note: Remove the authentication policy from the group interface when using LUDB.

First, create an LUDB and add a user to the LUDB. This LUDB is configured with a default host for all PPPoE hosts and returns a default SLAAC pool name.

```
*A:BNG-1>config>subscr-mgmt# info
-----
        local-user-db "pppoe-ludb-lookup" create
        ppp
            match-list username
            host "default" create
                ipv6-slaac-prefix-pool "pool-v6-1"
                no shutdown
            exit
        exit
    exit
no shutdown
exit
```

Then, reference this LUDB from the group interface.

```
*A:BNG-1>config>service>ies>sub-if>grp-if# info
-----
        pppoe
            user-db "pppoe-ludb-lookup"
            no shutdown
        exit
    exit
```

With the preceding configuration, this group interface supports SLAAC prefix assignment through the local address pool. The following is the result of a PPP host being assigned a SLAAC prefix by the local address server. In the **show pppoe session**, the IPv6 prefix is from the local address pool and the pool name is from authentication (RADIUS or LUDB).

```
*A:BNG-1> show service active-subscribers hierarchy
=====
Active Subscriber hierarchy
=====
-- 00:00:64:19:01:03|1/1/5:4|1 (sub-profile-1)
   |
   |-- sap:1/1/5:4 - sla:sla-profile-1
```

PPP SLAAC Hosts

```

| | |
| | | -- 2001:db8::/64
| | | 00:00:64:19:01:03 - 1 (PPP-SLAAC)
| | |

```

```
*A:BNG-1> show service id 1 pppoe session detail
```

```
=====
PPPoE sessions for svc-id 1
=====
```

Sap Id	Mac Address	Sid	Up Time	Type
IP/L2TP-Id/Interface-Id				MC-Stdbby
1/1/5:4	00:00:64:19:01:03	1	0d 00:02:06	local
02:00:64:FF:FE:19:01:03				

```

LCP State           : Opened
IPCP State          : Closed
IPv6CP State        : Opened
PPP MTU             : 1492
PPP Auth-Protocol   : None
PPP User-Name       : (Not Specified)

```

```

Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : grp-int-1

```

```

IP Origin           : none
DNS Origin          : none
NBNS Origin         : none

```

```

Subscriber          : "00:00:64:19:01:03|1/1/5:4|1"
Sub-Profile-String  : ""
SLA-Profile-String  : ""
ANCP-String         : ""
Int-Dest-Id         : ""
App-Profile-String  : ""
Category-Map-Name   : ""
Acct-Session-Id     : "D84FFF0000005A555513BC"
Sap-Session-Index   : 1

```

```

IP Address          : N/A
Primary DNS         : N/A
Secondary DNS       : N/A
Primary NBNS        : N/A
Secondary NBNS      : N/A
Address-Pool        : N/A

```

```

IPv6 Prefix         : 2001:db8::/64
IPv6 Prefix Origin  : local-pool
IPv6 Prefix Pool    : "pool-v6-1"
IPv6 Del.Pfx.       : N/A
IPv6 Del.Pfx. Origin : none
IPv6 Del.Pfx. Pool  : ""
IPv6 Address        : N/A
IPv6 Address Origin : none
IPv6 Address Pool   : ""
Primary IPv6 DNS     : N/A
Secondary IPv6 DNS   : N/A

```


ESM SLAAC Prefix Assignment via Local Address

```
Circuit-Id      : circuit1
Remote-Id       :

Radius Session-TO : N/A
Radius Class     :
Radius User-Name  :
Logical-Line-Id   :
Service-Name     : AGILENT
-----
Number of sessions : 1
=====
```

ICMP6 debugging can be used to show the SLAAC address assignment process.

```
debug
router
  ip
    icmp6
  exit
exit

23673 2015/05/14 21:38:38.04 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 TIP
"TIP: ICMP6_PKT
ICMP6 egressing on grp-int-01 (ies1):
  fe80::101 -> ff02::1
  Type: Router Advertisement (134)
  Code: No Code (0)
    Hop Limit      : 64
    Flags          :
    Retrans Time   : 0
    Def Life Time  : 4500
    Reachable Time : 0
    Option : Prefix      : 2001:db8::/64
             Flags       : On Link Autoconfig
             Valid Life Time: 86400
             Pref Life Time: 3600

"
```

IPoE SLAAC Hosts

IPoE offers two methods to create an SLAAC host:

1. Triggered by a successful IPv4 host creation
2. Triggered by an RS request

SLAAC Host Creation via IPv4 Host

A successful IPv4 host creation can subsequently trigger the creation of a SLAAC host; this is known as IPoE-linking. The SLAAC prefix for the host must be provided through either RADIUS or LUDB during the IPv4 host authentication.

IPoE SLAAC host creation through IPoE linking requires four steps.

Step 1. Following is a baseline IPoE subscriber management configuration on the BNG.

```
*A:BNG-1>config>service>ies# info
-----
description "BNG-1"
subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
  address 10.255.255.253/8
  ipv6
    subscriber-prefixes
      prefix 2001:db8::/32 wan-host
    exit
  exit
group-interface "group-int-1" create
  dhcp
    server 192.168.0.1
    lease-populate 10
    client-applications dhcp
    gi-address 10.255.255.253
    no shutdown
  exit
  ipv6
    router-advertisements
      prefix-options
        autonomous
      exit
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
sap 1/1/5:4 create
  sub-sla-mgmt
    def-sub-id use-sap-id
    def-sub-profile "sub-profile-1"
    def-sla-profile "sla-profile-1"
    sub-ident-policy "sub-ident-policy-1"
    multi-sub-sap 10
    no shutdown
```

```

        exit
    exit
exit
exit

```

- Step 2.** Enable IPoE-linking to allow SLAAC host creation after a successful IPv4 host creation. Several options should be enabled for the SLAAC host to function. Gratuitous router advertisement will send unsolicited router advertisements with a SLAAC prefix for the host to use. The BNG uses the gratuitous router advertisement to let the subscriber know the assigned prefix to auto-configure. In this case, where prefixes are dynamically assigned, the subscriber will not know the prefix ahead of time, so the gratuitous router advertisement must be enabled. Shared-circuit-id will allow the SLAAC host to use the same circuit ID as the IPv4 host.

```

*A:BNG-1>config>service>ies>sub-if>grp-if# info
-----
        ipoe-linking
        shared-circuit-id
        gratuitous-rtr-adv
        no shutdown
    exit
exit

```

- Step 3.** As with PPP hosts, the DHCPv6 server is reused as the local address server for SLAAC prefix assignment. It is possible to reuse the same pool for both DHCPv6 and SLAAC subscribers. For SLAAC hosts, the keyword wan-host is required. In this case, an IPv4 host must be created first to trigger the creation of the IPv6 SLAAC host. The following example uses the local DHCPv4 server for IPv4 address assignment, but it is possible to use other methods for IPv4 address assignment, such as through LUDB and RADIUS proxy.

```

*A:P-1>config>router>info
#-----
echo "Local DHCP Server Configuration"
#-----
    dhcp
        local-dhcp-server "dhcp-server-1" create
        use-gi-address scope pool
        pool "pool-v4-1" create
        subnet 10.0.0.0/8 create
        options
            subnet-mask 255.0.0.0
            default-router 10.255.255.253
        exit
        address-range 10.0.0.10 10.0.0.254
    exit
    exit
    no shutdown
exit
dhcp6
    local-dhcp-server "dhcp6-server-1" create
    use-pool-from-client
    pool "pool-v6-1" create

```

SLAAC Host Creation via IPv4 Host

```
                2001:db8::/32 wan-host create
                exit
            exit
        exit
    no shutdown
exit
```

Step 4. On the group interface, configure the local address server. Specify that the local address-server is to be used for client application ipoe-slaac. The server name must match the name configured for the DHCPv6 server (Step 3). The local address server reuses the local DHCPv6 server.

```
*A:BNG-1>config>service>ies>sub-if>grp-if# info
-----
                local-address-assignment
                ipv6
                    client-application ipoe-slaac
                    server "dhcp6-server-1"
                exit
                no shutdown
            exit
```

There are two options for supplying a SLAAC pool name for the DHCPv4 host: RADIUS and LUDB.

Option 1: During authentication, RADIUS can return the SLAAC pool name attribute along with other subscriber attributes. Note: Remove the user-db configuration from the DHCP and IPOE-session context when using RADIUS authentication. First, add an authentication policy to the group interface to allow RADIUS authentication.

```
*A:BNG-1>config>service>ies>sub-if>grp-if# info
-----
                authentication-policy "auth-policy-1"
            exit
        exit
```

Then, add the attribute Alc-SLAAC-IPv6-Pool to the subscriber host RADIUS user database. The following is an example using the client file on freeradius.

```
00:00:10:10:12:13 Cleartext-Password := password
    Alc-SLA-Prof-Str = "sla-profile-1",
    Alc-Subsc-ID-Str = "home-ipoe-1",
    Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str = "sub-profile-1",
    Alc-SLAAC-IPv6-Pool = pool-v6-1
```

Option 2: During authentication, LUDB can return the SLAAC pool name attribute along with other subscriber attributes. Note: Remove the authentication policy from the group interface when using LUDB.

First, create an LUDB and add a user in the LUDB. This LUDB is configured with a default host for all DHCPv4 hosts and returns a default SLAAC pool name.

```
*A:BNG-1>config>subscr-mgmt# info
-----
      local-user-db "ipoe-ludb-lookup" create
      ipoe
      match-list sap-id
      host "default" create
      ipv6-slaac-prefix-pool "pool-v6-1"
      no shutdown
      exit
    exit
  no shutdown
exit
```

Then, reference this LUDB from the group interface. The LUDB can be referenced in two places.

Alcatel-Lucent recommends that IPoE subscribers use an IPoE session. In this case, the LUDB is referenced from the group interface ipoe-session context.

```
*A:BNG-1>config>service>ies>sub-if>grp-if# info
-----
      ipoe-session
      user-db "ipoe-ludb-lookup"
      no shutdown
    exit
```

For operators that do not use IPoE sessions (not recommended), the LUDB is referenced from the group interface dhcp context.

```
*A:BNG-1>config>service>ies>sub-if>grp-if# info
-----
      dhcp
      user-db "ipoe-ludb-lookup"
      no shutdown
    exit
```

With the preceding configuration, the local address server on the group interface is ready to assign SLAAC prefixes. Start a DHCPv4 session to the group interface SAP. In the show ipoe session, the IPv6 prefix origin is from the local address pool and the pool name is from authentication (RADIUS or LUDB).

```
*A:BNG-1> show service active-subscribers hierarchy
=====
Active Subscriber hierarchy
=====
-- 00:00:64:19:01:03|1/1/5:4|1 (sub-profile-1)
|
|-- sap:1/1/5:4 - sla:sla-profile-1
|
|-- 10.0.0.2
|
| 00:00:64:19:01:03 - N/A (DHCP)
```

SLAAC Host Creation via IPv4 Host

```
| |  
| | -- 2001:db8::/64  
| | 00:00:64:19:01:03 - N/A (IPoE-SLAAC)  
| |
```

```
*A:BNG-1> show service id 1 ipoe session detail
```

```
=====
```

```
IPoE sessions for service 1
```

```
=====
```

```
SAP : 1/1/5:4  
Mac Address : 00:00:64:19:01:03  
Circuit-Id : circuit12  
Remote-Id : remote0  
Session Key : sap-mac  
  
MC-Standby : No  
  
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-01  
Group-interface : grp-int-01  
  
Up Time : 0d 00:07:02  
Session Time Left : N/A  
Last Auth Time : 05/15/2015 20:16:26  
Min Auth Intvl (left) : infinite (N/A)  
Persistence Key : N/A  
  
Subscriber : "00:00:64:19:01:03 |1/1/20:791"  
Sub-Profile-String : ""  
SLA-Profile-String : ""  
ANCP-String : ""  
Int-Dest-Id : ""  
App-Profile-String : ""  
Category-Map-Name : ""  
Acct-Session-Id : "D84FFF000000815556541A"  
Sap-Session-Index : 1  
  
IP Address : 10.0.0.2/8  
IP Origin : DHCP  
Primary DNS : N/A  
Secondary DNS : N/A  
Primary NBNS : N/A  
Secondary NBNS : N/A  
Address-Pool : N/A  
  
IPv6 Prefix : 2001:db8::/64  
IPv6 Prefix Origin : LclPool  
IPv6 Prefix Pool : "pool-v6-1"  
IPv6 Del.Pfx. : N/A  
IPv6 Del.Pfx. Origin : None  
IPv6 Del.Pfx. Pool : ""  
IPv6 Address : N/A  
IPv6 Address Origin : None  
IPv6 Address Pool : ""  
Primary IPv6 DNS : N/A  
Secondary IPv6 DNS : N/A  
  
Radius Session-TO : N/A
```

ESM SLAAC Prefix Assignment via Local Address

```
Radius Class          :
Radius User-Name      :
-----
Number of sessions : 1
=====
```

ICMP6 debugging can be used to show the SLAAC address assignment process.

```
debug
  router
    ip
      icmp6
    exit
  exit

23673 2015/05/14 21:38:38.04 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 TIP
"TIP: ICMP6_PKT
ICMP6 egressing on grp-int-01 (ies1):
  fe80::101 -> ff02::1
  Type: Router Advertisement (134)
  Code: No Code (0)
    Hop Limit      : 64
    Flags          :
    Retrans Time   : 0
    Def Life Time  : 4500
    Reachable Time : 0
    Option : Prefix      : 2001:db8::/64
             Flags       : On Link Autoconfig
             Valid Life Time: 86400
             Pref Life Time: 3600

"
```

SLAAC Host Creation via RS Trigger

An IPv6 SLAAC host can be created through a host router originated solicit message, which removes the dependency of a SLAAC host on successful DHCPv4 host creation.

SLAAC hosts creation via RS trigger requires four configuration steps.

Step 1. The following is a baseline IPoE subscriber management configuration on the BNG.

```
*A:BNG-1>config>service>ies# info
-----
description "BNG-1"
subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
  ipv6
    subscriber-prefixes
      prefix 2001:db8::/32 pd wan-host
    exit
  exit
group-interface "group-int-1" create
  ipv6
    router-advertisements
      prefix-options
        autonomous
      exit
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
sap 1/1/5:4 create
  sub-sla-mgmt
    def-sub-id use-sap-id
    def-sub-profile "sub-profile-1"
    def-sla-profile "sla-profile-1"
    sub-ident-policy "sub-ident-policy-1"
    multi-sub-sap 10
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
exit
exit
```

Step 2. Enable the group interface to process router solicit messages. There are a few options available for router solicit triggered hosts. The inactivity timer will remove the host if the global unique address of the host is not learned through Neighbor Solicitation (NS), Router Solicitation (RS), or Duplicate Address Detection (DAD) messages within the time specified. The min-auth-interval is the interval that a subscriber must wait before the next router-solicit messages is used for re-authentication. Re-authentication can occur if the first RS was lost, or the BNG/RADIUS system was queued up with requests.

```
*A:BNG-1>config>service>ies>sub-if>grp-if>ipv6# info
-----
router-solicit
  inactivity-timer min 5
  min-auth-interval min 5
```


ESM SLAAC Prefix Assignment via Local Address

```
no shutdown
exit
```

Step 3. A DHCPv6 server is used as the local address server for SLAAC prefix assignment. It is possible to reuse the same pool for both DHCPv6 and SLAAC subscribers. For SLAAC hosts, the keyword **wan-host** is required.

```
*A:P-1>config>router>info
#-----
echo "Local DHCP Server Configuration"
#-----
    dhcp6
        local-dhcp-server "dhcp6-server-1" create
        use-pool-from-client
        pool "pool-v6-1" create
        2001:db8::/32 wan-host create
        exit
    exit
exit
no shutdown
exit
```

Step 4. On the group interface, configure the local address server. Specify that the local address server is to be used for client application ipoe-slaac. The server name must match the name configured for the DHCPv6 server. The local address server reuses the local DHCPv6 server.

```
*A:BNG-1>config>service>ies>sub-if>grp-if# info
-----
    local-address-assignment
    ipv6
        client-application ipoe-slaac
        server "dhcp6-server-1"
    exit
no shutdown
exit
```

There are two options for supplying the SLAAC pool name for the DHCPv4 host: RADIUS and LUDB.

Option 1: During authentication, RADIUS can return the SLAAC pool name attribute along with other subscriber attributes. Note: Remove the user-db configuration from the router-solicit and ipoe-session when using RADIUS authentication. First, add an authentication policy to the group interface to allow RADIUS authentication.

```
*A:BNG-1>config>service>ies>sub-if>grp-if# info
-----
    authentication-policy "auth-policy-1"
    exit
exit
```

SLAAC Host Creation via RS Trigger

Then, add the attribute Alc-SLAAC-IPv6-Pool to the subscriber host RADIUS user database.

```
00:00:10:10:12:13 Cleartext-Password := password
Alc-SLA-Prof-Str = "sla-profile-1",
Alc-Subsc-ID-Str = "home-ipoe-1",
Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str = "sub-profile-1",
Alc-SLAAC-IPv6-Pool = pool-v6-1,
```

Option 2: During authentication, LUDB can return the SLAAC pool name attribute along with other subscriber attributes. Note: Remove the authentication policy from the group interface when using LUDB.

First, create an LUDB and add a user in the LUDB. The LUDB configures a default host for all SLAAC hosts and returns a default SLAAC pool name.

```
*A:BNG-1>config>subscr-mgmt# info
-----
local-user-db "ipoe-ludb-lookup" create
ipoe
match-list username
host "default" create
ipv6-slaac-prefix-pool "pool-v6-1"
no shutdown
exit
exit
no shutdown
exit
```

Then, reference an LUDB from the group interface. The LUDB can be referenced in two places.

Alcatel-Lucent recommends that IPoE subscribers use an IPoE session. In this case, the LUDB is referenced from the group interface ipoe-session context.

```
*A:BNG-1>config>service>ies>sub-if>grp-if# info
-----
ipoe-session
user-db "ipoe-ludb-lookup"
no shutdown
exit
```

For operators that do not enable IPoE sessions on the BNG (not recommended), the LUDB can be referenced from the group interface in the router-solicit context.

```
*A:BNG-1>config>service>ies>sub-if>grp-if>ipv6# info
-----
router-solicit
user-db "ipoe-ludb-lookup"
no shutdown
exit
```

ESM SLAAC Prefix Assignment via Local Address

With the preceding configuration, the group interface is ready to assign SLAAC prefixes from the local address pool. Let the host trigger a router solicit packet. In the show ipoe session, the IPv6 prefix is from the local address pool and the pool name is from authentication (RADIUS or LUDB).

```
*A:BNG-1> show service active-subscribers hierarchy
=====
Active Subscriber hierarchy
=====
-- 00:00:64:19:01:03|1/1/5:4|1 (sub-profile-1)
|
|  -- sap:1/1/5:4 - sla:sla-profile-1
|  |
|  |  -- 2001:db8::/64
|  |    00:00:64:19:01:03 - N/A (IPoE-SLAAC)
|  |
|  |
|  |

*A:BNG-1> show service id 1 ipoe session detail
=====
IPoE sessions for service 1
=====
SAP                               : 1/1/5:4
Mac Address                       : 00:00:64:19:01:03
Circuit-Id                       : circuit12
Remote-Id                        : remote0
Session Key                       : sap-mac

MC-Standby                       : No

Subscriber-interface              : sub-int-01
Group-interface                   : grp-int-01

Up Time                          : 0d 00:07:02
Session Time Left                 : N/A
Last Auth Time                    : 05/15/2015 20:16:26
Min Auth Intvl (left)             : infinite (N/A)
Persistence Key                   : N/A

Subscriber                        : "00:00:64:19:01:03 |1/1/20:791"
Sub-Profile-String                : ""
SLA-Profile-String               : ""
ANCP-String                      : ""
Int-Dest-Id                      : ""
App-Profile-String               : ""
Category-Map-Name                : ""
Acct-Session-Id                  : "D84FFF000000815556541A"
Sap-Session-Index                : 1

IP Address                       : N/A
IP Origin                        : N/A
Primary DNS                      : N/A
Secondary DNS                    : N/A
Primary NBNS                     : N/A
Secondary NBNS                   : N/A
Address-Pool                     : N/A

IPv6 Prefix                      : 2001:db8::/64
```

SLAAC Host Creation via RS Trigger

```
IPv6 Prefix Origin      : LclPool
IPv6 Prefix Pool        : "pool-v6-1"
IPv6 Del.Pfx.           : N/A
IPv6 Del.Pfx. Origin    : None
IPv6 Del.Pfx. Pool      : ""
IPv6 Address            : N/A
IPv6 Address Origin     : None
IPv6 Address Pool       : ""
Primary IPv6 DNS        : N/A
Secondary IPv6 DNS      : N/A

Radius Session-TO       : N/A
Radius Class            :
Radius User-Name        :
-----
Number of sessions : 1
=====
```

ICMP6 debugging can be used to show the SLAAC address assignment process.

```
debug
router
ip
    icmp6
exit
exit

23673 2015/05/14 21:38:38.04 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 TIP
"TIP: ICMP6_PKT
ICMP6 egressing on grp-int-01 (ies1):
  fe80::101 -> ff02::1
  Type: Router Advertisement (134)
  Code: No Code (0)
    Hop Limit      : 64
    Flags          :
    Retrans Time   : 0
    Def Life Time  : 4500
    Reachable Time : 0
    Option : Prefix      : 2001:db8::/64
             Flags       : On Link Autoconfig
             Valid Life Time: 86400
             Pref Life Time: 3600

"
```

Conclusion

7750 SR TPSDA offers a variety of address assignment options such as PPP, DHCPv4, DHCPv6, and SLAAC. These options allow service providers to pick the address assignment scheme that best fits their networks. SLAAC address assignment is an essential IPv6 address assignment protocol. Having to assign a static prefix per subscriber host in advance could be a challenge for operators. This chapter provides a complete configuration example of using the local address server to assign prefixes dynamically to IPoE and PPPoE subscriber hosts. This efficient way to assign SLAAC prefixes to subscribers enables operators to achieve a faster time to market for new IPv6 services.

ESMv4: PPPoE Hosts

In This Chapter

This section describes advanced IPv4 Enhanced Subscriber Management (ESM) PPPoE host configurations.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 692](#)
- [Summary on page 693](#)
- [Overview on page 694](#)
- [Configuration on page 707](#)
- [Conclusion on page 741](#)

Applicability

This note is applicable for 7750 SR-C12 and SR-7/12 on IOM2 and higher and was tested on release 13.0.R3 and describes support of PPP termination and aggregation (PTA) hosts. L2TP-hosts are out of scope.

This note is related only to the use of IPv4 hosts.

PPPoE hosts are only supported in a Routed CO model (IES or VPRN) using Ethernet SAPs with null, dot1q or QinQ encapsulation.

Summary

The delivery of services to residential customers encompassing voice, video and data is covered by Alcatel-Lucent's Triple Play Service Delivery Architecture (TPSDA).

In the TPSDA, a subscriber is defined as a collection of hosts pertaining to a single access connection (for example, DSL line) and identified by a subscriber identifier. A subscriber host is an end user terminal within the subscriber home (PC, set-top box, home gateway) that is identified in the network with a unique (IP address/MAC address) tuple for IPoE or (PPPoE session ID; MAC address) tuple for PPPoE.

The following host types are distinguished:

Static hosts

- ip-mac
- ip-only

Dynamic hosts

- ARP-host
- DHCP-host
- PPPoE-host

This chapter provides configuration and troubleshooting commands for PPPoE-hosts and will use a local user database (LUDB) for host authentication and ESM (Enhanced Subscriber Management) string assignments.

The IP information in this note is retrieved from a Local DHCP server.

The authentication, IP information and ESM strings can come all from an LUDB, a RADIUS server, a (local) DHCP server, or any combination of them. These combinations are out of scope.

Knowledge of the Alcatel-Lucent TPSDA concept is assumed throughout this document.

Overview

PPPoE Hosts in a Routed CO Environment

The network topology for a Routed CO environment is displayed in [Figure 119](#).

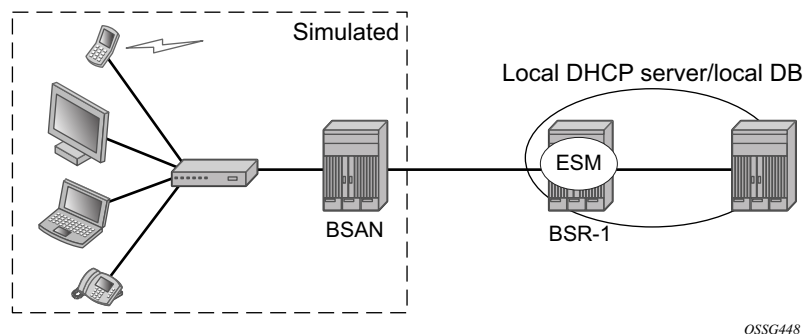


Figure 119: Routed CO Network Topology

The following configuration tasks should already be configured and are not detailed or explained in this chapter. Refer to the appropriate user guide.

- Basic service router configuration (system interface, IGP, MPLS, BGP)
- Routed CO service topology: VPRN or IES service with subscriber- and group-interface on BSR-1
- ESM
- LUDB (Local User Data Base)
- Local (DHCP) Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) server

This chapter focuses on PPPoE hosts instantiated in a VPRN service subscriber-interface on BSR-1 (Routed CO). Note that in case of Routed CO, it is also possible to instantiate the PPPoE hosts in the Base routing instance using an IES service.

Review of the PPPoE Protocol

PPPoE, Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet, is a network protocol for encapsulating PPP frames inside Ethernet frames. The protocol is described as an informational RFC 2516, *A Method for Transmitting PPP Over Ethernet (PPPoE)*, and is based on RFC 1661, *The Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP)*, which provides a standard method for transporting multi-protocol data-grams over point-to-point links.

PPP includes three main components:

- A method for encapsulating multi-protocol datagrams.
- A link control protocol (LCP) for establishing, configuring, and testing the data-link connection.
- A family of network control protocols (NCP) for establishing and configuring different network-layer protocols.

Ethernet networks are packet-based and have no concept of a connection or circuit. By using PPPoE, users can virtually dial from one machine to another over an Ethernet network; establish a point to point connection between them and then transport data packets over the connection.

In a typical wire-line solution with broadband access, PPPoE is used between a client (PC or modem) and a Network Access Server (NAS) (also called Broadband Network Gateway (BNG) or Broadband Service Router (BSR)) through an access node, like a Broadband Service Access Node (BSAN).

PPPoE consists of two phases, the Discovery Stage and the Session Stage.

Discovery Stage

The discovery phase offers a stateless client-server model. When the Discovery Stage completes, both peers know the PPPoE SESSION_ID and the peer's Ethernet address, which together uniquely define the PPPoE session. There are four steps in the Discovery Stage:

Step 1. PPPoE Active Discovery Initiation (PADI)

Initiation (Host broadcast) — This broadcast packet is used by the client to search for an active server (BNG/BSR/NAS) providing access to a service.

Note: Additional attributes on the PADI message could be added if a BSAN is situated between the client and the BRAS.

Step 2. PPPoE Active Discovery Offer (PADO)

Access concentrator unicast — If the access server can provide the service it will respond with a unicast PADO to signal the client it may request connectivity.

Multiple servers may respond and the client may choose a server to connect.

Step 3. PPPoE Active Discovery Request (PADR):

Host unicast — After the client receives a PADO it will send a PADR unicast packet to connect to a server.

Step 4. PPPoE Active Discovery Session-Confirmation (PADS)

Access concentrator unicast — A server will respond to the client with this unicast packet to establish the session and provide the session-id. Once the PADS was provided the Session Stage begins.

Note: Discovery PPPoE Ethernet frames have the ETHER_TYPE field set to the value 0x8863.

PPPoE Tags

IANA has set up a registry of PPPoE tag values (16-bit values). PPPoE tag values already in use are specified as reserved values as shown in [Table 13](#). All other tag values between 0 and 65535 are to be assigned by IANA.

Table 13: Reserved PPPoE Tags

Tag Value		Tag Name
0	0x0000	End-Of-List
257	0x0101	Service-Name
258	0x0102	AC-Name
259	0x0103	Host-Uniq
260	0x0104	AC-Cookie
261	0x0105	Vendor-Specific
262	0x0106	Credits
263	0x0107	Metrics
264	0x0108	Sequence Number
272	0x0110	Relay-Session-Id
273	0x0111	HURL
274	0x0112	MOTM
288	0x0120	PPP-Max-Payload
289	0x0121	IP_Route_Add
513	0x0201	Service-Name-Error
514	0x0202	AC-System-Error
515	0x0203	Generic-Error

Explanations for some PPPoE tags (RFC 2516) are shown in the PPPoE discovery debug messages.

0x0101 Service-Names — This tag indicates that a service name follows. The tag_value is an UTF-8 string that is not null terminated. When the tag_length is zero this tag is used to indicate that any service is acceptable. Examples of the use of the *service-name* tag are to indicate an ISP name or a class or quality of service.

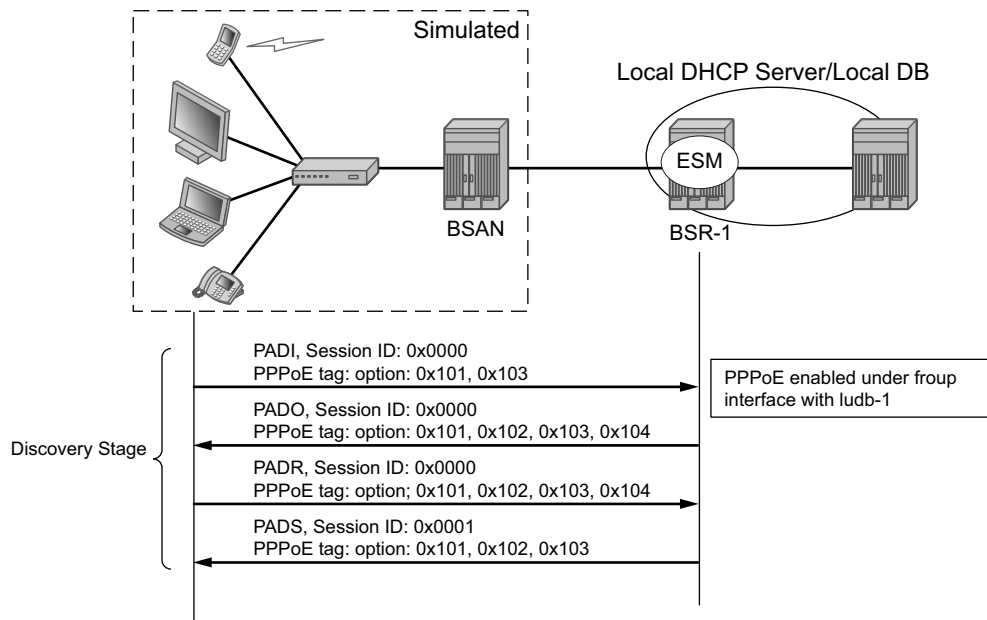
(0x0102) AC-Names — This tag indicates that a string follows which uniquely identifies this particular Access Concentrator unit from all others. It may be a combination of trademark, model,

and serial id information, or simply an UTF-8 rendition of the MAC address of the box. It is not null terminated.

(0x0103) Host-Uniq — This tag is used by a host to uniquely associate an access concentrator response (PADO or PADS) to a particular host request (PADI or PADR). The tag_value is binary data of any value and length that the host chooses. It is not interpreted by the Access Concentrator. The host may include a host-uniq tag in a PADI or PADR. If the access concentrator receives this tag, it must include the tag unmodified in the associated PADO or PADS response.

(0x0104) AC-Cookie — This tag is used by the access concentrator to aid in protecting against denial of service attacks. The access concentrator may include this tag in a PADO packet.

If a host receives this tag, it must return the tag unmodified in the following PADR. The tag_value is binary data of any value and length and is not interpreted by the host.



OSSG449-2a

Figure 120: Discovery Stage Messages

Session Stage

This next stage after Discovery is called the Session Stage. Once the MAC address of the peer is known and a session-id is exchanged, the two end points have all the information needed to start building a point-to-point connection over Ethernet and exchange packets over the connection.

This stage can be divided into to the following sections:

- [Setup on page 699](#)
 - [Maintenance on page 705](#)
 - [Termination on page 706](#)
-

Setup

PPP Link Control Protocol (LCP)

Both the NAS and the user open the PPP session based on LCP packets. All post-discovery PPPoE Ethernet frames have the ETHER_TYPE field set to the value 0x8864.

Authentication method and the MRU are negotiated during this phase.

RFC 2516 mandates a maximum negotiated Maximum Receive Unit (MRU) of 1492.

RFC 4638, *Accommodating a Maximum Transit Unit/Maximum Receive Unit (MTU/MRU) Greater Than 1492 in the Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet (PPPoE)*, relaxes this restriction and allows a maximum negotiated MRU greater than 1492 to minimize fragmentation in next-generation broadband networks.

The 7750 implementation follows RFC 4638 when the client implements these extensions.

LCP uses config_request and config_ack/nack to negotiate parameters:

- LCP goes to final state opened when configure-ack is send & received.
- The own options are proposed in configure request.

There are three cases for the LCP negotiations parameters:

- Peer supports the options and his content.
→ Peer will agree and send config-ack.
- Peer does not support an option
→ Peer will send configure-reject with the option that is not supported.
→ Resend of configure-request without that option.
→ Peer agrees and sends config-ack.
- Peer does support the option but not the content.
→ Peer will send config-nack with the option and his new content.
→ Resend of configure-request with same options but new content.
→ Peer agrees and sends config-ack.

Table 14: LCP and IPCP Code

Code	Packet Type
1	Configure-Request
2	Configure-Ack
3	Configure-Nak
4	Configure-Reject
5	Terminate-Request
6	Terminate-Ack
7	Code-Reject
8	Protocol-Reject
9	Echo-Request
10	Echo-Reply
11	Discard-Request
12	Identification
13	Time-Remaining
14	Reset-request CCP
15	Reset-Ack CCP

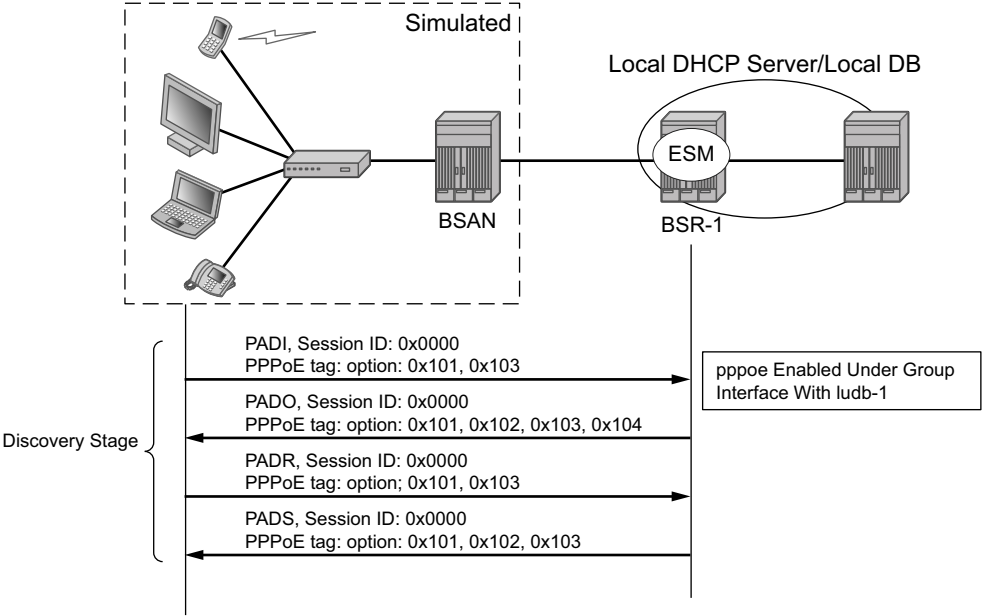


Figure 121: LCP Phase Messages

Authentication Phase

The client authenticates itself through PAP (PPP Password Authentication Protocol) or CHAP (Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol) to check for access permission. For the CHAP authentication, the BSR initiates the authentication as shown in Figure 122.

Note: The password is a hashed output on the link and plain text in a RADIUS Access-Request message.

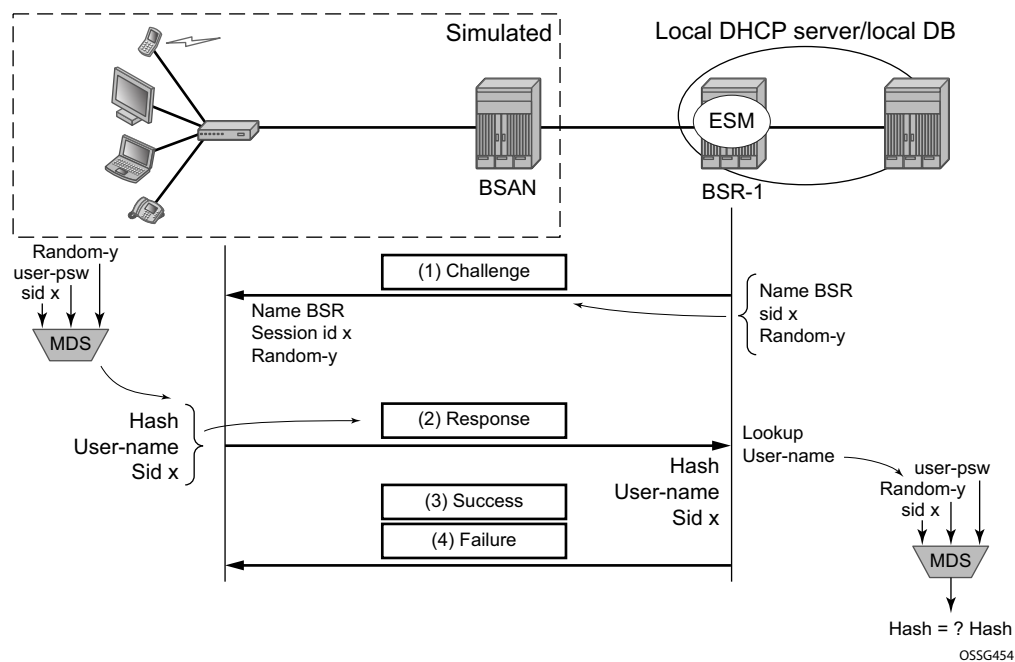


Figure 122: CHAP Handshaking Overview Process

For PAP the client initiates the authentication as shown in [Figure 123](#).

Note: The password is sent as plain text on the link and hashed in a RADIUS Access-Request message.

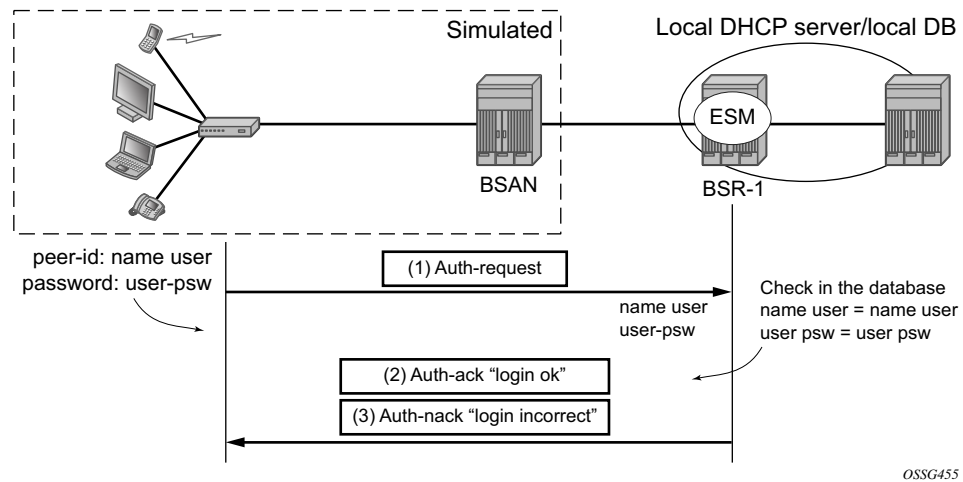


Figure 123: PAP Overview Process

Network-Layer Protocol Phase (PPP IPCP Opening Phase)

At this stage the user requests an IP address to be used for data transmission. During this negotiation the client will also receive a Domain Name Server (DNS), NBNS (Netbios Name Server) address, etc. if they are requested.

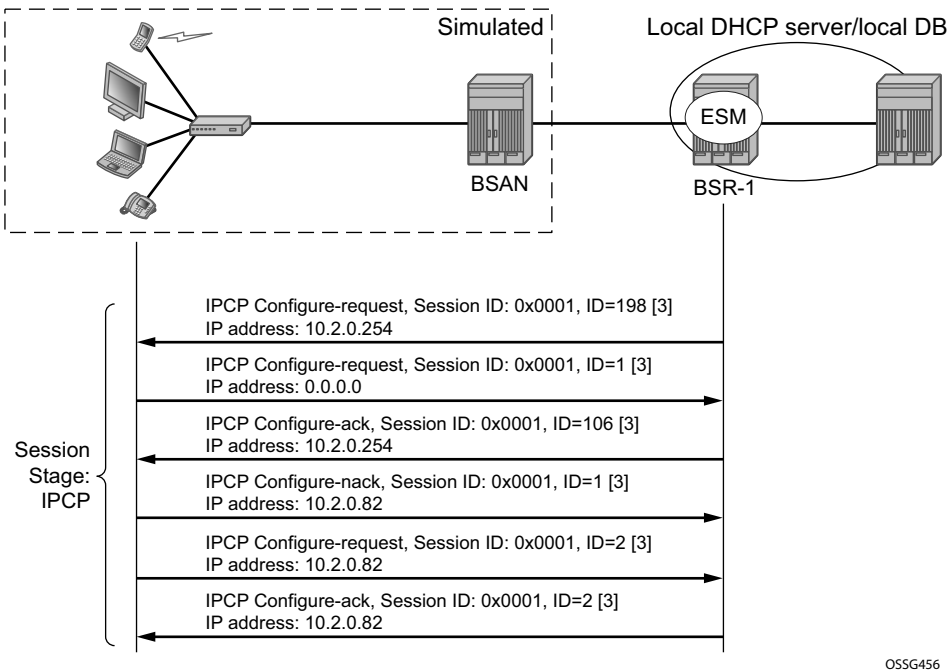


Figure 124: IPCP Phase Messages

Maintenance

PPP uses keepalives in order to maintain the integrity of the connection. This keepalive mechanism uses an echo-request that is sent to remote PPP peer, following which the remote PPP peer should respond with an echo-reply. The connection is considered down if a number of echo replies are missed. Both sides can initiate keepalives which run independently.

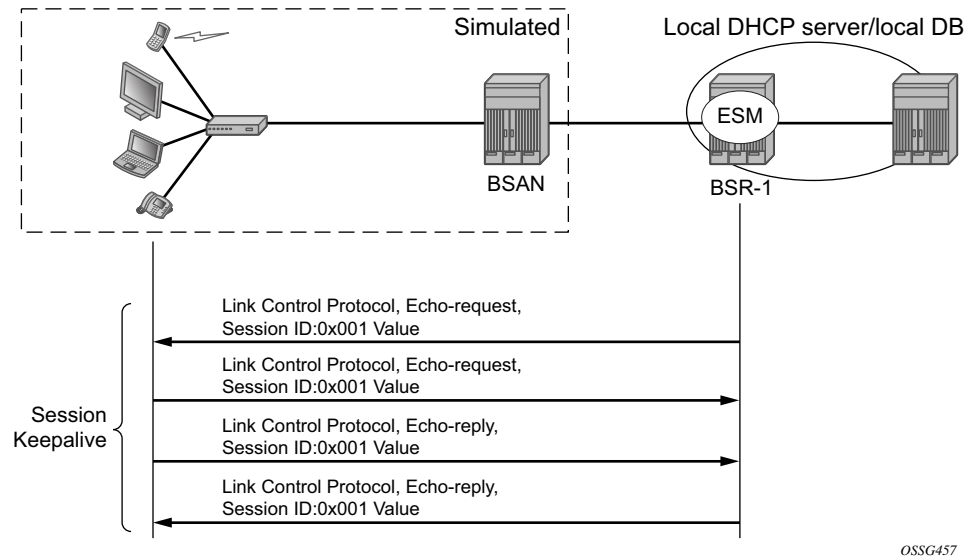


Figure 125: Keepalive Messages

Termination

Link Termination Phase

A PPPoE session can be terminated by either the client or by the BRAS and consists of a Terminate-request followed by a PADT.

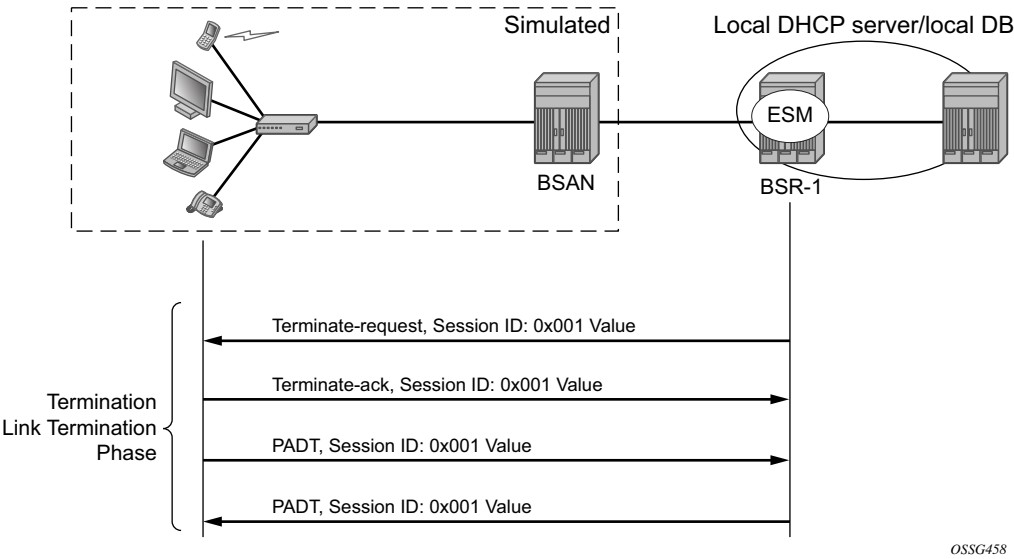


Figure 126: Link Termination Phase

Configuration

PPPoE Host Session: Set-Up, Operation and Release

Enable PPPoE termination under the group-interface context.

Enable the local user database under the PPPoE node of the group-interface.

```
configure
service
  vprn 1 customer 1 create
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
      address 10.2.0.254/16
      group-interface "group-int-1" create
        sap 1/1/1:1 create
          sub-sla-mgmt
            sub-ident-policy "sub-id-default"
            no shutdown
          exit
        exit
      pppoe
        user-db "ludb-1"
        no shutdown
      exit
    exit
  exit
exit
```

The local user database is configured with the following parameters.

```
configure
subscriber-mgmt
  local-user-db "ludb-1" create
    ppp
      match-list username
      host "user1" create
        host-identification
          username "user1@domain1"
        exit
      address pool "pool-1"
      password chap ALU
      identification-strings 254 create
        subscriber-id "PPPoE-host-user1@domain1"
        sla-profile-string "sla-profile-1"
        sub-profile-string "sub-profile-1"
      exit
    no shutdown
  exit
```

PPPoE Host Session: Set-Up, Operation and Release

A local DHCP server will be used as a source for the IP addressing of the PPPoE host.

```
configure
  service
    vprn 1
      dhcp
        local-dhcp-server "server-1" create
        use-pool-from-client
        pool "pool-1" create
        subnet 10.2.0.0/16 create
        exclude-addresses 10.2.0.254 10.2.0.255
        address-range 10.2.0.1 10.2.0.253
        exit
      exit
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
```

- The PPPoE policy configuration.

```
*A:BSR-1# configure subscriber-mgmt ppp-policy "ppp-policy-1"
*A:BSR-1>config>subscr-mgmt>ppp-policy# info detail
-----
no description
no default-pap-password
no default-user-name
disable-cookies
no force-ppp-mtu-gt-1492
no ipcp-subnet-negotiation
keepalive 30 hold-up-multiplier 3
no pado-ac-name
pado-delay 30
no ppp-initial-delay
no ppp-mtu
no lcp-ignore-magic-numbers
max-sessions-per-mac 63
mlppp
  no accept-mrru
  no endpoint
  no short-sequence-numbers
exit
reply-on-padt
ppp-authentication pref-chap
ppp-chap-challenge-length min 32 max 64
no unique-sid-per-sap
no re-establish-session
no reject-disabled-ncp
no session-timeout
ppp-options
exit
-----
*A:BSR-1>config>subscr-mgmt>ppp-policy#
```


The PPPoE policy defines the parameters which are used in the establishment of the PPPoE session such as:

- Disable-cookies — This parameter disables the use of cookies.
- Keepalive — This command defines the keepalive interval and the number of keepalives that can be missed before the session is declared down for this PPPoE policy.
 - [10 — 300] seconds: Specifies the keepalive interval in seconds.
 - hold-up-multiplier [1 — 5]: Specifies the number of keepalives that can be missed.
- PADO-delay — This parameter configures the delay timeout before sending a PPPoE Active Discovery Offer (PADO) packet.
 - [1 — 30] deciseconds
- PPP-mtu — This parameter configures the maximum PPP MTU size.
 - [512 — 9212]: possible values for MTU size.
- Max-sessions-per-mac — This parameter sets the maximum PPPoE sessions that can be opened for the given MAC address.
 - [1 — 63]: possible PPPoE sessions per MAC address.
- Reply-on-PADT — Some of the PPPoE clients expect reply on PPPoE Active Discovery Terminate (PADT) message before the context of the session is cleared up. To support such client, a command enabling reply to PADT is provided.
 - [Default] **no reply-on-padt**
- PPP-options — This parameter enables the context to configure PPP options which is not supported by default

These parameters will be explained later in details according to its existence in which PPPoE phase.

Notes:

- The default policy cannot be modified nor deleted.
- Multiple PPPoE policies may be configured.
- The PPPoE policy is applied within the PPPoE context under the group interface.

```
configure
service
  vprn 1
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
      address 10.2.0.254/16
    group-interface "group-int-1" create
      pppoe
        user-db "ludb-1"
        no shutdown
      exit
```

PPPoE Host Session: Set-Up, Operation and Release

```
exit
exit
```

Troubleshooting the PPPoE discovery messages (PADI, PADO, PADR, PADS and PADT) is done with PPPoE debugging:

```
*A:BSR-1# debug service id 1 ppp packet discovery
- discovery [padi] [pado] [padr] [pads] [padt]
- no discovery

<padi>          : keyword - debug PADI packets
<pado>          : keyword - debug PADO packets
<padr>          : keyword - debug PADR packets
<pads>          : keyword - debug PADS packets
<padt>          : keyword - debug PADT packets

*A:BSR-1#
```

For example:

```
debug
service
  id 1
    ppp
      packet
        mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
        discovery
        ppp
        dhcp-client
      exit
    exit
  exit
exit
exit
```

To display the debugging information, a dedicated log should be created:

```
configure
log
  log-id 1
  from debug-trace
  to session
  no shutdown
exit
```

Discovery Stage

The following is an example of PPPoE (PADI discovery packet) debug log output:

```
1 2015/07/01 09:36:09.93 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 PPPoE
"PPPoE: RX Packet
  VPRN 1, SAP 1/1/1:1

  DMAC: ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
  SMAC: 00:00:67:14:01:02
  Ether Type: 0x8863 (Discovery)

  PPPoE Header:
  Version: 1                      Type      : 1
  Code   : 0x09 (PADI)           Session-Id: 0x0000 (0)
  Length : 65

  PPPoE Tags:
  [0x0101] Service-Name: "AGILENT"
  [0x0103] Host-Uniq: len = 1, value = 34
  [0x0105] Vendor-Specific: vendor-id = 0x0de9 (ADSL Forum)
    [0x01] Agent-Circuit-Id: "circuit10"
    [0x02] Agent-Remote-Id: "remote10"
    [0x81] Actual-Upstream: 1024
    [0x82] Actual-Downstream: 16384
    [0x90] Access-Loop-Encap: 01 01 00
"
```

PPPoE Policy Parameters

Service name — The client can ask a particular service. Empty means that any service is acceptable. The service name can indicate an ISP name, class, QoS.

```
"PPPoE: RX Packet
  VPRN 1, SAP 1/1/1:1

  DMAC: ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
  SMAC: 00:00:67:14:01:02
  Ether Type: 0x8863 (Discovery)

  PPPoE Header:
  Version: 1                      Type      : 1
  Code   : 0x09 (PADI)           Session-Id: 0x0000 (0)
  Length : 55

  PPPoE Tags:
  [0x0101] Service-Name: "AGILENT"
```

PPPoE Host Session: Set-Up, Operation and Release

The BSR echoes the service name from the PADI message. Empty means that any service is acceptable.

```
2 2015/07/01 09:36:12.90 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 PPPoE
"PPPoE: TX Packet
  VPRN 1, SAP 1/1/1:1

  DMAC: 00:00:67:14:01:02
  SMAC: ea:4b:01:01:00:01
  Ether Type: 0x8863 (Discovery)

  PPPoE Header:
  Version: 1                      Type      : 1
  Code   : 0x07 (PADO)           Session-Id: 0x0000 (0)
  Length : 48

  PPPoE Tags:
  [0x0101] Service-Name: "AGILENT"
  [0x0102] AC-Name: "BSR-1"
  [0x0103] Host-Uniq: len = 1, value = 34
"
```

Host-Uniq — The host can include a unique tag of any length inserted In PADI or PADR. The AC should echo back this tag in the PADO or PADS.

```
1 2015/07/01 09:36:09.93 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 PPPoE
"PPPoE: RX Packet
  VPRN 1, SAP 1/1/1:1

  DMAC: ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
  SMAC: 00:00:67:14:01:02
  Ether Type: 0x8863 (Discovery)

  PPPoE Header:
  Version: 1                      Type      : 1
  Code   : 0x09 (PADI)           Session-Id: 0x0000 (0)
  Length : 65

  PPPoE Tags:
  [0x0101] Service-Name: "AGILENT"
  [0x0103] Host-Uniq: len = 1, value = 34
"
```

The following parameters can optionally be added to the PADI by the PPPoE intermediate agent (BSAN):

Vendor-specific information

- Agent-Circuit-Id
- Agent-Remote-Id
- Access-loop-Encapsulation
- Access loop characteristics (actual-upstream, actual-downstream)

The debug output:

```

1 2015/07/01 09:36:09.93 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 PPPoE
"PPPoE: RX Packet
  VPRN 1, SAP 1/1/1:1

  DMAC: ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
  SMAC: 00:00:67:14:01:02
  Ether Type: 0x8863 (Discovery)

  PPPoE Header:
  Version: 1                      Type      : 1
  Code   : 0x09 (PADI)           Session-Id: 0x0000 (0)
  Length : 55

  PPPoE Tags:
  [0x0101] Service-Name: "AGILENT"
  [0x0103] Host-Uniq: len = 1, value = 34
  [0x0105] Vendor-Specific: vendor-id = 0x0de9 (ADSL Forum)
    [0x01] Agent-Circuit-Id: "circuit10"
    [0x02] Agent-Remote-Id: "remote10"
    [0x81] Actual-Upstream: 1024
    [0x82] Actual-Downstream: 16384
    [0x90] Access-Loop-Encap: 01 01 00
"
```

The cookies can be displayed in the PADO message. This tag of any value and length may be included by the AC and is echoed back by the client to the AC in the next PADR.

```

2 2015/07/01 09:36:12.90 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 PPPoE
"PPPoE: TX Packet
  VPRN 1, SAP 1/1/1:1

  DMAC: 00:00:67:14:01:02
  SMAC: ea:4b:01:01:00:01
  Ether Type: 0x8863 (Discovery)

  PPPoE Header:
  Version: 1                      Type      : 1
  Code   : 0x07 (PADO)           Session-Id: 0x0000 (0)
  Length : 18

  PPPoE Tags:
  [0x0101] Service-Name: "AGILENT"
  [0x0102] AC-Name: "BSR-1"
  [0x0103] Host-Uniq: len = 1, value = 34
  [0x0104] AC-Cookie: len = 16, value = d7 91 cd b7 3e 51 76 d6 03 0a f2 68 8c da ba 74
"
```

AC-name — Identifies the string that uniquely identifies the access concentrator (AC).

```
2 2015/07/01 09:36:12.90 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 PPPoE
"PPPoE: TX Packet
  VPRN 1, SAP 1/1/1:1

  DMAC: 00:00:67:14:01:02
  SMAC: ea:4b:01:01:00:01
  Ether Type: 0x8863 (Discovery)

  PPPoE Header:
  Version: 1                      Type      : 1
  Code   : 0x07 (PADO)           Session-Id: 0x0000 (0)
  Length : 48

  PPPoE Tags:
  [0x0101] Service-Name: "AGILENT"
  [0x0102] AC-Name: "BSR-1"
  [0x0103] Host-Uniq: len = 1, value = 34
"
```

When **disable-cookies** is configured, the use of cookies will be disabled, when omitted the **no-disable-cookies** will be used.

```
*A:BSR-1# configure subscriber-mgmt ppp-policy "ppp-policy-1" disable-cookies
```

The cookies are encoded back by the client in the next PADR message.

PPPoE hosts are authenticated based on username-password information (PAP/CHAP authentication) or on information embedded in the PADI message PADI authentication).

The **min** and **max** values for the **ppp-chap-challenge** are defined when enabling **ppp-chap-challenge length**. When omitted, a **min** of 32 and **max** of 64 are used.

```
*A:BSR-1# configure subscriber-mgmt ppp-policy "ppp-policy-1" ppp-chap-challenge-length
- ppp-chap-challenge-length min <minimum-length> max <maximum-length>
- no ppp-chap-challenge-length

<minimum-length>      : [8..64]
<maximum-length>      : [8..64]

*A:BSR-1#
```

To complete the discovery phase, the server must provide a session-id to the client and the SR OS allocates session-id 1 for different MACs.

Note: In the VLAN per service model (N: 1 VLAN) where the MACs are the same and the PPPoE interworking will be done at the BSAN.

```
*A:BSR-1# show service id 1 pppoe session
=====
PPPoE sessions for svc-id 1
=====
Sap Id      Mac Address      Sid   Up Time      Type
IP/L2TP-Id/Interface-Id      MC-Stdbby
-----
1/1/1:1     00:00:67:14:01:02 1      0d 00:01:32   local
10.2.0.1
-----
Number of sessions : 1
=====
*A:BSR-1#
```

The 7750 has the possibility to delay the sending of the PADO message to the client. This feature could be used if the client is dual homed to two BSRs and is explained later in the document.

When PADO-delay is configured, the configured value equals the delay timeout before sending PADO, when omitted the PADO-delay value of 0 msec will be used.

```
*A:BSR-1# configure subscriber-mgmt ppp-policy "ppp-policy-1" pado-delay
- no pado-delay
- pado-delay <deci-seconds>

<deci-seconds>      : [1..30]

*A:BSR-1#
```

Session Stage

LCP

During the link establishment phase client and server negotiate options and need to come to an agreement on these options. Options that are unknown by the peer are rejected whereas known options with unknown content are nack'd. In the later case the peer needs to resend the same option but with another content. In case of a reject the peer should remove that option. An Ack will be send if there is a full agreement.

One of the more important options that is exchanged is the maximum receive unit (MRU) and the authentication protocol that will be used later in the authentication phase. The first option, the MRU value (minus overhead) is sent from the BSR towards the client and is the lowest value between the port MTU and the optional configured ppp-mtu in the ppp-policy.

RFC 2516 mandates a maximum negotiated Maximum Receive Unit (MRU) of 1492 but RFC 4638 relaxes this restriction and allows a maximum negotiated MRU greater than 1492 to minimize fragmentation in next-generation broadband networks. The 7750 SR and 7710 SR implementation follows RFC 4638 when the client implements these extensions.

If a PPPoE client wants to use MRU>1492 in the LCP-config request it should include the **ppp-max-payload** tag with the higher MTU value in the initial PADI message.

```
*A:BSR-1# configure subscriber-mgmt ppp-policy "ppp-policy-1" ppp-mtu
- no ppp-mtu
- ppp-mtu <mtu-bytes>

<mtu-bytes>          : [512..9212]

*A:BSR-1#
```

PPPoE debug output.

```
5 2015/07/01 09:36:12.91 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 PPPoE
"PPPoE: TX Packet
  VPRN 1, SAP 1/1/1:1

  DMAC: 00:00:67:14:01:02
  SMAC: ea:4b:01:01:00:01
  Ether Type: 0x8864 (Session)

  PPPoE Header:
  Version: 1          Type          : 1
  Code   : 0x00      Session-Id: 0x0001 (1)
  Length : 21

  PPP:
  Protocol : 0xc021 (LCP)
  Code     : 1 (Configure-Request)
```



```

Identifier: 216          Length    : 19

Options:
[1] MRU: 1492
---snipped ---

```

The second important option, the authentication method used in the authentication phase is exchanged between client and server and can be PAP or CHAP authentication. The authentication method is not exchanged when PADI authentication is done. PADI authentication means that the BSR will authenticate the user based on parameters in the PADI message. Authentication based on PADI and PAP/CHAP is possible.

Debug output example for CHAP authentication protocol.

```

8 2015/07/01 09:36:12.91 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 PPPoE
"PPPoE: RX Packet
  VPRN 1, SAP 1/1/1:1

  DMAC: ea:4b:01:01:00:01
  SMAC: 00:00:67:14:01:02
  Ether Type: 0x8864 (Session)

  PPPoE Header:
  Version: 1          Type      : 1
  Code   : 0x00       Session-Id: 0x0001 (1)
  Length : 21

  PPP:
  Protocol : 0xc021 (LCP)
  Code     : 2 (Configure-Ack)
  Identifier: 216          Length    : 19

  Options:
  [1] MRU: 1492
  [3] Authentication-Protocol: 0xc223 (CHAP), Algorithm = 5 (MD5)
  [5] Magic-Number: 0x7f68ddea
"
```

Debug output example for PAP authentication protocol.

```

33 2015/07/01 09:40:46.21 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 PPPoE
"PPPoE: RX Packet
  VPRN 1, SAP 1/1/1:1

  DMAC: ea:4b:01:01:00:01
  SMAC: 00:00:67:13:01:02
  Ether Type: 0x8864 (Session)

  PPPoE Header:
  Version: 1          Type      : 1
  Code   : 0x00       Session-Id: 0x0001 (1)
  Length : 20

  PPP:
  Protocol : 0xc021 (LCP)
  Code     : 2 (Configure-Ack)

```

PPPoE Host Session: Set-Up, Operation and Release

```
Identifier: 74                Length   : 18

Options:
[1] MRU: 1492
[3] Authentication-Protocol: 0xc023 (PAP)
[5] Magic-Number: 0x79737c8b
"
```

- Fallback case chap->pap

For user authentication, with pap-chap-access, always try CHAP first; if that doesn't succeed, try PAP.

The option to be used first (CHAP/PAP) is defined when enabling the ppp-authentication. When omitted, CHAP is preferred always.

```
A:BSR-1# configure subscriber-mgmt ppp-policy "ppp-policy-1" ppp-authentication
- no ppp-authentication
- ppp-authentication {pap|chap|pref-chap|pref-pap}
```

PPPoE clients that implement undocumented options also require an agreement on those unknown options. By default, the 7750 SR will reject unknown options but the **ppp-option** feature in the **pppoe-policy** allows for support of undocumented client LCP or IPCP/IPv6CP options. If the received LCP or IPCP/IPv6CP option matches the configured options in the pppoe-policy an ack will be send instead of a reject.

```
A:BSR-1# configure subscriber-mgmt ppp-policy "ppp-policy-1" ppp-options custom-option
- custom-option <protocol> <option-number> address <ip-address>
- custom-option <protocol> <option-number> hex <hex-string>
- custom-option <protocol> <option-number> string <ascii-string>
- no custom-option <protocol> <option-number>
```

```
<protocol>           : lcp|ipcp|ipv6cp
<option-number>      : [0..255]
<ip-address>         : a.b.c.d
<ascii-string>       : [127 chars max]
<hex-string>         : [0x0..0xFFFFFFFF...(max 254 hex nibbles)]
```

```
A:BSR-1#
```

Troubleshooting the PPPoE LCP session messages is done with PPPoE debugging:

```
A:BSR-1# debug service id 1 ppp packet ppp
- no ppp
- ppp [lcp] [pap] [chap] [ipcp] [ipv6cp]

<lcp>                : keyword - debug LCP packets
<pap>                : keyword - debug PAP packets
<chap>              : keyword - debug CHAP packets
<ipcp>              : keyword - debug IPCP packets
<ipv6cp>            : keyword - debug IPv6CP packets

A:BSR-1#
```

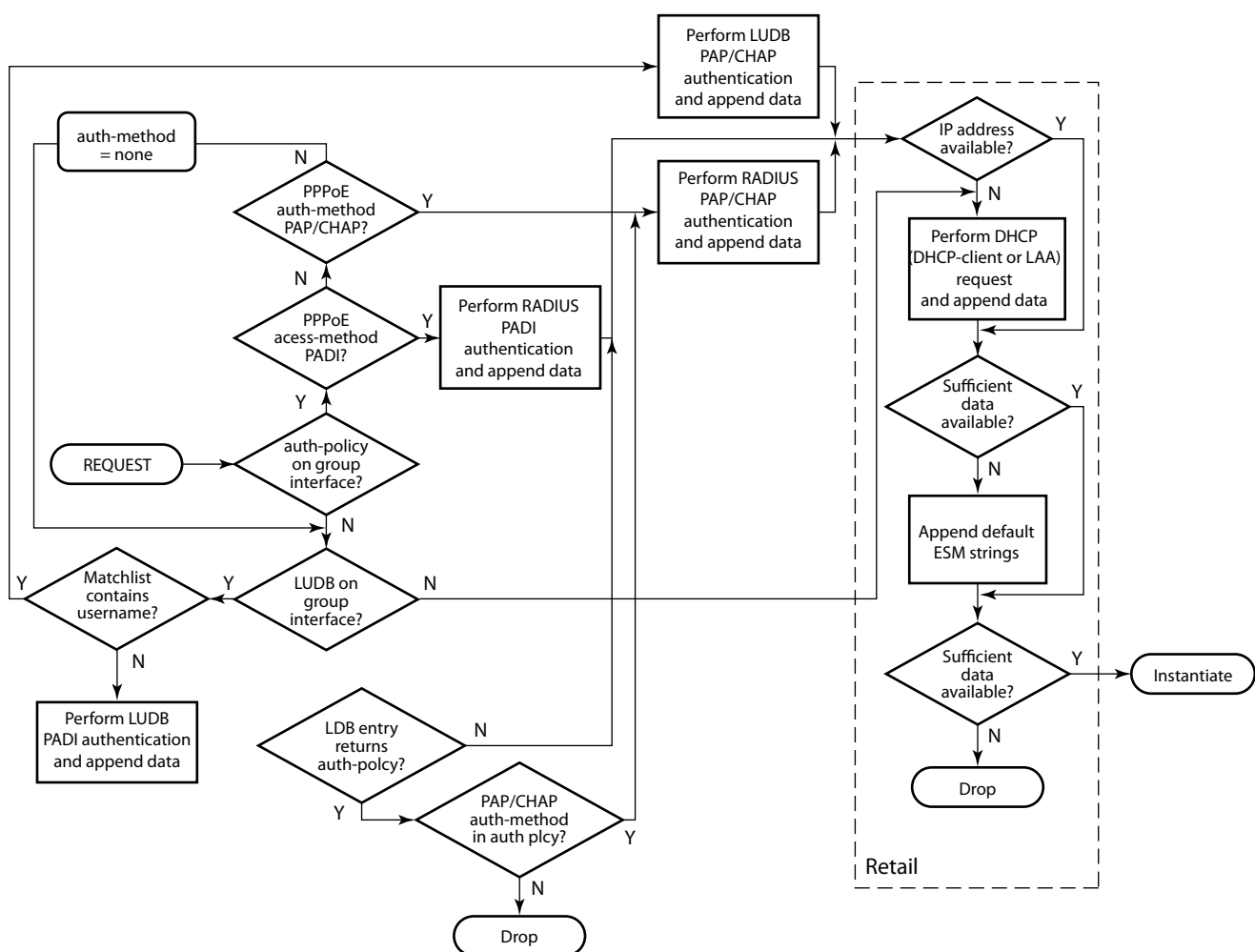
At the end of LCP, authentication is started.

The 7750/7710 BSR supports three main methods for PPPoE authentication.

- PADI or PAP/CHAP authentication through RADIUS
- PADI or PAP/CHAP authentication through a LUDB
- PADI authentication via LUDB then PAP/CHAP pre-authentication through RADIUS

DHCP server authentication will not be explained in this section because this is more authorization than authentication

The flow chart of the PPPoE host authentication process is shown in [Figure 127](#) and starts with the request to the middle left.



OSSG460

Figure 127: Authentication Flow Chart

PPPoE Host Session: Set-Up, Operation and Release

- PPPoE users get authenticated via the LUDB if this LUDB is configured under the group-interface.

```
configure
service
  vprn 1
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
    group-interface "group-int-1" create
    pppoe
      user-db "ludb-1"
```

- Users get authenticated via RADIUS if we have an authentication-policy under the same group-interface. RADIUS has precedence if both are configured.

```
configure
service
  vprn 1
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
    group-interface "group-int-1" create
    authentication-policy "auth-1"
    pppoe
      user-db "ludb-1"
      no shutdown
    exit
  exit
```

- Users that get authenticated via the LUDB can still go to RADIUS if we move the authentication-policy from the group-interface to the LUDB.

```
configure
subscriber-mgmt
  local-user-db "ludb-1" create
  ppp
    match-list username
    host "user1" create
    auth-policy "auth-1"
```

This last mechanism could be used to pick up parameters like **pado-delay** or to check some variables such as **circuit-id**, **remote-id** from the LUDB during discovery phase and subsequently to use RADIUS for PAP/CHAP authentication.

```
*A:BSR-1# configure subscriber-mgmt local-user-db "ludb-1" ppp host "user2" host-identification
```

```
- host-identification
```

```
[no] circuit-id      - Configure the circuit id of this host
[no] encap-tag-range - Configure the SAP encap range tags for this host
[no] mac             - Configure the MAC address of this host
[no] remote-id       - Configure the remote id of this host
[no] sap-id          - Configure the SAP identifier of this host
[no] service-name    - Configure the service name of this host
[no] username        - Configure the user name of this host
```

```
*A:BSR-1#
```

- Both RADIUS and LUDB support PADI or PAP/CHAP authentication.
- PPPoE users that are authenticated through the LUDB and have in the LUDB a match-list other than **username** will get authenticated based on PADI parameters like mac, circuit-id, remote-id.

```
*A:BSR-1# configure subscriber-mgmt local-user-db "ludb-1" ppp match-list
- no match-list
- match-list <ppp-match-type-1> [<ppp-match-type-2>...(up to 3 max)]
```

```
<ppp-match-type>      : circuit-id|mac|remote-id|sap-id|encap-tag-range|service-
name|username
```

```
*A:BSR-1#
```

- PPPoE users that have in the LUDB a match-list equal to **username** will use the PAP/CHAP authentication method.

```
configure
subscriber-mgmt
  local-user-db "ludb-1" create
  ppp
    match-list username
    host "user1" create
    host-identification
      username "user1@domain1"
    exit
    address pool "pool-1"
    password chap ALU
    identification-strings 254 create
      subscriber-id "PPPoE-host-user1@domain1"
      sla-profile-string "sla-profile-1"
      sub-profile-string "sub-profile-1"
    exit
    no shutdown
  exit
```

- PPPoE users that are authenticated through RADIUS and have in the authentication policy, a pppoe-access-method equal to PADI will use the **mac** or **circuit-id** information from the PADI in their request to RADIUS.

```
*A:BSR-1# configure subscriber-mgmt authentication-policy "auth-1" pppoe-access-method
- no pppoe-access-method
- pppoe-access-method {none|padi|pap-chap}
```

```
*A:BSR-1#
```

- The selection for mac or circuit-id can be altered via the parameter user-name-format.

```
*A:BSR-1# configure subscriber-mgmt authentication-policy "auth-1" user-name-format
- no user-name-format
- user-name-format <format> [mac-format <mac-format>]
- user-name-format <format> append [<domain-name>] [mac-format <mac-format>]
```

PPPoE Host Session: Set-Up, Operation and Release

```
- user-name-format <format> append domain-name
- user-name-format <format> default-domain <domain-name> [mac-format <mac-format>]
- user-name-format <format> replace <domain-name> [mac-format <mac-format>]
- user-name-format <format> strip [mac-format <mac-format>]

<format>                : ascii-converted-circuit-id|ascii-converted-tuple|circuit-id|dhcp-
client-vendor-opts|mac|mac-giaddr|ppp-user-name|tuple
<domain-name>           : max 128 chars, no @ needed
<mac-format>            : (only when format is dhcp-client-vendor-opts)
                        like ab:   for 00:0c:f1:99:85:b8
                        or  XY-   for 00-0C-F1-99-85-B8
                        or  mmmm. for 0002.03aa.abff
                        or  xx    for 000cf19985b8
```

PPPoE users that are authenticated through RADIUS and have in the authentication policy a `pppoe-access-method` equal to `pap-chap` use the username from the authentication phase in their request to RADIUS. The parameter `user-name-format` is irrelevant in this last case.

RADIUS Authentication

When authentication is provided through RADIUS, two methods can be used to authenticate the PPPoE session.

- PADI authentication
- PAP/CHAP authentication

The RADIUS policy specifies which parameters are provided in the RADIUS access-request message.

The following parameters can be configured:

- Circuit-id: Provided through the PADI/PADR PPPoE relay vendor specific tag as specified in TR-101 of the DSL Forum.
- Remote-id: Provided through the PADI/PADR PPPoE relay vendor specific tag as specified in TR-101 of the DSL Forum.
- NAS-port-id: SAP ID on which the PPPoE session terminates (e.g. 1/1/3:1).
- NAS-identifier: System name of the NAS or BNG.
- PPPoE-service-name: Provided through the PPPoE PADI packet.
- access-loop-options: Provided through the PAD/PADR PPPoE extensions as specified in TR-101 of the DSL Forum.

The option to use PADI authentication or PAP/CHAP authentication is selected with the following configuration in the RADIUS policy:

```
*A:BSR-1# configure subscriber-mgmt authentication-policy "auth-1" pppoe-access-method
- no pppoe-access-method
- pppoe-access-method {none|padi|pap-chap}

*A:BSR-1#
```

When PADI authentication is used for PPPoE termination the MAC address or the PPPoE relay tag (Circuit-ID) or a combination of MAC address and circuit ID can be used to identify the subscriber in the RADIUS server.

To determine the information to use in the RADIUS Access-Request message is configured in the RADIUS policy using the following command:

```
*A:BSR-1# configure subscriber-mgmt authentication-policy "auth-1" user-name-format
- no user-name-format
- user-name-format <format> [mac-format <mac-format>]
- user-name-format <format> append [<domain-name>] [mac-format <mac-format>]
- user-name-format <format> append domain-name
- user-name-format <format> default-domain <domain-name> [mac-format <mac-format>]
- user-name-format <format> replace <domain-name> [mac-format <mac-format>]
```

PPPoE Host Session: Set-Up, Operation and Release

```
- user-name-format <format> strip [mac-format <mac-format>]

<format>                : ascii-converted-circuit-id|ascii-converted-tuple|circuit-
id|dhcp-client-vendor-opts|mac|mac-giaddr|ppp-user-name|tuple
<domain-name>           : max 128 chars, no @ needed
<mac-format>            : (only when format is dhcp-client-vendor-opts)
                        like ab:   for 00:0c:f1:99:85:b8
                        or  XY-   for 00-0C-F1-99-85-B8
                        or  mmmm.  for 0002.03aa.abff
                        or  xx    for 000cf19985b8

*A:BSR-1#
```

Local User Database Authentication

A second authentication option for PPPoE termination is to use the local user database of the BSR 7750 for PAP/CHAP authentication (this option will be used in this note). With this authentication method the client's PPPoE session is authenticated locally on the BSR without any constraint of an external radius server.

The local user database is configured with the following parameters:

```
configure
  subscriber-mgmt
    local-user-db "ludb-1" create
    ppp
      match-list username
      host "user1" create
      host-identification
        username "user1@domain1"
      exit
      address pool "pool-1"
      password chap ALU
      identification-strings 254 create
        subscriber-id "PPPoE-host-user1@domain1"
        sla-profile-string "sla-profile-1"
        sub-profile-string "sub-profile-1"
      exit
      no shutdown
    exit
```

With this authentication method, authentication can be provided by the username/password.

To enable the local authentication method, the local user database is configured under the PPPoE node of the group-interface as shown below.

```
configure
  service
    vprn 1
      subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
      group-interface "group-int-1" create
      pppoe
```



```
        policy "ppp-policy-1"  
        user-db "ludb-1"  
        no shutdown  
    exit  
exit  
exit
```

Refer to the LUBD Basics chapter for further information.

DHCP Client Authentication

A third authentication method for PPPoE termination is to perform PPPoE to DHCP transformation (where the 7750 SR acts as a DHCP client on behalf of the PPP session) and to use a DHCP server for session authentication. This method is useful when a similar authentication is used for DHCP based clients.

The PPPoE to DHCP authentication method can provide authentication on the basis of MAC address, circuit ID or remote ID.

IPCP

IP and DNS information can be obtained from different sources like LUBD and RADIUS for fixed IP addressing or (local) DHCP for dynamic IP pool management.

If IP information is returned from a DHCP server, then the PPPoE options such as the DNS name are retrieved from the DHCP ACK and provided to the PPPoE client.

Local DHCP Server

In this note, a local DHCP server will be used as a source for the IP addressing of the PPPoE host.

```
configure
service
  vprn 1
  dhcp
    local-dhcp-server "server-1" create
    use-gi-address
    pool "pool-1" create
      subnet 10.2.0.0/16 create
        exclude-addresses 10.2.0.254 10.2.0.255
        address-range 10.2.0.1 10.2.0.253
      exit
    exit
  exit
no shutdown
exit
exit
```

To check the DHCP server summary:

```
*A:BSR-1# show router 1 dhcp local-dhcp-server "server-1" summary
=====
DHCP server server-1  router 1
=====
Admin State           : inService
Operational State     : inService
Persistency State     : shutdown
--- snipped ---
-----
Subnet                Free    %    Stable  Declined  Offered  Rem-pend  Drain
-----
10.2.0.0/16           252    99%  1        0         0        0        N
Totals for pool       252    99%  1        0         0        0
-----
Totals for server     252    99%  1        0         0        0
-----
Interface associations
Interface              Admin
-----
local-dhcp-server-1    Up
--- snipped ---
=====
*A:BSR-1#
```

To debug the DHCP server:

```
debug
  router "1"
    ip
      dhcp
        detail-level medium
        mode ingr-and-dropped
      exit
    exit
  exit
```

Keepalive

The keepalive timer (defined in seconds) and the hold-up-multiplier are defined when enabling keepalives. When omitted, a 30 second keepalive timer and three hold-up-multipliers are used.

```
*A:BSR-1# configure subscriber-mgmt ppp-policy "ppp-policy-1" keepalive
- keepalive <seconds> [hold-up-multiplier <multiplier>]
- no keepalive

<seconds>           : [4..300]
<multiplier>        : [1..5]

*A:BSR-1#

[4-300] seconds: interval between LCP Echo Requests
hold-up-multiplier [1-5] : Number of missed replies before the PPPoE session is consid-
ered dead.
```

PPPoE Host Session: Set-Up, Operation and Release

To check the keepalive statistics:

```
*A:BSR-1# show service id 1 pppoe session session-id 1 mac 00:00:67:14:01:02 statistics
=====
PPPoE sessions for svc-id 1
=====
Sap Id          Mac Address      Sid   Up Time          Type
  IP/L2TP-Id/Interface-Id                MC-Stdbby
-----
1/1/1:1        00:00:67:14:01:02 1      0d 00:18:51      local
  10.2.0.1

Packet Type          Received      Transmitted
-----
--- snipped ---
LCP Echo-Request      113           0
LCP Echo-Reply        0            113
--- snipped ---

Number of sessions   : 1
=====
*A:BSR-1#
```

The 7750 BSR supports an optimized implementation of keepalive mechanism; this is a mechanism where client and/or server can check the aliveness of the peer. This LCP echo-request is sent on expiration of a timer, derived from the configured **pppoe-policy keepalive** value.

An LCP echo reply is returned to the client after a LCP echo request is received and the above timer on the BSR is reset to the initial keepalive value.

The above mechanism results in an optimized mechanism if the keepalive timers from the client are smaller than the configured values on the BSR.

The client or BSR will terminate the session with a PADT if no LCP echo-reply is received within the time specified by the hold-up-multiplier.

Example for Echo Request from BSR and Echo Reply from the PPPoE host.

```
Ethernet II, Src: TimetraN_90:f8:6a (00:03:fa:90:f8:6a), Dst: Soft*Rit_14:01:02
(00:00:67:14:01:02)
802.1Q Virtual LAN, PRI: 5, CFI: 0, ID: 1
PPP-over-Ethernet Session
Point-to-Point Protocol
PPP Link Control Protocol
  Code: Echo Request (0x09)
  Identifier: 0x01
  Length: 8
  Magic number: 0x2e538af6

No.      Time      Source          Destination      Protocol Info
  4 30.000280  TimetraN_90:f8:6a  Soft*Rit_14:01:02  PPP LCP Echo Reply

Ethernet II, Src: TimetraN_90:f8:6a (00:03:fa:90:f8:6a), Dst: Soft*Rit_14:01:02
```

```
(00:00:67:14:01:02)
802.1Q Virtual LAN, PRI: 5, CFI: 0, ID: 1
PPP-over-Ethernet Session
Point-to-Point Protocol
PPP Link Control Protocol
  Code: Echo Reply (0x0a)
  Identifier: 0x0b
  Length: 8
  Magic number: 0x2e538af6
```

To check the PPPoE session for a particular service, use the **show service id <service-id> pppoe session** command. Detailed output as well as additional output filtering is available:

```
*A:BSR-1# show service id 1 pppoe session
- session [interface <ip-int-name|ip-address> | sap <sap-id>] [type <pppoe-session-
type>] [session-id <session-id>] [mac <ieee-address>] [ip-address
<ip-prefix[/prefix-length]>] [port <port-id>] [no-inter-dest-id | inter-dest-id
<intermediate-destination-id>] [detail|statistics]
- session l2tp-connection-id <connection-id> [detail|statistics]
```

```
*A:BSR-1# show service id 1 pppoe session detail
```

```
=====
PPPoE sessions for svc-id 1
=====
```

Sap Id	Mac Address	Sid	Up Time	Type
IP/L2TP-Id/Interface-Id				MC-Stdby
1/1/1:1	00:00:67:14:01:02	1	0d 00:19:34	local
10.2.0.1				

```
-----
```

```
LCP State           : Opened
IPCP State          : Opened
IPv6CP State        : Closed
PPP MTU             : 1492
PPP Auth-Protocol   : CHAP
PPP User-Name       : user1@domain1
```

```
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : group-int-1
```

```
IP Origin           : dhcp
DNS Origin           : none
NBNS Origin          : none
```

```
Subscriber          : "PPPoE-host-user1@domain1"
Sub-Profile-String   : "sub-profile-1"
SLA-Profile-String   : "sla-profile-1"
ANCP-String          : ""
Int-Dest-Id          : ""
App-Profile-String   : ""
Category-Map-Name    : ""
Acct-Session-Id      : "EA4BFF000000005593B48C"
Sap-Session-Index    : 1
```

```
IP Address           : 10.2.0.1/32
Primary DNS           : N/A
Secondary DNS         : N/A
Primary NBNS          : N/A
Secondary NBNS        : N/A
Address-Pool          : pool-1
```

```
--- snipped ---
```

```
Ignoring DF bit       : false
```

```

Circuit-Id       : circuit10
Remote-Id        : remotel0

Radius Session-TO : N/A
Radius Class      :
Radius User-Name  : user1@domain1
Logical-Line-Id   :
Service-Name      :
Data link         : ethernet
Encaps 1          : untagged-ethernet
Encaps 2          : not-available
Origin           : tags
Link Rate Down    : 16384
Rate Origin       : tags
-----
Number of sessions : 1
=====
*A:BSR-1#

```

An event will be generated when a PPPoE host has been created in the system.

```

46 2015/07/01 09:36:12.92 UTC WARNING: SVCNMR #2500 Base Subscriber created
"Subscriber PPPoE-host-user1@domain1 has been created in the system"

```

The PPPoE host will appear in the subscriber-host table for the service with origin set to IPCP.

```

*A:BSR-1# show service id 1 subscriber-hosts
=====
Subscriber Host table
=====
Sap              Subscriber
  IP Address
  MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin      Fwding State
-----
1/1/1:1          PPPoE-host-user1@domain1
  10.2.0.1
    00:00:67:14:01:02   1          IPCP          Fwding
-----
Number of subscriber hosts : 1
=====
*A:BSR-1#

```

A host route (/32) for its IP address is inserted in the routing table towards the appropriate group-interface.

```

*A:BSR-1# show router 1 route-table
=====
Route Table (Service: 1)
=====
Dest Prefix[Flags]                                Type  Proto  Age           Pref
  Next Hop[Interface Name]                        Metric
-----
10.2.0.0/16                                         Local  Local   00h24m10s    0
  sub-int-1                                         0
10.2.0.1/32                                         Remote Sub Mgmt 00h20m35s    0

```

PPPoE Host Session: Set-Up, Operation and Release

```

    [group-int-1]
172.16.0.1/32                Local   Local   00h24m27s  0
    local-dhcp-server-1      0
-----
No. of Routes: 3
Flags: n = Number of times nexthop is repeated
      B = BGP backup route available
      L = LFA nexthop available
      S = Sticky ECMP requested
=====
*A:BSR-1#
```


To advertise the PPPoE host subnets to other protocol/network, a policy statement should be defined with using **from protocol direct**.

```
configure router policy-options
begin
  policy-statement "policy-1"
  entry 10
  from
    protocol direct
  exit
  --- snipped ---
```

Terminate

Some PPPoE clients expect a reply on PADT message before the context of the session is cleared up. To support such clients, a command enabling reply to PADT is configured.

When reply-on-padt is configured, the BSR will reply with PADT message, when omitted no PADT will be sent from the BSR as a reply on the client's PADT.

```
*A:BSR-1# configure subscriber-mgmt ppp-policy "ppp-policy-1" reply-on-padt
```

The PPPoE debug output:

```
77 2010/01/07 20:31:50.32 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 PPPoE
"PPPoE: TX Packet
  VPRN 1, SAP 1/1/3:1

  DMAC: 00:00:67:13:01:02
  SMAC: 00:03:fa:90:f8:6a
  Ether Type: 0x8863 (Discovery)

  PPPoE Header:
  Version: 1                      Type          : 1
  Code    : 0xa7 (PADT)           Session-Id: 0x0001 (1)
  Lengt
```

A PPPoE host can be manually deleted from the system using following clear command:

```
*A:BSR-1# clear service id 1 ppp session
- session [sap-id <sap-id>] [interface <ip-int-name|ip-address>] [mac <ieee-address>]
[session-id <session-id>] [type
  <pppoe-session-type>] [ip-address <ip-prefix[/prefix-length]>] [port <port-id>]
[inter-dest-id
  <intermediate-destination-id>] [no-inter-dest-id] [user-name <user-name>] [sub-ppp-
type {oa|oe|oeoa|ol2tp}] [no-padt]
- session all [no-padt]

*A:BSR-1# clear service id 1 ppp session sap-id 1/1/1:1 mac 00:00:67:14:01:02
```

The causes for terminating the PPP session can be:

- **Admin Reset** — Use the **clear** command or a RADIUS Disconnect Request.

TERMINATE CAUSE [49] 4 Admin Reset(6)

- **User Request** — User disconnects the session.

TERMINATE CAUSE [49] 4 User Request(1)

- **Accounting OFF**

→ When accounting policy has been removed from sap/interface/sub-profile.

→ vprn service which is transporting accounting information has been shutdown.

→ The last RADIUS accounting server has been removed from already applied accounting policy.

TERMINATE CAUSE [49] 4 NAS Request(10)

- **PPPoE keepalive timeout**

TERMINATE CAUSE [49] 4 Lost Carrier(2)

- **RADIUS session timeout**

PPPoE Hosts Advanced Topics

QoS Aspects

VLAN based downstream PPPoE control traffic is generated by default with dot1p value 7. This value can be overruled with the following commands:

In case of the PPPoE hosts instantiated in the Base routing instance using an IES service.

```
*A:BSR-1# configure router sgt-qos application pppoe dot1p 5
```

In case of the PPPoE hosts instantiated in a VPRN service subscriber-interface.

```
*A:BSR-1# configure service vprn 1 sgt-qos application pppoe dot1p 5
```

The **show router sgt-qos** command displays the configured and default DSCP and default dot1p values per application. Since PPPoE is a Layer 2 protocol we will see only the dot1p settings. The default dot1p value **none** corresponds with value 7.

```
*A:BSR-1# show router 1 sgt-qos application pppoe
=====
Dot1p Application Values
=====
Application          Dot1p Value          Default Dot1p Value
-----
pppoe                 5                    none
=====
*A:BSR-1#
```

Limiting the Number of PPPoE Hosts

The maximum number of PPPoE sessions can be controlled by the parameters session-limit, sap-session-limit, host-limit, multi-sub-sap limit and max-sessions-per mac.

session-limit — The maximum number of PPPoE sessions for an IES/VRN group-interface is defined when enabling session-limit. When omitted, a single PPPoE session is allowed.

```
configure
  service
    vprn 1
      subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
      group-interface "group-int-1" create
      pppoe
        session-limit 1
```

A trap is generated when trying to instantiate a new PPPoE session while the configured number of sessions is reached. Note that the discovery phase is completed before the check on the session-limit is performed.

```
47 2015/07/02 09:17:11.21 UTC WARNING: PPPOE #2001 vprn1 PPPoE session failure
"PPPoE session failure on SAP 1/1/1:1 in service 1 - Reached the interface session limit
(1) for "group-int-1"
```

PPPoE debug output:

```
23 2015/07/02 09:17:11.21 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 PPPoE
"PPPoE: Dropped Packet
  VPRN 1, SAP 1/1/1:1

  Problem: Reached the interface session limit (1) for "group-int-1"

  DMAC: ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
  SMAC: 00:00:67:13:01:02
  Ether Type: 0x8863 (Discovery)
```

sap-session-limit

The maximum number of PPPoE sessions per SAP for an IES/VRN group-interface is defined when enabling sap-session-limit. When omitted, a single PPPoE session per SAP is allowed:

```
configure
  service
    vprn 1
      subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
      group-interface "group-int-1" create
      pppoe
        sap-session-limit 1
```

A trap is generated when trying to instantiate a new PPPoE session while the configured number of the sessions per sap is reached.

```
48 2015/07/02 09:22:26.99 UTC WARNING: PPPOE #2001 vprn1 PPPoE session failure
"PPPoE session failure on SAP 1/1/1:1 in service 1 - Reached the per-SAP session limit
(1) for "group-int-1"
```

PPPoE debug output:

```
25 2015/07/02 09:22:26.99 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 PPPoE
"PPPoE: Dropped Packet
  VPRN 1, SAP 1/1/1:1

  Problem: Reached the per-SAP session limit (1) for "group-int-1"

  DMAC: ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
  SMAC: 00:00:67:13:01:02
  Ether Type: 0x8863 (Discovery)
```

max-sessions-per-mac

The BSR 7750 implementation defines a unique PPPoE session based on the PPPoE SESSION_ID and the client's MAC address.

The maximum number of PPPoE sessions per mac is defined when enabling max-sessions-per-mac. When omitted, a single PPPoE session per mac is allowed.

```
configure
  subscriber-mgmt
    ppp-policy "ppp-policy-1"
      max-sessions-per-mac 63
```

Although the command is max-session-per-mac, actually it means the maximum number of supported sessions-per-MAC-per-SAP especially in N: 1 VLAN model.

A trap is generated when trying to instantiate a new PPPoE session per the same mac while the configured number of max-sessions-per-mac is reached.

```
52 2015/07/02 09:32:11.41 UTC WARNING: PPPOE #2001 vprn1 PPPoE session failure
"PPPoE session failure on SAP 1/1/1:1 in service 1 - Reached the maximum number (1) of
PPPoE sessions for MAC 00:00:67:14:01:02"
```

Host-limit

The maximum number of PPPoE hosts is defined when enabling host-limit. When omitted, a single host is allowed.

```
configure
  subscriber-mgmt
    sla-profile "sla-profile-1"
    host-limits
      overall 10
```

If the configured host-limit is reached for a subscriber, access is denied for a new host, and an event is generated.

```
80 2015/07/02 09:44:28.30 UTC WARNING: PPPOE #2001 vprn1 PPPoE session failure
"PPPoE session failure on SAP 1/1/1:1 in service 1 -
[00:00:67:14:01:02,12,user1@domain1] sla-profile sla-profile-1 : host-limit overall (1)
exceeded for subscriber PPPoE-host-user1@domain1 on SAP 1/1/1:1 "
```

Note: An optional command **remove-oldest** can be specified. In this case the new host is accepted and the old one will be removed.

```
configure
  subscriber-mgmt
    sla-profile "sla-profile-1"
    host-limits
      remove-oldest
```

multi-sub-sap

This parameter defines the maximum number of subscribers (dynamic and static) that can be simultaneously active on this SAP.

When omitted, a single PPPoE session per sap is allowed (no multi-sub-sap).

```
configure
  service
    vprn 1
      subscriber-interface "sub-int-1"
      group-interface "group-int-1"
      sap 1/1/1:1
      sub-sla-mgmt
        multi-sub-sap 100
```

A trap is generated when trying to instantiate a new PPPoE session while the configured number of the multi-sub-sap is reached.

```
123 2015/07/02 09:57:40.80 UTC WARNING: PPPOE #2001 vprn1 PPPoE session failure
"PPPoE session failure on SAP 1/1/1:1 in service 1 - [00:00:67:14:01:03,1,user3@domain1]
Number of subscribers exceeds the configured multi-sub-sap limit (2) "
```

Redundancy

Redundancy for PPPoE sessions can be used for load balancing the sessions between the 2 BSRs. PADO-delays (which can come from RADIUS, LUDB, and policy) are used to achieve that.

The redundant BSRs need different IP subnets, and upon failure the PPP sessions will need to be re-established.

Because PADI messages are broadcast on a multi-access network, all BSRs on that network will reply with a PADO to the initiator.

The PADR and PADS are sent in unicast to the MAC address from the first received PADO message.

In order to allow control over the NAS/BSR selection for a given PPPoE session the 7750 and 7710 offer the ability to delay the PADO message. Due to the fact that PPPoE clients select the NAS/BSR for further communication based on the first PADO message that arrives, this functionality provides control over the NAS/BSR who gets selected for a given PPPoE session.

On top if for some reason a NAS/BSR, without PADO delay configured in the PPPoE policy, does not reply on PADI messages to the client another NAS/BSR with a PADO delay configured will reply based on the time configured and ultimately the PPPoE session will be established with the PADO delayed NAS/BSR.

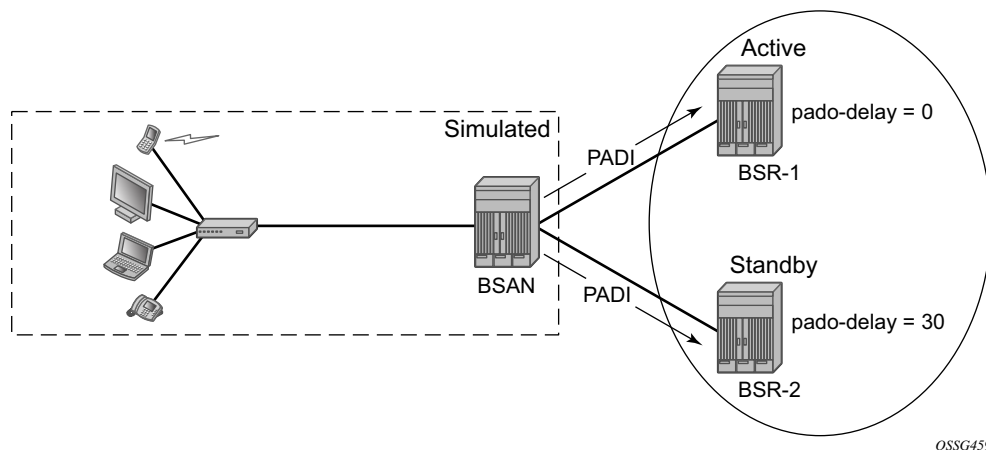


Figure 128: Pado-Delay Scenario

To check the PADO delay value.

```
*A:BSR-1# show subscriber-mgmt ppp-policy "ppp-policy-1"
=====
PPP Policy "ppp-policy-1"
=====
Description          : (Not Specified)
Last Mgmt Change     : 07/01/2015 10:03:28
PPP-mtu              : N/A
Keepalive Interval   : 30s
Disable AC-Cookies   : Yes
Max Sessions-Per-Mac : 63
Allow Same CID       : No
PPP-Authentication   : pref-CHAP
PPP-Init-Delay (ms)  : 0
Unique SIDs-Per-SAP  : disabled
Ignore-Magic-Num     : No
PADO AC-Name         : (Not Specified)
Default username     : (Not Specified)
Default password     : (Not Specified)
--- snipped ---
*A:BSR-1#
```

Force PPP-mtu >1492	: No
Keepalive Multiplier	: 3
PADO Delay	: 3000msec
Reply-On-PADT	: Yes
Re-establish Session	: Disabled
PPP-CHAP Challenge	: 32 - 64
IPCP negotiate subnet	: No
Reject-Disabled-Ncp	: No
Session Timeout	: unlimited

Another option to achieve redundancy is through Multi Chassis Synchronization (MCS), but that is beyond the scope of this chapter.

High Availability

The PPPoE session state is HA: the session state is synchronized to the standby CPM. When the active CPM fails, all PPPoE hosts stay active without service interruption.

Conclusion

This chapter provides configuration and troubleshooting commands for PPPoE hosts in a Layer 3 Routed CO (IES/VP RN subscriber interface) context.

ESMv6: IPoE Dual Stack Hosts

In This Chapter

This section describes IPoE dual stack hosts for ESMv6 configurations.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 744](#)
- [Summary on page 745](#)
- [Overview on page 746](#)
- [Configuration on page 754](#)
- [Conclusion on page 785](#)

Applicability

This section describes ESMv6: IPoE dual stack hosts and is applicable to 7750 SR series (SR-7, SR-12, SR-c4 and SR-c12) as well as 7450 ESS series in mixed mode and was tested on SR-OS 8.0R4.

This section focuses on IPoE IPv6. IPv4 configuration is shown for completeness and is described in more detail in [IPv4 DHCP Hosts on page 929](#).

Pre-requisites

Configuring IPoE dual stack hosts for ESMv6 are dependent on the following.

- IOM3-XP or IMM required for subscriber and network interfaces
- Chassis-mode C or higher
- Routed CO (IES/VP RN service) with Enhanced Subscriber Management (ESM)
- VLAN per subscriber (1:1 vlan)
- Routed Gateway (RG) in the home

Summary

In this section, the configuration, operation and troubleshooting of IPoE dual stack hosts in a routed home gateway environment is explained. Focus is on the Enhanced Subscriber Management for IPv6 (ESMv6) part where DHCPv6 is used for IPv6 address assignment. In the BNG, authentication, authorization and IPv6 prefix configuration for an IPoE IPv6 host can be done by a local user database or RADIUS.

Overview

IPoE Dual Stack Hosts

An IPoE dual stack subscriber may support both IPv4 and IPv6 simultaneously. The dual stack hosts share a common subscriber identification policy and have a common SLA- and Subscriber-profile.

IPoE IPv4 and IPv6 hosts operate independently as they are set up through different protocols, DHCPv4 and DHCPv6 respectively. [Table 15](#) and [Table 16](#) show the valid combinations of authentication, authorization and address assignment in the BNG for both address families.

Table 15: Valid Combinations for RADIUS Authenticated Hosts

	Authentication and authorization (Subscriber ID and strings)	IP address assignment (prefix, prefix length, gateway, DNS, etc.)
IPv6 host	RADIUS	RADIUS
IPv4 host	Static host	Static host
	RADIUS	RADIUS or DHCPv4

Table 16: Valid Combinations for LUDB Authenticated Hosts

	Authentication and authorization (Sub- scriber ID and strings)	IP address assignment (prefix, prefix length, gateway, DNS)
IPv6 host	LUDB	LUDB
IPv4 host	Static host	Static host
	Python/DHCPv4	DHCPv4
	SAP defaults	DHCPv4
	LUDB	LUDB or local DHCPv4 server

For an IPoE dual stack subscriber, up to three different types of subscriber hosts can be instantiated.

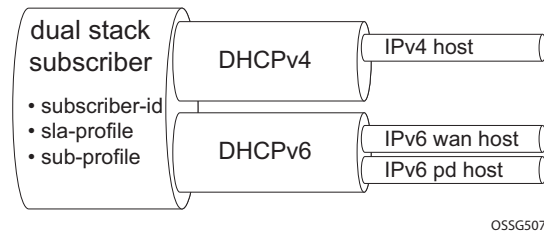


Figure 129: IPoE Dual Stack Subscriber Hosts

IPoE dual stack subscriber hosts are initially supported in a vlan/subscriber (1:1) routed CO model and with a Routed Gateway (RG). The IPv6 IPoE hosts must support DHCPv6.

Dual Stack IPoE Routed Gateway Service

In the dual stack IPoE Routed Gateway service, the RG in the home network obtains an IPv4 address through the DHCPv4 protocol and an IPv6 Prefix Delegation (PD) prefix and/or wan-host IPv6 address through the DHCPv6 protocol. The Broadband Network Gateway (BNG) authenticates and authorizes both sessions independently.

In the home network, the dual stack RG performs Network Address Translation (NAT) for IPv4, using the assigned IPv4 address as outside address. A global unique IPv6 prefix per subscriber is delegated by the BNG to the RG for use in the home network. The RG can use Stateless Address Auto Configuration (SLAAC) or DHCPv6 to allocate IPv6 addresses from this so called Prefix Delegation (PD) prefix to the devices in the home network. The wan-host IPv6 address is used by the RG on the wan side (network facing). In case of an unnumbered RG, no wan-host address is obtained.

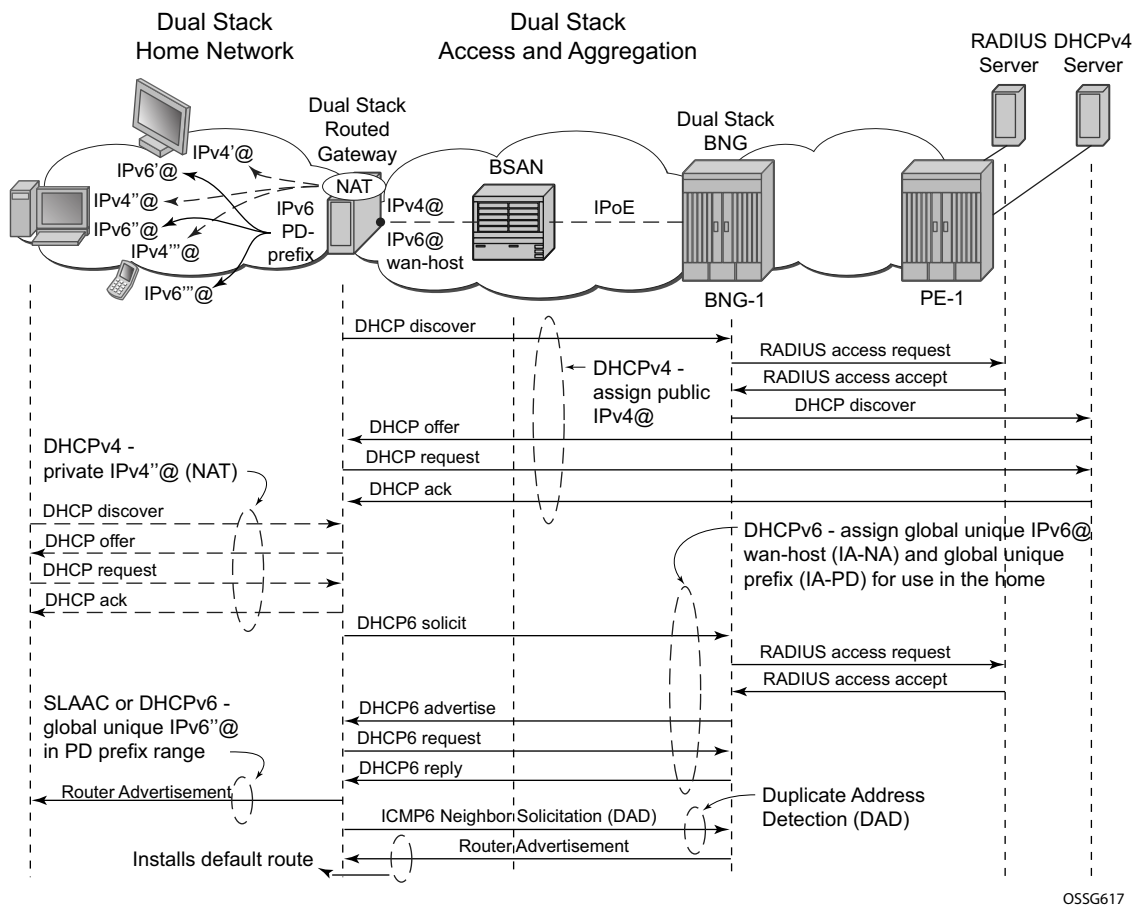


Figure 130: Dual Stack IPoE Routed Gateway Service

Recap of the DHCPv6 Protocol

The Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol for IPv6 (DHCPv6) is defined in RFC 3315, *Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol for IPv6 (DHCPv6)*. The protocol enables DHCPv6 servers to pass configuration parameters such as IPv6 network addresses to IPv6 nodes.

DHCPv6 uses the Identity Association (IA) option to assign IPv6 addresses or prefixes. Two different IA types will be used in this section:

- Identity Association for Non-temporary Address (IA-NA) defined in RFC 3315.
Used for wan-host IPv6 address assignment.

```
Option : IA_NA (3), Length : 40
  IAID : 1
  Time1: 1800 seconds
  Time2: 2880 seconds
Option : IAADDR (5), Length : 24
  Address : 2001:DB8:B001:101::1
  Preferred Lifetime : 3600 seconds
  Valid Lifetime      : 86400 seconds
```

- Identity Association for Prefix Delegation (IA-PD), defined in RFC3633.
Used for prefix delegation assignment (for an explanation on prefix delegation, see [Prefix Delegation on page 753](#))

```
Option : IA_PD (25), Length : 41
  IAID : 1
  Time1: 1800 seconds
  Time2: 2880 seconds
Option : IAPREFIX (26), Length : 25
  Prefix : 2001:DB8:A001:100::/56
  Preferred Lifetime : 3600 seconds
  Valid Lifetime      : 86400 seconds
```

The DHCPv6 lease process is outlined in [Figure 131](#) and [Figure 132](#).

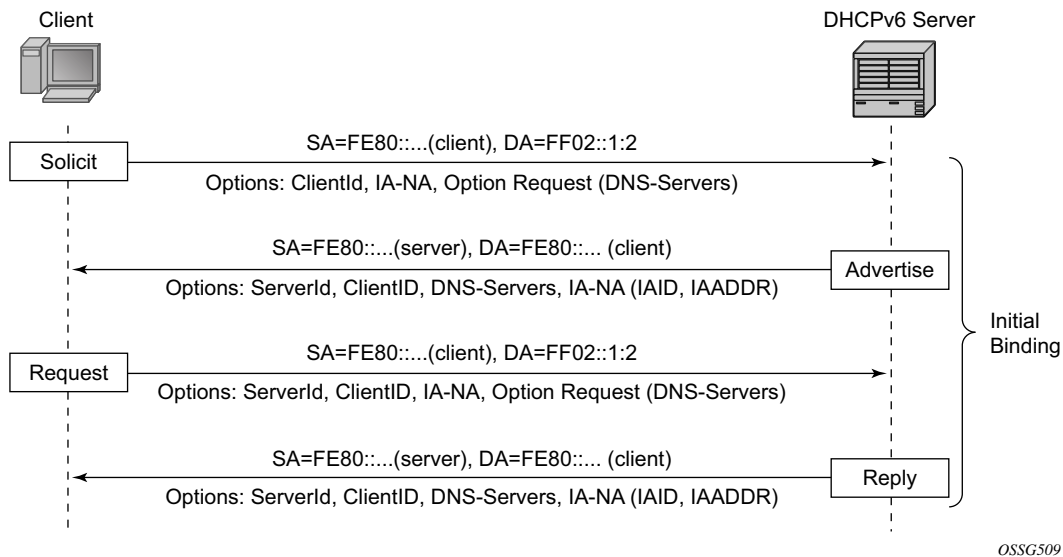


Figure 131: DHCPv6 Lease Process (Part A)

A DHCPv6 client, sends a SOLICIT message to locate servers to the All DHCPv6 Relay Agents and Servers link-scoped multicast address (FF02::1:2), using its link-local address as source address. The DHCPv6 client includes in the SOLICIT message its ClientID, Identity Associations (IA) to request IPv6 address or prefix allocation and optionally an Option Request option.

Any on-link DHCPv6 server responds with a unicasted ADVERTISE message using the link local addresses. The server includes in the ADVERTISE message the ClientID, its ServerID, IPv6 addresses and/or prefixes in Identity Associations (IA) and options containing the requested configuration parameters.

The DHCPv6 client selects an ADVERTISE message and sends a REQUEST message to the All DHCPv6 Relay Agents and Servers link-scoped multicast address. It includes its ClientID, the ServerID of the corresponding DHCPv6 server, Identity Associations (IA) to request IPv6 address or prefix allocation and optionally an Option Request option.

Upon receipt of a valid REQUEST message, the DHCPv6 server with corresponding ServerID, sends a unicast REPLY message using the link local addresses. The REPLY contains the ClientID and ServerID, IPv6 addresses and/or prefixes in Identity Associations (IA) and options containing the requested configuration options.

The DHCPv6 client should perform Duplicate Address Detection (DAD) on the addresses in any IA it received in the REPLY before using that address for traffic.

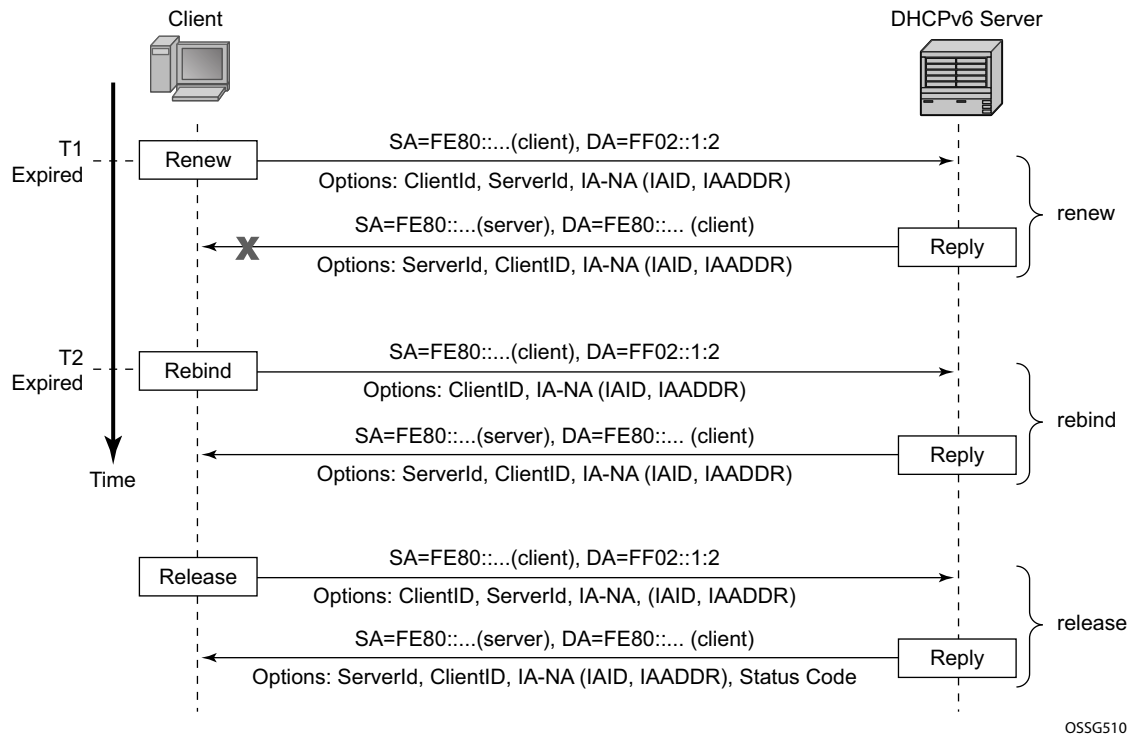


Figure 132: DHCPv6 Lease Process (Part B)

Upon expiration of the renew timer T1 associated with the Identity Association option, the DHCPv6 client sends a RENEW to the All DHCPv6 Relay Agents and Servers link-scoped multicast address to request an extension of the lifetime of an address. It includes its ClientID, the ServerID of the DHCPv6 server that originally provided the address and Identity Associations (IA) containing the IPv6 address or prefix for which an extension of the lifetime is requested.

Upon expiration of the rebind timer T2 associated with the Identity Association option (no response received to the RENEW), the DHCPv6 client sends a REBIND to the All DHCPv6 Relay Agents and Servers link-scoped multicast address to request an extension of the lifetime of an address. It includes its ClientID and Identity Associations (IA) containing the IPv6 address or prefix for which n extension of the lifetime is requested.

If a DHCPv6 client no longer uses one or more of the assigned addresses or prefixes, it sends a RELEASE message to the server that assigned the address or prefix. The server acknowledges with a REPLY message and includes a status code (for example, success).

If the DHCPv6 server sends a Server Unicast Option, then the DHCPv6 client should unicast the REQUEST, RENEW, RELEASE and DECLINE messages to the server using the IPv6 address specified in the option. The 7750 SR DHCPv6 proxy-server does not include the Server Unicast Option.

Recap of the DHCPv6 Protocol

The DHCPv6 client should perform Duplicate Address Detection (DAD) on each of the addresses assigned through DHCPv6, before using that address for traffic. The DHCPv6 client uses Neighbor Solicitation for this purpose as described in RFC 4862, *IPv6 Stateless Address AutoConfiguration*.

Unlike DHCPv4, DHCPv6 does not provide a default route. In IPv6, default routers are learned via Router Advertisements (see [Enable Router Advertisements on page 762](#)).

Prefix Delegation

Prefix Delegation (PD) is a mechanism for automated delegation of IPv6 prefixes using DHCPv6. A delegating router delegates a long-lived IPv6 prefix to a requesting router. The delegating router does not require knowledge about the topology of the links in the network to which the prefixes will be assigned.

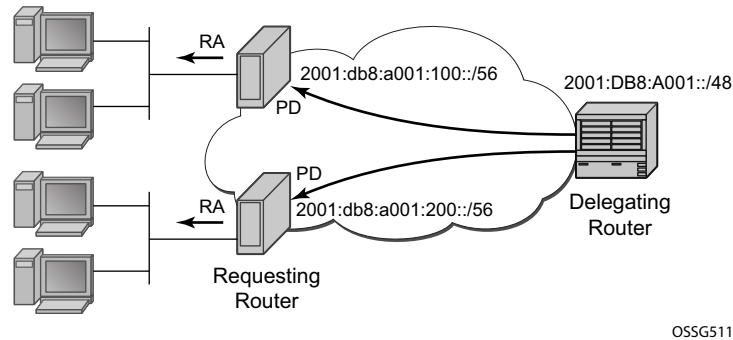


Figure 133: Prefix Delegation

In the context of ESM IPv6, the BNG is acting as delegating router (DHCPv6 server) and the Routed Gateway in the home as requesting router (DHCPv6 client). The DHCPv6 option Identity Association for Prefix Delegation (IA-PD) ([Figure 133](#)) is used to assign the IPv6 prefix.

Note that the mechanism through which a requesting router (routed gateway) assigns IPv6 addresses on its interfaces (home network) is arbitrary and can be based upon SLAAC (as shown in [Figure 133](#)) or DHCPv6.

Configuration

ESMv6 for IPoE is applicable in a Routed CO environment. The two scenarios below show a minimal configuration to enable dual stack subscribers in a VPRN service context.

Notes:

- ESM IPv6 specific parts are highlighted.
- There are no subscriber QoS policies defined (out of scope for this section)

Scenario 1

RADIUS authentication and authorization (later referenced as RADIUS).

```
A:BNG-1# configure subscriber-mgmt
A:BNG-1>config>subscr-mgmt# info
-----
      authentication-policy "radius-1" create
        description "Radius authentication policy"
        password <encrypted password>
        radius-authentication-server
          router "Base"
            server 1 address 172.16.1.1 secret <encrypted secret>
        exit
      exit
    sla-profile "sla-profile-1" create
    exit
  sub-profile "sub-profile-1" create
  exit
sub-ident-policy "sub-ident-1" create
  sub-profile-map
    use-direct-map-as-default
  exit
  sla-profile-map
    use-direct-map-as-default
  exit
exit
-----
A:BNG-1>config>subscr-mgmt# exit all

A:BNG-1# configure service vprn 1
A:BNG-1>config>service>vprn# info
-----
      vrf-import "import-1"
      route-distinguisher 64496:1
      auto-bind ldp
      vrf-target export target:64496:1
      subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
        address 10.1.255.254/16
        dhcp
```

```

        gi-address 10.1.255.254
    exit
    group-interface "group-int-1" create
        description "radius authentication and authorization"
        ipv6
            router-advertisements
                managed-configuration
                no shutdown
            exit
            dhcp6
                proxy-server
                no shutdown
            exit
        exit
    exit
    dhcp
        server 172.16.0.1
        trusted
        lease-populate 10
        no shutdown
    exit
    authentication-policy "radius-1"
    sap 1/1/2:1 create
        sub-sla-mgmt
            sub-ident-policy "sub-ident-1"
            multi-sub-sap 10
            no shutdown
        exit
    exit
    exit
    ipv6
        delegated-prefix-len 56
        subscriber-prefixes
            prefix 2001:DB8:A001::/48 pd
            prefix 2001:DB8:B001:100::/56 wan-host
        exit
    exit
    exit
    service-name "dual-stack"
    no shutdown
-----
A:BNG-1>config>service>vprn#

```

Scenario 2

Local User Database for authentication and authorization (later referenced as LUDB).

```
*A:BNG-1# configure subscriber-mgmt
*A:BNG-1>config>subscr-mgmt# info
-----
sla-profile "sla-profile-1" create
exit
sub-profile "sub-profile-1" create
radius-accounting-policy "aaa-policy"
exit
sub-ident-policy "sub-ident-1" create
sub-profile-map
use-direct-map-as-default
exit
sla-profile-map
use-direct-map-as-default
exit
strings-from-option 254
exit
local-user-db "ludb-1" create
dhcp
match-list mac
host "host-1" create
host-identification
mac 00:0a:bc:00:00:01
exit
address gi-address
identification-strings 254 create
subscriber-id "sub-1"
sla-profile-string "sla-profile-1"
sub-profile-string "sub-profile-1"
exit
options
subnet-mask 255.255.0.0
default-router 10.1.255.254
exit
ipv6-address 2001:DB8:B001:101::1
ipv6-prefix 2001:DB8:A001:100::/56
no shutdown
exit
exit
no shutdown
exit
-----
*A:BNG-1>config>subscr-mgmt# exit all

A:BNG-1# configure service vprn 1
A:BNG-1>config>service>vprn# info
-----
dhcp
local-dhcp-server "dhcp-s1" create
user-db "ludb-1"
use-gi-address
pool "pool-1" create
```



```

        subnet 10.1.0.0/16 create
            options
                subnet-mask 255.255.0.0
                default-router 10.1.255.254
            exit
            address-range 10.1.0.1 10.1.0.255
        exit
    exit
    no shutdown
exit
exit
vrf-import "import-1"
route-distinguisher 64496:1
auto-bind ldp
vrf-target export target:64496:1
interface "dhcp-s1" create
    address 192.0.2.1/32
    local-dhcp-server "dhcp-s1"
    loopback
exit
subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
    address 10.1.255.254/16
    dhcp
        gi-address 10.1.255.254
    exit
group-interface "group-int-2" create
    description "Local user database authentication and authorization"
    ipv6
        router-advertisements
            managed-configuration
            no shutdown
        exit
        dhcp6
            user-db "ludb-1"
            proxy-server
            no shutdown
        exit
    exit
exit
dhcp
    server 192.0.2.1
    trusted
    lease-populate 10
    no shutdown
exit
sap 1/1/2:2 create
    sub-sla-mgmt
        sub-ident-policy "sub-ident-1"
        multi-sub-sap 10
        no shutdown
    exit
exit
exit
ipv6
    delegated-prefix-len 56
    subscriber-prefixes
        prefix 2001:DB8:A001::/48 pd
        prefix 2001:DB8:B001:100::/56 wan-host
    exit

```

Scenario 2

```
        exit
    exit
    service-name "dual-stack"
    no shutdown
-----
A:BNG-1>config>service>vprn#
```

Configuring IPv6 Subscriber Prefixes

Applies to both scenarios RADIUS and LUDB.

IPv6 subscriber prefixes must be defined at the **subscriber-interface** *<sub-int-name>* **ipv6 subscriber-prefixes** context. Three types of prefixes can be configured:

- **wan-host** — Prefix from which the IPv6 addresses are assigned that are to be used on the Routed Gateway WAN interface (network facing).
- **pd** — Prefix from which the IPv6 Prefix Delegation prefixes are assigned that are to be used by the Routed Gateway for allocation in the home network (LAN interfaces).
- **pd wan-host** (both) — Prefix from which both IPv6 addresses (wan-host) and IPv6 Prefix Delegation prefixes (pd) can be assigned. This requires that the delegated prefix length is set to 64 bits.

A subscriber prefix length must be between /32 and /63.

Subscriber prefixes are subnetted in fixed length subnets that are assigned to subscriber hosts:

- /64 for **wan-host** subscriber prefixes
A /128 IPv6 address is assigned to the subscriber host. Broadband Forum standards requires a /64 prefix per subscriber even when used for WAN interfaces and thus the full /64 subnet gets associated with the subscriber host [ref. WT-177 - IPv6 in the context of TR-101]. Two subscriber hosts cannot get an IPv6 address from the same /64 subnet.
- /delegated-prefix-len (/48..64) for **pd** subscriber prefixes
The delegated prefix length is configured in the **subscriber-interface** *<sub-int-name>* **ipv6** context. The recommended value by Broadband Forum standards is /56 (default = /64) [ref. WT-177 - IPv6 in the context of TR-101]. The configured length applies to all **pd** subscriber prefixes on a subscriber-interface.

Table 17 provides an overview of the subscriber-prefix parameters that apply:

Table 17: Applicable Subscriber-Prefix Parameters

Subscriber prefix type	Subscriber prefix length	DHCPv6 option	Must be subnetted as
wan-host	/32..63	IA-NA	/64 (assigned as /128)
pd	/32..63 (*)	IA-PD	/delegated-prefix-len

(*) must be smaller than configured delegated prefix length

Enable DHCPv6 Proxy Server

Applies to RADIUS and LUDB scenarios.

An IPv6 IPoE subscriber host initiates a DHCPv6 session to request its configuration data (IPv6 addresses and/or IPv6 PD prefixes, DNS servers). Upon receipt of a DHCPv6 SOLICIT message, the BNG authenticates the IPv6 subscriber host and obtains its configuration information from a RADIUS server or local user database. A DHCPv6 proxy server in the BNG maintains the DHCPv6 session with the IPv6 IPoE subscriber host.

The DHCPv6 proxy server must be enabled in the **subscriber-interface** *<sub-int-name>* **group-interface** *<group-int-name>* **ipv6 dhcp6 proxy-server** context. The default is **shutdown**.

```
service
  vprn 1 customer 1 create
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
      group-interface "group-int-1" create
        ipv6
          dhcp6
            proxy-server
              renew-timer 1800          # default
              rebind-timer 2880        # default
              valid-lifetime 86400     # default
              preferred-lifetime 3600  # default
              client-applications dhcp # default
              no shutdown
            exit
          exit
        exit
      exit
    exit
  exit
```

When enabled, the DHCPv6 proxy server by default allows IPv6 IPoE hosts to authenticate (configured with client-applications dhcp. Additionally, you can enable support for IPv6 PPPoE hosts. See [ESMv6: PPPoE Dual Stack Hosts on page 787](#).

A number of timers associated with IPv6 addresses and IPv6 prefixes within DHCPv6 Identity Associations can be configured in the DHCPv6 proxy server.

RFC 4862 defines two timers associated with graceful degradation of address bindings:

- Preferred lifetime — The length of time that a valid address is preferred (the time until deprecation). When the preferred lifetime expires, the address becomes deprecated and its use should be discouraged for new sessions.
- Valid lifetime — The length of time an address remains in the valid state (the time until invalidation). The valid lifetime must be greater than or equal to the preferred lifetime. When the valid lifetime expires, the address becomes invalid.

RFC 3315 (DHCPv6) defines two timers associated with an Identity Association (IA) option that give the servers explicit control over when a client recontacts the server about a specific IA:

- T1 (renew) — The time at which the client contacts the server from which the addresses/prefix in the IA were obtained to extend the lifetimes of the addresses/prefix assigned to the IA
- T2 (rebind) — The time at which the client contacts any available server to extend the lifetimes of the addresses/prefixes assigned to the IA;

These timers are common for all DHCPv6 sessions in a group-interface and cannot be configured from RADIUS nor local user database.

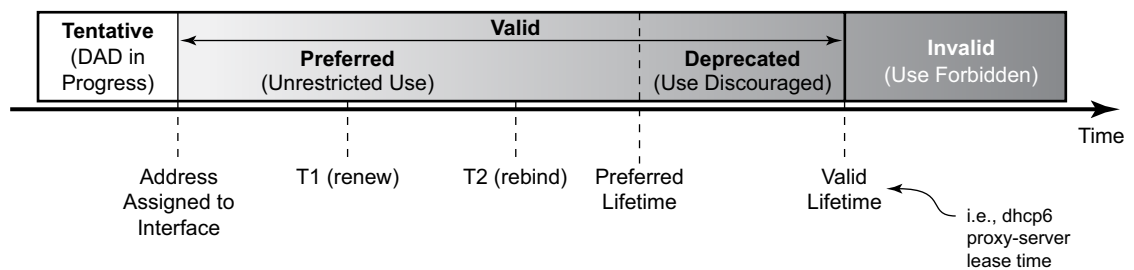


Figure 134: IPv6 Address/Prefix Timers

When violating the following rule, the default timers will be used:

$$renew - timer \leq rebind - timer \leq preferred - lifetime \leq valid - lifetime$$

Table 18: Timer Parameters

Timer	Use	Default	Range
T1	Renew timer	1800s (30 min)	0..604800s (7 days)
T2	Rebind timer	2880s (48 min)	0..1209600s (14 days)
preferred-lifetime		3600s (1hr)	300..4294967295s
valid-lifetime	DHCPv6 lease time	86400s (24 hrs)	300..4294967295s

If the DHCPv6 lease is not renewed by the client before the DHCPv6 lease timer expires, then the subscriber host is deleted from the system. In other words, beyond the valid lifetime, subscriber traffic from/to the associated IPv6 addresses is dropped.

Enable Router Advertisements

Applies to both scenarios RADIUS and LUDB.

In IPv6, default routers are automatically installed via the router discovery mechanism. Unsolicited Router Advertisements (RA) must explicitly be enabled on a group interface. The default is **shutdown**.

```
service
  vprn 1 customer 1 create
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
    group-interface "group-int-1" create
    ipv6
      router-advertisements
        managed-configuration
        no shutdown
      exit
```

Note that the managed-configuration flag is set for consistency only. It tells the hosts that addresses are available by DHCPv6. However, as described in the Security section later (see [Security on page 779](#)), the host cannot rely on this flag because DHCPv6 must be initiated by the host before the BNG sends RAs.

Additional parameters that can be configured with respect to the router advertisements (defaults are shown):

```
service
  vprn 1 customer 1 create
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
    group-interface "group-int-1" create
    ipv6
      router-advertisements
        shutdown
        current-hop-limit 64
        no managed-configuration
        max-advertisement 1800
        min-advertisement 900
        no mtu
        no other-stateful-configuration
        prefix-options
          no autonomous
          preferred-lifetime 3600
          valid-lifetime 86400
        exit
        reachable-time 0
        retransmit-time 0
        router-lifetime 4500
      exit
```

Table 19: Router Advertisements Parameters

Parameter	Description (RFC 4861, <i>Neighbor Discovery for IP version 6 (IPv6)</i>)	Value Range (default)
current-hop-limit	The default value that should be placed in the Hop Count field of the IP header for outgoing IP packets. A value of zero means unspecified (by this router); the RG picks its own value.	0..255 (64)
managed-configuration	Managed address configuration flag. When set, it indicates that addresses are available through DHCPv6	(no)
max-advertisement	Unsolicited Router Advertisements are not strictly periodic: the interval between subsequent transmissions is randomized to reduce the probability of synchronization with the advertisements from other routers on the same link. Whenever a multicast advertisement is sent from an interface, the timer is reset to a uniformly distributed random value between the interface's configured MinRtrAdvInterval and MaxRtrAdvInterval.	900..1800 s (1800)
min-advertisement		900..1350 s (900)
mtu	Routers can advertise an MTU for hosts to use on the link.	1280..9212 bytes (no)
other-stateful-configuration (not applicable for IPoE)	Other configuration flag. When set, it indicates that other configuration information is available through DHCPv6. (DNS). Can be ignored if managed address configuration flag is enabled	(no)
prefix-options: autonomous (not applicable for IPoE)	Autonomous address-configuration flag. When set indicates that this prefix can be used for stateless address autoconfiguration (SLAAC)	(no)
prefix-options: preferred-lifetime (not applicable for IPoE)	The length of time in seconds that addresses generated from the prefix via stateless address autoconfiguration (SLAAC) remain preferred	0..4294967295 (3600)
prefix-options: valid-lifetime (not applicable for IPoE)	The length of time in seconds that the prefix is valid for the purpose of on-link determination. (also used by SLAAC)	0..4294967295 (86400)

Table 19: Router Advertisements Parameters (Continued)

Parameter	Description (RFC 4861, <i>Neighbor Discovery for IP version 6 (IPv6)</i>)	Value Range (default)
reachable-time	The time that a node assumes a neighbor is reachable after having received a reachability confirmation. Used by the Neighbor Unreachability Detection algorithm. A value of zero means unspecified (by this router); the RG picks its own value.	0..3600000 ms (0)
retransmit-time	The time between retransmitted Neighbor Solicitation messages. Used by address resolution and the Neighbor Unreachability Detection algorithm. A value of zero means unspecified (by this router); the RG picks its own value.	0..1800000 ms (0)
router-lifetime	The lifetime associated with the default router in units of seconds.	2700..9000 s (4500)

RADIUS Authentication and Authorization

Applies to scenario 1 RADIUS only.

The RADIUS authentication and authorization configuration for IPoE IPv6 subscriber host is no different from an IPv4 subscriber host:

```
subscriber-mgmt
  authentication-policy "radius-1" create
    description "Radius authentication policy"
    password <hashed password> hash2
    radius-authentication-server
      router "Base"
        server 1 address 172.16.1.1 secret <hashed secret> hash2
    exit
  exit

vprn 1 customer 1 create
  subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
  group-interface "group-int-1" create
    authentication-policy "radius-1"
```

Additional RADIUS AVPs that are applicable for IPoE IPv6 subscriber hosts are listed in [Table 20](#).

Table 20: RADIUS AVPs

RADIUS AVP	Type	Purpose
Alc-IPv6-Address [26-6527-99]	ipv6addr	maps to IA_NA of DHCPv6 (RG WAN interface address)
Alc-Ipv6-Primary-Dns [26-6527-105]	ipv6addr	maps to DNS Recursive Name Server option (RFC 3646, <i>DNS Configuration options for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol for IPv6 (DHCPv6)</i>) in DHCPv6
Alc-Ipv6-Secondary-Dns [26-6527-106]	ipv6addr	maps to DNS Recursive Name Server option (RFC 3646) in DHCPv6
Delegated-IPv6-Prefix [123]	ipv6prefix	maps to IA_PD for prefix delegation (RFC 3633, <i>IPv6 Prefix Options for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) version 6</i>) in DHCPv6

A sample FreeRADIUS users record to authenticate a dual stack IPoE subscriber:

```
00:0a:bc:00:00:01  Auth-Type := Local, Cleartext-Password := "password"
                    Alc-Subsc-ID-Str = "sub-1",
                    Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str = "sub-profile-1",
                    Alc-SLA-Prof-Str = "sla-profile-1",
                    Alc-IPv6-Address = 2001:db8:b001:101::1,
                    Delegated-IPv6-Prefix = 2001:db8:a001:100::/56,
                    Alc-Ipv6-Primary-DNS = 2001:db8:dddd:1::1,
                    Alc-Ipv6-Secondary-DNS = 2001:db8:dddd:2::1
```

Note the FreeRADIUS Server 2.0.0 and greater has full support for both IPv6 attributes and IPv6 network packets.

The IPv6 address/prefix related timers can be configured in the **dhcp6 proxy-server** context (see [Enable DHCPv6 Proxy Server on page 760](#)).

Local User Database Authentication and Authorization

Applies to scenario 2 LUDB only.

The configuration example below focuses on the IPv6 host configuration. The details for local user database host matching and IPv4 host specific parameters are out of scope for this section.

```
subscriber-mgmt
  local-user-db "ludb-1" create
    dhcp
      match-list mac
      host "host-1" create
        host-identification
          mac 00:0a:bc:00:00:01
        exit
        address gi-address # IPv4 host
        identification-strings 254 create
          subscriber-id "sub-1"
          sla-profile-string "sla-profile-1"
          sub-profile-string "sub-profile-1"
        exit
        options
          subnet-mask 255.255.0.0 # IPv4 host
          default-router 10.1.255.254 # IPv4 host
        exit
        ipv6-address 2001:DB8:B001:101::1 # IPv6 host
        ipv6-prefix 2001:DB8:A001:100::/56 # IPv6 host
        no shutdown
      exit
    exit
  no shutdown
exit
exit

vprn 1 customer 1 create
  subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
  group-interface "group-int-2" create
    ipv6
      dhcp6
        user-db "ludb-1"
```

Next to the identification strings that are common between IPv4 and IPv6 hosts, there are two specific IPv6 host related parameters to be configured:

Table 21: Local User Database Parameters

local-user-db CLI parameter	Purpose
ipv6-address	Maps to IA_NA of DHCPv6 (RG WAN interface address)
ipv6-prefix	Maps to IA_PD for prefix delegation (RFC 3633) in DHCPv6

The IPv6 address/prefix related timers can be configured in the **dhcp6 proxy-server** context (see [Enable DHCPv6 Proxy Server on page 760](#)).

Note that DNSv6 server information cannot be configured in the local user database scenario. The DNSv6 server information should either be manually configured on the host or a DNSv4 server should be used instead.

DHCP and DHCP6 Lease State

Applies to both scenarios RADIUS and LUDB.

The DHCP lease state is an internal database structure that keeps track of the DHCP host states. The DHCP lease state enables subscriber management functions (for example, per subscriber QoS and accounting) and security functions (for example, dynamic anti-spoof filtering) on the DHCP host.

The DHCP lease information for a specific host is extracted from the DHCPv4 ack message in case of DHCPv4 and from the DHCPv6 reply message in case of DHCPv6

Typical information stored in the DHCP lease state includes (partial table; additional data can be stored for managed SAPs, wholesale-retail).

Table 22: DHCP Lease State Information

Parameter	Comment
Service ID	Service where the DHCP host is connected.
IP Address	IPv4 or IPv6 address of the DHCP host.
Client HW Address	Ethernet MAC address of the DHCP host.
Subscriber-interface (Routed CO only)	Subscriber interface name where the DHCP host is instantiated.
Group-interface (Routed CO only)	Group interface name where the DHCP host is instantiated.
SAP	SAP where the DHCP hosts is connected.
Remaining Lifetime	The remaining time before the DHCP host is deleted from the system (updated each time a DHCP renew/rebind occurs).
Persistence Key	Lookup key for this host in the persistency file.
Sub-Ident	ESM: Subscriber ID of the DHCP host.
Sub-Profile-String	ESM: Subscriber profile string of the DHCP host.
SLA-Profile-String	ESM: SLA profile string of the DHCP host.
App-Profile-String	ESM: Application profile string of the DHCP host.
Lease ANCP-String	ESM: ANCP string for this DHCP host.
Lease Int Dest Id	ESM: Internal destination ID for this DHCP host.

Table 22: DHCP Lease State Information (Continued)

Parameter	Comment
Category-Map-Name	ESM: Volume and Time based accounting.
Dhcp6 ClientId (DUID)	DHCPv6 client unique identifier.
Dhcp6 IAID	Identity Association ID chosen by the client.
Dhcp6 IAID Type	Identity Association type: prefix (PD) or non-temporary (wan-host).
Dhcp6 Client Ip	Link local IPv6 address of the host.
Sub-Ident origin	ESM: Origin for the Subscriber ID for this host (None, DHCP, RADIUS).
Strings origin	ESM: Origin for the ESM strings for this host (None, DHCP, RADIUS).
Lease Info origin	ESM: Origin for the IP configuration for this host (None, DHCP, RADIUS).
Ip-Netmask	The IP netmask for this DHCP host.
Broadcast-Ip-Addr	The broadcast IP address for this host.
Default-Router	The default gateway for this host.
Primary-Dns	The primary DNS server for this host.
Secondary-Dns	The secondary DNS server for this host.
Primary-Nbns	The primary NetBIOS name server for this host.
Secondary-Nbns	The secondary NetBIOS name server for this host.
ServerLeaseStart	Time and date that the lease for this host started (first DHCP ack received).
ServerLastRenew	Time and date that the lease for this host was last renewed.
ServerLeaseEnd	Time and date that the lease for this host will expire.
Session-Timeout	Lease time specified by the DHCP server.
DHCP Server Addr	IP address of the DHCP server that allocated the lease for this host.

Table 22: DHCP Lease State Information (Continued)

Parameter	Comment
Circuit Id	DHCP Relay Agent information option 82 Circuit ID content.
Remote Id	DHCP Relay Agent information option 82 Remote ID content.
RADIUS User-Name	ESM: Username used in the RADIUS authentication access request.

DHCPv4 lease state population is enabled by default on a group-interface with DHCP configured as **no shutdown**. The number of DHCPv4 leases allowed on each SAP of the group-interface must be configured with the **lease-populate** option (by default a single DHCPv4 host is allowed on each SAP of the group-interface).

DCHPv6 lease state population is enabled by default on a group-interface with DHCP6 proxy-server configured as **no shutdown**. The number of DHCPv6 leases (hosts) cannot be limited per group-interface.

```

configure
  service
    vprn 1 customer 1 create
      subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
      group-interface "group-int-1" create
        ipv6
          dhcp6
            proxy-server
              no shutdown
            exit
          exit
        exit
      dhcp
        server 172.16.0.1
        trusted
        lease-populate 10
        no shutdown
      exit

```

To check the DHCPv4 or DHCPv6 lease state for a particular service, use the following commands (detailed output as well as additional output filtering is available):

```

*A:BNG-1# show service id 1 dhcp lease-state ?
- lease-state [wholesaler <service-id>] [sap <sap-id>|sdp <sdp-id:vc-id>|
  interface <interface-name>|ip-address <ip-address[/mask]>|chaddr
  <ieee-address>|mac <ieee-address>|{[port <port-id>] [no-inter-dest-id |
  inter-dest-id <inter-dest-id>]]] [detail]

```

DHCP and DHCP6 Lease State

```
*A:BNG-1# show service id 1 dhcp6 lease-state detail
```

```
=====
DHCP lease states for service 1
=====
```

```
Service ID           : 1
IP Address           : 2001:DB8:A001:100::/56
Client HW Address    : 00:0a:bc:00:00:01
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : group-int-1
SAP                  : 1/1/2:1
Remaining Lifetime   : 23h59m49s
Persistence Key       : 0x0000004d

Sub-Ident            : "sub-1"
Sub-Profile-String   : "sub-profile-1"
SLA-Profile-String   : "sla-profile-1"
App-Profile-String   : ""
Lease ANCP-String    : ""
Lease Int Dest Id    : ""
Category-Map-Name    : ""
Dhcp6 ClientId (DUID): 00010001133ebdd2000c29c851ca
Dhcp6 IAID           : 1
Dhcp6 IAID Type      : prefix
Dhcp6 Client Ip      : FE80::20A:BCFF:FE00:1
Primary-Dns           : 2001:DB8:DDDD:1::1
Secondary-Dns         : 2001:DB8:DDDD:2::1

Sub-Ident origin     : Radius
Strings origin       : Radius
Lease Info origin    : Radius
```

```
ServerLeaseStart     : 09/02/2010 16:13:11
ServerLastRenew      : 09/02/2010 16:13:11
ServerLeaseEnd       : 09/03/2010 16:13:11
Radius User-Name     : "00:0a:bc:00:00:01"
-----
```

```
Service ID           : 1
IP Address           : 2001:DB8:B001:101::1/128
Client HW Address    : 00:0a:bc:00:00:01
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : group-int-1
SAP                  : 1/1/2:1
Remaining Lifetime   : 23h59m49s
Persistence Key       : 0x0000004c

Sub-Ident            : "sub-1"
Sub-Profile-String   : "sub-profile-1"
SLA-Profile-String   : "sla-profile-1"
App-Profile-String   : ""
Lease ANCP-String    : ""
Lease Int Dest Id    : ""
Category-Map-Name    : ""
Dhcp6 ClientId (DUID): 00010001133ebdd2000c29c851ca
Dhcp6 IAID           : 1
Dhcp6 IAID Type      : non-temporary
Dhcp6 Client Ip      : FE80::20A:BCFF:FE00:1
Primary-Dns           : 2001:DB8:DDDD:1::1
Secondary-Dns         : 2001:DB8:DDDD:2::1
```


Sub-Ident origin : Radius
Strings origin : Radius
Lease Info origin : Radius

ServerLeaseStart : 09/02/2010 16:13:11
ServerLastRenew : 09/02/2010 16:13:11
ServerLeaseEnd : 09/03/2010 16:13:11
Radius User-Name : "00:0a:bc:00:00:01"

Number of lease states : 2

=====
*A:BNG-1#

Operation

An IPoE dual stack subscriber in a numbered Routed Gateway scenario consumes three subscriber host entries:

- IPv4 host — DHCPv4 session based
- IPv6 wan-host — DHCPv6 session based
- IPv6 Prefix Delegation host — DHCPv6 session based

```
*A:BNG-1# show service active-subscribers
=====
Active Subscribers
=====
Subscriber sub-1 (sub-profile-1)
-----
(1) SLA Profile Instance sap:1/1/2:1 - sla:sla-profile-1
-----
IP Address          MAC Address          PPPoE-SID Origin
-----
10.1.0.3            00:0a:bc:00:00:01 N/A          DHCP
2001:DB8:A001:100::/56 00:0a:bc:00:00:01 N/A          IPoE-DHCP6
2001:DB8:B001:101::1/128 00:0a:bc:00:00:01 N/A          IPoE-DHCP6
-----
Number of active subscribers : 1
=====
*A:BNG-1#
```

The optional **hierarchy** parameter for the active-subscribers display provides a top-down level overview for this subscriber:

```
*A:BNG-1# show service active-subscribers hierarchy
=====
Active Subscriber hierarchy
=====
-- sub-1 (sub-profile-1)
|
|-- sap:1/1/2:1 - sla:sla-profile-1
|   |
|   |-- 10.1.0.3
|   |   00:0a:bc:00:00:01 - N/A (DHCP)
|   |
|   |-- 2001:DB8:A001:100::/56
|   |   00:0a:bc:00:00:01 - N/A (IPoE-DHCP6)
|   |
|   |-- 2001:DB8:B001:101::1/128
|   |   00:0a:bc:00:00:01 - N/A (IPoE-DHCP6)
```

```
| |
```

```
=====
A:BNG-1#
```

The total number (sum) of IPv4 and IPv6 hosts per subscriber can be limited in the corresponding sla-profile with the **host-limit** parameter:

```
subscriber-mgmt
  sla-profile "sla-profile-1" create
    host-limit 3
  exit
```

To display the IPv4/IPv6 routing table for dual stack hosts:

```
A:BNG-1# show router 1 route-table ipv4 protocol sub-mgmt
```

```
=====
Route Table (Service: 1)
```

```
=====
Dest Prefix                                Type    Proto    Age          Pref
  Next Hop[Interface Name]                                Metric
-----
10.1.0.3/32                                Remote  Sub Mgmt  00h01m44s    0
  [group-int-1]                                0
-----
```

```
No. of Routes: 1
```

```
=====
A:BNG-1#
```

```
A:BNG-1# show router 1 route-table ipv6 protocol sub-mgmt
```

```
=====
IPv6 Route Table (Service: 1)
```

```
=====
Dest Prefix                                Type    Proto    Age          Pref
  Next Hop[Interface Name]                                Metric
-----
2001:DB8:A001:100::/56                      Remote  Sub Mgmt  00h01m50s    0
  [group-int-1]                                0
2001:DB8:B001:101::1/128                    Remote  Sub Mgmt  00h01m50s    0
  [group-int-1]                                0
-----
```

```
No. of Routes: 2
```

```
=====
A:BNG-1#
```

Troubleshooting

Apart from the show commands in this section, use the following commands to troubleshoot a dual stack host session:

- Default system log:

```
A:BNG-1# show log log-id 99
```

Use appropriate filtering to reduce the output if needed.

- Debug:

```
debug
router "1"
  ip
    dhcp                                     # DHCPv4
    detail-level medium
    mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
  exit
  dhcp6                                     # DHCPv6
    mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
    detail-level high # needed to see the option content
  exit
exit
local-dhcp-server dhcp-s1                  # local dhcp server
  detail-level medium
  mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
exit
subscriber-mgmt
  local-user-db ladb-1                     # local user database
  detail all
exit
exit
radius detail                             # RADIUS
exit
```

Note that additional filtering (such as only DHCPv6 debug for particular interface) may be needed to prevent flooding of debug messages.

- Protocol statistics:

DHCPv4 stats:

```
A:BNG-1# show router 1 dhcp statistics
=====
DHCP Global Statistics (Service: 1)
=====
Rx Packets                : 3192
Tx Packets                : 3177
Rx Malformed Packets      : 0
Rx Untrusted Packets      : 0
Client Packets Discarded   : 0
Client Packets Relayed     : 737
Client Packets Snooped     : 860
Client Packets Proxied (RADIUS) : 0
Client Packets Proxied (Lease-Split) : 0
Server Packets Discarded   : 15
Server Packets Relayed     : 733
Server Packets Snooped     : 847
DHCP RELEASEs Spoofed     : 0
DHCP FORCERENEWS Spoofed  : 0
=====
A:BNG-1#
```

DHCPv6 stats:

```
*A:BNG-1# show router 1 dhcp6 statistics
=====
DHCP6 statistics (Router: 1)
=====
```

Msg-type	Rx	Tx	Dropped
1 SOLICIT	3	0	0
2 ADVERTISE	0	3	0
3 REQUEST	3	0	0
4 CONFIRM	0	0	0
5 RENEW	313	0	6
6 REBIND	0	0	0
7 REPLY	0	312	0
8 RELEASE	2	0	0
9 DECLINE	0	0	0
10 RECONFIGURE	0	0	0
11 INFO_REQUEST	0	0	0
12 RELAY_FORW	0	0	0
13 RELAY_REPLY	0	0	0

```
-----
Dhcp6 Drop Reason Counters :
-----
1 Dhcp6 oper state is not Up on src itf      0
2 Dhcp6 oper state is not Up on dst itf      0
3 Relay Reply Msg on Client Itf              0
4 Hop Count Limit reached                    0
5 Missing Relay Msg option, or illegal msg type 0
```

Troubleshooting

```
6 Unable to determine destination client Itf          0
7 Out of Memory                                     0
8 No global Pfx on Client Itf                       0
9 Unable to determine src Ip Addr                    0
10 No route to server                               0
11 Subscr. Mgmt. Update failed                       6
12 Received Relay Forw Message                     0
13 Packet too small to contain valid dhcp6 msg      0
14 Server cannot respond to this message            0
15 No Server Id option in msg from server            0
16 Missing or illegal Client Id option in client msg 0
17 Server Id option in client msg                    0
18 Server DUID in client msg does not match our own 0
19 Client sent message to unicast while not allowed 0
20 Client sent message with illegal src Ip address  0
21 Client message type not supported in pfx delegation 0
22 Nbr of addrs or pfxs exceeds allowed max (128) in msg 0
23 Unable to resolve client's mac address            0
24 The Client was assigned an illegal address        0
25 Illegal msg encoding                             0
26 Client message not supported                     0
27 IA options in info request                       0
28 No IA option in client msg                       0
29 No addresses in confirm msg                       0
=====
A:BNG-1#
```

RADIUS stats:

```
*A:BNG-1# show subscriber-mgmt authentication "radius-1" statistics
=====
Authentication Policy Statistics
=====
-----
Policy name                               : radius-1
subscriber packets authenticated           : 16
subscriber packets rejected                : 0
-----
radius server  requests requests requests requests requests requests
idx IP-address accepted rejected no reply md5 failed pending send failed
-----
1 172.16.1.1    16         0         0         0         0         0
=====
A:BNG-1#
```

Advanced Topics

Security

Downstream Router Advertisements

When a SAP is bound to a subscriber/group-interface which has IPv6 enabled, there will be no initial downstream Router Advertisement (RA) message sent. If a SAP is shared by multiple subscribers, it would be possible for an unauthenticated host to receive the RA.

Instead the RAs are sent in unicast to allow per-host IPv6 link configuration. This requires the host information (MAC address and link-local IPv6 address) to be known. Hence for IPoE, until a DHCPv6 session is bound, no unsolicited or solicited RAs are sent.

Processing of Neighbor Discovery Messages

Processing of Neighbor Discovery messages: Neighbor Advertisements (NA), Neighbor Solicitations (NS) and Router Solicitations (RS).

Neighbor discovery messages are not processed prior to IPoE IPv6 host authentication to avoid DoS attacks consuming CPU resources. This implies that an IPoE host should initiate the DHCPv6 session without link information and knowledge of routers on the link as required by the Broadband Forum standards (ref. TR-124 issue 2 — Functional Requirements for Broadband Residential Gateway Devices). This is not a problem as the DHCPv6 solicit/request messages are sent to a well-known multicast address with direct link-layer mapping.

After DHCP host authentication, Neighbor Discovery messages will not result in a neighbor cache entry. Instead a managed neighbor cache entry is created based on the DHCPv6 lease state. This managed neighbor cache entry cannot be displayed. The above mechanism prevents DoS attacks from poisoning the neighbor cache with bogus entries.

Router advertisements in response to a router solicitation are internally throttled so that they are not sent more often than once every three seconds.

Anti-spoof Filters

For each authenticated IPE IPv6 host, an anti-spoof filter entry is created that allows upstream traffic with exact match on the tuple {masked source IP, source MAC}. Traffic from unauthenticated hosts is silently dropped.

1:1 VLAN Model

This model implicitly enforces security in the Access/Aggregation network as there is a clean separation of the subscriber traffic in a dedicated C-VLAN from the home network up to the BNG.

Managed SAPs

To allow the creation of managed SAPs in a dual stack environment, both DHCPv4 discover and DHCPv6 solicit messages received on a capture SAP should trigger RADIUS authentication:

```
service
  vpls 2 customer 1 create
  sap 1/1/2:* capture-sap create
    trigger-packet dhcp dhcp6
    authentication-policy "radius-1"
  exit
  no shutdown
exit
```

A full description of the managed SAP functionality is out of the scope of this section.

RADIUS Change of Authorization (CoA)

The only CoA action that is allowed for IPoE IPv6 hosts is a change of ESM strings (SLA-profile, subscriber-profile, application-profile, etc). Creation of a new IPv6 host or forcing a DHCPv6 renew is not supported.

Only a single address attribute (Framed-IP-Address, Delegated-IPv6-Prefix or Alc-IPv6-Address) may be given in a single request. When host-accounting is enabled, only the host specific accounting session IDs (Acct-Session-Id) can be used. This means that to change for example the sla-profile for all three hosts of a dual stack subscriber, three CoA messages should be sent.

A full description of the RADIUS CoA functionality is out of the scope of this section.

Accounting

There are no separate accounting statistics available for IPv4 and IPv6 traffic unless they are mapped in a different Forwarding Class/queue.

In RADIUS accounting, host-accounting could be enabled to see the IPv4 and IPv6 host instantiations separately: an accounting start/stop is generated for each individual subscriber host. The actual accounting data is included in the interim updates and accounting stop message for the sla-profile instance.

A full description of the accounting functionality is out of the scope of this section.

Lease State Persistency

A DHCPv4/DHCPv6 (hereafter referred to as DHCP) session does not have a keep-alive mechanism to detect unavailability. A new DHCP session set-up is only attempted after expiration of the DHCP lease time. A node reboot causing the loss of DHCP lease state and the corresponding anti-spoof filters could therefore result in unacceptable long service outages.

The DHCP lease state can be made persistent across node reboots: DHCP lease state is restored from a persistency file stored on the compact flash file system. As a result, DHCP sessions will only lose connectivity during the time of reboot without being completely disconnected.

To activate the DHCP lease state persistency:

```
configure
  system
    persistence
      subscriber-mgmt
        description "DHCP lease state persistency"
        location cf2:
      exit
    exit
```

A dedicated persistency file will be created on the specified compact flash file system. The file is initialized to store the maximum number of allowed hosts; its size is fixed to avoid file system space problems during operations.

```
*A:BNG-1# file dir cf2:

Volume in drive cf2 on slot A has no label.

Volume in drive cf2 on slot A is formatted as FAT32.

Directory of cf2:\

09/02/2010  01:27p                536871424  submgmt.006
               1 File(s)                536871424 bytes.
               0 Dir(s)                  1558183424 bytes free.
```

Each time the DHCP session is renewed, the persistency file is updated together with the lease state. If the file update fails, an event is generated to indicate that persistency can not be guaranteed.

The content of the persistency file may vary between different SR-OS software releases. When upgrading, the persistency file is automatically upgraded to the new format. To downgrade the persistency file to a lower SR-OS release version, use the following command:

```
*A:BNG-1# tools perform subscriber-mgmt downgrade ?
- downgrade target-version <target> [reboot]

<target>                : The version you want to downgrade to
                        8.0 (current) - submgmt.006
                        7.0           - submgmt.005
                        6.0           - submgmt.004
                        5.0           - submgmt.003
                        4.0           - submgmt.pst
<reboot>                : reboot system after successful conversion
```

The content of the persistency file can be looked at using the following commands:

```
*A:BNG-1# show service id 1 dhcp6 lease-state detail
=====
DHCP lease states for service 1
=====
Service ID      : 1
IP Address      : 2001:DB8:A001:100::/56
Client HW Address : 00:0a:bc:00:00:01
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface  : group-int-1
SAP              : 1/1/2:1
Remaining Lifetime : 23h49m47s
Persistence Key   : 0x0000004d

- - - snip - - -

*A:BNG-1# tools dump persistence submgmt record 0x0000004d
-----
Persistency File Record
-----
Filename      : cf2:\submgmt.006
Key           : 0000004d
Last Update   : 2010/09/02 16:13:12 (UTC)
Action        : ADD
Data :
  Host Type    : IPv6 node address
  Service ID   : 1
  SAP ID       : 1/1/2:1
  IP           : 2001:DB8:A001:100::/56
  NH MAC       : 00:0a:bc:00:00:01
  Created      : 2010/09/02 16:13:11 (UTC)
  Session Timeout: 0 (seconds)
  Sub-ID       : sub-1
  Sub-prof-ID  : sub-profile-1
  SLA-prof-ID  : sla-profile-1
  App-prof-ID  : NULL
  ANCP-Str     : NULL
  Int-dest-ID  : NULL
  Cat-map-str  : NULL
  Sub-Id is def : NO
  Int-dest is def: YES
  Address Origin : 1
  SubId Origin   : 1
  Strings Origin : 1
```

Advanced Topics

```
RADIUS Fallback: NO
Managed routes : None
BgpPrngPlcyAttr: None
Class Attr      : 1 bytes
Radius Username: 00:0a:bc:00:00:01
Pri. IPv6 DNS   : 2001:DB8:DDDD:1::1
Sec. IPv6 DNS   : 2001:DB8:DDDD:2::1
```

Conclusion

This section provides configuration, operation and troubleshooting commands for dual stack IPoE subscribers on Routed Gateways. Focus is on the ESMv6 part where DHCPv6 is used for IPv6 address assignment on the RG network interface (wan host) and for allocation of an IPv6 prefix delegation prefix for use in the home network (pd host). In the BNG, authentication, authorization and IPv6 prefix configuration for an IPoE IPv6 host is done by a local user database or RADIUS.

ESMv6: PPPoE Dual Stack Hosts

In This Chapter

This section describes ESMv6 PPPoE dual stack host configurations.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 788](#)
- [Overview on page 789](#)
- [Configuration on page 793](#)
- [Conclusion on page 822](#)

Applicability

This section is applicable to all of the 7750 SR series (SR-7, SR-12, SR-c4 and SR-c12) as well as 7450 ESS (ESS-7 and ESS-12) series in mixed mode. It was tested on release 8.0R4.

Pre-requisites:

- IOM3-XP or IMM required for subscriber and network interfaces
- Chassis-mode C
- Routed CO (IES/VP RN service) with Enhanced Subscriber Management (ESM)
- Bridged or routed home gateway

Note: The focus of this section is on PPPoE IPv6. IPv4 configuration is shown for completeness.

Overview

PPPoE Dual Stack

A PPPoE dual stack subscriber may support both IPv4 and IPv6 simultaneously. The dual stack hosts share a common subscriber identification policy and have a common sla-profile and subscriber-profile and are linked together through one PPPoE session.

For PPPoE dual stack hosts, one subscriber host entry is created for the IPv4 and one for the IPv6 address family.

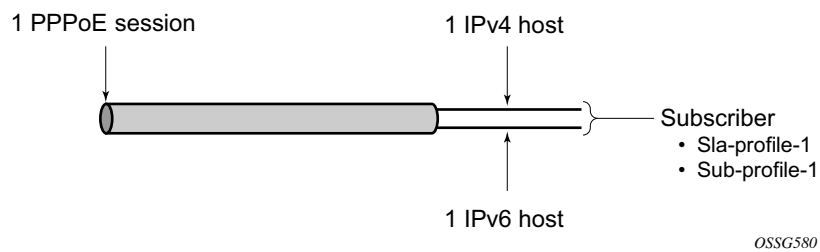


Figure 135: PPPoE Dual Stack Hosts

ESM for IPv6 is supported with RADIUS as backend authentication, address assignment and authorization.

PPPoE dual stack subscriber-hosts are supported through bridged or routed home gateways. It is mandatory to retrieve IPv6 address information in both models from RADIUS, whereas the IPv4 address information can be retrieved by DHCPv4 or RADIUS.

Dual Stack PPPoE Bridged Gateway Service

In the dual stack PPPoE host service, the PPPoE session is initiated directly from a dual stack host device or PC within the home network. PPPoE is used to carry IPv6 and (optionally) IPv4 traffic from the device to the Broadband Remote Access Server (BRAS), also called Broadband Network Gateway (BNG).

Unlike the Routed Gateway application examples (see later), no IPv6 prefix delegation occurs in the bridged gateway service, instead, a global unicast address prefix (/64) is advertised using Router Advertisements (RAs) directly to the PPPoE interface on the host.

The device addresses are self-assigned through Stateless Auto Configuration (SLAAC), where SLAAC makes use of ICMPv6 router-advertisements to announce these IPv6 prefixes. The SLAAC prefixes have a mandatory length of /64.

Because of limited device support for DHCPv6, only SLAAC is used for address assignment in this model.

This application is targeted at operators who currently use a bridging modem in the customer premise and who want to incrementally add IPv6 capability without a change of the modem on the customer site.

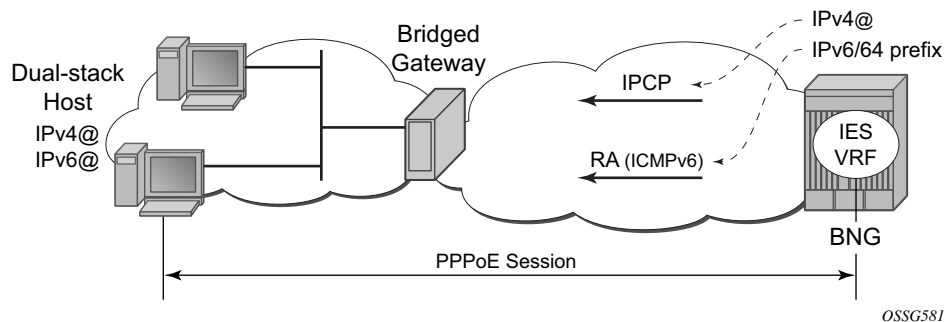


Figure 136: Dual Stack PPPoE Bridged Gateway Service Example

Dual Stack PPPoE Routed Gateway Service

The dual stack PPPoE Routed Gateway (RG) service runs over a dual stack PPPoE session between a dual stack router and BNG. It allows operators of existing PPPoE networks (with either PPPoE to the RG or PPPoA with translation to PPPoE in the DSLAM) to deploy IPv6 services in conjunction with an existing IPv4 service.

As a RG is provided, a unique subscriber IPv6 prefix is delegated to the dual stack router for use within the home network. DHCPv6 is used to provide prefix delegation (PD). No RG WAN IPv6 address assignment is supported in this model. The dual stack router does not perform any NAT for IPv6 traffic.

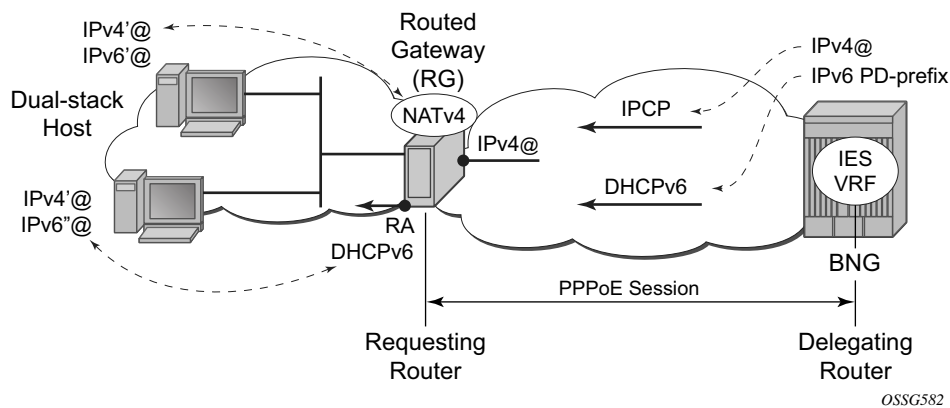


Figure 137: Dual Stack PPPoE Routed Gateway Service Example

SLAAC

The IPv6 stateless auto configuration (SLAAC) mechanism requires no manual configuration of hosts, minimal configuration of routers, and no additional servers (such as DHCP). The stateless mechanism allows a host to generate its own addresses using a combination of locally available information and information advertised by routers. Routers advertise /64 prefixes, by an ICMPv6 router advertisement, that identify the subnet(s) associated with a link, while hosts generate a 64-bit “interface identifier” that uniquely identifies an interface on a subnet. An address is formed by combining the two.

DHCPv6

The Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol for IPv6 (DHCPv6) is defined in RFC 3315. The protocol enables DHCPv6 servers to pass configuration parameters such as IPv6 network addresses or DNSv6 addresses to IPv6 nodes.

For further information on DHCPv6, refer to [ESMv6: IPoE Dual Stack Hosts on page 743](#),

Prefix Delegation

Prefix Delegation (PD) is a mechanism for automated delegation of IPv6 prefixes using DHCPv6. A delegating router delegates a long-lived IPv6 prefix to a requesting router. The delegating router does not require knowledge about the topology of the links in the network to which the prefixes will be assigned

For further information on Prefix Delegation, refer to [ESMv6: IPoE Dual Stack Hosts on page 743](#).

Configuration

ESMv6 for PPPoE is applicable in a Routed CO environment. Details of non-specific dual stack configurations like authentication-policies, sla-profile, subscriber-profile, accounting-policies and QoS policies are out of scope for this section.

The minimal RADIUS authentication configuration and ESM string configuration is just added for completeness.

```
A:BNG-1#
  configure subscriber-mgmt
    authentication-policy "radius-1"
      description "Radius authentication policy"
      password ALU
      radius-authentication-server
        router "Base"
        server 1 address 172.16.1.1 secret ALU
    exit
  PPPoE-access-method pap-chap
exit
```

```
A:BNG-1#
  configure subscriber-mgmt
    sla-profile "sla-profile-1"
    exit
    sub-profile "sub-profile-1"
    exit
    sub-ident-policy "sub-ident-1"
      sub-profile-map
        use-direct-map-as-default
      exit
    sla-profile-map
      use-direct-map-as-default
    exit
  exit
```

Service

Dual Stack PPPoE for Bridged Gateway

Figure 138 shows the message flow for a dual stack PPPoE host behind a bridged gateway corresponding with the configured service.

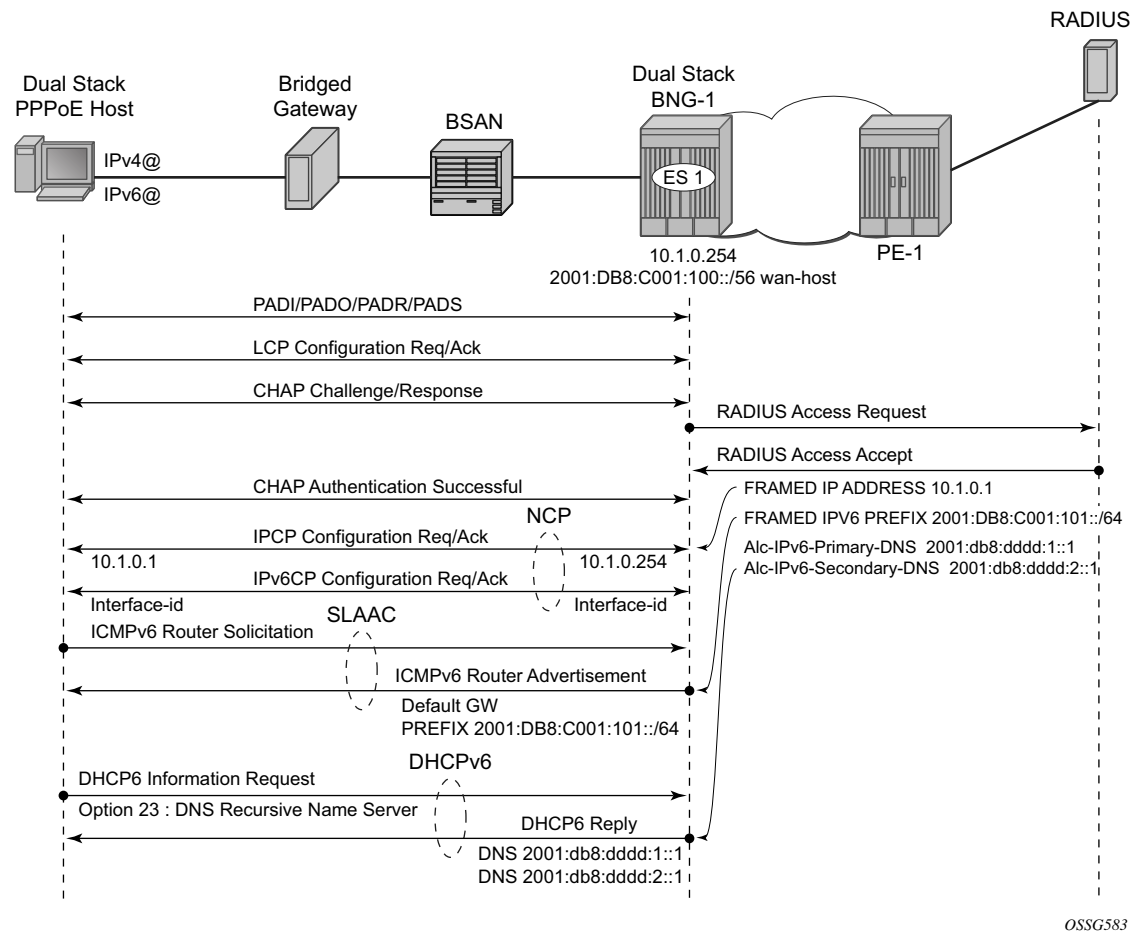


Figure 138: Message Flow for a Dual Stack PPPoE Host

For dual stack PPPoE, the BNG initiates the IPv6CP protocol to the client during the session setup phase if the appropriate attributes have been returned by the RADIUS server on authentication. The RADIUS attribute that indicates the setup of a dual stack PPPoE host in bridged mode is framed-ipv6-prefix which should contain a /64 prefix for the client. When a PPPoE host has

successfully completed the IPv6CP negotiation, the BNG will transmit an RA to the PPPoE host containing the prefix and any other option that is configured. The host can request optional IPv6 DNS server information from the BNG by sending a DHCPv6 information-request.

The following example shows a minimal configuration to enable dual stack subscribers in an IES service context with the ESM IPv6-specific parts in bold and is discussed in [Dual Stack PPPoE Routed Gateway Service on page 791](#).

```
A:BNG-1#
  configure service ies 1
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1"
      address 10.1.0.254/16
      group-interface "group-int-1"
        ipv6
          router-advertisements
            prefix-options
              autonomous
            exit
          no shutdown
        exit
        dhcp6
          proxy-server
            client-applications pppoe
            no shutdown
          exit
        exit
      exit
    authentication-policy "radius-1"
    sap 1/1/4:301
      sub-sla-mgmt
        sub-ident-policy "sub-ident-1"
        multi-sub-sap 10
        no shutdown
      exit
    exit
  PPPoE
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
ipv6
  subscriber-prefixes
    prefix 2001:DB8:C001:100::/40 wan-host   ### length [/32../63]
  exit
exit
no shutdown
exit
```

IPv6 subscriber prefixes must be defined at the **subscriber-interface** <sub-int-name> **ipv6 subscriber-prefixes** context.

Three types of prefixes can be configured where **wan-host** is required for this bridged gateway scenario and **pd** is used for dual stack PPPoE routed gateways.

- wan-host — Prefix from which the IPv6 addresses are assigned (by DHCPv6 IA_NA) for the IPoEv6 routed gateway WAN interface (network facing) or a prefix from which /64 prefixes are assigned for the PPPoE (by RA SLAAC) hosts in the bridged gateway model.
- pd — Prefix from which the IPv6 prefix delegation prefixes are assigned that are to be used by the IPoEv6 or PPPoEv6 routed gateway for allocation in the home network (LAN interfaces).
- pd wan-host (both) — Prefix from which both IPv6 addresses (wan-host) and IPv6 prefix delegation prefixes (pd) can be assigned. This requires that the delegated prefix length is set to 64 bits.

Table 23 and Table 24 provide an overview of the subscriber-prefix parameters that apply and an example of subscriber prefix subnetting for SLAAC.

Table 23: Subscriber Prefix Parameters

Subscriber Prefix Type	Prefix Length	DHCPv6 Option	SLAAC	RADIUS AVP	Must be sub netted as
wan-host	/32..63	N/A	yes	[97]Framed-IPv6-Prefix	/64

Table 24: Subscriber Prefix Subnetting for SLAAC

Subscriber prefix	Framed-IPv6-Prefix	Hosts
2001:db8:c001:100::/56	2001:db8:c001:101::/64	pppoev6-host-1
	2001:db8:c001:102::/64	pppoev6-host-2
	2001:db8:c001:103::/64	pppoev6-host-3
	<snip>	<snip>
	2001:db8:c001:1FF::/64	pppoev6-host-256
2001:db8:c001:200::/56	2001:db8:c001:201::/64	PPPoEv6-host-257
	2001:db8:c001:202::/64	PPPoEv6-host-258
	2001:db8:c001:203::/64	PPPoEv6-host-259
	<snip>	<snip>
	2001:db8:c001:2FF::/64	PPPoEv6-host-512

Dual Stack PPPoE for Routed Gateway

Figure 139 shows the message flow for a dual stack PPPoE host behind a routed gateway corresponding with the configured service.

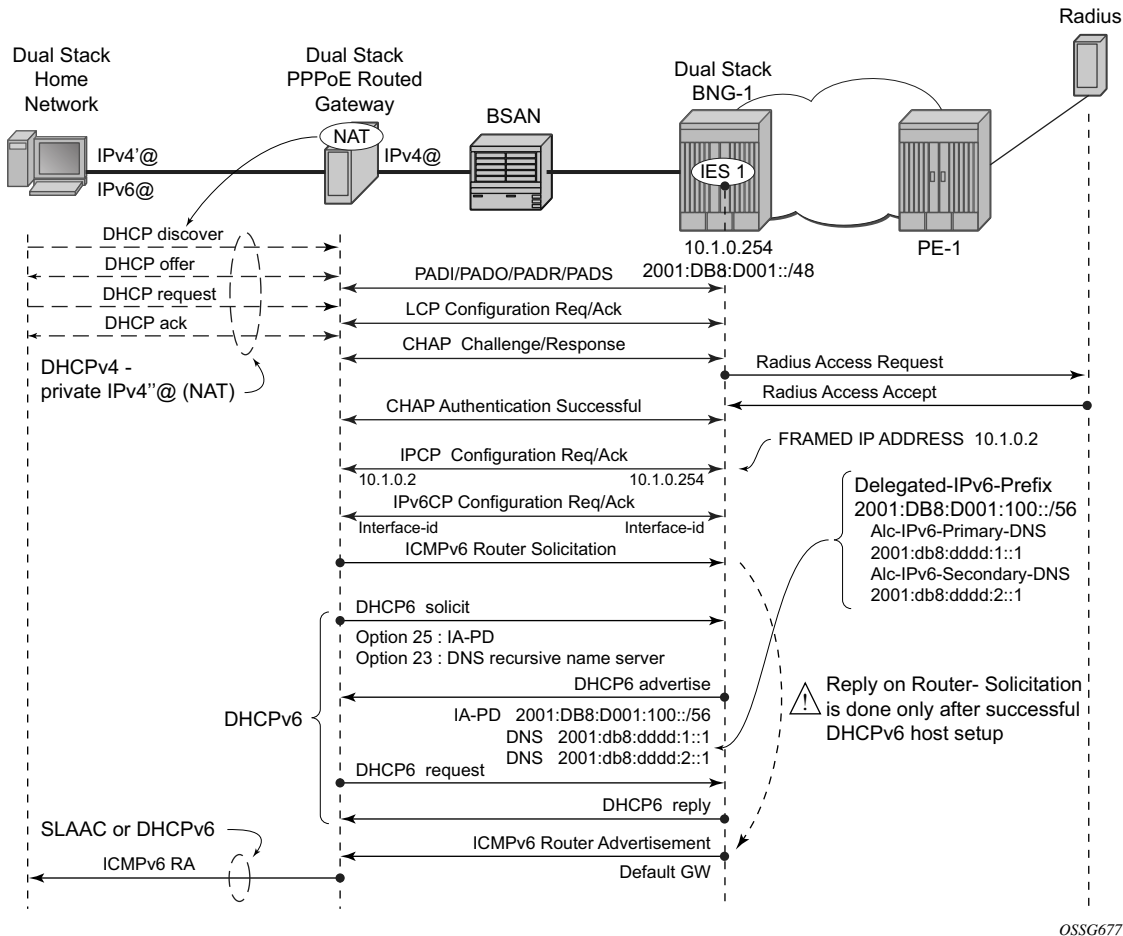


Figure 139: Dual Stack PPPoE for Routed Gateway

Initially, a PPPoE routed gateway follows the same procedure as a dual stack PPPoE host. The BNG receives a prefix from RADIUS (in this case through a delegated-ipv6-prefix attribute), which is used as a trigger to initiate the IPv6CP protocol to the client. The prefix that is offered to the client should have the same prefix length as configured under the subscriber interface ipv6 node (delegated-prefix length). This length should be between 48 and 64 bits, inclusive.

After the IPv6CP protocol has completed the client must run the DHCPv6 protocol over its PPPoE tunnel to receive a delegated prefix (IA_PD) and optionally IPv6 DNS server information.

This delegated prefix can then be subdivided by the client and distributed over its downstream interfaces. During DHCPv6, no extra RADIUS request will be made; the information is stored during the initial PPPoE authentication until the client starts DHCPv6. Only after DHCPv6 has completed will the IPv6 subscriber host be instantiated and the BNG will start sending RAs if configured. (It is a mandatory requirement for the BNG to send RAs which makes the enabling of router-advertisements under the group-level a mandatory parameter). The router advertisements do not contain any prefix information, which has already been provided by DHCPv6, but it is used as an indication to the client that its default gateway should be the BNG sourcing this RA.

```
A:BNG-1#
configure service ies 1
  subscriber-interface "sub-int-1"
    address 10.1.0.254/16
    group-interface "group-int-1"
      ipv6
        router-advertisements
          no shutdown
        exit
        dhcp6
          proxy-server
            client-applications pppoe
            no shutdown
          exit
        exit
      exit
    authentication-policy "radius-1"
    sap 1/1/4:301
      sub-sla-mgmt
        sub-ident-policy "sub-ident-1"
        multi-sub-sap 10
        no shutdown
      exit
    exit
  PPPoE
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
ipv6
  delegated-prefix-len 56
  subscriber-prefixes
    prefix 2001:DB8:D001::/48 pd
  exit
exit
exit
no shutdown
```

IPv6 subscriber prefixes must be defined at the **subscriber-interface** <sub-int-name> **ipv6 subscriber-prefixes** context.

Refer to [Dual Stack PPPoE Bridged Gateway Service on page 790](#).

Subscriber prefixes are subnetted in fixed length subnets that are assigned to subscriber hosts:

- /delegated-prefix-len (/48..64) for p subscriber prefixes

The delegated prefix length is configured in the **subscriber-interface** <sub-int-name> **ipv6** context. The recommended value is /56 (default = /64). The configured length applies to all pd subscriber prefixes on a subscriber-interface.

[Table 25](#) and [Table 26](#) provide an overview of the subscriber-prefix parameters that apply and an example of prefix subnetting for delegated-prefix-length /56.

Table 25: Subscriber-Prefix Parameters

Subscriber Prefix Type	Prefix Length	DHCPv6 Option	SLAAC	RADIUS AVP	Must be sub netted as
pd	/48..64 *	IA-PD	N/A	[123] Delegated-IPv6-Prefix	/delegated-prefix-len

*Must be smaller than configured delegated prefix length.

Table 26: Prefix Subnetting for delegated-prefix-length /56

Subscriber Prefix and /56 delegated-prefix-len	Framed-IPv6-Prefix	Hosts
2001:db8:d001::/48	2001:db8:d001:100::/56	Responsibility Home Gateway (HGW)
		Responsibility HGW
		Responsibility HGW
	2001:db8:d001:200::/56	Responsibility HGW
		Responsibility HGW
		Responsibility HGW
	<snip>	--
	2001:db8:d001:FF00::/56	Responsibility HGW
		Responsibility HGW
		Responsibility HGW

Table 26: Prefix Subnetting for delegated-prefix-length /56 (Continued)

Subscriber Prefix and /56 delegated-prefix-len	Framed-IPv6-Prefix	Hosts
<snip>	--	--
2001:db8:d002::/48	2001:db8:d002:100::/56	Responsibility HGW
		Responsibility HGW
		Responsibility HGW
	2001:db8:d002:200::/56	Responsibility HGW
		Responsibility HGW
		Responsibility HGW
	<snip>	--
	2001:db8:d002:FF00::/56	Responsibility HGW
		Responsibility HGW
		Responsibility HGW

RADIUS

The DHCPv6 proxy server mandates the use of RADIUS for PPPoE IPv6 subscriber host authentication and authorization. The configuration is no different from an IPv4 subscriber host:

```
A:BNG-1#
  configure subscriber-mgmt
    authentication-policy "radius-1"
      description "Radius authentication policy"
      password <hashed password> hash2
      radius-authentication-server
        router "Base"
        server 1 address 172.16.1.1 secret ALU
    exit
  exit

A:BNG-1#
  configure service ies 1 customer 1
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1"
    group-interface "group-int-1"
    authentication-policy "radius-1"
```

Notice that for dual stack subscribers, it is mandatory to retrieve the IPv6 configuration information through RADIUS. IPv4 configuration information can come from RADIUS or from a different source (like the local user database or DHCPv4 server).

Additional RADIUS Attribute Value pairs (AVPs) that are applicable for PPPoE IPv6 subscriber hosts are listed in the following section.

Table 27: RADIUS AVPs

RADIUS AVP	Type	Purpose
Framed-IPv6-Prefix [97]	ipv6prefix	Maps to SLAAC (RFC 4862) /64 Prefix-information in ICMPv6 RA.
Delegated-IPv6-Prefix [123]	ipv6prefix	Maps to IA_PD for prefix delegation (RFC 3633) in DHCPv6
Alc-Ipv6-Primary-Dns [26-6527-105]	ipv6addr	Maps to DNS recursive name server option (RFC 3646) in DHCPv6
Alc-Ipv6-Secondary-Dns [26-6527-106]	ipv6addr	Maps to DNS recursive name server option (RFC 3646) in DHCPv6

Dual Stack PPPoE for Bridged Gateway

The following shows a sample of a FreeRADIUS user record to authenticate a dual stack PPPoE subscriber for a bridged gateway:

```
"pppoev6-host1@isp1.com" Cleartext-Password := "ALU"
    Framed-IP-Address = 10.1.0.1,
    Framed-IP-Netmask = 255.255.255.0,
    Alc-Subsc-ID-Str = "%{User-name}",
    Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str = "sub-profile-1",
    Alc-SLA-Prof-Str = "sla-profile-1",
    Framed-IPv6-Prefix = "2001:db8:c001:0101::/64",
    Alc-IPv6-Primary-DNS = "2001:db8:dddd:1::1",
    Alc-IPv6-Secondary-DNS = "2001:db8:dddd:2::1"
```

Dual Stack PPPoE for Routed Gateway

The following shows a sample of a FreeRADIUS user record to authenticate a dual stack PPPoE subscriber for a routed gateway:

```
"PPPoEv6-gw1@isp1.com" Cleartext-Password := "ALU"
    Framed-IP-Address = 10.1.0.2,
    Framed-IP-Netmask = 255.255.255.0,
    Alc-Subsc-ID-Str = "%{User-name}",
    Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str = "sub-profile-1",
    Alc-SLA-Prof-Str = "sla-profile-1",
    Delegated-IPv6-Prefix = "2001:db8:d001:0100::/56",
    Alc-IPv6-Primary-DNS = "2001:db8:dddd:1::1",
    Alc-IPv6-Secondary-DNS = "2001:db8:dddd:2::1"
```

A RADIUS user's configuration with multiple delegated-ipv6-prefixes for the same dual stack PPPoE host will result in a single DHCPv6 advertise message sent by the BNG with a single IA_PD option and single IA-Prefix. The other RADIUS configured delegated-IPv6-prefixes are silently dropped by the BNG.

Router Advertisements

ICMPv6 router advertisements have two major functions.

- Default router function for hosts (applicable for IPoEv6 and PPPoEv6)
- Address auto-configuration for hosts aka SLAAC (applicable for PPPoEv6 only)

Unsolicited RA must explicitly be enabled on a group interface (default shutdown) and are refreshed with a pseudo random timer. The boundaries of this random timer are configurable with the min-advertisement parameter (minimum with default set to 900s) and max-advertisement (maximum with default set to 1800s).

```
A:BNG-1#
configure service ies 1 customer 1
  subscriber-interface "sub-int-1"
  group-interface "group-int-1"
  ipv6
    router-advertisements
      max-advertisement 1800      # Default 30 min
      min-advertisement 900      # Default 15 min
    no shutdown
  exit
```

The **router-advertisements router-lifetime** parameter (default 4500 sec) specifies how long the host is allowed to use the originator of the RA as default gateway. This timer is configurable between 2700 and 9000 seconds.

Configuring a **smaller router-advertisements router-life** timer than the **router-advertisements min-advertisement** timer results in a dual stack PPPoE host without a default gateway.

```
A:BNG-1#
configure service ies 1 customer 1
  subscriber-interface "sub-int-1"
  group-interface "group-int-1"
  ipv6
    router-advertisements
      router-lifetime 4500      # Default 1h 15min
    no shutdown
  exit
```

The **prefix-options autonomous** parameter below specifies whether or not offered RADIUS IPv6 prefix can be used for stateless address configuration (SLAAC). The **prefix-options lifetime** parameter defines how long the host is allowed to use this prefix. Configuring a smaller **prefix-option valid-lifetime** than the **router-advertisements min-advertisement** timer results in host traffic being sourced with the link-local address instead of global unique IPv6 address.

Router Advertisements

```
A:BNG-1#
configure service ies 1 customer 1
  subscriber-interface "sub-int-1"
  group-interface "group-int-1"
  ipv6
    router-advertisements
      prefix-options
        autonomous                # Required for SLAAC
        preferred-lifetime 3600    # Default 1 hour
        valid-lifetime 86400       # Default 24 hour
      exit
    no shutdown
  exit
```

The following is a snapshot from an ICMPv6 RA message with default timer settings with a focus on the SLAAC function.

```
Internet Control Message Protocol v6
Type: 134 (Router advertisement)

<snip>

ICMPv6 Option (Prefix information)
Type: Prefix information (3)
Length: 32
Prefix length: 64
Flags: 0x40
  1... .... = on link
  .1.. .... = Auto                # Auto-Configuration flag
  ..0. .... = Not router address
  ...0 .... = Not site prefix
Valid lifetime: 86400             # Default value 24 hour
Preferred lifetime: 3600          # Default value 1 hour
Prefix: 2001:DB8:C001:101::      # SLAAC prefix
```


SLAAC-related parameters are listed in [Table 28](#):

Table 28: SLAAC-Related Parameters

Parameter	Description (RFC-4861)	Value Range (Default)
prefix-options: autonomous	Autonomous address-configuration flag. When set indicates that this prefix can be used for stateless address auto configuration (SLAAC)	(no)
prefix-options: preferred-lifetime	The length of time in seconds that the addresses generated from the prefix through stateless address auto configuration (SLAAC) remains preferred.	0..4294967295 s (3600s) 1hour
prefix-options: valid-lifetime	The length of time in seconds that the prefix is valid for the purpose of on-link determination.	0..4294967295 s (86400s) 24hours

Note that additional router advertisements parameters common to PPPoEv6 and IPoEv6 are listed and explained in [ESMv6: IPoE Dual Stack Hosts on page 743](#).

For dual stack PPPoE hosts the default values, as shown in the following output, can be used. Timer values equal to zero (reachable-time and retransmit-time) causes the host to use its own timers for that function. The reachable-time is used by the host for Neighbor_Unreachable_Detection (NUD) whereas the retransmit-time is used by the host for Duplicate_Address_Detection (DAD). DAD is normally only performed by dual stack IPoE hosts and not by dual stack PPPoE hosts.

```
A:BNG-1#
configure service ies 1 customer 1
  subscriber-interface "sub-int-1"
    group-interface "group-int-1"
      ipv6
        router-advertisements
          current-hop-limit 64          # default value
          no managed-configuration      # default value
          no mtu                        # default value
          no other-stateful-configuration # default value
          reachable-time 0              # default value
          retransmit-time 0             # default value
        exit
```

DHCPv6 Proxy Server

Dual Stack PPPoE for Bridged Gateway

This dual stack PPPoE host uses SLAAC for address assignment and does not require DHCPv6 for this assignment. The 7750 SR however does not support DNSv6 information through the RA DNS Option (RFC 5006, *IPv6 Router Advertisement Option for DNS Configuration*) which forces the use of DHCPv6 information requests and replies to retrieve the DNSv6 information. The DHCPv6 proxy server must be enabled (the default is **shutdown**) and PPPoE defined as client-application (default=dhcp only). No lease state is kept for this DNSv6 information and therefore it is known as Stateless DHCPv6.

```
A:BNG-1#
  configure service ies 1 customer 1
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1"
    group-interface "group-int-1"
    ipv6
      dhcp6
        proxy-server
          client-applications PPPoE
          no shutdown
```

Dual Stack PPPoE for Routed Gateway

An IPv6 PPPoE routed gateway initiates, after successful IPv6CP negotiation, a DHCPv6 session to request its configuration data (IPv6 PD prefixes, DNS servers). A DHCPv6 proxy server in the BNG maintains the DHCPv6 session with the IPv6 PPPoE subscriber host. The DHCPv6 proxy server must be enabled (the default is **shutdown**) and PPPoE defined as client-application (default=dhcp only).

```
A:BNG-1#
  configure service ies 1 customer 1
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1"
    group-interface "group-int-1"
    ipv6
      dhcp6
        proxy-server
          renew-timer 1800          # default
          rebind-timer 2880         # default
          valid-lifetime 86400      # default
          preferred-lifetime 3600   # default
          client-applications pppoe
          no shutdown
        exit
```

Note that a number of timers associated with IPv6 addresses and IPv6 prefixes within DHCPv6 identity associations can be configured in the DHCPv6 proxy server. These timers are valid for IPoEv6 and PPPoEv6 sessions and are listed and further explained in [ESMv6: IPoE Dual Stack Hosts on page 743](#).

There is never RADIUS re-authentication for dual stack PPPoE routed gateways on DHCPv6 renewals as indicated in [Figure 140](#).

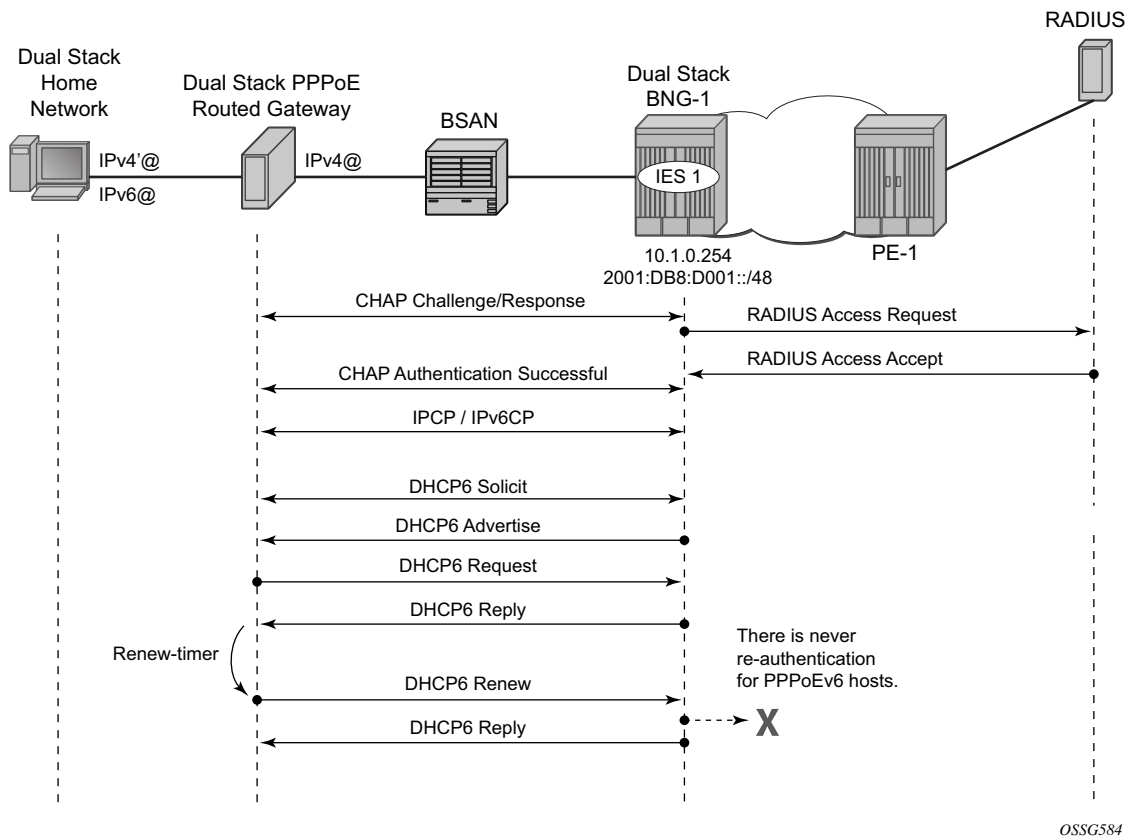


Figure 140: DHCPv6 Renewals

DHCPv6 Lease State

The DHCPv6 lease state is an internal database structure that keeps track of the DHCPv6 host states. The DHCP lease information for a specific host is extracted from the DHCPv6 reply message in case of DHCPv6. Stateful (with lease state) DHCPv6 is applicable for dual stack PPPoE on routed gateway where Stateless (without lease state) DHCPv6 is optional and applicable for dual stack PPPoE on bridged gateways.

For more information on DHCPV6 lease states, see [ESMv6: IPoE Dual Stack Hosts on page 743](#).

Operation

Dual Stack PPPoE for Bridged Gateway

A PPPoEv6 dual stack subscriber scenario for a bridged home gateway consumes two subscriber host entries sharing a common subscriber.

- IPv4 host-addressing by IPCP
- IPv6 wan-host addressing by SLAAC

```
A:BNG-1# show service active-subscribers subscriber "pppoev6-host1@isp1.com"
=====
Active Subscribers
=====
-----
Subscriber pppoev6-host1@isp1.com (sub-profile-1)
-----
(1) SLA Profile Instance sap:1/1/4:301 - sla:sla-profile-1
-----
IP Address
-----
MAC Address      PPPoE-SID  Origin
-----
10.1.0.1         00:0c:29:54:30:bf  1          IPCP
2001:DB8:C001:101::/64
00:0c:29:54:30:bf  1          PPP-SLAAC
-----
Number of active subscribers: 1
```

The **hierarchy** parameter for active-subscribers gives a top level down overview for this subscriber.

```
A:BNG-1# show service active-subscribers hierarchy subscriber "pppoev6-host1@isp1.com"
=====
Active Subscriber hierarchy
=====
-- pppoev6-host1@isp1.com (sub-profile-1)
|
|-- sap:1/1/4:301 - sla:sla-profile-1
|
|   |-- 10.1.0.1
|   |   00:0c:29:54:30:bf - 1 (IPCP)
|   |
|   |-- 2001:DB8:C001:101::/64
|   |   00:0c:29:54:30:bf - 1 (PPP-SLAAC)
|   |
|
=====
A:BNG-1#
```

IPCP and IPv6CP are in an opened state for the dual stack PPPoE session and it is mandatory that their origin is RADIUS, as shown below.

```
A:BNG-1# show service id 1 PPPoE session ip-address 10.1.0.1 detail
=====
PPPoE sessions for svc-id 1
=====
Sap Id          Mac Address      Sid   Up Time      Type
  IP/L2TP-Id/Interface-Id
-----
1/1/4:301      00:0c:29:54:30:bf 1      0d 00:04:03   Local
  10.1.0.1
  81:35:1D:7C:1F:3F:8B:41

LCP State      : Opened
IPCP State     : Opened
IPv6CP State   : Opened
PPP MTU        : 1492
PPP Auth-Protocol : CHAP
PPP User-Name  : pppoev6-host1@isp1.com

Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface     : group-int-1

Subscriber Origin   : Radius
Strings Origin      : Radius
IPCP Info Origin    : Radius
IPv6CP Info Origin  : Radius

Subscriber         : "pppoev6-host1@isp1.com"
Sub-Profile-String : "sub-profile-1"
SLA-Profile-String : "sla-profile-1"

<snip>

IPv6 Prefix       : 2001:DB8:C001:101::/64          #SLAAC
IPv6 Del.Pfx.     : N/A
Primary IPv6 DNS   : 2001:DB8:DDDD:1::1
Secondary IPv6 DNS : 2001:DB8:DDDD:2::1

<snip>
-----
Number of sessions : 1
```

The IPv6 routing table for dual stack hosts is displayed using the **protocol** keyword **sub-mgmt**.

```
A:BNG-1# show router route-table ipv6 protocol sub-mgmt
=====
IPv6 Route Table (Router: Base)
=====
Dest Prefix                                Type    Proto   Age           Pref
  Next Hop[Interface Name]                               Metric
-----
2001:DB8:C001:101::/64                    Remote  Sub Mgmt 00h20m01s    0
      [group-int-1]                                     0
```

DNSv6

DNSv6 information, in a dual stack PPPoE bridged gateway model, is optionally retrieved through stateless DHCPv6 information requests. Debugging is done through debug commands or/and observation by statistics counters.

Request and Reply:

```
00 2010/07/23 14:16:40.01 IST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base TIP
```

```
"TIP: DHCP6_PKT
```

```
  Incoming DHCP6 Msg : INFO_REQUEST (11)
```

```
  on itf group-int-1
```

```
    Trans Id : 0xcef3f0
```

```
    Option : CLIENTID (1), Length : 14
```

```
      LLT : HwTyp=0001,T=322878930,LL=000c29c851ca
```

```
      00010001133ebdd2000c29c851ca
```

```
    Option : ELAPSED_TIME (8), Length : 2
```

```
      Time : 100 seconds
```

```
    Option : ORO (6), Length : 4
```

```
      Requested Option : DNS_NAME_SRVR (23)
```

```
101 2010/07/23 14:16:40.02 IST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base TIP
```

```
"TIP: DHCP6_PKT
```

```
  Outgoing DHCP6 Msg : REPLY (7)
```

```
  to itf group-int-1
```

```
    Trans Id : 0xcef3f0
```

```
    Option : SERVERID (2), Length : 10
```

```
      LL : HwTyp=0001,LL=24b1ff000000
```

```
      0003000124b1ff000000
```

```
    Option : CLIENTID (1), Length : 14
```

```
      LLT : HwTyp=0001,T=322878930,LL=000c29c851ca
```

```
      00010001133ebdd2000c29c851ca
```

```
    Option : DNS_NAME_SRVR (23), Length : 32
```

```
      Server : 2001:DB8:DDDD:1::1
```

```
      # retrieved from radius
```

```
      Server : 2001:DB8:DDDD:2::1
```

```
      # retrieved from RADIUS
```


DHCPv6 statistics

```

A:BNG-1# clear router dhcp6 statistics
A:BNG-1# show router dhcp6 statistics
=====
DHCP6 statistics (Router: Base)
=====

```

Msg-type	Rx	Tx	Dropped
1 SOLICIT	0	0	0
2 ADVERTISE	0	0	0
3 REQUEST	0	0	0
4 CONFIRM	0	0	0
5 RENEW	0	0	0
6 REBIND	0	0	0
7 REPLY	0	1	0
8 RELEASE	0	0	0
9 DECLINE	0	0	0
10 RECONFIGURE	0	0	0
11 INFO_REQUEST	1	0	0
12 RELAY_FORW	0	0	0
13 RELAY_REPLY	0	0	0

Entries, for dual stack PPPoE subscribers, in the IPv4 ARP and/or IPv6 neighbor cache table are counted as internal entries and are shown from the **summary** parameter.

```

A:BNG-1# show router arp summary
=====
ARP Table Summary (Router: Base)
=====
Local ARP Entries      : 0
Static ARP Entries     : 0
Dynamic ARP Entries    : 0
Managed ARP Entries   : 0
Internal ARP Entries   : 1
-----
No. of ARP Entries     : 1

A:BNG-1# show router neighbor summary
=====
Neighbor Table Summary (Router: Base)
=====
Static Nbr Entries     : 0
Dynamic Nbr Entries    : 0
Managed Nbr Entries   : 0
Internal Nbr Entries   : 1
-----
No. of Neighbor Entries : 1

```

Dual Stack PPPoE for Routed Gateway

A PPPoEv6 dual stack subscriber scenario for a routed CPE consumes two subscriber host entries sharing a common subscriber.

- IPv4 host addressing through IPCP
- IPv6 pd addressing through DHCPv6

```
A:BNG-1#
show service active-subscribers subscriber "PPPoEv6-rgw1@isp1.com"
=====
Active Subscribers
=====
Subscriber PPPoEv6-rgw1@isp1.com (sub-profile-1)
-----
(1) SLA Profile Instance sap:1/1/4:301 - sla:sla-profile-1
-----
IP Address          MAC Address          PPPoE-SID Origin
-----
10.1.0.2            00:0c:29:54:30:bf 1      IPCP
2001:DB8:D001:100::/56
                    00:0c:29:54:30:bf 1      PPP-DHCP6
-----
Number of active subscribers: 1
```

The hierarchy parameter for active-subscribers gives a top level down overview for this subscriber.

```
A:BNG-1#
show service active-subscribers hierarchy subscriber "PPPoEv6-rgw1@isp1.com"
=====
Active Subscriber hierarchy
=====
-- PPPoEv6-rgw1@isp1.com (sub-profile-1)
|
|-- sap:1/1/4:301 - sla:sla-profile-1
|
|   |-- 10.1.0.2
|   |   00:0c:29:54:30:bf - 1 (IPCP)
|   |
|   |-- 2001:DB8:D001:100::/56
|   |   00:0c:29:54:30:bf - 1 (PPP-DHCP6)
|
=====
```

IPCP and IPv6CP are in an opened state for the dual stack PPPoE session and it is mandatory that their origin is RADIUS, as shown below.

```
A:BNG-1# show service id 1 PPPoE session ip-address 10.1.0.2 detail
=====
PPPoE sessions for svc-id 1
=====
Sap Id          Mac Address      Sid   Up Time      Type
  IP/L2TP-Id/Interface-Id
-----
1/1/4:301      00:0c:29:54:30:bf 1      0d 00:05:23   Local
  10.1.0.2
  B5:4B:0D:D7:69:9E:CD:7F

LCP State       : Opened
IPCP State      : Opened
IPv6CP State    : Opened
PPP MTU         : 1492
PPP Auth-Protocol : CHAP
PPP User-Name   : PPPoEv6-rgw1@isp1.com

Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface     : group-int-1

Subscriber Origin   : Radius
Strings Origin      : Radius
IPCP Info Origin    : Radius
IPv6CP Info Origin  : Radius

Subscriber         : "PPPoEv6-rgw1@isp1.com"
Sub-Profile-String : "sub-profile-1"
SLA-Profile-String : "sla-profile-1"

<snip>

IPv6 Prefix       : N/A
IPv6 Del.Pfx.     : 2001:DB8:D001:100::/56          #IA-PD
Primary IPv6 DNS   : 2001:DB8:DDDD:1::1
Secondary IPv6 DNS : 2001:DB8:DDDD:2::1
<snip>
-----
Number of sessions : 1
```

The IPv6 routing table for dual stack hosts is displayed using the **protocol** keyword **sub-mgmt**.

```
A:BNG-1# show router route-table ipv6 protocol sub-mgmt
=====
IPv6 Route Table (Router: Base)
=====
Dest Prefix          Type   Proto   Age      Pref
  Next Hop[Interface Name]      Metric
-----
2001:DB8:D001:100::/56      Remote Sub Mgmt 00h06m45s  0
  [group-int-1]
```

DNSv6

DNSv6 information, in a dual stack PPPoE routed gateway model, is optionally retrieved by stateful DHCPv6 information requests. Debugging is done through debug commands or/and observation by statistics counters.

Solicit and Advertise

```
171 2010/07/23 15:01:18.24 IST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base TIP
"TIP: DHCP6_PKT
  Incoming DHCP6 Msg : SOLICIT (1)
  on itf group-int-1
    Trans Id : 0xb6f6f1
    Option : CLIENTID (1), Length : 14
      LLT : HwTyp=0001,T=322878930,LL=000c29c851ca
      00010001133ebdd2000c29c851ca
    Option : IA_PD (25), Length : 12
      IAID : 1
      Time1: 4294967295 seconds
      Time2: 4294967295 seconds
    Option : ELAPSED_TIME (8), Length : 2
      Time : 100 seconds
    Option : ORO (6), Length : 4
      Requested Option : DNS_NAME_SRV (23)

172 2010/07/23 15:01:18.23 IST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base TIP
"TIP: DHCP6_PKT
  Outgoing DHCP6 Msg : ADVERTISE (2)
  to itf group-int-1
    Trans Id : 0xb6f6f1
    Option : SERVERID (2), Length : 10
      LL : HwTyp=0001,LL=24b1ff000000
      0003000124b1ff000000
    Option : CLIENTID (1), Length : 14
      LLT : HwTyp=0001,T=322878930,LL=000c29c851ca
      00010001133ebdd2000c29c851ca
    Option : DNS_NAME_SRV (23), Length : 32
      Server : 2001:DB8:DDDD:1::1
      Server : 2001:DB8:DDDD:2::1
    Option : IA_PD (25), Length : 41
      IAID : 1
      Time1: 1800 seconds
      Time2: 2880 seconds
    Option : IAPREFIX (26), Length : 25
      Prefix : 2001:DB8:D001:100::/56
      Preferred Lifetime : 3600 seconds
      Valid Lifetime : 86400 seconds
```

Request and Reply

3 2010/07/23 15:01:20.24 IST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base TIP

"TIP: DHCP6_PKT

Incoming DHCP6 Msg : REQUEST (3)

on itf group-int-1

Trans Id : 0x1c52e7

Option : CLIENTID (1), Length : 14

LLT : HwTyp=0001,T=322878930,LL=000c29c851ca
00010001133ebdd2000c29c851ca

Option : IA_PD (25), Length : 12

IAID : 1

Time1: 4294967295 seconds

Time2: 4294967295 seconds

Option : ELAPSED_TIME (8), Length : 2

Time : 300 seconds

Option : ORO (6), Length : 4

Requested Option : DNS_NAME_SRVR (23)

Option : SERVERID (2), Length : 10

LL : HwTyp=0001,LL=24b1ff000000
0003000124b1ff000000

176 2010/07/23 15:01:20.25 IST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base TIP

"TIP: DHCP6_PKT

Outgoing DHCP6 Msg : REPLY (7)

to itf group-int-1

Trans Id : 0x1c52e7

Option : SERVERID (2), Length : 10

LL : HwTyp=0001,LL=24b1ff000000
0003000124b1ff000000

Option : CLIENTID (1), Length : 14

LLT : HwTyp=0001,T=322878930,LL=000c29c851ca
00010001133ebdd2000c29c851ca

Option : DNS_NAME_SRVR (23), Length : 32

Server : 2001:DB8:DDDD:1::1

Server : 2001:DB8:DDDD:2::1

Option : IA_PD (25), Length : 41

IAID : 1

Time1: 1800 seconds

Time2: 2880 seconds

Option : IAPREFIX (26), Length : 25

Prefix : 2001:DB8:D001:100::/56

Preferred Lifetime : 3600 seconds

Valid Lifetime : 86400 seconds

DHCPv6 statistics:

```
A:BNG-1# clear router dhcp6 statistics
```

```
A:BNG-1# show router dhcp6 statistics
```

```
=====
```

DHCP6 statistics (Router: Base)			
=====			
Msg-type	Rx	Tx	Dropped

1 SOLICIT	1	0	0
2 ADVERTISE	0	1	0
3 REQUEST	1	0	0
4 CONFIRM	0	0	0
5 RENEW	0	0	0
6 REBIND	0	0	0
7 REPLY	0	1	0
8 RELEASE	0	0	0
9 DECLINE	0	0	0
10 RECONFIGURE	0	0	0
11 INFO_REQUEST	0	0	0
12 RELAY_FORW	0	0	0
13 RELAY_REPLY	0	0	0

Debugging

To troubleshoot a PPPoE dual stack host session, use:

- Log-id 99: Default system log and use appropriate filtering to reduce the output if needed.

```
A:BNG-1# show log log-id 99
```

- Debug PPPoE

```
A:BNG-1# show debug
debug
  service
    id 1
      PPPoE
        packet
          mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
          detail-level high
          discovery
          ppp
          dhcp-client
        exit
      exit
    exit
  exit
```

- Debug radius

```
A:BNG-1# show debug
debug
  radius detail
exit
```

- Debug dhcpv6

```
A:BNG-1# show debug
debug
  router "Base"
    ip
      dhcp6
        mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
        detail-level high
      exit
    exit
  exit
exit
```

Debugging

- DHCPv6 and PPPoE protocol statistics:

```
A:BNG-1# show router dhcp6 statistics  
A:BNG-1# show service id 1 PPPoE session statistics
```


Advanced Topics

RADIUS COA

For dual stack PPPoE subscriber hosts, RADIUS-triggered mid-session change or/and session terminations identify the subscriber host to be changed by the same prefix that was originally returned from RADIUS or by the host-session-id (If RADIUS accounting host-accounting is enabled and the accounting session-id format equals number. Changing either the IPv4 or IPv6 information will result in both the v4 and v6 subscriber hosts being modified. Further elaboration on accounting is out of scope in this document.

IPv6CP Interface ID

IPv6CP negotiates, unlike ipv4-addresses in IPv4CP, only interface-ids (interface-id: The last 64 bits of an IPv6 address is the interface identifier that is unique to the 64-bit prefix of the IPv6 address and is usually derived from the link-layer or MAC address).

Dual stack PPPoE subscribers and the BNG exchange their interface-ids during this NCP phase. For ESM subscriber-interfaces on the BNG the interface-id is derived from the chassis-mac address.

- The BNG will nack the PPPoE host's IPv6CP configuration request if the dual stack PPPoE host negotiates an interface-id equal zero or an interface-id equal to the BNG interface ID. In that scenario the BNG offers in the IPv6CP nack message a suitable interface ID with following format:

Table 29: IPv6CP Nack Message Format

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
SAP ID				Last 2 bytes MAC host		Session ID	

- The BNG terminates the session if the dual stack PPPoE hosts nacks its IPv6CP configuration request and offers something else to the BNG.

Conclusion

This note provides configuration and troubleshooting commands for dual stack PPPoE subscribers on bridged or routed gateways. SLAAC is used as IPv6 address assignment for bridged gateways and stateful DHCPv6 prefix-delegation is used for address assignment for on routed gateways. No RG WAN IPv6 address assignment is supported in this latter model.

DNSv6 addressing on a bridged gateway is retrieved by stateless DHCPv6 (information request and reply) and it is mandatory that all IPv6 address information is retrieved through RADIUS.

Establishing a Diameter Peering Session

In This Chapter

This section provides information about establishing a diameter peering session.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 824](#)
- [Overview on page 825](#)
- [Configuration on page 826](#)
- [Conclusion on page 837](#)

Applicability

This example is applicable to all 7750 SR/SR-c and 7450 ESS chassis.

The configuration was tested on release 12.0.R3.

Overview

Diameter is an Authentication, Authorization and Accounting (AAA) protocol that has been defined by the IETF in RFC 3588, *Diameter Base Protocol*, as a replacement for other AAA protocols like TACACS and RADIUS. While wireline access networks are largely based on RADIUS for subscriber authentication, authorization, and accounting, it was decided by 3rd Generation Partnership Project (3GPP) that wireless access networks will be largely based on Diameter. Over time, operators are looking to converge both types of networks, and one of the aspects of this is to replace RADIUS in wireline access networks by Diameter.

Diameter is based on three layers: the transport layer, the Diameter base protocol layer and the Diameter applications as shown in [Figure 141](#).

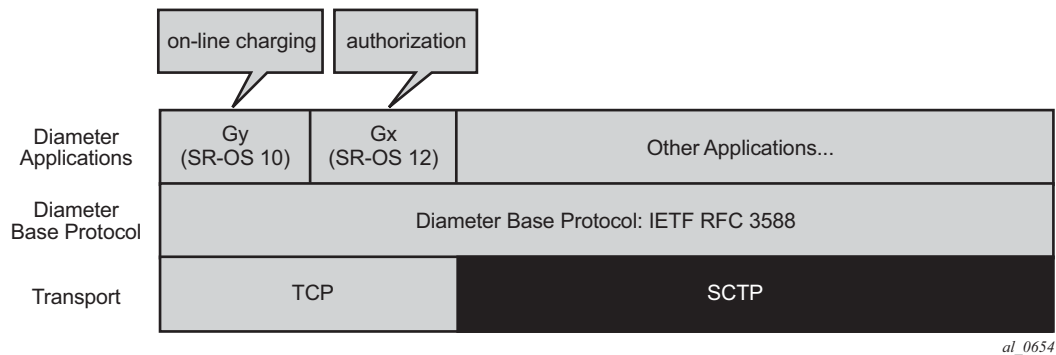


Figure 141: Diameter Protocol Stack

The bottom layer is the transport layer and can be either TCP or SCTP, but only TCP is supported by SR OS. The Diameter base protocol implementation is based on RFC 3588. The top layer contains the Diameter applications. SR OS 10.0 introduced the Gy Diameter application for on-line charging, and SR OS 12.0 introduces the Gx Diameter application for authorization.

Configuration

The Diameter base protocol and the Diameter applications have to be configured separately, where the Diameter base protocol has to be configured first, and the Diameter applications next. The transport layer configuration is part of the Diameter base protocol layer. This example only describes the Diameter base protocol configuration.

The diameter-peer-policy configuration resides in the aaa context and contains the full Diameter base protocol configuration. An example diameter-peer-policy configuration is shown below.

```
configure aaa
  diameter-peer-policy "DSC.26.206" create
    applications gx
    origin-host "wlangw-2.SRrealm"
    origin-realm "SRrealm"
    router 10000
    source-address 10.23.0.130
    peer "DSC.26.206" create
      address 10.40.11.2
      destination-realm "Tc3eRealm"
      no shutdown
    exit
```

The diameter-peer-policy is identified by name (**DSC.26.206** in the example above). This name is used by the Diameter application configuration. The Diameter application making use of this Diameter peer policy must be specified (for instance Gx), and so is the Diameter identity. The Diameter identity consists of 2 parts: the Diameter host name and the Diameter realm, **wlangw-2.SRrealm** and **SRrealm**, respectively, in the example above. Configuration of the Diameter application making use of the Diameter peer is required such that the Diameter connection including the capability exchange, which negotiates the Diameter application with the peer, can already start without configuration of the specific Diameter application.

By default the system originates the Diameter peering session from the Base router but a different routing context (a VPRN or the management routing context used for out-of-band management) can be used (VPRN **10000** in the example). Also a source address (belonging to an IP interface in the configured routing context) can be specified (**10.23.0.130** in the example), but when no source address is specified an address is selected automatically. As such, best practice is to explicitly configure the source address.

One or more peers can be configured, with a maximum of five peers. In case more than one peer is configured, these peers can provide redundancy when supported by the Diameter application making use of the Diameter peer policy. Each peer is identified by name (which could be the same as the Diameter peer policy as in the example above) and has an IP address and a destination Diameter realm (**10.40.11.2** and **Tc3eRealm**, respectively, in the example). The IP address is that of the device terminating the TCP session, which either is the final destination or a Diameter Routing Agent (DRA) (intermediate destination). The destination realm is typically the realm of the final destination. Optionally the destination host can be configured. If the destination host is

not configured, then it will be dynamically learned from the received Diameter application messages (learned from the received origin-host). This means that if it is not configured, the first Diameter application message does not contain a destination-host, only a destination-realm, but all subsequent messages will include the learned destination-host. If destination-host is configured, it will be included in the first Diameter application message. The destination host is configured per peer using following command:

```
*A:BNG-1# configure aaa diameter-peer-policy "DSC.26.206" peer "DSC.26.206" destination-
host
- destination-host <destination-host-string>
- no destination-host

<destination-host-*> : [80 chars max]
```

Configuration of the origin-host, origin-realm, destination-realm and at least 1 peer is mandatory. These attributes do not have default values and are needed before a peer can be put in a **no shutdown** state. Doing a **no shutdown** of a peer fails in case any of these attributes are not configured, for instance:

```
*A:BNG-1>config>aaa>diameter-peer-plcy>peer$ no shutdown
MINOR: DIAM #1205 Origin-host is not configured yet

*A:BNG-1>config>aaa>diam-peer-plcy# peer "test" no shutdown
MINOR: DIAM #1206 Origin-realm is not configured yet

*A:BNG-1>config>aaa>diam-peer-plcy# peer "test" no shutdown
MINOR: DIAM #1208 Destination-realm is not configured yet
```

When doing a **no shutdown** of the peer, the system tries to establish the TCP session. Once the TCP session is up, the system starts the Diameter capability negotiation using the configured attributes: the Diameter identity is advertised together with the configured Diameter applications. An example of a capability negotiation is examined in detail in the troubleshooting section. All Diameter messages are sent with a DSCP set to AF41. The DSCP value cannot be changed.

The status of the Diameter peers can be verified as follows:

```
*A:BNG-1# show aaa diameter-peer-policy "DSC.26.206"
=====
Diameter Peer Policy : DSC.26.206
=====
Last Mgmt Change      : 03/18/2014 17:50:50
=====
Diameter Base Values (config)
=====
Origin Host           : wlangw-2.SRrealm
Origin Realm          : SRrealm
Connection Timer       : 30 (default)      Source Address       : 10.23.0.130
Transaction Timer     : 30 (default)      Router               : 10000
Watchdog Timer        : 30 (default)
Vendor Support         : 3GPP (default)
=====
Peer Name              Oper  PSM State    Susp  Cooldown  Pref  Order  Pri/Sec
```

```
-----
DSC.26.206      Yes  I-Open      No    -      50    1      Primary
=====
```

An important information is the **PSM State** of each peer. The state **I-Open** indicates that the peer is up and running. The full Peer State Machine (PSM) is described in RFC 3588.

More advanced configuration can be done as well. Timers can be configured: connection timer, transaction timer and watchdog timer:

- The connection timer is called the Tc timer in RFC 3588. This timer controls the frequency at which a new connection is attempted to be established. The default value is 30 seconds as recommended by RFC 3588.
- The transaction timer is started each time a request is sent to the peer and indicates the time the system waits for an answer before resending the request to one of the other configured peers. In case the Diameter request is retransmitted to another peer, the T-flag (Potentially re-transmitted message flag) is set. Failure of a peer is typically detected by the watchdog messages, but in some cases it is possible that a peer is not responding although watchdog messages are received. This could happen, for instance, when there is a Diameter relay agent or Diameter proxy agent between the system originating the Diameter messages and the final destination.
- The watchdog timer controls the frequency at which device-watchdog-request messages are transmitted to the peer, and is called the Tw timer in RFC 3539, *Authentication, Authorization and Accounting (AAA) Transport Profile*. A small timer results in a faster detection of a peer failure at the expense of generating more messages. The default is 30 seconds.

These timers can be configured at two levels: at Diameter peer policy level and at peer level. If configured at the peer level, then this value is taken for the specific peer, otherwise the configuration is taken from the Diameter peer policy level. If it is also not configured at the policy level, then the default values are used, which is 30 seconds for these three timers.

In case multiple peers are configured in the profile, a preference can be assigned to each of the peers. A lower preference value indicates a more preferred peer. Up to five peers can be configured, and all can be in the **I-Open** state, but the Diameter application will only select a single primary peer on a per application session basis. By default the preference is 50, and the selection on which peer is active and which one standby is shown in following CLI command:

```
*A:BNG-1# show aaa diameter-peer-policy "DSC.Geo.Red"
=====
Diameter Peer Policy : DSC.Geo.Red
=====
Last Mgmt Change      : 04/23/2014 15:18:24
=====
Diameter Base Values (config)
=====
Origin Host           : wlangw-2.DSC.Geo.Red.SRrealm
Origin Realm          : SRrealm
```


Establishing a Diameter Peering Session

```
Connection Timer      : 30 (default)      Source Address       : 10.23.0.130
Transaction Timer     : 30 (default)      Router              : 10000
Watchdog Timer        : 30 (default)
Vendor Support        : 3GPP (default)

-----
Peer Name              Oper  PSM State      Susp  Cooldown  Pref  Order  Pri/Sec
-----
DSC.Simul              Yes   I-Open        No    -         10    1      Primary
DSC.26.206             Yes   I-Open        No    -         20    2      Secondary
=====
```

The configuration corresponding to the above show command is as follows.

```
*A:BNG-1# configure aaa diameter-peer-policy "DSC.Geo.Red"
*A:BNG-1>config>aaa>diam-peer-plcy# info
```

```
-----
applications gx
origin-host "wlangw-2.DSC.Geo.Red.SRrealm"
origin-realm "SRrealm"
router 10000
source-address 10.23.0.130
peer "DSC.Simul" create
    address 10.55.2.2
    destination-realm "simul.org"
    preference 10
    no shutdown
exit
peer "DSC.26.206" create
    address 10.40.11.2
    destination-realm "Tc3eRealm"
    preference 20
    no shutdown
exit
-----
```

Which redundancy features are supported as well as redundancy behavior is Diameter application specific.

The transport configuration is part of the Diameter peer policy and is configured per peer. SR OS uses TCP as transport and the TCP destination port number is configurable. By default the standard port 3868 is used.

```
*A:BNG-1# configure aaa diameter-peer-policy "DSC.26.206" peer "DSC.26.206" transport
- transport tcp port <port>
- no transport

<tcp>                : keyword
<port>               : [1..65535]
```

The source port is randomly chosen from the ephemeral port-range.

Troubleshooting

Statistics of each peer can be displayed as follows:

```
*A:BNG-1# show aaa diameter-peer-policy "DSC.26.206" peer "DSC.26.206" statistics
=====
Diameter Peer Policy : DSC.26.206 (statistics)
=====
Diameter Peer           : DSC.26.206
time statistics cleared  : 04/18/2014 07:52:28
-----
Client initiated tx/rx          Server initiated tx/rx
-----
TCP Send Failed                : 0          TCP Send Failed                : 0
Diam Rx Drop Count (Resps)    : 0          Diam Rx Drop Count (Reqs)    : 0
Diam Tx Requests              : 3          Diam Rx Requests            : 94
Diam Rx Responses             : 3          Diam Tx Responses           : 94
Pending Messages              : 0
Request Timeouts              : 0
-----
Diameter message breakdown
-----
CCR initial Tx                : 1          CCA initial Rx                : 1
CCR update Tx                 : 1          CCA update Rx                 : 1
CCR terminate Tx              : 1          CCA terminate Rx              : 1
CER Tx                        : 0          CEA Rx                        : 0
DWR Tx                        : 0          DWA Rx                        : 0
DWR Rx                        : 94          DWA Tx                        : 94
ASR Rx                        : 0          ASA Tx                        : 0
RAR Rx                        : 0          RAA Tx                        : 0
DPR Tx                        : 0          DPA Rx                        : 0
DPR Rx                        : 0          DPA Tx                        : 0
=====
```

The above command shows several statistics including the number of transmitted and received messages per message type. There is a command to clear the above counters, for instance:

```
clear aaa diameter-peer-policy "DSC.26.206" peer "DSC.26.206" statistics
```

Furthermore, debug at peer level of all Diameter message types are available:

```
debug
  diameter
    detail-level high
    no dest-realm
    diameter-peer DSC.26.206 psm-events
    no diameter-policy
    message-type ccr cca cer cea dwr dwa dpr dpa rar raa asr asa
    no origin-realm
  exit
exit
```

The above debug example will display the detailed output of all Diameter messages sent to and received from peer **DSC.26.206**. A shorter command to obtain the same output is the **debug diameter message-type all** command. Some of the Diameter message types are application specific with certain overlap between the applications. In other words, not all Diameter message types are used by all applications. The message types are:

- ccr credit-control-request
- cca credit-control-answer
- cer capability-exchange-request
- cea capability-exchange-answer
- dwr watchdog-request
- dwa watchdog-answer
- dpr disconnect-peer-request
- dpa disconnect-peer-answer
- rar re-auth-request
- raa re-auth-answer
- asr abort-session-request
- asa abort-session-answer

Note that debug of a request message and the corresponding answer message requires enabling debug for 2 message-types. Common practice is to enable debug for all message types, or for all message types except for the watchdog messages because typically these messages do not contain much interesting information. Including the periodic DWR and DWA messages would make the debug output harder to read.

Every Diameter application supports at least the CER/CEA messages. An example output of CER/CEA messages is shown below. In the CER sent by SR OS, the attributes origin-host, origin-realm, host-ip-addr, and auth-appl-id are coming from the diameter policy configuration. Note that a CER has no destination-host. Other information in the CER is the product-name (set to **SR-OS**) and firmware-revision (set to **1203** in the example below indicating that this debug trace is taken from 12.0R3). The CEA is received from the PCRF, and contains similar information.

```
5 2014/06/26 14:27:32.79 CET MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn10000 DIAMETER
"DIAMETER: Message Transmission
CER from [DSC.26.206, DSC.26.206] to 10.40.11.2:3868
Header
  ver 1 len 196 flags R----- code 257
  app-id 0 hbh-id 8652 e2e-id 659536111
AVPs
  origin-host (264) -M----- [24]
    data [16] (DiameterIdentity) : wlangw-2.SRrealm
  origin-realm (296) -M----- [15]
    data [7] (DiameterIdentity) : SRrealm
  host-ip-addr (257) -M----- [14]
    data [6] (Address) : ipv4 10.23.0.130
```

```

vendor-id (266) -M----- [12]
  data [4] (Unsigned32) : 6527
product-name (269) ----- [13]
  data [5] (UTF8String) : SR-OS
auth-appl-id (258) -M----- [12]
  data [4] (Unsigned32) : 16777238 : Gx
supported-vendor-id (265) -M----- [12]
  data [4] (Unsigned32) : 6527
supported-vendor-id (265) -M----- [12]
  data [4] (Unsigned32) : 10415
supported-vendor-id (265) -M----- [12]
  data [4] (Unsigned32) : 13019
vend-specific-appl-id (260) -M----- [32]
  data [24] (Grouped)
    vendor-id (266) -M----- [12]
      data [4] (Unsigned32) : 10415
    auth-appl-id (258) -M----- [12]
      data [4] (Unsigned32) : 16777238 : Gx
firmware-revision (267) ----- [12]
  data [4] (Unsigned32) : 1203

01 00 00 c4 80 00 01 01 00 00 00 00 00 00 21 cc
27 4f b8 ef 00 00 01 08 40 00 00 18 77 6c 61 6e
67 77 2d 32 2e 53 52 72 65 61 6c 6d 00 00 01 28
40 00 00 0f 53 52 72 65 61 6c 6d 00 00 00 01 01
40 00 00 0e 00 01 0a 17 00 82 00 00 00 00 01 0a
40 00 00 0c 00 00 19 7f 00 00 01 0d 00 00 00 0d
53 52 2d 4f 53 00 00 00 00 00 01 02 40 00 00 0c
01 00 00 16 00 00 01 09 40 00 00 0c 00 00 19 7f
00 00 01 09 40 00 00 0c 00 00 28 af 00 00 01 09
40 00 00 0c 00 00 32 db 00 00 01 04 40 00 00 20
00 00 01 0a 40 00 00 0c 00 00 28 af 00 00 01 02
40 00 00 0c 01 00 00 16 00 00 01 0b 00 00 00 0c
00 00 04 b3
"

6 2014/06/26 14:27:32.79 CET MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn10000 DIAMETER
"DIAMETER: Message Reception
CEA from 10.40.11.2:3868 to [DSC.26.206, DSC.26.206]
Header
  ver 1 len 776 flags ----- code 257
  app-id 0 hbh-id 8652 e2e-id 659536111
AVPs
  origin-host (264) -M----- [25]
    data [17] (DiameterIdentity) : stefaan.Tc3eRealm
  origin-realm (296) -M----- [17]
    data [9] (DiameterIdentity) : Tc3eRealm
  result-code (268) -M----- [12]
    data [4] (Unsigned32) : 2001 : DIAM_RESCODE_SUCCESS
  host-ip-addr (257) -M----- [14]
    data [6] (Address) : ipv4 10.40.11.2
  vendor-id (266) -M----- [12]
    data [4] (Unsigned32) : 637
  product-name (269) ----- [36]
    data [28] (UTF8String) : Alcatel-Lucent 5780 DSC (PS)
  origin-state-id (278) -M----- [12]
    data [4] (Unsigned32) : 1364308599
  firmware-revision (267) ----- [12]
    data [4] (Unsigned32) : 600450000

```

```

auth-appl-id (258) -M----- [12]
  data [4] (Unsigned32) : 16777217 :
auth-appl-id (258) -M----- [12]
  data [4] (Unsigned32) : 16777266 :
auth-appl-id (258) -M----- [12]
  data [4] (Unsigned32) : 1 :
auth-appl-id (258) -M----- [12]
  data [4] (Unsigned32) : 16777267 :
auth-appl-id (258) -M----- [12]
  data [4] (Unsigned32) : 16777302 :
auth-appl-id (258) -M----- [12]
  data [4] (Unsigned32) : 16777303 :
auth-appl-id (258) -M----- [12]
  data [4] (Unsigned32) : 16777236 :
auth-appl-id (258) -M----- [12]
  data [4] (Unsigned32) : 16777238 : Gx
auth-appl-id (258) -M----- [12]
  data [4] (Unsigned32) : 111 :
supported-vendor-id (265) -M----- [12]
  data [4] (Unsigned32) : 28458
supported-vendor-id (265) -M----- [12]
  data [4] (Unsigned32) : 10415
supported-vendor-id (265) -M----- [12]
  data [4] (Unsigned32) : 12951
supported-vendor-id (265) -M----- [12]
  data [4] (Unsigned32) : 9
supported-vendor-id (265) -M----- [12]
  data [4] (Unsigned32) : 7898
supported-vendor-id (265) -M----- [12]
  data [4] (Unsigned32) : 5535
supported-vendor-id (265) -M----- [12]
  data [4] (Unsigned32) : 637
vend-specific-appl-id (260) -M----- [32]
  data [24] (Grouped)
    vendor-id (266) -M----- [12]
      data [4] (Unsigned32) : 10415
    auth-appl-id (258) -M----- [12]
      data [4] (Unsigned32) : 16777236 :
vend-specific-appl-id (260) -M----- [32]
  data [24] (Grouped)
    vendor-id (266) -M----- [12]
      data [4] (Unsigned32) : 10415
    auth-appl-id (258) -M----- [12]
      data [4] (Unsigned32) : 16777267 :
vend-specific-appl-id (260) -M----- [32]
  data [24] (Grouped)
    vendor-id (266) -M----- [12]
      data [4] (Unsigned32) : 10415
    auth-appl-id (258) -M----- [12]
      data [4] (Unsigned32) : 16777238 : Gx
vend-specific-appl-id (260) -M----- [32]
  data [24] (Grouped)
    vendor-id (266) -M----- [12]
      data [4] (Unsigned32) : 9
    auth-appl-id (258) -M----- [12]
      data [4] (Unsigned32) : 16777238 : Gx
vend-specific-appl-id (260) -M----- [32]

```

..

It is also possible to debug all messages from a specific Diameter policy, origin realm, or destination realm.

Note that these debug commands only show Diameter messages but no TCP messages like TCP-SYN. TCP layer issues must be debugged differently. For instance when there is a routing issue between client and server, then typically the state of the Diameter peer is **Wait-Conn-Ack**:

```
*A:BNG-1# show aaa diameter-peer-policy "DSC.26.206"
=====
Diameter Peer Policy : DSC.26.206
=====
Last Mgmt Change      : 06/16/2014 13:21:26
=====
Diameter Base Values (config)
-----
Origin Host           : wlangw-2.SRrealm
Origin Realm          : SRrealm
Connection Timer       : 30 (default)      Source Address        : 10.23.0.130
Transaction Timer      : 30 (default)      Router                : 10000
Watchdog Timer         : 10
Vendor Support         : 3GPP (default)
-----
Peer Name              Oper  PSM State      Susp  Cooldown  Pref  Order  Pri/Sec
-----
DSC.26.206             Yes  Wait-Conn-Ack No    Pending   50    -      -
=====
```

Wait-Conn-Ack means that the client has sent a TCP-SYN but no SYN-ACK is coming back. If the state is **Closed**, the client is no longer listening for a SYN-ACK and a new attempt to bring up the transport connection is made when the connection timer expires:

```
*A:BNG-1# show aaa diameter-peer-policy "DSC.26.206"
=====
Diameter Peer Policy : DSC.26.206
=====
Last Mgmt Change      : 06/16/2014 13:21:26
=====
Diameter Base Values (config)
-----
Origin Host           : wlangw-2.SRrealm
Origin Realm          : SRrealm
Connection Timer       : 30 (default)      Source Address        : 10.23.0.130
Transaction Timer      : 30 (default)      Router                : 10000
Watchdog Timer         : 10
Vendor Support         : 3GPP (default)
-----
Peer Name              Oper  PSM State      Susp  Cooldown  Pref  Order  Pri/Sec
-----
DSC.26.206             Yes  Closed        No    Pending   50    -      -
=====
```

The countdown of the connection timer can be seen with this command:

```
*A:BNG-1# show aaa diameter-peer-policy "DSC.26.206" peer "DSC.26.206"
=====
Diameter Peer Policy : DSC.26.206
=====
Diameter Peer          : DSC.26.206
Peer IP address        : 10.40.11.2
Last Mgmt Change       : 06/26/2014 14:27:31
-----
Peer Runtime Values (main)
-----
Peer Table Entry       : DSC.26.206::DSC.26.206
Peer Operational       : Yes
Peer State Machine     : Closed
Connection Timer (Tc) : 16
Transaction Timer (Tt) : -
Watchdog Timer (Tw)    : -
Primary/Secondary Peer : -
Watchdog Algorithm Active : No
Watchdog Answer Pending : No
Connection Suspended    : No
Cooldown Sequence Pending : Yes
Cooldown Sequence Active : No
Cooldown Sequence Progress : -
Peer Removal Pending    : No
=====
```

In the above example, a new attempt to bring up the TCP session will be made in 16 seconds.

Events

Three events are defined for Diameter:

```
*A:BNG-1# show log event-control "diameter"
=====
Log Events
=====
Application
ID#      Event Name                               P   g/s    Logged    Dropped
-----
  2001  tmnxDiamPolicyPeerStateChange             MI  gen     8095       0
  2002  tmnxDiamAppMessageDropped                  MI  gen        6       0
  2003  tmnxDiamAppSessionFailure                   MI  gen        0       0
=====
```

Trap **tmnxDiamPolicyPeerStateChange** is generated for all changes in the state of the Diameter peer. The second trap, **tmnxDiamAppMessageDropped** is generated when the system drops a Diameter message because it is malformed. Failures in the Diameter application sessions are reported in the trap **tmnxDiamAppSessionFailure**. Note that each Diameter application can have its own specific behavior for each of these traps. These traps are generated when a log is created from security:

```
configure log log-id 88
    from security
    to ...
```


Conclusion

Diameter is an alternative to RADIUS. Although it is mainly used by mobile operators, it is finding its way in fixed access networks. Diameter peering provides reliable and secure transport with peer redundancy. Its functionality is defined in a base Diameter protocol specified in RFC3588. Various applications can be layered on top of base Diameter and they can utilize the robust transport capabilities that Diameter provides.

Flexible Authentication Model in ESM

In This Chapter

This section provides information about Flexible Authentication Models in ESM.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 840](#)
- [Overview on page 841](#)
- [Configuration on page 843](#)
- [Conclusion on page 884](#)

Applicability

This example is applicable to Routed Central Office (RCO) model on 7750 SR-7/12/12e, 7750 SR-c4/12 and 7450 ESS 7/12 in mixed-mode with IOM3-XP or IMM.

The configuration was tested on release 11.0R2 in a single-homed scenario.

Overview

The flexible authentication model for IPoE and PPPoE subscribers allows for mixing of configuration parameters obtained during the authentication phase from different sources: LUDB, RADIUS or Local User Database (LUDB), RADIUS or DHCP options that can be populated via a custom Python script. In case the same parameter is available from multiple sources, a priority mechanism is enforced whereby the parameter received from a higher priority source overrides the parameters received from the lower priority source in the following priority LUDB to RADIUS to Python.

In this example we will configure a dual-stack IPoE and a dual stack PPPoE host using 4 different methods to obtain their configuration parameters. The setup will utilize a single 7x50 BNG node with a locally configured DHCP server and LUDB as well as an external RADIUS server. Subscriber hosts are instantiated on managed (dynamic) SAPs.

The subscriber configuration parameters are in general divided into two categories:

- IP addressing parameters of the host — IPv4/v6 address/prefix, DNS servers, IPv4 default-gateway, IPv4 subnet-mask, IPv4/v6 address pool name, DHCPv4/v6 lease times, etc.
- Non IP addressing parameters of the host — Subscriber hosts strings are used to associate the subscriber-host with the desired level of service (sub/sla-profiles, inter-dest-id string, etc); managed routes are used for routing purposes to/from the host; etc.

The following four scenarios will be examined:

1. DHCP relay case (IP address is assigned via local DHCP server) with NO authentication. See [page 847](#).
2. DHCP relay case (IP address is assigned via local DHCP server) with LUDB + RADIUS authentication. See [page 855](#).

RADIUS provides: sub/sla-profile strings and a framed IPv4 route.

LUDB provides: IP address pool, inter-dest-id string for Vport assignment, msap-defaults (routing context parameters and msap-policy).

3. IP proxy case (IP address is assigned via RADIUS) with LUDB + RADIUS authentication. [page 865](#)

RADIUS provides: IP addresses¹ and related parameters (DNS server, IPv4 default-gateway, etc), inter-dest-id string for Vport assignment and a framed route.

LUDB provides: sub/sla-profile strings and msap-defaults (routing context parameters and msap-policy).

4. IP proxy case (IP address is assigned via LUDB) with LUDB + RADIUS authentication. [page 874](#)

1. IPv6 lease-times are provided under the group-interface.

RADIUS provides: sub/sla-profile strings and a framed IPv4 route.

LUDB provides IP addresses and related parameters (DNS server, IPv4 default-gateway, etc), inter-dest-id string for Vport assignment and msap-defaults (routing context parameters and msap-policy).

In cases 2-4, the domain-name *alu-domain* is appended to the IPoE and PPPoE username in LUDB, just before RADIUS authentication takes place.

Configuration

The topology is shown in [Figure 142](#).

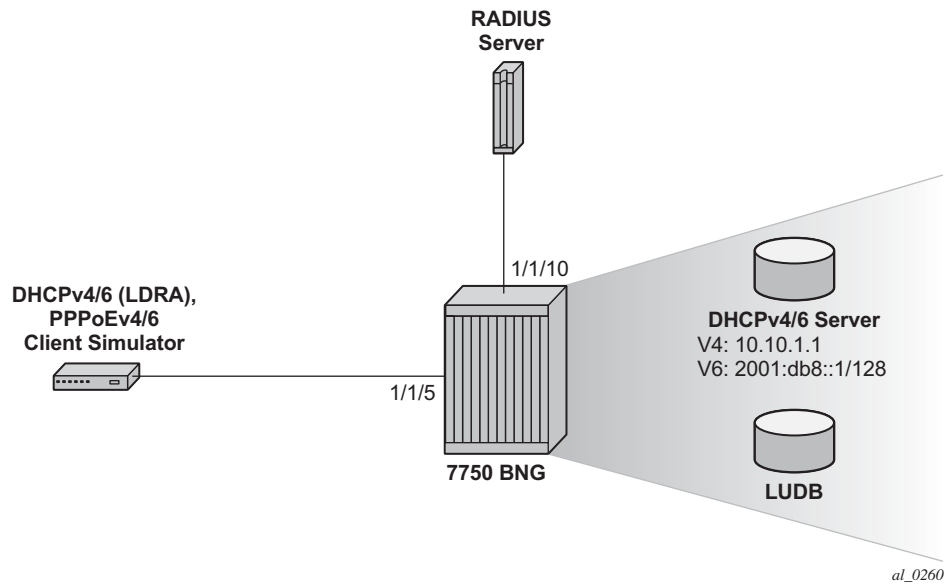


Figure 142: Topology

There is a common part of the configuration that applies uniformly across all four examined scenarios. This common part is outlined below and will not be repeated again when we describe more specific cases. It is assumed that the more specific cases also contain this common part of the configuration.

Common Configuration Examples

Access Ethernet Port with QinQ Encapsulation

The following output displays a configuration example.

```
configure port 1/1/5
  ethernet
    mode access
    encap-type qinq
  exit
  no shutdown
```

Capture SAP

A capture SAP is used to dynamically detect the VLAN id(s) in incoming DHCP/PPPoE packets (triggering packets) and conditionally instantiate the managed (dynamic) SAP. LUDB must be configured under the capture SAP to authorize the user accessing the capture SAP. The LUDB may contain additional parameters needed to setup the subscriber, it can point the subscriber to the RADIUS server for additional parameters or it may contain a default subscriber-host entry without any configuration parameters.

In this case the **msap-defaults** under the capture SAP is used to select the routing context where the msap is created. **msap-defaults** can be also configured in the LUDB or be supplied via RADIUS.

PPPoE policy and *msap policy* are used to define PPPoE and SAP level parameters. Since the (dynamic) SAP does not exist at the time when the initial DHCP/PPPoE packets are received, the PPPoE/SAP level parameters are taken from the PPPoE/msap policy under the capture SAP. For example, those parameters are used in the PPP PADx/LCP/Authentication setup phase, they define default subscriber host strings, maximum number of subscriber hosts per SAP, the anti-spoofing mode, etc.

```
configure service vpls 2
  sap 1/1/5:17.* capture-sap create
  description "open DHCP model testing"
  trigger-packet dhcp dhcp6 pppoe
  dhcp-user-db "open-dhcp"
  dhcp6-user-db "open-dhcp"
  pppoe-policy "pppoe_pol"
  pppoe-user-db "open-dhcp"
  msap-defaults
    group-interface "open-auth"
  policy "msaps"
  service 10
  exit
exit
```


auto-sub-id

The **auto-sub-id-key** command can be used in situations where the more specific *subscriber-id* string is not returned from LUDB or RADIUS. In this case, the auto subscriber-id for IPoE hosts is set to the circuit-id while for PPPoE hosts the auto subscriber-id is set to the circuit-id plus session-id separated by the “|” delimiter which is inserted by default.

```
configure subscriber-mgmt auto-sub-id-key
  ipoe-sub-id-key circuit-id
  ppp-sub-id-key circuit-id session-id
```

PPPoE Policy

There is a maximum of PPPoE sessions per MAC on a managed SAP. The default is 1 but is increased here to 10.

```
configure subscriber-mgmt ppp-policy "pppoe_pol"
  ppp-mtu 1400
  max-sessions-per-mac 10
```

MSAP Policy

The MSAP policy defines the anti-spoofing mode which is in this particular example set to next-hop MAC (nh-mac). It also defines the default subscriber management parameters in case they are not supplied via LUDB or RADIUS.

```
configure subscriber-mgmt msap-policy <msap-policy-name> create
  sub-sla-mgmt
    def-sub-id use-auto-id
    def-sub-profile "default-sub-profile"
    def-sla-profile "default-sla"
    sub-ident-policy "sub_ident_pol"
    multi-sub-sap limit 500
  exit
  ies-vprn-only-sap-parameters
    anti-spoof nh-mac
  exit
```

subscriber-interface Configuration

The following output displays a subscriber interface configuration.

```
configure service vprn 10
  subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
    allow-unmatching-subnets
    address 10.12.0.1/24
    ipv6
      delegated-prefix-len 56
      allow-unmatching-prefixes
    exit
  group-interface "open-auth" create
    ipv6
      router-advertisements
        managed-configuration
        no shutdown
      exit
      dhcp6
        user-db "open-dhcp"
      exit
    exit
  arp-populate
  dhcp
    trusted
    lease-populate 1000
    user-db "open-dhcp"
  exit
  pppoe
    policy "pppoe_pol"
    session-limit 1000
    sap-session-limit 1000
    user-db "open-dhcp"
    no shutdown
  exit
```

Support for 'un-numbered'² IPv4 clients.
Default gateway for IPv4 'numbered' clients.

Fixed delegated prefix length for IA-PD.
Support for 'un-numbered' IPv6 clients.

Hint to the client to use DHCPv6.
Enabling Router-Advertisements.

Must be the same as under the capture-sap.

ARP table is populated based on the lease-state table.

Accept DHCP packets on this group-interface.
Max number of DHCPv4 clients on each SAP of this grp-intf.

Must be the same as under the capture-sap.

Must be the same as under the capture-sap.

-
2. numbered/unnumbered subscriber-hosts. Refer to the DHCP/PPPoE clients whose assigned IP address is outside of any IP subnet/prefix configured under the subscriber-interface.

Specific Configuration Parts

DHCP Relay Case with No Authentication

The IP address is assigned via local DHCP server. The LUDB is accessed even in the scenario without authentication. There must be a default host LUDB entry present that will match on any value specified in the match-list criteria. The LUDB is accessed from the capture SAP (part of the common configuration).

```
configure subscriber-mgmt local-user-db "open-dhcp" create
  dhcp
    match-list circuit-id
    host "default" create
    no shutdown
  exit
  exit
  ppp
    match-list username
    host "default" create force-ipv6cp
    no shutdown
  exit
  exit
  no shutdown
```

Host matching based on circuit-id in DHCP packets.

Host matching based on PPPoE username.
Explicitly enabled IPCPv6.

Once the routing context (service id and group-interface) is determined as defined under the capture SAP defaults (part of the common configuration), the DHCP/PPPoE requests are served according to the group-interface configuration. The IP address request is relayed to the DHCPv4/v6 server. Since the LUDB does not provide a pool name, the **gi-address** and the **link-address** is used by the DHCP relay/server to select the pool from which the IP address will be assigned.

```
configure service vprn 10 subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" group-interface "open-
auth" create
  ipv6
    dhcp6
    relay
    link-address 2001:DB8:1::
    server 2001:DB8::1
    client-applications dhcp ppp
    no shutdown
  exit
  exit
  exit
  dhcp
  server 10.10.1.1
  client-applications dhcp ppp
  gi-address 10.12.0.1
  no shutdown
  exit
```

DHCPv6 relay configuration.

DHCPv6 server IPv6 address.

DHCPv4 server IP address.

DHCPv4/v6 servers are locally configured in the 7x50 and attached to a loopback interface.

```
configure service vprn 10 interface "loop-dhcp-srvr"
  address 10.10.1.1/24IPv4      Address to which is DHCPv4 server attached.
  ipv6
    address 2001:DB8::1/128    IPv6 address to which is DHCPv6 server attached.
    local-dhcp-server "v6"     Attaching DHCPv6 server to the loopback intf.
    exit
  local-dhcp-server "local"     Attaching DHCPv4 server to the loopback intf.
  loopback
```

In the local DHCP servers two pools are defined:

- **LUDB** — To be used for IP address assignment when LUDB returns the pool name.
- **Gi-addr** — To be used when gi-address/link-address are used to select the pool for IP address assignment.

Lease times for IPv4 and IPv6 are configured in the local DHCP server which is used only in the relay case (when the IP address is supplied via DHCP server and not through RADIUS or the LUDB).

```
configure service vprn 10
  dhcp
    local-dhcp-server "local" create
    use-gi-address          The gi-address can be used to select the pool .
    use-pool-from-client    The pool name can be explicitly provided.
    pool "ludb" create      The pool used when LUDB provides the pool name.
    options
      dns-server 172.16.16.16 172.16.16.17
      lease-time hrs 1        DHCPv4 lease time.
    exit
    subnet 10.10.0.0/24 create
    options
      subnet-mask 255.255.255.0
      default-router 10.10.0.1
    exit
    address-range 10.10.0.100 10.10.0.200
    exit
  exit
  pool "gi-addr" create      Pool selected based on the gi-address.
  options
    dns-server 172.16.16.16 172.16.16.17
    lease-time hrs 1        DHCPv4 lease time.
  exit
  subnet 10.12.0.0/24 create
  options
    subnet-mask 255.255.255.0
    default-router 10.12.0.1
  exit
  address-range 10.12.0.100 10.12.0.200
  exit
  exit
  no shutdown
  exit
```

```

exit
dhcp6
    local-dhcp-server "v6" create
        use-link-address
        use-pool-from-client
        pool "ludb" create
        prefix 2001:DB8:10::/48 pd wan-host create
            preferred-lifetime min 30
            rebind-timer min 20
            renew-timer min 15
            valid-lifetime hrs 1      DHCPv6 lease time.
            options
                dns-server 2001:DB8::1000 2001:DB8::1001
            exit
        exit
    pool "gi-addr" create
        prefix 2001:DB8:30::/48 pd wan-host create
            preferred-lifetime min 30
            rebind-timer min 20
            renew-timer min 15
            valid-lifetime hrs 1      DHCPv6 lease time.
            options
                dns-server 2001:DB8::1000 2001:DB8::1001
            exit
        exit
    exit
    exit
no shutdown

```

Default sub/sla-profiles, from the msap-policy, are used (part of the common configuration).

```

configure subscriber-mgmt sla-profile "default-sla"
description "default SLA profile"
    host-limit 3

configure subscriber-mgmt sub-profile "default-sub-profile"
description "default SUB profile"
    egress
        agg-rate-limit 1000
    exit

```

Show Commands

The following command shows that the default sub/sla-profiles are in use, that the IP addresses are selected from the gi-addr pool in local DHCP server and that the subscriber-id is set to circuit-id for the IPoE subscriber-host and to *username|session-id* combination for the PPPoE subscriber-host.

```
A:BNG-1# show service active-subscribers
=====
Active Subscribers
=====
-----
Subscriber open-dhcp (default-sub-profile)
-----
(1) SLA Profile Instance sap:[1/1/5:17.10] - sla:default-sla
-----
IP Address
MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin
-----
10.12.0.101
00:00:65:17:10:01 N/A      DHCP
2001:DB8:30::1/128
00:00:65:17:10:01 N/A      IPoE-DHCP6
2001:DB8:30:100::/56
00:00:65:17:10:01 N/A      IPoE-DHCP6
-----
Subscriber open-pppoe|2 (default-sub-profile)
-----
(1) SLA Profile Instance sap:[1/1/5:17.11] - sla:default-sla
-----
IP Address
MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin
-----
10.12.0.100
00:00:65:17:11:02 2      IPCP
2001:DB8:30:1::1/128
00:00:65:17:11:02 2      PPP-DHCP6
2001:DB8:30:200::/56
00:00:65:17:11:02 2      PPP-DHCP6
-----
Number of active subscribers : 2
```

The following command shows more details about the subscriber-host, such as the group-interface, address origin, acct-session-id, etc. Even though there are only two dual-stack hosts (one IPoE and one PPPoE), each of them has 3 IP addresses that show up as different hosts.

For the purpose of brevity, the output for only two IP hosts are shown, one with an IPv4 address and one with an IPv6 address. The remaining IP addresses/prefixes are not shown since the output follows the same logic.

```
A:BNG-1# show service id 10 subscriber-hosts detail
=====
Subscriber Host table
=====
Sap                Subscriber
  IP Address
  MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin      Fwding State
-----
[1/1/5:17.10]      open-dhcp
  10.12.0.101
    00:00:65:17:10:01    N/A      DHCP      Fwding
-----
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : open-auth
Sub Profile           : default-sub-profile
SLA Profile           : default-sla
App Profile           : N/A
Egress Q-Group        : policer-output-queues
Egress Vport          : N/A
Acct-Session-Id       : D897FF0000000F51DBC5A7
Acct-Q-Inst-Session-Id: D897FF00000001051DBC5A7
Address Origin        : DHCP
OT HTTP Rdr IP-FltrId : N/A
OT HTTP Rdr Status    : N/A
OT HTTP Rdr Fltr Src  : N/A
-----
[1/1/5:17.11]      open-pppoe|2
  2001:DB8:30:1::1/128
    00:00:65:17:11:02    2        PPP-DHCP6    Fwding
-----
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : open-auth
Sub Profile           : default-sub-profile
SLA Profile           : default-sla
App Profile           : N/A
Egress Q-Group        : policer-output-queues
Egress Vport          : N/A
Acct-Session-Id       : D897FF00000001351DBC5BA
Acct-Q-Inst-Session-Id: D897FF00000000E51DBC59C
Address Origin        : DHCP
OT HTTP Rdr IP-FltrId : N/A
OT HTTP Rdr Status    : N/A
OT HTTP Rdr Fltr Src  : N/A
-----
Number of subscriber hosts : 6          The remaining 4 hosts are not shown here...
=====
```

Common Configuration Examples

The following command shows that there are no sub/sla-profile strings assigned to the subscriber. Instead the default sub/sla-profiles from the msap-policy are used.

The IP address is assigned by the DHCP server which also supplied the def-gw information, DNS servers, the net-mask and the lease time.

The circuit-id and the subscriber-id are set to the same value.

```
A:BNG-1# show service id 10 dhcp lease-state detail
=====
DHCP lease states for service 10
=====
Service ID           : 10
IP Address           : 10.12.0.101
Client HW Address    : 00:00:65:17:10:01
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : open-auth
SAP                  : [1/1/5:17.10]
Up Time              : 0d 00:04:01
Remaining Lease Time : 0d 00:56:00
Remaining SessionTime: N/A
Persistence Key      : N/A

Sub-Ident            : "open-dhcp"
Sub-Profile-String   : ""
SLA-Profile-String   : ""
App-Profile-String   : ""
Lease ANCP-String    : ""
Lease Int Dest Id    : ""
Category-Map-Name    : ""

Lease Info origin    : DHCP

Ip-Netmask           : 255.255.255.0
Broadcast-Ip-Addr    : N/A
Default-Router       : 10.12.0.1
Primary-Dns          : 172.16.16.16
Secondary-Dns        : 172.16.16.17
Primary-Nbns         : N/A
Secondary-Nbns       : N/A

ServerLeaseStart     : 07/09/2013 01:11:19
ServerLastRenew      : 07/09/2013 01:11:19
ServerLeaseEnd       : 07/09/2013 02:11:19
Session-Timeout      : N/A
Lease-Time            : 0d 01:00:00
DHCP Server Addr     : 10.10.1.1

Relay Agent Information
  Circuit Id         : open-dhcp
  Remote Id          : ipoe-v6
  Radius User-Name   : ""
-----
Number of lease states : 1
=====
```


Then there is a similar command used for DHCPv6 lease-state details.

For the purpose of brevity, the output for only two IPv6 leases is shown. The remaining two IPv6 leases are not shown since the output follows the same logic.

```
A:BNG-1# show service id 10 dhcp6 lease-state detail
=====
DHCP lease states for service 10
=====
Service ID           : 10
IP Address           : 2001:DB8:30::1/128
Client HW Address    : 00:00:65:17:10:01
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : open-auth
SAP                  : [1/1/5:17.10]
Up Time              : 0d 00:44:50
Remaining Lease Time : 0d 00:45:10
Remaining SessionTime: N/A
Persistence Key       : N/A

Sub-Ident            : "open-dhcp"
Sub-Profile-String    : ""
SLA-Profile-String    : ""
App-Profile-String    : ""
Lease ANCP-String     : ""
Lease Int Dest Id     : ""
Category-Map-Name     : ""
Dhcp6 ClientId (DUID) : 00030001000065171001
Dhcp6 IAID           : 0
Dhcp6 IAID Type       : non-temporary
Dhcp6 Client Ip       : FE80::200:65FF:FE17:1001
Primary-Dns           : N/A
Secondary-Dns         : N/A
Pool Name             : ""
Dhcp6 Server Addr     : 2001:DB8::1
Dhcp6 ServerId (DUID) : 00030001d897ff000000
Dhcp6 InterfaceId     : open-dhcp
Dhcp6 RemoteId        : 0000ipoe-v6

Lease Info origin     : DHCP

ServerLeaseStart      : 07/09/2013 01:11:28
ServerLastRenew       : 07/09/2013 01:41:28
ServerLeaseEnd        : 07/09/2013 02:41:28      One hour lease time.
Session-Timeout       : N/A
Radius User-Name      : ""
-----
Service ID           : 10
IP Address           : 2001:DB8:30:1::1/128
Client HW Address    : 00:00:65:17:11:02
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : open-auth
SAP                  : [1/1/5:17.11]
Up Time              : 0d 00:44:40
Remaining Lease Time : 0d 00:45:20
Remaining SessionTime: N/A
Persistence Key       : N/A
```

Common Configuration Examples

```
Sub-Ident          : "open-pppoe|2"
Sub-Profile-String : ""
SLA-Profile-String : ""
App-Profile-String : ""
Lease ANCP-String  : ""
Lease Int Dest Id  : ""
Category-Map-Name  : ""
Dhcp6 ClientId (DUID) : 00030001000065171102
Dhcp6 IAID         : 0
Dhcp6 IAID Type    : non-temporary
Dhcp6 Client Ip    : FE80::200:65FF:FE17:1102
Primary-Dns        : N/A
Secondary-Dns      : N/A
Pool Name          : ""
Dhcp6 Server Addr  : 2001:DB8::1
Dhcp6 ServerId (DUID) : 00030001d897ff000000
Dhcp6 InterfaceId  : open-pppoe
Dhcp6 RemoteId     : N/A
```

```
Lease Info origin  : DHCP
```

```
ServerLeaseStart   : 07/09/2013 01:11:38
ServerLastRenew    : 07/09/2013 01:41:38
ServerLeaseEnd     : 07/09/2013 02:41:38
Session-Timeout    : N/A
Radius User-Name    : ""
```

```
-----
Number of lease states : 4                      The remaining 2 leases are not shown here.
```

```
=====
```

DHCP Relay Case with LUDB + RADIUS Authentication

IP address is assigned via local DHCP server.

- RADIUS provides sub/sla-profile strings and a framed IPv4 route.
- LUDB provides IP address pool, inter-dest-id string for Vport assignment, msap-defaults (routing context parameters and msap-policy).

Vport aggregate rate limit and the port scheduler are now added to the physical port. The Vport is associated with the subscriber through the inter-dest-id string obtained via LUDB.

```
configure port 1/1/5
  ethernet
  mode access
  encap-type qinq
  egress-scheduler-policy "port"
  access
    egress
      vport "open-dhcp" create
      agg-rate-limit 500
      host-match dest "open-auth-vport" create
    exit
  exit
exit
no shutdown
exit
```

The LUDB is used to assign the IP pool name (pool-name = luidb) and the inter-dest-id string (inter-dest-id = open-auth-vport) to the subscriber. The pool name is carried to the DHCP server via custom DHCP options [(82,9,13) in DHCPv4 and (17,1->wan_pool and 2->pfx_pool) in DHCPv6].

The domain name *alu-domain* is appended to the username (circuit-id = open-dhcp or username = open-pppoe) before an Access-Request message is sent to the RADIUS server which is configured in the authentication policy *open-dhcp*.

The inter-dest-id string taken from the LUDB is passed to the subscriber management module in the 7x50 via DHCP option 254 in DHCP ACK/Reply.

```
configure subscriber-mgmt local-user-db "open-dhcp"
local-user-db "open-dhcp" create
  dhcp
    match-list circuit-id
    host "open-dhcp" create
      host-identification
      circuit-id string "open-dhcp"
    exit
    address pool "luidb"
    auth-policy "open-dhcp"
    auth-domain-name "alu-domain"
    identification-strings 254 create
      inter-dest-id "open-auth-vport"
```

Common Configuration Examples

```
        exit
    msap-defaults
        group-interface "open-auth"
        policy "msaps"
        service 10
    exit
    ipv6-wan-address-pool "ludb"
    ipv6-delegated-prefix-pool "ludb"
    no shutdown
exit
exit
ppp
    match-list circuit-id username
    host "open-ppp" create
        host-identification
            username "open-pppoe"
        exit
        auth-policy "open-dhcp"
        address pool "ludb"
        password chap "ALU" hash2
        identification-strings 254 create
            inter-dest-id "open-auth-vport"
        exit
    msap-defaults
        group-interface "open-auth"
        policy "msaps"
        service 10
    exit
    ipv6-delegated-prefix-pool "ludb"
    ipv6-wan-address-pool "ludb"
    no shutdown
exit
exit
no shutdown
exit
```

The *inter-dest-id* string taken from the LUDB is passed to the subscriber management module in the 7x50 via DHCPv4/v6 option 254 that is specified in the subscriber identification policy.

```
configure subscriber-mgmt sub-ident-policy "sub_ident_pol"
    strings-from-option 254
```

The RADIUS server is defined in the authentication policy. The domain name can be appended to the PPPoE subscriber host directly via the authentication-policy while for IPoE subscribers, the domain name is appended via the authentication-policy in conjunction with the LUDB. This can be verified in the output (shown later) of the **show service id 10 dhcp lease-state detail** and **show service id 10 dhcp6 lease-state detail** commands (on the “radius user-name” line).

```
configure subscriber-mgmt authentication-policy "open-dhcp"
password "ALU" hash2
    ppp-user-name append "alu-domain"
    radius-authentication-server
        server 1 address X.Y.Z.W secret "ALU" hash2
    exit
    user-name-format circuit-id append
    pppoe-access-method pap-chap
```

The RADIUS user configuration file uses the domain-name extension, as inserted by the 7x50 BNG, to authenticate the user:

```
open-dhcp@alu-domain  Cleartext-Password := "ALU"
                        Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str = rad-sub,           Subscriber profile string.
                        Alc-SLA-Prof-Str = rad-sla,             SLA profile string.
                        Framed-Route = "192.168.1.0/24 0.0.0.0" Managed IPv4 route.
                        Fall-Through = No

open-pppoe@alu-domain  Cleartext-Password := "ALU"
                        Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str = rad-sub,
                        Alc-SLA-Prof-Str = rad-sla,
                        Framed-Route = "192.168.2.0/24 0.0.0.0",
                        Fall-Through = No
```

DHCPv4/v6 servers are locally configured in the 7x50 and attached to a loopback interface:

```
configure service vprn 10 interface "loop-dhcp-srvr"
  address 10.10.1.1/24                               IPv4 address to which is DHCPv4 server attached.
  ipv6
  address 2001:DB8::1/128                             IPv6 address to which is DHCPv6 server attached.
    local-dhcp-server "v6"                             Attaching DHCPv6 server to the loopback intf.
  exit
  local-dhcp-server "local"                             Attaching DHCPv4 server to the loopback intf.
  loopback
```

Group-interface configuration. Note that common parts of the configuration as defined earlier, still apply:

```
configure service vprn 10 subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" group-interface "open-auth"
  dhcp6
    user-db "open-dhcp"
    relay
      link-address 2001:DB8:30::
      server 2001:DB8::1
        client-applications dhcp ppp
        no shutdown
      exit
    exit
  dhcp
    option
      no circuit-id
      no remote-id
    vendor-specific-option
      pool-name
    exit
  exit
  server 10.10.1.1
  client-applications dhcp ppp
  no shutdown
  exit

exit
```

Common Configuration Examples

Lease times for IPv4 and IPv6 are configured in the local DHCP server. Lease times under the local DHCP server are used only in the relay case (when IP address is supplied via DHCP server and NOT RADIUS or LUDb). In the proxy case the lease times can be obtained via LUDb, RADIUS or group-interface.

```
configure service vprn 10
dhcp
    local-dhcp-server "local" create
    use-gi-address                gi-address can be used to select the pool.
    use-pool-from-client          pool name can be explicitly provided.
    pool "ludb" create            pool used when LUDb provides the pool name.
    options
        dns-server 172.16.16.16 172.16.16.17
        lease-time hrs 1
    exit
    subnet 10.10.0.0/24 create
    options
        subnet-mask 255.255.255.0
        default-router 10.10.0.1
    exit
    address-range 10.10.0.100 10.10.0.200
    exit
exit
pool "gi-addr" create            pool selected based on the gi-address.
options
    dns-server 172.16.16.16 172.16.16.17
    lease-time hrs 1
exit
    subnet 10.12.0.0/24 create
options
    subnet-mask 255.255.255.0
    default-router 10.12.0.1
exit
    address-range 10.12.0.100 10.12.0.200
exit
exit
no shutdown
exit
exit
dhcp6
    local-dhcp-server "v6" create
    use-link-address
    use-pool-from-client
    pool "ludb" create
        prefix 2001:DB8:10::/48 pd wan-host create
            preferred-lifetime min 30
            rebind-timer min 20
            renew-timer min 15
            valid-lifetime hrs 1
        options
            dns-server 2001:DB8::1000 2001:DB8::1001
        exit
    exit
exit
pool "gi-addr" create
    prefix 2001:DB8:30::/48 pd wan-host create
        preferred-lifetime min 30
        rebind-timer min 20
```

```

        renew-timer min 15
        valid-lifetime hrs 1
        options
            dns-server 2001:DB8::1000 2001:DB8::1001
        exit
    exit
    exit
    no shutdown
    exit
exit

```

RADIUS sub/sla-profiles supplied via RADIUS are used:

```

configure subscriber-mgmt sla-profile "rad-sla"
    description "sla-profile obtained via RADIUS"
    host-limit 100
    egress
    qos 10 vport-scheduler
        exit
        ip-filter 10
    exit
exit
exit

configure subscriber-mgmt sub-profile "rad-sub"
    description "sub-profile obtained via RADIUS"
    egress
        agg-rate-limit 15000
    exit
exit

```

Show Commands

The following command shows that the rad-sub/sla-profiles, as supplied via RADIUS, are in use.

The IP addresses are selected from the pool-name LUDB in the local DHCP server. The subscriber-id is *circuit-id* for IPoE subscriber-host and the *username|session-id* combination for PPPoE subscriber host.

```
A:BNG-1#show service active-subscribers
=====
Active Subscribers
=====
-----
Subscriber open-dhcp (rad-sub)
-----
-----
(1) SLA Profile Instance sap:[1/1/5:17.10] - sla:rad-sla
-----
IP Address
MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin
-----
10.10.0.101
00:00:65:17:10:01 N/A      DHCP
2001:DB8:10:1::1/128
00:00:65:17:10:01 N/A      IPoE-DHCP6
2001:DB8:10:200::/56
00:00:65:17:10:01 N/A      IPoE-DHCP6
-----
Subscriber open-pppoe|3 (rad-sub)
-----
-----
(1) SLA Profile Instance sap:[1/1/5:17.11] - sla:rad-sla
-----
IP Address
MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin
-----
10.10.0.100
00:00:65:17:11:02 3      IPCP
2001:DB8:10::1/128
00:00:65:17:11:02 3      PPP-DHCP6
2001:DB8:10:100::/56
00:00:65:17:11:02 3      PPP-DHCP6
-----
Number of active subscribers : 2
-----
```


The following command shows more details about the subscriber-host, such as the group-interface, vport, address origin, acct-session-id, etc. Vport is selected based on the *inter-dest-id* string supplied via the LUDB.

For the purpose of brevity, the output for only two IP addresses **hosts** is shown, one with an IPv4 address and one with an IPv6 address. The remaining IP addresses/prefixes are not shown since the output follows the same logic.

```
A:BNG-1# show service id 10 subscriber-hosts detail
=====
Subscriber Host table
=====
Sap                Subscriber
  IP Address
  MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin      Fwding State
-----
[1/1/5:17.10]      open-dhcp
  10.10.0.101
    00:00:65:17:10:01    N/A      DHCP      Fwding
-----
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : open-auth
Sub Profile          : rad-sub
SLA Profile          : rad-sla
App Profile          : N/A
Egress Q-Group       : policer-output-queues
Egress Vport         : open-dhcp
Acct-Session-Id      : D897FF0000000551D308B2
Acct-Q-Inst-Session-Id: D897FF0000000651D308B2
Address Origin       : DHCP
OT HTTP Rdr IP-FltrId : N/A
OT HTTP Rdr Status   : N/A
OT HTTP Rdr Fltr Src  : N/A
-----
[1/1/5:17.11]      open-pppoe | 3
  2001:DB8:10::1/128
    00:00:65:17:11:02    3      PPP-DHCP6    Fwding
-----
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : open-auth
Sub Profile          : rad-sub
SLA Profile          : rad-sla
App Profile          : N/A
Egress Q-Group       : policer-output-queues
Egress Vport         : open-dhcp
Acct-Session-Id      : D897FF0000000351D308AF
Acct-Q-Inst-Session-Id: D897FF0000000251D308A9
Address Origin       : DHCP
OT HTTP Rdr IP-FltrId : N/A
OT HTTP Rdr Status   : N/A
OT HTTP Rdr Fltr Src  : N/A
-----
```

Common Configuration Examples

The following command shows that the subscriber identity is set to *circuit-id* (plus session-id) as instructed by **auto-sub-id-key** command (subscriber-id string is not returned via the LUDB or RADIUS). The lease times are set to 1h as defined in the DHCP server. The username passed to RADIUS is a *circuit-id* or a *username* appended by the *alu-dmain* domain name.

```
A:BNG-1# show service id 10 dhcp lease-state detail
```

```
=====
DHCP lease states for service 10
=====
```

```
Service ID           : 10
IP Address           : 10.10.0.101
Client HW Address    : 00:00:65:17:10:01
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : open-auth
SAP                  : [1/1/5:17.10]
Up Time              : 0d 00:12:45
Remaining Lease Time : 0d 00:47:16
Remaining SessionTime: N/A
Persistence Key      : N/A
```

```
Sub-Ident            : "open-dhcp"
Sub-Profile-String   : "rad-sub"
SLA-Profile-String   : "rad-sla"
App-Profile-String   : ""
Lease ANCP-String    : ""
Lease Int Dest Id    : "open-auth-vport"
Category-Map-Name    : ""
```

```
Lease Info origin    : DHCP
```

```
Ip-Netmask           : 255.255.255.0
Broadcast-Ip-Addr    : N/A
Default-Router        : 10.10.0.1
Primary-Dns           : 172.16.16.16
Secondary-Dns         : 172.16.16.17
Primary-Nbns          : N/A
Secondary-Nbns        : N/A
```

```
ServerLeaseStart      : 07/02/2013 10:06:58
ServerLastRenew       : 07/02/2013 10:06:58
ServerLeaseEnd        : 07/02/2013 11:06:58
Session-Timeout       : N/A
Lease-Time             : 0d 01:00:00
DHCP Server Addr      : 10.10.1.1
```

```
Relay Agent Information
```

```
  Circuit Id         : open-dhcp
  Remote Id          : ipoe-v6
  Radius User-Name    : "open-dhcp@alu-domain"
```

```
Managed Routes      : 192.168.1.0/24          installed
```

```
-----
Number of lease states : 1
=====
```

For the purpose of brevity the output for only two IPv6 leases is shown. The remaining two IPv6 leases are not shown since the output follows the same logic.

```
A:BNG-1# show service id 10 dhcp6 lease-state detail
```

```
=====
DHCP lease states for service 10
=====
```

```
Service ID      : 10
IP Address      : 2001:DB8:10::1/128
Client HW Address : 00:00:65:17:11:02
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface  : open-auth
SAP              : [1/1/5:17.11]
Up Time         : 0d 00:13:00
Remaining Lease Time : 0d 00:47:00
Remaining SessionTime: N/A
Persistence Key   : N/A
```

```
Sub-Ident       : "open-pppoe|3"
Sub-Profile-String : "rad-sub"
SLA-Profile-String : "rad-sla"
App-Profile-String : ""
Lease ANCP-String : ""
Lease Int Dest Id : "open-auth-vport"
Category-Map-Name : ""
Dhcp6 ClientId (DUID) : 00030001000065171102
Dhcp6 IAID      : 0
Dhcp6 IAID Type  : non-temporary
Dhcp6 Client Ip   : FE80::200:65FF:FE17:1102
Primary-Dns       : N/A
Secondary-Dns     : N/A
Pool Name         : "ludb"
Dhcp6 Server Addr : 2001:DB8::1
Dhcp6 ServerId (DUID) : 00030001d897ff000000
Dhcp6 InterfaceId : open-pppoe
Dhcp6 RemoteId    : N/A
```

```
Lease Info origin : DHCP
```

```
ServerLeaseStart : 07/02/2013 10:06:55
ServerLastRenew  : 07/02/2013 10:06:55
ServerLeaseEnd    : 07/02/2013 11:06:55
Session-Timeout   : N/A
Radius User-Name  : "open-pppoe@alu-domain"
```

```
-----
Service ID      : 10
IP Address      : 2001:DB8:10:1::1/128
Client HW Address : 00:00:65:17:10:01
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface  : open-auth
SAP              : [1/1/5:17.10]
Up Time         : 0d 00:12:52
Remaining Lease Time : 0d 00:47:08
Remaining SessionTime: N/A
Persistence Key   : N/A
```

```
Sub-Ident       : "open-dhcp"
Sub-Profile-String : "rad-sub"
```

Common Configuration Examples

```
SLA-Profile-String      : "rad-sla"
App-Profile-String      : ""
Lease ANCP-String       : ""
Lease Int Dest Id       : "open-auth-vport"
Category-Map-Name       : ""
Dhcp6 ClientId (DUID)   : 00030001000065171001
Dhcp6 IAID              : 0
Dhcp6 IAID Type         : non-temporary
Dhcp6 Client Ip         : FE80::200:65FF:FE17:1001
Primary-Dns             : N/A
Secondary-Dns           : N/A
Pool Name               : "ludb"
Dhcp6 Server Addr       : 2001:DB8::1
Dhcp6 ServerId (DUID)   : 00030001d897ff000000
Dhcp6 InterfaceId       : open-dhcp
Dhcp6 RemoteId          : 0000ipoe-v6

Lease Info origin       : DHCP

ServerLeaseStart        : 07/02/2013 10:07:03
ServerLastRenew         : 07/02/2013 10:07:03
ServerLeaseEnd          : 07/02/2013 11:07:03
Session-Timeout         : N/A
Radius User-Name        : "open-dhcp@alu-domain"
-----
```

IP Proxy Case with LUDB + RADIUS Authentication

IP address is assigned via RADIUS.

- RADIUS provides IP addresses³ and related parameters (DNS server, IPv4 default-gateway, etc), inter-dest-id string for Vport assignment and a framed route.
- LUDB provides sub/sla-profile strings and msap-defaults (routing context parameters and msap-policy).

Vport aggregate rate limit and the port scheduler are now added to the physical port. The Vport is associated with the subscriber through the inter-dest-id string obtained via the LUDB.

```
configure port 1/1/5
  ethernet
  mode access
  encaps-type qinq
  egress-scheduler-policy "port"
  access
    egress
      vport "open-dhcp" create
      agg-rate-limit 500
      host-match dest "open-auth-vport" create
    exit
  exit
exit
no shutdown
exit
```

The LUDB is used to assign the sub/sla-profile strings.

The domain name **alu-domain** is appended to the username (circuit-id = open-dhcp or username = open-pppoe) before an Access-Request is sent to the RADIUS server that is configured in the authentication policy **open-dhcp**.

3. IPv6 lease-times are provided under the group-interface.

Common Configuration Examples

```
local-user-db "open-dhcp" create
  ipoe
    match-list circuit-id
    host "open-dhcp" create
      host-identification
        circuit-id string "open-dhcp"
      exit
      auth-policy "open-dhcp"
      auth-domain-name "alu-domain"
      identification-strings 254 create
        sla-profile-string "ludb-sla"
        sub-profile-string "ludb-sub"
      exit
      msap-defaults
        group-interface "open-auth"
        policy "msaps"
        service 10
      exit
      no shutdown
    exit
  exit
ppp
  match-list circuit-id mac username
  host "open-ppp" create
    host-identification
      username "open-pppoe"
    exit
    auth-policy "open-dhcp"
    password chap "ALU" hash2
    identification-strings 254 create
      sla-profile-string "ludb-sla"
      sub-profile-string "ludb-sub"
    exit
    msap-defaults
      group-interface "open-auth"
      policy "msaps"
      service 10
    exit
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
no shutdown
exit
```

RADIUS is defined in the **authentication-policy**. The domain name can be appended to the PPPoE subscriber host directly via authentication-policy, while for IPoE subscribers the domain name is appended via authentication-policy in conjunction with LUDB.

```
configure subscriber-mgmt authentication-policy "open-dhcp"
password "ALU" hash2
    ppp-user-name append "alu-domain"
    radius-authentication-server
        server 1 address X.Y.Z.W secret "ALU" hash2
    exit
    user-name-format circuit-id append
    pppoe-access-method pap-chap
```

The RADIUS user configuration file uses the domain extension as inserted by the 7x50 BNG node to authenticate the user. The *inter-dest-id* string and the host IP address are provided by the RADIUS server (proxy case) along with other IP addressing parameters.

The IPv4 lease time (30 minutes) for IPv4 addresses are provided by the RADIUS server, while the lease time (30 minutes) for IPv6 addresses/prefixes are configured under the **group-interface**.

```
open-dhcp@alu-domain Cleartext-Password := "ALU"
    Alc-Int-Dest-Id-Str = open-auth-vport,
    Framed-IP-Address = 10.10.0.230,
    Framed-IP-Netmask = 255.255.255.0,
    Alc-Default-Router = 10.10.0.1,
    Alc-Lease-Time = 1800,
    Client-DNS-Pri = 172.16.20.20,
    Client-DNS-Sec = 172.16.20.21,
    Alc-IPv6-Address = 2001:db8::100,
    Delegated-IPv6-Prefix = 2001:DB8:40:100::/56,
    Alc-IPv6-Primary-Dns = 2001:DB8::2000,
    Alc-IPv6-Secondary-Dns = 2001:DB8::2001,
    Framed-Route = "192.168.1.0/24 0.0.0.0",
    Fall-Through = No

open-pppoe@alu-domain Cleartext-Password := "ALU"
    Alc-Int-Dest-Id-Str = open-auth-vport,
    Framed-IP-Address = 10.10.0.231,
    Framed-IP-Netmask = 255.255.255.255,
    Client-DNS-Pri = 172.16.20.20,
    Client-DNS-Sec = 172.16.20.21,
    Alc-IPv6-Address = 2001:db8:0:1::100,
    Delegated-IPv6-Prefix = 2001:DB8:40:200::/56,
    Alc-IPv6-Primary-Dns = 2001:DB8::2000,
    Alc-IPv6-Secondary-Dns = 2001:DB8::2001,
    Framed-Route = "192.168.2.0/24 0.0.0.0",
    Fall-Through = No
```

Common Configuration Examples

The group-interface configuration is shown below. Note that common parts of the configuration as defined earlier still apply.

```
configure service vprn 10 subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" group-interface "open-auth"
create
    ipv6
    dhcp6
        proxy-server
            renew-timer min 7
            rebind-timer min 10
            valid-lifetime min 30
            preferred-lifetime min 15
            client-applications dhcp ppp
            no shutdown
        exit
    exit
    dhcp
        proxy-server
            emulated-server 10.12.0.1
            no shutdown
        exit
    no shutdown
    exit
exit
```

RADIUS sub/sla-profiles supplied via the LUDB are used:

```
configure subscriber-mgmt sla-profile "ludb-sla"
    description "sla-profile obtained via LUDB"
    host-limit 100
    egress
        qos 10 vport-scheduler
    exit
ip-filter 10
exit

config>subscr-mgmt# sub-profile "ludb-sub"
description "sub-profile obtained via LUDB"
    egress
        agg-rate-limit 15000
    exit
```


Show Commands

The following command shows that the LUDB-sub/sla-profiles, as supplied via LUDB, are in use. The IP addresses are supplied via the RADIUS server. The subscriber-id is auto-generated (not returned via LUDB or RADIUS) and it is set to circuit-id for the IPoE subscriber-host, and to the *username|session-id* combination for PPPoE subscriber host.

```
*A:BNG-1# show service active-subscribers
=====
Active Subscribers
=====
-----
Subscriber open-dhcp (ludb-sub)
-----
(1) SLA Profile Instance sap:[1/1/5:17.10] - sla:ludb-sla
-----
IP Address
MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin
-----
10.10.0.230
00:00:65:17:10:01 N/A      DHCP
2001:DB8::100/128
00:00:65:17:10:01 N/A      IPoE-DHCP6
2001:DB8:40:100::/56
00:00:65:17:10:01 N/A      IPoE-DHCP6
-----
Subscriber open-pppoe|12 (ludb-sub)
-----
(1) SLA Profile Instance sap:[1/1/5:17.11] - sla:ludb-sla
-----
IP Address
MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin
-----
10.10.0.231
00:00:65:17:11:02 12      IPCP
2001:DB8::1:0:0:0:100/128
00:00:65:17:11:02 12      PPP-DHCP6
2001:DB8:40:200::/56
00:00:65:17:11:02 12      PPP-DHCP6
-----
Number of active subscribers : 2
-----
```

Common Configuration Examples

The following command shows more details about the subscriber-host, such as the group-interface, vport, address origin, acct-session-id, etc. Vport is selected based on the *inter-dest-id* string supplied via RADIUS.

For the purpose of brevity, the output for only two hosts is shown, one with IPv4 address and one with IPv6 prefix. The remaining IP addresses/prefixes are not shown since the output follows the same logic.

```
*A:BNG-1# show service id 10 subscriber-hosts detail
=====
Subscriber Host table
=====
Sap                Subscriber
  IP Address
  MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin      Fwding State
-----
[1/1/5:17.10]      open-dhcp
  10.10.0.230
    00:00:65:17:10:01    N/A      DHCP      Fwding
-----
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : open-auth
Sub Profile          : ludb-sub
SLA Profile          : ludb-sla
App Profile          : N/A
Egress Q-Group       : policer-output-queues
Egress Vport         : open-dhcp
Acct-Session-Id      : D897FF0000004751D31B6E
Acct-Q-Inst-Session-Id: D897FF0000004851D31B6E
Address Origin       : AAA
OT HTTP Rdr IP-FltrId : N/A
OT HTTP Rdr Status   : N/A
OT HTTP Rdr Fltr Src : N/A

-----
[1/1/5:17.11]      open-pppoe|12
  2001:DB8:40:200::/56
    00:00:65:17:11:02    12      PPP-DHCP6    Fwding
-----
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : open-auth
Sub Profile          : ludb-sub
SLA Profile          : ludb-sla
App Profile          : N/A
Egress Q-Group       : policer-output-queues
Egress Vport         : open-dhcp
Acct-Session-Id      : D897FF0000004651D31B6B
Acct-Q-Inst-Session-Id: D897FF0000004451D31B65
Address Origin       : AAA
OT HTTP Rdr IP-FltrId : N/A
OT HTTP Rdr Status   : N/A
OT HTTP Rdr Fltr Src : N/A

-----
Number of subscriber hosts : 6          The remaining 4 hosts are not shown here.
=====
```

The following command shows that the subscriber identity is set to *circuit-id* (plus *session-id*) as instructed by the **auto-sub-id-key** command (the *subscriber-id* string is not returned via LUDb or RADIUS). The lease times are set to 30 minutes as defined by RADIUS for IPv4 addresses and by the group-interface for IPv6 addresses/prefixes (proxy-case). The username passed to RADIUS is the circuit-id or username appended to the *alu-dmain* domain name.

The origin of the lease is RADIUS.

```
*A:BNG-1# show service id 10 dhcp lease-state detail
=====
DHCP lease states for service 10
=====
Service ID           : 10
IP Address           : 10.10.0.230
Client HW Address    : 00:00:65:17:10:01
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : open-auth
SAP                  : [1/1/5:17.10]
Up Time              : 0d 00:02:24
Remaining Lease Time : 0d 00:27:37
Remaining SessionTime: N/A
Persistence Key       : N/A

Sub-Ident             : "open-dhcp"
Sub-Profile-String    : "ludb-sub"
SLA-Profile-String    : "ludb-sla"
App-Profile-String    : ""
Lease ANCP-String     : ""
Lease Int Dest Id     : "open-auth-vport"
Category-Map-Name     : ""

Lease Info origin     : Radius

Ip-Netmask            : 255.255.255.0
Broadcast-Ip-Addr     : 10.10.0.255
Default-Router        : 10.10.0.1
Primary-Dns           : 172.16.20.20
Secondary-Dns         : 172.16.20.21
Primary-Nbns          : N/A
Secondary-Nbns        : N/A

ServerLeaseStart      : 07/02/2013 11:26:54
ServerLastRenew       : 07/02/2013 11:26:54
ServerLeaseEnd        : 07/02/2013 11:56:54
Session-Timeout       : N/A
Lease-Time            : 0d 00:30:00
DHCP Server Addr      : N/A

Relay Agent Information
  Circuit Id          : open-dhcp
  Remote Id           : ipoe-v6
  Radius User-Name    : "open-dhcp@alu-domain"

Managed Routes       : 192.168.1.0/24          installed
-----
Number of lease states : 1
=====
```

Common Configuration Examples

For the purpose of brevity, the output for only two IPv6 prefixes are shown. The remaining two IPv6 leases are not shown since the output follows the same logic.

```
*A:BNG-1# show service id 10 dhcp6 lease-state detail
=====
DHCP lease states for service 10
=====
Service ID           : 10
IP Address           : 2001:DB8:40:100::/56
Client HW Address    : 00:00:65:17:10:01
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : open-auth
SAP                  : [1/1/5:17.10]
Up Time              : 0d 00:02:32
Remaining Lease Time : 0d 00:27:28
Remaining SessionTime: N/A
Persistence Key       : N/A

Sub-Ident            : "open-dhcp"
Sub-Profile-String   : "ludb-sub"
SLA-Profile-String   : "ludb-sla"
App-Profile-String   : ""
Lease ANCP-String    : ""
Lease Int Dest Id    : "open-auth-vport"
Category-Map-Name    : ""
Dhcp6 ClientId (DUID): 00030001000065171001
Dhcp6 IAID           : 0
Dhcp6 IAID Type      : prefix
Dhcp6 Client Ip       : FE80::200:65FF:FE17:1001
Primary-Dns           : 2001:DB8::2000
Secondary-Dns         : 2001:DB8::2001
Pool Name             : ""
Dhcp6 Server Addr     : N/A
Dhcp6 ServerId (DUID): N/A
Dhcp6 InterfaceId     : open-dhcp
Dhcp6 RemoteId        : 0000ipoe-v6

Lease Info origin     : Radius

ServerLeaseStart      : 07/02/2013 11:26:58
ServerLastRenew       : 07/02/2013 11:26:58
ServerLeaseEnd        : 07/02/2013 11:56:58
Session-Timeout       : N/A
Radius User-Name      : "open-dhcp@alu-domain"
-----
Service ID           : 10
IP Address           : 2001:DB8:40:200::/56
Client HW Address    : 00:00:65:17:11:02
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : open-auth
SAP                  : [1/1/5:17.11]
Up Time              : 0d 00:02:39
Remaining Lease Time : 0d 00:27:21
Remaining SessionTime: N/A
Persistence Key       : N/A

Sub-Ident            : "open-pppoe|12"
Sub-Profile-String   : "ludb-sub"
```

```

SLA-Profile-String      : "ludb-sla"
App-Profile-String      : ""
Lease ANCP-String       : ""
Lease Int Dest Id       : "open-auth-vport"
Category-Map-Name       : ""
Dhcp6 ClientId (DUID)   : 00030001000065171102
Dhcp6 IAID              : 0
Dhcp6 IAID Type         : prefix
Dhcp6 Client Ip         : FE80::200:65FF:FE17:1102
Primary-Dns              : 2001:DB8::2000
Secondary-Dns            : 2001:DB8::2001
Pool Name                : ""
Dhcp6 Server Addr       : N/A
Dhcp6 ServerId (DUID)   : N/A
Dhcp6 InterfaceId       : open-pppoe
Dhcp6 RemoteId          : N/A

```

```

Lease Info origin       : Radius

```

```

ServerLeaseStart        : 07/02/2013 11:26:51
ServerLastRenew         : 07/02/2013 11:26:51
ServerLeaseEnd           : 07/02/2013 11:56:51
Session-Timeout         : N/A
Radius User-Name         : "open-pppoe@alu-domain"

```

```

-----
Number of lease states : 4                      The remaining two not shown in this output.
=====

```

IP Proxy Case with LUDB + RADIUS Authentication

P address is assigned via LUDB.

- RADIUS provides sub/sla-profile strings and a framed IPv4 route.
- LUDB provides IP addresses⁴ and related parameters (DNS server, IPv4 default-gateway, etc), inter-dest-id string for Vport assignment and msap-defaults (routing context parameters and msap-policy).

Vport aggregate rate limit and the port scheduler are now added to the physical port. The Vport is associated with the subscriber through the inter-dest-id string obtained via the LUDB.

```
configure port 1/1/5
  ethernet
  mode access
  encap-type qinq
  egress-scheduler-policy "port"
  access
    egress
      vport "open-dhcp" create
      agg-rate-limit 500
      host-match dest "open-auth-vport" create
    exit
  exit
exit
no shutdown
exit
```

The LUDB is used to assign the inter-dest-id string, host IP addresses and IP addressing parameters. The DHCP lease time for IPv4 addresses is set to 15 minutes in the LUDB while lease times for IPv6 addresses/prefixes is set under the group-interface (set to 30 minutes).

Domain name *alu-domain* is appended to the username (circuit-id = *open-dhcp* or username = *open-pppoe*) before an Access-Request is sent to the RADIUS server that is configured in the authentication-policy **open-dhcp**.

```
local-user-db "open-dhcp" create
  dhcp
    match-list circuit-id
    host "open-dhcp" create
    host-identification
      circuit-id string "open-dhcp"
    exit
    address 10.10.0.230
    auth-policy "open-dhcp"
    auth-domain-name "alu-domain"
    identification-strings 254 create
      inter-dest-id "open-auth-vport"
    exit
```

4. IPv6 lease-times are provided under the group-interface.

```

msap-defaults
  group-interface "open-auth"
  policy "msaps"
  service 10
exit
options
  subnet-mask 255.255.255.0
  default-router 10.10.0.254
  dns-server 172.16.20.20 172.16.20.21
  lease-time min 15
exit
options6
  dns-server 2001:DB8::2000 2001:DB8::2001
exit
ipv6-address 2001:DB8::100
ipv6-delegated-prefix 2001:DB8:40:100::/56
no shutdown
exit
exit

```

RADIUS is defined in the authentication-policy. The domain name can be appended to the PPPoE subscriber host directly via authentication-policy while for IPoE subscribers, the domain name is appended via authentication policy in conjunction with LUDB.

```

configure subscriber-mgmt authentication-policy "open-dhcp"
password "ALU" hash2
  ppp-user-name append "alu-domain"
  radius-authentication-server
    server 1 address X.Y.Z.W secret "ALU" hash2
  exit
  user-name-format circuit-id append
  pppoe-access-method pap-chap

```

The RADIUS user configuration file uses the domain extension as inserted by the 7x50 to authenticate the user.

```

open-dhcp@alu-domain Cleartext-Password := "ALU"
  Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str = rad-sub,
  Alc-SLA-Prof-Str = rad-sla,
  Framed-Route = "192.168.1.0/24 0.0.0.0",
  Fall-Through = No

open-pppoe@alu-domain Cleartext-Password := "ALU"
  Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str = rad-sub,
  Alc-SLA-Prof-Str = rad-sla,
  Framed-Route = "192.168.2.0/24 0.0.0.0",
  Fall-Through = No

```

Common Configuration Examples

The group interface configuration is shown below. Note that common parts of the configuration as defined earlier still apply.

```
configure service vprn 10 subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" group-interface "open-auth"
create
    ipv6
        dhcp6
            proxy-server
                renew-timer min 7
                rebind-timer min 10
                valid-lifetime min 30
                preferred-lifetime min 15
                client-applications dhcp ppp
                no shutdown
            exit
        exit
    exit
    dhcp
        proxy-server
            emulated-server 10.12.0.1
            no shutdown
        exit
    no shutdown
    exit
exit
```

RADIUS sub/sla-profiles supplied by RADIUS are defined as:

```
configure subscriber-mgmt sla-profile "rad-sla"
    description "sla-profile obtained via LUDB"
    host-limit 100
    egress
        qos 10 vport-scheduler
    exit
ip-filter 10
exit

configure subscriber-mgmt sub-profile "rad-sub"
description "sub-profile obtained via LUDB"
    egress
        agg-rate-limit 15000
    exit
```


Show Commands

The following command shows that the rad-sub/sla-profiles, as provided by RADIUS, are in use. The IP addresses are provided by LUDB. The *subscriber-id* is auto-generated (not returned via the LUDB or RADIUS) and it is set to *circuit-id* for IPoE subscriber-host(s) and to *username|session-id* combination for PPPoE subscriber host(s).

```
*A:BNG-1# show service active-subscribers
=====
Active Subscribers
=====
-----
Subscriber open-dhcp (rad-sub)
-----
(1) SLA Profile Instance sap:[1/1/5:17.10] - sla:rad-sla
-----
IP Address          MAC Address          PPPoE-SID Origin
-----
10.10.0.230         00:00:65:17:10:01 N/A          DHCP
2001:DB8::100/128   00:00:65:17:10:01 N/A          IPoE-DHCP6
2001:DB8:40:100::/56 00:00:65:17:10:01 N/A          IPoE-DHCP6
-----
Subscriber open-pppoe|1 (rad-sub)
-----
(1) SLA Profile Instance sap:[1/1/5:17.11] - sla:rad-sla
-----
IP Address          MAC Address          PPPoE-SID Origin
-----
10.10.0.231         00:00:65:17:11:02 1            IPCP
2001:DB8::1:0:0:0:100/128 00:00:65:17:11:02 1            PPP-DHCP6
2001:DB8:40:200::/56 00:00:65:17:11:02 1            PPP-DHCP6
-----
Number of active subscribers : 2
-----
```

Common Configuration Examples

The following command shows more details about the subscriber-host, such as the group-interface, vport, address origin, acct-session-id, etc. Vport is selected based on the *inter-dest-id* string as supplied via RADIUS.

For the purpose of brevity, the output for only two hosts is shown, one with IPv4 address and one with IPv6 prefix. The remaining IP addresses/prefixes are not shown since the output follows the same logic.

```
*A:BNG-1# show service id 10 subscriber-hosts detail
=====
Subscriber Host table
=====
Sap                Subscriber
  IP Address
  MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin      Fwding State
-----
[1/1/5:17.10]      open-dhcp
  10.10.0.230
    00:00:65:17:10:01    N/A      DHCP      Fwding
-----
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : open-auth
Sub Profile           : rad-sub
SLA Profile           : rad-sla
App Profile           : N/A
Egress Q-Group        : policer-output-queues
Egress Vport          : open-dhcp
Acct-Session-Id       : D897FF0000000051D48D5A
Acct-Q-Inst-Session-Id: D897FF00000000151D48D5A
Address Origin         : LUDB
OT HTTP Rdr IP-FltrId : N/A
OT HTTP Rdr Status     : N/A
OT HTTP Rdr Fltr Src   : N/A
-----
[1/1/5:17.11]      open-pppoe|1
  2001:DB8:40:200::/56
    00:00:65:17:11:02    1          PPP-DHCP6    Fwding
-----
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : open-auth
Sub Profile           : rad-sub
SLA Profile           : rad-sla
App Profile           : N/A
Egress Q-Group        : policer-output-queues
Egress Vport          : open-dhcp
Acct-Session-Id       : D897FF00000000851D48D66
Acct-Q-Inst-Session-Id: D897FF00000000651D48D61
Address Origin         : LUDB
OT HTTP Rdr IP-FltrId : N/A
OT HTTP Rdr Status     : N/A
OT HTTP Rdr Fltr Src   : N/A
-----
Number of subscriber hosts : 6                      The remaining 4 hosts are not shown here.
=====
```

The following command shows that the subscriber identity is set to circuit-id (plus session-id) as instructed by the **auto-sub-id-key** command (the *subscriber-id* string is not returned via the LUDB or RADIUS). The DHCPv4 lease time is set to 15 minutes as defined by the LUDB. The DHCPv6 lease times are set to 30 minutes as configured under the group-interface. The username passed to RADIUS is the circuit-id or username appended by the *alu-dmain* domain name.

The origin of the lease is RADIUS.

```
*A:BNG-1# show service id 10 dhcp lease-state detail
=====
DHCP lease states for service 10
=====
Service ID           : 10
IP Address           : 10.10.0.230
Client HW Address    : 00:00:65:17:10:01
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : open-auth
SAP                  : [1/1/5:17.10]
Up Time              : 0d 00:02:09
Remaining Lease Time : 0d 00:12:51
Remaining SessionTime: N/A
Persistence Key      : N/A

Sub-Ident            : "open-dhcp"
Sub-Profile-String   : "rad-sub"
SLA-Profile-String   : "rad-sla"
App-Profile-String   : ""
Lease ANCP-String    : ""
Lease Int Dest Id    : "open-auth-vport"
Category-Map-Name    : ""

Lease Info origin    : UserDb

Ip-Netmask           : 255.255.255.0
Broadcast-Ip-Addr    : 10.10.0.255
Default-Router       : 10.10.0.254
Primary-Dns          : 172.16.20.20
Secondary-Dns        : 172.16.20.21
Primary-Nbns         : N/A
Secondary-Nbns       : N/A

ServerLeaseStart     : 07/03/2013 13:45:14
ServerLastRenew      : 07/03/2013 13:45:14
ServerLeaseEnd       : 07/03/2013 14:00:14
Session-Timeout      : N/A
Lease-Time           : 0d 00:15:00
DHCP Server Addr     : N/A

Relay Agent Information
  Circuit Id         : open-dhcp
  Remote Id          : ipoe-v6
  Radius User-Name   : "open-dhcp@alu-domain"

Managed Routes      : 192.168.1.0/24          installed
-----
Number of lease states : 1
=====
```

Common Configuration Examples

For the purpose of brevity, the output for only two IPv6 leases is shown. The remaining two IPv6 leases are not shown since the output follows the same logic.

```
*A:BNG-1# show service id 10 dhcp6 lease-state detail
```

```
=====
DHCP lease states for service 10
=====
```

```
Service ID           : 10
IP Address           : 2001:DB8::100/128
Client HW Address    : 00:00:65:17:10:01
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : open-auth
SAP                  : [1/1/5:17.10]
Up Time              : 0d 00:02:17
Remaining Lease Time : 0d 00:27:43
Remaining SessionTime: N/A
Persistence Key      : N/A

Sub-Ident            : "open-dhcp"
Sub-Profile-String   : "rad-sub"
SLA-Profile-String   : "rad-sla"
App-Profile-String   : ""
Lease ANCP-String    : ""
Lease Int Dest Id    : "open-auth-vport"
Category-Map-Name    : ""
Dhcp6 ClientId (DUID): 00030001000065171001
Dhcp6 IAID           : 0
Dhcp6 IAID Type      : non-temporary
Dhcp6 Client Ip      : FE80::200:65FF:FE17:1001
Primary-Dns          : 2001:DB8::2000
Secondary-Dns        : 2001:DB8::2001
Pool Name            : ""
Dhcp6 Server Addr    : N/A
Dhcp6 ServerId (DUID): N/A
Dhcp6 InterfaceId    : open-dhcp
Dhcp6 RemoteId       : 0000ipoe-v6

Lease Info origin    : UserDb

ServerLeaseStart      : 07/03/2013 13:45:17
ServerLastRenew       : 07/03/2013 13:45:17
ServerLeaseEnd        : 07/03/2013 14:15:17
Session-Timeout       : N/A
Radius User-Name      : "open-dhcp@alu-domain"
```

```
-----
Service ID           : 10
IP Address           : 2001:DB8:40:200::/56
Client HW Address    : 00:00:65:17:11:02
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : open-auth
SAP                  : [1/1/5:17.11]
Up Time              : 0d 00:02:09
Remaining Lease Time : 0d 00:27:51
Remaining SessionTime: N/A
Persistence Key      : N/A
```

```
Sub-Ident            : "open-pppoe|1"
Sub-Profile-String   : "rad-sub"
```

```

SLA-Profile-String      : "rad-sla"
App-Profile-String      : ""
Lease ANCP-String       : ""
Lease Int Dest Id       : "open-auth-vport"
Category-Map-Name       : ""
Dhcp6 ClientId (DUID)   : 00030001000065171102
Dhcp6 IAID              : 0
Dhcp6 IAID Type         : prefix
Dhcp6 Client Ip         : FE80::200:65FF:FE17:1102
Primary-Dns              : 2001:DB8::2000
Secondary-Dns            : 2001:DB8::2001
Pool Name                : ""
Dhcp6 Server Addr       : N/A
Dhcp6 ServerId (DUID)   : N/A
Dhcp6 InterfaceId       : open-pppoe
Dhcp6 RemoteId          : N/A

```

```

Lease Info origin       : UserDb

```

```

ServerLeaseStart        : 07/03/2013 13:45:26
ServerLastRenew         : 07/03/2013 13:45:26
ServerLeaseEnd          : 07/03/2013 14:15:26
Session-Timeout         : N/A
Radius User-Name        : "open-pppoe@alu-domain"

```

```

-----
Number of lease states : 4                      The remaining lease states are not shown here.
=====

```

Troubleshooting Commands

The following output shows the debugging commands which can be used to troubleshoot problems with the different authentication models.

```
*A:BNG-1# show debug
debug
  router "Base"
    radius
      server-address X.Y.Z.Y
      packet-type authentication
      detail-level medium
    exit
  exit
  router "10"
    ip
      dhcp
        detail-level high
        mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
      exit
      dhcp6
        mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
        detail-level high
      exit
    exit
    local-dhcp-server "local"
      detail-level high
      mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
    exit
    local-dhcp-server "v6"
      detail-level high
      mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
    exit
  exit
  mirror-source 100
    port 1/1/5 egress ingress
    no shutdown
  exit
  service
    id 2
      dhcp
        mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
        detail-level high
        sap 1/1/5:17.*
      exit
      dhcp6
        mode all
        detail-level medium
        sap 1/1/5:17.*
      exit
    ppp
      packet
        mode dropped-only
        detail-level high
        discovery
        ppp
        dhcp-client
```

```
        exit
    exit
exit
id 10
    ppp
        packet
            mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
            detail-level high
            discovery
            ppp
            dhcp-client
        exit
    exit
exit
subscriber-mgmt
    local-user-db open-dhcp
    detail all
exit
exit
exit
```

Conclusion

The flexible authentication model allows access to various sources (LUDB, RADIUS, and Python) of subscriber parameters during the subscriber establishment phase. This model can be utilized for IPoE, PPPoE or L2TP subscribers in IES or VPRN services (including a wholesale/retail VRF model). A typical use case would be in a wholesale/retail environment where the wholesaler enforces its own rules via the LUDB before it passes the authentication request to the retailer's RADIUS server.

Ingress Multicast Path Management

In This Chapter

This section provides information about Ingress Multicast Path Management (IMPM).

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 886](#)
- [Summary on page 887](#)
- [Overview on page 888](#)
- [Configuration on page 893](#)
- [Conclusion on page 928](#)

Applicability

The information in this section is applicable to all Alcatel-Lucent 7x50 platforms configured with IOM1/2, IOM3-XP and IMMs line cards, but not to the SR-1, ESS-1, 7710 SR c-4/12 or the 7750 SR c-4/12. The configuration was tested on release 9.0R6. There are no pre-requisites for this configuration.

Summary

Ingress Multicast Path Management (IMPM) optimizes the IPv4 and IPv6 multicast capacity on the applicable systems with the goal of achieving the maximum system-wide IP multicast throughput. It controls the delivery of IPv4/IPv6 routed multicast groups and of VPLS (IGMP and PIM) snooped IPv4 multicast groups, which usually relate to the distribution of IP TV channels.

A description is also included of the use of IMPM resources by point-to-multipoint LSP IP multicast traffic, and policed ingress routed IP multicast or VPLS broadcast, unknown or multicast traffic. The system capacity for these traffic types can be increased even with IMPM disabled.

Overview

IMPM introduces the concept of paths on a line card (IOM/IMM) which connect to planes on the chassis switch fabric ([Figure 143](#)).

IMPM monitors the ingress rate of IP multicast channels (S,G¹ multicast streams) on line card paths and optimizes the use of the capacity of each switch fabric plane. Its goal is to forward as many channels as possible through the system in order to make maximum use of the switch fabric planes without incurring multicast packet loss. IMPM achieves this by moving entire multicast channels between the line card paths, and therefore between switch fabric planes, to achieve an optimal packing of channels onto path/planes. These actions take into consideration the total ingress multicast traffic being received by all line cards with IMPM enabled and a configured preference of each channel.

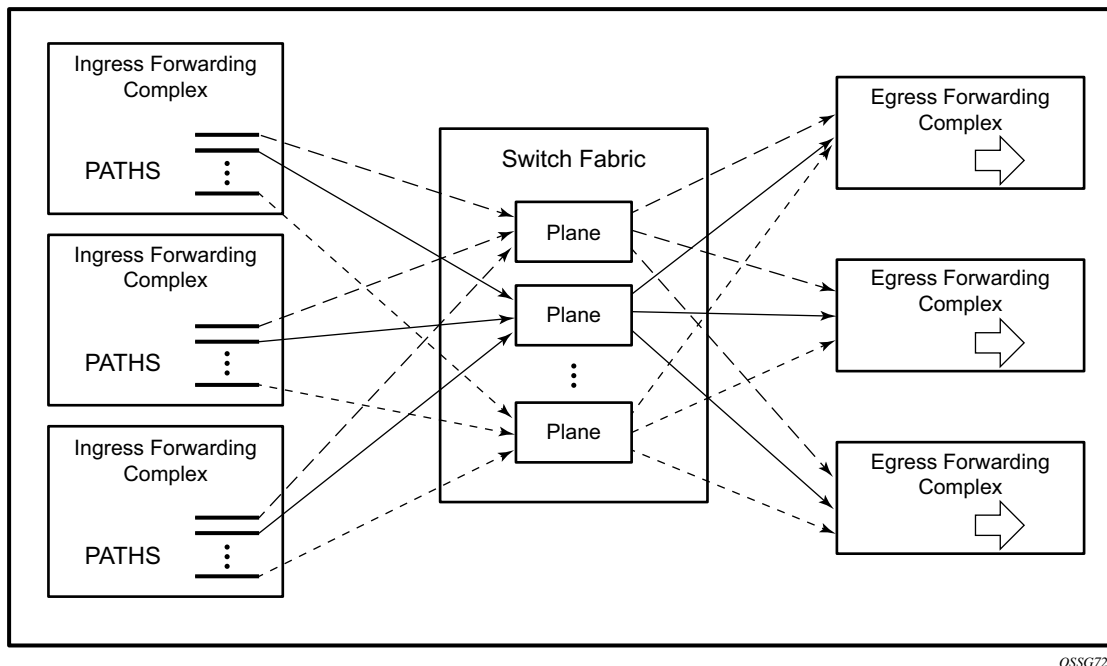


Figure 143: IOM/IMM Paths Connecting to Switch Fabric Planes

There are three types of path: primary, secondary and ancillary paths (the ancillary path is specific to the IOM1/2 and is discussed in [Ancillary Path on page 908](#)).

-
1. S,G refers to an individual multicast stream by referencing the source (S) and multicast group (G) used by the stream.

When a new channel is received on a line card for which there is an egress join, its traffic is initially placed on to a secondary path by default. IMPM monitors the channel's traffic rate and, after an initial monitoring period, can move the channel to another path (usually a primary path) on which sufficient capacity exists for the channel. IMPM constantly monitors all of the ingress channels and therefore keeps a picture of the current usage of all the line card paths and switch fabric planes. As new channels arrive, IMPM assigns them onto available capacity, which may involve moving existing channels between paths (and planes). If a channel stops, IMPM will be aware that more capacity is now available. If the traffic rate of any channel(s) changes, IMPM will continue to optimize the use of the path/planes.

In the case where there is insufficient plane capacity available for all ingress channels, entire channel(s) are blackholed (dropped) rather than allowing a random degradation across all channels. This action is based on a configurable channel preference with the lowest preference channel being dropped first. If path/plane capacity becomes available, then the blackholed channel(s) can be re-instated.

Paths and Planes

Each path connects to one plane on the switch fabric which is then used to replicate multicast traffic to the egress line cards. Further replication can occur on the egress line card but this is not related to IMPM so is not discussed.

Each plane has a physical connection to every line card and operates in full duplex mode allowing the possibility for traffic received on a plane from one line card path to be sent to every other line card, and back to the ingress line card (note that traffic is actually only sent to the line cards where it may exit). Therefore a given plane interconnects all line cards which allow ingress multipoint traffic from a line card with a path connected to this plane to be sent to multiple egress line cards.

Traffic could be sent by only one line card, or by multiple line cards simultaneously, on to a given plane. The total amount of traffic on a path or plane cannot exceed the capacity of that path or plane, respectively.

There could be more planes available on the switch fabrics than paths on the line cards. Conversely, there could be more total line card paths than planes available on the switch fabrics. In the latter case, the system distributes the paths as equally as possible over the available planes and multiple paths would be assigned to a given plane. Note that multiple paths of either type (primary or secondary) can terminate on a given plane.

The number of paths available per line card depends on the type of line card used whereas the number of planes on a system depends on the chassis type, the chassis mode (**a**, **b**, **c**, **d**) and the number of installed switch fabrics.

To clarify these concepts, consider a system with the following hardware installed.

Paths and Planes

```
A:PE-1# show card
=====
Card Summary
=====
Slot          Provisioned      Equipped      Admin   Operational   Comments
Card-type      Card-type      State      State
-----
6             iom3-xp        iom3-xp       up      up
7             imm8-10gb-xfp  imm8-10gb-xfp up      up
8             iom3-xp        iom3-xp       up      up
A             sfm4-12        sfm4-12       up      up/active
B             sfm4-12        sfm4-12       up      up/standby
=====
A:PE-1#
```

Output 1 shows the mapping of paths to switch fabric planes.

```
A:PE-1# show system switch-fabric high-bandwidth-multicast
=====
Switch Fabric
=====
Cap:          Planes:
Slot/Mda Min  Max  Hbm Grp  Hi | Lo
-----
6/1        100% 100% No  0    1  0  3  4  5  6  7  8  9 10 11 12 13 14 15 | 16
7/1        100% 100% No  0   19 17 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 | 33
8/1        100% 100% No  0   35 34 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47  0 |  1
A           100% 100% No  0    2 |  2
B           100% 100% No  0    2 |  2
=====
A:PE-1#
```

Output 1: Paths and Planes in Chassis Mode d

This system has two SF/CPM4s and is using chassis mode **d**, this creates 24 planes per SF/CPM4 to give a total of 48 planes which are numbered 0-47. The IOM3-XP/IMMs have 16 paths each which are connected to different planes. The SF/CPM4s together use a single plane and an additional plane (18, which is not in the output above) is used by the system itself. As there are more paths (3x16=48) in this configuration than available planes (48-2[system planes 2,18]=46), some planes are shared by multiple paths, namely planes 0 and 1. Note that the path to plane mapping can change after a reboot or after changing hardware.

The following output shows the equivalent information if an IOM2 is added to this configuration in slot 5. In order for the IOM2 to be recognized, the system must be changed to use chassis mode **a**, **b** or **c**.

```
A:PE-1# show card
=====
Card Summary
=====
Slot          Provisioned      Equipped      Admin   Operational   Comments
Card-type      Card-type      State      State
-----
```

```

5          iom2-20g          iom2-20g          up          up
6          iom3-xp           iom3-xp           up          up
7          imm8-10gb-xfp     imm8-10gb-xfp up          up
8          iom3-xp           iom3-xp           up          up
A          sfm4-12          sfm4-12          up          up/active
B          sfm4-12          sfm4-12          up          up/standby

```

```
=====
A:PE-1#
```

The following output shows the mapping of the line card paths to the switch fabric planes with the IOM2 installed.

```
A:PE-1# show system switch-fabric high-bandwidth-multicast
```

```
=====
Switch Fabric
=====
```

Slot/Mda	Cap:				Planes:	
	Min	Max	Hbm	Grp	Hi	Lo
5/1	100%	100%	No	0	1	0
5/2	100%	100%	No	0	4	3
6/1	100%	100%	No	0	6	5 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 0 1 3 4
7/1	100%	100%	No	0	7	6 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 0 1 3 4 5
8/1	100%	100%	No	0	8	7 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 0 1 3 4 5 6
A	100%	100%	No	0	2	2
B	100%	100%	No	0	2	2

```
=====
A:PE-1#
```

Output 2: Paths and Planes in Chassis Mode a/b/c

Now that the system is not in chassis mode **d**, in fact it is in mode **a** (but the output would be the same in modes **b** or **c**) the SF/CPM4s each create 8 planes giving a total of 16, numbered 0-15. One plane (2) is used by the SF/CPM4s, leaving 15 (0-1,3-15) planes for connectivity to the line card paths. Each IOM2 forwarding complex has 2 paths, so the paths of the IOM2 in slot 5 are using planes 0 and 1, and 3 and 4. Note that there are now fewer planes available and more paths, so there is more sharing of planes between paths than when chassis mode **d** was used.

IMPM Managed Traffic

IMPM manages IPv4/IPv6 routed multicast traffic and VPLS (IGMP and PIM) snooped IPv4 multicast traffic, traffic that matches a $\langle *, G \rangle$ or a $\langle S, G \rangle$ multicast record in the ingress forwarding table. It manages IP multicast traffic on a bud LSR when using point-to-multipoint (P2MP) LSPs but it does not manage IP protocol control traffic or traffic using multipoint-shared queuing. Traffic being managed by IMPM involves IMPM monitoring and potentially moving the related channels between paths/planes. The unmanaged traffic rates are also monitored and taken into account in the IMPM algorithm.

IMPM Managed Traffic

Care should be taken when using the mrouter-port configuration in a VPLS service. This creates a (*,*) multicast record and consequently all multicast channels that are not delivered locally to a non-mrouter port will be treated by IMPM as a single channel.

Configuration

This section covers:

- [IMPM on an IOM3-XP/IMM on page 896](#)
- [IMPM on an IOM1/2 on page 906](#)
- [IMPM Not Enabled on page 909](#)

Prerequisites

As IMPM operates on IPv4/IPv6 routed or VPLS IGMP/PIM snooped IPv4 multicast traffic, some basic multicast configuration must be enabled. This section uses routed IP multicast in the global routing table which requires IP interfaces to be configured with PIM and IGMP. The configuration uses a PIM rendezvous point and static IGMP joins. The following is an example of the complete configuration of one interface.

```
configure
router
  interface "int-IOM3-1"
    address 172.16.6.254/24
    port 6/2/1
  exit
  igmp
    interface "int-IOM3-1"
      static
        group 239.255.0.1
        starg
      exit
    exit
  exit
  no shutdown
exit
pim
  interface "int-IOM3-1"
  exit
  rp
    static
      address 192.0.2.1
      group-prefix 239.255.0.0/16
    exit
  exit
  exit
  no shutdown
exit
exit
```

Prerequisites

One interface is configured on each line card configured in the system, as shown in the following output, but omitting their IGMP and PIM configuration.

```
configure
router
  interface "int-IMM8"
    address 172.16.3.254/24
    port 7/2/1
  exit
  interface "int-IOM2"
    address 172.16.1.254/24
    port 5/2/1
  exit
  interface "int-IOM3-1"
    address 172.16.2.254/24
    port 6/2/1
  exit
  interface "int-IOM3-2"
    address 172.16.4.254/24
    port 8/2/1
  exit
exit
```

Configuring IMPM

The majority of the IMPM configuration is performed under the **mcast-management** CLI nodes and consists of:

- a. The bandwidth-policy for characteristics relating to the IOM/IMM paths. This is applied on an IOM3-XP/IMM fp², or an IOM1/2 MDA, under ingress mcast-path-management, with a bandwidth-policy named default being applied by default.

→ IOM1/2

```
config# card slot-number mda mda-slot
      ingress
        mcast-path-management
          bandwidth-policy policy-name
```

→ IOM3-XP/IMM

```
config# card slot-number fp [1]
      ingress
        mcast-path-management
          bandwidth-policy policy-name
```

- b. The multicast-info policy for information related to the channels and how they are handled by the system. To facilitate provisioning, parameters can be configured under a three level hierarchy with each level overriding the configuration of its predecessor:

→ Bundle: a group of channels

→ Channel: a single channel or a non-overlapping range of channels

→ Source-override: channels from a specific sender

```
config# mcast-management multicast-info-policy policy-name [create]
      bundle bundle-name [create]
        channel ip-address [ip-address] [create]
          source-override ip-address [create]
```

This policy is applied where the channel enters the system, so under router or service (vpls or vprn); the latter allows the handling of channels to be specific to a service, even if multiple services use overlapping channel addresses.

```
config# router multicast-info-policy policy-name
```

```
config# service vpls service-id multicast-info-policy policy-name
```

```
config# service vprn service-id multicast-info-policy policy-name
```

A default multicast-info-policy is applied to the above when IMPM is enabled.

- c. The chassis-level node configures the information relating to the switch fabric planes.

```
config# mcast-management chassis-level
```

2. fp is the system term for a forwarding complex on an IOM3-XP/IMM.

In addition, the command `hi-bw-mcast-src` (under an IOM3-XP/IMM fp or an IOM1/2 MDA) can be used to control the path to plane mapping among forwarding complexes.

IMPM on an IOM3-XP/IMM

IMPM is enabled on IOM3-XP/IMMs on under the card/fp CLI node as follows

```
config# card slot-number fp 1 ingress mcast-path-management no shutdown
```

IOM3-XP/IMM Paths

16 paths are available on an IOM3-XP/IMM when IMPM is enabled which can be either primary paths or secondary paths. By default the 16 paths are divided into 15 primary paths and 1 secondary path, as can be seen using the following command with IMPM enabled only on slot 6 (this corresponds to the plane assignment in Output 1):

```
*A:PE-1# tools dump mcast-path-mgr cpm
McPathMgr[6][0]: 0xf33b0a00
PATH:
                                     PLANE:
Type SGs      InUseBW  AvailBW  TotalBw  ID   SGs      InUseBW  AvailBW  TotalBw
P      1         0        -        -    1     1         0  2000000  2000000
P      1         0        -        -    0     1         0  2000000  2000000
P      1         0        -        -    3     1         0  2000000  2000000
P      1         0        -        -    4     1         0  2000000  2000000
P      1         0        -        -    5     1         0  2000000  2000000
P      1         0        -        -    6     1         0  2000000  2000000
P      1         0        -        -    7     1         0  2000000  2000000
P      1         0        -        -    8     1         0  2000000  2000000
P      1         0        -        -    9     1         0  2000000  2000000
P      1         0        -        -   10     1         0  2000000  2000000
P      1         0        -        -   11     1         0  2000000  2000000
P      1         0        -        -   12     1         0  2000000  2000000
P      1         0        -        -   13     1         0  2000000  2000000
P      1         0        -        -   14     1         0  2000000  2000000
P      1         0        -        -   15     1         0  2000000  2000000
S      1         0        -        -   16     1         0  1800000  1800000
B      0         0        -        -    -     -         -    -        -
*A:PE-1#
```

Output 3: Paths/Planes on IOM3-XP/IMM

The left side of the output displays information about the paths (type {P=primary, s=secondary or B=blackholed}, number of “S,G”s and bandwidth in use (the path bandwidth cannot be set on an IOM3-XP/IMM, so the path available and total bandwidth always shows “-“)) and the right side displays similar information about the associated planes (this will be a combination of the information for all paths connected to this plane). Note that one SG is always present on each path; this is used by the system and relates to the unmanaged traffic.

The primary/secondary paths are also highlighted in the planes section of Output 1, the primary paths being connected to the planes on the left of the “|” and the secondary paths to its right. There is a default primary path and a default secondary path; these correspond to the left-most plane and right-most plane for each line card, respectively.

Primary paths are used by:

- Expedited IES, VPLS and VPRN service ingress non-managed multipoint traffic (using the SAP based queues). This uses the default primary path.
- Expedited network ingress non-managed multipoint traffic (using the network interface queues). This uses the default primary path.
- Managed multicast explicit path primary channels (using the primary paths managed multipoint queue)
- All managed multicast dynamic path channels when the primary paths or multicast planes are not at their limit (using the primary paths managed multipoint queue)
- Highest preference managed multicast dynamic path channels when the primary paths or multicast planes are at their limit (using the primary paths managed multipoint queue)
- Non-managed P2MP LSP IP multicast traffic. This does not require IMPM to be enabled, so is discussed later in [IMPM Not Enabled on page 909](#).
- Non-managed expedited ingress policed multipoint traffic. This does not require IMPM to be enabled, so is discussed in [IMPM Not Enabled on page 909](#).

Secondary paths are used by:

- Best-Effort IES, VPLS and VPRN service ingress non-managed multipoint traffic (using the SAP based queues). This uses the default secondary path.
- Best-Effort network ingress non-managed traffic (using the network interface multipoint queues). This uses the default secondary path.
- Managed multicast explicit path secondary channels (using the secondary paths managed multipoint queue)
- Lower preference managed multicast dynamic path channels when the primary paths or multicast planes are at their limit (using the secondary paths managed multipoint queue)
- Non-managed best-effort ingress policed multipoint traffic. This does not require IMPM to be enabled, so is discussed in [IMPM Not Enabled on page 909](#).

When IMPM is enabled, the managed traffic does not use the standard multipoint queues but instead is placed onto a separate set of shared queues which are associated with the 16 paths. These queues are instantiated in an access ingress pool (called MC Path Mgmt, see “show output” section) which exists by default (this pool can be used even when IMPM is not enabled – see section “IMPM not enabled”). Statistics relating to traffic on these queues are reflected back to the standard ingress multipoint queues for accounting and troubleshooting purposes. Note that non-

managed traffic continues to use the standard ingress multipoint queues, with the exception of P2MP LSP IP multicast traffic and policed multipoint traffic.

The size of the pool by default is 10% of the total ingress pool size, the reserved CBS is 50% of the pool and the default slope policy is applied. Care should be taken when changing the size of this pool as this would affect the size of other ingress pools on the line card.

```
config# mcast-management bandwidth-policy policy-name [create]
      mcast-pool percent-of-total percent-of-buffers
                resv-cbs percent-of-pool
                slope-policy policy-name
```

It is possible to configure the parameters for the queues associated with both the primary and secondary paths, and also the number of secondary paths available, within the bandwidth-policy.

```
config# mcast-management bandwidth-policy policy-name create
      t2-paths
        primary-path
          queue-parameters
            cbs percentage
            hi-priority-only percent-of-mbs
            mbs percentage
        secondary-path
          number-paths number-of-paths [dual-sfm number-of-paths]
          queue-parameters
            cbs percentage
            hi-priority-only percent-of-mbs
            mbs percentage
```

The number of primary paths is 16 minus the number of secondary paths (at least one of each type must exist). The number-paths parameter specifies the number of secondary paths when only one switch fabric is active, while the dual-sfm parameter specifies the same value when two switch fabrics are active.

Packets are scheduled out of the path/multicast queue as follows:

- Traffic sent on primary paths is scheduled at multicast high priority while that on secondary paths is scheduled at multicast low priority.
- For managed traffic, the standard ingress forwarding class/prioritization is not used, instead IMPM managed traffic prioritization is based on a channel's preference (described in [Channel Prioritization and Blackholing Control on page 905](#)). Egress scheduling is unchanged.

Congestion handling (packet acceptance into the path/multicast queue):

- For non-managed traffic, this is based on the standard mechanism, namely the packet's enqueueing priority is used to determine whether the packet is accepted into the path multipoint queue depending on the queue mbs/cbs and the pool shared-buffers/reserved-buffers/WRED.

For managed traffic, the congestion handling is based upon the channel's preference (described later) and the channel's cong-priority-threshold which is configured in the multicast-info-policy (here under a bundle).

```
config# mcast-management multicast-info-policy policy-name [create]
      bundle bundle-name [create]
      cong-priority-threshold preference-level
```

When the preference of a channel is lower than the cong-priority-threshold setting, the traffic is treated as low enqueueing priority, when it is equal to or higher than the cong-priority-threshold it is treated as high enqueueing priority. The default cong-priority-threshold is 4.

IOM3-XP/IMM Planes

The capacity per plane for managed traffic is by default 2Gbps for a primary path and 1.8Gbps for a secondary path. The logic behind a reduced default on the secondary is to leave capacity for new streams in case the default secondary is fully used by managed streams.

The plane capacities can be configured as follows, note that this command configures the plane bandwidth associated with primary/secondary paths as seen by each line card, the TotalBw on the right side of Output 3:

```
config# mcast-management chassis-level
      per-mcast-plane-limit megabits-per-second [secondary megabits-per-second]
      [dual-sfm megabits-per-second [secondary-dual-sfm megabits-per-second]]
```

The first parameter defines the capacity for a primary path, the second a secondary path and the dual-sfm configures these capacities when two switch fabrics are active. The maximum plane capacity is 4Gbps but for the release used here it should only be configured on 7750 SR-12 or 7450 ESS-12 systems populated with SF/CPM4(s) and 100G FP IMM; for all other hardware combinations the maximum should be 2Gbps. Note that secondary plane capacity cannot be higher than that of the primary plane.

These values can be tuned to constrain the amount of managed multicast traffic in favour of non-managed multicast and unicast traffic.

On the IOM3-XP/IMM line cards there is no separate control of the line card path capacity, the capacity is only constrained by the plane.

IOM3-XP/IMM Path to Plane Mapping

By default all fps (line cards for IOM3-XP/IMM) are configured into the default (zero) group as seen in Output 1 and the system distributes the paths as equally as possible over the available

planes. This default works well if there is a low volume of multicast traffic (compared to the plane capacity), or if there is a higher volume multicast entering only one line card where the ingress capacity does not exceed that provided by the planes the line card is connected to.

If there are more paths than planes and, for example, there is a high bandwidth multicast channel entering two different line cards it could happen that both line cards select the same plane for two paths that are used. This would result in one of the channels being blackholed if the plane capacity is exceeded, effectively reducing the available multicast capacity from that line card. In order to avoid this situation, it is possible to configure the paths in to different groups and the system will attempt to use different planes for each group.

Output 1 and Output 2 show examples of how the paths are mapped to planes.

In both cases there are more paths than planes so some planes are shared by multiple paths. The following command provides control of this mapping.

```
config# card slot-number fp [1]
      hi-bw-mcast-src [alarm] [group group-id] [default-paths-only]
```

If an fp is configured into a non-zero group (range: 1 to 32), the system will attempt to assign dedicate planes to its paths compared to other line cards in different non-zero groups. This action is dependent on there being sufficient planes available. If two line cards are assigned to the same group, they will be assigned the same planes. The **default-paths-only** parameter performs the assignment optimization only for the default primary and secondary paths and is only applicable to IOM3-XP/IMMs. The alarm keyword causes an alarm to be generated if some planes are still shared with fps in a different group.

An example of the use of this command is shown later.

Note: When VPLS IGMP and PIM snooped traffic is forwarded to a spoke or mesh SDP, by default it is sent by the switch fabric to all line card forwarding complexes on which there is a network IP interface. This is due to the dynamic nature of the way that a spoke or mesh SDP is associated with one or more egress network IP interfaces. If there is an active spoke/mesh SDP for the VPLS service on the egress forwarding complex, the traffic will be flooded on that spoke/mesh SDP, otherwise it will be dropped on the egress forwarding complex. This can be optimized by configuring an inclusion list under the spoke or mesh SDP defining which MDAs this traffic should be flooded to.

```
config>service>vpls# [spoke-sdp|mesh-sdp] sdp-id:vc-id egress
      mfib-allowed-mda-destinations
      [no] mda mda-id
```

The switch fabric flooding domain for this spoke or mesh SDP is made up only of the MDAs that have been added to the list. An empty list implies the default behavior.

It is important to ensure that the spoke or mesh SDP can only be established across the MDAs listed, for example by using RSVP with an explicit path.

IMPM Operation on IOM3-XP/IMM

This section covers:

- [Principle of Operation on page 901](#)
- [Monitoring Traffic Rates on page 902](#)
- [Channel Prioritization and Blackholing Control on page 905](#)

Principle of Operation

Where IMPM is enabled, it constantly monitors the line cards for ingress managed traffic.

When a new channel arrives it will be placed by default on to the default secondary path. IMPM determines the ingress point for the channel and then monitors the traffic of the channel within its monitoring period in order to calculate the rate of the channel. The system then searches the multicast paths/planes attached to the line card for available bandwidth. If there is sufficient capacity on such a path/plane, the channel is moved to that plane. Planes corresponding to primary paths are used first, when there is no capacity available on any primary path/plane a secondary path/plane is used (unless the channel is explicitly configured onto a specific path type – see the following description).

If the required bandwidth is unavailable, the system will then look for any channels that ingress this or other line cards that could be moved to a different multicast plane in order to free up capacity for the new channel. Any channel that is currently mapped to a multicast plane available to the ingress line card is eligible to be moved to a different multicast plane.

If an eligible existing channel is found, whether on this or another line card, that existing channel is moved without packet loss to a new multicast plane. If necessary, this process can be repeated resulting in multiple channels being moved. The new multicast channel is then mapped to the multicast plane previously occupied by the moved channels, again this normally is using a primary path.

If no movable channel is found, then lower preference channel(s) on any ingress line card that share multicast planes with the ingress line card of the new channel can be blackholed to free up capacity for the new channel. It is also possible to both blackhole some channels and move other channels in order to free up the required capacity. If no lower preference channel is found and no suitable channel moves are possible, the new channel will be blackholed.

If required, channels can be explicitly configured to be on either a primary or secondary path. This can be done for a bundle of channels, for example

```
config# mcast-management multicast-info-policy policy-name [create]
      bundle bundle-name [create]
            explicit-sf-path {primary|secondary|ancillary}
```

Note that the ancillary path is not applicable to the IOM3-XP/IMM line cards, however, it is discussed in the section relating to the IOM1/2. If a channel on an IOM3-XP/IMM is configured onto the ancillary path it will use a primary path instead.

One secondary path on an IOM3-XP/IMM is used as a default startup path for new incoming channels. If a large amount of new channel traffic could be received within the monitoring period, it is possible that the plane associated with the default secondary path is over loaded before IMPM has time to monitor the channels' traffic rate and move the channels to a primary path (and a plane with available capacity). This can be alleviated by configuring the following command:

```
config# mcast-management chassis-level
      round-robin-inactive-records
```

When round-robin-inactive-records is enabled, the system redistributes new channels (which are referenced by inactive S,G records) among all available line card multicast (primary, secondary) paths and their switch fabric planes.

Monitoring Traffic Rates

The monitored traffic rate is the averaged traffic rate measured over a monitoring period. The monitoring period used depends on the total number of channels seen by IMPM, the minimum is a 1 second interval and the maximum a 10 seconds interval.

The way in which the system reacts to the measured rate can be tuned using the following command:

```
config# mcast-management multicast-info-policy policy-name [create]
      bundle bundle-name [create]
          bw-activity {use-admin-bw|dynamic [falling-delay seconds]}
                      [black-hole-rate kbps]
```

The default is to use the dynamic bandwidth rate, in which case a channel's active traffic rate is determined based on the measured monitored rates. IMPM then makes a decision of how to process the channel as follows.

If the channel was un-managed, IMPM will attempt to place the channel on a path/plane with sufficient available bandwidth.

If the channel was already managed, IMPM determines the highest monitored traffic rate (within a given monitoring period) in a sliding window defined by the falling-delay. This highest chosen monitored rate is then used to re-assess the placement of the channel on the path/planes; this may cause IMPM to move the channel. This mechanism prevents the active rate for a channel being reduced due to a momentarily drop in traffic rate. The default value for falling-delay is 30 seconds, with a range of 10-3600 seconds.

The above logic is shown in [Figure 144](#) (for simplicity, the falling-delay is exactly twice the monitoring period). It can be seen that the active rate used when the traffic rate decreases follows the highest monitored rate in any falling-delay period.

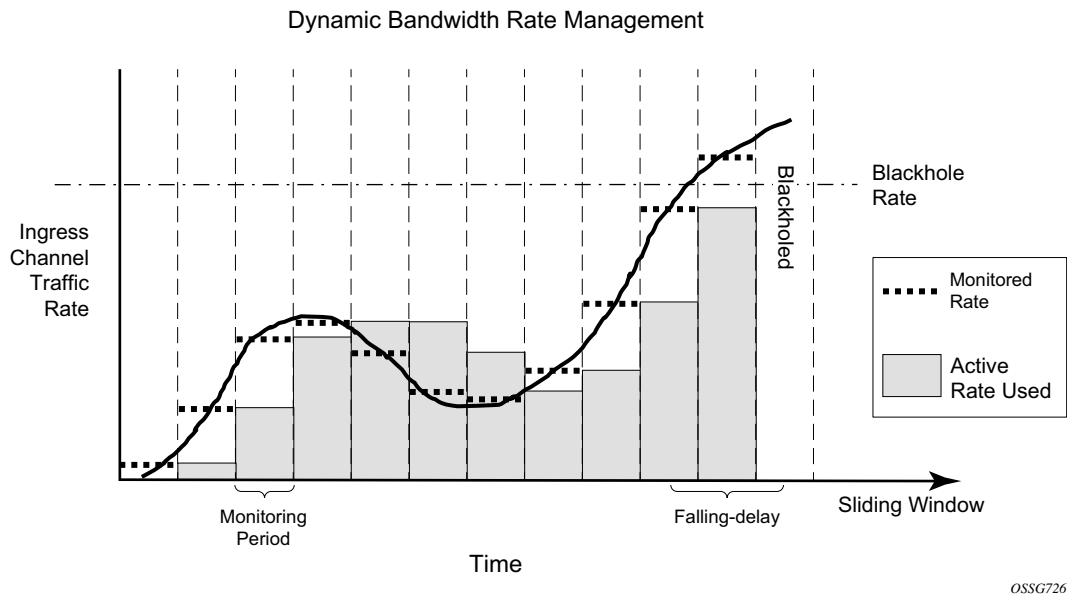
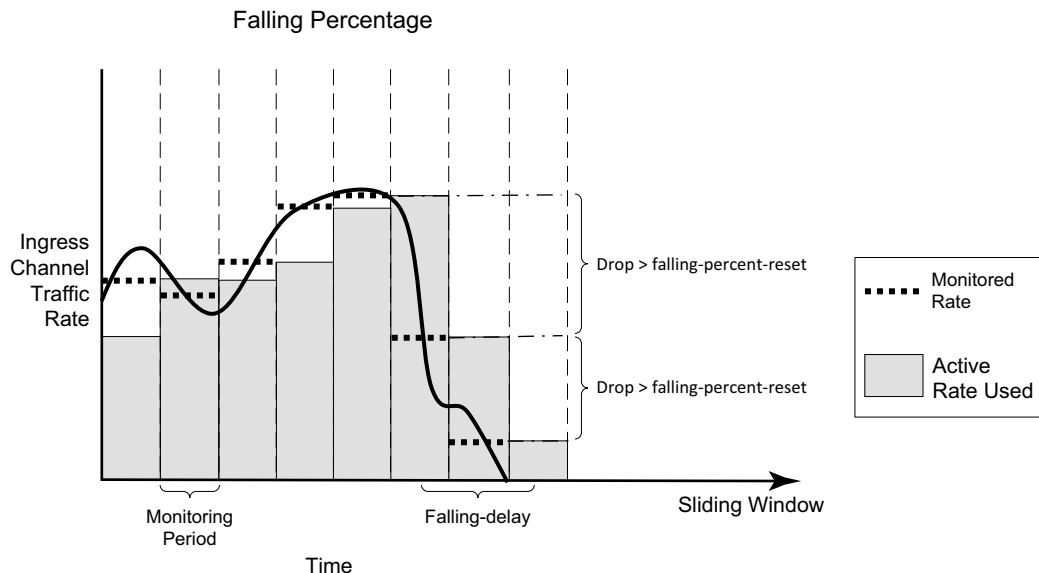


Figure 144: Dynamic Bandwidth Rate Management

By using the sliding window of monitored rate measurements in the dynamic bandwidth measurement mode, IMPM delays releasing capacity for a channel in its calculations when the channel's rate has been reduced. This allows IMPM to ignore temporary fluctuations in a channel's rate. It is possible to tune this for cases where the reduction in a channel's rate is large by using the falling-percent-reset parameter. The default for the falling-percent-reset is 50%. Setting this to 100% effectively disables it.

```
config# mcast-management bandwidth-policy policy-name create
      falling-percent-reset percent-of-highest
```

When the monitored rate falls by a percentage which is greater or equal to falling-percent-reset, the rate used by IMPM is immediately set to this new monitored rate. This allows IMPM to react faster to significant reductions in a channel's rate while at the same time avoiding too frequent reallocations due to normal rate fluctuations. An example of the falling-percent-reset is shown in [Figure 145](#). In the last two monitoring periods, it can be seen that the active rate used is equal to the monitored rate in the previous periods, and not the higher rate in the previous falling-delay window.



OSSG727

Figure 145: Falling-Percent-Reset

The rate management can be further tuned based on the expectation that the channel bandwidth will fluctuate around a given rate. When the bw-activity is set to use-admin-bw within the multicast-info-policy, the following parameters come into play.

```
config# mcast-management multicast-info-policy policy-name [create]
      bundle bundle-name [create]
      admin-bw kbps

config# mcast-management bandwidth-policy policy-name create
      admin-bw-threshold kilo-bits-per-second
```

IMPM will use the rate configured for the admin-bw if the monitored rate is above the admin-bw-threshold but below or equal to the admin-bw in the sliding window of the falling-delay. Whenever the monitored rate is below the admin-bw-threshold or above the admin-bw, IMPM uses the dynamic rate management mechanism. The admin-bw-threshold needs to be smaller than the admin-bw, with the latter being non-zero. This is shown in [Figure 146](#) (for simplicity, the falling-delay is exactly twice the monitoring period). It can be seen that while the monitored rate stays between the admin-bw-threshold and the admin-bw, the active rate used is set to the admin-bw.

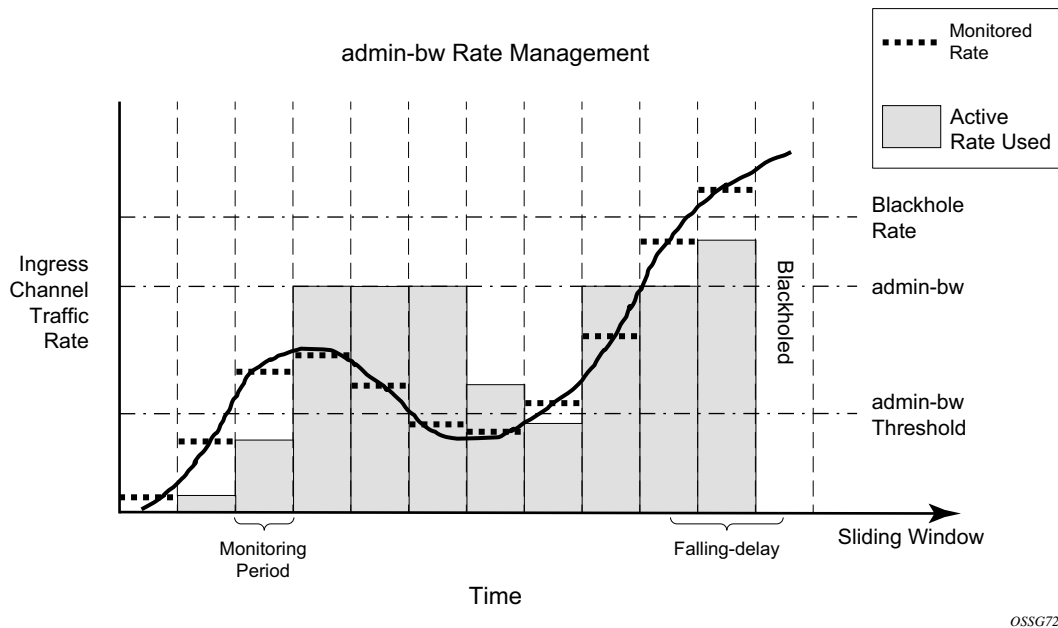


Figure 146: Admin-Bw Rate Management

Finally, IMPM also takes into consideration the unmanaged traffic rate on the primary and secondary paths associated with SAP/network interface queues when determining the available capacity on these paths/planes. This is achieved by constantly monitoring the rate of this traffic on these queues and including this rate in the path/plane capacity usage. IMPM must be enabled on the ingress card of the unmanaged traffic otherwise it will not be monitored.

Channel Prioritization and Blackholing Control

IMPM decides which channels will be forwarded and which will be dropped based on a configured channel preference. The preference value can be in the range 0-7, with 7 being the most preferred and the default value being 0.

When there is insufficient capacity on the paths/planes to support all ingress multipoint traffic, IMPM uses the channel preferences to determine which channels should be forwarded and which should be blackholed (dropped).

This is an important distinction compared to the standard forwarding class packet prioritization; by using a channel preference, an entire channel is either forwarded or blackholed, this allows IMPM to avoid congestion having a small impact on multiple channels at the cost of entire channels being lost.

Configuring IMPM

The channel preference is set within the multicast-info-policy, for example at the bundle level, with the settable values being 1-7:

```
config# mcast-management multicast-info-policy policy-name [create]
      bundle bundle-name [create]
      preference preference-level
```

The channel preference is also used for congestion control in the line card path queues – see “congestion handling” in the section on “IOM3-XP/IMM Paths” above.

Blackhole protection can also be enabled using the bw-activity command, shown above in the “Monitoring traffic rates” section. Regardless of which rate monitoring mechanism is used, a channel can be blackholed if the monitored rate exceeds the black-hole-rate, in which case the channel will be put immediately on the blackhole list and its packets dropped at ingress. This channel will no longer consume line card path or switch fabric capacity. The intention of this parameter is to provide a protection mechanism in case channels consume more bandwidth than expected which could adversely affect other channels.

The black-hole-rate can range from 0 to 40000000kbps, with no black-hole-rate by default. This protection is shown in the last monitoring period of both Figure 2 and Figure 4. Note that it will take a falling-delay period in which the channel’s rate is always below the black-hole-rate in order for the channel to be re-instated unless the reduction in the rate is above the falling-percent-reset.

IMPM on an IOM1/2

As most of the principles when using IMPM on an IOM1/2 compared to on an IOM3-XP/IMM are the same and are described above, this section focuses only on the difference between the two.

Note that an IOM1 and IOM2 have two independent 10G forwarding complexes; in both cases there is a single MDA per forwarding complex, consequently some aspects of IMPM are configured under the mda CLI node.

IMPM is enabled on an IOM1/2 under the MDA CLI node as follows:

```
config# card slot-number mda mda-slot ingress mcast-path-management no shutdown
```

IOM1/2 Paths

Each forwarding complex has three paths: one primary and one secondary path, and another type called the ancillary path which is IOM1/2 specific. The paths can be seen using the following command with IMPM enabled only on slot 5 MDA 1 and MDA 2 (referenced as [0] and [1] respectively):

```
A:PE-1# tools dump mcast-path-mgr cpm
```

```
McPathMgr[5][0]: 0xf33b0a00
PATH:
Type SGs      InUseBW  AvailBW  TotalBw  ID  SGs      InUseBW  AvailBW  TotalBw
P      1          0   2000000  2000000  1    1          0   2000000  2000000
S      1          0   1500000  1500000  0    1          0   1800000  1800000
A      0          0   5000000  5000000  -    -          -    -          -
B      0          0    -          -    -    -          -    -          -

McPathMgr[5][1]: 0xf33b3198
PATH:
Type SGs      InUseBW  AvailBW  TotalBw  ID  SGs      InUseBW  AvailBW  TotalBw
P      1          0   2000000  2000000  4    1          0   2000000  2000000
S      1          0   1500000  1500000  3    1          0   1800000  1800000
A      0          0   5000000  5000000  -    -          -    -          -
B      0          0    -          -    -    -          -    -          -
A:PE-1#
```

Output 4: Paths/Planes on IOM1/2

The primary and secondary paths function as on the IOM3-XP/IMM, specifically for:

- Traffic usage.
- Associated queues instantiated in the ingress “MC Path Mgmt” ingress pool.
- Packet scheduling.
- Congestion handling.

The queue parameters can be configured within the bandwidth-policy in a similar way to the IOM3-XP/IMM (note that the IOM3-XP/IMM equivalent for this is under the t2-paths CLI node). The bandwidth-policy is then applied under the respective MDA.

```
config# mcast-management bandwidth-policy policy-name create
primary-path
queue-parameters
cbs percentage
hi-priority-only percent-of-mbs
mbs percentage
secondary-path
queue-parameters
cbs percentage
hi-priority-only percent-of-mbs
mbs percentage
```

The IOM1/2 allows capacity control on the paths themselves, which is not possible on the IOM3-XP/IMM. This is achieved using the following commands.

```
config# mcast-management bandwidth-policy policy-name create
primary-path
path-limit megabits-per-second
secondary-path
path-limit megabits-per-second
```

The maximum path-limit for both the primary and secondary path is 2Gbps with a default of 2Gbps for the primary path and 1.5Gbps for the secondary path. The capability to set a path limit for the IOM1/2 can be seen when comparing Output 3 with Output 4; in the latter the “AvailBW” and “TotalBw” for the “PATH” shows the path limit.

In addition to setting the path limits in the bandwidth-policy, they can also be overridden on a given MDA.

```
config# card slot-number mda mda-slot
      ingress
        mcast-path-management
          primary-override
            path-limit megabits-per-second
          secondary-override
            path-limit megabits-per-second
```

The achievable capacity will be the minimum of the path’s path-limit and the plane’s per-mcast-plane-limit.

The ancillary path

The ancillary path allows managed multicast traffic to be forwarded through the switch fabric as unicast and so is not constrained to the path or plane capacities. This is achieved using ingress replication, in order to send a channel to multiple destination forwarding complexes (DFCs), the ingress forwarding complex creates and forwards one copy of each packet to each DFC connected to the switch fabric.

However, the total replication capacity available for the ancillary path is constrained to 5G to prevent it impacting the unicast or primary/secondary path capacities. This means that the total amount of ancillary capacity usable can be calculated from (note that the first copy sent is not included in this capacity, hence the “-1”):

$5\text{Gbps}/(\text{number_of_switch_fabric_DFCs} - 1)$

Taking an example shown later, if some channels ingress an IOM2 and egress 2 IOM3-XP (1 DFC each) and 1 IMM8 (1 DFC) to give a total of 3 egress DFCs, then total ancillary capacity available is

$5\text{Gbps}/(3-1) = 2.5\text{Gbps}.$

This would allow, for example, approximately 250 channels at 10Mbps each to use the ancillary path.

Due to the relationship between ancillary capacity and number of DFCs, the system will prefer the ancillary path as default whenever a channel enters an IOM1/2 and egresses on up to 3 DFCs. If there are 4 or more egress DFCs for the channel, then the primary path is preferred. The determination is performed on a per channel basis.

The configuration parameters relating to the primary and secondary paths are also available for the ancillary path.

```
config# mcast-management bandwidth-policy policy-name create
    ancillary-path
        queue-parameters
            cbs percentage
            hi-priority-only percent-of-mbs
            mbs percentage

config# mcast-management bandwidth-policy policy-name create
    ancillary-path
        path-limit megabits-per-second

config# card slot-number mda mda-slot
    ingress
        mcast-path-management
            ancillary-override
                path-limit megabits-per-second
```

IOM1/2 Planes

The capacity per plane for managed traffic is by default 2Gbps for a primary path and 1.8Gbps for a secondary path. Note that the default IOM1/2 secondary path limit is 1.5Gbps. A maximum of 2Gbps should be configured for either path type using the per-mcast-plane-limit (as shown for the IOM3-XP/IMM) when an IOM1/2 is being used with IMPM.

As the ancillary path does not use the switch fabric planes, there is no associated plane limit.

IOM1/2 Path to Plane Mapping

The hi-bw-mcast-src command function is the same for IOM1/2 line cards as for IOM3-XP/IMM line cards, as described above.

IMPM Operation on IOM1/2

This is exactly the same as the operation as for the IOM3-XP/IMM, see above.

IMPM Not Enabled

When IMPM is not enabled most multipoint traffic on an IOM1/2 and IOM3-XP/IMM can use only one primary path and one secondary path per forwarding complex. When ingress multipoint arrives it is placed on a multipoint queue and these queues are connected either to a primary path (if the queue is expedited) or a secondary path (if the queue is best-effort) depending on the

ingress QOS classification applied. Standard ingress forwarding class/scheduling prioritization is used.

The capacity of the primary and secondary paths is 2Gbps, unless the system is a 7750 SR-12 or 7450 ESS-12 populated with SF/CPM4(s) and 100G FP IMM in which case the capacity is 4Gbps.

In Output 1 and Output 2, the primary path is associated with the left-most plane and the secondary path is associated with the right-most plane for each line card.

There are exceptions to the above on the IOM3-XP/IMM line cards for

- Point-to-multipoint LSP IP multicast traffic
- Policed ingress routed IP multicast or VPLS broadcast, unknown or multicast traffic

Point-to-Multipoint (P2MP) LSP IP Multicast Traffic

IMPM will manage traffic on a P2MP LSP for any IP multicast channel that is delivered locally, for example, the system is a bud LSR. However, non-managed P2MP LSP IP multicast traffic will also make use of the primary paths, regardless of whether IMPM is enabled or not.

For each primary queue created in the MC IMPM Path pool, an additional queue is created to carry non-managed P2MP LSP IP multicast traffic. The non-managed P2MP LSP IP multicast traffic is automatically distributed across all primary paths based on a modulo N function of the 10 least significant bits of channel destination group address, where N is the number of primary paths. Note that the number of primary paths can be changed with IMPM enabled or disabled by applying a bandwidth-policy which sets the number of secondary paths.

Policed Ingress Routed IP Multicast or VPLS Broadcast, Unknown Or Multicast Traffic

Routed IP multicast or VPLS broadcast, unknown or multicast traffic passing through ingress hardware policers on the IOM3-XP/IMM can also use the IMPM managed queues, with IMPM enabled or disabled. If this traffic is best-effort (forwarding classes BE, L2, AF, L1) it will use the secondary paths, if it is expedited (forwarding classes H2, EF, H1, NC) it will use the primary paths. Note that this traffic uses the shared ingress policer-output-queues which have a fixed forwarding class to queue mapping).

When IMPM is not enabled, this traffic is non-managed and 1 secondary path plus 15 primary paths are available (the default). Consequently, extra capacity is only available for the expedited traffic, which could use up to 15 planes worth of switch fabric capacity. If extra capacity is required for best-effort traffic, a bandwidth-policy allocating more secondary paths can be applied to the line card even without IMPM being enabled.

The policed ingress routed IP or VPLS broadcast, unknown or multicast traffic is distributed across the paths using a standard LAG hash algorithm (as described in the LAG and ECMP Hashing section in the Interface Configuration guide).

For both of these exceptions, it is recommended to reduce the managed traffic primary/secondary plane limits (using per-mcast-plane-limit) in order to allow for the non-managed traffic.

Show Output

This section includes the show output related to IMPM. The first part covers generic output and uses IOM3-XP/IMMs and chassis mode **d**. The second part includes an IOM2 and so uses chassis mode **a**.

IOM3-XP/IMM and Generic Output

The system has an IOM3-XP in slots 6 and 8, with an IMM8 is slot 7.

```
A:PE-1# show card
=====
Card Summary
=====
```

Slot	Provisioned Card-type	Equipped Card-type	Admin State	Operational State	Comments
6	iom3-xp	iom3-xp	up	up	
7	imm8-10gb-xfp	imm8-10gb-xfp	up	up	
8	iom3-xp	iom3-xp	up	up	
A	sfm4-12	sfm4-12	up	up/active	
B	sfm4-12	sfm4-12	up	up/standby	

```
=====
A:PE-1#
```

The status of IMPM on a given card can be shown as follows:

```
*A:PE-1# show card 6 detail
=====
Card 6
=====
```

Slot	Provisioned Card-type	Equipped Card-type	Admin State	Operational State	Comments
6	iom3-xp	iom3-xp	up	up	

```
FP 1 Specific Data
  hi-bw-mc-srcEgress Alarm      : 2
  hi-bw-mc-srcEgress Group      : 0
  mc-path-mgmt Admin State      : In Service
  Ingress Bandwidth Policy      : default
```

IMPM is enabled on the fp, it is using the default bandwidth-policy and is using the default hi-bw-mcast-src group (0).

The MC Path Mgmt pool is created by default with the default settings.

```
*A:PE-1# show pools 6/1
=====
Type      Id      App.      Pool Name      Actual ResvCBS      PoolSize
Admin ResvCBS
-----
MDA       6/1      Acc-Ing MC Path Mgmt      18816      37632
50%
=====
*A:PE-1#
```

The default bandwidth-policy can be shown, giving the default parameters for the MC Path Pool and the associated queues.

```
*A:PE-1# show mcast-management bandwidth-policy "default" detail
=====
Bandwidth Policy Details
=====
Policy      : default
-----
Admin BW Thd      : 10 kbps      Falling Percent RST: 50
Mcast Pool Total  : 10      Mcast Pool Resv Cbs: 50
Slope Policy      : default
Primary
Limit             : 2000 mbps      Cbs      : 5.00
Mbs               : 7.00      High Priority      : 10
Secondary
Limit             : 1500 mbps      Cbs      : 30.00
Mbs               : 40.00      High Priority      : 10
Ancillary
Limit             : 5000 mbps      Cbs      : 65.00
Mbs               : 80.00      High Priority      : 10
T2-Primary
Cbs               : 5.00      Mbs      : 7.00
High Priority      : 10
T2-Secondary
Cbs               : 30.00      Mbs      : 40.00
High Priority      : 10      Paths (Single/Dual) : 1/1
=====
Bandwidth Policies : 1
=====
*A:PE-1#
```

The defaults for the multicast-info-policy can be seen in configuration mode.

```
*A:PE-1# configure mcast-management
*A:PE-1>config>mcast-mgmt# info detail
-----
multicast-info-policy "default" create
no description
bundle "default" create
```

IOM3-XP/IMM and Generic Output

```
no cong-priority-threshold
no description
no ecmp-opt-threshold
no admin-bw
no preference
no keepalive-override
no explicit-sf-path
bw-activity dynamic falling-delay 30
no primary-tunnel-interface
exit
exit
```

The paths/planes on an IOM3-XP/IMM can be shown here for card 6.

```
*A:PE-1# tools dump mcast-path-mgr cpm
McPathMgr[6][0]: 0xf33b0a00
PATH:
Type SGs      InUseBW  AvailBW  TotalBW  ID  SGs      InUseBW  AvailBW  TotalBW
P      1          0         -         -   4      1          0  2000000  2000000
P      1          0         -         -   3      1          0  2000000  2000000
P      1          0         -         -   5      1          0  2000000  2000000
P      1          0         -         -   6      1          0  2000000  2000000
P      1          0         -         -   7      1          0  2000000  2000000
P      1          0         -         -   8      1          0  2000000  2000000
P      1          0         -         -   9      1          0  2000000  2000000
P      1          0         -         -  10      1          0  2000000  2000000
P      1          0         -         -  11      1          0  2000000  2000000
P      1          0         -         -  12      1          0  2000000  2000000
P      1          0         -         -  13      1          0  2000000  2000000
P      1          0         -         -  14      1          0  2000000  2000000
P      1          0         -         -  15      1          0  2000000  2000000
P      1          0         -         -  16      1          0  2000000  2000000
P      1          0         -         -   0      1          0  2000000  2000000
S      1          0         -         -   1      1          0  1800000  1800000
B      0          0         -         -   -      -          -      -         -
*A:PE-1#
```

Notice the plane total bandwidth is by default 2000Mbps for the primary paths and 1800Mbps for the secondary path, as can also be seen using this output.

```
*A:PE-1# show mcast-management chassis
=====
Chassis Information
=====
BW per MC plane          Single SFM   Dual SFM
-----
Primary Path              2000        2000
Secondary Path            1800        1800
-----
MMRP Admin Mode           Disabled
MMRP Oper Mode            Disabled
Round Robin Inactive Records Disabled
=====
*A:PE-1#
```

The Round Robin Inactive Records is disabled. The MMRP (Multiple MAC Registration Protocol) modes relate to the use of the MC Path Mgmt queues for MMRP traffic. When this is enabled, normal IMPM behavior is suspended so it is not in the scope of this configuration note.

A single channel (239.255.0.2) is now sent into interface int-IOM3-1 on port 6/2/1 with static IGMP joins on interfaces int-IMM8, int-IOM3-1 and int-IOM3-2. The current forwarding rate can be seen.

```
*A:PE-1# show router pim group detail
=====
PIM Source Group ipv4
=====
Group Address       : 239.255.0.2
Source Address      : 172.16.2.1
RP Address          : 192.0.2.1
Flags               : spt, rpt-prn-des   Type                : (S,G)
MRIB Next Hop       : 172.16.2.1
MRIB Src Flags      : direct              Keepalive Timer Exp: 0d 00:03:14
Up Time             : 0d 00:00:16         Resolved By         : rtable-u

Up JP State         : Joined              Up JP Expiry        : 0d 00:00:00
Up JP Rpt           : Pruned              Up JP Rpt Override  : 0d 00:00:00

Register State      : Pruned              Register Stop Exp   : 0d 00:00:59
Reg From Anycast RP: No

Rpf Neighbor        : 172.16.2.1
Incoming Intf       : int-IOM3-1
Outgoing Intf List  : int-IMM8, int-IOM3-1, int-IOM3-2

Curr Fwding Rate    : 9873.0 kbps
Forwarded Packets   : 18017                Discarded Packets   : 0
Forwarded Octets    : 24899494             RPF Mismatches      : 0
Spt threshold       : 0 kbps                ECMP opt threshold  : 7
Admin bandwidth     : 1 kbps
=====
```

From the two sets of output below it can be seen that this is using the default primary path and switch fabric plane 4.

```
*A:PE-1# tools dump mcast-path-mgr cpm
McPathMgr[6][0]: 0xf33b0a00
PATH:
                                PLANE:
Type SGs      InUseBW  AvailBW  TotalBw  ID  SGs      InUseBW  AvailBW  TotalBw
P      2      9895      -        -    4    2      9895  1990105  2000000
P      1        0      -        -    3    1        0  2000000  2000000
P      1        0      -        -    5    1        0  2000000  2000000
P      1        0      -        -    6    1        0  2000000  2000000
P      1        0      -        -    7    1        0  2000000  2000000
P      1        0      -        -    8    1        0  2000000  2000000
P      1        0      -        -    9    1        0  2000000  2000000
P      1        0      -        -   10    1        0  2000000  2000000
P      1        0      -        -   11    1        0  2000000  2000000
P      1        0      -        -   12    1        0  2000000  2000000
```

IOM3-XP/IMM and Generic Output

```

P      1      0      -      - 13      1      0 2000000 2000000
P      1      0      -      - 14      1      0 2000000 2000000
P      1      0      -      - 15      1      0 2000000 2000000
P      1      0      -      - 16      1      0 2000000 2000000
P      1      0      -      - 0       1      0 2000000 2000000
S      1      0      -      - 1       1      0 1800000 1800000
B      0      0      -      - -       -      - -       -

```

*A:PE-1#

*A:PE-1# show system switch-fabric high-bandwidth-multicast

```

=====
Switch Fabric
=====
          Cap:          Planes:
Slot/Mda Min  Max  Hbm Grp  Hi | Lo
-----
6/1      100% 100% No  0    4 3 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 0 | 1
7/1      100% 100% No  0    19 17 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 | 33
8/1      100% 100% No  0    35 34 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 0 | 1
A        100% 100% No  0    2 | 2
B        100% 100% No  0    2 | 2
=====

```

*A:PE-1#

The information about the channel can be seen using this command.

```

*A:PE-1# show mcast-management
channel [router router-instance|vpls service-id|service-name service-name]
        [mda slot[/mda]]
        [group ip-address [source ip-address]]
        [path path-type]
        [detail]

```

The output for the channel being sent is as follows.

```

*A:PE-1# show mcast-management channel
=====
Multicast Channels
=====
Legend :  D - Dynamic  E - Explicit
=====
Source Address          Slot/Cpx  Current-Bw  Path      D/E
Group Address           Highest-Bw  Plane
-----
172.16.2.1              6/1      9873        Primary   D
239.255.0.2              9873        4
=====
Multicast Channels : 1
=====
*A:PE-1#

```



```

*A:PE-1# show mcast-management channel detail
=====
Multicast Channels
=====
-----
Source Address      : 172.16.2.1
Group Address       : 239.255.0.2
-----
Slot/Complex        : 6/1                Current Bw      : 9873 kbps
Dynamic/Explicit     : Dynamic            Current Path     : Primary
Oper Admin Bw        : 0 kbps             Current Plane    : 4
Ing last highest     : 9873               Preference      : 0
Black-hole rate      : None               Ing sec highest  : 9873
Time remaining       : 30 seconds          Blackhole        : No
-----
Multicast Channels : 1
=====
*A:PE-1#

```

The channel is using the dynamic bandwidth activity measurement and the current bandwidth, last highest and second last highest rates are shown (which are the same as this traffic is from a traffic generator).

The Time remaining is the time remaining in the current falling-delay period. This is reset to the falling-delay every time the last highest bandwidth gets updated, when it reaches zero the value of last highest bandwidth will be replaced with second highest bandwidth and the second highest bandwidth will be set to the value of current bandwidth.

The Oper Admin Bw displays the value used for the admin-bw for this channel.

A subset of this information can be seen using this tools command.

```

*A:PE-1# tools dump mcast-path-mgr channels slot 6
=====
Slot: 6 Complex: 0
=====
Source address      CurrBw  Plane PathType  Path Pref
Group address       PathBw  Repl  Exp          BlkHoleBw
-----
172.16.2.1          9873   4     primary      0    0
239.255.0.2         9873   2     none         0    0
Unmanaged traffic   0       4     primary      0    8
slot: 6 cmplx: 0 path: 0  0       0     none         0    0
Unmanaged traffic   0       3     primary      1    8
slot: 6 cmplx: 0 path: 1  0       0     none         0    0
Unmanaged traffic   0       5     primary      2    8
slot: 6 cmplx: 0 path: 2  0       0     none         0    0
Unmanaged traffic   0       6     primary      3    8
slot: 6 cmplx: 0 path: 3  0       0     none         0    0
Unmanaged traffic   0       7     primary      4    8
slot: 6 cmplx: 0 path: 4  0       0     none         0    0
Unmanaged traffic   0       8     primary      5    8
slot: 6 cmplx: 0 path: 5  0       0     none         0    0
Unmanaged traffic   0       9     primary      6    8
slot: 6 cmplx: 0 path: 6  0       0     none         0    0

```

IOM3-XP/IMM and Generic Output

```

Unmanaged traffic          0      10  primary  7      8
  slot: 6 cmplx: 0 path: 7  0      0   none    0      0
Unmanaged traffic          0      11  primary  8      8
  slot: 6 cmplx: 0 path: 8  0      0   none    0      0
Unmanaged traffic          0      12  primary  9      8
  slot: 6 cmplx: 0 path: 9  0      0   none    0      0
Unmanaged traffic          0      13  primary 10      8
  slot: 6 cmplx: 0 path: 10 0      0   none    0      0
Unmanaged traffic          0      14  primary 11      8
  slot: 6 cmplx: 0 path: 11 0      0   none    0      0
Unmanaged traffic          0      15  primary 12      8
  slot: 6 cmplx: 0 path: 12 0      0   none    0      0
Unmanaged traffic          0      16  primary 13      8
  slot: 6 cmplx: 0 path: 13 0      0   none    0      0
Unmanaged traffic          0      0   primary 14      8
  slot: 6 cmplx: 0 path: 14 0      0   none    0      0
Unmanaged traffic          0      1   secondary 15     8
  slot: 6 cmplx: 0 path: 15 0      0   none    0      0
*A:PE-1#

```

The bandwidth activity monitoring is now changed to use an admin-bw of 12Mbps with a blackhole rate of 15Mbps.

```

*A:PE-1# configure mcast-management
*A:PE-1>config>mcast-mgmt# info
-----
      bandwidth-policy "bandwidth-policy-1" create
        admin-bw-threshold 8000
      exit
      multicast-info-policy "multicast-info-policy-1" create
        bundle "default" create
      exit
        bundle "bundle-1" create
          channel "239.255.0.1" "239.255.0.16" create
            admin-bw 12000
            bw-activity use-admin-bw black-hole-rate 15000
          exit
        exit
      exit
    exit
-----
*A:PE-1>config>mcast-mgmt# exit all

```

```

*A:PE-1# show mcast-management channel group 239.255.0.2 detail
=====
Multicast Channels
=====
-----
Source Address      : 172.16.2.1
Group Address       : 239.255.0.2
-----
Slot/Complex        : 6/1          Current Bw         : 9873 kbps
Dynamic/Explicit    : Dynamic      Current Path        : Primary
Oper Admin Bw       : 12000 kbps   Current Plane       : 4
Ing last highest    : 12000        Preference         : 0
Black-hole rate     : 15000 kbps   Ing sec highest    : 12000
Time remaining      : 30 seconds   Blackhole          : No

```

```
=====
Multicast Channels : 1
=====
*A:PE-1#

*A:PE-1# tools dump mcast-path-mgr cpm
McPathMgr[6][0]: 0xf33b0a00
PATH:
                                PLANE:
Type SGs      InUseBW   AvailBW   TotalBW   ID   SGs      InUseBW   AvailBW   TotalBW
P      2      12000      -         -      4      2      12000   1988000  2000000
P      1         0      -         -      3      1         0   2000000  2000000
P      1         0      -         -      5      1         0   2000000  2000000
P      1         0      -         -      6      1         0   2000000  2000000
P      1         0      -         -      7      1         0   2000000  2000000
P      1         0      -         -      8      1         0   2000000  2000000
P      1         0      -         -      9      1         0   2000000  2000000
P      1         0      -         -     10      1         0   2000000  2000000
P      1         0      -         -     11      1         0   2000000  2000000
P      1         0      -         -     12      1         0   2000000  2000000
P      1         0      -         -     13      1         0   2000000  2000000
P      1         0      -         -     14      1         0   2000000  2000000
P      1         0      -         -     15      1         0   2000000  2000000
P      1         0      -         -     16      1         0   2000000  2000000
P      1         0      -         -      0      1         0   2000000  2000000
S      1         0      -         -      1      1         0   1800000  1800000
B      0         0      -         -      -      -         -     -         -
*A:PE-1#
```

Now the system treats the channel as though it is using 12Mbps capacity even though its current rate has not changed.

If the rate is increased above the blackhole rate, the channel is blackholed and an alarm is generated.

```
*A:PE-1#
11 2011/10/21 01:40:13.21 UTC MINOR: MCPATH #2001 Base Black-hole-rate is reached
"Channel (172.16.2.1,239.255.0.2) for vRtr instance 1 slot/cplx 6/1 has been blackholed."
*A:PE-1# show mcast-management channel group 239.255.0.2 detail
=====
Multicast Channels
=====
-----
Source Address      : 172.16.2.1
Group Address       : 239.255.0.2
-----
Slot/Complex        : 6/1                Current Bw         : 19458 kbps
Dynamic/Explicit    : Dynamic             Current Path       : Blackhole
Oper Admin Bw       : 12000 kbps           Current Plane      : N/A
Ing last highest    : 19480                Preference        : 0
Black-hole rate     : 15000 kbps           Ing sec highest   : 19469
Time remaining      : 23 seconds           Blackhole         : Yes
=====
Multicast Channels : 1
=====
*A:PE-1#
*A:PE-1# tools dump mcast-path-mgr cpm
```

```
McPathMgr[6][0]: 0xf33b0a00
PATH:
Type SGs      InUseBW   AvailBW   TotalBW   ID   SGs      InUseBW   AvailBW   TotalBW
P      1         0         -         -    4      1         0  2000000  2000000
P      1         0         -         -    3      1         0  2000000  2000000
P      1         0         -         -    5      1         0  2000000  2000000
P      1         0         -         -    6      1         0  2000000  2000000
P      1         0         -         -    7      1         0  2000000  2000000
P      1         0         -         -    8      1         0  2000000  2000000
P      1         0         -         -    9      1         0  2000000  2000000
P      1         0         -         -   10      1         0  2000000  2000000
P      1         0         -         -   11      1         0  2000000  2000000
P      1         0         -         -   12      1         0  2000000  2000000
P      1         0         -         -   13      1         0  2000000  2000000
P      1         0         -         -   14      1         0  2000000  2000000
P      1         0         -         -   15      1         0  2000000  2000000
P      1         0         -         -   16      1         0  2000000  2000000
P      1         0         -         -    0      1         0  2000000  2000000
S      1         0         -         -    1      1         0  1800000  1800000
B      1      19480         -         -    -      -         -         -         -
*A:PE-1#
```

The output displayed above shows an alarm generated for a channel being blackholed due to the channel rate reaching the configured black-hole-rate. The example output below is an alarm for a channel being blackholed due to insufficient bandwidth being available to it.

```
7 2011/10/22 21:53:43.54 UTC MINOR: MCPATH #2001 Base No bandwidth available
"Channel (172.16.2.1,239.255.0.2) for vRtr instance 1 slot/cplx 6/1 has been blackholed."
```

Note that the following alarm relates to a dummy channel used to account for the unmanaged traffic. However, this traffic is never actually blackholed.

```
6 2011/10/21 00:27:58.00 UTC MINOR: MCPATH #2002 Base
"Channel (0.0.0.0,0.6.0.0) for unknown value (2) instance 0 slot/cplx 6/1 is no longer
being blackholed."
```

Alarms are also generated when all paths of a given type reach certain thresholds.

For primary and secondary paths, the two path range limit thresholds are

- Full: less than 5% capacity is available

```
9 2011/10/24 22:53:27.02 UTC MINOR: MCPATH #2003 Base
"The available bandwidth on secondary path on slot/cplx 6/1 has reached its maximum
limit."
```

- Not full: more than 10% of the path capacity is available.

```
10 2011/10/24 22:53:48.02 UTC MINOR: MCPATH #2004 Base
"The available bandwidth on secondary path on slot/cplx 6/1 is within range lim-
its."
```

A maximum of one alarm is generated for each event (blackhole start/stop, path full/not full) within a 3 second period. So, for example, if multiple channels are blackholed within the same 3 second period only one alarm will be generated (for the first event).

The effect of using the hi-bw-mcast-src command is illustrated below. Firstly, line card 6 is configured into group 1.

```
*A:PE-1# configure card 6 fp hi-bw-mcast-src group 1 alarm
*A:PE-1# show system switch-fabric high-bandwidth-multicast
=====
Switch Fabric
=====
          Cap:          Planes:
Slot/Mda Min  Max  Hbm Grp  Hi | Lo
-----
6/1      100% 100% Yes 1    4 3 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 0 | 1
7/1      100% 100% No  0   19 17 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 | 33
8/1      100% 100% No  0   35 34 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 0 | 1
A        100% 100% No  0    2 | 2
B        100% 100% No  0    2 | 2
=====
*A:PE-1#
```

The plane assignment has not changed (though it is possible that the system could re-arrange the planes used by card 6) and there are still planes (0,1) shared between card 6 and card 8.

Now card 8 is configured into group 2 (note that IMPM is only enabled on card 6 here).

```
*A:PE-1# configure card 8 fp hi-bw-mcast-src group 2 alarm
*A:PE-1# show system switch-fabric high-bandwidth-multicast
=====
Switch Fabric
=====
          Cap:          Planes:
Slot/Mda Min  Max  Hbm Grp  Hi | Lo
-----
6/1      100% 100% Yes 1    4 3 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 0 | 1
7/1      100% 100% No  0   19 17 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 | 33
8/1      100% 100% Yes 2   35 34 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 17 | 19
A        100% 100% No  0    2 | 2
B        100% 100% No  0    2 | 2
=====
*A:PE-1#
```

There are no longer planes shared between cards 6 and 8.

If card 7 is configured into group 3, the following is seen.

```
*A:PE-1# configure card 7 fp hi-bw-mcast-src group 3 alarm
*A:PE-1#
7 2011/10/21 00:35:50.95 UTC MINOR: CHASSIS #2052 Base Mda 6/1
"Class MDA Module : Plane shared by multiple multicast high bandwidth taps"

8 2011/10/21 00:35:50.95 UTC MINOR: CHASSIS #2052 Base Mda 6/2
```

```
"Class MDA Module : Plane shared by multiple multicast high bandwidth taps"
```

```
9 2011/10/21 00:35:50.97 UTC MINOR: CHASSIS #2052 Base Mda 7/1
```

```
"Class MDA Module : Plane shared by multiple multicast high bandwidth taps"
```

```
10 2011/10/21 00:35:50.97 UTC MINOR: CHASSIS #2052 Base Mda 7/2
```

```
"Class MDA Module : Plane shared by multiple multicast high bandwidth taps"
```

```
*A:PE-1# show system switch-fabric high-bandwidth-multicast
```

```
=====
Switch Fabric
=====
```

Slot/Mda	Cap:				Hbm	Grp	Planes:																		
	Min	Max					Hi	Lo																	
6/1	100%	100%	Yes	1			4	3	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	0	1			
7/1	100%	100%	Yes	3			21	20	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	0	1			
8/1	100%	100%	Yes	2			35	34	36	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	17	19			
A	100%	100%	No	0			2	2																	
B	100%	100%	No	0			2	2																	

```
=====
```

```
*A:PE-1#
```

There are insufficient planes to allow each card/group to have dedicated planes. Planes 0 and 1 are still shared between cards 6 and 7, generating the associated alarms.

A common example of the use of the **hi-bw-mcast-src** command would be when cards 6 and 8 have uplink ports on which high bandwidth multicast channels could be received. It would be desired to have these cards use different planes. To achieve this, card 7 could be configured into group 1, as follows.

```
*A:PE-1# configure card 7 fp hi-bw-mcast-src group 1 alarm
```

```
*A:PE-1# show system switch-fabric high-bandwidth-multicast
```

```
=====
Switch Fabric
=====
```

Slot/Mda	Cap:				Hbm	Grp	Planes:																		
	Min	Max					Hi	Lo																	
6/1	100%	100%	Yes	1			4	3	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	0	1			
7/1	100%	100%	Yes	1			4	3	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	0	1			
8/1	100%	100%	Yes	2			35	34	36	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	17	19			
A	100%	100%	No	0			2	2																	
B	100%	100%	No	0			2	2																	

```
=====
```

```
*A:PE-1#
```

Now it can be seen that card 7 shares the same planes as card 6, but more importantly card 6 has no planes in common with card 8.

Note that when traffic is received on card 6, it will also be seen on the same plane (not path) on card 7. In the example below, traffic can be seen on plane 4 which is used by both cards 6 and 7, but only card 6 has non-zero InUseBW path capacity.

```
*A:PE-1# tools dump mcast-path-mgr cpm
McPathMgr[6][0]: 0xf33b0a00
PATH:
Type SGs      InUseBW  AvailBW  TotalBW  ID  SGs      InUseBW  AvailBW  TotalBW
P      2      9707      -        -    4    3      9707  1990293  2000000
P      1        0      -        -    3    2        0  2000000  2000000
...
McPathMgr[7][0]: 0xf33b3198
PATH:
Type SGs      InUseBW  AvailBW  TotalBW  ID  SGs      InUseBW  AvailBW  TotalBW
P      1        0      -        -    4    3      9707  1990293  2000000
P      1        0      -        -    3    2        0  2000000  2000000
```

When IMPM managed traffic is received on SAPs (in an IES, VPLS or VPRN service) it can be seen against a specific queue counter (Off. Managed) in the SAP stats. The following output shows where sap 7/2/1:3 belongs to a VPLS service using igmp-snooping. A similar counter is not available for policer statistics.

```
*A:PE-1# show service id 2 sap 7/2/1:3 stats
=====
Service Access Points(SAP)
=====
-----
Sap per Queue stats
-----
Packets
Octets
Ingress Queue 1 (Unicast) (Priority)
Off. HiPrio      : 0      0
Off. LoPrio      : 0      0
Dro. HiPrio      : 0      0
Dro. LoPrio      : 0      0
For. InProf      : 0      0
For. OutProf     : 0      0

Ingress Queue 11 (Multipoint) (Priority)
Off. HiPrio      : 0      0
Off. LoPrio      : 0      0
Off. Managed     : 149410  209771640
Dro. HiPrio      : 0      0
Dro. LoPrio      : 0      0
For. InProf      : 149410  209771640
For. OutProf     : 0      0

Egress Queue 1
For. InProf      : 0      0
For. OutProf     : 0      0
Dro. InProf      : 0      0
Dro. OutProf     : 0      0
=====
*A:PE-1#
```

IOM1/2 Specific Output

The system is configured with the following cards and is in chassis mode **a**. As can be seen, an IOM2 is in slot 5.

```
A:PE-1# show card
```

```
=====
```

```
Card Summary
```

```
=====
```

Slot	Provisioned Card-type	Equipped Card-type	Admin State	Operational State	Comments
5	iom2-20g	iom2-20g	up	up	
6	iom3-xp	iom3-xp	up	up	
7	imm8-10gb-xfp	imm8-10gb-xfp	up	up	
8	iom3-xp	iom3-xp	up	up	
A	sfm4-12	sfm4-12	up	up/active	
B	sfm4-12	sfm4-12	up	up/standby	

```
=====
```

```
A:PE-1#
```

IMPM is enabled on MDA 1 and 2 of the IOM2 in slot 5, with a primary, secondary and ancillary path.

```
A:PE-1# show mcast-management mda
```

```
=====
```

```
MDA Summary
```

```
=====
```

S/C	Policy	Type	In-use-Bw	Admin
5/1	default	Primary	0 Kbps	up
	default	Secondary	0 Kbps	up
	default	Ancillary	0 Kbps	up
5/2	default	Primary	0 Kbps	up
	default	Secondary	0 Kbps	up
	default	Ancillary	0 Kbps	up
6/2	default	Primary	0 Kbps	down
	default	Secondary	0 Kbps	down
	default	Ancillary	0 Kbps	down
7/1	default	Primary	0 Kbps	down
	default	Secondary	0 Kbps	down
	default	Ancillary	0 Kbps	down
7/2	default	Primary	0 Kbps	down
	default	Secondary	0 Kbps	down
	default	Ancillary	0 Kbps	down
8/2	default	Primary	0 Kbps	down
	default	Secondary	0 Kbps	down
	default	Ancillary	0 Kbps	down

```
=====
```

```
A:PE-1#
```


The path/plane usage can be shown.

```
*A:PE-1# show system switch-fabric high-bandwidth-multicast
=====
Switch Fabric
=====
Cap:          Planes:
Slot/Mda Min  Max  Hbm Grp  Hi | Lo
-----
5/1      100% 100% No  0    1 | 0
5/2      100% 100% No  0    4 | 3
6/1      100% 100% No  0    6 5 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 0 1 3 4 | 5
7/1      100% 100% No  0    7 6 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 0 1 3 4 5 | 6
8/1      100% 100% No  0    8 7 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 0 1 3 4 5 6 | 7
A        100% 100% No  0    2 | 2
B        100% 100% No  0    2 | 2
=====

*A:PE-1#

*A:PE-1# tools dump mcast-path-mgr cpm
McPathMgr[5][0]: 0xf33b0a00
PATH:
Type SGs      InUseBW  AvailBW  TotalBw  ID  SGs      InUseBW  AvailBW  TotalBw
P      1          0    2000000  2000000  1    1          0    2000000  2000000
S      1          0    1500000  1500000  0    1          0    1800000  1800000
A      0          0    5000000  5000000  -    -          -      -      -
B      0          0      -      -      -    -          -      -      -
McPathMgr[5][1]: 0xf33b3198
PATH:
Type SGs      InUseBW  AvailBW  TotalBw  ID  SGs      InUseBW  AvailBW  TotalBw
P      1          0    2000000  2000000  4    1          0    2000000  2000000
S      1          0    1500000  1500000  3    1          0    1800000  1800000
A      0          0    5000000  5000000  -    -          -      -      -
B      0          0      -      -      -    -          -      -      -
*A:PE-1#
```

The path range limit alarm thresholds for the ancillary path are

- Full: less than 2% capacity is available
- Not full: more than 4% of the path capacity is available.

A single channel (239.255.0.1) is now sent into interface int-IOM2 on port 5/2/1 with static IGMP joins on interfaces int-IMM8, int-IOM3-1 and int-IOM3-2. The current forwarding rate can be seen.

```
*A:PE-1# show router pim group 239.255.0.1 detail
=====
PIM Source Group ipv4
=====
Group Address      : 239.255.0.1
Source Address     : 172.16.1.1
RP Address         : 192.0.2.1
Flags              : spt, rpt-prn-des   Type              : (S,G)
MRIB Next Hop     : 172.16.1.1
```

IOM1/2 Specific Output

```
MRIB Src Flags      : direct                Keepalive Timer Exp: 0d 00:02:44
Up Time             : 0d 00:07:45           Resolved By         : rtable-u

Up JP State         : Joined                 Up JP Expiry        : 0d 00:00:00
Up JP Rpt           : Pruned                Up JP Rpt Override  : 0d 00:00:00

Register State      : Pruned                Register Stop Exp   : 0d 00:00:32
Reg From Anycast RP: No

Rpf Neighbor        : 172.16.1.1
Incoming Intf       : int-IOM2
Outgoing Intf List  : int-IMM8, int-IOM3-1, int-IOM3-2

Curr Fwding Rate    : 9734.8 kbps
Forwarded Packets   : 591874                Discarded Packets   : 0
Forwarded Octets    : 817969868             RPF Mismatches      : 0
Spt threshold       : 0 kbps                 ECMP opt threshold  : 7
Admin bandwidth     : 1 kbps
```

As there are only 3 (<4) DFCs, the ancillary path is used.

```
*A:PE-1# show mcast-management channel
=====
Multicast Channels
=====
Legend :  D - Dynamic  E - Explicit
=====
Source Address      Slot/Cpx  Current-Bw  Path      D/E
Group Address      Highest-Bw  Plane
-----
172.16.1.1          5/2        9729        Ancillary  D
239.255.0.1         9740        -
=====
Multicast Channels : 1
=====
*A:PE-1#

*A:PE-1# show mcast-management channel detail
=====
Multicast Channels
=====
-----
Source Address      : 172.16.1.1
Group Address       : 239.255.0.1
-----
Slot/Complex        : 5/2                Current Bw          : 9729 kbps
Dynamic/Explicit     : Dynamic              Current Path        : Ancillary
Oper Admin Bw        : 0 kbps              Current Plane       : N/A
Ing last highest     : 9740                Preference          : 0
Black-hole rate      : None                Ing sec highest     : 9740
Time remaining       : 27 seconds           Blackhole           : No
=====
Multicast Channels : 1
=====
*A:PE-1#
```

If another join caused this traffic to be switched via an additional DFC, the system would place the channel on the primary path.

The ancillary path being used can also be seen as follows.

```
*A:PE-1# tools dump mcast-path-mgr cpm
McPathMgr[5][0]: 0xf33b0a00
PATH:
Type SGs      InUseBW  AvailBW  TotalBW  ID  SGs      InUseBW  AvailBW  TotalBW
P      1          0    2000000  2000000  1    1          0    2000000  2000000
S      1          0    1500000  1500000  0    1          0    1800000  1800000
A      0          0    5000000  5000000  -    -          -         -         -
B      0          0         -         -         -    -          -         -         -
McPathMgr[5][1]: 0xf33b3198
PATH:
Type SGs      InUseBW  AvailBW  TotalBW  ID  SGs      InUseBW  AvailBW  TotalBW
P      1          0    2000000  2000000  4    1          0    2000000  2000000
S      1          0    1500000  1500000  3    1          0    1800000  1800000
A      1      19480    4980520  5000000  -    -          -         -         -
B      0          0         -         -         -    -          -         -         -
*A:PE-1#
```

Note that the bandwidth shown on the ancillary path on the second MDA is approximately two times that of the ingress traffic, this matches the algorithm described earlier for the ancillary path. This can also be seen in the next output, there is the original channel traffic plus two replications (Repl).

```
*A:PE-1# tools dump mcast-path-mgr channels
=====
Slot: 5 Complex: 0
=====
Source address      CurrBw  Plane PathType  Path Pref
Group address      PathBw  Repl  Exp      BlkHoleBw
-----
Unmanaged traffic      0        1    primary  0      8
slot: 5 cmplx: 0 path: 0      0        0    none     0
Unmanaged traffic      0        0    secondary 1  8
slot: 5 cmplx: 0 path: 1      0        0    none     0
=====
Slot: 5 Complex: 1
=====
Source address      CurrBw  Plane PathType  Path Pref
Group address      PathBw  Repl  Exp      BlkHoleBw
-----
172.16.1.1          9740    48    ancillary 16     0
239.255.0.1        19480    2     none     0
Unmanaged traffic      0        4    primary  0      8
slot: 5 cmplx: 1 path: 0      0        0    none     0
Unmanaged traffic      0        3    secondary 1  8
slot: 5 cmplx: 1 path: 1      0        0    none     0
*A:PE-1#
```

Conclusion

This section has described the configuration of Ingress Multicast Path Management which optimizes IPv4 and IPv6 multicast capacity to achieve the maximum system-wide IP multicast throughput. It can be used for both routed IPv4/IPv6 and VPLS (IGMP and PIM) snooped IPv4 multicast groups, which usually relate to the distribution of IP TV channels.

IPv4 DHCP Hosts

In This Chapter

This section provides information about IPv4 DHCP host configurations.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 930](#)
- [Summary on page 931](#)
- [Overview on page 932](#)
- [Configuration on page 936](#)
- [Conclusion on page 973](#)

Applicability

This section is applicable to the 7450 ESS, 7750 SR and 7710 SR series and was tested on SR-OS 7.0 R6. The 7750 SR-c4 is supported from 8.0R4 and higher. This note is related only to the use of IPv4.

For Bridged CO, configuration and troubleshooting commands are taken from a 7450 ESS (typically positioned as BSA); this functionality is also available on 7750 SR and 7710 SR.

For Routed CO, configuration and troubleshooting commands are taken from a 7750 SR; this functionality is also available on 7710 SR. Routed CO is supported on 7450 ESS-7 or ESS-12 in mixed-mode since 8.0R1.

Summary

In the Triple Play Service Delivery Architecture (TPSDA), a subscriber is defined as a collection of hosts pertaining to a single access connection (such as a DSL line) and identified by a subscriber identifier. A subscriber host is an end user terminal within the subscriber home (for example, a PC, set-top box, home gateway) that is identified in the network with a unique (IP address; MAC address) tuple for IPoE or (PPPoE session ID; MAC address) tuple for PPPoE.

Following host types are distinguished:

- Static hosts
 - ip-mac
 - ip-only
- Dynamic hosts
 - ARP-host
 - DHCP-host
 - PPPoE-host

This section provides configuration and troubleshooting commands for DHCP-hosts.

Knowledge of the Alcatel-Lucent Triple Play Service Delivery Architecture (TPSDA) concepts is assumed throughout this document.

Overview

The network topology for a Bridged CO environment is displayed in [Figure 147](#) and for a Routed CO environment in [Figure 148](#).

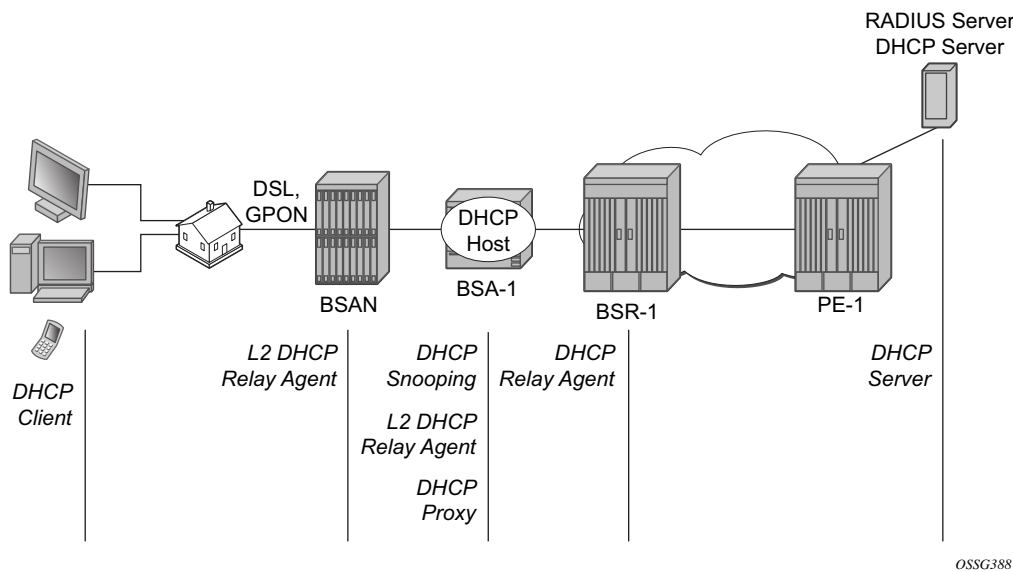


Figure 147: Bridged CO Network Topology

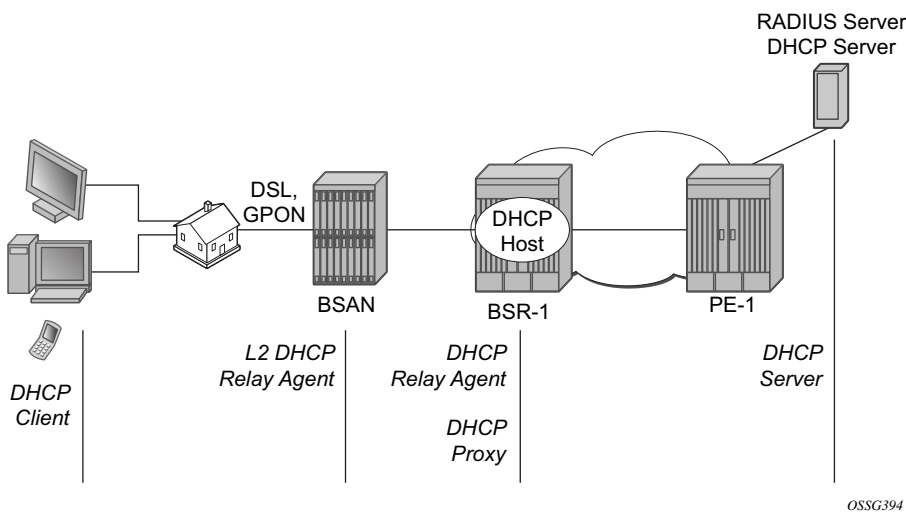


Figure 148: Routed CO Network Topology

Following configuration tasks should be done first and are not detailed in this configuration note:

- Basic service router configurations such as system interface, IGP, MPLS, BGP.
- Bridged CO service topology: VPLS on BSA-1, terminated in a VPRN or IES service on BSR-1.
- Routed CO service topology: VPRN or IES service with subscriber and group interface on BSR-1.
- External DHCP server: Server configuration and connectivity in the VPRN or base router instance.
- External RADIUS server: server configuration and connectivity in the VPRN or base router instance (Enhanced Subscriber Management (ESM) only).

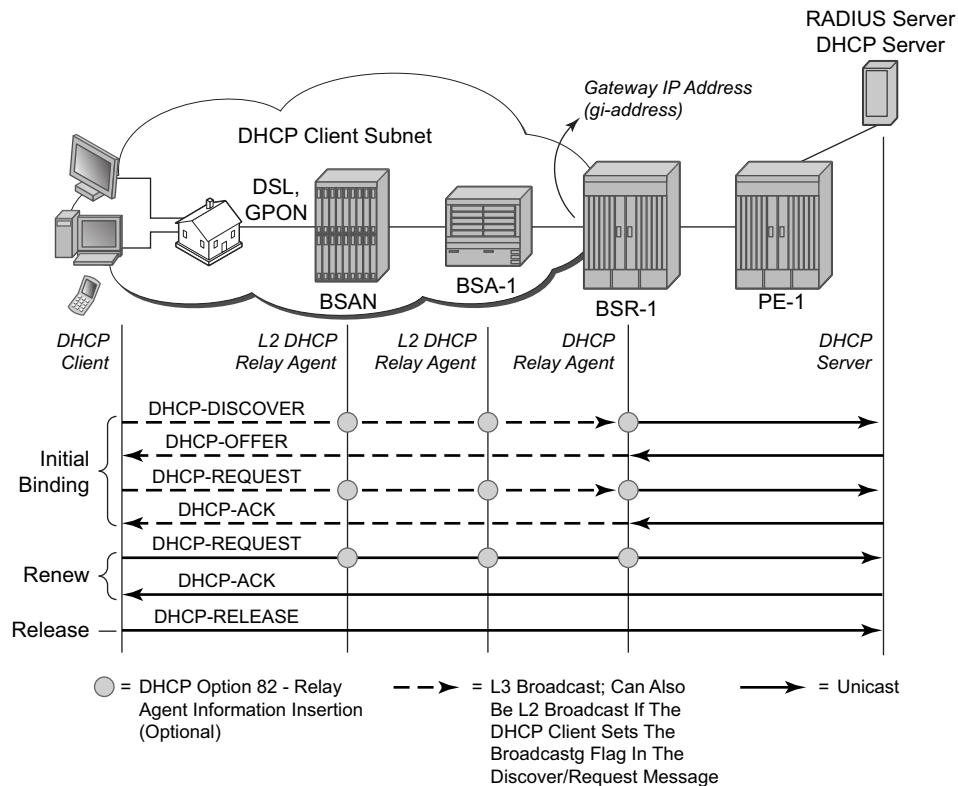
This section focuses on DHCP hosts instantiated in a VPLS service on BSA-1 (Bridged CO) or in a VPRN service subscriber interface on BSR-1 (Routed CO). Note that in case of Routed CO, it is also possible to instantiate the DHCP hosts in the base routing instance using an IES service.

Most of the DHCP host functionality is available with Basic Subscriber Management (BSM). When ESM is required, it is explicitly stated in the section.

Review of the DHCP Protocol

The DHCP protocol is used by a DHCP server to dynamically assign IP addresses and other optional configuration parameters to DHCP clients. These parameters are leased by the DHCP server for a duration specified by the lease time.

The DHCP lease process is outlined in [Figure 149](#).



OSSG389

Figure 149: DHCP Lease Process

When a DHCP client boots, a DHCP discover message is broadcasted on the local subnet (dest-ip = 255.255.255.255).

A DHCP server in the local subnet responds with a unicast DHCP offer message containing the *your ip address* field as well as other configuration parameters in the option fields (such as subnet mask, default gateway, DNS server IP addresses, lease time, etc.).

The DHCP client responds with a DHCP request message to accept the parameters specified in the DHCP offer. The DHCP request is also broadcasted on the local subnet.

The DHCP server acknowledges the DHCP request with a unicast DHCP ack message.

When the DHCP client receives a DHCP ack from the server, it is said to be in the bound state.

When half of the lease time has expired, the DHCP client tries to renew the lease. It will send a unicast DHCP request message to the DHCP server. The DHCP server will reply to the request with a unicast DHCP ack to the client.

If the renew failed, a rebind is attempted by default at 7/8 of the lease time. It will send a broadcast DHCP request message.

Before disconnecting from the local subnet, a DHCP client may return its lease by sending a DHCP release message to the DHCP server.

In case there is no DHCP server in the subnet of the DHCP client, a DHCP relay agent is needed to forward the broadcast DHCP discover/request messages on behalf of the DHCP client to a DHCP server located on a different subnet. The DHCP relay agent will add the gateway IP address field to the messages and send them as unicast to the DHCP server IP address. The DHCP server in this case will respond by unicast to the DHCP relay agent. The DHCP relay agent forwards the DHCP server messages as broadcast on the DHCP client subnet.

Configuration

DHCP Snooping

DHCP client packets (discover, request, release) must be snooped (intercepted and sent to the control plane for further processing) to allow for DHCP Option 82 insertion, RADIUS or local user database authentication and releasing the DHCP host session state.

For Bridged CO, DHCP snooping must be enabled explicitly on the subscriber SAP:

```
Bridged CO
configure
  service
    vpls 1 customer 1 create
- - - snip - - -
    sap 1/1/2:1 split-horizon-group "rshg-1" create
      description "sub-1"
      dhcp
        snoop
        no shutdown
      exit
    exit
```

DHCP server packets (offer, ack, nak, etc.) must be snooped to allow for DHCP Option 82 removal, lease state population and/or ESM functions.

For Bridged CO, DHCP snooping must be enabled explicitly on all SDPs and/or SAPs that provide connectivity to the DHCP server:

Bridged CO:

```
configure
  service
    vpls 1 customer 1 create
- - - snip - - -
    spoke-sdp 1:1 create
      dhcp
        snoop
      exit
    exit
```

For Routed CO, DHCP snooping is implicitly enabled by configuring a DHCP relay agent ([DHCP Relay Agent on page 937](#)): All DHCP messages received on a routed network interface will be snooped (for example, intercepted and sent to the control plane for further processing).

DHCP Relay Agent

For Bridged CO, the DHCP relay agent function is configured at the IP edge (BSR):

Bridged CO:

```
configure
  service
    vprn 1 customer 1 create
  - - - snip - - -
    interface "int-BSA1-p2mp-1" create
      description "Bridged CO"
      address 10.1.0.254/16
      dhcp
        server 172.16.0.1
        trusted
        gi-address 10.1.0.254
        no shutdown
      exit
    ip-mtu 1500
    spoke-sdp 1:1 create
    exit
  exit
```

For Routed CO, the DHCP relay agent function must be configured at BSR-1 group-interface level where the DHCP host will be instantiated:

Routed CO:

```
configure
  service
    vprn 1 customer 1 create
  - - - snip - - -
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
      description "Routed CO"
      address 10.2.0.254/16
      group-interface "group-int-1" create
        dhcp
          server 172.16.0.1
          trusted
          gi-address 10.2.0.254
          no shutdown
        exit
    exit
```

The server IP address should point to the DHCP server and must be reachable in the same routing instance as where the (subscriber-)interface is defined.

The **trusted** command makes the interface a trusted interface to allow Option 82 insertion by a Layer 2 DHCP relay agent (see [DHCP Options \(Relay Agent Information\) on page 939](#)).

Configuration

The gi-address must be a local configured IP address on the (subscriber-)interface. The relayed DHCP messages to the DHCP server will have the outgoing interface IP address as source IP address. To change the default behavior and use the configured gi-address as source IP address, specify the optional **src-ip-addr** flag:

CLI Syntax: **gi-address 10.2.0.254 src-ip-addr**

A Layer 2 DHCP relay agent (such as BSAN or BSA) can add DHCP Option 82 information and leave the gi-address field to 0.0.0.0. The gi-address is the gateway IP address, filled in by the DHCP relay agent. An incoming DHCP discover with Option 82 present and gi-address field = 0.0.0.0 will be dropped by the DHCP relay agent according the RFC. The Rx Untrusted Packets and client Packets Discarded counters are increased in the DHCP statistics.

Output from DHCP debug log on BSR-1:

```
DROPPED DHCP Boot Request on Interface group-int-1 (1/1/3:1) Port 67
Problem: message is received from an untrusted client
```

Therefore, the DHCP relay agent should be configured as trusted to allow DHCP Option 82 insertion by a Layer 2 DHCP relay agent.

DHCP Options (Relay Agent Information)

In Bridged CO, when DHCP snooping is enabled on a VPLS SAP, DHCP Option 82 relay agent information can be altered or added on an incoming DHCP discover/request. This is sometimes referred to as a Layer 2 DHCP relay agent function.

In Routed CO, a DHCP relay agent can alter or add the DHCP Option 82 relay agent information on an incoming DHCP discover/request.

Supported DHCP Option 82 sub-options and their format are listed in [Table 30](#):

Table 30: Supported DHCP Option 82 Sub-Options

Option 82 Sub-Option	Format	Example
Opt82 [1] Circuit ID (Routed CO)	ifindex — 32 bit virtual router ID followed by a 32 bit ifindex in hex	00 00 00 02 00 00 00 04
	sap-id [sap id in ascii]	1/1/3:1
	ascii3-tuple [system-name|service-id|group-interface|sap-id]	
	vlan-ascii-tuple [system-name|service-id|group-interface|dot1p|vlan-id]	“BSR-1|1|group-int-1|0|1”
Opt82 [1] Circuit ID (Bridged CO)	ascii-tuple [system-name|service-id|sap-id]	“BSA-1|1|1/1/2:1”
	vlan-ascii-tuple [system-name|service-id|sap-id|dot1p|vlan-id]	“BSA-1|1|1/1/2:1|0|1”
Opt82 [2] Remote ID (Bridged and Routed CO)	MAC [client hw address in hex]	fe fd 00 02 45 00
	string (max. 32 chars)	“Opt-82 [2] – Remote ID”
Opt82 [9] Vendor Specific (Bridged and Routed CO)	[1] system-id [hostname in ascii]	“BSA-1” or “BSR-1”
	[2] client-mac-address [client hw address in hex]	fe fd 00 02 45 00
	[3] service-id	1
	[4] sap-id [sap id in ascii]	“1/1/2:1”
	[5] string (max. 32 chars)	“Opt-82 [9] [5] – string”
Opt82 [9] Vendor Specific (Routed CO)	[13] pool-name [dhcp pool name from Radius/Local User DB in ascii]	“dhcp-pool-1”

Note: The application for Option 82 Circuit-ID format vlan-ascii-tuple is to preserve the Dot1p marking of DHCP packets in the downstream direction (DHCP server to client). The dot1p value of the incoming DHCP discover/request is recorded as part of the Option 82 Circuit ID. The outgoing DHCP offer/ack packets are marked with the Dot1p value found as part of the Circuit ID echoed by the DHCP server.

Possible actions on incoming DHCP discover/request:

- Replace:
 - At ingress:
If present, remove all the Option 82 information from the incoming DHCP discover/request. Insert the configured DHCP options before forwarding to the DHCP relay agent or DHCP server
 - At egress:
Remove all Option 82 information from the incoming DHCP offer/ack before forwarding to the client.

Bridged CO:

```
configure
service
    vpls 1 customer 1 create
- - - snip - - -
    sap 1/1/2:1 split-horizon-group "rshg-1" create
    dhcp
        snoop
        option
            action replace
            circuit-id
            remote-id string "Opt-82 [2] - Remote ID"
            vendor-specific-option
                system-id
                client-mac-address
                service-id
                sap-id
                string "Opt-82 [9] [5] - Vendor
```

Routed CO:

```
configure
service
    vprn 1 customer 1 create
- - - snip - - -
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
        description "Routed CO"
        address 10.2.0.254/16
        group-interface "group-int-1" create
            dhcp
                option
                    action replace
                    circuit-id
                    remote-id string "Opt-82 [2] Remote ID"
```



```

        vendor-specific-option
            system-id
            client-mac-address
            pool-name
            service-id
            sap-id
            string "Opt-82 [9] [5] string"
    exit
exit
server 172.16.0.1
trusted
gi-address 10.2.0.254
no shutdown
exit

```

Drop:

Drop all incoming DHCP discover/request with Option 82 information present.

The Client Packets Dropped counter is increased in the DHCP statistics:

Bridged CO:

```

A:BSA-1# show service id 1 dhcp statistics
=====
DHCP Statistics, service 1
=====
Client Packets Snooped           : 130
Client Packets Forwarded         : 125
Client Packets Dropped           : 5
Client Packets Proxied (RADIUS)  : 0
Client Packets Proxied (Lease-Split) : 0
Server Packets Snooped           : 64
Server Packets Forwarded         : 64
Server Packets Dropped           : 0
DHCP RELEASEs Spoofed           : 0
DHCP FORCERENEWs Spoofed        : 0
=====
A:BSA-1#

```

Routed CO:

```
*A:BSR-1# show router 1 dhcp statistics
```

or

```

*A:BSR-1# show service id 1 dhcp statistics
=====
DHCP Global Statistics, service 1
=====
Rx Packets           : 28469
Tx Packets           : 28402
Rx Malformed Packets : 0
Rx Untrusted Packets : 4

```

Configuration

```
Client Packets Discarded      : 4
Client Packets Relayed        : 14251
Client Packets Snooped        : 12
Client Packets Proxied (RADIUS) : 0
Client Packets Proxied (Lease-Split) : 0
Server Packets Discarded      : 0
Server Packets Relayed        : 14191
Server Packets Snooped        : 7
DHCP RELEASES Spoofed        : 0
DHCP FORCERENEWS Spoofed     : 0
=====
*A:BSR-1#
```

Output from the DHCP debug log:

Bridged CO — BSA-1 VPLS service:

```
"SVCMMGR: Dropped DHCP Packet
VPLS 1, SAP 1/1/2:1
  Problem: port config doesn't allow BOOTP/DHCP packets with Option 82"
```

Routed CO BSR-1 VPRN service:

```
"PIP: DHCP
instance 2 (1), interface index 4 (group-int-1),
  DROPPED DHCP Boot Request on Interface group-int-1 (1/1/3:1) Port 67
  Problem: action drop is configured and packet contains Option 82
```

- Incoming DHCP discover/request without Option 82 information will be forwarded to (Bridged CO) or processed by (Routed CO) the DHCP relay agent as is, ignoring the configured options.

Bridged CO:

```
configure
  service
    vpls 1 customer 1 create
- - - snip - - -
    sap 1/1/2:1 split-horizon-group "rshg-1" create
      dhcp
        snoop
        option
          action drop
        exit
        no shutdown
      exit
```

Routed CO:

```
configure
  service
    vprn 1 customer 1 create
  - - - snip - - -
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
      description "Routed CO"
      address 10.2.0.254/16
      group-interface "group-int-1" create
        dhcp
          option
            action drop
          exit
          server 172.16.0.1
          trusted
          gi-address 10.2.0.254
          no shutdown
        exit
```

Keep (default):

- At ingress – Incoming DHCP discover/request without Option 82 information will be forwarded to (Bridged CO) or processed by (Routed CO) the DHCP relay agent as is, ignoring any configured option.
- At ingress for incoming DHCP discover/request with Option 82 information present – Configured vendor specific options will be merged with the existing Option 82 information before sending to (Routed CO) or processing by (Routed CO) the DHCP relay agent. Configured Circuit ID and Remote ID options will be ignored.
- At egress — Remove Option 82 vendor specific information from the incoming DHCP offer/ack before forwarding to the client. Other existing DHCP Option 82 information is kept.

Bridged CO:

```
configure
  service
    vpls 1 customer 1 create
- - - snip - - -
    sap 1/1/2:1 split-horizon-group "rshg-1" create
      dhcp
        snoop
        option
          action keep
        exit
      no shutdown
    exit
```

Routed CO:

```
configure
  service
    vprn 1 customer 1 create
- - - snip - - -
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
      description "Routed CO"
      address 10.2.0.254/16
      group-interface "group-int-1" create
        dhcp
          option
            action keep
          exit
          server 172.16.0.1
          trusted
          gi-address 10.2.0.254
          no shutdown
        exit
```

DHCP Lease State

The DHCP lease state is an internal database structure that keeps track of the DHCP host states. The DHCP lease state enables subscriber management functions (per-subscriber QoS and accounting) and security functions (dynamic anti-spoof filtering) on the DHCP host.

The DHCP lease information for a specific host is extracted from the DHCP ack message. [Table 31](#) displays some typical information stored in the DHCP lease state. The table does not display all information: additional data is added for managed SAPs, DHCPv6, etc.

Table 31: Information in DHCP Lease State

Parameter	Comment
Service ID	Service where the DHCP host is connected
IP Address	IP address of the DHCP host
Client HW Address	Ethernet MAC address of the DHCP host
Subscriber-interface (Routed CO only)	Subscriber interface name where the DHCP host is instantiated
Group-interface (Routed CO only)	Group interface name where the DHCP host is instantiated
SAP	SAP where the DHCP hosts is connected
Remaining Lifetime	The remaining time before the DHCP host is deleted from the system (updated each time a DHCP renew/rebind occurs)
Persistence Key	Lookup key for this host in the persistency file (see further)
Sub-Ident	ESM: Subscriber ID of the DHCP host
Sub-Profile-String	ESM: Subscriber profile string of the DHCP host
SLA-Profile-String	ESM: SLA profile string of the DHCP host
App-Profile-String	ESM: Application profile string of the DHCP host
Lease ANCP-String	ESM: ANCP string for this DHCP host
Lease Int Dest Id	ESM: Internal destination ID for this DHCP host
Category-Map-Name	ESM: Volume and Time based accounting
Sub-Ident origin	ESM: Origin for the Subscriber ID for this host (None, DHCP, RADIUS, etc.)
Strings origin	ESM: Origin for the ESM strings for this host (None, DHCP, RADIUS, etc.)

Table 31: Information in DHCP Lease State (Continued)

Parameter	Comment
Lease Info origin	ESM: Origin for the IP configuration for this host (None, DHCP, RADIUS, etc.)
Ip-Netmask	The IP netmask for this DHCP host
Broadcast-Ip-Addr	The broadcast IP address for this host
Default-Router	The default gateway for this host
Primary-Dns	The primary DNS server for this host
Secondary-Dns	The secondary DNS server for this host
Primary-Nbns	The primary NetBIOS name server for this host
Secondary-Nbns	The secondary NetBIOS name server for this host
ServerLeaseStart	Time and date that the lease for this host started (first DHCP ack received)
ServerLastRenew	Time and date that the lease for this host was last renewed
ServerLeaseEnd	Time and date that the lease for this host will expire
Session-Timeout	Lease time specified by the DHCP server
DHCP Server Addr	IP address of the DHCP server that allocated the lease for this host
Circuit Id	DHCP Relay Agent information Option 82 Circuit ID content
Remote Id	DHCP Relay Agent information Option 82 Remote ID content
RADIUS User-Name	ESM: Username used in the RADIUS authentication access request

For Bridged CO, the population of the DHCP lease state must be enabled through configuration. The number of leases allowed on the VPLS SAP must be specified. When omitted, a single DHCP host is allowed per SAP.

Bridged CO:

```
configure
  service
    vpls 1 customer 1 create
- - - snip - - -
    sap 1/1/2:1 split-horizon-group "rshg-1" create
      dhcp
        snoop
        lease-populate 10
        no shutdown
      exit
```

For Routed CO, DHCP lease state population is enabled by default on a group interface with DHCP configured as **no shutdown**. The number of leases allowed on each SAP of the group-interface must be configured (by default a single DHCP host is allowed on each SAP):

Routed CO:

```
configure
  service
    vprn 1 customer 1 create
- - - snip - - -
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
      description "Routed CO"
      address 10.2.0.254/16
    group-interface "group-int-1" create
      dhcp
        server 172.16.0.1
        trusted
        lease-populate 10
        gi-address 10.2.0.254
        no shutdown
      exit
```

To check the DHCP lease state for a particular service, use the **show service id *service-id* dhcp lease-state** command. Detailed output as well as additional output filtering is available:

Bridged CO:

```
A:BSA-1# show service id 1 dhcp lease-state ?
- lease-state [sap <sap-id>|sdp <sdp-id:vc-id>|interface
  <interface-name>ip-address <ip-address[/mask]>|chaddr <ieee-address>|mac
  <ieee-address>|{[port <port-id>] [no-inter-dest-id | inter-dest-id
  <inter-dest-id>]}] [detail]
```

Routed CO:

```
*A:BSR-1# show service id 1 dhcp lease-state ?
```

```
- lease-state [wholesaler <service-id>] [sap <sap-id>|sdp <sdp-id:vc-id>|
  interface <interface-name>|ip-address <ip-address[/mask]>|chaddr
  <ieee-address>|mac <ieee-address>|{[port <port-id>] [no-inter-dest-id |
  inter-dest-id <inter-dest-id>]}}] [detail]
```

Bridged CO

```
*A:BSA-1# show service id 1 dhcp lease-state detail
```

```
=====
DHCP lease states for service 1
=====
```

```
Service ID          : 1
IP Address          : 10.1.0.100
Client HW Address   : fe:fd:00:02:45:00
SAP                 : 1/1/2:1
Remaining Lifetime  : 00h09m50s
Persistence Key     : 0x00000001
```

```
Sub-Ident           : ""
Sub-Profile-String  : ""
SLA-Profile-String  : ""
App-Profile-String  : ""
Lease ANCP-String   : ""
Lease Int Dest Id   : ""
Category-Map-Name   : ""
```

```
Sub-Ident origin    : None
Strings origin       : None
Lease Info origin    : DHCP
```

```
Ip-Netmask          : 255.255.0.0
Broadcast-Ip-Addr    : N/A
Default-Router       : 10.1.0.254
Primary-Dns          : N/A
Secondary-Dns        : N/A
Primary-Nbns         : N/A
Secondary-Nbns       : N/A
```

```
ServerLeaseStart     : 11/20/2009 14:00:18
ServerLastRenew      : 11/20/2009 14:00:18
ServerLeaseEnd        : 11/20/2009 14:10:18
Session-Timeout      : 0d 00:10:00
DHCP Server Addr     : 172.16.0.1
```

Relay Agent Information

```
Circuit Id          : BSA-1|1|1/1/2:1
Remote Id            : Opt-82 [2] - Remote ID
Radius User-Name     : ""
```

```
-----
Number of lease states : 1
=====
```

```
*A:BSA-1#
```


Routed CO:

```

*A:BSR-1# show service id 1 dhcp lease-state detail
=====
DHCP lease states for service 1
=====
Service ID           : 1
IP Address           : 10.2.0.100
Client HW Address    : fe:fd:00:02:45:00
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : group-int-1
SAP                  : 1/1/3:1
Remaining Lifetime   : 00h09m48s
Persistence Key      : N/A

Sub-Ident            : ""
Sub-Profile-String   : ""
SLA-Profile-String   : ""
App-Profile-String   : ""
Lease ANCP-String    : ""
Lease Int Dest Id    : ""
Category-Map-Name    : ""

Sub-Ident origin     : None
Strings origin       : None
Lease Info origin    : DHCP

Ip-Netmask           : 255.255.0.0
Broadcast-Ip-Addr    : N/A
Default-Router       : 10.2.0.254
Primary-Dns          : N/A
Secondary-Dns        : N/A
Primary-Nbns         : N/A
Secondary-Nbns       : N/A

ServerLeaseStart     : 11/26/2009 18:03:24
ServerLastRenew      : 11/26/2009 18:03:24
ServerLeaseEnd       : 11/26/2009 18:13:24
Session-Timeout      : 0d 00:10:00
DHCP Server Addr     : 172.16.0.1

Relay Agent Information
  Circuit Id         : Circuit-ID sub-1
  Remote Id          : Remote-ID sub-1
  Radius User-Name   : ""
=====
Number of lease states : 1
=====
*A:BSR-1#

```

DHCP Host Session: Set-up, Operation and Release

Snooping the DHCP communication between a DHCP client and a DHCP relay agent/server facilitates the DHCP host instantiation: Upon the reception of a DHCP ack message from the server, the DHCP lease state is populated. With ESM enabled, a DHCP host is also instantiated. The DHCP host will appear in the subscriber-host table for the service with origin set to ?HCP?

Bridged CO:

```
*A:BSA-1# show service id 1 subscriber-hosts
=====
Subscriber Host table
=====
Sap      IP Address      MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin
Subscriber
-----
1/1/2:1   10.1.0.100      fe:fd:00:02:45:00 N/A      DHCP
sub-1
-----
Number of subscriber hosts : 1
=====
*A:BSA-1#
```

Routed CO

```
*A:BSR-1# show service id 1 subscriber-hosts
=====
Subscriber Host table
=====
Sap      IP Address      MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin
Subscriber      Fwding state
-----
1/1/3:1   10.2.0.100      fe:fd:00:02:45:00 N/A      DHCP
N/A      Fwding
-----
Number of subscriber hosts : 1
=====
*A:BSA-1#
```

If ESM is enabled, the subscriber-host will also appear in the active subscriber table:

Routed CO:

```
A:BSR-1# show service active-subscribers
=====
Active Subscribers
=====
Subscriber sub-1 (sub-profile-1)
-----
(1) SLA Profile Instance sap:1/1/3:1 - sla:sla-profile-1
-----
IP Address      MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin
```

```

-----
10.2.0.100      fe:fd:00:02:45:00 N/A      DHCP
-----
Number of active subscribers : 1
=====
*A:BSA-1#

```

Troubleshooting the DHCP session set-up is done with DHCP debugging:

Bridged CO:

```

*A:BSA-1# debug service id 1 dhcp ?
- dhcp
- no dhcp

[no] detail-level    - Configure the DHCP tracing detail level
[no] mac             - Show DHCP packets for a particular MAC address
[no] mode            - Configure the DHCP tracing mode
[no] sap             - Show DHCP packets for a particular SAP
[no] sdp             - Show DHCP packets for a particular SDP

```

Routed CO:

```

*A:BSR-1# debug router 1 ip dhcp ?
- dhcp [interface <ip-int-name>]
- dhcp mac <ieee-address>
- dhcp sap <sap-id>
- no dhcp [interface <ip-int-name>]
- no dhcp mac <ieee-address>
- no dhcp sap <sap-id>
- - - snip - - -
[no] detail-level    - Configure the DHCP tracing detail level
[no] mode            - Configure the DHCP tracing model

```

For example:

Bridged CO:

```

*A:BSA-1# show debug
debug
  service
    id 1
      dhcp
        mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
        detail-level medium
      exit
    exit
  exit
exit

```

Routed CO:

```
*A:BSR-1# show debug
debug
  router "1"
    ip
      dhcp
        detail-level medium
        mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
      exit
    exit
  exit
exit
```

Note: The example above will log all DHCP packets on the service. When thousands of DHCP hosts are active, more granular filtering is required: for example look only to dropped packets or look only to packets from a particular MAC address.

To display the debugging information, a dedicated log should be created:

```
*A:BSA-1# configure log
*A:BSA-1>config>log# info
-----
      log-id 1
        description "Send debug log to the current telnet/ssh session"
        from debug-trace
        to session
      exit
-----
*A:BSA-1#
```

The following shows sample DHCP debug log output (detail-level medium):

Bridged CO:

```
28 2009/11/23 12:53:05.28 CET MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base SVCNMR
"SVCNMR: TX DHCP Packet
  VPLS 1, SAP 1/1/2:1

  BootReply to UDP port 68
  ciaddr: 0.0.0.0          yiaddr: 10.1.0.100
  siaddr: 0.0.0.0          giaddr: 0.0.0.0
  chaddr: fe:fd:00:02:45:00 xid: 0x6b230c18

  DHCP options:
  [82] Relay agent information: len = 25
    [1] Circuit-id: MyCircuitID
    [2] Remote-id: MyRemoteID
  [53] Message type: Ack
  [54] DHCP server addr: 172.16.0.1
  [51] Lease time: 1200
  [1] Subnet mask: 255.255.0.0
  [3] Router: 10.1.0.254
  [255] End
"
```

During the lifetime of a DHCP host, the DHCP lease state is updated in the system: for example, the remaining lifetime after a DHCP renew. To check lease details from the DHCP host during its lifetime, consult the DHCP lease state details:

```
*A:BSA-1# show service id 1 dhcp lease-state detail
- - - snip - - -
# see above for a sample output
```

If the remaining lifetime timer expires before the DHCP session is renewed or rebound, the DHCP lease state is cleared. If ESM is enabled, the DHCP host is removed from the system.

A DHCP host can be manually deleted from the system using following clear command:

```
*A:BSA-1# clear service id 1 dhcp lease-state ?
- lease-state [no-dhcp-release]
- lease-state [port <port-id>] [inter-dest-id <intermediate-destination-id>]
  [no-dhcp-release]
- lease-state [port <port-id>] no-inter-dest-id [no-dhcp-release]
- lease-state ip-address <ip-address[/mask]> [no-dhcp-release]
- lease-state mac <ieee-address> [no-dhcp-release]
- lease-state sap <sap-id> [no-dhcp-release]
- lease-state sdp <sdp-id:vc-id> [no-dhcp-release]
```

```
*A:BSA-1# clear service id 1 dhcp lease-state ip-address 10.1.0.100
```

The DHCP lease state is deleted and all related state (such as, anti-spoof filter, ARP table entry). If ESM is enabled, the DHCP host is removed from the system. Optionally, a DHCP release is sent to the DHCP server to notify that the IP address can be released. This is reflected in the DHCP statistics in the DHCP RELEASES Spoofed counter. Use the **no-dhcp-release** flag in the clear command if no DHCP release is to be sent when issuing the **clear** command.

To display a summary overview of the DHCP configuration on a particular service:

Bridged CO:

```
*A:BSA-1# show service id 1 dhcp summary
=====
DHCP Summary, service 1
=====
Sap/Sdp           Snoop  Used/  Arp Reply  Info  Admin
                  Provided Agent   Option  State
-----
sap:1/1/2:1       Yes    1/2    Yes        Keep  Up
sap:1/1/2:2       Yes    0/1    Yes        Keep  Up
sdp:1:1           Yes    N/A    N/A        N/A   N/A
-----
Number of Entries : 3
-----
=====
*A:BSA-1#
```

Routed CO:

```
*A:BSR-1# show service id 1 dhcp summary
=====
DHCP Summary, service 1
=====
Interface Name      Arp      Used/      Info      Admin
  SapId/SDp        Populate Provided      Option  State
-----
group-int-1         No        1/2              Keep    Up
-----
Interfaces: 2
=====
*A:BSA-1#
```

The Used/Provided field indicates the number of active versus the number of allowed DHCP leases on the SAP, SDP or interface.

To check the DHCP statistics, use the following command:

Bridged CO:

```
*A:BSA-1# show service id 1 dhcp statistics
=====
DHCP Statistics, service 1
=====
Client Packets Snooped      : 474
Client Packets Forwarded    : 474
Client Packets Dropped      : 0
Client Packets Proxied (RADIUS) : 0
Client Packets Proxied (Lease-Split) : 0
Server Packets Snooped      : 472
Server Packets Forwarded    : 469
Server Packets Dropped      : 3
DHCP RELEASES Spoofed      : 0
DHCP FORCERENEWS Spoofed    : 0
=====
*A:BSA-1#
```

Routed CO:

```
*A:BSR-1# show router 1 dhcp statistics
=====
DHCP Global Statistics (Service: 1)
=====
Rx Packets      : 28532
Tx Packets      : 28450
Rx Malformed Packets : 0
Rx Untrusted Packets : 4
Client Packets Discarded : 20
Client Packets Relayed : 14259
Client Packets Snooped : 29
Client Packets Proxied (RADIUS) : 0
Client Packets Proxied (Lease-Split) : 0
Server Packets Discarded : 0
Server Packets Relayed : 14199
```

```

Server Packets Snooped           : 21
DHCP RELEASEs Spoofed           : 1
DHCP FORCERENEWS Spoofed        : 0
=====
*A:BSA-1#

```

Note additional filtering can be done to retrieve DHCP statistics per SAP, SDP or interface.

To clear the DHCP statistics:

Bridged CO:

```

*A:BSA-1# clear service id 1 dhcp statistics ?
- statistics [sap <sap-id> | sdp <sdp-id:vc-id> | interface <ip-int-name|
  ip-address>]

```

Routed CO:

```

*A:BSR-1# clear router 1 dhcp statistics
- statistics [<ip-int-name|ip-address>]

<ip-int-name|ip-ad*> : ip-int-name    - 32 chars max
                      ip-address     - a.b.c.d

```

DHCP Hosts Advanced Topics

High Availability

The DHCP lease state supports High Availability (HA): the lease state is synchronized to the standby CPM. When the active CPM fails, all DHCP hosts stay active without service interruption.

DHCP Lease State Persistency

A DHCP session does not have a keep-alive mechanism to detect unavailability. A new DHCP session set up is only attempted after expiration of the DHCP lease time. A node reboot causing the loss of DHCP lease state and the corresponding anti-spoof filters could therefore result in unacceptable long service outages.

The DHCP lease state can be made persistent across node reboots: DHCP lease state is restored from a persistency file stored on the compact flash file system. As a result, DHCP sessions will only loose connectivity during the time of reboot without being completely disconnected.

To activate the DHCP lease state persistency:

```
configure
  system
    persistence
      subscriber-mgmt
        description "DHCP lease state persistency"
        location cf2:
      exit
    exit
```

A dedicated persistency file will be created on the specified compact flash file system. The file is initialized to store the maximum number of allowed hosts; its size is fixed to avoid file system space problems during operations.

```
*A:BSA-1# file dir cf2:
```

```
Volume in drive cf2 on slot A has no label.
```

```
Volume in drive cf2 on slot A is formatted as FAT32.
```

```
Directory of cf2:\
```

```
11/23/2009  02:01p           536871424  submgmt.005
              1 File(s)                536871424 bytes.
              0 Dir(s)                 1558183424 bytes free.
```


Each time a DHCP ack is received from the DHCP server, the persistency file is updated together with the lease state. If the file update fails, an event is generated to indicate that persistency can not be guaranteed.

The content of the persistency file may vary between different SR-OS software releases. When upgrading, the persistency file is automatically upgraded to the new format. To downgrade the persistency file to a lower SR-OS release version, use the following command:

```
*A:BSA-1# tools perform subscriber-mgmt downgrade ?
- downgrade target-version <target> [reboot]

<target>                : The version you want to downgrade to
                        7.0 (current) - submgmt.005
                        6.0          - submgmt.004
                        5.0          - submgmt.003
                        4.0          - submgmt.pst
<reboot>                : reboot system after successful conversion
```

The content of the persistency file can be looked at using the following command:

```
*A:BSA-1# show service id 1 dhcp lease-state sap 1/1/2:2 detail
=====
DHCP lease states for service 1
=====
Service ID      : 1
IP Address      : 10.1.0.99
Client HW Address : fe:fd:00:02:46:00
SAP             : 1/1/2:2
Remaining Lifetime : 00h07m17s
Persistence Key  : 0x00000005
- - - snip - - -
=====
*A:BSA-1#

*A:BSA-1# tools dump persistence submgt record 0x00000005
-----
Persistency File Record
-----
Filename       : cf2:\submgmt.005
Key            : 00000005
Last Update    : 2009/11/23 14:58:17 (UTC)
Action         : UPDATE
Data :
  Host Type    : DHCP lease state
  Service ID   : 1
  SAP ID       : 1/1/2:2
  IP           : 10.1.0.99
  CHADDR       : fe:fd:00:02:46:00
  NH MAC       : fe:fd:00:02:46:00
  Srvr Lse Start : 2009/11/23 14:30:02 (UTC)
  Srvr Last Renew: 2009/11/23 14:58:17 (UTC)
  Srvr Lse End   : 2009/11/23 15:08:17 (UTC)
  Srvr Addr     : 172.16.0.1
  Option82      : 10 bytes
  Option60      : 0 bytes
  Sub-ID        : NULL
```

DHCP Hosts Advanced Topics

```
Sub-prof-ID      : NULL
SLA-prof-ID      : NULL
App-prof-ID      : NULL
ANCP-Str         : NULL
Int-dest-ID      : NULL
Cat-map-str      : NULL
Dhcp6 Pfx len    : 32
Dhcp6 CfgPfxLen  : 0
Dhcp6 Client Id  : NULL
Dhcp6 Iaid       : 0
Dhcp6 Iaid Typ   : 0
Dhcp6 Client Mg  : ::
Sub-Id is def    : NO
MSap SvcId       : 0
MSap PolicyId    : 0
MSap IfIndex     : 0
Managed routes  : None
BgpPrngPlcyAttr : None
Class Attr       : 0 bytes
Radius Username:
```

```
=====
*A:BSA-1#
```

Limiting the Number of DHCP Hosts

The maximum number of DHCP lease state entries for a VPLS SAP, for an IES/VP RN interface or for each SAP on an IES/VP RN group-interface is defined when enabling the lease-populate.

When omitted, a single DHCP host is allowed:

```
configure
  service
    vpls 1 customer 1 create
- - - snip - - -
    sap 1/1/2:2 split-horizon-group "rshg-1" create
      dhcp
        snoop
        lease-populate 10
        no shutdown
      exit
```

When trying to instantiate a new DHCP host while the configured number of leases is reached, the DHCP ack is dropped (DHCP debug log output):

```
13 2009/11/23 15:35:27.85 CET MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base SVCMMGR
"SVCMMGR: Dropped DHCP Packet
  VPLS 1, SAP 1/1/2:10

  Problem: lease-populate limit (10) exceeded on SAP 1/1/2:2
- - - snip - - -
```

The following event is generated:

```
158 2009/11/23 15:35:27.86 CET WARNING: DHCP #2002 Base Maximum number of lease states*
"Lease state for (CiAddr = 10.1.0.98, ChAddr = fe:fd:00:02:47:00, leaseTime = 600) was not
stored because the number of DHCP lease states on SAP 1/1/2:2 in service 1 has reached its
upper limit"
```

With ESM enabled, the following limits also apply:

- **sla-profile host-limit** — This parameter defines the maximum number of dynamic subscriber hosts per subscriber for this sla-profile. Static hosts are not counted in the host-limit.

```
configure
  subscriber-mgmt
    sla-profile "sla-profile-1" create
      host-limit 2
```

If the configured host-limit is reached for a subscriber, access is denied for a new host, an event is generated and the corresponding DHCP ack message is dropped:

```
866 2009/11/25 12:04:04.42 CET WARNING: DHCP #2005 Base Lease State Population Error
"Lease state table population error on SAP 1/1/2:1 in service 1 - subscriber sub-1 sla-pro-
file sla-profile-1, host-limit (2) exceeded"
```

Note: An optional parameter **remove-oldest** can be specified behind the host-limit. In this case, the new host is accepted and the DHCP lease state for the oldest host (with the least remaining lease time) is cleared. A DHCP release is sent to the DHCP server.

- multi-sub-sap — This parameter defines the maximum number of subscribers (dynamic and static) that can be simultaneously active on this SAP. By default only a single subscriber is allowed (no multi-sub-sap).

Bridged CO:

```
configure
  service
    vpls 1 customer 1 create
      sap 1/1/2:1 split-horizon-group "rshg-1" create
      sub-sla-mgmt
        multi-sub-sap 2
```

Routed CO:

```
configure
  service
    vprn 1 customer 1 create
      subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
      group-interface "group-int-1" create
      sap 1/1/3:1 create
      sub-sla-mgmt
        multi-sub-sap 2
```

If the limit is reached, a new subscriber will be denied access, an event is generated and the corresponding DHCP ack message is dropped:

```
1404 2009/11/25 13:20:03.47 CET WARNING: DHCP #2005 Base Lease State Population Error
"Lease state table population error on SAP 1/1/2:1 in service 1 - Number of subscribers
exceeds the configured multi-sub-sap limit (2)"
```

DHCP Host Connectivity Verification

Because the DHCP protocol does not have a keep-alive mechanism and IP address renewal is not frequent enough, alternative mechanisms are needed to track reachability of DHCP hosts.

1. Subscriber Host Connectivity Verification (SHCV)

The first alternative is called Subscriber Host Connectivity Verification (SHCV). A periodic unicast ARP is sent to the DHCP host. The connectivity test is failed:

- If for X consecutive unicast ARP requests no ARP reply is received within the specified retry-timeout ([10 — 60] seconds, default 10). The number of retries (X-1) is specified by the retry-count ([2 — 29], default 2). Hence, the minimum 3 unicast ARP requests are sent before connectivity is lost.
- If the ARP reply contains an inconsistent IP/MAC compared with the local DHCP lease state

For a failed connectivity test, an event is raised and optionally the DHCP lease state is removed from the system: cleaning up of all related resources (e.g. anti-spoof table) and sending a DHCP release to the DHCP server. When ESM is enabled, the DHCP host is removed as well in this case.

The interval for the periodic checks can be configured between 1 and 6000 minutes. If not specified, the default value of 10 minutes will be used.

The maximum time for DHCP host connectivity loss detection in this case is:

$$(\text{host-connectivity-verify interval}) + ((\text{retry-count}) * (\text{retry-timeout}))$$

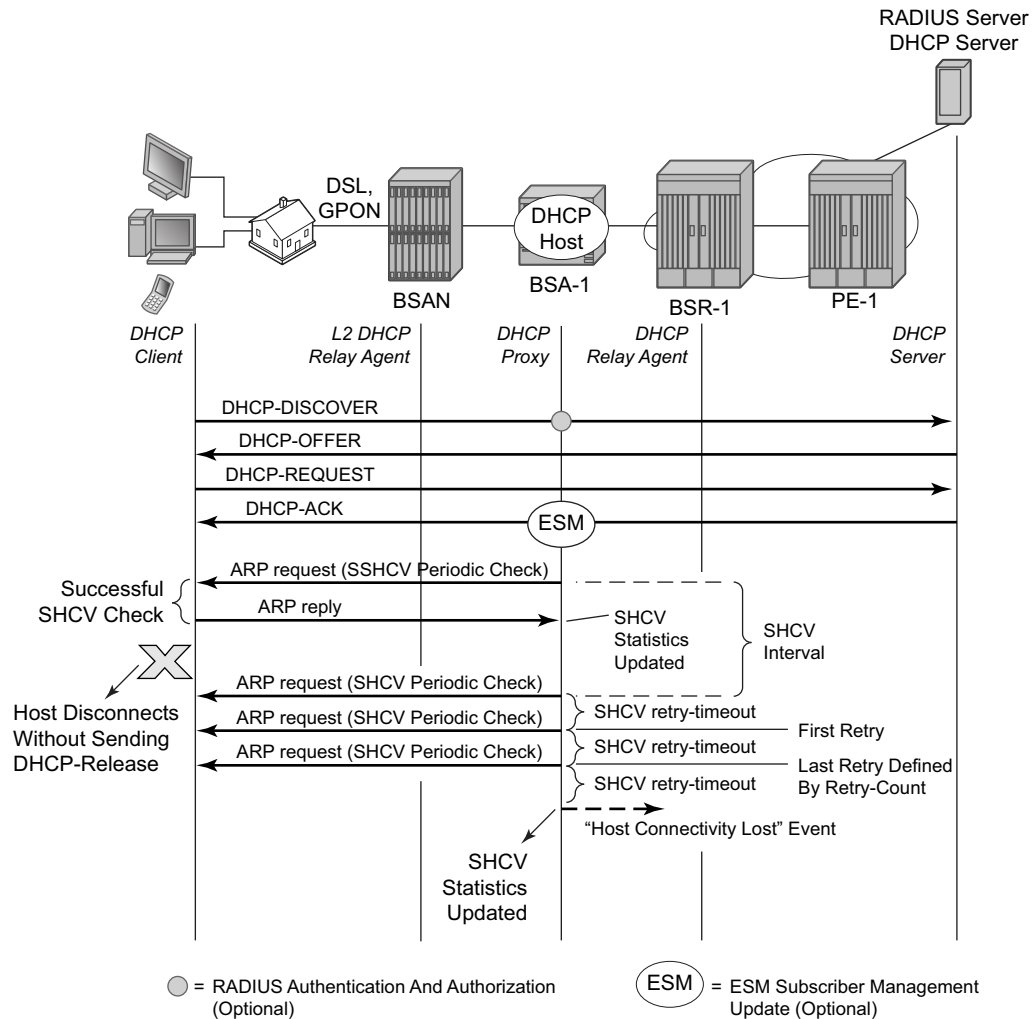


Figure 150: Subscriber Host Connectivity Verification

```
*A:BSA-1>config>service>vpls>sap# host-connectivity-verify ?
- host-connectivity-verify source-ip <ip-address> [source-mac
  <ieee-address>] [interval <interval>] [action {remove|alarm}] [timeout
  <retry-timeout>] [retry-count <count>]

<ip-address>           : a.b.c.d
<ieee-address>          : xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx or xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx
<interval>              : [1..6000] minutes
<{remove|alarm}>         : keywords
<retry-timeout>         : [10..60] seconds
<count>                 : [2..29]
```

Bridged CO:

```

configure
  service
    vpls 1 customer 1 create
      sap 1/1/2:2 split-horizon-group "rshg-1" create
      host-connectivity-verify source-ip 0.0.0.0 interval 1 action remove
    exit

```

Note: the configured source IP should be an unused unique IP address in the DHCP client subnet or alternatively use source-ip 0.0.0.0. As the host-connectivity-verify application is sending a unicast ARP to the DHCP host, its ARP table is updated with the configured source-ip and source-mac (chassis MAC if not configured). If you would use an existing IP address, the DHCP host ARP table gets poisoned, breaking the connectivity to that host.

Routed CO:

```

configure
  service
    vprn 1 customer 1 create
      subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
      group-interface "group-int-1" create
      host-connectivity-verify interval 1 action alarm

```

Note: the source IP is not configurable. The source-ip used in the unicast ARP is fixed to the local subscriber interface address in the subnet of the DHCP hosts that is checked for connectivity.

To verify the result of the connectivity check:

```

*A:BSA-1# show service id 1 host-connectivity-verify statistics
=====
Host connectivity check statistics
=====
Svc   SapId/      DestIp      Timestamp      Time since   Oper
Id    SdpId      Address     last-reply/conn-lost  Reply/Lost  State
-----
1     1/1/2:2    10.1.0.99   11/23/2009 17:26:45  0d 00:00:44 Up
-----
1 host-connectivity states : 1 Up / 0 Down / 0 Retry pending
=====
*A:BSA-1#

```

In case the connectivity is lost with the host, following event is generated:

```

836 2009/11/23 17:28:24.74 CET WARNING: SVCNMR #2206 Base Host connectivity lost
"host connectivity lost on 1/1/2:2 in service 1 for inetAddr = 10.1.0.99,
chAddr=fe:fd:00:02:46:00."

```

With action alarm, the lease-state is not removed in case the connectivity is lost with the host. The event is still generated and the statistics show:

```
*A:BSA-1# show service id 1 host-connectivity-verify statistics
=====
Host connectivity check statistics
=====
Svc   SapId/      DestIp      Timestamp      Time since   Oper
Id    SdpId      Address     last-reply/conn-lost  Reply/Lost  State
-----
1     1/1/2:2    10.1.0.99   11/23/2009 17:38:28  0d 00:01:42 Down
-----
1 host-connectivity states : 0 Up / 1 Down / 0 Retry pending
=====
*A:BSA-1#
```

Event in case of restored connectivity:

```
839 2009/11/23 17:41:07.74 CET WARNING: SVCNMR #2207 Base Host connectivity restored
"host connectivity restored on 1/1/2:2 in service 1, for inetAddr = 10.1.0.99,
chAddr=fe:fd:00:02:46:00."
```

Connectivity to a DHCP host can also be checked using an OAM command:

```
*A:BSA-1# oam host-connectivity-verify service 1 sap 1/1/2:2
=====
Triggering host connectivity verify for service 1 sap 1/1/2:2 ...
Waiting 3 seconds ...

Host connectivity check statistics
=====
Svc   SapId/      DestIp      Timestamp      Time since   Oper
Id    SdpId      Address     last-reply/conn-lost  Reply/Lost  State
-----
1     1/1/2:2    10.1.0.99   -              -            -
-----
1 host-connectivity states : 0 Up / 0 Down / 1 Retry pending
=====
*A:BSA-1#
```

Note that in this case, no action is triggered. If the connectivity test is successful, the host-connectivity-verify statistics are updated with the new timestamp last-reply. If the connectivity test fails, the host-connectivity state becomes Retry Pending (oper state unknown) until an automatic test is scheduled again in the next interval.

To troubleshoot host-connectivity-verify, enable following debug log (additional filtering is possible on ip address, mac address and/or SAP):

```
debug
  service
    id 1
      host-connectivity-verify
      exit
    exit
  exit
exit
```

DHCP Lease Split

The second alternative is using a DHCP proxy server with the lease-split option.

A finer granularity of DHCP lease time is used between the DHCP client and the DHCP proxy server than between the DHCP proxy server and the DHCP server.

The maximum time for DHCP host connectivity loss detection in this case is the configured DHCP lease-split lease time.

DHCP communication is snooped between the DHCP client and DHCP server. In the DHCP ack message, the offered lease-time from the DHCP server is replaced with the configured DHCP proxy server lease-split lease time. Note that the lease time is only updated if the configured lease-split lease time is less than half of the original lease time value. The minimum value for the proxy server lease-split lease time is 5 minutes. When the DHCP client renews the DHCP session, the DHCP proxy server sends a DHCP ack on behalf of the DHCP server as long as the next renew time is earlier than half of the DHCP server expiry time for this session. With ESM enabled, RADIUS re-authentication will occur only when the DHCP request must be sent to the DHCP server. In other words, configuring a DHCP proxy with lease-split does not put extra load on the RADIUS server.

In the example below, the DHCP server offers a lease time of 960 seconds. The lease time in the offer sent to DHCP client will be updated with the lease time of 300 seconds as configured in the DHCP proxy server lease-split on BSA-1.

Bridged CO:

```
configure
service
    vpls 1 customer 1 create
    sap 1/1/2:2 split-horizon-group "rshg-1" create
    dhcp
        proxy-server
            lease-time min 5
            no shutdown
    exit
```

Routed CO:

```
configure
service
    vprn 1 customer 1 create
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
    group-interface "group-int-1" create
    dhcp
        proxy-server
            lease-time min 5
            no shutdown
    exit
```

Note: the emulated server address in the DHCP proxy-server configuration does not have to be configured for lease-split operation. This parameter is needed for an alternative use of the DHCP proxy server: RADIUS based IP configuration of a subscriber host. This is out of the scope of this configuration note.

If DHCP lease split is operational for a DHCP host, it will be shown in the Remaining Lifetime field of the detailed lease-state output. Note that the Session Timeout field is the original offered lease time from the DHCP server.

```
*A:BSA-1# show service id 1 dhcp lease-state detail
=====
DHCP lease states for service 1
=====
Service ID           : 1
IP Address           : 10.1.0.99
Client HW Address    : fe:fd:00:02:46:00
SAP                  : 1/1/2:2
Remaining Lifetime   : 00h04m26s (Lease Split)
Persistence Key      : 0x0000000e

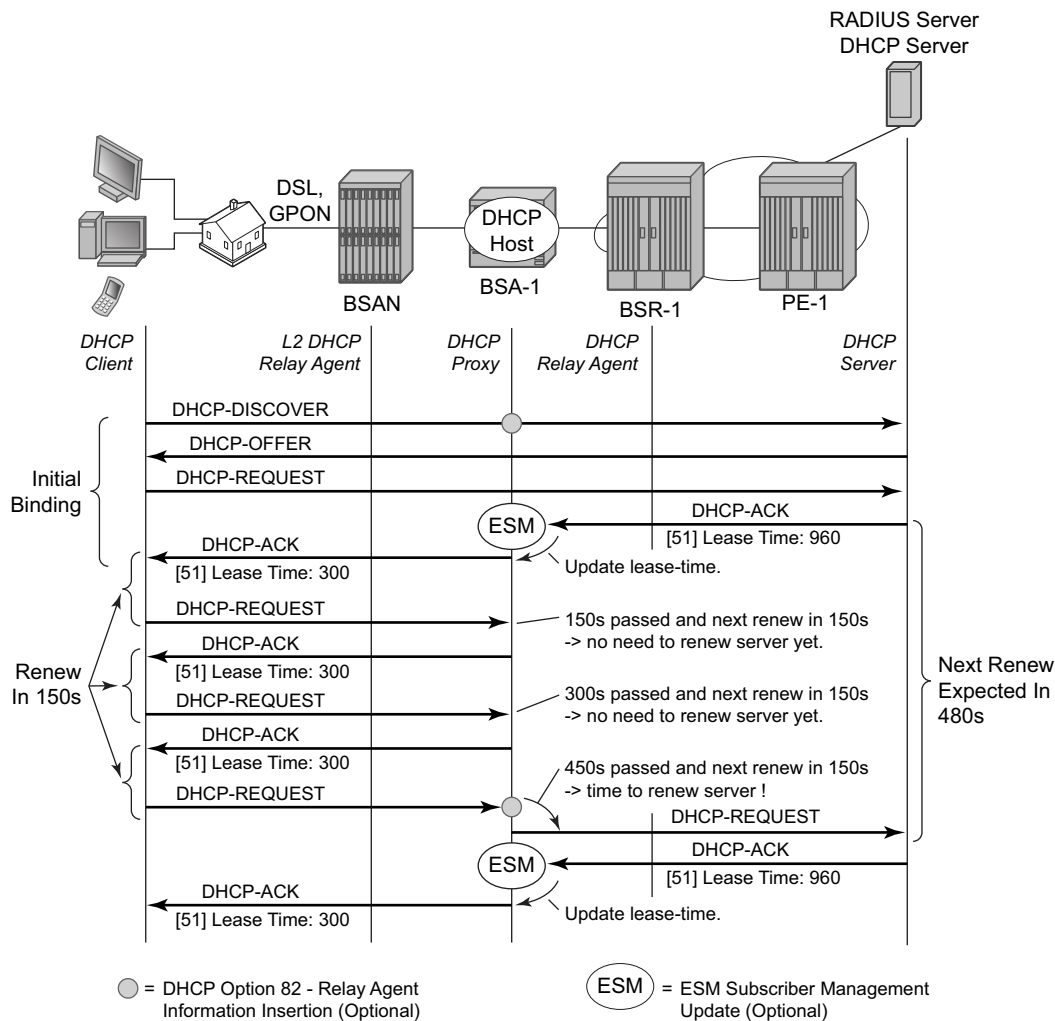
Sub-Ident            : ""
Sub-Profile-String   : ""
SLA-Profile-String   : ""
App-Profile-String   : ""
Lease ANCP-String    : ""
Lease Int Dest Id    : ""
Category-Map-Name    : ""

Sub-Ident origin     : None
Strings origin       : None
Lease Info origin    : DHCP

Ip-Netmask           : 255.255.0.0
Broadcast-Ip-Addr    : N/A
Default-Router       : 10.1.0.254
Primary-Dns          : N/A
Secondary-Dns        : N/A
Primary-Nbns         : N/A
Secondary-Nbns       : N/A

ServerLeaseStart     : 11/23/2009 17:38:27
ServerLastRenew      : 11/24/2009 15:27:57
ServerLeaseEnd       : 11/24/2009 15:37:57
Session-Timeout      : 0d 00:10:00
DHCP Server Addr     : 172.16.0.1

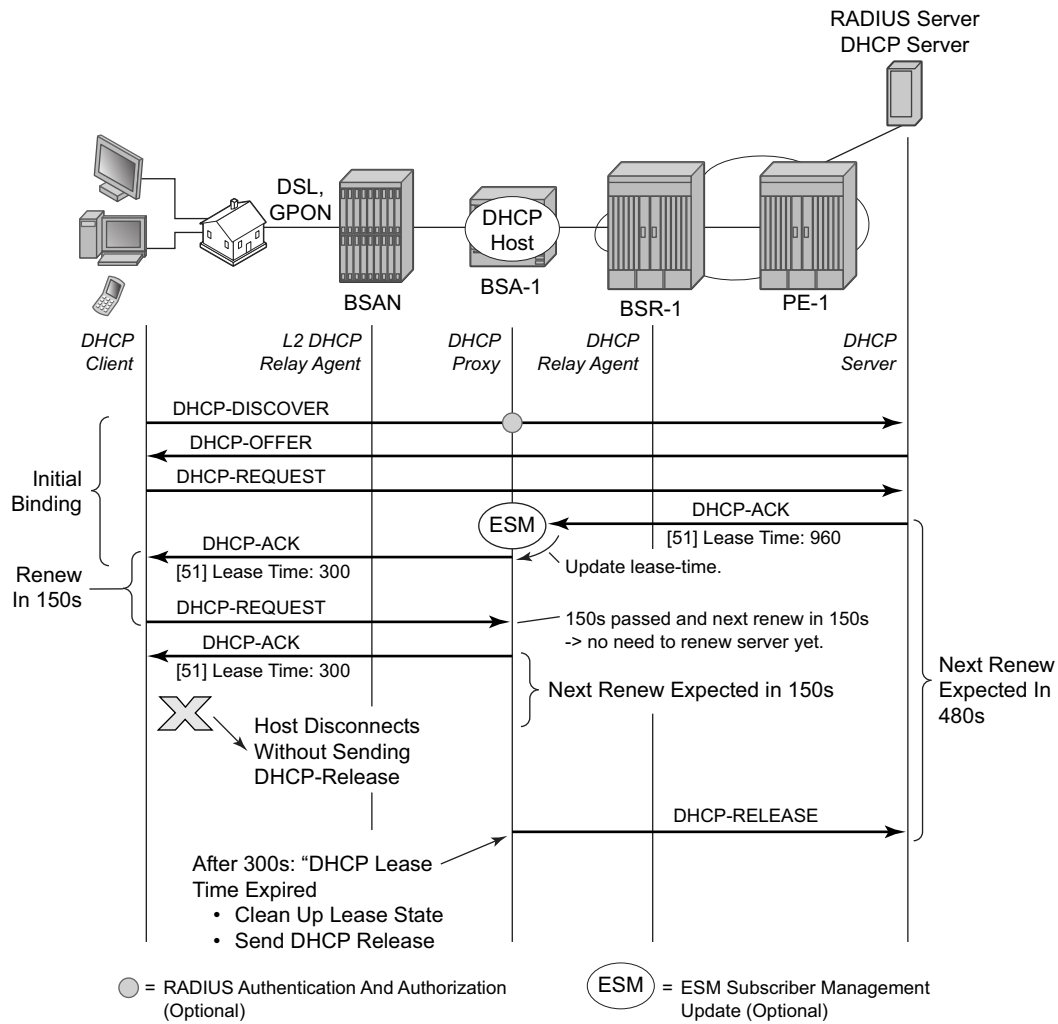
Relay Agent Information
  Circuit Id         : UML246
RADIUS User-Name     : ""
-----
Number of lease states : 1
=====
*A:BSA-1#
```



OSSG390

Figure 151: DHCP Proxy Server: Lease Split Operation

When the DHCP client disconnects without sending a DHCP release in the network, the DHCP lease state in the BSA/BSR will be removed only when the DHCP lease time expires. With DHCP proxy server lease-split, the DHCP client disconnection can be sped up. In the example below, the DHCP client disconnection is detected in less than 5 minutes (lease-split lease time) while it would have taken up to 16 minutes without the lease-split. Note that the values are illustrative; in reality the DHCP lease times will be higher.



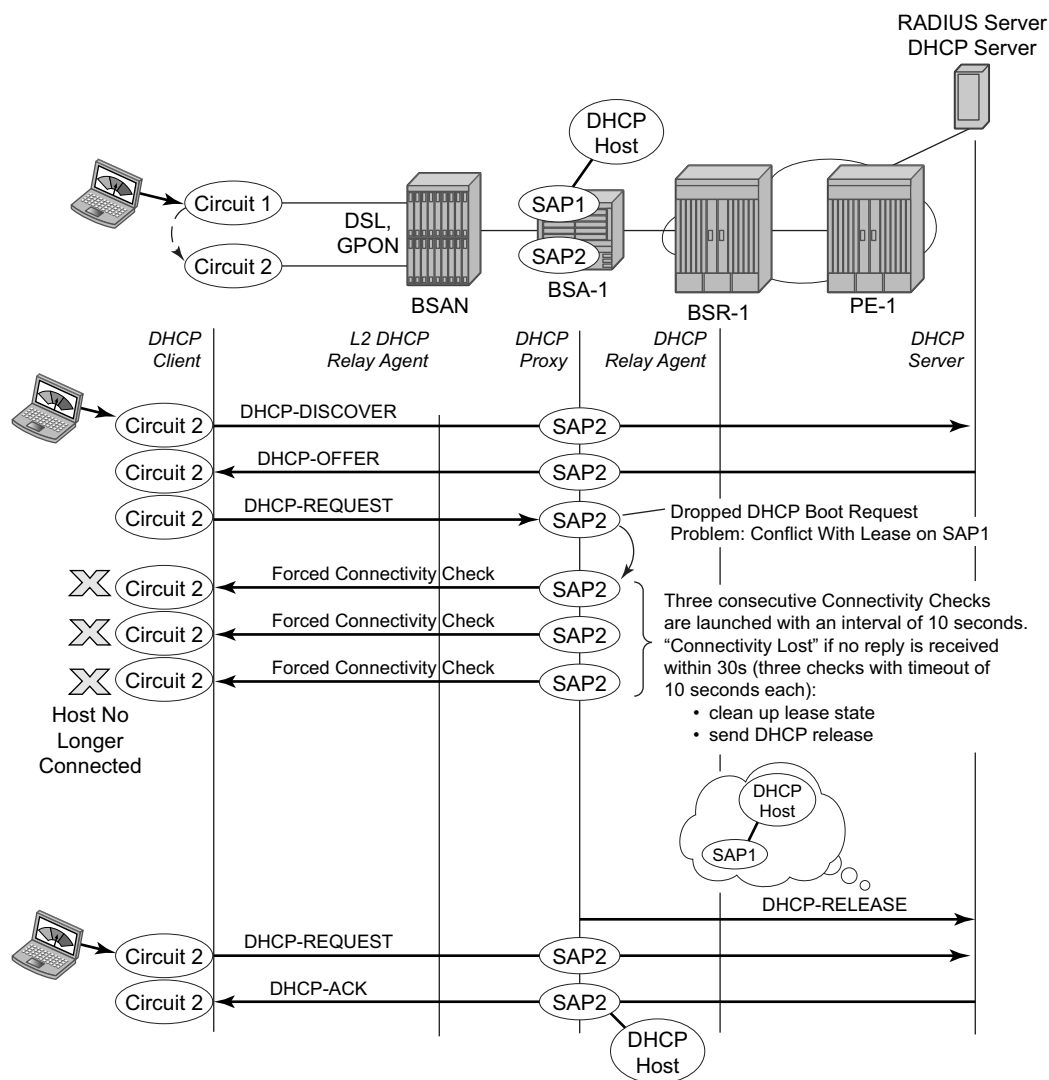
OSSG391

Figure 152: DHCP Proxy Server: Lease Split Operation, DHCP Client Disconnected

DHCP Host Mobility

A field technician verifying DSLAM operation often connects and disconnects from different ports rapidly. This will require the node to clear its own DHCP host state, the DHCP server? state as well as flush MAC addresses learned within the VPLS network or clear ARP entries from the routing instance.

A DHCP request comes in on SAP2. On SAP1 there exists a lease state with the same Client Hardware address. The packet is dropped and a forced SHCV check verifies the existing lease state on SAP1. Three consecutive checks are launched with a timeout of 10 seconds. If the host indeed moved from SAP1 to SAP2, the connectivity check will fail on SAP1. The existing lease state is deleted and a DHCP release message is sent to the DHCP server. Any subsequent DHCP session setup will proceed as normal.



OSSG393

Figure 153: DHCP Host Mobility

Note that for host mobility to function, host-connectivity-verification must be enabled. Next to periodic connectivity checks, it also enables forced checks triggered by moving hosts.

For Bridged CO, host-connectivity-verify must be enabled on the SAPs. When no interval is specified, it will default to 10 minutes for the periodic connectivity checks.

Bridged CO:

```
configure
service
  vpls 1 customer 1 create
```

```
sap 1/1/2:1 split-horizon-group "rshg-1" create
    host-connectivity-verify source-ip 10.1.0.253
exit
sap 1/1/2:2 split-horizon-group "rshg-1" create
    host-connectivity-verify source-ip 10.1.0.253
exit
```

Note: the configured source-ip should be an unused unique ip address in the DHCP client subnet or alternatively use source-ip 0.0.0.0. As the host-connectivity-verify application is sending a unicast ARP to the DHCP host, its ARP table is updated with the configured source-ip and source-mac (chassis MAC if not configured). If you would use an existing IP address, the DHCP host ARP table gets poisoned, breaking the connectivity to that host.

For Routed CO, host-connectivity-verify must be enabled on the group-interface. When no interval is specified, it will default to 10 minutes for the periodic connectivity checks.

Routed CO:

```
configure
    service
        vprn 1 customer 1 create
            subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
            group-interface "group-int-1" create
                host-connectivity-verify
```

Note: the source IP address is not configurable. The source-ip used in the unicast ARP is fixed to the local subscriber interface address in the subnet of the DHCP hosts that is checked for connectivity.

Conclusion

This section provides configuration and troubleshooting commands for dynamic DHCP hosts. DHCP hosts can be instantiated in a Layer 2 bridged CO (VPLS) environment as well as in a Layer 3 Routed CO (IES/VPRN subscriber interface) context.

L2TP for Subscriber Access — LAC

In This Chapter

This section provides information about L2TP for subscriber access.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 976](#)
- [Overview on page 977](#)
- [Configuration on page 988](#)
- [Conclusion on page 1035](#)

Applicability

This example is applicable to the 7750 SR-c4/c12, SR-7/12 with IOM3/IMMs (LNS facing port) and describes L2TP Access Concentrator (LAC) support for the L2TP Aggregation Architecture (LAA) model and was tested on SROS-11.0.R4. PPP hosts are supported in a Routed CO model (with IES or VPRN services) using ATM, Ethernet or Ethernet over Pseudo wire SAPs. A description of the L2TP Tunnel Switch (LTS) and L2TP Network Server (LNS) functions are out of the scope of this example.

Overview

PPP Access Architectures (PTA versus LAA)

The Broadband Forum proposes two architectures for Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP) access.

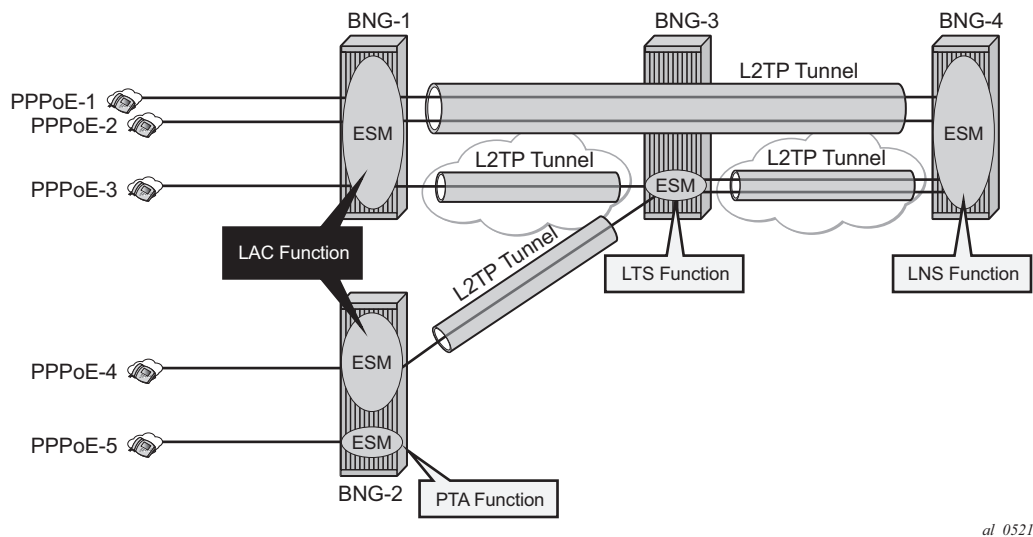
- The PPP Termination Aggregation Architecture (PTA)
- The L2TP Aggregation Architecture (LAA)

The PTA architecture (local-access model) uses the Broadband Network Gateway (BNG) to terminate user PPP sessions (see scenario PPPoE-5 in [Figure 154](#)).

The LAA architecture (which is a tunneled-access model) uses a LAC to transport PPP sessions from the LAC to an LNS which performs tunnel termination (see scenario PPPoE-1 and PPPoE -2 in [Figure 154](#)).

Optionally an LTS can be used in the transport network to perform the grooming of traffic between tunnels (see scenarios PPPoE-3 and PPPoE-4 in [Figure 154](#)).

The LNS is the logical termination point of the PPP sessions originated by the remote clients and tunneled by the LAC/LTS.



al_0521

Figure 154: Network Topology

Supported L2TP Encapsulations

The router instance where the L2TP tunnel starts and where ESM is handled can be one and the same but does not need to be the same. The LNS peer address can be reachable via IP, BGP/IGP shortcuts, over a spoke SDP (GRE/MPLS), RFC 4364 VPRNs (*BGP/MPLS IP Virtual Private Networks*), but cannot be an address belonging to a directly connected interface. See [Figure 155](#).

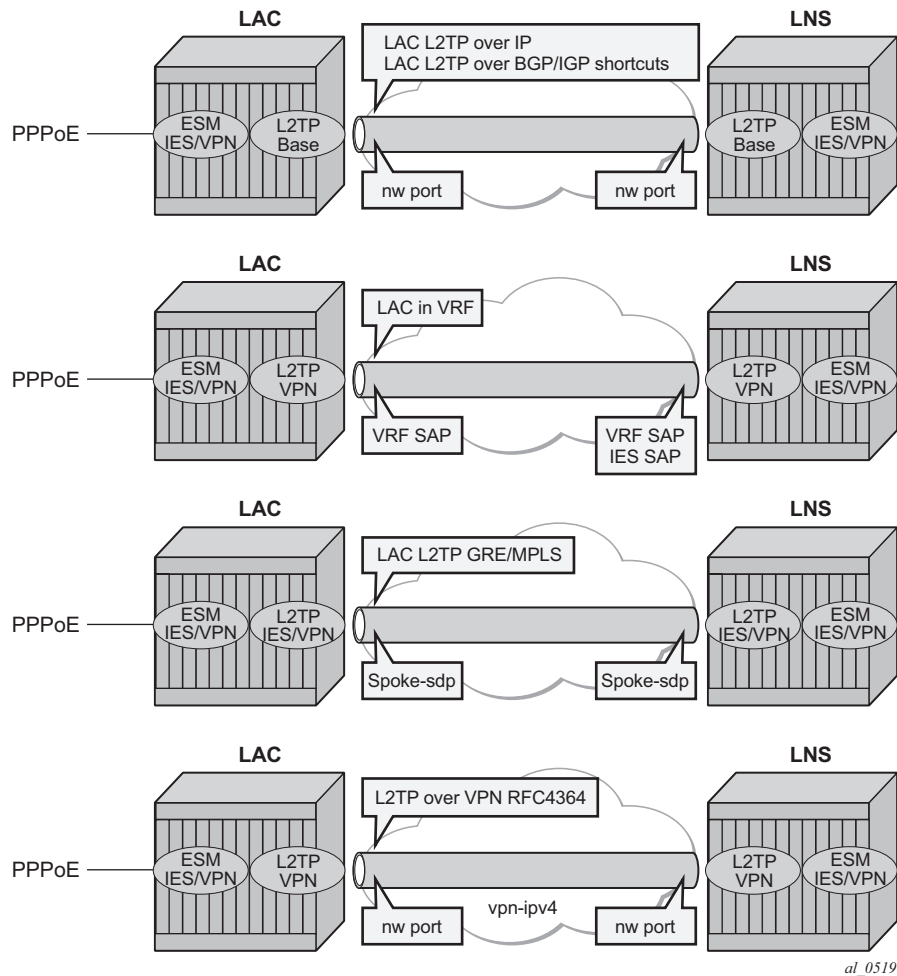


Figure 155: Supported L2TP Encapsulations

Recap of the L2TPv2 Protocol

L2TPv2 is a client-server protocol that encapsulates Layer 2 packets such as PPP, for transmission across a network and uses two different UDP message types:

- Control messages—L2TP passes control and data messages over separate control and data channels. The in-band control channel passes sequenced control connection management, call management, error reporting and session control messages. Optionally a shared-secret challenge authentication method can be used between the tunnel endpoints. The following messages are used for L2TP tunnel session setup, teardown and keepalive.
 - Tunnel setup (Control Connection Management)
 - Start-Control-Connection-Request (SCCRQ)
 - Start-Control-Connection-Reply (SCCRP)
 - Start-Control-Connection-Connected (SCCCN)
 - Stop-Control-Connection-Notification (StopCCN)
 - Tunnel keepalive
 - Hello (HELLO)
 - Session setup (Call management) over an existing tunnel
 - Incoming-Call-Request (ICRQ)
 - Incoming-Call-Reply (ICRP)
 - Incoming-Call-Connected (ICCN)
 - Call-Disconnect-Notify (CDN)

The Zero-Length Body (ZLB) message is a control packet with only an L2TP header. ZLB messages are used for explicitly acknowledging packets on the reliable control channel.

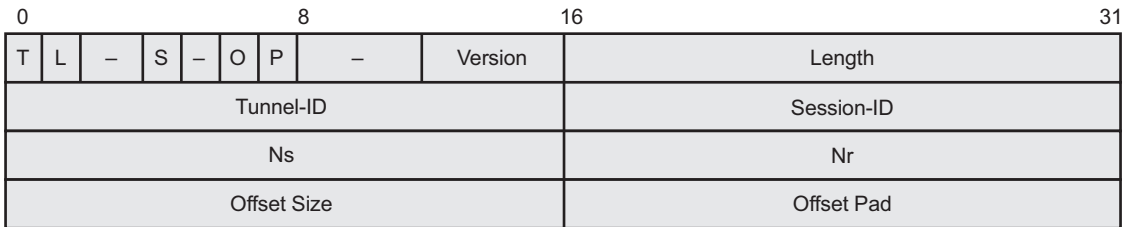
To maximize extensibility while still permitting interoperability, a uniform method for encoding message types and bodies is used throughout L2TP via Attribute Value Pairs (AVP).

- Data messages — Data messages are used to encapsulate PPP frames that are sent into the L2TP tunnel.

L2TPv2 sessions run over an L2TP tunnel and are referenced by an L2TP session-id. An L2TP tunnel can carry none, one or multiple L2TP sessions. An L2TP session corresponds to a PPPoE session. L2TPv3 for LAC-LNS dynamic tunnel setup is not supported.

L2TP Header and AVP Layout

The L2TPv2 header consists of following fields (RFC 2611, *URN Namespace Definition Mechanisms*):



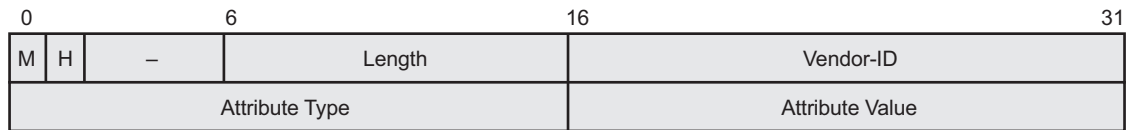
al_0513A

Field	Description
T	Type of L2TP message (1 bit): 0—data message 1—control message
L	Indicates if the optional Length field is present in the message (1 bit): 0—the field is left out of the message entirely 1—the field is included (must be included in control messages)
-	Reserved for future use, must be set to zero.
S	Indicates if the Ns and Nr fields are present (1 bit): 0—the fields are left out of the message entirely 1—the fields are included (must be included in control messages)
O	Indicates if the Offset field is present (1 bit): 0—the field is left out of the message entirely (must be left out of control messages) 1—the field is included
P	Used with data messages only. Indicates priority of the data message (1 bit): 0—no (this value is used for all control messages) 1—yes
Version	The version of the message (4 bits): 2—this is the latest version of the L2TP data message header 1—indicates an L2F packet as described in RFC 2341 Packets with an unknown version number are discarded.
Length	The total length (in bytes) of the L2TP message (16 bits).

Field	Description
Tunnel-ID	Identifies the L2TP tunnel (that is, the control connection). This number has local significance — each end gives the same tunnel different tunnel IDs. The ID refers to the receiver, not the sender, and is assigned during tunnel creation (16 bits).
Session-ID	Identifies the PPP session within a tunnel. This number has local significance—each end gives the same session different session IDs. The ID refers to the receiver, not the sender, and is assigned during session creation (16 bits).
Ns	The sequence number of the message. This is mandatory for control messages (to enable re-transmission of lost messages) but optional for data messages (to re-order data messages that were mis-sequenced during forwarding). The number, which starts at 0 and increments by 1, is assigned by an L2TP peer for each session in a tunnel (16 bits).
Nr	The sequence number of the next control message expected to be received. This is equal to the sequence number of last received control message plus 1. Used by the receiving peer to ensure that control messages are sent in order without duplication. In data messages, the field (if present as indicated by the S bit) is ignored (16 bits).
Offset Size	The location of the L2TP payload, expressed as the number of octets from the start of the message header (16 bits).
Offset pad	User-defined bytes used to pad the message header so that the payload starts at the location indicated by the Offset Size field (16 bits).

Recap of the L2TPv2 Protocol

The AVP header consists of following fields (RFC2611):

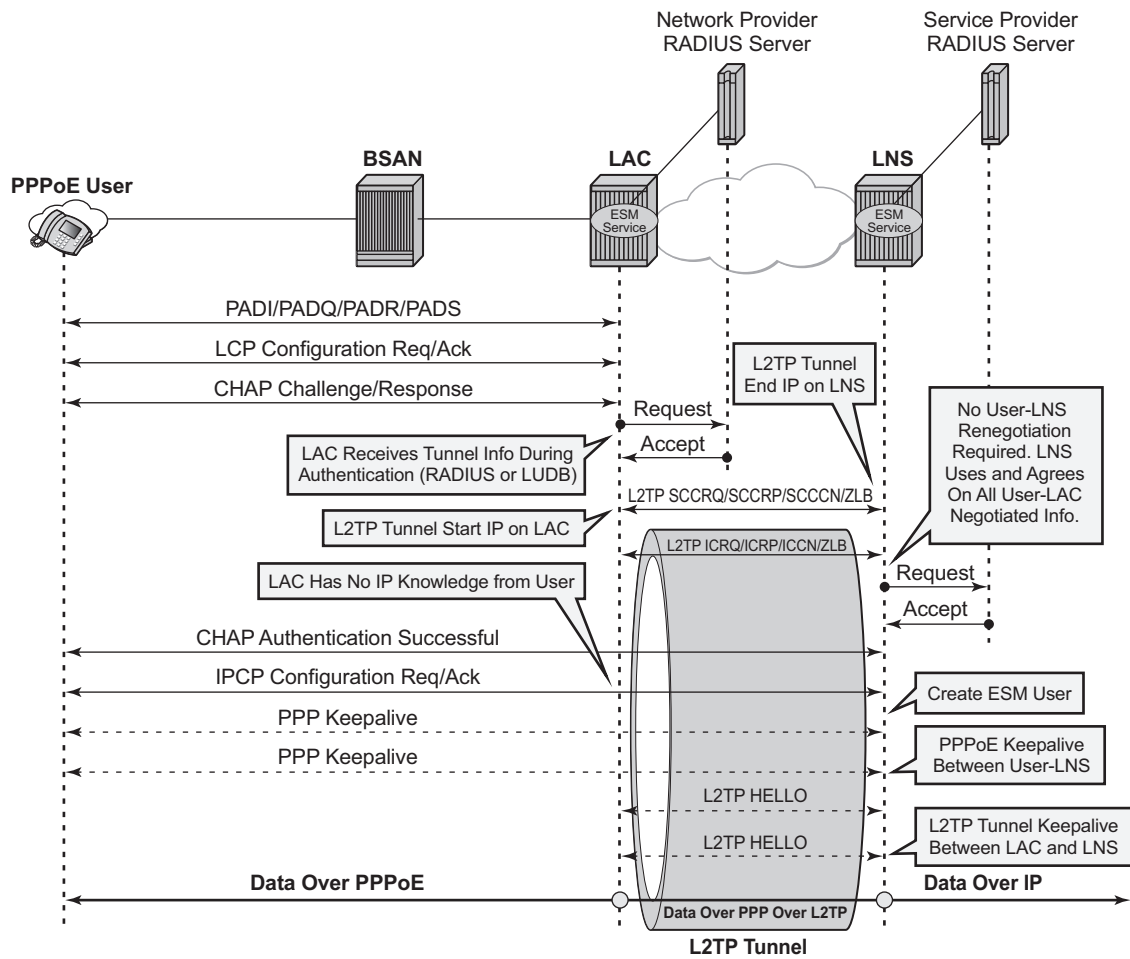


al_0513B

Field	Description
M	Mandatory bit — If the M bit is set on an unrecognized AVP within a message associated with a particular session, the session associated with this message MUST be terminated (1 bit).
H	Hidden bit — Identifies the hiding of data in the Attribute-Value field of an AVP. This capability can be used to avoid the passing of sensitive data, such as user passwords, as clear text in an AVP. The H-bit MUST only be set if a shared secret exists between the LAC and LNS. The shared secret is the same secret that is used for tunnel authentication. If the H-bit is set in any AVP(s) in a given control message, a Random Vector AVP must also be present in the message and MUST precede the first AVP having an H bit of 1 (1 bit).
-	Reserved for future use, must be set to zero (4 bits).
Length	Indicates the total number of bytes (including the overall length and bitmask fields) contained in this AVP (10 bits).
Vendor-id	Any vendor wishing to implement their own L2TP extensions can use their own Vendor ID along with private Attribute values. Vendor-ID=0 means that the standard AVP's are used (2 bytes).
Attribute Type	A value with a unique interpretation across all AVPs defined under a given Vendor (2 bytes).
Attribute Value	This is the actual value as indicated by the Vendor ID and Attribute Type (2 bytes).

RADIUS-Triggered Tunnel/Session Setup without LNS Renegotiation

Figure 156 depicts the complete PPP session setup, using RADIUS authentication on both LAC and LNS. After the discovery phase (PADI/PADO/PADR/PADS) and LCP negotiation phase (LCP config_request/Ack), the LAC initiates the L2TP tunnel setup based on Radius authentication information (Radius Request/Accept) and includes the negotiated PPP user-LAC information (called LCP proxy information). The LNS replies directly with a successful CHAP authentication if it agrees with the received proxy information. IP negotiation (IPCP config_request/Ack) is further handled between the user and the LNS and therefore the LAC has no IP knowledge of this PPP session.

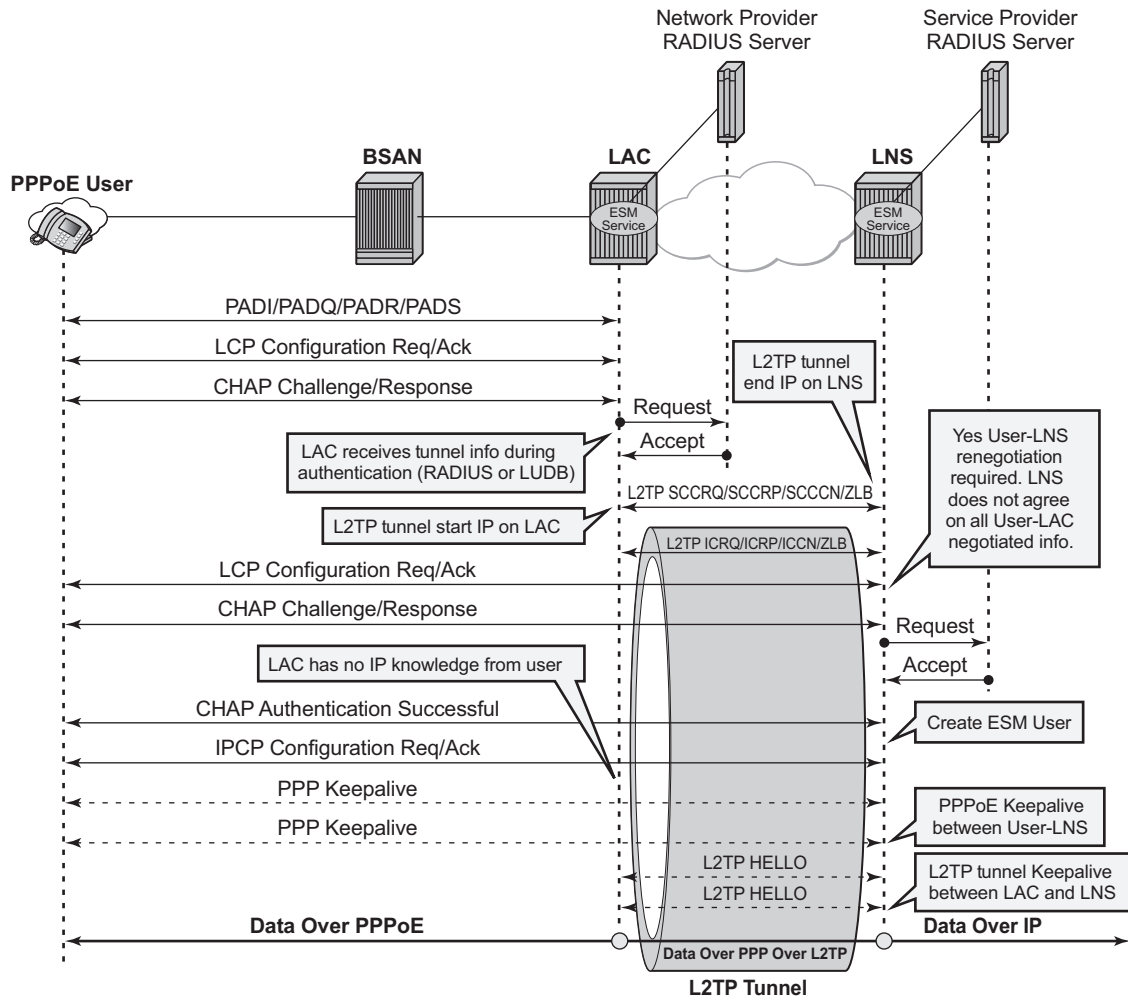


al_0523

Figure 156: RADIUS Triggered Tunnel/Session Setup without LNS Renegotiation

RADIUS-Triggered Tunnel/Session Setup with LNS Renegotiation

Figure 157 shows the scenario where the LNS does not agree with the received LCP proxy information and (re)starts the LCP phase (LCP config_request/Ack) directly with the PPP user. The rest of this scenario is the same as shown in Figure 156.

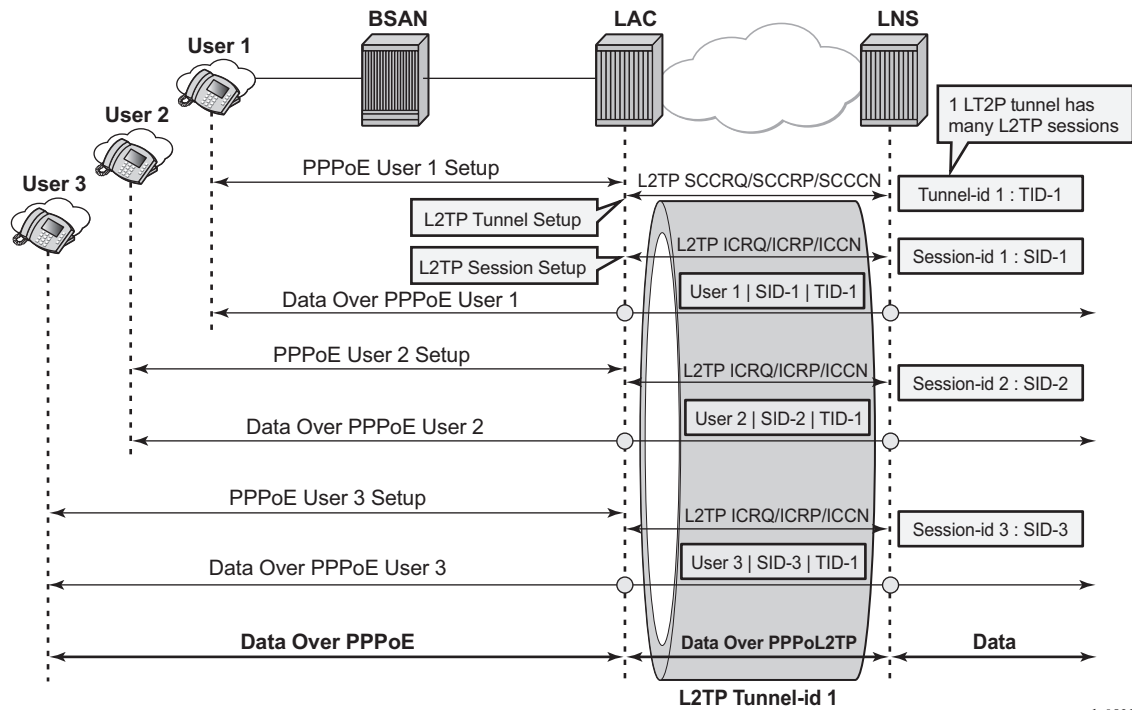


al_0524

Figure 157: RADIUS Triggered Tunnel/Session Setup with LNS Renegotiation

Running Multiple PPP Sessions Over a Single L2TP Tunnel

Figure 158 shows multiple PPP sessions tunneled over a single L2TP Tunnel. The LAC encapsulates each PPP session with a different L2TP session-id (SID) but with the same L2TP Tunnel-id (TID).



al_0522

Figure 158: Running Multiple PPP Sessions Over a Single L2TP Tunnel

PPP User-Initiated Release/Terminate

Figure 159 shows the user initiated terminate_request tunneled by the LAC followed by the user initiated PADT terminated on the LAC. The LAC informs the LNS about the termination of the session via the L2TP CDN message. The L2TP tunnel can be optionally (idle-timeout) terminated via the L2TP StopCCN message.

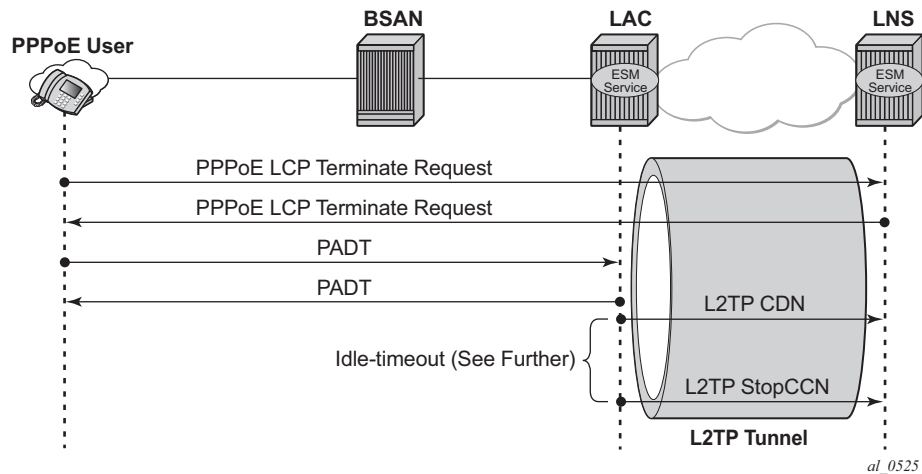
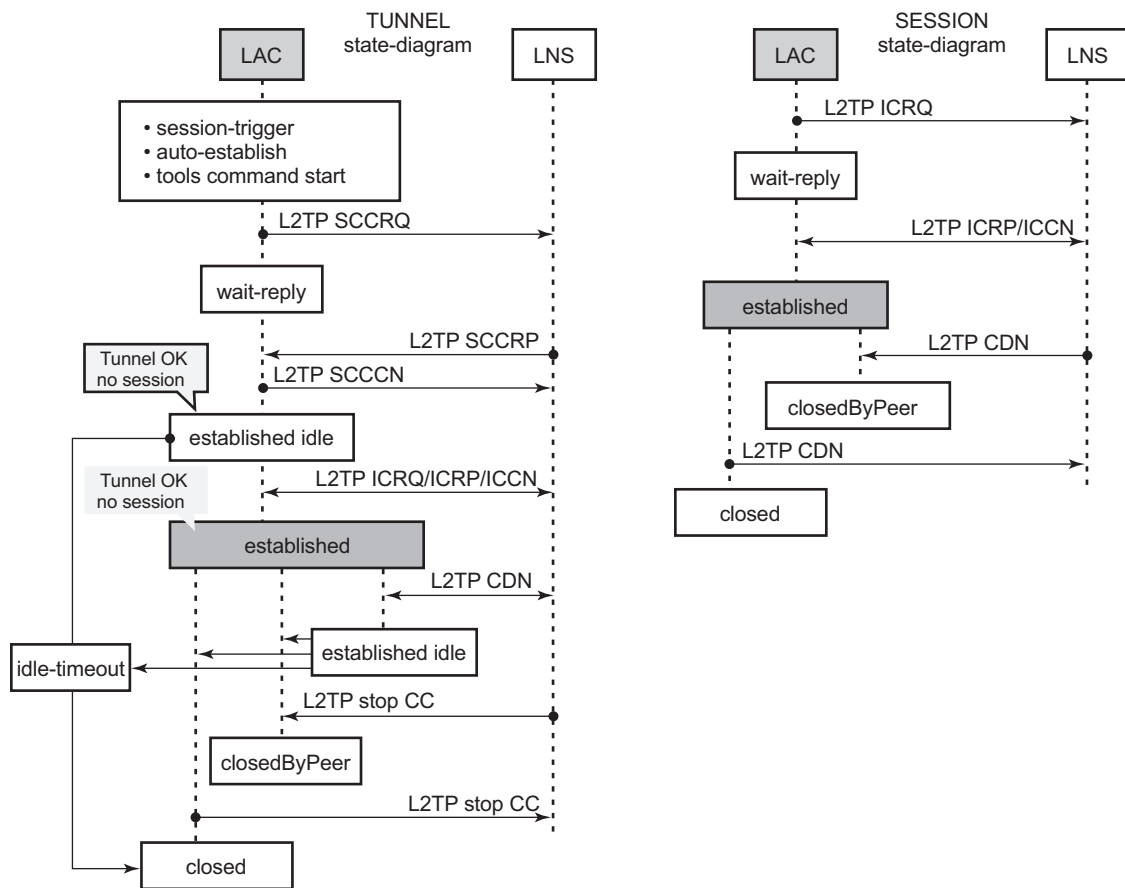


Figure 159: PPP User Initiated Release/Terminate

L2TP Tunnel/Session State Diagram

Figure 160 gives an overview of the main L2TP tunnel and session states. An L2TP tunnel in the establishedIdle state is a tunnel without sessions. A **tools** command (see [Advanced Topics on page 1016](#)) can put an L2TP tunnel in a draining state (this prevents adding new sessions on tunnel but the leaves the current sessions intact) or in a drained state (moved from draining to drained when all sessions terminated). The draining and drained state are not shown in the state diagram.

The L2TP tunnel setup occurs first with the triggers being: session activation, auto-establish and a **tools start** command (see the advanced section). An L2TP session setup trigger is always session based.



al_0515

Figure 160: L2TP Tunnel and Session State Diagram

Configuration

Scenario 1: RADIUS-Derived L2TP Parameters

- [LAC in the Base Routing Context \(base\) with Single Endpoint/Single Tunnel on page 991](#)
- [LAC in the Base Routing Context with Multiple Endpoints on page 993](#)
- [LAC in a VRF on page 995](#)

In this example the LAC receives an incoming connection and contacts the LAC RADIUS server. The RADIUS server retrieves the attributes for the user's domain (for example @wholesale.com) and passes the tunnel attributes to the LAC. Based on these RADIUS provided tunnel attributes, the LAC selects or initiates a new tunnel to the LTS or directly to the LNS. Once the tunnel is established, the LNS authenticates the end user using its own RADIUS server. Configuring the LNS and the LTS are out of the scope of this example.

In a RADIUS driven L2TP setup either all or some of the required L2TP attributes are returned via RADIUS. If the RADIUS server returns only the L2TP [67] Tunnel-Server-Endpoint attributes then the L2TP tunnel/session is established using the 'node parameter values' for the other required L2TP parameters. The 'l2tp node parameters' are defined under the configure router/service l2tp hierarchy. If the RADIUS server does not return all of the L2TP attributes and the node values are not configured, then the system falls back to default settings for these L2TP parameters.

The standard and vendor specific [26-6572] L2TP RADIUS attributes are listed in the tables below, together with the corresponding l2tp node parameters and defaults.

Attribute ID	Attribute Name	Mandatory	CLI Node Parameter	Corresponding Defaults	
64	Tunnel-Type	Y	-	-	-
65	Tunnel-Medium-Type	Y	-	-	-
66	Tunnel-Client-Endpoint:[0-31]	N	local-address	no local-address	system-ip
67	Tunnel-Server-Endpoint	N	-	-	-
69	Tunnel-Password	N	password	no password	-
82	Tunnel-Assignment-ID:0	N	-	-	default_radius_group

Attribute ID	Attribute Name	Mandatory	CLI Node Parameter	Corresponding Defaults	
82	Tunnel-Assignment-ID:[1..31]	N	-	-	Unnamed
83	Tunnel-Preference	N	preference	no preference	50
90	Tunnel-Client-Auth-ID	N	local-name	no local-name	system-name
91	Tunnel-Server-Auth-ID	N	-	-	-
26-6527	Attribute Name	Mandatory	CLI Node Parameter	Corresponding Defaults	
-46	Alc-Tunnel-Group	N	-	-	-
-47	Alc-Tunnel-Algorithm	N	session-assign-method	no session-assign-method	existingFirst
-48	Alc-Tunnel-Max-Sessions:0	N	-	group-session-limit	131071
-48	Alc-Tunnel-Max-Sessions:[1..31]	N	-	tunnel-session-limit	32767
-49	Alc-Tunnel-Idle-Timeout	N	idle-timeout	no idle-timeout	Infinite
-50	Alc-Tunnel-Hello-Interval	N	hello-interval	no hello-interval	300 sec
-51	Alc-Tunnel-Destruct-Timeout	N	destruct-timeout	no destruct-timeout	60 sec
-52	Alc-Tunnel-Max-Retries-Estab	N	max-retries-estab	no max-retries-estab	5
-53	Alc-Tunnel-Max-Retries-Not-Estab	N	max-retries-not-estab	no max-retries-not-estab	5
-54	Alc-Tunnel-AVP-Hiding	N	avp-hiding	no avp-hiding	Never
-97	Alc-Tunnel-Challenge	N	challenge	no challenge	Never
-104	Alc-Tunnel-Serv-Id	N	-	-	Base
-120	Alc-Tunnel-Rx-Window-Size	N	receive-window-size	no receive-window-size	64

Scenario 1: RADIUS-Derived L2TP Parameters

26-6527	Attribute Name	Mandatory	CLI Node Parameter	Corresponding Defaults	
-144	Alc-Tunnel-Acct-Policy	N	radius-accounting-policy	no radius-accounting-policy	-

LAC in the Base Routing Context (base) with Single Endpoint/Single Tunnel

Using the mandatory L2TP RADIUS attributes (see the RADIUS user file below) the LAC establishes an L2TP tunnel. The tunnel endpoint IP addresses used are the Base router system interface IPv4 address (LAC tunnel endpoint) and the address indicated by the Tunnel-Server-Endpoint RADIUS attribute [67], which serves as the peer tunnel LNS endpoint address.

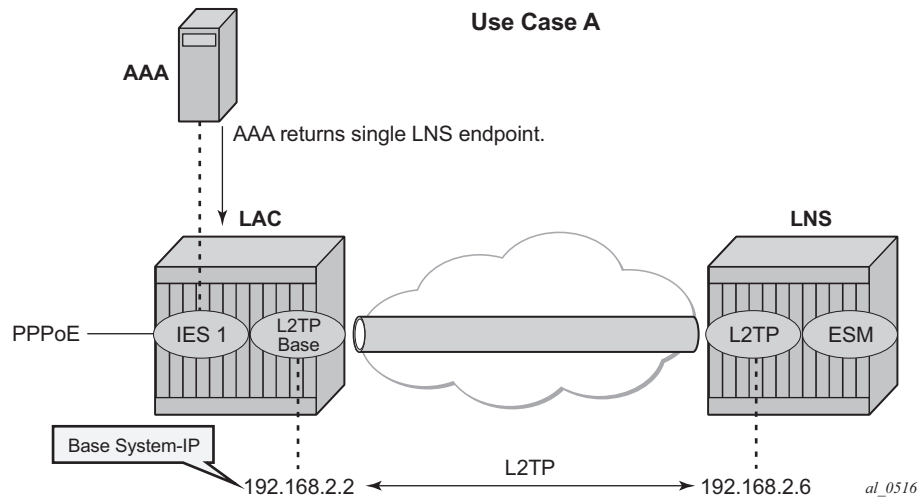


Figure 161: LAC in Base Routing with Single Endpoint/Single Tunnel

The PPPoE user terminates on IES service 1, sap 1/1/2:100.1, and is authenticated via RADIUS **authentication-policy authentication-1** which provides wholesale/retail (L2TP) information.

```
configure service ies 1
  subscriber-interface "sub-lt2p"
  unnumbered "system"
  group-interface "grp-l2tp"
    authentication-policy "authentication-1" #Radius authentication
    sap 1/1/2:100.1
    sub-sla-mgmt
      sub-ident-policy "sub-ident-1"
      no shutdown
    exit
  exit
  pppoe
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
service-name "L2TP"
no shutdown
```

Scenario 1: RADIUS-Derived L2TP Parameters

The excerpt from the FreeRADIUS users file below shows the attributes to be returned.

```
user1@wholesale.com Cleartext-Password := "ALU" ,NAS-Identifier == "pe1"
    Alc-Subsc-ID-Str = "%{User-name}",
    Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str = "sub-func1",
    Alc-SLA-Prof-Str = "sla-func1",
# Tunnel 1 related (tag 1)                                     #Tunnel 1
    Tunnel-Type:1 += L2TP,                                     #
    Tunnel-Medium-Type:1 += IP,                                #
    Tunnel-Server-Endpoint:1 += 192.168.2.6,                    #LNS peer address
```

L2TP is enabled (no shutdown) in the related service instance.

- The L2TP tunnel is setup in the base instance and not in a VRF because the attribute Alc-Tunnel-Serv-Id is not returned from RADIUS.
- Missing L2TP parameters are taken from defaults from router l2tp.

```
configure router l2tp
    calling-number-format "%S %s" # L2TP AVP 22 format
                                   # Default format 'system-name sap-id'
    <snip>
    no local-name                  # default name equals system-name
    no max-retries-estab           # default value equals 5
    <snip>
    no shutdown                    # enable L2TP
```

This scenario shows the PPPoE session termination (base IES service 1) and the L2TP tunnel setup in the same base router instance.

LAC in the Base Routing Context with Multiple Endpoints

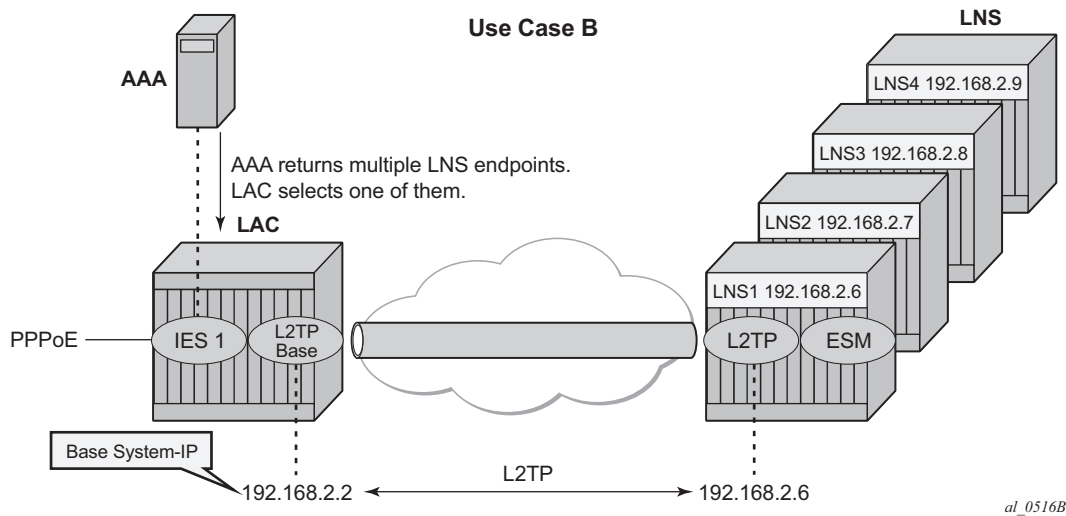


Figure 162: LAC in the Base Routing with Multiple Endpoints

The excerpt from the FreeRADIUS users file below shows that user1@wholesale.com has 4 possible endpoints (LNS), each with its own tunnel preference. The LAC selects one L2TP endpoint out of these 4 tunnel specifications according to the configured L2TP selection process. This example uses weighted load balancing between LNS-T1 and LNS-T2 (tunnels LNS1-T1 and LNS2-T2 have best (lowest) and equal preference).

Note: The L2TP tunnel selection process is out of the scope of this example.

```

user1@wholesale.com Cleartext-Password := "ALU" ,NAS-Identifier == "pe1"
    Alc-Subsc-ID-Str = "%{User-name}",
    Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str = "sub-func1",
    Alc-SLA-Prof-Str = "sla-func1",
# group related (tag 0)parameters applicable for all tunnels
    Tunnel-Client-Endpoint:0 = 192.168.2.2,           #LAC L2TP source IP
    Alc-Tunnel-Algorithm:0 = weighted-access,         #tunnel selection
    Tunnel-Assignment-Id:0 = "l2tp-functional-radius", #L2TP group name
    Tunnel-Client-Auth-Id:0 = "lac-pe1",              #LAC name
    Alc-Tunnel-Max-Retries-Estab:0 = 2,
    #
# Tunnel 1 related (tag 1)                               #Tunnel 1
    Tunnel-Type:1 += L2TP,                                #
    Tunnel-Medium-Type:1 += IP,                            #
    Tunnel-Server-Endpoint:1 += 192.168.2.6,              # LNS peer address
    Tunnel-Assignment-Id:1 += "LNS1-T1",                  # tunnel name
    Tunnel-Preference:1 += 100,                            # preference 100
    #
# Tunnel 2 related (tag 2)                               #Tunnel 2
    Tunnel-Type:2 += L2TP,
    Tunnel-Medium-Type:2 += IP,

```

Scenario 1: RADIUS-Derived L2TP Parameters

```
Tunnel-Server-Endpoint:2 += 192.168.2.7,
Tunnel-Assignment-Id:2 += "LNS2-T2",
Tunnel-Preference:2 += 100,
#
# Tunnel 3 related (tag 3)                                #Tunnel 3
Tunnel-Type:3 += L2TP,
Tunnel-Medium-Type:3 += IP,
Tunnel-Server-Endpoint:3 += 192.168.2.8,
Tunnel-Assignment-Id:3 += "LNS3-T3",
Tunnel-Preference:3 += 120,
#
# Tunnel 4 related (tag 4)                                #Tunnel 4
Tunnel-Type:4 += L2TP,
Tunnel-Medium-Type:4 += IP,
Tunnel-Server-Endpoint:4 += 192.168.2.9,
Tunnel-Assignment-Id:4 += "LNS4-T4",
Tunnel-Preference:4 += 140,
```

This scenario also shows the PPPoE session termination (base IES service 1) and the L2TP tunnel setup in the same base router instance.

LAC in a VRF

Figure 163 shows the PPPoE session termination (base IES service 1) and the L2TP tunnel setup in a different router instance (VPRN 65536).

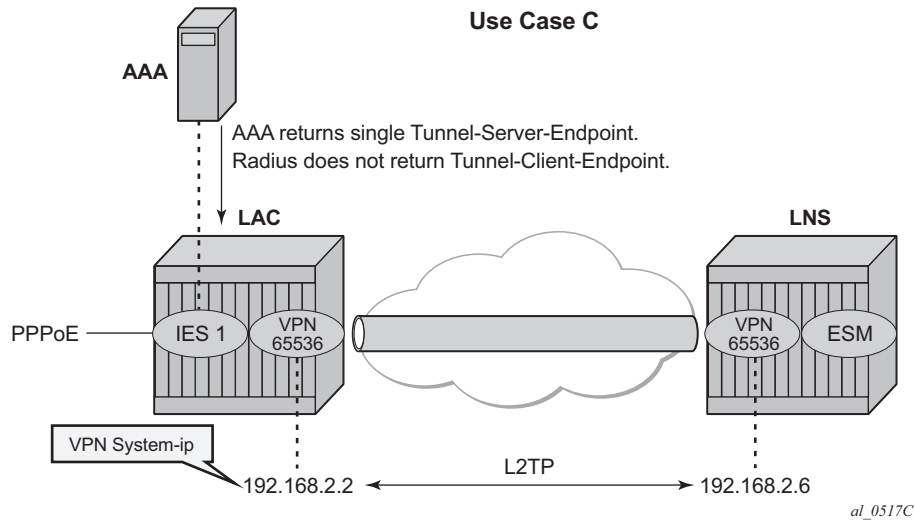


Figure 163: LAC in a VRF

Using the L2TP RADIUS attributes indicated below, the LAC initiates an L2TP tunnel in VPRN 65536. The PPPoE session is still terminated in base IES service 1, which proves that both router instances can be different. (See use-case A for configuration details IES service 1).

```
user1@wholesale.com Cleartext-Password := "ALU" ,NAS-Identifier == "pe1"
  Alc-Subsc-ID-Str = "%{User-name}",
  Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str = "sub-func1",
  Alc-SLA-Prof-Str = "sla-func1",
  Alc-Tunnel-Serv-Id = 65536,                                     #L2TP starts in VRF 65536
  Tunnel-Assignment-Id:0 = "l2tp-functional-radius",
  Tunnel-Client-Auth-Id:0 = "lac-pe1",
  Tunnel-Type:1 += L2TP,
  Tunnel-Medium-Type:1 += IP,
  Tunnel-Server-Endpoint:1 += 192.168.2.6,
  Tunnel-Assignment-Id:1 += "LNS1-T1",
```

If RADIUS does not return the L2TP source IP address (Tunnel-Client-Endpoint) then the IP address from the VPRN 65536 interface named 'system' is taken as the L2TP source address. The tunnel-setup fails if this system interface is not created.

```
configure service vprn 65536
<snip>
interface "system"                                     #source IP for tunnel
address 192.168.2.2/32
```

Scenario 2: Node-Derived L2TP Parameters

```
    loopback
  exit
l2tp
    no shutdown
  exit
```

Scenario 2: Node-Derived L2TP Parameters

- [RADIUS Returns L2TP Group on page 996](#)
- [RADIUS-Less Setup \(LUDB Returns L2TP Group\) on page 998](#)

In this example, the LAC receives the incoming connection and an ‘L2TP tunnel-group-name’ is assigned during LUDB or RADIUS authentication. This tunnel-group-name refers to the CLI preconfigured tunnel-group name context (**configure router <router-name> l2tp group <tunnel-group-name>**), which provides the context for all relevant tunnel attributes.

Based on these attributes, the LAC selects and initiates a tunnel to the LTS or directly to the LNS as in [Scenario 2: Node-Derived L2TP Parameters on page 996](#).

RADIUS Returns L2TP Group

In this example, the L2TP tunnel-group-name is assigned during RADIUS authentication.

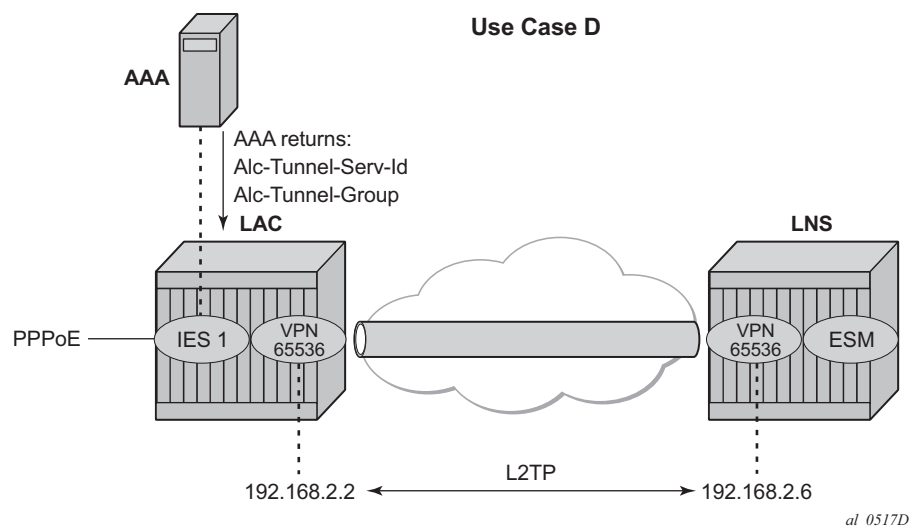


Figure 164: RADIUS Returns L2TP Group


```

user1@wholesale.com Cleartext-Password := "ALU" ,NAS-Identifier == "pe1"
    Alc-Subsc-ID-Str = "%{User-name}",
    Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str = "sub-func1",
    Alc-SLA-Prof-Str = "sla-func1",
    Alc-Tunnel-Serv-Id = 65536,           #LAC in VRF
    Alc-Tunnel-Group = wholesale.com,    #points to L2TP node group name

```

The L2TP tunnel is setup in VPRN 65536 (Alc-Tunnel-Serv-Id) and all L2TP tunnel information is taken from the l2tp group wholesale.com hierarchy (Alc-Tunnel-Group) as defined on the node.

```

configure service vprn 65536
<snip>
interface "system"           #interface with name system is
    address 192.168.2.2/32    #used as LAC L2TP source ip-address
    loopback
exit
l2tp
    group "wholesale.com"     #corresponds with Alc-Tunnel-Group
        tunnel "wholesale.com"
            local-address 192.168.2.2 #optional since system itf exists
            local-name "lac-pe1"
            peer 192.168.2.6
            no auto-establish      #use session-trigger iso auto-establish
            no shutdown
        exit
    no shutdown
exit
no shutdown
exit

```

An L2TP tunnel is set up by either a PPP session-trigger, a **tools** command or by the l2tp group tunnel auto-establish parameter configuration. See the advanced section below for the non-session-triggered tunnel setup.

RADIUS-Less Setup (LUDB Returns L2TP Group)

In this example, the L2TP tunnel-group-name is assigned during LUDB authentication.

The PPPoE user enters on an IES service 1, sap 1/1/2:100.1, and is authenticated via the LUDB which provides L2TP wholesale/retail and ESM information. No RADIUS authentication is required in this example, as the PPPoE context refers to a local-user database **l2tp** to provide the subscriber authentication and the tunnel set-up parameters.

```
configure service ies 1
  subscriber-interface "sub-lt2p"
    unnumbered "system"
    group-interface "grp-l2tp"
      sap 1/1/2:100.1
      sub-sla-mgmt
        sub-ident-policy "sub-ident-1"
        no shutdown
      exit
    exit
  pppoe
    no shutdown
    user-db "l2tp"
  exit
exit
service-name "L2TP"
no shutdown
```

The referenced local user database **l2tp** configuration provides all of the required L2TP and ESM information.

```
configure subscriber-mgmt local-user-db "l2tp"
  ppp
    match-list username
    host "wholesale.com" create
      host-identification
        username "wholesale.com" domain-only
      exit
    password ignore
      identification-strings 254 create
        subscriber-id "user1@wholesale.com"
        sla-profile-string "sla-func1"
        sub-profile-string "sub-func1"
      exit
    l2tp
      group "wholesale.com" service-id 65536          #points to L2TP group
    exit                                              #name and LAC in VRF
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
```

Operation and Troubleshooting

This chapter explains how the use cases A to E described in the configuration section are verified using show, debug and tools commands.

The standard router debugging tools can be used to monitor and troubleshoot the L2TP tunnel and session setup.

Overview of Debug and Show Commands

```
# useful show commands
show service id <service-id> ppp session [detail]
show router l2tp tunnel [detail]
show router l2tp session [detail]
show router l2tp peer [ip-address]

# debug to show PPPoE packet interaction
debug service id <service-id> ppp packet mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
debug service id <service-id> ppp packet detail-level medium

# debug to show RADIUS authentication interaction
debug router radius packet-type authentication

#debug to show LUDB authentication interaction
debug subscriber-mgmt local-user-db <local-user-db-name> detail all

# debug to show LAC Tunnel selection process and L2TP state-machine
debug router l2tp event lac-session-setup
debug router l2tp event finite-state-machine

# debug to show L2TP Tunnel and session setup
debug router l2tp packet direction both
debug router l2tp packet detail-level high
```

Understanding the Debug l2tp Command Output

The L2TP ICRQ message extract shown below (**debug router l2tp packet**) is used to explain how the displayed debug output should be interpreted. See [Recap of the L2TPv2 Protocol on page 979](#) -[L2TP Header and AVP Layout on page 980](#) for more details.

```
<date> <time> CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base L2TP(v2, ctrl, egress)
"L2TP(v2, ctrl, egress): UDP 192.0.2.2:1701 -> 192.168.2.6:1701
tunnel 1240 session 0, ns 2 nr 1, flags:, reserved=0
  AVP MessageType(0,0), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    IncomingCallRequest(10)
<snip>
  AVP CallingNumber(0,22), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    "pe1 1/1/2:100.1"
  AVP AgentCircuitId(3561,1), flags:, reserved=0
    "circuit0"
<snip>
```

- L2TP(v2, ctrl, egress): UDP 192.0.2.2:1701 -> 192.168.2.6:1701
 - version: v2
 - type field (T-bit): control message (ctrl)
 - 192.0.2.2:1701 -> 192.168.2.6:1701
 - 192.0.2.2:1701 - source tunnel-end-point:source udp port
 - 192.168.2.6:1701 - destination tunnel-end-point:destination udp port
- tunnel 1240 session 0, ns 2 nr 1, flags:, reserved=0
 - tunnel-id:1240
 - session-id:0
 - ns:2
 - nr:1
 - flags: 0 (refers to T/L/S/O/P bits L2TP header)
 - reserved field:0
- AVP CallingNumber(0,22), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
 - AVP MessageType(0,22): "pe1 1/1/2:100.1"
 - Vendor-id: 0 - Standard Attribute
 - Attribute Type: 22 – Calling Number AVP
 - Attribute Value: "pe1 1/1/2:100.1"

Scenario 1: RADIUS-Derived L2TP Parameters

- [LAC in Base Routing Context \(base\) with Single Endpoint/Single Tunnel on page 1001](#)

LAC in Base Routing Context (base) with Single Endpoint/Single Tunnel

The **'debug service id <service-id> ppp packet mode egr-ingr-and-dropped'** command shows PPPoE packet interaction. Below is a snapshot from the PADI packet showing the service, SAP and received PPPoE Tags. The received PPPoE DSL forum tags are by default copied during the LAC L2TP tunnel setup into the Incoming Call Request (ICRQ) DSL Forum AVP's (RFC 5515).

```
<date> <time> CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base PPPoE
"PPPoE: RX Packet
  IES 1, SAP 1/1/2:100.1

  DMAC: ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
  SMAC: 00:00:00:01:01:01
  Ether Type: 0x8863 (Discovery)

  PPPoE Header:
  Version: 1                      Type          : 1
  Code   : 0x09 (PADI)           Session-Id: 0x0000 (0)
  Length : 58

  PPPoE Tags:
  [0x0101] Service-Name: "AGILENT"
  [0x0103] Host-Uniq: len = 4, value = 00 0f 00 00
  [0x0105] Vendor-Specific: vendor-id = 0x0de9 (ADSL Forum)
    [0x01] Agent-Circuit-Id: "circuit0" #copied in ICRQ DSL forum AVP's
    [0x02] Agent-Remote-Id: "remote0"  #copied in ICRQ DSL forum AVP's
    [0x81] Actual-Upstream: 2000        #copied in ICRQ DSL forum AVP's
    [0x82] Actual-Downstream: 4000     #copied in ICRQ DSL forum AVP's
```

The **debug router radius packet-type authentication** command shows the actual authentication parameters returned by RADIUS. This example returns the minimum set of L2TP related RADIUS attributes.

```
<date> <time> CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base RADIUS
"RADIUS: Receive
  Access-Accept(2) id 165 len 103 from 172.16.1.1:1812 vrid 1 pol subscr-mgmt
  VSA [26] 21 Alcatel(6527)
    SUBSC ID STR [11] 19 user1@wholesale.com
  VSA [26] 11 Alcatel(6527)
    SUBSC PROF STR [12] 9 sub-func1
  VSA [26] 11 Alcatel(6527)
    SLA PROF STR [13] 9 sla-func1
  TUNNEL TYPE [64] 4 1 L2TP(3)          # L2TP
  TUNNEL MEDIUM TYPE [65] 4 1 IPv4(1)   # IPv4
  TUNNEL SERVER ENDPOINT [67] 8 1 192.168.2.6 # L2TP peer LNS address
"
```

The **debug router l2tp event lac-session-setup** command shows the LAC tunnel selection for this example. An L2TP group-name 'default_radius_group' with tunnel-name 'unnamed' is created in this case.

```
<date> <time> CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base PPPoE 29->L2TP
"PPPoE 29->L2TP: UDP 0.0.0.0:1701 -> 192.168.2.6:1701
pref 50 tunnel default_radius_group:unnamed #group-name=default_radius_group
request to open new tunnel 3288" #tunnel-name=unnamed

<date> <time> CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base PPPoE 29->L2TP
"PPPoE 29->L2TP: UDP 0.0.0.0:1701 -> 192.168.2.6:1701
pref 50 tunnel default_radius_group:unnamed
create session 215482368"
```

The '**debug router l2tp packet detail-level**' command shows the L2TP tunnel and session setup for this example.

Tunnel setup: The LAC sends a Start-Control-Connection-Request (SCCRQ) containing the assigned tunnel-id (no tunnel authentication in the example). The tunnel is now in a wait-reply state.

```
<date> <time> CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base L2TP(v2, ctrl, egress)
"L2TP(v2, ctrl, egress): UDP 192.0.2.2:1701 -> 192.168.2.6:1701
tunnel 0 session 0, ns 0 nr 0, flags:, reserved=0
  AVP MessageType(0,0), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    StartControlConnectionRequest(1) #SCCRQ
  AVP ProtocolVersion(0,2), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    version=1, revision=0
  AVP HostName(0,7), flags: mandatory, reserved=0 #default=system-name
    "pel"
  AVP WindowSize(0,10), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    64 #default=64
  AVP FramingCapabilities(0,3), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    sync=no, async=no
  AVP BearerCapabilities(0,4), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    digital=yes, analogue=no
  AVP FirmwareRevision(0,6), flags:, reserved=0
    2816
  AVP VendorName(0,8), flags:, reserved=0
    "Alcatel-Lucent"
  AVP AssignedTunnelId(0,9), flags: mandatory, reserved=0 #LAC Tunnel-id
    3288"
```

Tunnel setup: The LNS can bring up the tunnel, so the LNS replies with a Start-Control-Connection-Reply (SCCRP) including the assigned tunnel-id.

```
<date> <time> CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base L2TP(v2, ctrl, ingress)
"L2TP(v2,ctrl,ingress): UDP 192.168.2.6:1701 -> 192.0.2.2:1701 #LNS TO LAC
tunnel 3288 session 0, ns 0 nr 1, flags:, reserved=0
  AVP MessageType(0,0), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    StartControlConnectionReply(2) #SCCRP
  AVP ProtocolVersion(0,2), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    version=1, revision=0
  AVP HostName(0,7), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
```

```

    "pe3"
AVP WindowSize(0,10), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    64
AVP FramingCapabilities(0,3), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    sync=no, async=no
AVP BearerCapabilities(0,4), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    digital=yes, analogue=no
AVP FirmwareRevision(0,6), flags:, reserved=0
    2816
AVP VendorName(0,8), flags:, reserved=0
    "Alcatel-Lucent"
AVP AssignedTunnelId(0,9), flags: mandatory, reserved=0 #LNS Tunnel-id
    1240"

```

Tunnel setup: The LAC responds with a Start-Control-Connection-Connected (SCCCN) message. After an LNS ZLB acknowledgment, the tunnel is in the establishedIdle state.

```

<date> <time> CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base L2TP(v2, ctrl, egress)
"L2TP(v2, ctrl, egress): UDP 192.0.2.2:1701 -> 192.168.2.6:1701 #LAC TO LNS
tunnel 1240 session 0, ns 1 nr 1, flags:, reserved=0
    AVP MessageType(0,0), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
        StartControlConnectionConnected(3)"

```

#SCCN

Session setup: Now the tunnel exists, a three-way exchange for session establishment within the tunnel is performed. The LAC sends an Incoming-Call-Request (ICRQ) with the parameter information for the session. The session is now in the wait-reply state.

```

<date> <time> CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base L2TP(v2, ctrl, egress)
"L2TP(v2, ctrl, egress): UDP 192.0.2.2:1701 -> 192.168.2.6:1701 #LAC TO LNS
tunnel 1240 session 0, ns 2 nr 1, flags:, reserved=0
    AVP MessageType(0,0), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
        IncomingCallRequest(10)
    AVP AssignedSessionId(0,14), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
        256
    AVP CallSerialNumber(0,15), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
        31
    AVP CallingNumber(0,22), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
        "pe1 1/1/2:100.1"
    AVP AgentCircuitId(3561,1), flags:, reserved=0
        "circuit0"
    AVP AgentRemoteId(3561,2), flags:, reserved=0
        "remote0"
    AVP ActDataRateUp(3561,129), flags:, reserved=0
        2000000
    AVP ActDataRateDown(3561,130), flags:, reserved=0
        4000000"

```

#ICRQ

#copy from PADI by default

#copy from PADI by default

#copy from PADI by default

Session setup: The LNS sends an Incoming-Call-Reply (ICRP) that contains the assigned session-id. The session is now in the connect state.

```

<date> <time> CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base L2TP(v2, ctrl, ingress)
"L2TP(v2,ctrl,ingress): UDP 192.168.2.6:1701 -> 192.0.2.2:1701 #LNS TO LAC
tunnel 3288 session 256, ns 1 nr 3, flags:, reserved=0

```

Understanding the Debug l2tp Command Output

```
AVP MessageType(0,0), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    IncomingCallReply(11)                                #ICRP
AVP AssignedSessionId(0,14), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    31234"
```

Session setup: The LAC sends an Incoming Call Connected (ICCN) and provides the LNS with additional information from the user initiated session. This information includes the LCP information from the negotiation that the LAC and remote user performed. This information is used by the LNS to decide whether to start LCP re-negotiation and/or Authentication re-negotiation with the PPP user or not. After an LNS ZLB acknowledgment the session is in the established state.

```
<date> <time> CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base L2TP(v2, ctrl, egress)
"L2TP(v2, ctrl, egress): UDP 192.0.2.2:1701 -> 192.168.2.6:1701 #LAC TO LNS
tunnel 1240 session 31234, ns 3 nr 2, flags:, reserved=0
    AVP MessageType(0,0), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
        IncomingCallConnected(12)                        #ICCN
    AVP FramingType(0,19), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
        sync=no, async=no
    AVP TxConnectSpeed(0,24), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
        4000000 #report-rate: More on this in the Advanced section
    AVP InitialRxLcpConfReq(0,26), flags:, reserved=0 #copy from the PPP users
        05 06 19 cc 71 18 01 04 ff fb                    #first LCP-conf-request
        [5] Magic-Number: 0x19cc7118
        [1] MRU: 1500
    AVP LastTxLcpConfReq(0,27), flags:, reserved=0
        01 04 05 d4 03 05 c2 23 05 05 06 0f 4d f8 18
        [1] MRU: 1492
        [3] Authentication-Protocol: 0xc223 (CHAP), Algorithm = 5 (MD5)
        [5] Magic-Number: 0x0f4df818
    AVP LastRxLcpConfReq(0,28), flags:, reserved=0 #copy from the PPP users
        05 06 19 cc 71 18 01 04 ff fb                    #last LCP-conf-request
        [5] Magic-Number: 0x19cc7118
        [1] MRU: 1500
    AVP ProxyAuthenType(0,29), flags:, reserved=0 #user-LAC negotiated
        chap(2) #authentication type
    AVP ProxyAuthenName(0,30), flags:, reserved=0
        "user1@wholesale.com"
    AVP ProxyAuthenChallenge(0,31), flags:, reserved=0
        92 59 c2 53 04 72 06 8f a8 87 cc c6 7d 09 8e d0
        95 43 16 33 70 7e 65 86 d3 c4 16 94 1e 54 e5 30
        2e 28 04 b1 9b 0a c1 c3 12 8e 8b 8f 18 99 e0 ad
        5d
    AVP ProxyAuthenId(0,32), flags:, reserved=0
        id=1, reserved=0
    AVP ProxyAuthenResponse(0,33), flags:, reserved=0
        50 cb bd 10 3c 7c ec 47 0b 04 0d 7d 49 c2 7f bd
    AVP RxConnectSpeed(0,38), flags:, reserved=0
        2000000 #report-rate. More on this
                #in the Advanced section
```


The PPPoE session operational information for IES 1/base instance is shown below.

```
show service id 1 ppp session
=====
PPP sessions for service 1
=====
User-Name
  Descr.
      Up Time      Type  Termination      IP/L2TP-Id/Interface-Id
-----
user1@wholesale.com
  svc:1 sap:1/1/2:100.1 mac:00:00:00:01:01:01 sid:1
      0d 00:00:14   oE    lac              215482624 #L2TP session-id
-----
No. of PPP sessions: 1
```

The tunnel operational information in base instance shows that the tunnel is established.

```
show router l2tp tunnel
=====
Conn ID      Loc-Tu-ID Rem-Tu-ID State      Blacklist-state  Ses Active
Group                                     Ses Total
Assignment
-----
215482368  3288      1240      established  not-blacklisted  1
  default_radius_group
  unnamed
-----
No. of tunnels: 1
```

Detailed tunnel operational information is obtained using following command.

```
show router l2tp tunnel detail
=====
L2TP Tunnel Status
=====

Connection ID: 215482368
State          : established
IP             : 192.0.2.2
UDP            : 1701
Peer IP        : 192.168.2.6
Peer UDP       : 1701
Tx dst-IP      : 192.168.2.6
Tx dst-UDP     : 1701
Rx src-IP      : 192.168.2.6
Rx src-UDP     : 1701
Name           : pe1
Remote Name    : pe3
Assignment ID: unnamed
Group Name     : default_radius_group
Acct. Policy   : N/A
Error Message  : N/A

Tunnel ID      : 3288
Remote Conn ID : 81264640
Remote Tunnel ID : 1240
```

Understanding the Debug l2tp Command Output

```
Preference          : 50                      Receive Window      : 64
Hello Interval (s)  : 300
Idle TO (s)         : infinite                 Destruct TO (s)     : 60
Max Retr Estab      : 5                       Max Retr Not Estab  : 5
Session Limit       : 32767                   AVP Hiding           : never
Transport Type      : udpIp                   Challenge           : never
Time Started        : 10/04/2013 15:37:10      Time Idle            : N/A
Time Established    : 10/04/2013 15:37:10      Time Closed          : N/A
Stop CCN Result     : noError                  General Error        : noError
Blacklist-state     : not-blacklisted
```

The session operational information shows the session is established.

```
show router l2tp session
=====
L2TP Session Summary
=====
ID                Control Conn ID    Tunnel-ID    Session-ID    State
-----
215482624         215482368        3288         256           established
-----
No. of sessions: 1
```

For detailed operational session information use the following command.

```
show router l2tp session detail
=====
L2TP Session 215482624
=====

Connection ID: 215482624
State          : established
Tunnel Group   : default_radius_group
Assignment ID  : unnamed
Error Message  : N/A

Control Conn ID : 215482368      Remote Conn ID   : 81295874
Tunnel ID       : 3288           Remote Tunnel ID  : 1240
Session ID      : 256           Remote Session ID : 31234
Time Started    : 10/04/2013 15:37:10
Time Established : 10/04/2013 15:37:10 Time Closed       : N/A
CDN Result      : noError        General Error     : noError
-----
No. of sessions:
```

LAC in Base Routing Context with Multiple Endpoints (Tunnel Selection Process)

The **debug router radius packet-type authentication** command shows the actual RADIUS authentication parameters returned. This example returns multiple tunnel endpoints from which the LAC selects one. This example uses weighted load balancing. (The L2TP tunnel selection process is out of the scope of this example).

```
<date> <time> CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base RADIUS
"RADIUS: Receive
  Access-Accept(2) id 190 len 299 from 172.16.1.1:1812 vrid 1 pol subscr-mgmt
    VSA [26] 21 Alcatel(6527)
      SUBSC ID STR [11] 19 user1@wholesale.com
    VSA [26] 11 Alcatel(6527)
      SUBSC PROF STR [12] 9 sub-func1
    VSA [26] 11 Alcatel(6527)
      SLA PROF STR [13] 9 sla-func1
#
  TUNNEL CLIENT ENDPOINT [66] 7 192.168.2.2
  VSA [26] 6 Alcatel(6527)
    TUNNEL ALGORITHM [47] 4 weighted access(1)    #input for tunnel selection
  TUNNEL ASSIGNMENT ID [82] 22 l2tp-functional-radius
  TUNNEL CLIENT AUTH ID [90] 7 lac-pe1
  VSA [26] 6 Alcatel(6527)
    TUNNEL MAX RETRIES ESTAB [52] 4 0 2
#
  TUNNEL TYPE [64] 4 1 L2TP(3)                    #Tunnel 1
  TUNNEL MEDIUM TYPE [65] 4 1 IPv4(1)
  TUNNEL SERVER ENDPOINT [67] 8 1 192.168.2.6
  TUNNEL ASSIGNMENT ID [82] 8 1 LNS1-T1
  TUNNEL PREFERENCE [83] 4 1 100                  #input for tunnel selection
#
  TUNNEL TYPE [64] 4 2 L2TP(3)                    #Tunnel 2
  TUNNEL MEDIUM TYPE [65] 4 2 IPv4(1)
  TUNNEL SERVER ENDPOINT [67] 8 2 192.168.2.7
  TUNNEL ASSIGNMENT ID [82] 8 2 LNS2-T2
  TUNNEL PREFERENCE [83] 4 2 100                  #input for tunnel selection
#
  TUNNEL TYPE [64] 4 3 L2TP(3)                    #Tunnel 3
  TUNNEL MEDIUM TYPE [65] 4 3 IPv4(1)
  TUNNEL SERVER ENDPOINT [67] 8 3 192.168.2.8
  TUNNEL ASSIGNMENT ID [82] 8 3 LNS3-T3
  TUNNEL PREFERENCE [83] 4 3 120                  #input for tunnel selection
#
  TUNNEL TYPE [64] 4 4 L2TP(3)                    #Tunnel 4
  TUNNEL MEDIUM TYPE [65] 4 4 IPv4(1)
  TUNNEL SERVER ENDPOINT [67] 8 4 192.168.2.9
  TUNNEL ASSIGNMENT ID [82] 8 4 LNS4-T4
  TUNNEL PREFERENCE [83] 4 4 140
```

The **debug router l2tp event lac-session-setup** command shows the LAC tunnel LNS1-T1 is selected for this example.

```
<date> <time> CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base PPPoE 15->L2TP
"PPPoE 15->L2TP: UDP 192.168.2.2:1701 -> 192.168.2.6:1701 #end 192.168.2.6
preference 100 tunnel l2tp-functional-radius:LNS1-T1      #preference 100
```

Understanding the Debug L2tp Command Output

```
request to open new tunnel 11212"

<date> <time> CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base PPPoE 15->L2TP
"PPPoE 15->L2TP: UDP 192.168.2.2:1701 -> 192.168.2.7:1701 #end 192.168.2.7
preference 100 tunnel l2tp-functional-radius:LNS2-T2      #preference 100
skipped as another tunnel was selected"

<date> <time> CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base PPPoE 15->L2TP
"PPPoE 15->L2TP: UDP 192.168.2.2:1701 -> 192.168.2.6:1701
preference 100 tunnel l2tp-functional-radius:LNS1-T1      #selects 192.168.2.6
create session 734820645"
```

The operational PPPoE session information in IES 1/base instance is shown as follows.

```
show service id 1 ppp session
=====
PPP sessions for service 1
=====
User-Name
  Descr.
      Up Time          Type  Termination      IP/L2TP-Id/Interface-Id
-----
user1@wholesale.com
  svc:1 sap:1/1/2:100.1 mac:00:00:00:01:01:01 sid:1
      0d 00:00:20    oE    lac              734820645
-----
No. of PPP sessions: 1
```

The operational tunnel information (base instance) is shown below.

```
show router l2tp tunnel
=====
Conn ID    Loc-Tu-ID Rem-Tu-ID State          Blacklist-state  Ses Active
Group                                     Ses Total
Assignment
-----
734789632  11212     13723     established    not-blacklisted  1
  l2tp-functional-radius
  LNS1-T1                                     1
-----
No. of tunnels: 1
```

Operational session information (base instance) shows the session is in the established state.

```
show router l2tp session
=====
L2TP Session Summary
=====
ID          Control Conn ID    Tunnel-ID  Session-ID  State
-----
734820645   734789632          11212     31013       established
-----
No. of sessions: 1
```

The L2TP endpoint/peer information shows there is one single tunnel for tunnel endpoint 192.168.2.6.

```
show router l2tp peer
=====
L2TP Peers
=====
Peer IP              Port  Tun Active Ses Active
      Drain Reachability Tun Total  Ses Total
-----
192.168.2.6          1701  1      1      1  #LNS endpoint 192.168.2.6
                        1      1
192.168.2.7          1701  0      0      0
                        0      0
192.168.2.8          1701  0      0      0
                        0      0
192.168.2.9          1701  0      0      0
                        0      0
-----
No. of peers: 4
```

The following command gives a system overview of subscriber session related data. This system overview shows the current and peak values per session type (local PTA, LAC, LTS, LNS) and an overview of the number of originated or terminated L2TP tunnels. Peak values can be cleared via the **clear subscriber-mgmt peakvalue-stats** command.

```
show subscriber-mgmt statistics session system
=====
Subscriber Management Statistics for System
=====
Type              Current    Peak    Peak Timestamp
-----
Session Statistics
-----
Local    PPP Sessions - PPPoE          0      1 11/13/2013 17:04:23
         PPP Sessions - PPPoEoA      0      0
         PPP Sessions - PPPoA        0      0
         PPP Sessions - L2TP (LNS)   0      0
-----
LAC      PPP Sessions - PPPoE          1      1 11/19/2013 15:46:40
         PPP Sessions - PPPoEoA      0      0
         PPP Sessions - PPPoA        0      0
         PPP Sessions - L2TP (LTS)   0      0
-----
Total    PPP Sessions - established  1      2 11/19/2013 15:46:40
         PPP Sessions - in setup     0      1 11/19/2013 15:46:39
         PPP Sessions - local        0      1 11/13/2013 17:04:23
         PPP Sessions - LAC          1      1 11/19/2013 15:46:40
-----
L2TP     L2TP Tunnels - originator    1      2 11/19/2013 15:40:13
         L2TP Tunnels - receiver     0      0
         Total L2TP Tunnels          1      2 11/19/2013 15:40:13
-----
=====
Peak values last reset at : n/a
```

LAC in a VRF

This example returns VPRN 65536 as the L2TP service instance [26-6527-104 Alc-Tunnel-Serv-Id]. The VPRN 65536 interface system address is used as the L2TP source address since the attribute Tunnel-Client-Endpoint is not returned.

The ip-address 192.168.2.6 (Tunnel-Server-Endpoint) needs to be routable in VRF 65536 over a SAP or to a remote PE. This example uses BGP/MPLS IP Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) (RFC4364) to access the remote PE.

```
show router 65536 route-table
=====
Route Table (Service: 65536)
=====
Dest Prefix[Flags]                                Type   Proto   Age           Pref
  Next Hop[Interface Name]                        Metric
-----
<snip>
192.168.2.2/32                                     Local   Local    11h10m45s    0
      system                                     0
192.168.2.6/32                                     Remote  BGP VPN    11h10m12s   170
      192.0.2.6 (tunneled)                        0
```

Operational PPPoE session information for IES 1 (base instance) is shown using following command.

```
show service id 1 ppp session
=====
PPP sessions for service 1
=====
User-Name
  Descr.
      Up Time          Type  Termination      IP/L2TP-Id/Interface-Id
-----
user1@wholesale.com
  svc:1 sap:1/1/2:100.1 mac:00:00:00:01:01:01 sid:1
      0d 00:00:12   oE    lac              718372593
-----
No. of PPP sessions: 1
```

Operational tunnel information for VPRN 65536 is displayed as follows.

```
show router 65536 l2tp tunnel
=====
Conn ID   Loc-Tu-ID Rem-Tu-ID State           Blacklist-state   Ses Active
  Group                                     Ses Total
  Assignment
-----
718340096 10961     15559     established    not-blacklisted   1
  l2tp-functional-radius
  LNS1-T1
-----
No. of tunnels: 1
```

Operational session information for VPRN 65536 is displayed using following command, and shows that the session is established.

```
show router 65536 l2tp session
=====
L2TP Session Summary
=====
ID                Control Conn ID    Tunnel-ID    Session-ID    State
-----
718372593         718340096          10961        32497         established
-----
No. of sessions: 1
```

Scenario 2: Node-Derived L2TP Parameters

- [RADIUS Returns L2TP Group on page 1012](#)
- [LUDB Returns L2TP Group on page 1014](#)

RADIUS Returns L2TP Group

This example returns VPRN 65536 as the L2TP service instance [26-6527-104] Alc-Tunnel-Serv-Id and an l2tp group-name wholesale.com [26-6527-46] Alc-Tunnel-Group.

```
<date> <time> CET MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base RADIUS
"RADIUS: Receive
  Access-Accept(2) id 73 len 114 from 172.16.1.1:1812 vrid 1 pol subscr-mgmt
    VSA [26] 21 Alcatel(6527)
      SUBSC ID STR [11] 19 user1@wholesale.com
    VSA [26] 11 Alcatel(6527)
      SUBSC PROF STR [12] 9 sub-func1
    VSA [26] 11 Alcatel(6527)
      SLA PROF STR [13] 9 sla-func1
    VSA [26] 6 Alcatel(6527)
      TUNNEL SERVICE ID [104] 4 65536          #LAC in VRF
    VSA [26] 15 Alcatel(6527)
      TUNNEL GROUP [46] 13 wholesale.com      #points to L2TP node group name
```

For operational PPPoE session information in IES 1/base instance, use following command.

```
*A:pe1# show service id 1 ppp session
=====
PPP sessions for service 1
=====
User-Name
  Descr.
      Up Time          Type  Termination      IP/L2TP-Id/Interface-Id
-----
user1@wholesale.com
  svc:1 sap:1/1/2:100.1 mac:00:00:00:01:01:01 sid:1
      0d 00:00:11    oE    lac          768347764
-----
No. of PPP sessions: 1
```

Operational tunnel information for VPRN 65536 shows the tunnel is in the established state.

```
show router 65536 l2tp tunnel
=====
Conn ID      Loc-Tu-ID Rem-Tu-ID State          Blacklist-state  Ses Active
Group
Assignment
-----
768344064  11724    14445    established    not-blacklisted  1
wholesale.com                                1
```



```
wholesale.com
```

```
-----
No. of tunnels: 1
```

The operational session information for VPRN 65536 shows the session is in the established state.

```
show router 65536 l2tp session
```

```
=====
L2TP Session Summary
```

```
=====
ID                Control Conn ID      Tunnel-ID  Session-ID  State
-----
768347764         768344064        11724      3700        established
-----
```

```
No. of sessions: 1
```

LUDB Returns L2TP Group

This example returns VPRN 65536 as the L2TP service instance and l2tp group-name wholesale.com (LUDB **l2tp** group "wholesale.com" service-id 65536).

The **debug subscriber-mgmt local-user-db "l2tp" detail all** command shows the LUDB authentication access (The returned parameter details are not shown).

```
<date> <time> CET MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base LUDB
"LUDB: User lookup success - host found
  user-name:
    original:  user1@wholesale.com
    masked:    user1@wholesale.com

  Host wholesale.com found in user data base l2tp      #host found
```

To show the operational data from LUDB **l2tp**, use the following command.

```
show subscriber-mgmt local-user-db "l2tp" ppp-host "wholesale.com" | match N/A invert-
match | match none invert-match
=====
PPP Host "wholesale.com"
=====
Admin State           : Up
Last Mgmt Change      : 11/22/2013 17:35:28

Host Identification
  User Name           : wholesale.com (domain only)

Matched Objects       : userName

Password Type         : ignore
PADO Delay            : 0msec
Force IPv6 CP         : Disabled

Identification Strings (option 254)
  Subscriber Id       : user1@wholesale.com
  SLA Profile String  : sla-func1
  Sub Profile String  : sub-func1

L2TP
  Service             : 65536                                #LAC in VRF
  Tunnel Group        : wholesale.com                        #points to L2TP group name
```

The **debug router l2tp event lac-session-setup** command shows the LAC tunnel selected for this example.

```
<date> <time> CET MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn65536 PPPoE 28->L2TP
"PPPoE 28->L2TP: UDP 192.168.2.2:1701 -> 192.168.2.6:1701
preference 50 tunnel wholesale.com:wholesale.com      #group and tunnel name
request to open new tunnel 15501"

462 2013/11/22 17:39:13.21 CET MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn65536 PPPoE 28->L2TP
"PPPoE 28->L2TP: UDP 192.168.2.2:1701 -> 192.168.2.6:1701
```

```

preference 50 tunnel wholesale.com:wholesale.com
create session 1015877546"

```

For the operational PPPoE session information in IES 1/base instance, use the following command.

```

show service id 1 ppp session
=====
PPP sessions for service 1
=====
User-Name
  Descr.
      Up Time          Type  Termination      IP/L2TP-Id/Interface-Id
-----
user1@wholesale.com
  svc:1 sap:1/1/2:100.1 mac:00:00:00:01:01:01 sid:1
      0d 00:00:10    oE    lac              1015877546
-----
No. of PPP sessions: 1

```

Operational tunnel information for VPRN 65536 can be obtained using following command.

```

show router 65536 l2tp tunnel
=====
Conn ID      Loc-Tu-ID Rem-Tu-ID State          Blacklist-state  Ses Active
  Group                                     Ses Total
  Assignment
-----
1015873536 15501      11826      established    not-blacklisted  1
  wholesale.com
  wholesale.com
-----
No. of tunnels: 1

```

The operational session information for VPRN 65536 shows the session is in the established state.

```

show router 65536 l2tp session
=====
L2TP Session Summary
=====
ID              Control Conn ID   Tunnel-ID   Session-ID   State
-----
1015877546      1015873536      15501      4010        established
-----
No. of sessions: 1

```

Advanced Topics

Non-Session-Triggered L2TP Tunnel Setup

In addition to the ppp-session-triggered setup, an L2TP tunnel can also be setup via a tools command or an auto-establish command. These non-session-triggers are useful, for example, during the initial configuration phase where the LAC-LNS tunnel setup can be tested without any other user interaction. The PPP user still triggers the L2TP session-setup over this L2TP tunnel and RADIUS needs to return an l2tp group-name with the relevant name during authentication.

Auto-Establish

Every one minute a check is performed to determine if tunnels need to be established (a process referred to as scan auto-establish). The tunnel state is establishedIdle when the tunnel is setup, and becomes established when user triggered sessions are setup over this tunnel.

```
configure service vprn 65536
<snip>
l2tp
  group "wholesale.com"
    tunnel "wholesale.com"
      local-address 192.168.2.2
      local-name "lac-pe1"
      peer 192.168.2.6
      auto-establish      #triggers tunnel setup
      no shutdown
    exit
  no shutdown
exit
no shutdown
exit
```

There is no difference in operational behavior for a tunnel setup via a session-trigger or an auto-establish command. Removing the auto-establish parameter has no impact on active tunnels (establishedIdle or established).

```
show router 65536 l2tp tunnel
=====
Conn ID   Loc-Tu-ID Rem-Tu-ID State           Blacklist-state  Ses Active
Group                                           Ses Total
Assignment
-----
960495616 14656    721      establishedIdle  not-blacklisted  0
wholesale.com                                     0
wholesale.com
-----
No. of tunnels: 1
```

Tools Tunnel Start

An alternative for auto-establish is the tools start command.

```
configure service vprn 65536
<snip>
l2tp
    group "wholesale.com"
        tunnel "wholesale.com"
            local-address 192.168.2.2
            local-name "lac-pe1"
            peer 192.168.2.6
            no auto-establish          #no triggers tunnel setup
            no shutdown
        exit
    no shutdown
exit
no shutdown
exit

tools perform router 65536 l2tp group wholesale.com tunnel wholesale.com start
```

How Long Does a Tunnel Remain Idle Before Being Torn Down?

A persistent tunnel is a tunnel that remains available after the last session over that tunnel is closed. To create a persistent tunnel, the idle-timeout parameter must be set to infinite.

A non-persistent tunnel is torn down immediately (idle-timeout zero) after the last session over that tunnel is closed or after a configurable delay. The idle-timeout parameter is set via the RADIUS [26-6527-49] Alc-Tunnel-Idle-Timeout attribute or the corresponding node parameter. The default value for this parameter is infinite (persistent).

Idle-Timeout

```
configure router l2tp | configure service vprn l2tp
  idle-timeout [0..3600]seconds
  <snip>
  group <tunnel-group-name>
    idle-timeout [0..3600]seconds | infinite
    <snip>
    tunnel <tunnel-name>
      idle-timeout [0..3600]seconds | infinite
    <snip>
```

The following shows an example of a persistent tunnel (idle-timeout infinite).

```
show router l2tp tunnel detail          # Example persistent tunnel
=====
Connection ID: 111804416
State      : establishedIdle           # moves from established to establishedIdle
                                           # after last session is closed
<snip>
Assignment ID: unnamed
Group Name  : default_radius_group
Error Message: N/A

Tunnel ID      : 1706                  Remote Conn ID   : 586874880
Preference     : 50                   Remote Tunnel ID : 8955
Hello Interval(s): 300                Receive Window   : 64
Idle TO (s)    : infinite              Destruct TO (s)  : 60
<snip>
```

The following shows an example of a non-persistent tunnel (idle-timeout 10 seconds).

```
show router l2tp tunnel detail          # Example non-persistent tunnel
=====
Connection ID: 1039335424
State      : closed                   # moves from established to establishedIdle
                                           # after last session is terminated. Ten
                                           # seconds later state becomes closed(tunnel
                                           # destroyed). Operational tunnel data
                                           # stays available (trouble shooting)
```

```

# purposes)for a short period of time.(see
# further destruct-timeout).

<snip>
Assignment ID: unnamed
Group Name   : default_radius_group
Error Message: idle timeout (10 seconds) expired

Tunnel ID      : 15859          Remote Conn ID   : 218169344
Preference     : 50             Remote Tunnel ID  : 3329
Hello Interval(s): 300          Receive Window   : 64
Idle TO (s)    : 10             Destruct TO (s)  : 60
<snip>

```

Tools Tunnel Stop

In addition to the idle-timeout used for tunnel termination, a tools stop command is also available that can be used to terminate persistent and non-persistent tunnels at any moment in time. Be aware that this command is very destructive and destroys all sessions carried over the closed tunnel.

Following command shows the tunnel is in the establishedIdle state.

```

show router 65536 l2tp tunnel
=====
Conn ID   Loc-Tu-ID Rem-Tu-ID State           Blacklist-state   Ses Active
  Group                                     Ses Total
  Assignment
-----
462749696 7061      9070      establishedIdle   not-blacklisted   0
  wholesale.com                                     0
  wholesale.com
-----
No. of tunnels: 1

```

The command below terminates the l2tp tunnel. The tunnel is aborted (the LAC sends StopCCN) using the <connection-id> or <tunnel-group-name>+<tunnel-name> as input. This StopCCN indicates "operator request" as the error reason.

```

tools perform router 65536 l2tp group wholesale.com tunnel wholesale.com stop
#
tools perform router 65536 l2tp tunnel 462749696 stop

```

The trace and debug output below shows the tunnel being aborted.

```

<date> <time> CET MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn65536 L2TP(v2, ctrl, egress)
"L2TP(v2, ctrl, egress): UDP 192.168.2.2:1701 -> 192.168.2.6:1701
tunnel 9070 session 0, ns 2 nr 1, flags:, reserved=0
  AVP MessageType(0,0), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    StopControlConnectionNotification(4)
  AVP ResultCode(0,1), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    result-code: "generalRequestToClearControlConnection"(1), error-code:

```

How Long Does a Tunnel Remain Idle Before Being Torn Down?

```
"noGeneralError"(0)
error-msg: "operator request"
AVP AssignedTunnelId(0,9), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
7061"
```


Keepalive (hello)

A keepalive mechanism is employed by L2TP in order to differentiate tunnel outages from extended periods of no control or data activity on a tunnel. This is accomplished by injecting Hello control messages after a specified period of time has elapsed since the last data or control message (ZLB not included) was received on a tunnel. As for any other L2TP control message, if the Hello message is not reliably delivered then the tunnel is declared down and reset, as defined in RFC 2661, *Layer Two Tunneling Protocol “L2TP”*. This means that the 7x50 does not initiate hello packets if session control traffic is handled over this tunnel. The 7x50 resets the hello timer if the system transmits any control packet over this tunnel (ZLB packets and data traffic are not taken into account).

The keepalive function is disabled (not recommended) using RADIUS [26-6527-50] Alc-Tunnel-Hello-Interval -1 or hello-interval infinite. The number of retries for unsuccessful Hello packet delivery equals RADIUS [26-6527-52] Alc-Tunnel-Max-Retries-Estab or node parameter max-retries-estab (default 5). The retry interval is initially set to 1 second and doubles on each retry with a maximum interval of 8 seconds. Using a max-retries-estab 7 results in a retry of [1,2,4,8,8,8,8 seconds].

```
configure router l2tp | configure service vprn l2tp
  hello-interval [60..3600]seconds | infinite #default 300s
  max-retries-estab [2..7]                  #default 5
  <snip>
  group <tunnel-group-name>
    hello-interval [60..3600]seconds | infinite
    max-retries-estab [2..7]
    <snip>
    tunnel <tunnel-name>
      hello-interval [60..3600]seconds | infinite
      max-retries-estab [2..7]
    <snip>
```

For example, the LAC can be configured with an hello-timer of 1 minute and the LNS with an hello-timer of 2 minutes. The hello-timer interval for LAC and LNS do not have to be same as the keepalive mechanism works asynchronous. See [L2TP Keepalive Mechanism on page 1022](#).

```
LAC > show router l2tp tunnel
=====
Conn ID      Loc-Tu-ID Rem-Tu-ID State           Blacklist-state   Ses Active
  Group                                     Ses Total
  Assignment
-----
148635648  2268      13918    established      not-blacklisted   1
  l2tp-functional-radius                      1
  LNS1-T1
```

Keepalive (hello)

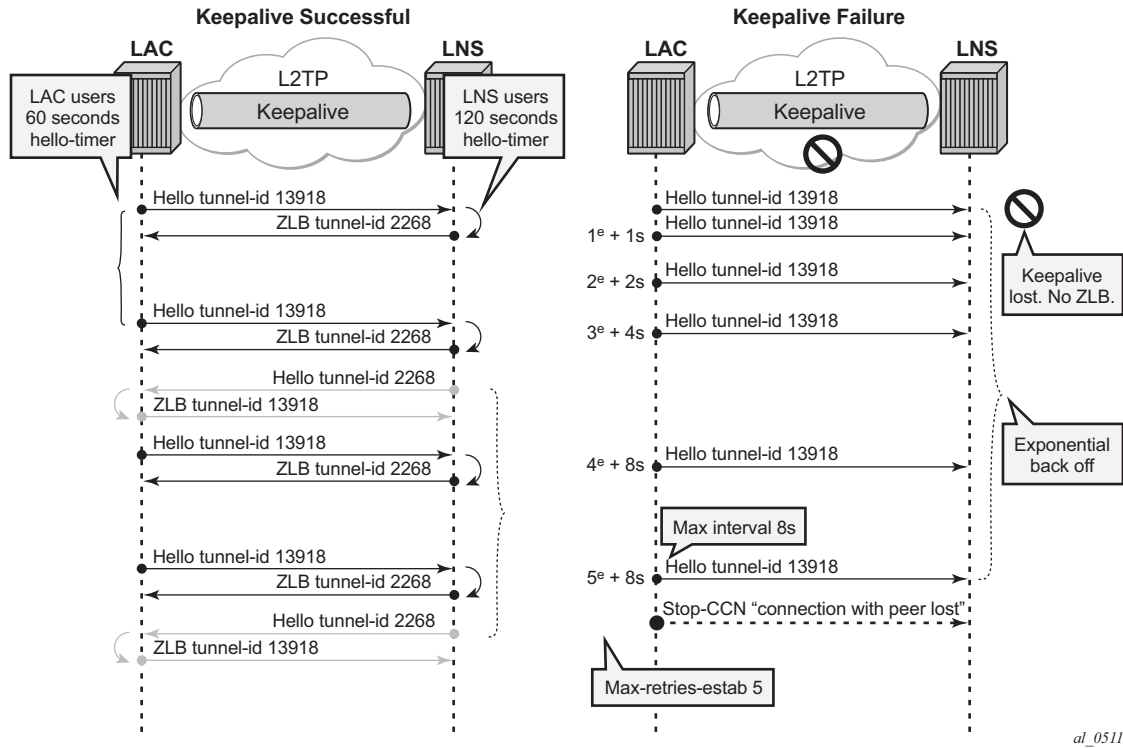


Figure 165: L2TP Keepalive Mechanism

Figure 165 shows the tunnel being closed after 5 unsuccessful Hello deliveries with error-message **connection with peer lost**.

```
LAC > show router l2tp tunnel detail
=====
L2TP Tunnel Status
=====
Connection ID: 148635648
State          : closed
<snip>
Error Message: connection with peer lost

Tunnel ID      : 2268
Preference     : 100
Hello Interval(s): 60
<snip>

Remote Conn ID   : 912130048
Remote Tunnel ID : 13918
Receive Window   : 64
```

Does L2TP Keeps Info About Closed Tunnels, Sessions?

The destruct-timeout parameter (expressed in seconds) controls the period of time that the tunnel, or session data related to a closed (disconnected) tunnel, or session persists before being removed. The destruct_timeout is a debugging aid by saving underlying memory structures after the tunnel, or session is terminated. It is configured via the RADIUS [26-6527-51] Alc-Tunnel-Destruct-Timeout attribute or the corresponding node parameter. Default value for this parameter is 60 seconds.

```
configure router l2tp | configure service vprn l2tp
    destruct-timeout [60..86400]
    <snip>
    group <tunnel-group-name>
        destruct-timeout [60..86400]
        <snip>
    tunnel <tunnel-name>
        destruct-timeout [60..86400]
```

The following output shows a session that is closed and the reason for it being terminated.

```
show router l2tp session detail
=====
L2TP Session 228095933
=====

Connection ID: 228095933
State          : closed          #session destroyed but data still available
Tunnel Group   : default_radius_group
Assignment ID: unnamed
Error Message: Terminated by PPPoE: RX PADT

Control Conn ID : 228065280      Remote Conn ID : 609491118
Tunnel ID       : 3480           Remote Tunnel ID : 9300
Session ID      : 30653          Remote Session ID : 6318
Time Started    : 10/08/2013 17:14:36
Time Established : 10/08/2013 17:14:36 Time Closed      : 10/08/2013 17:14:43
CDN Result      : generalError    General Error      : vendorSpecific
```

The following output shows a tunnel that is closed and the reason for it being closed.

```
show router l2tp tunnel detail
=====
L2TP Tunnel Status
=====

Connection ID: 228065280
State          : closed          #tunnel destroyed but data still available
<snip>
Assignment ID: unnamed
Group Name     : default_radius_group
Error Message: idle timeout (0 seconds) expired

Remote Conn ID : 609484800
Tunnel ID      : 3480         Remote Tunnel ID : 9300
```

Does L2TP Keeps Info About Closed Tunnels, Sessions?

Preference	: 50	Receive Window	: 64
Hello Interval(s)	: 300		
Idle TO (s)	: 0	Destruct TO (s)	: 60
Max Retr Estab	: 5	Max Retr Not Estab	: 5
Session Limit	: 32767	AVP Hiding	: never
Transport Type	: udpIp	Challenge	: never
Time Started	: 10/08/2013 17:14:36	Time Idle	: 10/08/2013 17:14:43
Time Established	: 10/08/2013 17:14:36	Time Closed	: 10/08/2013 17:14:43
Stop CCN Result	: generalReq	General Error	: noError
Blacklist-state	: not-blacklisted		

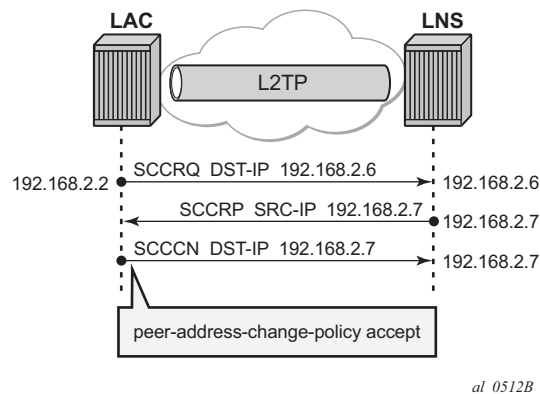
Floating Peers

A floating peer exists if the peer LNS address indicated in the source address of the SCCRP is different from the peer address known on the LAC. Floating peer allowance is configuration driven and is rejected by default.

The parameter `peer-address-change-policy` specifies whether the LAC accepts, ignores or rejects requests from a peer to change the destination IP address or UDP port.

```
configure router l2tp | configure service vprn l2tp
  peer-address-change-policy accept | ignore | reject  #default reject
```

- **accept** — Specifies that this system accepts any source IP address change for received L2TP control messages related to a locally originated tunnel in the state wait-reply and rejects any peer address change for other tunnels. In case the new peer IP address is accepted, it is learned and used as destination address in subsequent L2TP messages.



al_0512B

Figure 166: Floating Peers Accept

- **Ignore** — Specifies that this system ignores any source IP address change for received L2TP control messages, does not learn any new peer IP address and does not change the destination address in subsequent L2TP messages.

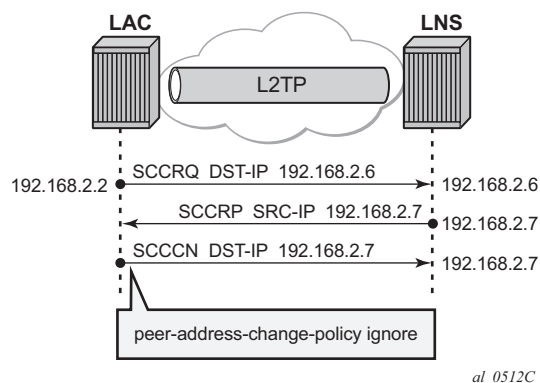


Figure 167: Floating Peers Ignore

- **Reject** — Specifies that this system rejects any source IP address change for received L2TP control messages and drops those messages.

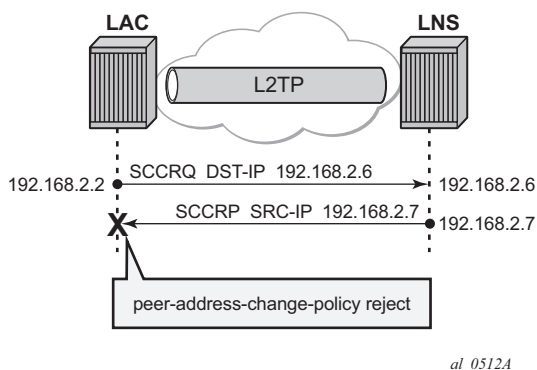


Figure 168: Floating Peers Reject

The values Peer IP, Tx dst-IP and Rx src-IP in the **show router l2tp tunnel detail** command indicates if floating peers are used or not.

An example of a floating peer (peer-address-change-policy accept) is shown below.

```
show router l2tp tunnel detail
=====
L2TP Tunnel Status
=====
Connection ID: 897122304
State          : established
IP             : 192.0.2.2
UDP            : 1701
Peer IP        : 192.168.2.6      # (1) peer address used in SCCRQ
Peer UDP       : 1701
Tx dst-IP      : 192.168.2.7      # (3) peer address used in SCCCN
```

```
Tx dst-UDP      : 1701
Rx src-IP       : 192.168.2.7      # (2) SCCRP different IP received
Rx src-UDP      : 1701
<snip>
```

Tx Connect Speed AVP 24 and Rx Connect Speed AVP 38

The Connect Speed (TX AVP 24 and RX AVP 38) is passed in the ICCN messages sent from the LAC to the LNS. The L2TP AVP 24 defines the (Tx) connect speed in bps from the perspective of traffic flowing from the LAC towards the subscriber (BNG downstream rate). The L2TP AVP 38 defines the (Rx) connect speed in bps from the perspective of traffic flowing from the subscriber towards the LAC (BNG upstream rate).

The report-rate configuration option indicates what rate is reported to the LNS when creating an L2TP session.

```
configure subscriber-mgmt
sla-profile <sla-profile-name>
  ingress
    report-rate agg-rate-limit|scheduler|pppoe-actual-rate|rfc5515-actual-rate
  egress
    report-rate agg-rate-limit|scheduler|pppoe-actual-rate|rfc5515-actual-rate
```

- **agg-rate-limit** — Take the aggregate rate as received from the RADIUS Access-Accept message in VSA Alc-Subscriber-QoS-Override. When this RADIUS VSA is not present in the Access-Accept, or when RADIUS is not used, then take the configured aggregate rate limit. In the case where this is not configured then take the port rate.
- **scheduler <scheduler-name>** — Take the rate of the specified scheduler. In case the scheduler is not linked with the scheduler-policy from the subscriber-profile then take the port rate.
- **pppoe-actual-rate** — Take the rate from the DSL-Forum Vendor-Specific PPPoE Tag when available, otherwise take the port rate.
- **rfc5515-actual-rate** — Put the same value as the transmitted Actual-Data-Rate-Upstream AVP in the Rx-Connect-Speed AVP, and the same value as the transmitted Actual-Data-Rate-Downstream AVP in the Tx-Connect-Speed AVP.

Calling Number AVP 22 Format

The format of AVP 22 Calling Number in the ICRQ message is configurable via the parameter `calling-number-format`. The default format is `"%S<space>%s"` and corresponds to the concatenation of `system-name<space>sap-id`. Available parameters are `%S` (system-name), `%c` (Agent Circuit Id), `%r` Agent Remote Id, `%s` (sap-id), `%l` (Logical Line ID) and fixed strings. A combination can be configured from any of these parameters, but the total configured format cannot exceed 255 characters.

Example 1: Default configuration.

```
configure router l2tp
  calling-number-format "%S %s"      #default configuration
  <snip>

<date> <time> CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base L2TP(v2, ctrl, egress)
"L2TP(v2, ctrl, egress): UDP 192.0.2.2:1701 -> 192.168.2.6:1701
tunnel 1240 session 0, ns 2 nr 1, flags:, reserved=0
  AVP MessageType(0,0), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    IncomingCallRequest(10)
  <snip>
  AVP CallingNumber(0,22), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    "pe1 1/1/2:100.1"
```

Example 2: Customized configuration and all parameters (`%S %s %c`) are available to construct the requested AVP 22.

```
configure router l2tp
  calling-number-format "start-%S###%s###%c-end"
  <snip>

<date> <time> CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base L2TP(v2, ctrl, egress)
"L2TP(v2, ctrl, egress): UDP 192.0.2.2:1701 -> 192.168.2.6:1701
tunnel 12758 session 0, ns 2 nr 1, flags:, reserved=0
  AVP MessageType(0,0), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    IncomingCallRequest(10)
  <snip>
  AVP CallingNumber(0,22), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    "start-pe1###1/1/2:100.1###circuit0-end"
```

Example 3: Customized configuration and not all parameters are available to construct the requested AVP 22. Option-82 circuit-id (`%c`) and LLID (`%l`) information are missing and therefore missing (skipped) in the formatted attribute.

```
configure router l2tp
  calling-number-format "%S#%c#%r#%l#%s"
  <snip>

<date> <time> CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base L2TP(v2, ctrl, egress)
"L2TP(v2, ctrl, egress): UDP 192.0.2.2:1701 -> 192.168.2.6:1701
tunnel 8847 session 0, ns 2 nr 1, flags:, reserved=0
  AVP MessageType(0,0), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
```

Calling Number AVP 22 Format

```
IncomingCallRequest(10)
<snip>
AVP CallingNumber(0,22), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
"pe1##remote0##1/1/2:100.1"
```

Prevent LAC from transmitting Calling Number AVP 22 to LNS

By default, the LAC includes the Calling Number AVP 22 in the L2TP incoming-call-request (ICRQ) packets transmitted to LNS. This AVP identifies the interface that is connected to the customer in the access network. Network access interface information can be hidden by configuring the LAC not to send the Calling Number AVP to the LNS.

Use the command below to disable the sending of L2TP Calling Number AVP 22.

```
configure router l2tp
    exclude-avps calling-number
```

cisco-nas-port AVP 100

Interoperation with a Cisco LNS requires that the LAC communicates a NAS port type to the LNS via the L2TP ICRQ 'Cisco Nas Port Info AVP (100)'. This AVP (100) includes information that identifies the NAS port and indicates whether the port type is Ethernet or ATM and is configured via the cisco-nas-port parameter.

Cisco AVP 100 format

- First 5 bytes are NAS-Port-Type:
 - 0f10090203 (Ethernet)
 - 0f10090201 (ATM)
- Remaining 4 bytes corresponds with the configured cisco-nas-port value

Example:

- Ethernet 12b s-vlan-id; 10b c-vlan-id; 3b slot number; 2b MDA nbr; 5b port
- ATM 12b VPI; 10b VCI; 3b slot number; 2b MDA nbr; 5b port

```
configure router l2tp
    cisco-nas-port ethernet "*12o*10i*3s*2m*5p" atm "*12v*10c*3s*2m*5p"
```

nas-port 1/1/2:100.1 corresponds to 1100100 0000000001 001 01 00010 = 104858786

```
<date> <time> CEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base L2TP(v2, ctrl, egress)
"L2TP(v2, ctrl, egress): UDP 192.0.2.2:1701 -> 192.168.2.6:1701
tunnel 10948 session 0, ns 2 nr 1, flags:, reserved=0
  AVP MessageType(0,0), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    IncomingCallRequest(10)
  AVP CiscoNasPort(9,100), flags:, reserved=0
    104858786 type=ethernet(0f:10:09:02:03)      # 104858786 = 1/1/2:100.1
  AVP AssignedSessionId(0,14), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
    7556
```

cisco-nas-port AVP 100

```
AVP CallSerialNumber(0,15), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
41
AVP CallingNumber(0,22), flags: mandatory, reserved=0
"pe1 1/1/2:100.1"
<snip>
```

L2TP Group/Peer/Tunnel Draining

When the LAC has established sessions, the LAC can avoid the creation of new sessions for a specific group, peer, or tunnel, via the **drain** command.

No new sessions are created for a group, peer or tunnel that is being drained (draining state) but the current sessions are left intact.

After the **drain** command is issued, the group, peer, or tunnel moves from a draining to drained state when the last session is closed. A drained group, peer, or tunnel can then be managed (reconfigured, deleted) without any user impact.

Be aware that a group, peer, or tunnel in a draining or drained state is skipped in the tunnel selection process. The next example shows a tunnel draining; group and peer draining works according in the same way.

A tunnel has 1 session and is in established state.

```
show router 65536 l2tp tunnel
=====
```

Conn ID	Loc-Tu-ID	Rem-Tu-ID	State	Blacklist-state	Ses Active
Group					Ses Total
Assignment					
270073856	4121	3238	established	not-blacklisted	1
wholesale.com					1
wholesale.com					

```
-----
No. of tunnels: 1
```

The following tools **drain** command puts the tunnel in a draining state and leaves the sessions intact.

```
tools perform router 65536 l2tp tunnel 270073856 drain
```

Initially the tunnel is in the draining state.

```
show router 65536 l2tp tunnel
=====
```

Conn ID	Loc-Tu-ID	Rem-Tu-ID	State	Blacklist-state	Ses Active
Group					Ses Total
Assignment					
270073856	4121	3238	draining	not-blacklisted	1
wholesale.com					1
wholesale.com					

```
-----
No. of tunnels: 1
```

L2TP Group/Peer/Tunnel Draining

The tunnel moves to the drained state at the moment the last session is closed. Debugging shows that a drained tunnel is also not used as last resort and is skipped during the tunnel selection process.

```
show router 65536 l2tp tunnel
=====
Conn ID      Loc-Tu-ID Rem-Tu-ID State           Blacklist-state  Ses Active
  Group                                     Ses Total
  Assignment
-----
270073856  4121      3238      drained           not-blacklisted    1
  wholesale.com                                     1
  wholesale.com
-----
No. of tunnels: 1
```

The output below shows new sessions cannot select a drained tunnel.

```
<date> <time> CET MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn65536 PPPoE 30->L2TP
"PPPoE 30->L2TP: UDP 192.168.2.2:1701 -> 192.168.2.6:1701
preference 50 tunnel wholesale.com:wholesale.com      #tunnelis drained
  no additional session can be created in tunnel 4121"

785 2013/11/24 16:11:39.05 CET MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn65536 PPPoE 30->L2TP
"PPPoE 30->L2TP:
  stop: no more tunnels can be tried"
```

The drained tunnel can then be closed without user impact.

```
tools perform router 65536 l2tp tunnel 270073856 stop
```

Conclusion

This example provides the LAC L2TP access server configuration and troubleshooting commands for the LAA architecture (tunneled-access) model.

Local User Database Basics

In This Chapter

This section provides information about Local User Database (LUBD) Basics.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 1038](#)
- [Overview on page 1039](#)
- [Configuration on page 1041](#)
- [Conclusion on page 1070](#)

Applicability

This note is applicable to the 7x50 SR series and was tested on SR-OS 13.0.R1. Chassis mode B or later must be used.

Overview

A Local User Database (LUDB) is a data source containing a set of host entries, providing full or partial Enhanced Subscriber Management (ESM) data so that subscribers and subscriber hosts can be instantiated when end-users connect their devices.

An LUDB can be accessed for the following applications; see [Figure 169](#).

1. To support ESM for retrieval of data to instantiate hosts and subscribers. This applies to the Routed Central Office [CO] model only.
2. To support a local DHCPv4 server; for example for assigning fixed IP addresses to dedicated end-user devices.
3. To allow the system to provide the ESM data in case the RADIUS server referenced from the authentication policy is not available. The LUDB serves as a fallback for RADIUS authentication.

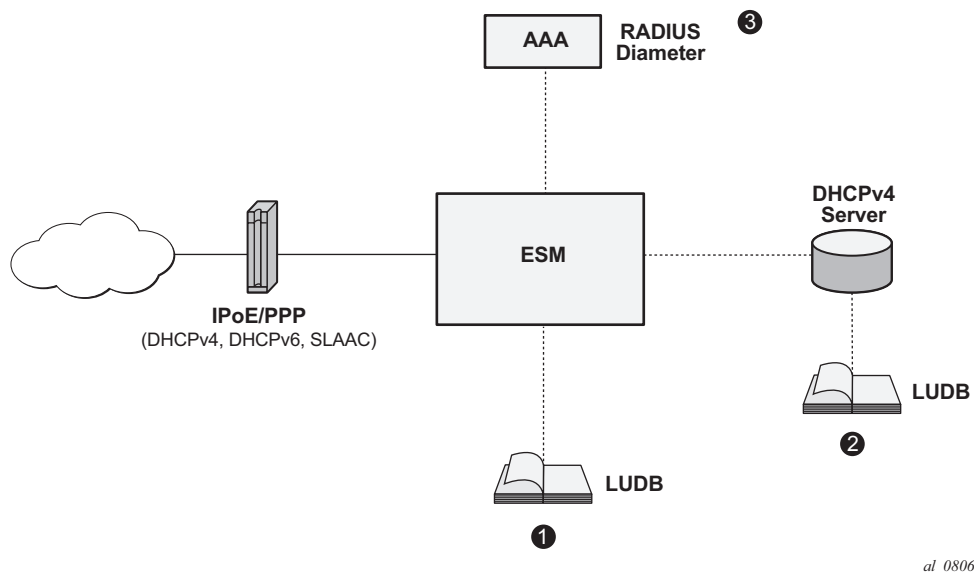


Figure 169: LUDB Applications

The LUDB lookup process is common to the applications shown in [Figure 169](#), and performs the following steps:

- Applying match criteria, to select the input parameters that will be used for the lookup
- Optionally, applying a mask to one or more of the remaining input parameters
- Performing the lookup

The LUDB lookup process translates a set of input parameters (the host identification fields) into a set of output parameters; see [Figure 170](#) for the following example:

- An LUDB lookup is requested for a client with MAC address and SAP as input parameters (1).
- The match criteria indicate to consider the SAP only, so the MAC address is ignored (2).
- The masking defines the stripping of the VLAN-tag from the SAP (3).
- The lookup then uses SAP 1/1/1 and finds entry1 to be the matching entry, so the LUDB returns the SLA-profile string and the SUB-profile string together with the Gi address.

Optionally, an LUDB defines a **default** host entry, which is used in case none of the other entries matches the lookup request, so it serves as a wildcard (*).

Not finding any matching host entry in an LUDB results in a setup failure.

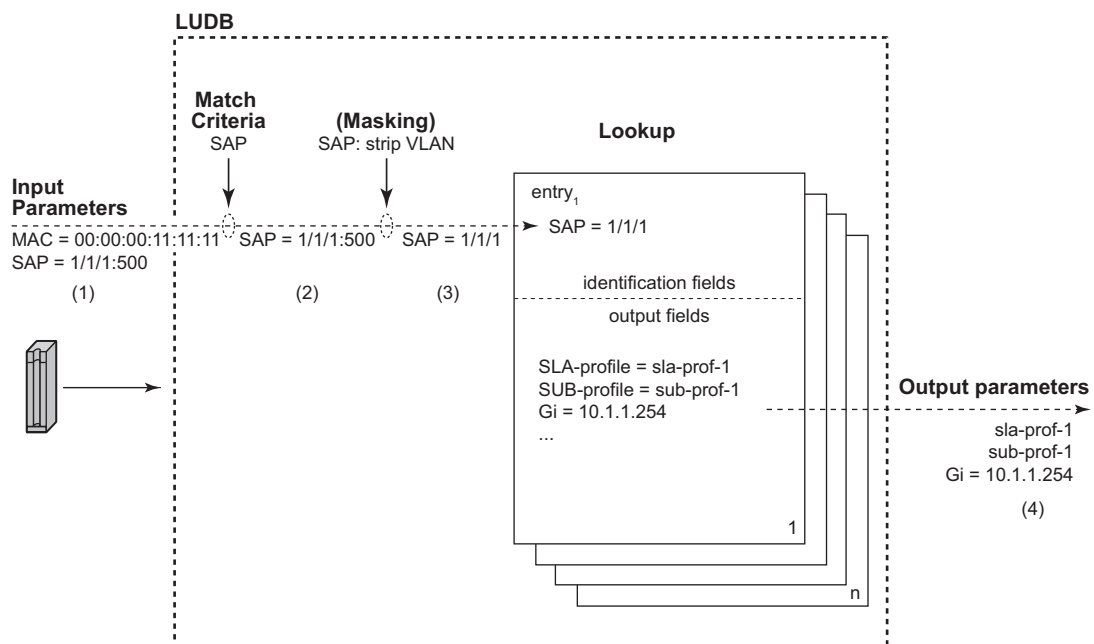


Figure 170: Processing an LUDB Lookup Request

Configuration

Creating LUDBs

An LUDB is identified by a name of 32 characters maximum ([Figure 171](#)).

```
*A:BNG-1>config>subscr-mgmt# local-user-db
- local-user-db <local-user-db-name> [create]
```

Multiple LUDBs can be defined, and their respective names must be unique.

An LUDB can provide the data for IPOE (DHCPv4, DHCPv6, and SLAAC) as well as for PPP users.

```
*A:BNG-1>config>subscr-mgmt>loc-user-db$
[no] description      - Description for this local user database
    ipoe              + Configure IPOE hosts
    ppp               + Configure PPP hosts
[no] shutdown         - Administratively enable/disable this local user database
```

For an LUDB to be active, the LUDB must be in the **no shutdown** state. Individual host entries in an LUDB can match single or multiple hosts.

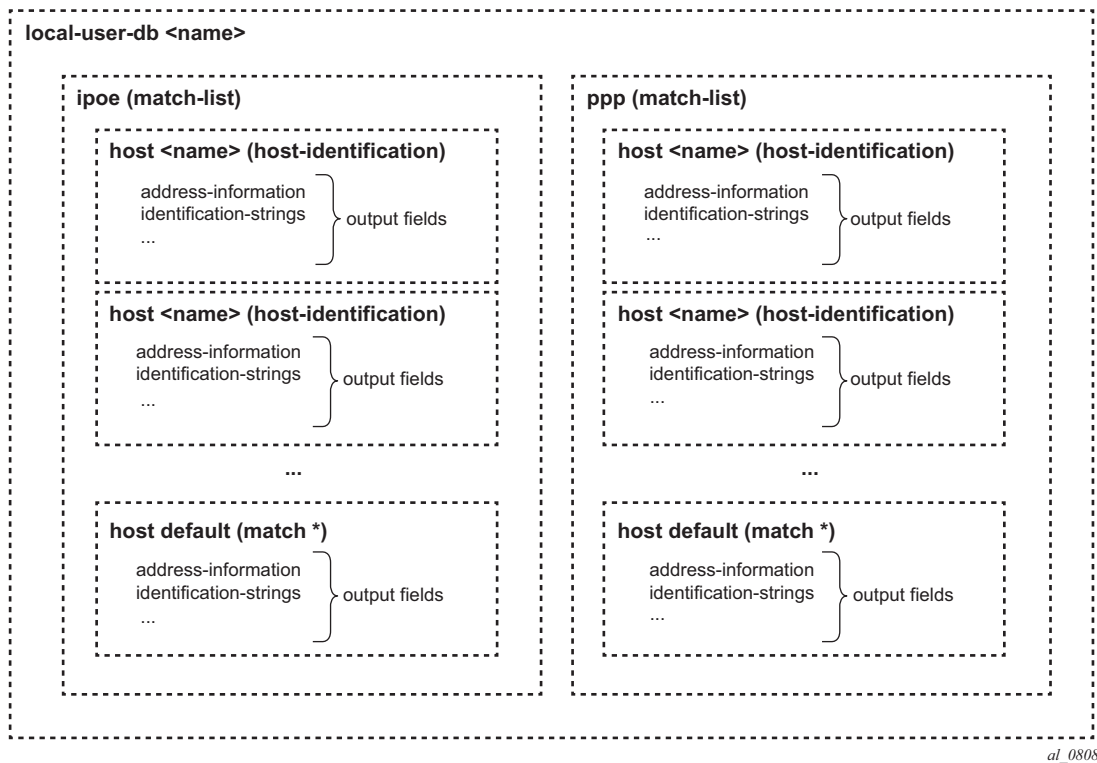


Figure 171: Creating LUDBs and LUDB Entries

Creating Host Entries

A host entry is identified by name of 32 characters maximum ([Figure 171](#)).

```
*A:BNG-1>config>subscr-mgmt>loc-user-db>ipoe$ host
- host <host-name> [create]
```

The name **default** can optionally be used as a wildcard for situations where otherwise the lookup fails to find a matching entry. A host entry belongs to either the IPoE or the PPP section of an LUDB. The name of a host entry must be unique within the section. A host entry contains two sets of fields. The first set of fields are the host-identification fields and are used for the lookup, the second set of fields are output to the lookup process.

The host-identification fields available for IPoE are, in alphabetical order:

- circuit-id
- derived-id, which must be defined using a Python script, which derives the value from DHCP messages

- encap-tag-range
- mac-address
- option 60
- remote-id
- sap-id
- service-id
- string
- system-id

The host-identification fields available for PPP are, in alphabetical order:

- circuit-id: taken from the PPPoE tags
- encap-tag-range
- mac
- remote-id: taken from the PPPoE tags
- sap-id
- service-name
- username

The output fields of the lookup process include the identification strings, DHCP options, IP address information, MSAP information, and so on.

Entry Validation

For a host entry to be active, it must be put in the **no shutdown** state.

Before adding the host entry to the lookup database, the system validates the host entry:

- A **default** host entry can be added, preferably without host identification fields.

```
*A:BNG-1>config>subscr-mgmt>loc-user-db>ipoe# host default create
*A:BNG-1>config>subscr-mgmt>loc-user-db>ipoe>host$ no shutdown
INFO: DHCPS #1138 This host will be considered as the default host
*A:BNG-1>config>subscr-mgmt>loc-user-db>ipoe>host$
```

Defining a **default** host entry with identification fields is not recommended, because it would turn the default host entry into a regular entry, instead of a match all entry when the match-list is changed.

- A **non default** host entry without host identification fields cannot be added to the lookup database.

```
MINOR: DHCPS #1126 Host-identification must have at least 1 item defined
```

Creating LUDBs

- A **non default** host entry with none of its host identification fields in common with the match-list is added to the unmatched host list.

INFO: DHCPD #1107 Host could not be inserted in lookup database - no match values

- A **non default host** entry is added to the lookup database when at least one of the defined host identification fields is common with the match-list, even when some of the host identification fields are not on the match-list.
- Two or more **non default** host entries with the same host-identification definitions are considered as duplicates. The second entry with the same host-identification definitions is not added to the lookup database; it is considered as a configuration mistake.

INFO: DHCPD #1107 Host could not be inserted in lookup database - duplicate

Note that LUDB informational and error messages appear to be originating from the DHCPD application (DHCPD #nnn in the preceding outputs), even though the LUDB is not associated with a DHCPv4 server.

Creating a Match-List

Retrieving data from an LUDB requires one or more criteria to be put on a **match-list**. A match-list is a sequential list of parameters considered for the lookup; other parameters provided on LUDB access are ignored.

For IPoE, up to four criteria can be defined; for PPP, the maximum is three. The criteria on a match-list are processed in the order specified.

For IPoE users, the following match criteria are allowed, in alphabetical order:

- circuit-id
- derived-id (defined by a Python script)
- dual-stack-remote-id (IPv4 and IPv6, with IPv6 enterprise-id stripped off)
- encap-tag-range
- mac-address
- option 60
- remote-id (IPv4 and IPv6, including the IPv6 enterprise-id)
- sap-id
- service-id
- string
- system-id

```
A:BNG-1>config>subscr-mgmt>loc-user-db>ipoe# match-list
- no match-list
- match-list <ipoe-match-type-1> [<ipoe-match-type-2>...(up to 4 max)]

<ipoe-match-type>      : circuit-id|derived-id|dual-stack-remote-id|encap-tag-
range|mac|option60|remote-id|sap-id|service-id|string|system-id

A:BNG-1>config>subscr-mgmt>loc-user-db>ipoe#
```

For PPP users, the following match criteria are allowed, in alphabetical order:

- circuit-id
- encap-tag-range
- mac-address
- remote-id (IPv4 and IPv6, including the IPv6 enterprise-id)
- sap-id
- service-name

- username (complete username, domain part only, host part only)

```
A:BNG-1>config>subscr-mgmt>loc-user-db>ppp# match-list
- no match-list
- match-list <ppp-match-type-1> [<ppp-match-type-2>... (up to 3 max)]

<ppp-match-type>      : circuit-id|mac|remote-id|sap-id|encap-tag-range|service-
name|username

A:BNG-1>config>subscr-mgmt>loc-user-db>ppp#
```

Masking

Optionally, the parameters considered for the lookup can be masked.

Masking is prefix- or suffix- based, or a combination of both. A prefix or suffix string, or a prefix or suffix length, can be specified.

For PPP users, masks can be applied to the circuit-id, remote-id, sap-id, service-name, and username. For IPoE users, masks can be applied to the circuit-id, option 60, remote-id, sap-id, string, and system-id.

```
*A:BNG-1>config>subscr-mgmt>loc-user-db>ppp# mask
- mask type <ppp-match-type> {[prefix-string <prefix-string> | prefix-length
  <prefix-length>] [suffix-string <suffix-string> | suffix-length
  <suffix-length>]}
- no mask type <ppp-match-type>

<ppp-match-type>      : circuit-id|remote-id|sap-id|service-name|username
<prefix-string>       : [127 chars max] ('*' is wildcard)
<prefix-length>       : [1..127]
<suffix-string>       : [127 chars max] ('*' is wildcard)
<suffix-length>      : [1..127]

*A:BNG-1>config>subscr-mgmt>loc-user-db>ipoe# mask
- mask type <ipoe-match-type> {[prefix-string <prefix-string> | prefix-length
  <prefix-length>] [suffix-string <suffix-string> | suffix-length
  <suffix-length>]}
- no mask type <ipoe-match-type>

<ipoe-match-type>     : circuit-id|option60|remote-id|sap-id|string|system-id
<prefix-string>       : [127 chars max] ('*' is wildcard)
<prefix-length>       : [1..127]
<suffix-string>       : [127 chars max] ('*' is wildcard)
<suffix-length>      : [1..127]
```

The lookup occurs after applying the optional masks.

The examples in Table 32 illustrate masking. Note that for the third example, a combination of both prefix and suffix matching is used.

Table 32: Masking Examples

Mask Type			prefix-length	suffix-length	prefix-string	suffix-string	result
username	circuit-id	remote-id					
-	-	87654321-BSAN-1	9	-	-	-	BSAN-1
-	BSAN-2|1|100|1/2/1	-	-	11	-	-	BSAN-2
all@domain-1.com	-	-	-	-	*@	.com	domain-1

Lookup

The following rules apply while scanning through an LUDB in search of a single matching entry:

1. Only criteria on the match-list are considered.

Assume a client with MAC-address, a circuit-id, and a remote-id. If the match-list only defines the MAC-address to be used as criterion, then the circuit-id and the remote-id are ignored. Only the MAC-address is used for selecting the proper host entry.

2. The order of the criteria on the match-list is important.

The match-list is a sequential list, and the criteria are processed left to right.

3. As many of the host-identification fields as possible must be matched, while still obeying rule 1.

Only the (optionally masked) parameters from the match list are verified.

4. A **default host** is excluded from the scan, if defined.

A **default host** is used as a fallback when scanning through an LUDB does not provide any result.

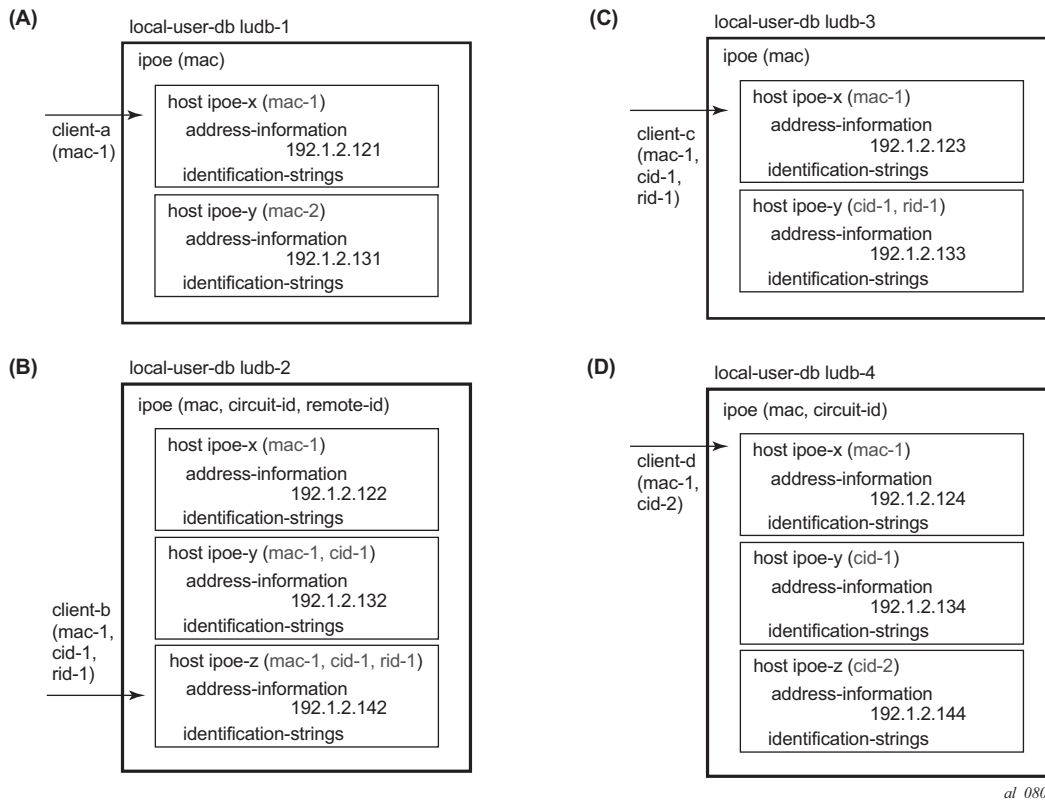


Figure 172: Host Matching Examples

The examples in [Figure 172](#) and [Figure 173](#) illustrate these rules:

- Matching is based on the MAC-address only. When **client-a** with **mac-1** connects, host **ipoe-x** is matched.
- Matching is based on the MAC-address, circuit-id, and remote-id, in this sequence. As **client-b** enters with **mac-1**, **cid-1** and **rid-1**, the match-list is scanned and matched left to right, so host **ipoe-z** is matched.
- Matching is based on the MAC-address only. Even though **client-c** connects with **mac-1**, **cid-1**, and **rid-1**, the system ignores the circuit-id and the remote-id, so the matching host is **ipoe-x**. Note that host **ipoe-y** can never be matched using the match-list defined; it is on the unmatched host list.
- Matching is based on the MAC-address and the circuit-id, in this sequence. Client-d connects with **mac-1** and **cid-2**, but because the system scans the match-list left through right, the MAC-address takes priority over the circuit-id. The matching host is **ipoe-x**.

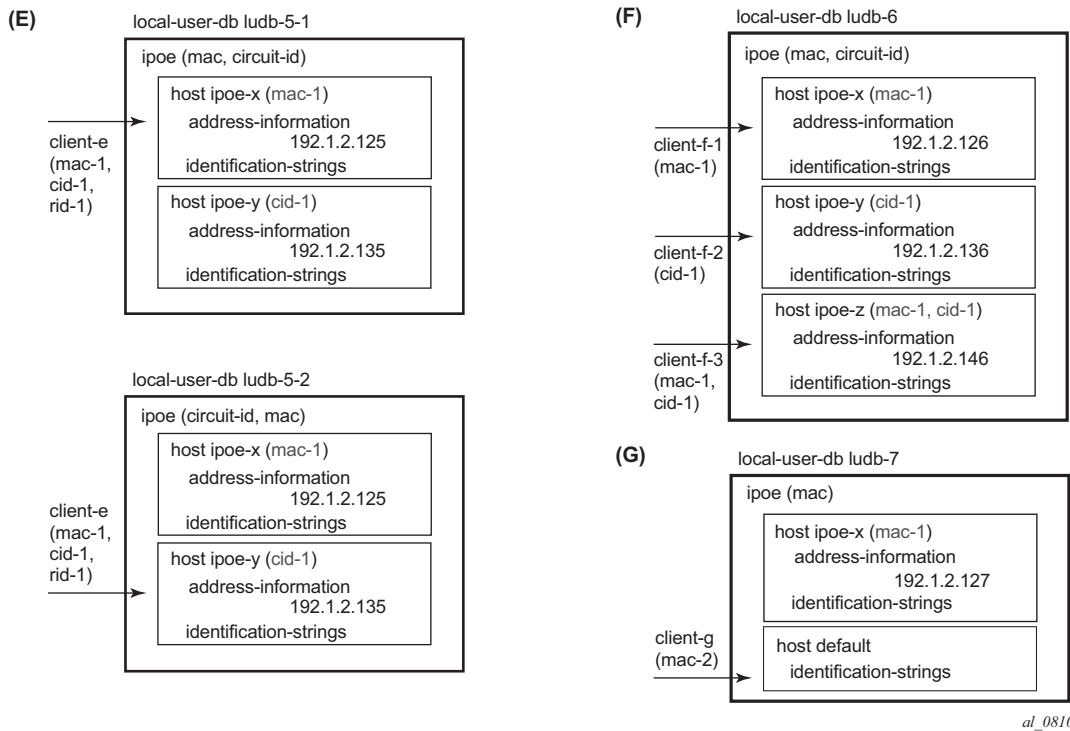


Figure 173: Host Matching Examples (Continued)

- e. For the top part, matching is based on MAC-address and the circuit-id, in this sequence. When client-e connects (mac-1, cid-1, and rid-1), the system scans ludb-5-1 and matches host ipoe-x.
For the bottom part, matching is based on the circuit-id first, then the MAC-address. When client-e connects (mac-1, cid-1, and rid-1), the system scans ludb-5-2 and matches host ipoe-y.
- f. Matching is based on MAC-address and the circuit-id, in this sequence. When client-f-1 (mac-1) connects, the matching host is ipoe-x because only the MAC-address is provided and checked. When client-f-2 (cid-1) connects, the matching host is ipoe-y because only the client-id is provided and checked. When client-f-3 (mac-1, cid-1) connects, the matching host is ipoe-z.
- g. Matching is based on the MAC-address only. When client-g with mac-2 connects, host default is matched because there is no explicit entry matching mac-2.

As shown in these examples, the system only checks the parameters provided by the client in the sequence as defined by the match-list. Parameters not provided by a client will not be searched for.

Tools Commands

The following **tools** command manually triggers the lookup of an IPoE host in an LUDb and is useful during commissioning, troubleshooting, and verification of the configured database, without the need for an external client.

```
*A:BNG-1# tools perform subscriber-mgmt local-user-db "ludb-1" ipoe host-lookup
- host-lookup [mac <ieee-address>] [remote-id <remote-id>|remote-id-hex <remote-id-hex>]
[sap-id <sap-id>] [service-id <service-id>] [string <vso-string>] [system-id
<system-id>] [option60 <option60-ascii> | option60-hex <option60-hex>] [circuit-id
<circuit-id-ascii>|circuit-id-hex <circuit-id-hex>]
```

```
<ieee-address>      : xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx or xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx
<remote-id-ascii>   : [255 chars max]
<sap-id>            : [255 chars max]
<service-id>       : [1..2148007978] |<svc-name:64 char max>
<vso-string>       : [255 chars max]
<system-id>        : [255 chars max]
<option-60-ascii>   : [32 chars max]
<circuit-id-ascii>  : [127 chars max]
<circuit-id-hex>    : [0x0..0xFFFFFFFF...(max 254 hex nibbles)]
<option60-hex>     : [0x0..0xFFFFFFFF...(max 64 hex nibbles)]
<remote-id-hex>    : [0x0..0xFFFFFFFF...(max 510 hex nibbles)]
<derived-id>       : [255 chars max]
```

A similar command exists for the lookup of a PPP host in an LUDb.

```
*A:BNG-1# tools perform subscriber-mgmt local-user-db "ludb-1" ppp host-lookup
- host-lookup [circuit-id <circuit-id>] [circuit-id-hex <circuit-id-hex>] [mac <ieee-
address>] [remote-id <remote-id>] [remote-id-hex <remote-id-hex>] [sap-id
<sap-id>] [service-name <service-name>] [user-name <user-name>]
```

```
<circuit-id>        : [127 chars max]
<circuit-id-hex>    : [0x0..0xFFFFFFFF...(max 254 hex nibbles)]
<ieee-address>     : xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx or xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx
<remote-id>        : [255 chars max]
<remote-id-hex>    : [0x0..0xFFFFFFFF...(max 510 hex nibbles)]
<sap-id>           : [255 chars max]
<service-name>     : [255 chars max]
<user-name>        : [253 chars max]
```

Example 1: Single Match Criterion

The following shows an excerpt from luidb-1. Host entry-11 defines the parameters for an IPE host, and host entry-55 defines the parameters for a PPPoE host. Host matching IPE hosts is MAC-address based, whereas host matching PPP hosts is username based.

```
configure
  subscriber-mgmt
    local-user-db "luidb-1" create
      description "example user-db"
      ipoe
        match-list mac
        host "default" create
          address pool "pool4-1"
          no shutdown
        exit
        host "entry-11" create
          host-identification
            mac 00:00:00:11:11:11
          exit
          address 10.1.1.211
          --- snip ---
          no shutdown
        exit
        --- snip ---
      exit
    ppp
      match-list username
      host "entry-55" create
        host-identification
          username "sub55@domain1"
        exit
        password chap sub55
        address 10.1.2.252
        --- snip ---
        no shutdown
      exit
      --- snip ---
    exit
  no shutdown
exit
```

IPoE hosts

IPoE host entry lookup using a MAC-address only is triggered with following **tools** command.

```
*A:BNG-1# tools perform subscriber-mgmt local-user-db "ludb-1" ipoe host-lookup mac
00:00:00:11:11:11
=====
IPoE Host Lookup results
=====
Result                : Success
Matched Host Name     : entry-11
Admin State           : Up
Last Mgmt Change      : 05/13/2015 05:19:50

Host Identification
Circuit Id            : N/A
Mac Address           : 00:00:00:11:11:11
Remote Id             : N/A
Sap Id                : N/A
Service Id            : N/A
String                : N/A
Option 60             : N/A
System Id             : N/A
Encap Tag Range       : N/A

Matched Objects       : mac
--- snipped ---
=====
*A:BNG-1#
```

The debug output confirms the successful lookup.

```
2546 2015/05/19 09:05:16.58 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base LUDB
"LUDB: User lookup success - host found
  mac: 00:00:00:11:11:11

  Host entry-11 found in user data base ludb-1"
```

The following command is using a MAC-address, a circuit-id, and a remote-id for the lookup. The output shows that only the MAC-address is used, the other input parameters are ignored (N/A) so again entry-11 is selected.

```
*A:BNG-1# tools perform subscriber-mgmt local-user-db "ludb-1" ipoe host-lookup mac
00:00:00:11:11:11 circuit-id AA remote-id BB
=====
IPoE Host Lookup results
=====
Result                : Success
Matched Host Name     : entry-11
Admin State           : Up
Last Mgmt Change      : 05/13/2015 05:19:50

Host Identification
Circuit Id            : N/A
```



```

Mac Address      : 00:00:00:11:11:11
Remote Id       : N/A
Sap Id          : N/A
Service Id      : N/A
String          : N/A
Option 60       : N/A
System Id       : N/A
Encap Tag Range : N/A

Matched Objects  : mac
--- snipped ---
=====
*A:BNG-1#

```

The following command triggers the lookup of a non-existing MAC-address, leading to a host not found message.

```

*A:BNG-1# tools perform subscriber-mgmt local-user-db "ludb-1" ipoe host-lookup mac
00:00:00:12:34:56
=====
IPoE Host Lookup results
=====
Result           : host not found
*A:BNG-1#

```

The host not found message is also confirmed by the debug output.

```

2550 2015/05/19 09:12:16.28 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base LUDB
"LUDB: User lookup success - host not found
  mac: 00:00:00:12:34:56

Host not found in user data base ludb-1"

```

To allow IPoE users with unknown MAC-addresses to successfully connect, a default host can be created, at which time an informational message is returned:

```

*A:BNG-1>config>subscr-mgmt>loc-user-db>ipoe>host# host default create
                        address pool "pool4-1"
*A:BNG-1>config>subscr-mgmt>loc-user-db>ipoe>host# no shutdown
INFO: DHCP# #1138 This host will be considered as the default host
*A:BNG-1>config>subscr-mgmt>loc-user-db>ipoe>host#

```

After the previous commands are executed, devices with MAC-addresses not explicitly listed in the LUDB can also connect.

```

*A:BNG-1# tools perform subscriber-mgmt local-user-db "ludb-1" ipoe host-lookup mac
00:00:00:12:34:56
=====
IPoE Host Lookup results
=====
Result           : Success
Matched Host Name : default

```

Tools Commands

```
Admin State          : Up
Last Mgmt Change     : 05/19/2015 09:22:01
```

Host Identification

```
Circuit Id          : N/A
Mac Address          : N/A
Remote Id            : N/A
Sap Id               : N/A
Service Id           : N/A
String               : N/A
Option 60            : N/A
System Id            : N/A
Encap Tag Range      : N/A
```

```
Matched Objects      : N/A
```

```
--- snipped ---
```

```
=====
*A:BNG-1#
```

PPP hosts

Manually authenticating a PPP host is done as follows.

```
*A:BNG-1# tools perform subscriber-mgmt local-user-db "ludb-1" ppp authentication user-
name sub55@domain1 password sub55
```

Authentication results

```
=====
Result              : Success
Matched Host Name    : entry-55
Admin State          : Up
Last Mgmt Change     : 05/19/2015 09:32:42
```

Host Identification

```
Mac Address          : N/A
Circuit Id           : N/A
Remote Id            : N/A
Sap Id               : N/A
Service Name         : N/A
User Name            : sub55@domain1
Encap Tag Range      : N/A
```

```
Matched Objects      : userName
```

```
--- snipped ---
```

```
=====
*A:BNG-1#
```

When the wrong password is provided, the following message is returned:

```
*A:BNG-1# tools perform subscriber-mgmt local-user-db "ludb-1" ppp authentication user-
name sub55@domain1 password sub5x
```

Authentication results

```
=====
Result              : invalid password
*A:BNG-1#
```

PPP host entry lookup is similar to the IPoE host lookup. The following example demonstrates a user-name based lookup.

```
*A:BNG-1# tools perform subscriber-mgmt local-user-db "ludb-1" ppp host-lookup user-name
sub55@domain1
=====
PPP host Lookup results
=====
Result                : Success
Matched Host Name     : entry-55
Admin State           : Up
Last Mgmt Change      : 05/19/2015 09:32:42

Host Identification
Mac Address           : N/A
Circuit Id            : N/A
Remote Id             : N/A
Sap Id                : N/A
Service Name          : N/A
User Name             : sub55@domain1
Encap Tag Range       : N/A

Matched Objects       : userName
--- snipped ---
=====
*A:BNG-1#
```

The following command is using a user-name and a MAC-address for the lookup.

```
*A:BNG-1# tools perform subscriber-mgmt local-user-db "ludb-1" ppp host-lookup user-name
sub55@domain1 mac 00:00:00:11:11:11
=====
PPP host Lookup results
=====
Result                : Success
Matched Host Name     : entry-55
Admin State           : Up
Last Mgmt Change      : 05/19/2015 09:32:42

Host Identification
Mac Address           : N/A
Circuit Id            : N/A
Remote Id             : N/A
Sap Id                : N/A
Service Name          : N/A
User Name             : sub55@domain1
Encap Tag Range       : N/A

Matched Objects       : userName
--- snipped ---
=====
*A:BNG-1#
```

Similar to the IPoE host lookup, the lookup of a non-existing user fails if no default entry is defined for PPP. In this case, a default host can be defined.

Example 2: Multiple Match Criteria

The following shows an excerpt from `ludb-2`, with multiple match criteria.

The match-list includes `mac`, `circuit-id`, and `remote-id`, in this sequence.

```
configure
  subscriber-mgmt
    local-user-db "ludb-2" create
      ipoe
        match-list mac circuit-id remote-id
        host "entry-11" create
          host-identification
            mac 00:00:00:11:11:11
          exit
          address 10.1.1.111
          --- snipped ---
          no shutdown
        exit
        host "entry-12" create
          host-identification
            circuit-id string "11"
            mac 00:00:00:11:11:11
          exit
          address 10.1.1.112
          --- snipped ---
          no shutdown
        exit
        host "entry-13" create
          host-identification
            circuit-id string "11"
            mac 00:00:00:11:11:11
            remote-id string "AA"
          exit
          address 10.1.1.113
          --- snipped ---
          no shutdown
        exit
        host "entry-14" create
          host-identification
            circuit-id string "11"
            remote-id string "AA"
          exit
          address 10.1.1.114
          --- snipped ---
          no shutdown
        exit
      exit
```

The **tools** command below uses a MAC-address only, with entry-11 being matched.

```
*A:BNG-1# tools perform subscriber-mgmt local-user-db "ludb-2" ipoe host-lookup mac
00:00:00:11:11:11
=====
IPoE Host Lookup results
=====
Result                               : Success
```

```

Matched Host Name      : entry-11
Admin State            : Up
Last Mgmt Change       : 05/19/2015 10:01:59

```

```

Host Identification
Circuit Id            : N/A
Mac Address           : 00:00:00:11:11:11
Remote Id             : N/A
Sap Id               : N/A
Service Id           : N/A
String               : N/A
Option 60            : N/A
System Id            : N/A
Encap Tag Range      : N/A

```

```

Matched Objects       : mac

```

```

--- snipped ---

```

```

=====
*A:BNG-1#

```

The corresponding debug output shows the parameters from the match-list and their values, in sequence. The values for the circuit-id and the remote-id are left empty as they were not provided for the lookup.

```

2561 2015/05/19 10:22:29.55 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base LUDB
"LUDB: User lookup success - host found
  mac: 00:00:00:11:11:11
  circuit-id:
  remote-id:

  Host entry-11 found in user data base ludb-2"

```

The following **tools** command uses a circuit-id and a remote-id, with entry-14 being matched.

```

*A:BNG-1# tools perform subscriber-mgmt local-user-db "ludb-2" ipoe host-lookup circuit-id
11 remote-id AA
=====
IPoE Host Lookup results
=====
Result                : Success
Matched Host Name      : entry-14
Admin State           : Up
Last Mgmt Change       : 05/19/2015 13:58:09

Host Identification
Circuit Id            : 11
Mac Address           : N/A
Remote Id             : AA
Sap Id               : N/A
Service Id           : N/A
String               : N/A
Option 60            : N/A
System Id            : N/A
Encap Tag Range      : N/A

Matched Objects       : circ-id remote-id

```

```
--- snipped ---
=====
*A:BNG-1#
```

The corresponding debug output shows that the original and the masked values of the circuit-id and the remote-id are the same, because no masks are applied.

```
2571 2015/05/19 14:10:00.18 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base LUDB
"LUDB: User lookup success - host found
  mac:
  circuit-id:
    original: 11
    masked:   11
  remote-id:
    original: AA
    masked:   AA

Host entry-14 found in user data base ludb-2"
```

Accessing ludb-2 with a remote-id only returns a failure.

```
*A:BNG-1# tools perform subscriber-mgmt local-user-db "ludb-2" ipoe host-lookup remote-id
AA
=====
IPoE Host Lookup results
=====
Result                : host not found
*A:BNG-1#

2564 2015/05/19 11:18:42.01 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base LUDB
"LUDB: User lookup success - host not found
  mac:
  circuit-id:
  remote-id:
    original: AA
    masked:   AA

Host not found in user data base ludb-2"
```

Example 3: Masking (1)

The following shows an excerpt from `ludb-3`, applying masks.

The match-list includes the circuit-id and the MAC-address, in this sequence. Masking applies to the circuit-id, which has the leading 8 characters and the trailing characters (behind the last vertical bar, and including the vertical bar) stripped.

```
configure
  subscriber-mgmt
    local-user-db "ludb-3" create
      description "masking example, ipoe"
      ipoe
        match-list circuit-id mac
        mask type circuit-id prefix-length 8 suffix-string "|"
        host "entry-111" create
          host-identification
            mac 00:00:00:11:11:11
            circuit-id string "grp-int-1-1"
          exit
        --- snipped ---
        no shutdown
      exit
    --- snipped ---
```

The following **tools** command uses circuit-id and mac-address, matching entry-111.

```
*A:BNG-1# tools perform subscriber-mgmt local-user-db "ludb-3" ipoe host-lookup mac
00:00:00:11:11:11 circuit-id "BNG-1|1|grp-int-1-1|1/1/2/1:111"
=====
IPoE Host Lookup results
=====
Result                : Success
Matched Host Name      : entry-111
Admin State            : Up
Last Mgmt Change       : 05/20/2015 11:45:31

Host Identification
Circuit Id             : grp-int-1-1
Mac Address            : 00:00:00:11:11:11
Remote Id              : N/A
Sap Id                 : N/A
Service Id             : N/A
String                 : N/A
Option 60              : N/A
System Id              : N/A
Encap Tag Range        : N/A

Matched Objects        : circ-id mac
--- snipped ---
=====
*A:BNG-1#
```

The debug output shows the values of the parameters before and after applying the mask.

```
2576 2015/05/20 11:50:25.13 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base LUDB
"LUDB: User lookup success - host found
  circuit-id:
    original:  BNG-1|1|grp-int-1-1|1/1/2/1:111
    masked:    grp-int-1-1
  mac: 00:00:00:11:11:11

  Host entry-111 found in user data base ludb-3"
```

Example 4: Masking (2)

The following shows an excerpt from ludb-4, applying masks.

The match-list includes the username, circuit-id, and remote-id, in this sequence. Masking applies to both the username and the circuit-id. The username has everything before the @-sign and the trailing .org stripped. The circuit-id has the trailing 11 characters stripped.

```
configure
  subscriber-mgmt
    local-user-db "ludb-4" create
      ppp
        match-list username circuit-id remote-id
        mask type circuit-id suffix-length 11
        mask type username prefix-string "*" suffix-string ".org"
        host "entry-11" create
          host-identification
            username domain1
            circuit-id string "BSAN-2"
          exit
          address pool "pool4-1"
          identification-strings 254 create
            sla-profile-string "sla-prof-1"
            sub-profile-string "sub-prof-2"
          exit
          no shutdown
        exit
      --- snipped ---
    exit
  no shutdown
exit
--- snipped ---
```

The following **tools** command does not result in a match, which is not the intention.

```
*A:BNG-1# tools perform subscriber-mgmt local-user-db "ludb-4" ppp host-lookup user-name
sub11@domain1.org circuit-id "BSAN-2|100|1/2/1:111"
=====
PPP host Lookup results
=====
Result          : host not found
*A:BNG-1#
```


The debug output shows the original and the masked value of the user-name and the circuit-id; the remote-id was not provided.

```
2581 2015/05/20 12:12:57.00 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base LUDB
"LUDB: User lookup success - host not found
  user-name:
    original:  sub11@domain1.org
    masked:    domain1
  circuit-id:
    original:  BSAN-2|100|1/2/1:111
    masked:    BSAN-2|10
  remote-id:

Host not found in user data base ludb-4"
```

The preceding output shows that three more characters (|10) must be stripped to have a successful lookup, and following configuration changes are needed.

```
configure
  subscriber-mgmt
    local-user-db "ludb-4" create
      ppp
        mask type circuit-id suffix-length 14
```

Modifying the mask results in host entry-11 being matched.

```
*A:BNG-1# tools perform subscriber-mgmt local-user-db "ludb-4" ppp host-lookup user-name
sub11@domain1.org circuit-id "BSAN-2|100|1/2/1:111"
=====
PPP host Lookup results
=====
Result                : Success
Matched Host Name     : entry-11
Admin State           : Up
Last Mgmt Change      : 05/20/2015 12:03:42

Host Identification
Mac Address           : N/A
Circuit Id            : BSAN-2
Remote Id              : N/A
Sap Id                : N/A
Service Name          : N/A
User Name              : domain1
Encap Tag Range       : N/A

Matched Objects       : userName circ-id
--- snipped ---
=====
*A:BNG-1#
```

The debug output shows the effect of the modified mask.

```
231 2015/05/29 07:09:33.05 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base LUDB
"LUDB: User lookup success - host found
  user-name:
    original:  sub11@domain1.org
    masked:    domain1
  circuit-id:
    original:  BSAN-2|100|1/2/1:111
    masked:    BSAN-2
  remote-id:

Host entry-11 found in user data base ludb-4"
```

Example 5: VLAN Range

LUDB matching also supports the use of `encap-tag-range`. Host-identification then needs a start and an end for the range, which both use the following format:

```
dot1q          - qtag1
  qinq          - (qtag1.qtag2 | qtag1.* | *.qtag2)
  atm           - (vpi/vci | vpi/* | */vci)
    qtag1       - [0..4094]
    qtag2       - [0..4094]
    vpi         - [0..4095] (NNI)
                 [0..255] (UNI)
    vci         - [1..65535]
```

For VLAN tagging, the Ethernet frames could be single- or dual- tagged. For ATM, a virtual path identifier (VPI) and a virtual circuit identifier (VCI) can be defined. The asterisk (*) serves as a wildcard, meaning that the parameter is ignored.

The system validates, at configuration time, the values of the start-tag and the end-tag, applying following rules:

- The start-tag must be lower than the end-tag.
- When using the asterisk, it should be present in both the start-tag and the end-tag:
 - *.10 - *.100 — the outer tag is ignored
 - 201.* - 299.* — the inner tag is ignored
- The encapsulation type for start-tag and end-tag must be the same.
- Overlapping ranges (while on the same port) are not allowed.

The following shows an excerpt from `ludb-5`, using `vlan-ranges`.

```
configure
  subscriber-mgmt
    local-user-db "ludb-5" create
      description "example for vlan ranges"
```

```

ipoe
  match-list encap-tag-range
  host "range-1" create
    host-identification
      encap-tag-range start-tag *.1 end-tag *.50
    exit
    address pool "pool4-3"
    --- snipped ---
    no shutdown
  exit
  host "range-2" create
    host-identification
      encap-tag-range start-tag *.51 end-tag *.100
    exit
    address pool "pool4-4"
    --- snipped ---
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
no shutdown
exit

```

The following **tools** command specifies a sap-id including an outer and an inner tag, matching host range-1.

```

*A:BNG-1# tools perform subscriber-mgmt local-user-db "ludb-5" ipoe host-lookup sap-id 1/
1/1:50.4
=====
IPoE Host Lookup results
=====
Result                : Success
Matched Host Name     : range-1
Admin State           : Up
Last Mgmt Change      : 05/20/2015 14:03:10

Host Identification
Circuit Id            : N/A
Mac Address           : N/A
Remote Id             : N/A
Sap Id                : N/A
Service Id            : N/A
String                : N/A
Option 60             : N/A
System Id             : N/A
Encap Tag Range       : start-tag *.1 end-tag *.50

Matched Objects       : encap-tag-range

Address               : pool "pool4-3"
--- snipped ---
=====
*A:BNG-1#

```

Operational Considerations

- Names of LUDBs and LUDB entries cannot be changed.
- Modification of the host identification fields is possible only when the host-entry is put in the shutdown state. Modifying output fields does not require the host-entry to be in the shutdown state.

```
*A:BNG-1>config>subscr-mgmt>loc-user-db>ppp>host>host-ident# circuit-id string
x-y-z
MINOR: DHCPSP #1133 Not allowed. Host is not shutdown
```

- Modifying a match-list requires the LUDB to be in the shutdown state.
- Modifying a match-list results in a re-evaluation of all host entries of the LUDB block, so that the lookup database and the unmatched host list are re-populated.

```
*A:BNG-1>config>subscr-mgmt>loc-user-db>ipoe# match-list circuit-id
INFO: DHCPSP #1107 Host could not be inserted in lookup database - lookup database
constructed, 1 hosts not inserted: 1 no match, 0 duplicate
```

Modifying the match-list also imposes the risk of a default entry with host-identification fields suddenly not being the fallback (default) entry anymore, which is why defining a default entry with host-identification fields is not recommended.

- Modifying one or more mask types does not require the LUDB to be in the shutdown state.
- Deletion of an LUDB requires that the LUDB is not referenced and the LUDB is in the shutdown state. Use caution: the status of the individual entries is not taken into account when deleting an LUDB.

```
*A:BNG-1>config>subscr-mgmt# no local-user-db "ludb-1"
MINOR: DHCPSP #1103 User data base still referenced
```

```
*A:BNG-1>config>subscr-mgmt# no local-user-db "ludb-11"
MINOR: DHCPSP #1104 Not allowed when user db admin state is up
```

Troubleshooting and Debugging LUDBs

The **tools** command can also be used for troubleshooting; the example is not repeated for brevity.

Show Commands

The following command shows which LUDBs are available in the system, including the administrative state and the host count. The host count equals the total number of configured ipoe and ppp entries, regardless of their administrative state (shutdown/no shutdown).

```
*A:BNG-1# show subscriber-mgmt local-user-db
=====
Local User Databases
=====
Name                               Admin Host   Description
                                State Count
-----
ludb-1                             Up         9      users db for sub-int-1
ludb-2                             Down        1
ludb-3                             Down        6      test for pppoe users
-----
Number of Local User Databases : 3      Number of Hosts : 16
=====
*A:BNG-1#
```

For showing the host count and the IPoE and PPP match types for a single LUDB, following command is useful.

```
*A:BNG-1# show subscriber-mgmt local-user-db "ludb-1"
=====
Local User Database "ludb-1"
=====
Description           : users db for sub-int-1
Admin State           : Up
Last Mgmt Change      : 03/12/2015 15:54:46
Host Count            : 9
IPoE Match Types      : mac
PPP Match Types       : userName
=====
*A:BNG-1#
```

Listing all IPoE hosts in a specific LUDB is performed with the following command.

```
*A:BNG-1# show subscriber-mgmt local-user-db "ludb-1" ipoe-all-hosts
=====
Local User Database "ludb-1" IPoE hosts
=====
Name                               Admin        Matched objects
                                State
-----
```

Troubleshooting and Debugging LUDBs

```
mac-11                                Up          mac
--- snipped ---
default                               Up          -
-----
Number of IPoE Hosts : 5
=====
*A:BNG-1#
```

A similar command lists all PPP hosts.

```
*A:BNG-1# show subscriber-mgmt local-user-db "ludb-1" ppp-all-hosts
=====
Local User Database "ludb-1" PPP Hosts
=====
Name                                Admin    Matched objects
                                   State
-----
ppp-55                              Up       userName
--- snipped ---
-----
Number of PPP Hosts : 4
=====
*A:BNG-1#
```

To find the places where a specific LUDB is applied, use the following command.

```
*A:BNG-1# show subscriber-mgmt local-user-db "ludb-1" association
No DHCP Server associations found.
=====
DHCP client interface associations for ludb-1
=====
Interface-Name                      Svc-Id    Type
-----
grp-int-1-1                         1         IES
grp-int-1-2                         1         IES
grp-int-2-1                         1         IES
grp-int-2-2                         1         IES
-----
No. of Interface(s): 4
=====

=====
DHCP6 interface associations for ludb-1
=====
Interface-Name                      Svc-Id    Type
-----
grp-int-1-1                         1         IES
grp-int-1-2                         1         IES
grp-int-2-1                         1         IES
grp-int-2-2                         1         IES
-----
No. of Interface(s): 4
=====

No Router solicit interface associations found.
No PPP client interface associations found.
```

```

=====
PPPoE client interface associations for ladb-1
=====
Interface-Name                Svc-Id    Type
-----
grp-int-1-1                   1         IES
grp-int-1-2                   1         IES
grp-int-2-1                   1         IES
grp-int-2-2                   1         IES
-----
No. of Interface(s): 4
=====

No IPoE client interface associations found.

No capture SAP associations found.

No associated L2TP groups found.

No associated L2TP tunnels found.

No associated authentication policies found.

No WPP interface associations found.
*A:BNG-1#

```

The following command is useful for displaying the details of a specific LADB entry.

```

*A:BNG-1# show subscriber-mgmt local-user-db "ladb-1" ipoe-host "mac-33"
=====
IPoE Host "mac-33"
=====
Admin State           : Up
Last Mgmt Change      : 03/12/2015 15:54:46

Host Identification
Circuit Id            : N/A
Mac Address           : 00:00:00:33:33:33
Remote Id             : N/A
Sap Id                : N/A
--- snipped ---
Matched Objects       : mac

Address               : 10.1.2.233
Auth Policy           : N/A
Acct Policy           : N/A
Dupl Acct Policy      : N/A
Auth Domain Name      : N/A
Diameter app policy   : (Not Specified)
Diameter auth policy  : (Not Specified)
Rip Policy            : N/A
IPv6 Address          : 2001:db8:102:33::3333
IPv6 Del Pfx          : 2001:db8:f102:3300::/56
--- snipped ---
IPv6 Del Pfx Length   : 56

--- snipped ---

```

Troubleshooting and Debugging LUDBs

```
Identification Strings (option 254)
  Subscriber Id       : ludb-1-33
  SLA Profile String  : sla-prof-2
```

--- snipped ---

Filter Overrides

```
Ing Ipv4 Fltr      : N/A
Egr Ipv4 Fltr      : N/A
Ing Ipv6 Fltr      : N/A
Egr Ipv6 Fltr      : N/A
```

=====

```
*A:BNG-1#
```

The following commands list the IPoE and the PPP host entries in a specific LUDB that are not matched. Note that duplicates are counted as unmatched hosts.

```
*A:BNG-1# show subscriber-mgmt local-user-db "ludb-22" ipoe-unmatched-hosts
=====
Local User Database "ludb-22" IPoE unmatched hosts
=====
```

Name	Reason	Duplicate Host
-----	-----	-----
this-is-a-no-match	No match	N/A
this-is-a-duplicate	Duplicate	entry-12
-----	-----	-----

```
Number of IPoE Unmatched Hosts : 2
=====
*A:BNG-1#
```

```
*A:BNG-1# show subscriber-mgmt local-user-db "ludb-22" ppp-unmatched-hosts
=====
Local User Database "ludb-22" PPP unmatched hosts
=====
```

Name	Reason	Duplicate Host
-----	-----	-----

```
No PPP Unmatched Hosts found
=====
*A:BNG-1#
```


Debugging Commands

The following configuration enables debugging for both ludb-1 and for ludb-2.

```
debug
  subscriber-mgmt
    local-user-db "ludb-1"
    detail all
  exit
  local-user-db "ludb-2"
  detail all
  exit
exit
```

To ensure that the debug output is sent to the console, the following additional configuration is needed.

```
configure
  log
    log-id 1
    from debug-trace
    to session
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
```

After the preceding configuration, debug output appears as part of the session.

```
314 2015/03/16 14:56:40.52 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base LUDB
"LUDB: User lookup success - host found
  mac: 00:00:00:aa:aa:aa

Host default found in user data base ludb-1"
```

Conclusion

In this example general LUDB concepts are explained. LUDBs are defined and host entries for both IPoE as well as for PPP are described. The different match criteria are explained and demonstrated by means of examples, including the use of single and multiple match criteria. Match criteria are handled left to right, in sequence, so that a natural priority is taken care of. Debugging aids are provided through **show**, **debug** and **tools** commands.

Local User Database for DHCPv4 Server

In This Chapter

This chapter provides information about Local User Database (LUDB) for DHCPv4 server.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 1072](#)
- [Overview on page 1073](#)
- [Configuration on page 1080](#)
- [Conclusion on page 1093](#)

Applicability

This chapter is applicable to the 7x50 SR series and was tested on SR OS 13.0.R1. Chassis mode B or later must be used.

Basic LUDB knowledge is a prerequisite for understanding this chapter.

Overview

In SR OS, a local DHCPv4 server can be assigned a Local User Database (LUDB).

Assigning an LUDB to a DHCPv4 server allows the server to:

- control IP address assignment; for example, by assigning a fixed IP address based on the user's MAC address
 - control DHCPv4 options for native as well as for simulated DHCPv4 clients used by PPP. In the case of PPP, users are identified to the DHCPv4 server using the DHCPv4 Vendor-Specific Information Sub-option [82,9][6] in the DHCPv4 discover/request messages
 - provide ESM strings (referred to as identification-strings in CLI) using a user-defined unassigned DHCPv4 option (option 254 is provided as default)
-

Introduction

A local DHCPv4 server can be used for IPoE users as well as for PPP users (see [Figure 174](#)).

When a DHCPv4 user connects, the typical Discover, Offer, Request, and Acknowledge (DORA) message sequence running between the DHCPv4 client and the DHCPv4 server also passes through a relay agent.

When a PPP user connects through LCP/IPCP, an internal DHCPv4 client manages the communication toward the DHCPv4 server, on the condition that the relay agent also has relaying enabled for PPP applications. This internal DHCPv4 client is also referred to as a local (DHCPv4) client.

The DHCPv4 server can be located in the same node as the relay agent and the local client, but that is not required.

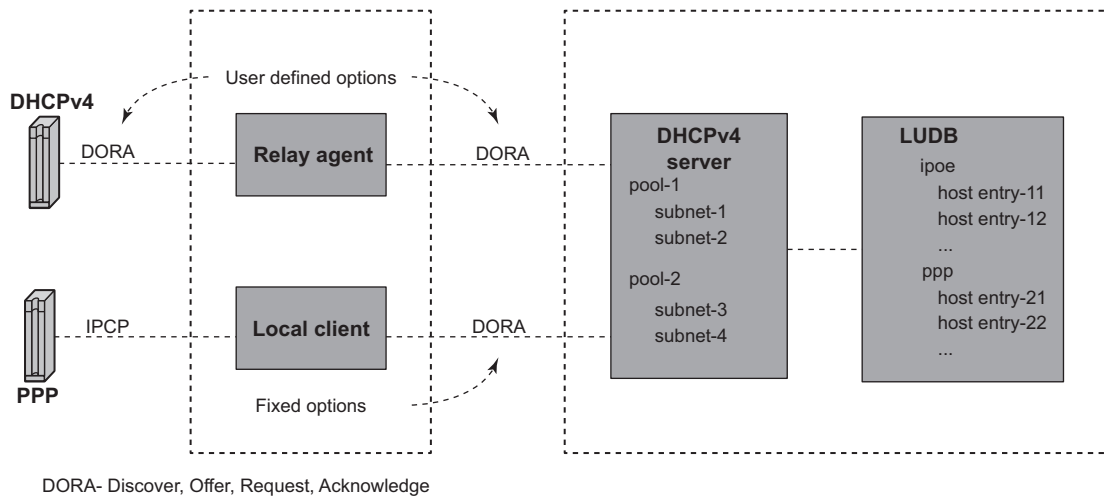


Figure 174: LUDB Access via a DHCPv4 Server

The relay agent must be configured correctly in order to forward the messages toward a DHCPv4 server. The DHCPv4 server IP address is defined. The relay agent can include following configurable options and sub-options to be used by the DHCPv4 server:

- [82,1] Agent Circuit ID Sub-option
- [82,2] Agent Remote ID Sub-option
- [82,9] Vendor-Specific Information Sub-option (VSO)
 - [1] system-ID (7x50 system-name)
 - [2] client MAC-address
 - [3] service-ID (7x50 IES/VPRN service-id)
 - [4] sap-ID
 - [5] string
 - [13] pool-name

The local client uses the same DHCPv4 server IP address as the preceding relay agent, and can include its own set of unconfigurable options and sub-options to be used by the DHCPv4 server:

- [60] vendor class (fixed string: ALU7XXXSBM)
- [82,1] Agent Circuit ID Sub-option
- [82,2] Agent Remote ID Sub-option
- [82,6] Subscriber-ID Sub-option (equals PPPoE username)

- [82,9] Vendor-Specific Information Sub-option
 - [1] system-ID (not included in a redundant node)
 - [2] client MAC-address
 - [3] service-ID (7x50 IES/VP RN service-id)
 - [4] sap-ID (not included for retail VP RN and redundant node)
 - [6] client type (1=ppp)
 - [13] pool-name
 - [14] service name (PPPoE tag service-name)
 - [17] session-ID (PPPoE session-id)

When one or more of these options and sub-options are included, the DHCPv4 server can use them while accessing the LUDB, for selection of the section (client type 1 is the PPP section), and the host entry in that section. For example, not including the service-ID VSO [82,9][3] to the DHCPv4 server, when LUDB host identification needs the MAC address and service ID, will result in an LUDB lookup failure on the DHCPv4 server and a silent drop of the DHCPv4 discover message.

LUDB Input Parameters

The following IPoE host identification fields are supported when accessing an LUDB from a DHCPv4 server:

- circuit-id
- encap-tag-range
- mac
- option60
- remote-id
- sap-id
- service-id
- string
- system-id

The LUDB lookup process can match up to four IPoE match-criteria, as defined by the IPoE match-list.

LUDB Input Parameters

The following PPP host identification fields are supported when accessing an LUDB from a DHCPv4 server:

- circuit-id
- encap-tag-range
- mac
- remote-id
- sap-id
- service-name
- username

The LUDB lookup process can match up to three PPP match-criteria, as defined by the PPP match-list.

LUDB Output Parameters

Addressing Information

The host entry address field has the following configuration options when the LUDB is associated with a DHCPv4 server:

- no address

Host access is not allowed. The clients mapping to this host entry will not get an IP address.

```
3874 2015/05/27 11:44:52.84 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base DHCP server
"DHCP server: dhcp4
DISCOVER dropped: host=entry-55, host found but no valid address info
```

- address <*ip-address*>

A fixed IP address is offered to the client and should not overlap with the address ranges configured in the local DHCP server.

- address pool <*pool-name*> [secondary-pool <*sec-pool-name*>]

The DHCPv4 server allocates an address from one of the subnets in that pool on the condition that the DHCPv4 server is configured to use pool names for address selection. Optionally, a secondary pool can be defined, to be used in case the primary pool is exhausted.

Pool-name addressing is useful when the subscriber management node is not capable of inserting the pool-name VSO [82,9][13] or when a specific host requires a specific pool-name different from the pool-name included by the subscriber management node.

- gi-address [scope <subnet|pool>]

When the scope is set to subnet, the DHCPv4 server allocates an address from the subnet that includes the Gi address. When the scope is set to pool, the DHCPv4 server allocates an address from the subnet that includes the Gi address, or from the other subnets belonging to the same pool. Gi-addressing is useful when the subnet that the Gi address belongs to is exhausted.

- use-pool-from-client [delimiter <*delimiter*>]

The DHCPv4 server allocates an address from one of the subnets in the pool, as indicated by the pool-name VSO [82,9][13]. If two pools are available in this VSO, the configured delimiter distinguishes the first pool-name from the second pool-name.

Identification Strings

An LUDB can optionally return identification strings (also known as ESM strings). The DHCPv4 server returns them in a user-defined DHCPv4 option (default: 254) to the requesting entity (the relay agent or the local client). The identification strings, in alphabetical order, are:

- ancp-string
 - app-profile-string
 - category-map-name
 - inter-dest-id
 - sla-profile-string
 - sub-profile-string
 - subscriber-id
-

Options

An LUDB can return options to be used by the relay agent, the internal client, or the end-user device.

Available IPoE user options, configurable by option-name are:

- default-router
- dns-server
- domain-name
- lease-rebind-timer
- lease-renew-timer
- lease-time
- netbios-name-server
- netbios-node-type
- subnet-mask

Available PPP user options, configurable by option-name are:

- dns-server
- netbios-name-server

Additional options, configurable by option-number, can be configured for both IPoE and PPP users by using the **custom-option** command.

```

*A:BNG-1>config>subscr-mgmt>loc-user-db>ipoe>host>options# custom-option
- custom-option <option-number> address [<ip-address>...(upto 4 max)]
- custom-option <option-number> hex <hex-string>
- custom-option <option-number> string <ascii-string>
- no custom-option <option-number>

<option-number>      : [1..254]
<ip-address>         : a.b.c.d
<ascii-string>       : [127 chars max]
<hex-string>         : [0x0..0xFFFFFFFF...(max 254 hex nibbles)]

*A:BNG-1>config>subscr-mgmt>loc-user-db>ipoe>host>options#

```

The encoding of these custom options is either in hexadecimal, ASCII, or IP address format. In debug output, these custom options are indicated as **Unknown options** and presented in Type-Length-Value (TLV) format.

Options and custom options can be configured at three different levels:

- LUDB host entry level
- DHCPv4 server pool level
- DHCPv4 server subnet level

Options and custom options defined at the host entry level overrule options defined at either of the server levels.

Other Parameters

All other parameters in the host entry definition are silently ignored (for example, IPv6 related parameters, msap-defaults, retail-service-id, and so on) because they are not applicable for a DHCPv4 server-associated LUDB.

Configuration

Figure 175 shows the example configuration used in this chapter.

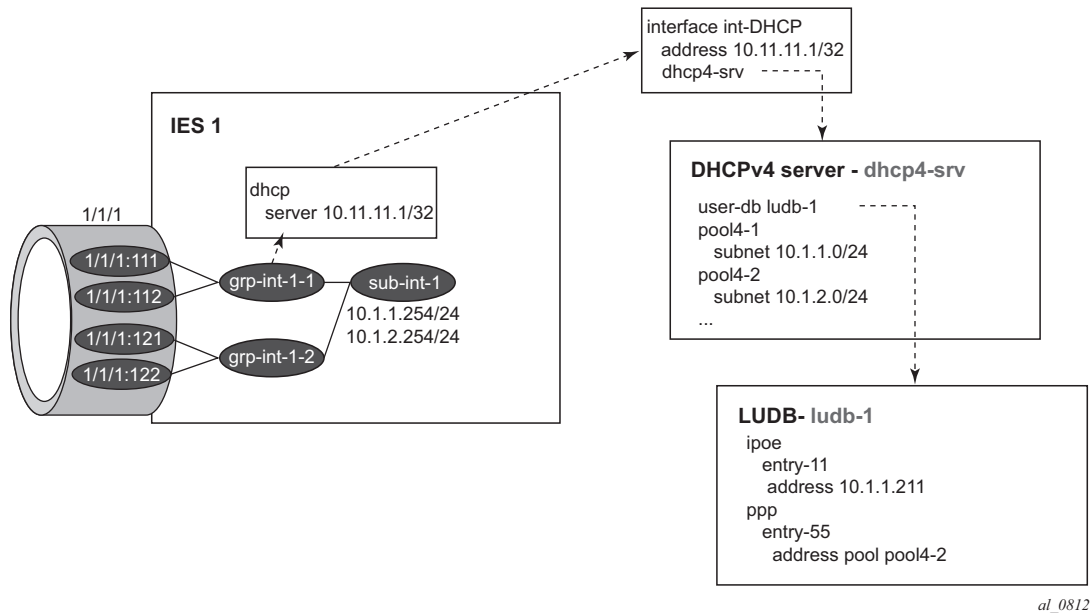


Figure 175: Example Configuration

An LUDB can be associated with a DHCPv4 server in the base router instance or in a VPRN service instance using the following commands:

```
configure router dhcp local-dhcp-server <name> user-db <name>
configure service vprn <service-id> dhcp local-dhcp-server <name> user-db <name>
```

The following example has the DHCPv4 server created in the base router instance.

```
configure
router
dhcp
  local-dhcp-server "dhcp4-srv" create
  user-db "ludb-1"
  use-gi-address
  use-pool-from-client
  pool "pool4-1" create
    subnet 10.1.1.0/24 create
    options
      subnet-mask 255.255.255.0
      default-router 10.1.1.254
    exit
  address-range 10.1.1.1 10.1.1.100
```

```

        exit
    exit
    pool "pool4-2" create
        subnet 10.1.2.0/24 create
            options
                subnet-mask 255.255.255.0
                default-router 10.1.2.254
            exit
        address-range 10.1.2.1 10.1.2.254
    exit
    exit
    --- snipped ---
    no shutdown
    exit
exit

```

The server is then associated with the loopback interface at address 10.11.11.1.

```

configure
    router
        interface "int-DHCP"
            address 10.11.11.1/32
            loopback
            local-dhcp-server "dhcp4-srv"
            no shutdown
        exit
    exit

```

The following is a partial configuration of service IES 1. Note that the DHCPv4 relay agent is configured to include the service-ID VSO [82,9][3] because this option is used in the LUDb for matching purposes.

```

configure
    service
        ies 1 customer 1 create
            subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
                address 10.1.1.254/24
                address 10.1.2.254/24
                group-interface "grp-int-1-1" create
                    arp-populate
                    dhcp
                    option
                        action replace
                        circuit-id
                        remote-id
                        vendor-specific-option
                        service-id
                    exit
                exit
            server 10.11.11.1
            trusted
            lease-populate 100
            client-applications dhcp ppp
            gi-address 10.1.1.254
            no shutdown

```

Configuration

```
exit
sap 1/1/1:111 create
  sub-sla-mgmt
    def-sub-profile "sub-prof-1"
    def-sla-profile "sla-prof-1"
    sub-ident-policy "sub-id-pol-1"
    multi-sub-sap
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
--- snipped ---
pppoe
  session-limit 100
  sap-session-limit 100
  no shutdown
exit
exit
exit
```

In the following example, IPoE users are matched against the service-id, the MAC address and option 60. Host entry-11 returns a fixed IP address, three identification strings, and a set of options. PPP users are matched against the MAC address. Host entry-55 returns an address-pool, two identification strings, and two DNS servers as options.

```
configure
  subscriber-mgmt
    local-user-db "ludb-1" create
      description "example user-db"
      ipoe
        match-list service-id mac option60
        host "entry-11" create
          host-identification
            mac 00:00:00:11:11:11
            service-id 1
            option60 hex 0xaabb
          exit
          address 10.1.1.211
          identification-strings 254 create
            subscriber-id "sub-11"
            sla-profile-string "sla-profile-1"
            sub-profile-string "sub-profile-1"
          exit
          options
            subnet-mask 255.255.255.0
            default-router 10.1.1.251
            dns-server 2.2.2.2 2.2.2.1
            domain-name "domain.org"
            netbios-name-server 10.1.1.252
            netbios-node-type B
            lease-time hrs 12
            custom-option 251 hex 0x010203
          exit
          no shutdown
        exit
      --- snip ---
    exit
```

```

ppp
  match-list mac
  host "entry-55" create
    host-identification
      mac 00:00:00:55:55:55
    exit
    address pool "pool4-2"
    identification-strings 254 create
      subscriber-id "sub-55"
      sla-profile-string "sla-prof-3"
      sub-profile-string "sub-prof-3"
    exit
    options
      dns-server 2.2.2.2 2.2.2.1
    exit
    --- snip ---
    no shutdown
  exit
  --- snip ---
exit
no shutdown
exit

```

Note that entry-11 defines a fixed IP address in one of the subnets allowed on the group interface grp-int-1-1 on IES 1, but out of the range defined in the DHCPv4 server.

Debugging

The following example debugs the local DHCP server and the LUDB ludb-1.

```
debug
  router "Base"
    local-dhcp-server "dhcp4"
    detail-level medium
    mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
  exit
exit
subscriber-mgmt
  local-user-db "ludb-1"
  detail all
exit
exit
exit
```

The following additional configuration ensures that the debug output is sent to the current login session.

```
configure
  log
    log-id 1
    from debug-trace
    to session
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
exit
```

IPoE Users Verification

The following command shows the DHCPv4 server lease state record for LUDB host entry-11. The address type is set to **fixed** because ludb-1 returns a fixed IP address.

```
*A:BNG-1# show router dhcp local-dhcp-server "dhcp4" leases 10.1.1.211 detail
=====
Lease for DHCP server dhcp4 router Base
=====
IP-address           : 10.1.1.211
Lease-state          : stable
Lease started        : 2015/06/05 14:16:34
Last renew           : N/A
Remaining LifeTime    : 11h57m9s
Remaining Potential Exp. Time: 0h0m0s
MAC address          : 00:00:00:11:11:11
Xid                   : 0x1
Failover Control      : local
Client Type           : dhcp
```



```

User-db Host Name      : entry-11
User-db Address Type   : fixed
Persistence Key        : N/A
Opt82 Hex Dump         : (length=80)
                       : 52 4e 01 1d 42 4e 47 2d 31 7c 31 7c 67 72 70 2d
                       : 69 6e 74 2d 31 2d 31 7c 31 2f 31 2f 31 3a 31 31
                       : 31 02 06 00 00 00 11 11 11 09 25 00 00 19 7f 20
                       : 01 05 42 4e 47 2d 31 02 06 00 00 00 11 11 11 03
                       : 04 00 00 00 01 04 09 31 2f 31 2f 31 3a 31 31 31
Opt82 Circuit Id       : BNG-1|1|grp-int-1-1|1/1/1:111
Opt82 Remote Id        : (hex) 00 00 00 11 11 11
Opt82 Subscr Id        :
Opt82 VS System         : BNG-1
Opt82 VS Clnt MAC       : 00:00:00:11:11:11
Opt82 VS Service        : (hex) 00 00 00 01
Opt82 VS SAP            : 1/1/1:111
Opt82 VS String         :
Opt60 Hex Dump         : (length=2)
                       : aa bb
Lease Remaining Hold Time : 0h0m0s
=====
*A:BNG-1#

```

The debug output on the DHCPv4 server and the LUDB ludb-1 shows that the LUDB is accessed for every incoming message. Note that the identification-strings are returned to the relay agent in the Offer and Acknowledge messages through option [254]; see [Figure 176](#) for the decoding.

```

94 2015/06/05 14:16:34.34 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base DHCP server
"DHCP server:  dhcp4
Rx DHCP Discover

```

```

ciaddr: 0.0.0.0      yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
siaddr: 0.0.0.0      giaddr: 10.1.1.254
chaddr: 00:00:00:11:11:11  xid: 0x1

```

```

DHCP options:
[82] Relay agent information: len = 78
    [1] Circuit-id: BNG-1|1|grp-int-1-1|1/1/1:111
    [2] Remote-id: (hex) 00 00 00 11 11 11
    [9] Vendor-Specific info: len = 37
        Enterprise [6527] : len = 32
            [1] systemId: BNG-1
            [2] clntMac: 00:00:00:11:11:11
            [3] servId: 1
            [4] sapId: 1/1/1:111
[53] Message type: Discover
[60] Class id: (hex) aa bb
[255] End

```

```

"
```

```

95 2015/06/05 14:16:34.34 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base LUDB
"LUDB: User lookup success - host found
  svc-id: 1
  mac: 00:00:00:11:11:11
  option60:
    original: 0xaabb
    masked: 0xaabb

```

IPoE Users Verification

```
encap-tag: 111

Host entry-11 found in user data base ludb-1"

96 2015/06/05 14:16:34.34 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base DHCP server
"DHCP server:  dhcp4
lease added for 10.1.1.211 state=offer
"

97 2015/06/05 14:16:34.35 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base DHCP server
"DHCP server:  dhcp4
Tx DHCP Offer to local relay agent 10.1.1.254 vrId=1

ciaddr: 0.0.0.0          yiaddr: 10.1.1.211
siaddr: 10.11.11.1       giaddr: 10.1.1.254
chaddr: 00:00:00:11:11:11  xid: 0x1

DHCP options:
[82] Relay agent information: len = 78
    [1] Circuit-id: BNG-1|1|grp-int-1-1|1/1/1:111
    [2] Remote-id: (hex) 00 00 00 11 11 11
    [9] Vendor-Specific info: len = 37
        Enterprise [6527] : len = 32
            [1] systemId: BNG-1
            [2] clntMac: 00:00:00:11:11:11
            [3] servId: 1
            [4] sapId: 1/1/1:111
[53] Message type: Offer
[54] DHCP server addr: 10.11.11.1
[51] Lease time: 43200
[1] Subnet mask: 255.255.255.0
[3] Router: 10.1.1.251
[6] Domain name server: length = 8
    2.2.2.2
    2.2.2.1
[15] Domain name: domain.org
[44] NETBIOS name server: 10.1.1.252
[46] NETBIOS type: 1
[251] Unknown option: len = 3, value = 01 02 03
[254] Unknown option: len = 38, value = 07 06 73 75 62 2d 31 31 08 0d 73
6c 61 2d 70 72 6f 66 69 6c 65 2d 31 09 0d 73 75 62 2d 70 72 6f 66 69 6c 65
2d 31
[60] Class id: (hex) aa bb
[255] End
"

98 2015/06/05 14:16:34.44 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base DHCP server
"DHCP server:  dhcp4
Rx DHCP Request

ciaddr: 0.0.0.0          yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
siaddr: 0.0.0.0          giaddr: 10.1.1.254
chaddr: 00:00:00:11:11:11  xid: 0x1

DHCP options:
[82] Relay agent information: len = 78
    [1] Circuit-id: BNG-1|1|grp-int-1-1|1/1/1:111
    [2] Remote-id: (hex) 00 00 00 11 11 11
    [9] Vendor-Specific info: len = 37
```

```

Enterprise [6527] : len = 32
[1] systemId: BNG-1
[2] clntMac: 00:00:00:11:11:11
[3] servId: 1
[4] sapId: 1/1/1:111
[53] Message type: Request
[50] Requested IP addr: 10.1.1.211
[60] Class id: (hex) aa bb
[54] DHCP server addr: 10.11.11.1
[255] End
"

99 2015/06/05 14:16:34.44 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base LUDB
"LUDB: User lookup success - host found
  svc-id: 1
  mac: 00:00:00:11:11:11
  option60:
    original: 0xaabb
    masked: 0xaabb
  encap-tag: 111

  Host entry-11 found in user data base ludb-1"

100 2015/06/05 14:16:34.44 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base DHCP server
"DHCP server: dhcp4
lease update for 10.1.1.211 state=stable
"

101 2015/06/05 14:16:34.44 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base DHCP server
"DHCP server: dhcp4
Tx DHCP Ack to local relay agent 10.1.1.254 vrId=1

ciaddr: 0.0.0.0          yiaddr: 10.1.1.211
siaddr: 10.11.11.1       giaddr: 10.1.1.254
chaddr: 00:00:00:11:11:11 xid: 0x1

DHCP options:
[82] Relay agent information: len = 78
[1] Circuit-id: BNG-1|1|grp-int-1-1|1/1/1:111
[2] Remote-id: (hex) 00 00 00 11 11 11
[9] Vendor-Specific info: len = 37
Enterprise [6527] : len = 32
[1] systemId: BNG-1
[2] clntMac: 00:00:00:11:11:11
[3] servId: 1
[4] sapId: 1/1/1:111
[53] Message type: Ack
[54] DHCP server addr: 10.11.11.1
[51] Lease time: 43200
[1] Subnet mask: 255.255.255.0
[3] Router: 10.1.1.251
[6] Domain name server: length = 8
    2.2.2.2
    2.2.2.1
[15] Domain name: domain.org
[44] NETBIOS name server: 10.1.1.252
[46] NETBIOS type: 1
[251] Unknown option: len = 3, value = 01 02 03
[254] Unknown option: len = 38, value = 07 06 73 75 62 2d 31 31 08 0d 73

```

```
6c 61 2d 70 72 6f 66 69 6c 65 2d 31 09 0d 73 75 62 2d 70 72 6f 66 69 6c 65
2d 31
[60] Class id: (hex) aa bb
[255] End
"
```

The user-defined option value for carrying the ESM strings and taken from the LUBD (identification-strings) should match the value defined in the strings-from-option parameter (value 254 in the following example) referenced in the subscriber identification policy on the relaying node.

```
configure
  subscriber-mgmt
    sub-ident-policy "sub-id-pol-1" create
      sub-profile-map
        use-direct-map-as-default
      exit
      sla-profile-map
        use-direct-map-as-default
      exit
      strings-from-option 254
    exit
```

The DHCP options in the debug output match the definition of the options in the LUBD.

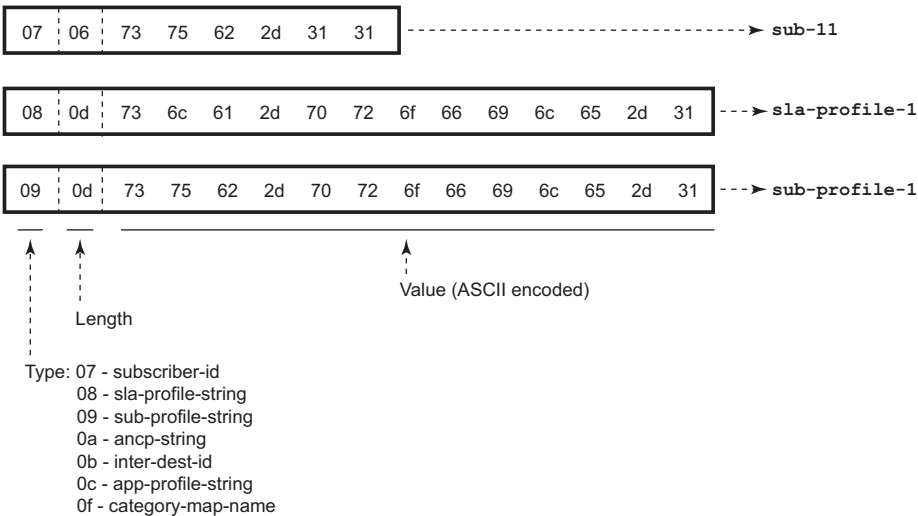


Figure 176: Decoding the ESM User Option

PPP Users Verification

The following command shows the DHCPv4 server lease state record for LUDB host entry-55. The client type is set to ppp, and the address type is set to dynamic as ludb-1 returns address-pool pool4-2 for this host.

```
*A:BNG-1# show router dhcp local-dhcp-server "dhcp4" leases 10.1.2.2 detail
=====
Lease for DHCP server dhcp4 router Base
=====
IP-address           : 10.1.2.2
Lease-state          : stable
Lease started        : 2015/05/29 14:30:16
Last renew           : N/A
Remaining LifeTime    : 0h51m9s
Remaining Potential Exp. Time: 0h0m0s
MAC address          : 00:00:00:55:55:55
Xid                   : 0xeb633130
Failover Control     : local
Client Type          : ppp
User-db Host Name     : entry-55
User-db Address Type  : dynamic
Persistence Key       : N/A
Opt82 Hex Dump       : (length=83)
                     : 52 51 01 1d 42 4e 47 2d 31 7c 31 7c 67 72 70 2d
                     : 69 6e 74 2d 31 2d 31 7c 31 2f 31 2f 31 3a 31 31
                     : 31 02 06 00 00 00 55 55 55 09 28 00 00 19 7f 23
                     : 02 06 00 00 00 55 55 55 06 01 01 01 05 42 4e 47
                     : 2d 31 03 04 00 00 00 01 04 09 31 2f 31 2f 31 3a
                     : 31 31 31
Opt82 Circuit Id     : BNG-1|1|grp-int-1-1|1/1/1:111
Opt82 Remote Id      : (hex) 00 00 00 55 55 55
Opt82 VS System      : BNG-1
Opt82 VS Clnt MAC    : 00:00:00:55:55:55
Opt82 VS Service     : (hex) 00 00 00 01
Opt82 VS SAP         : 1/1/1:111
Opt82 VS String      :
Opt82 VS PPPoE Session ID :
Opt60 Hex Dump       : (length=10)
                     : 41 4c 55 37 58 58 58 53 42 4d
Lease Remaining Hold Time : 0h0m0s
=====
*A:BNG-1#
```

The debug output on the DHCPv4 server and the LUDB ludb-1 shows that the LUDB is accessed for every incoming message. Again the identification-strings are returned to the relay agent in the Offer and Acknowledge messages using option [254].

```
79 2015/06/05 13:55:09.40 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base DHCP server
"DHCP server: dhcp4
Rx DHCP Discover

ciaddr: 0.0.0.0      yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
siaddr: 0.0.0.0      giaddr: 10.1.1.254
chaddr: 00:00:00:55:55:55  xid: 0xbe277b30
```

IPoE Users Verification

```
DHCP options:
[82] Relay agent information: len = 87
    [1] Circuit-id: BNG-1|1|grp-int-1-1|1/1/1:111
    [2] Remote-id: (hex) 00 00 00 55 55 55
    [9] Vendor-Specific info: len = 46
        Enterprise [6527] : len = 41
        [2] clntMac: 00:00:00:55:55:55
        [6] clntType: 1
        [1] systemId: BNG-1
        [3] servId: 1
        [4] sapId: 1/1/1:111
        [17] pppoeSessionId: 1
[51] Lease time: 3600
[53] Message type: Discover
[60] Class id: ALU7XXXSBM
[255] End
"

80 2015/06/05 13:55:09.40 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base LUDB
"LUDB: User lookup success - host found
  mac: 00:00:00:55:55:55

  Host entry-55 found in user data base ludb-1"

81 2015/06/05 13:55:09.40 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base DHCP server
"DHCP server:  dhcp4
lease added for 10.1.2.20 state=offer
"

82 2015/06/05 13:55:09.41 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base DHCP server
"DHCP server:  dhcp4
Tx DHCP Offer to local client 10.1.1.254 vrId=1

ciaddr: 0.0.0.0          yiaddr: 10.1.2.20
siaddr: 10.11.11.1       giaddr: 10.1.1.254
chaddr: 00:00:00:55:55:55  xid: 0xbe277b30

DHCP options:
[82] Relay agent information: len = 87
    [1] Circuit-id: BNG-1|1|grp-int-1-1|1/1/1:111
    [2] Remote-id: (hex) 00 00 00 55 55 55
    [9] Vendor-Specific info: len = 46
        Enterprise [6527] : len = 41
        [2] clntMac: 00:00:00:55:55:55
        [6] clntType: 1
        [1] systemId: BNG-1
        [3] servId: 1
        [4] sapId: 1/1/1:111
        [17] pppoeSessionId: 1
[53] Message type: Offer
[54] DHCP server addr: 10.11.11.1
[51] Lease time: 3600
[1] Subnet mask: 255.255.255.0
[6] Domain name server: 2.2.2.2
[254] Unknown option: len = 32, value = 07 06 73 75 62 2d 35 35 08 0a 73
6c 61 2d 70 72 6f 66 2d 35 09 0a 73 75 62 2d 70 72 6f 66 2d 33
[60] Class id: ALU7XXXSBM
[255] End
```

```

"

83 2015/06/05 13:55:09.41 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base DHCP server
"DHCP server:  dhcp4
Rx DHCP Request

    ciaddr: 10.1.2.20          yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
    siaddr: 0.0.0.0           giaddr: 10.1.1.254
    chaddr: 00:00:00:55:55:55  xid: 0xbe277b30

DHCP options:
[82] Relay agent information: len = 87
    [1] Circuit-id: BNG-1|1|grp-int-1-1|1/1/1:111
    [2] Remote-id: (hex) 00 00 00 55 55 55
    [9] Vendor-Specific info: len = 46
        Enterprise [6527] : len = 41
        [2] clntMac: 00:00:00:55:55:55
        [6] clntType: 1
        [1] systemId: BNG-1
        [3] servId: 1
        [4] sapId: 1/1/1:111
        [17] pppoeSessionId: 1
[50] Requested IP addr: 10.1.2.20
[51] Lease time: 3600
[53] Message type: Request
[54] DHCP server addr: 10.11.11.1
[60] Class id: ALU7XXXSBM
[255] End
"

84 2015/06/05 13:55:09.41 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base LUDB
"LUDB: User lookup success - host found
  mac: 00:00:00:55:55:55

  Host entry-55 found in user data base ludb-1"

85 2015/06/05 13:55:09.41 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base DHCP server
"DHCP server:  dhcp4
lease update for 10.1.2.20 state=stable
"

86 2015/06/05 13:55:09.41 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base DHCP server
"DHCP server:  dhcp4
Tx DHCP Ack to local client 10.1.1.254 vrId=1

    ciaddr: 10.1.2.20          yiaddr: 10.1.2.20
    siaddr: 10.11.11.1         giaddr: 10.1.1.254
    chaddr: 00:00:00:55:55:55  xid: 0xbe277b30

DHCP options:
[82] Relay agent information: len = 87
    [1] Circuit-id: BNG-1|1|grp-int-1-1|1/1/1:111
    [2] Remote-id: (hex) 00 00 00 55 55 55
    [9] Vendor-Specific info: len = 46
        Enterprise [6527] : len = 41
        [2] clntMac: 00:00:00:55:55:55
        [6] clntType: 1
        [1] systemId: BNG-1
        [3] servId: 1

```

Operational Considerations

```
[4] sapId: 1/1/1:111
[17] pppoeSessionId: 1
[53] Message type: Ack
[54] DHCP server addr: 10.11.11.1
[51] Lease time: 3600
[1] Subnet mask: 255.255.255.0
[6] Domain name server: 2.2.2.2
[254] Unknown option: len = 32, value = 07 06 73 75 62 2d 35 35 08 0a 73
6c 61 2d 70 72 6f 66 2d 35 09 0a 73 75 62 2d 70 72 6f 66 2d 33
[60] Class id: ALU7XXXSBM
[255] End
"
```

Operational Considerations

A DHCPv4 server with an LUDB cannot be used for supporting Local Address Assignment (LAA) scenarios. LAA can be used when the DHCPv4 relay agent and the DHCPv4 server are in the same node, and where IP address assignment for PPP users happens through the API directly into the local DHCPv4 server. See the [ESM SLAAC Prefix Assignment via Local Address Server on page 669](#) chapter via Local Address Server of the Advanced Configuration Guide for details on this topic.

Conclusion

This chapter explained and demonstrated the use of an LUDB in combination with a DHCPv4 server. For the DHCPv4 server to find matching entries in the LUDB, the relay agent has to be configured with the correct options and sub-options so that entries can be matched in the LUDB. It was noted that the DHCPv4 server does not require the relaying function to be located in the same node. The input and the output parameters of a DHCPv4 server-attached LUDB were listed. Carrying over the identification/ESM strings in a user-defined DHCP option was configured and demonstrated, and the decoding of this option was explained.

Managed SAPs with Routed CO

In This Chapter

This section provides information about Managed SAPs with Routed CO.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 1096](#)
- [Overview on page 1097](#)
- [Configuration on page 1100](#)
- [Conclusion on page 1128](#)

Applicability

This section is applicable to the 7750 SR7/12 with IOM2 or higher (for BRAS functionality) with Chassis mode B or higher (for Routed Central Office (CO) model) and the 7710/7750 SR-c12 and was tested on release 12.0.R1. Routed CO is supported on 7450 ESS-7 or ESS-12 in mixed-mode since 8.0.R1. The 7750 SR-c4 is supported from 8.0.R4 and higher.

This note is related only to the use of IPv4.

MSAPs are also supported with Bridged CO model and on the 7450, however, applicable configuration information is beyond the scope of this document.

Overview

Managed Service Access Point (MSAP) allows the use of policies and a SAP template for the creation of a SAP. As part of the MSAP feature, individual SAPs are created along with the subscriber host with minimal configuration on the BRAS node. Creation of a managed SAP is triggered by a DHCP-DISCOVER and/or a PPPoE-PADI message. In this case, the authentication response message not only returns the subscriber host attributes, but also the managed SAP policy and service ID. These latter two parameters are used by the system to create the subscriber SAP with default settings as indicated in the managed SAP policy and then assigning it to the corresponding VPN service. In this model, each subscriber is defined with its own VLAN. This feature uses authentication mechanisms supported by the node to create a SAP.

When enabled, receiving a triggering packet initiates RADIUS authentication that provides a service context. The authentication, together with the service context for this request, creates a managed SAP.

The VLAN is the same as the triggering packet. This SAP behaves as a regular SAP but its configuration is not user editable and not maintained in the configuration file. The managed SAP remains active as long as the session is active.

Knowledge of Alcatel-Lucent TPSDA (Triple Play Service Delivery Architecture) and functionality is assumed throughout this document.

The network topology is displayed in [Figure 177](#). The configuration consists of one 7750 SR-12 acting as a BNG with BRAS functionality.

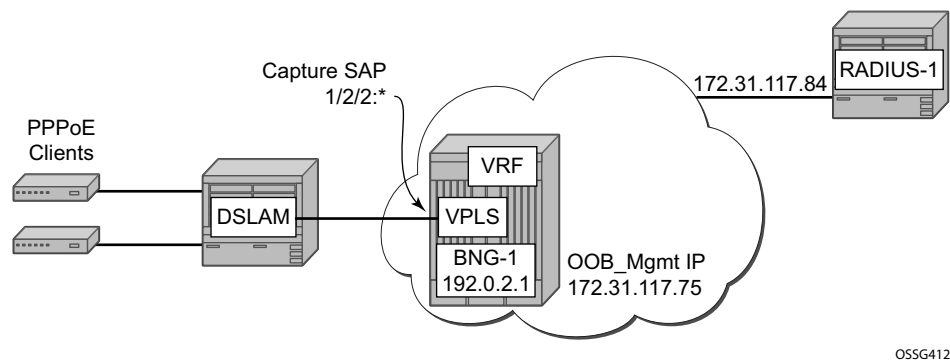


Figure 177: Network Topology

Capture SAP

A capture SAP is used to capture triggering packets and initiate RADIUS authentication. This SAP is defined in a similar way to a default SAP but does not forward traffic.

A capture SAP and default SAP cannot be configured at the same time for a single port with the dot1q encapsulation or for a single port:topq combination with qinq encapsulation. Managed SAPs and regular SAPs can co-exist on the same port and in the same service.

The capture SAP is used if a more specific match for the Q or Q-in-Q tags is not found by the traffic classification on the IOM. If a capturing SAP is defined, triggering packets are sent to the CPM. Non-triggering packets captured by the capturing SAP are dropped.

The following are examples for supported modes:

SAP 1/2/2:* for dot1Q

SAP 1/2/2:Q1.* for QinQ (where Q1 > 0)

The MSAP created will have a single tag (for dot1q) or both q-tags (for qinq) that arrived in the original packet if authenticated by RADIUS.

While MSAPs are supported in both routed CO and bridged CO Triple Play Service Delivery Architecture (TPSDA) models, the triggering SAP must be created in a VPLS service.

Triggering Packets

DHCP discover (or requests if re-authentication is configured) for DHCP clients. The managed SAP lifetime is defined by the lease time.

PPPoE PADI for the PPPoE client. The MSAP lifetime is defined by the session time. The MSAP is installed after the IP address is provided.

ARP packets as trigger packets within a capture SAP. ARP trigger packets can be used for static IP hosts. The managed SAP lifetime is defined by the ARP entry lifetime and is subject to the same ARP entry refresh mechanisms as other ARP entries.

All trigger types can be combined on a SAP supporting DHCP, PPPoE and ARP hosts. In this chapter, a PPPoE client is used.

RADIUS Authentication and Vendor Specific Attributes (VSAs) for MSAP

An MSAP is created in the service-id context that is returned from RADIUS. The RADIUS attribute Alc-MSAP-Serv-Id refers to the service in which the MSAP is created.

In a Routed CO scenario, the MSAP is created in a group-interface context. The group-interface name is returned from RADIUS attribute Alc-MSAP-Interface and must exist in the provided service for the MSAP to be installed.

The MSAP parameters are defined in the creation policy. The policy name is returned from RADIUS in the attribute Alc-MSAP-Policy in order for the MSAP to be created.

Configuration

Configure RADIUS Authentication Policy “authentication-1”

The following output shows a RADIUS authentication policy configuration defining “authentication-1”.

```
configure subscriber-mgmt
  authentication-policy "authentication-1" create
    radius-authentication-server
      source-address 172.31.117.75
      router "management"
      server 1 address 172.31.117.84 secret ALU
    exit
  pppoe-access-method pap-chap
  include-radius-attribute
    remote-id
    nas-identifier
    mac-address
  exit
exit
exit
```

Where, management routing instance and the out-of-band and IP address 172.31.117.75 are used as a source address to communicate authentication messages between the BNG and the RADIUS server. The RADIUS server IP address is 172.31.117.84. Up to five servers can be configured. When having multiple servers two possible access algorithms can be configured to access the list of RADIUS servers, **direct** or **round-robin**.

The value of secret is ALU which is case sensitive and must be configured on Clients.conf file on the RADIUS server in advance. Up to 20 characters in length are possible.

The authentication method used in our example is PAP/CHAP, so the pap-chap value is used for the pppoe-access-method.

The user’s remote-id and mac-address are sent as well the nas-identifier into the access request message towards the RADIUS.

By default, the RADIUS authentication messages are send over port 1812 but can be overridden by adding an explicit port setting to the **server** command.

```
configure subscriber-mgmt
  authentication-policy "authentication-1" create
    radius-authentication-server
      server 1 address 172.31.117.84 secret ALU port <value>
```


Configure a RADIUS Accounting Policy

This example configures radius-accounting-policy "accounting-1".

```
configure subscriber-mgmt
  radius-accounting-policy "accounting-1" create
    update-interval 10
    include-radius-attribute
      framed-ip-addr
      subscriber-id
      circuit-id
      remote-id
      nas-port-id
      nas-identifier
      sub-profile
      sla-profile
      user-name
      no detailed-acct-attributes
      std-acct-attributes
    exit
  session-id-format number
  radius-accounting-server
    router "management"
    server 1 address 172.31.117.84 secret ALU
  exit
exit
exit
```

Where, accounting updates are sent every 10 mins (the default update-interval is 5 minutes). The accounting session-id-format in this example is a number (40 HEX character string).

```
SESSION ID [44] 40 000000010241000000000064000000034B090B2D
```

Whereas, session-id-format <description> can be used in this case. The session-id-format is as follows:

```
<subscriber>@<sapid>@<SLA-profile>_<creation-time>
```

```
SESSION ID [44] 50 user1@1/2/2:100@sla-profile-2M_2009/11/22 11:56:25
```

Since std-acct-attributes is used, only the total number of octets/packets in ingress and egress directions are sent.

ALU VSAs are used for accounting, in such case, detailed accounting values for each queue (in case multiple queues for the subscriber can be used) and the in-profile and the out-profile values are shown. This feature can be enabled by adding **no std-acct-attribute**, which is the default.

By default, the RADIUS accounting messages are sent over port 1813 but can be overridden by adding an explicit port setting in addition to the **server** command.

Configure a RADIUS Accounting Policy

```
configure subscriber-mgmt
  radius-accounting-policy accounting-1 create
  radius-authentication-server
    server 1 address 172.31.117.84 secret ALU port <value>
```

Configure an QoS SAP Ingress Policy

Configure QoS SAP ingress policy where shaping and SAP egress policy performs shaping and remarking. Values for dot1p and dscp are used as examples.

```
configure qos
  sap-ingress 20 create
    description "64K_upstream"
    queue 1 create
      rate 64
    exit
  exit
  sap-ingress 30 create
    description "128K_upstream"
    queue 1 create
      rate 128
    exit
  exit
  sap-ingress 40 create
    description "256K_upstream"
    queue 1 create
      rate 256
    exit
  exit
  sap-ingress 50 create
    description "512K_upstream"
    queue 1 create
      rate 512
    exit
  exit
  sap-egress 20 create
    description "256K_downstream"
    queue 1 create
      rate 256
    exit
    fc be create
      queue 1
      dot1p 5
      dscp ef
    exit
  exit
  sap-egress 30 create
    description "512K_downstream"
    queue 1 create
      rate 512
    exit
    fc be create
      queue 1
      dot1p 4
      dscp af21
    exit
  exit
  sap-egress 40 create
    description "1M_downstream"
    queue 1 create
      rate 1024
    exit
```

Configure an QoS SAP Ingress Policy

```
        fc be create
          queue 1
          dot1p 5
          dscp ef
        exit
      exit
    sap-egress 50 create
      description "2M_downstream"
      queue 1 create
        rate 2048
      exit
      fc be create
        queue 1
        dot1p 3
        dscp cs1
      exit
    exit
  exit
```

Configure Enhanced Subscriber Management Parameters

Four SLA profiles are configured where the downstream speed is four times the upstream speed and the SLA profile will be named with the downstream speed.

Also, a subscriber profile will be configured to initiate RADIUS accounting and doing SLA profile mapping.

```
configure subscriber-mgmt
  sla-profile "sla-profile-1M" create
    ingress
      qos 40 shared-queuing
    exit
  exit
  egress
    qos 40
  exit
  no qos-marking-from-sap
  exit
exit
sla-profile "sla-profile-256K" create
  ingress
    qos 20 shared-queuing
  exit
  exit
  egress
    qos 20
  exit
  no qos-marking-from-sap
  exit
exit
sla-profile "sla-profile-2M" create
  ingress
    qos 50 shared-queuing
  exit
  exit
  egress
    qos 50
  exit
  no qos-marking-from-sap
  exit
exit
sla-profile "sla-profile-512K" create
  ingress
    qos 30 shared-queuing
  exit
  exit
  egress
    qos 30
  exit
  no qos-marking-from-sap
  exit
exit
sub-profile "sub-profile-default" create
  radius-accounting-policy "accounting-1"
  sla-profile-map
```

Configure Enhanced Subscriber Management Parameters

```
        use-direct-map-as-default
    exit
exit
sub-ident-policy "sub-id-default" create
    sub-profile-map
        use-direct-map-as-default
    exit
    sla-profile-map
        use-direct-map-as-default
    exit
exit
exit
```

Configure an MSAP Policy

MSAP policies contain the configuration template (parameters) to be used for MSAP creation and the necessary information to complete the subscriber identification process.

The MSAP policy that will be used is either returned by RADIUS in the access-accept message during authentication phase if this MSAP policy is already configured under subscriber management context, or else the default MSAP policy will be used instead.

```
configure subscriber-mgmt
  msap-policy "msap-ISP1" create
    sub-sla-mgmt
      def-sub-id use-sap-id
      def-sub-profile "sub-profile-default"
      def-sla-profile "sla-profile-512K"
      sub-ident-policy "sub-id-default"
      single-sub-parameters
        profiled-traffic-only
      exit
    exit
  exit
  msap-policy "msap-default" create
    sub-sla-mgmt
      def-sub-id use-sap-id
      def-sub-profile "sub-profile-default"
      def-sla-profile "sla-profile-256K"
      sub-ident-policy "sub-id-default"
      single-sub-parameters
        profiled-traffic-only
      exit
    exit
  exit
exit
```

If managed routes are required for a certain subscriber, add the following command under msap-policy. The default anti-spoof is **ip-mac**. Managed routes are out of the scope of this document.

```
configure subscriber-mgmt
  msap-policy "msap-ISP1" create
    ies-vprn-only-sap-parameters
      anti-spoof nh-mac
    exit
  exit
```

Configure a VPLS Service with a Capture SAP

Configure a VPLS service with capture SAP and define the triggering packet types. The **trigger-packet** and **authentication-policy** commands are mandatory within the capture SAP. Additionally, the **cpu-protection** command can be added to enable CPU protection policies

```
configure
  service
    vpls 1 customer 1 create
      description "VPLS for Capture SAPs"
      stp
        shutdown
      exit
      sap 1/2/2:* capture-sap create
        description "capture SAP for MSAP creation on port 1/2/2"
        trigger-packet arp dhcp pppoe
        msap-defaults
          policy "msap-default"
        exit
        authentication-policy "authentication-1"
      exit
      no shutdown
    exit
```

Verify the details of capture SAP:

```
A:BNG# show service id 1 sap 1/2/2:* detail
=====
Service Access Points(SAP)
=====
Service Id      : 1
SAP             : 1/2/2:*                      Encap           : q-tag
Description     : capture SAP for MSAP creation on port 1/2/2
Admin State     : Up                           Oper State        : Up
Flags           : None
Multi Svc Site  : None
Last Status Change : 03/20/2014 11:28:26
Last Mgmt Change  : 03/20/2014 11:28:09
Sub Type        : capture
Triggers        : arp dhcp pppoe
Dot1Q Ethertype : 0x8100                      QinQ Ethertype    : 0x8100
Split Horizon Group: (Not Specified)

<snipped>

Egr MCast Grp   :
Auth Policy     : authentication-1
DHCP User Db    : None
PPP Policy      : None
PPP User Db     : None
PPPoE Policy    : default
PPPoE User Db   : None
DHCPv6 User Db  : None

<snipped>
```



```

-----
Sap Statistics
-----
Last Cleared Time      : N/A

CPM Ingress            : 0          Packets          Octets
                        : 0          0

Forwarding Engine Stats
Dropped                : 0          0

DHCP Capture Stats
Received               : 0
Redirected             : 0
Dropped               : 0

<snipped>

PPP Capture Stats
Received               : 0
Redirected             : 0
Dropped               : 0

Rtr-Sol Capture Stats
Received               : 0
Redirected             : 0
Dropped               : 0
-----
Sap per Queue stats
-----
                        Packets          Octets
No entries found
=====
A:BNG#

```

Note that the dropped packets are those that are non triggering packets. Also, there are no SAP queues instantiated for a capture SAP.

Configuration Scenario — Routed CO/VLAN-Per-Subscriber (PPPOE)

The following output shows a Routed CO configuration example.

```
configure service vprn 2
  route-distinguisher 65000:2
  subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
    address 10.255.255.254/8
  group-interface "group-int-1" create
    description "ROUTED CO MSAP VLAN X"
    authentication-policy "authentication-1"
  pppoe
    session-limit 2000
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
exit
no shutdown
exit
```

Note that the number of PPPoE sessions can be controlled under a group interface by applying the **pppoe session-limit** command.

Initially, since no MSAPs are present, the operational state of both the subscriber interface and group interface context are down.

```
*A:BNG# show router 2 interface
=====
Interface Table (Service: 2)
=====
```

Interface-Name IP-Address	Adm	Opr (v4/v6)	Mode	Port/SapId PfxState
group-int-1	Up	Down/Down	VPRN G*	n/a
sub-int-1 10.255.255.254/8	Up	Down/Down	VPRN S*	subscriber n/a

```
-----
Interfaces : 2
=====
* indicates that the corresponding row element may have been truncated.
*A:BNG#
```

To allow the subscriber interface to consider this group interface to be operationally enabled without any active SAPs, the following command can be added to the configuration (this would be useful in order to propagate the subnet interface address into a routing protocol) :

```
configure service vprn 2
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
    group-interface "group-int-1" create
    oper-up-while-empty

*A:BNG# show router 2 interface
=====
Interface Table (Service: 2)
=====
Interface-Name      Adm      Opr (v4/v6)  Mode      Port/SapId
IP-Address          PfxState
-----
group-int-1         Up       Down/Down    VPRN G*    n/a
sub-int-1           Up       Up/Down      VPRN S*    subscriber
10.255.255.254/8    n/a
-----
Interfaces : 2
=====
* indicates that the corresponding row element may have been truncated.
*A:BNG#
```

Note the status of the group interface once the first MSAP is created.

Configure RADIUS User Files

The following entry is an example of a user entry in a RADIUS users file for FreeRadius server.

```
"user1@ISP1.com"      Cleartext-Password := "user1_pass"
                      Alc-Subsc-ID-Str := "%{ADSL-Agent-Remote-Id}",
                      Alc-SLA-Prof-Str == "sla-profile-2M",
                      Alc-MSAP-Serv-ID = 2,
                      Alc-MSAP-Policy == "msap-ISP1",
                      Alc-MSAP-Interface == "group-int-1",
                      Framed-IP-Address = 10.255.0.1,
                      Alc-Primary-DNS = 67.138.54.100,
                      Alc-Secondary-DNS = 207.225.209.66
```

So when the PPPoE user sends the correct username and password, the RADIUS will accept the access message and returns the correct VPRN service id 2, the correct group interface group-int-1 the MSAP policy to use msap-ISP1.

In case there are no MSAP policy returned from RADIUS, the default MSAP policy sap-default under the capture SAP will be used instead.

In the above entry, the PPPoE user will have its IP address and DNS assigned by RADIUS as well. The DNS values are examples for public Free DNSs.

Connect PPPoE “user1”

Connect PPPoE user1, initiate a PPPoE session on VLAN 1 and verify PPPoE session establishment.

```
*A:BNG# show service id 2 pppoe session
=====
PPPoE sessions for svc-id 2
=====
Sap Id          Mac Address      Sid   Up Time      Type
  IP/L2TP-Id/Interface-Id          MC-Stdbby
-----
[1/2/2:1]      00:00:86:1c:79:a1 1      0d 00:00:29   local
  10.255.0.1
-----
Number of sessions : 1
=====
*A:BNG#
```

The PPPoE session is established successfully and the user obtained the IP and subscriber strings from the RADIUS server.

In order to differentiate between the MSAP and the normal SAP, the MSAP will be shown between square brackets [1/2/2:1] in the show commands

Verify Subscriber Values

Verify subscriber values returned from RADIUS for user1.

```
*A:BNG# show service id 2 pppoe session ip-address 10.255.0.1 detail
=====
PPPoE sessions for svc-id 2
=====
```

Sap Id	Mac Address	Sid	Up Time	Type
IP/L2TP-Id/Interface-Id				MC-Stdbby
[1/2/2:1] 10.255.0.1	00:00:86:1c:79:a1	1	0d 00:00:42	local

```
-----
LCP State           : Opened
IPCP State          : Opened
IPv6CP State        : Initial
PPP MTU             : 1492
PPP Auth-Protocol    : CHAP
PPP User-Name       : user1@ISP1.com

Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : group-int-1

IP Origin           : radius
DNS Origin          : radius
NBNS Origin         : none

Subscriber          : "user1"
Sub-Profile-String  : ""
SLA-Profile-String  : "sla-profile-2M"
ANCP-String         : ""
Int-Dest-Id         : ""
App-Profile-String  : ""
Category-Map-Name   : ""
Acct-Session-Id     : "EA4BFF00000000532AD1CD"
Sap-Session-Index   : 1

IP Address          : 10.255.0.1/32
Primary DNS         : 67.138.54.100
Secondary DNS       : 207.225.209.66
Primary NBNS        : N/A
Secondary NBNS      : N/A
Address-Pool        : N/A

IPv6 Prefix         : N/A
IPv6 Prefix Origin  : none
IPv6 Prefix Pool    : ""
IPv6 Del.Pfx.       : N/A
IPv6 Del.Pfx. Origin : none
IPv6 Del.Pfx. Pool  : ""
IPv6 Address        : N/A
IPv6 Address Origin : none
IPv6 Address Pool   : ""
Primary IPv6 DNS    : N/A
Secondary IPv6 DNS   : N/A
```

Circuit-Id : DSLAM1_1/1/1/1:0.35
Remote-Id : user1

Radius Session-TO : N/A
Radius Class :
Radius User-Name : user1@ISP1.com
Logical-Line-Id :
Service-Name :

Number of sessions : 1

=====
*A:BNG#

Check the Actual Values

Check the actual values used by user1, subscriber profile, SLA profile, VPRN and group interface association, the subscriber queues statistics and others.

```
*A:BNG# show service active-subscribers subscriber "user1" detail
=====
Active Subscribers
=====
-----
Subscriber user1 (sub-profile-default)
-----
I. Sched. Policy : N/A
E. Sched. Policy : N/A
I. Policer Ctrl. : N/A
E. Policer Ctrl. : N/A
Q Frame-Based Ac*: Disabled
Acct. Policy      : N/A
Rad. Acct. Pol.   : accounting-1
Dupl. Acct. Pol.  : N/A
ANCP Pol.         : N/A
HostTrk Pol.      : N/A
IGMP Policy       : N/A
MLD Policy        : N/A
Sub. MCAC Policy  : N/A
NAT Policy        : N/A
Def. Encap Offset: none
Avg Frame Size    : N/A
Vol stats type    : full
Preference        : 5
Sub. ANCP-String  : "user1"
Sub. Int Dest Id  : ""
Icmp Rate Adj     : N/A
RADIUS Rate-Limit: N/A
Oper-Rate-Limit   : Maximum
* indicates that the corresponding row element may have been truncated.
-----
(1) SLA Profile Instance
    - sap:[1/2/2:1] (VPRN 2 - group-int-1)
    - sla:sla-profile-2M
-----
Description      : (Not Specified)
Host Limit       : No Limit
Egr Sched-Policy : N/A
Ingress Qos-Policy : 50
Ingress Queuing Type : Shared-queuing (Not Applicable to Policer)
Ingr IP Fltr-Id   : N/A
Ingr IPv6 Fltr-Id : N/A
Ingress Report-Rate : Maximum
Egress Report-Rate : Maximum
Egress Remarking   : from SLA Profile Qos
Credit Control Pol. : N/A
Category Map       : (Not Specified)
Use ing L2TP DSCP   : false
-----
IP Address
```



```

-----
MAC Address          PPPoE-SID Origin
-----
10.255.0.1
          00:00:86:1c:79:a1 1          IPCP

-----
SLA Profile Instance statistics
-----
Packets          Octets

Off. HiPrio      : 0          0
Off. LowPrio     : 0          0
Off. Uncolor     : 0          0
Off. Managed     : 0          0

Queueing Stats (Ingress QoS Policy 50)
Dro. HiPrio      : 0          0
Dro. LowPrio     : 0          0
For. InProf      : 0          0
For. OutProf     : 0          0

Queueing Stats (Egress QoS Policy 50)
Dro. InProf      : 0          0
Dro. OutProf     : 0          0
For. InProf      : 0          0
For. OutProf     : 1          64

-----
SLA Profile Instance per Queue statistics
-----
Packets          Octets

Ingress Queue 1 (Unicast) (Priority)
Off. HiPrio      : 0          0
Off. LowPrio     : 0          0
Dro. HiPrio      : 0          0
Dro. LowPrio     : 0          0
For. InProf      : 0          0
For. OutProf     : 0          0

Egress Queue 1
Dro. InProf      : 0          0
Dro. OutProf     : 0          0
For. InProf      : 0          0
For. OutProf     : 1          64

-----
*A:BNG#

```

Where, the subscriber id is **user1**, subscriber profile is sub-profile-default (note that the RADIUS did not return subscriber profile string, so the system will use the **def-sub-profile** configured under the msap-policy msap-ISP1.

Another command can also be used to show less detail in a hierarchical form.

```

*A:BNG# show service active-subscribers hierarchy subscriber "user1"
=====

```

Check the Actual Values

```
Active Subscriber hierarchy
=====
-- user1 (sub-profile-default)
|
|-- sap:[1/2/2:1] - sla:sla-profile-2M
|
|   |-- 10.255.0.1
|   |   00:00:86:1c:79:a1 - 1 (IPCP)
|   |
|
=====
*A:BNG#
```

Verify that the IPv4 state of the group interface is now up.

```
*A:BNG# show router 2 interface
=====
Interface Table (Service: 2)
=====
Interface-Name      Adm      Opr (v4/v6)  Mode      Port/SapId
IP-Address          PfxState
-----
group-int-1         Up        Up/Down      VPRN G*   1/2/2
sub-int-1           Up        Up/Down      VPRN S*   subscriber
10.255.255.254/8    n/a
-----
Interfaces : 2
=====
* indicates that the corresponding row element may have been truncated.
*A:BNG#
```

Verify the capture service id (VPLS), capture SAP and the msap policy used to created user1 and the SAP sub type.

```
*A:BNG# show service id 2 sap 1/2/2:1 detail
=====
Service Access Points (SAP)
=====
Service Id      : 2
SAP             : 1/2/2:1      Encap          : q-tag
Description     : Managed SAP - Capture Svc 1 1/2/2:*
Admin State     : Up          Oper State     : Up
Flags          : None
Multi Svc Site  : None
Last Status Change : 03/20/2014 11:28:08
Last Mgmt Change  : 03/20/2014 11:32:29
Sub Type        : managed
Capture Service Id : 1      Capture SAP    : 1/2/2:*
MSAP Policy     : msap-ISP1
Dot1Q Ethertype : 0x8100    QinQ Ethertype : 0x8100
Split Horizon Group: (Not Specified)

<snip>
-----
Sap per Queue stats
-----
Packets      Octets
-----
No entries found
=====
*A:BNG#
```

The sub type shows managed for MSAPs, whereas regular for normal saps (a SAP created manually under a group-interface).

MSAP with Redundant Configurations

MSAPs are High Availability (HA) enabled (there is no service impact following a CPM failover). In addition, the MSAPs are also stored in the subscriber management persistence file (if enabled), allowing the MSAPs to be recreated after a reboot.

MSAPs can be used in dual-homed BNG scenarios with multi-chassis LAG, multi-chassis ring and subscriber router redundancy protocol.

MSAP QoS Notes

An MSAP is always created with default QoS policies.

```
*A:BNG# show service id 2 sap 1/2/2:1 detail
=====
Service Access Points(SAP)
=====
Service Id      : 2
SAP             : 1/2/2:1                      Encap             : q-tag
Description     : Managed SAP - Capture Svc 1 1/2/2:*
Admin State     : Up                          Oper State        : Up

<snip>
-----
QoS
-----
Ingress qos-policy : 1                      Egress qos-policy : 1
Ingress FP QGrp    : (none)                  Egress Port QGrp  : (none)
Ing FP QGrp Inst   : (none)                  Egr Port QGrp Inst: (none)
Shared Q plcy      : default                  Multipoint shared  : Disabled
I. Sched Pol       : (Not Specified)
E. Sched Pol       : (Not Specified)
I. Policer Ctl Pol : (Not Specified)
E. Policer Ctl Pol : (Not Specified)
-----
Subscriber Management
-----
Admin State        : Up                      MAC DA Hashing    : False
Def Sub-Id         : Use sap-id (1/2/2:1)
Def Sub-Profile    : sub-profile-default
Def SLA-Profile    : sla-profile-512K

<snip>
=====
*A:BNG#
```

QoS Egress Remarking

In order to have remarking for egress traffic for MSAP taken from SLA profile, use **no qos-marking-from-sap** command.

```
configure subscriber-mgmt
...
sla-profile "sla-profile-512K" create
  ingress
    qos 30 shared-queuing
  exit
exit
egress
  qos 30
  exit
  no qos-marking-from-sap
exit
exit
```

By default, the egress QoS marking for subscriber-host traffic is derived from the SAP-egress QoS policy associated with the corresponding SAP rather than the SLA profile associated with the corresponding subscriber-host. As a consequence, no egress QoS marking (for example, dot1p marking was set to 0, DSCP/PREC field is unchanged) is performed for traffic transmitted on an MSAP because per default, SAP-egress policy one (1) was attached to every MSAP.

Queue Optimization

Shared queuing can be used to optimize queues on ingress direction.

```
configure subscriber-mgmt
...
sla-profile "sla-profile-512K" create
    ingress
        qos 30 shared-queuing
    exit
exit
```

The SAP queues will not be instantiated when using the following option in the msap-policy.

```
configure subscriber-mgmt
    msap-policy "msap-ISP1" create
        sub-sla-mgmt
            single-sub-parameters
                profiled-traffic-only
            exit
        exit
exit
```

Configuration Tips

The authentication policy used in the capture SAP must be the same as the policy used for the managed SAP.

The managed SAP will not be created if the group-interface name returned from RADIUS points to a different authentication policy other than the policy defined by the capture SAP.

```

configure
  service
    vpls 1
      --- snip ---
      sap 1/2/2:* capture-sap create
      --- snip ---
      authentication-policy "authentication-1"
    exit
  no shutdown
exit

configure
  service
    vprn 2
      subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
      --- snip ---
      group-interface "group-int-1" create
      authentication-policy "authentication-2"
      --- snip ---
    exit
  no shutdown
exit

```

This can be seen in log 99:

```

84 2014/03/20 11:35:37.80 UTC WARNING: PPPOE #2001 Base PPPoE session failure
"PPPoE session failure on SAP 1/2/2:* in service 1 - [00:00:86:1c:79:a1,1,user1@ISP1.com]
MSAP group-interface "group-int-1" RADIUS auth-policy "authentication-2" differs from cap-
ture SAP"

```

```

83 2014/03/20 11:35:37.80 UTC MINOR: SVCMMGR #2214 Base Managed SAP creation failure
"The system could not create Managed SAP:1/2/2:1, MAC:00:00:86:1c:79:a1, Capturing SAP:1/
2/2:*, Service:1. Description: MSAP group-interface "group-int-1" RADIUS auth-policy
"authentication-2" differs from capture SAP"

```

On the 7750 SR, enable debug for PPPoE and RADIUS packets to help in case there is a problem in session establishment:

```

debug
  router "management"
  radius
    packet-type authentication accounting coa

```

Queue Optimization

```
        detail-level medium
    exit
exit
service
    id 1
        ppp
            packet
                mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
                detail-level medium
                discovery
                ppp
            exit
        exit
    exit
    id 2
        ppp
            packet
                mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
                detail-level medium
                discovery
                ppp
                dhcp-client
            exit
        exit
    exit
exit
exit
exit

configure
    log
        log-id 1
            from debug-trace
            to session
        exit
    exit
exit
exit
```

Disconnect/connect user1 then check the RADIUS access request/accept and accounting messages from the debug output.

```
14 2014/03/20 12:38:42.04 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 management RADIUS
"RADIUS: Transmit
  Access-Request(1) 172.31.117.84:1812 id 26 len 184 vrid 4095 pol authenticatio
n-1
  USER NAME [1] 14 user1@ISP1.com
  NAS IP ADDRESS [4] 4 172.31.117.75
  SERVICE TYPE [6] 4 Framed(2)
  FRAMED PROTOCOL [7] 4 PPP(1)
  CHAP PASSWORD [3] 17 1 0xb54dcb79d5de3fd6cff4ad7b98ac3598
  CHAP CHALLENGE [60] 51 0xa52131167c5ff2adef841422767b7acb458de8c95c2bf2c7185
8fe09a1794f471a80dd975f50c44fd4d8f0cb54ea9719f781e2
  VSA [26] 7 DSL(3561)
    AGENT REMOTE ID [2] 5 user1
  NAS PORT TYPE [61] 4 PPPoEoVLAN(33)
  NAS PORT ID [87] 7 1/2/2:1
  NAS IDENTIFIER [32] 3 BNG
  VSA [26] 19 Alcatel(6527)
```



```

CHADDR [27] 17 00:00:86:1c:79:a1
"

15 2014/03/20 12:38:42.04 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 management RADIUS
"RADIUS: Receive
  Access-Accept(2) id 26 len 133 from 172.31.117.84:1812 vrid 4095 pol authentic
ation-1
    VSA [26] 7 Alcatel(6527)
      SUBSC ID STR [11] 5 user1
    VSA [26] 16 Alcatel(6527)
      SLA PROF STR [13] 14 sla-profile-2M
    VSA [26] 6 Alcatel(6527)
      MSAP SERVICE ID [31] 4 2
    VSA [26] 11 Alcatel(6527)
      MSAP POLICY [32] 9 msap-ISP1
    VSA [26] 13 Alcatel(6527)
      MSAP INTERFACE [33] 11 group-int-1
    FRAMED IP ADDRESS [8] 4 10.255.0.1
    VSA [26] 6 Alcatel(6527)
      PRIMARY DNS [9] 4 67.138.54.100
    VSA [26] 6 Alcatel(6527)
      SECONDARY DNS [10] 4 207.225.209.66
" "
```

The 7750 sends also accounting request message to the RADIUS accounting server.

```

23 2014/03/20 12:38:42.11 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 management RADIUS
"RADIUS: Transmit
  Accounting-Request(4) 172.31.117.84:1813 id 15 len 200 vrid 4095 pol accountin
g-1
    STATUS TYPE [40] 4 Start(1)
    NAS IP ADDRESS [4] 4 172.31.117.75
    USER NAME [1] 14 user1@ISP1.com
    SERVICE TYPE [6] 4 Framed(2)
    FRAMED PROTOCOL [7] 4 PPP(1)
    FRAMED IP ADDRESS [8] 4 10.255.0.1
    NAS IDENTIFIER [32] 3 BNG
    SESSION ID [44] 22 EA4BFF00000000E532AE152
    EVENT TIMESTAMP [55] 4 1395319122
    NAS PORT TYPE [61] 4 PPPoEoVLAN(33)
    NAS PORT ID [87] 7 1/2/2:1
    VSA [26] 28 DSL(3561)
      AGENT CIRCUIT ID [1] 19 DSLAM1_1/1/1/1:0.35
      AGENT REMOTE ID [2] 5 user1
    VSA [26] 44 Alcatel(6527)
      SUBSC ID STR [11] 5 user1
      SUBSC PROF STR [12] 19 sub-profile-default
      SLA PROF STR [13] 14 sla-profile-2M
" "
```

After 10 mins (update interval) the 7750 sends accounting Interim updates with the same session ID including the counter values for total input and output octets/packets for user1.

```

25 2014/03/20 12:48:47.65 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 management RADIUS
"RADIUS: Transmit
  Accounting-Request(4) 172.31.117.84:1813 id 16 len 230 vrid 4095 pol accountin
g-1
```

Queue Optimization

```
STATUS TYPE [40] 4 Interim-Update(3)
NAS IP ADDRESS [4] 4 172.31.117.75
USER NAME [1] 14 user1@ISP1.com
SERVICE TYPE [6] 4 Framed(2)
FRAMED PROTOCOL [7] 4 PPP(1)
FRAMED IP ADDRESS [8] 4 10.255.0.1
NAS IDENTIFIER [32] 3 BNG
SESSION ID [44] 22 EA4BFF0000000E532AE152
SESSION TIME [46] 4 606
EVENT TIMESTAMP [55] 4 1395319727
NAS PORT TYPE [61] 4 PPPoEoVLAN(33)
NAS PORT ID [87] 7 1/2/2:1
VSA [26] 28 DSL(3561)
  AGENT CIRCUIT ID [1] 19 DSLAM1_1/1/1/1:0.35
  AGENT REMOTE ID [2] 5 user1
VSA [26] 44 Alcatel(6527)
  SUBSC ID STR [11] 5 user1
  SUBSC PROF STR [12] 19 sub-profile-default
  SLA PROF STR [13] 14 sla-profile-2M
INPUT PACKETS [47] 4 0
INPUT OCTETS [42] 4 0
OUTPUT PACKETS [48] 4 11
OUTPUT OCTETS [43] 4 704
"

26 2014/03/20 12:48:47.65 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 management RADIUS
"RADIUS: Receive
  Accounting-Response(5) id 16 len 20 from 172.31.117.84:1813 vrid 4095 pol acco
unting-1
" "
```

To verify the MSAP policies and associations of MSAPs created, use the following commands:

```
*A:BNG# show subscriber-mgmt msap-policy
=====
Managed SAP Policies
=====
Name                               Num   Description
                                   MSAPs
-----
msap-ISP1                          1     (Not Specified)
msap-default                        0     (Not Specified)
-----
Number of MSAP Policies : 2
Number of MSAPs         : 1
=====
*A:BNG#

*A:BNG# show subscriber-mgmt msap-policy "msap-ISP1" association
=====
MSAP Policy Associations
=====
Service-Id : 2 (VPRN)
- SAP : [1/2/2:1]
-----
Number of associated MSAPs: 1
=====
*A:BNG#
```

To check all MSAPs created and associations to services.

```
*A:BNG# show service sap-using msap
=====
Service Access Points
=====
PortId                      SvcId      Ing.  Ing.   Egr.  Egr.   Adm  Opr
                        QoS      Fltr  QoS   Fltr
-----
[1/2/2:1]                  2          1     none  1     none  Up   Up
-----
Number of SAPs : 1
-----
Number of Managed SAPs : 1, indicated by [<sap-id>]
-----
=====
*A:BNG#
```

It is possible to use a **tools** command to update an existing MSAP when a specific msap-policy has changed.

```
A:BNG-1# tools perform subscriber-mgmt eval-msap ?
  - eval-msap { policy <msap-policy-name> | msap <sap-id> }

<msap-policy-name>      : [32 chars max]
<sap-id>                 : <port-id|lag-id>:qtag1
                        <port-id|lag-id>:qtag1.qtag2
```

To delete an MSAP.

```
A:BNG-1# clear service id 2 msap 1/2/2:1

166 2014/03/20 11:48:21.39 UTC INDETERMINATE: LOGGER #2010 Base Clear SVCNMR
"Clear function clearSvcIdMsap has been run with parameters: svc-id="2" sap-id="1/2/2:1".
The completion result is: success. Additional error text, if any, is: "
```

To delete all MSAPs associated with a certain MSAP policy use the following command:

```
A:BNG-1# clear service id 2 msap-policy msap-ISPl

168 2014/03/20 11:48:32.15 UTC INDETERMINATE: LOGGER #2010 Base Clear SVCNMR
"Clear function clearSvcIdMsapPlcy has been run with parameters: svc-id="2" policy-
name="msap-ISPl". The completion result is: success. Additional error text, if any, is: "
```

Conclusion

MSAP allows dynamic creation of SAPs which results in:

- Less provisioning.
- Less possibility for introducing provisioning errors.
- Reduced configuration file.

Multi-Chassis Ring Layer 2 with Enhanced Subscriber Management

In This Chapter

This section provides information about MC-Ring Layer 2 with Enhanced Subscriber Management (ESM).

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 1130](#)
- [Summary on page 1131](#)
- [Overview on page 1132](#)
- [Configuration on page 1137](#)
- [Conclusion on page 1161](#)

Applicability

These configuration notes are applicable to all of the 7450, 7750 and 7710 SR series and was tested on Release 7.0R5. The 7750 SR-c4 is supported from 8.0R4 and higher.

MC-Ring L2 with Enhanced Subscriber Management (ESM) was introduced in SR OS 6.0. There are no other pre-requisites for the 7450, 7750 and 7710 SR this configuration.

Summary

Multi-Chassis Ring (MC-ring) is an extension for dual homing support in TPSDA (Triple Play Service Delivery Architecture) networks based on Layer 2 CO (Layer 2 Central Office) model. The extension addresses networks where multiple access nodes (for example, DSLAMs, GPON OLT) are connected in a single ring.

MC Ring Layer 2 ESM is considered an extension or evolution for ring topologies of the Multi-Chassis LAG dual-homing solution used for directly connected access nodes.

MC Ring Layer 2 CO is documented in the Triple Play Enhanced Subscriber Management / Dual Homing section of the Triple Play Guide.

Overview

MC-Ring

Figure 178 shows a typical ring-based configuration of network model based on the Layer 2 CO model.

Individual rings of access nodes are aggregated at the Broadband Service Aggregator (BSA) level in one (or multiple) Virtual Private LAN Service (VPLS) service(s). At higher aggregation levels, Broadband Service Router (BSR) individual BSAs are connected to a Layer 3 interface (Internet Enhanced Service (IES) or Virtual Private Routed Network (VPRN)) by means of a spoke SDP (Service Distribution Point) termination. Every Layer 3 interface at the BSR level aggregates all subscribers in one or more subnets. ESM is performed in the BSAs.

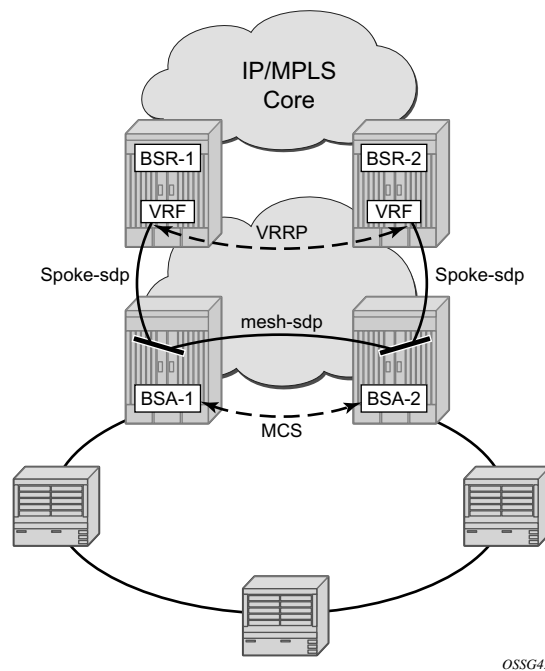


Figure 178: MC-Ring Layer 2 CO Dual Homing

The key functional components of the MC-Ring Layer 2 CO dual-homing redundancy solution are:

1. Mirroring of the subscriber state between the two BSAs performing subscriber management using the multi-chassis synchronization (MCS) protocol (BSA-1 and BSA-2 in Figure 178).
2. Ring control between the two BSAs, using the following mechanisms:

- In-band bi-directional forwarding detection (BFD) between the BSAs over the ring to monitor ring integrity and detect failures. A BFD session between BSA-1 and BSA-2 runs through the access ring using a dedicated IES/VPRN interface configured on both BSAs. This connection uses a separate VLAN throughout the ring (access nodes provide transparent bridging for this VLAN).
 - Out-of-band communication between the BSA nodes to exchange information about the reachability of individual access nodes, and to verify the configuration consistency of the ring. The information on configuration is synchronized through MCS (this use of MCS is related to, but independent to, MCS for subscriber-state synchronization mentioned above).
3. Ring Node Connectivity Verification (RNCV). Each BSA uses RNCV to detect the reachability of individual Access Nodes. It is used after a ring failure to determine which BSA should handle the traffic of each Access Node. RNCV uses ARP requests to “ping” individual ANs, which must be configured with an IP address for this purpose.
 4. Per-subscriber attribute (intermediate destination ID) for the BSA to know the Access Node each subscriber is connected to (assigned through RADIUS or DHCP/Python).
 5. VRRP in the BSRs to provide a redundant default gateway to the CPEs/Home Gateways. BSRs do not perform any subscriber management functions.

The operation of dual homing at the BSA level will be covered based on two underlying mechanisms.

MC-Ring Layer 2 CO Operation

To describe the functional behavior and operation of the dual-homing concept in a ring, it is best to sub-divide the description into the following three parts:

- Steady-state operation with ring fully closed
- Transition to ring-broken state
- Transition from ring-broken to steady state operation

Steady-State Operation of Dual-Homed Ring

Figure 179 illustrates the detailed operation of the dual-homed ring. The steady-state is achieved under following conditions:

- Both nodes are configured in a consistent way
- The MCS peering relation is up
- In-Band Ring Control Connection (IB-RCC) is in an operationally UP state. Note that this connection is set-up using BFD session between IP interfaces on BSA-1 and BSA-2

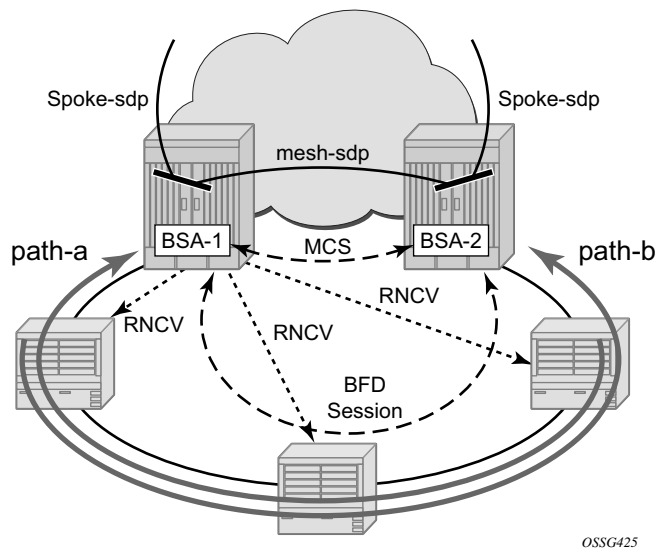


Figure 179: Dual homing Under Steady-State Condition

Under the above conditions, the ring is fully closed and every access node (the **ring-node**) has two possible paths toward the VPLS core. Figure 179 refers to them as **path-a** and **path-b**. In order to avoid the loop created by the ring, only one of the paths may be used by any given ring-node for any given VLAN. The assignment of the individual VLANs to path-a or path-b, respectively, has

to be provisioned on both BSAs in a consistent manner. The BSA with a lower IP address in the interface used for BFD will be the master for the VLANs associated with path-a and standby for the VLANs associated with path-b.

The following summarizes the behavior of the master and standby BSA for a given path (a or b) and the VLANs configured for that path:

Master BSA for the VLANs/SAPs associated with a given path (a or b):

- SAPs associated with the path are operationally up and FDB entries for sub-hosts point to the corresponding SAP
- Master BSA for a path performs RNCV checks to all ring nodes. RNCV failures trigger an alarm but do **not** trigger a switchover
- The ARP reply agent replies to ARP requests for subscriber-hosts associated with ring-nodes for which the BSA is master

Standby BSA:

- All SAPs associated with the path for which the BSA is standby will be operationally down and all FDB entries of subscriber hosts associated with those SAPs will point towards an SDP connecting to the master BSA.

Broken-Ring Operation and the Transition to this State

[Figure 180](#) illustrates the scenario with the broken ring (link failure or ring-node failure). This state is reached under following conditions:

- Both nodes are configured in a consistent way
- The MCS peering relation is up
- IB-RCC is in operationally down state

In this situation, every ring node has only one access path towards the VPLS core and hence the path-a and path-b notion has no real meaning in this situation.

From a functional point of view, both BSAs are now the master for the ring-nodes they can reach. For all hosts behind unreachable ring-nodes, the corresponding subscriber host FDB (Forwarding DataBase) entries will point to SDP pointing to the other head-end ring PE.

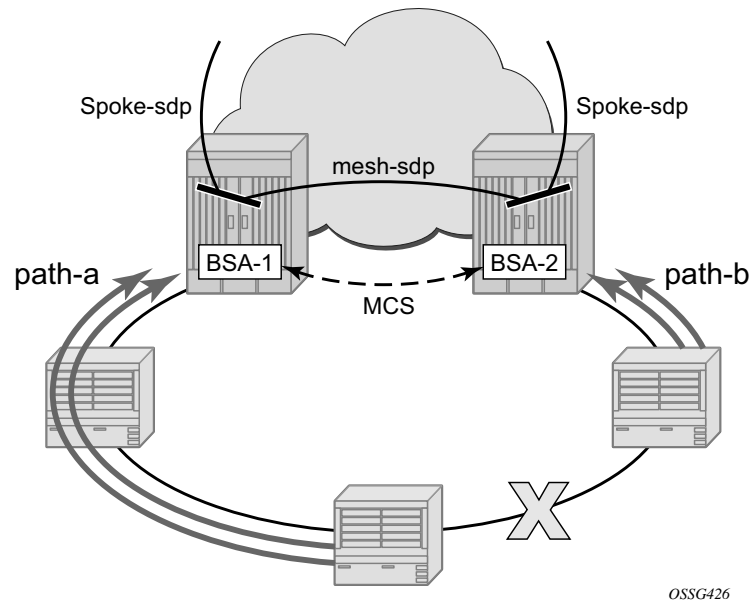


Figure 180: Broken Ring State

Transition from Broken to Closed Ring State

MC-ring operates in a revertive mode. This means that whenever the ring connectivity is restored, the BSA with the lower IP address in the IB-RCC communication channel will become master of path-a and slave for ring-b with vice versa operations on the other BSA.

The actions in this case are straightforward. After restoration of BFD session, the master functionality is assumed by respective BSAs. The FDB tables are updated according to the master/standby role of the given BSA and FDB population messages will be sent accordingly.

Configuration

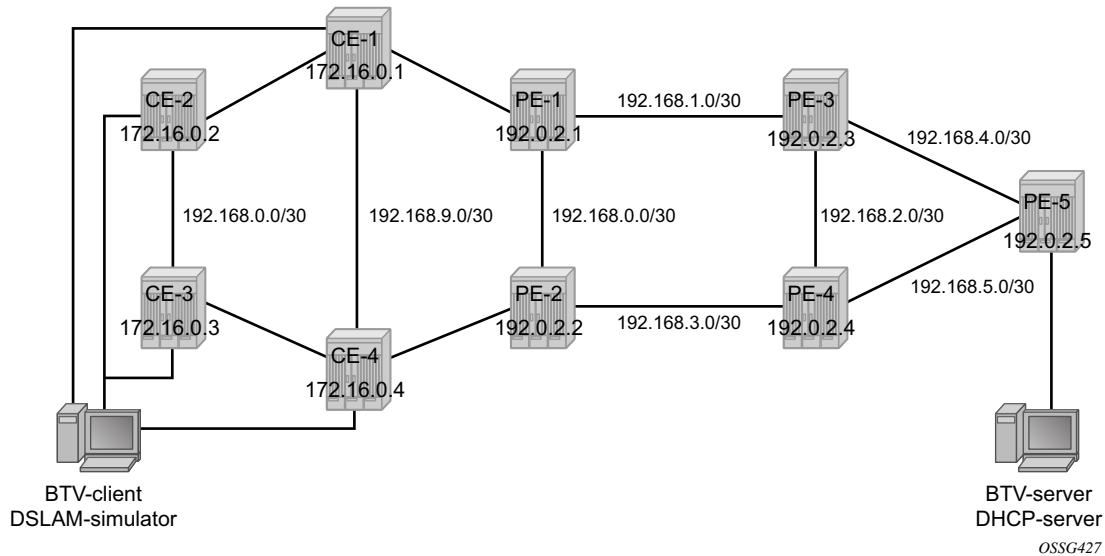


Figure 181: Network Topology

The network topology is displayed in [Figure 181](#). The setup consists of two BSA nodes (PE-1 and PE-2), two BSR nodes (PE-3, PE-4) and another PE router (PE-5). A setup with one BSR node and two BSA nodes can also be used, but in this example, two (2) BSR nodes were used to show the typical Layer 2-CO setup with VRRP and Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM) on the BSRs. The access ring consists of four CE nodes.

Base Topology

This section assumes that the following base configuration has been implemented on the PE:

- Cards, MDAs and ports configured
- Interfaces configured
- IGP (Interior Gateway Protocol) configured and converged LDP (Label Distribution Protocol) configured on the interfaces between PE-3-PE-1, PE-1-PE-2 and PE-2-PE-4
- T-LDP (Targeted-LDP) configured on PE-1, PE-2, PE-3, PE-4
- SDPs configured between PE-3-PE-1, PE-1-PE-2 and PE-2-PE-4

Note that you can choose between OSPF and IS-IS as the IGP. Both LDP and RSVP (Resource Reservation Protocol) can be used for signaling the transport MPLS labels. Alternatively, GRE (Generic Routing Encapsulation) can be used for the transport tunnels. In this example, OSPF is configured and LDP SDPs are used.

7750 SR routers are used as ring-nodes to simulate Access Nodes. Ring-nodes can be any L2 device that support VLANs and have the ability to connect an IP interface to one VLAN (required for RNCV).

NTP Configuration

Time must be the same on the redundant NSAs (PE-1 and PE-2); otherwise, the lease times will be different on both nodes. NTP can be used:

```
configure system time
    ntp
        server 10.30.30.30 prefer
        no shutdown
    exit
exit all
```

MC-Ring Configuration

Configure a VPLS service on the CE routers for the In-Band Ring Control connection (BFD packets between PE-1 and PE-2 traversing the ring). This VPLS service will also be used for RNCV. Note that an Epipe service can also be used in case the service is only used for BFD. In that case, a separate service is required for the RNCV.

In this example, QinQ encapsulation is used and BFD and RNCV packets will use VLAN tag 1. Note that dot1q encapsulation can also be used.

The configuration of CE-1 is shown below. A similar configuration is required on the other CE routers.

```
configure
  port 1/1/1
    ethernet
      mode access
      encap-type qinq
    exit
    no shutdown
  exit
  port 1/1/2
    ethernet
      mode access
      encap-type qinq
    exit
    no shutdown
  exit
  service
    vpls 1 customer 1 create
      interface "lo1" create
        address 172.16.0.1/24
      exit
      sap 1/1/1:1.0 create
      exit
      sap 1/1/2:1.0 create
      exit
      no shutdown
    exit
exit all
```

An interface **lo1** is created in the VPLS. This interface will be used for RNCV.

On the BSA nodes (PE-1 and PE-2), configure an IES services that will originate BFD and RNCV messages. On PE-1:

```
configure
  port 1/1/1
    ethernet
      mode access
      encap-type qinq
    exit
    no shutdown
  exit
  service
    ies 1 customer 1 create
      interface "bfd-rncv1" create
        address 172.16.0.251/24
        bfd 100 receive 100 multiplier 3
        sap 1/1/1:1.0 create
      exit
    exit
    no shutdown
  exit
exit all
```

MC-Ring Configuration

On PE-2:

```
configure
  port 1/1/2
    ethernet
      mode access
      encap-type qinq
    exit
  no shutdown
exit
service
  ies 1 customer 1 create
    interface "bfd-rncv1" create
      address 172.16.0.252/24
      bfd 100 receive 100 multiplier 3
      sap 1/1/2:1.0 create
    exit
  exit
  no shutdown
exit
exit all
```

In-Band Ring Control Connection BFD is always originated on an IES or VPRN service on the BSA nodes. RNCV messages can be originated from the same IES/VPRN service or from a separate service.

Configure Multi-Chassis Synchronization (MCS) on the BSA nodes. Enable MCS for **igmp-snooping**, **mc-ring** and **sub-mgmt**. The configuration of PE-1 is shown below. The configuration of PE-2 is similar.

```
configure redundancy multi-chassis peer 192.0.2.2 create
  sync
    igmp-snooping
    mc-ring
    sub-mgmt
    port 1/1/1 sync-tag "l2ring1" create
  exit
  no shutdown
exit
no shutdown
exit all
```

Add the MC-ring configuration on the BSA nodes and link the Ring Control Connection BFD session to the IES service created before.

```
configure redundancy multi-chassis peer 192.0.2.2 create
  mc-ring
    ring "l2ring1" create
      in-band-control-path
        service-id 1
        interface "bfd-rncv1"
        dst-ip 172.16.0.252
      exit
    no shutdown
  exit
```



```

        exit
        no shutdown
exit all

```

Note that the ring name is exactly the same as the sync-tag already configured.

At this moment, the MC-ring should be up:

```

A:PE-1# show redundancy multi-chassis mc-ring peer 192.0.2.2 ring l2ring1 detail
=====
Multi-Chassis MC-Ring Detailed Information
=====
Peer           : 192.0.2.2
Ring Type      : Layer 2
Sync Tag       : l2ring1
Port ID        : 1/1/1
Admin State    : inService
Oper State     : connected
Admin Change   : 11/05/2009 21:17:54
Oper Change    : 11/05/2009 21:17:54
Failure Reason : None
Control B Path : No
-----
In Band Control Path
-----
Service ID     : 1
Interface Name : bfd-rncv1
Oper State     : connected
Dest IP        : 172.16.0.252
Src IP         : 172.16.0.251
...

```

Next, configure under MCS the ring nodes on PE-1 and PE-2. This configuration will be used for the RNCV. The ring node configuration for CE-1 is shown below:

```

configure redundancy multi-chassis peer 192.0.2.2 mc-ring ring l2ring1
    ring-node "CE-1" create
        connectivity-verify
            dst-ip 172.16.0.1
            interval 1
            service-id 1
            vlan 1
            no shutdown
        exit
    exit
exit all

```

MC-Ring Configuration

Note that the **interval** parameter is the interval used to check the reachability of the CE nodes (configurable from 1 to 6000 minutes). A BFD failure will also be a trigger for a reachability check.

The configuration on PE-2 is identical and the configuration of the other ring nodes is similar..

Configure VLAN 3 to take path-b (default is path-a).

```
configure redundancy multi-chassis peer 192.0.2.2 mc-ring ring l2ring1
                                path-b
                                range 3-3
                                exit
exit all
```

MC-Ring Verification

Verify that MCS is up and running:

```
A:PE-1# show redundancy multi-chassis all
=====
Multi-Chassis Peers
=====
Peer IP          Src IP          Auth          Peer Admin    MC-Ring Oper MC-EP Adm
MCS Admin        MCS Oper        MCS State     MC-LAG Adm    MC-LAG Oper
-----
192.0.2.2        192.0.2.1      None          Enabled        inService    --
Enabled          Enabled         inSync        Disabled       Disabled
=====
```

The output shows that MCS is administrative and operational up and that both peers are synchronized. MC-ring is operational in service.

The following output shows more detailed information about the configured ring:

```
A:PE-1# show redundancy multi-chassis mc-ring peer 192.0.2.2 ring l2ring1 detail
=====
Multi-Chassis MC-Ring Detailed Information
=====
Peer           : 192.0.2.2
Ring Type      : Layer 2
Sync Tag       : l2ring1
Port ID        : 1/1/1
Admin State    : inService
Oper State     : connected
Admin Change   : 11/05/2009 21:22:29
Oper Change    : 11/05/2009 21:22:29
Failure Reason : None
Control B Path : No
-----
In Band Control Path
```

```

-----
Service ID       : 1
Interface Name   : bfd-rncv1
Oper State      : connected
Dest IP         : 172.16.0.252
Src IP          : 172.16.0.251
Debounce State  : inService
Debounce Max    : 10 s
Debounce Guard  : 60 s
-----

```

VLAN Managed Range

```

-----
full range
-----

```

VLAN Map B Path Provisioned

```

-----
range 3-3
-----

```

VLAN Map Excluded Path Provisioned

```

-----
no range
-----

```

VLAN Map B Path Operational

```

-----
range 3-3
-----

```

VLAN Map Excluded Path Operational

```

-----
no range
-----

```

The output above shows that the ring **l2ring1** on port 1/1/1 is in service and connected. Ring-node Connectivity Check (BFD) is running on **interface bfd-rncv1** in service **1**. All VLANs on port 1/1/1 use path-a (default) except VLAN 3, which uses path-b.

The BSA peer with the lower IP address (the master) will put the SAPs configured for path-a in operational up state while the SAPs configured in path-b will be put in operational down state. The other BSA peer will do the reverse. This is done to prevent loops in the ring.

Note that no VLANs are configured to be excluded from the paths. If a VLAN is configured to be excluded from the paths, the respective SAPs of this VLAN on both BSA nodes will be operationally up.

Check which ring-nodes are configured and connected:

```

A:PE-1# show redundancy multi-chassis mc-ring peer 192.0.2.2 ring l2ring1 ring-node
=====

```

MC-Ring Node entries

```

=====
Name                               Loc Oper St.      Failure Reason
  In Use                           Rem Oper St.
-----
CE-1                               connected         None
  No                               notTested
CE-2                               connected         None
  No                               notTested
CE-3                               connected         None

```

MC-Ring Configuration

```

      No                notTested
CE-4      connected      None
      No                notTested
-----
No. of MC-Ring Node entries: 4
=====
A:PE-1#
```

The output above shows that four ring-nodes are connected. Only the master will send RNCV messages to the ring-nodes. As soon as a ring failure occurs, the BFD session goes down and both BSA nodes send out RNCV messages to see which ring-nodes are connected. Note that when the reachability of the CE nodes is determined, the RNCV messages will be sent at a continuous interval (see above).

More detail about each ring-node can be provided with following command:

```

A:PE-1# show redundancy multi-chassis mc-ring peer 192.0.2.2 ring l2ring1 ring-node CE-1
detail
=====
Multi-Chassis MC-Ring Node Detailed Information
=====
Peer           : 192.0.2.2
Sync Tag       : l2ring1
Node Name      : CE-1
Oper State Loc : connected
Oper State Rem : notTested
In Use         : False
Admin Change   : 11/05/2009 21:21:30
Oper Change    : 11/05/2009 21:22:32
Failure Reason : None
-----
Ring Node Connectivity Verification
-----
Admin State    : inService
Service ID     : 1
Encap Value    : 1
Dest IP        : 172.16.0.1
Src IP         : None
Interval       : 1 minutes
Src MAC        : None
=====
A:PE-1#
```

Unicast Services Configuration

Figure 182 shows the logical setup of the services that will be created. Note that a mesh SDP is used between PE-1 and PE-2. A spoke SDP could also be used.

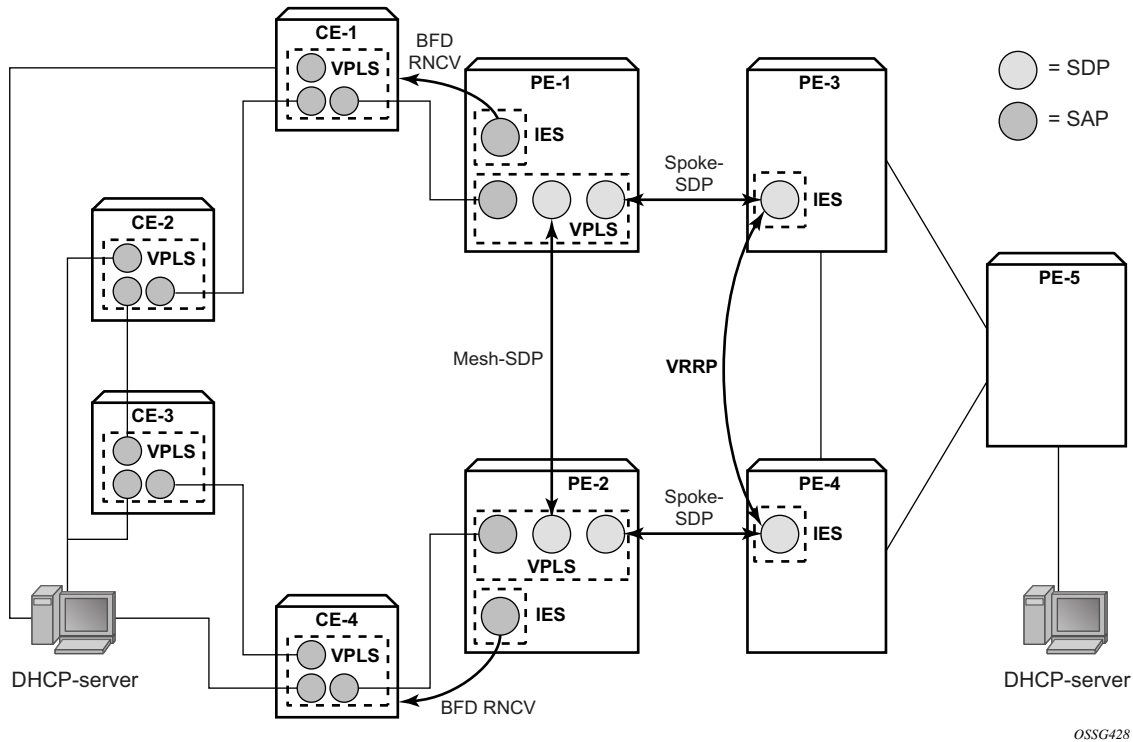


Figure 182: Unicast Services — Logical Topology

In this setup, two unicast services (VPLS 2 and VPLS 3) are created. VPLS 2 uses path-a and VPLS 3 uses path-b.

The services use a mesh SDP between PE-1 and PE-2 and a spoke-SDP between PE-1/PE-3 and another spoke SDP between PE-2/PE-4. On PE-3 and PE-4 a spoke SDP terminated IES is configured with a VRRP default gateway address. The VRRP packets are switched through the BSAs.

IGMP snooping and ESM are configured on both services. ESM is required since the BSA node must know which ring-node each subscriber is connected to. In this setup, the intermediate destination identifier (int_dest_id) will be returned by Option 254 in x Dynamic Host Control Protocol (DHCP). ESM configuration details are outside the scope of this document. Refer to the appropriate platform OS Triple Play Guide.

Unicast Services Configuration

The following output shows the configuration of VPLS 2 on PE-1:

```
configure service
  vpls 2 customer 1 create
    description "VLAN_2"
    split-horizon-group "RSHG" residential-group create
    exit
    sap 1/1/1:2.* split-horizon-group "RSHG" create
      dhcp
        snoop
        lease-populate 10
        no shutdown
      exit
      anti-spoof ip-mac
      sub-sla-mgmt
        def-sub-profile "initial"
        def-sla-profile "initial"
        sub-ident-policy "speedy"
        multi-sub-sap 10
        no shutdown
      exit
    exit
  mesh-sdp 12:2 create
    dhcp
      snoop
    exit
  exit
  spoke-sdp 13:2 create
    dhcp
      snoop
    exit
  exit
  no shutdown
exit
exit all
```

The configuration of VPLS 3 is similar. The configuration of VPLS 2 and 3 are similar on PE-2.

The output below shows the subscriber management configuration on PE-1. Similar configuration is required on PE-2.

```
configure subscriber-mgmt
  sla-profile "initial" create
  exit
  sub-profile "initial" create
  exit
  sub-ident-policy "speedy" create
    strings-from-option 254
  exit
exit all
```

Also, configure VLAN 2 and 3 on all the ring-nodes. This configuration is straightforward. Below is an example of the VLAN 2 configuration on CE-1. In this example, the client is connect to port 1/1/3 and should send packets with an outer tag of 2:

```
configure service
    vpls 2 customer 1 create
        sap 1/1/1:2.* create
        exit
        sap 1/1/2:2.* create
        exit
        sap 1/1/3:2.* create
        exit
        no shutdown
    exit
exit all
```

In the example, VLAN 2.* and 3.* is used to allow for transparent transport of the customer VLAN.

The IES service where VPLS 2 terminates looks like this on BSR PE-3:

```
configure service
    ies 2 customer 1 create
        interface "VLAN_2" create
            address 10.0.2.3/24
            dhcp
                server 10.10.10.10
                trusted
                no shutdown
            exit
            ip-mtu 1500
            vrrp 2
                backup 10.0.2.254
                ping-reply
            exit
            local-proxy-arp
            spoke-sdp 31:2 create
            exit
        exit
        no shutdown
    exit
exit all
```

And on PE-4:

```
configure service
    ies 2 customer 1 create
        interface "VLAN_2" create
            address 10.0.2.4/24
            dhcp
                server 10.10.10.10
                trusted
                no shutdown
            exit
            ip-mtu 1500
            vrrp 2
```

Unicast Services Configuration

```
        backup 10.0.2.254
        ping-reply
    exit
    local-proxy-arp
    spoke-sdp 42:2 create
    exit
exit
no shutdown
exit
exit all
```

Notice that the ip-mtu must be set to match the vc-mtu signaled by the other side of the spoke-SDP. Otherwise, the service will be operationally down with a ServiceMTUMismatch.

Note also in the configuration that DHCP relay is done by configuring a DHCP server under the IES interface.

The configuration of IES 3 on PE-3 and PE-4 is similar..

On PE-5 an IES interface is configured to the DHCP-server. The interface is configured with a Dot1Q encapsulated port because this port will be also be used for an interface to the multicast server.

```
configure service
    ies 2 customer 1 create
        interface "dhcp-server" create
            address 192.168.6.1/30
            sap 1/1/3:2 create
        exit
    exit
    no shutdown
exit
exit all
```


Unicast Services Verification

Request an IP address on VLAN 2 on CE-1. On BSA routers PE-1 and PE-2 following DHCP info can be checked:

```
A:PE-1# show service id 2 dhcp lease-state
=====
DHCP lease state table, service 2
=====
IP Address      Mac Address      Sap/Sdp Id      Remaining   Lease   MC
                  LifeTime      Origin      Stdbby
-----
10.0.2.107      00:00:64:01:01:02 1/1/1:2.*      09d07h38m   DHCP
-----
Number of lease states : 1
=====
```

ESM show commands can be used to obtain the subscriber identity, IP address, MAC address and SLA-profile:

```
A:PE-1# show service active-subscribers
=====
Active Subscribers
=====
Subscriber subscriber_1_vlan_2 (initial)
-----
(1) SLA Profile Instance sap:1/1/1:2.* - sla:initial
-----
IP Address      MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin
-----
10.0.2.107      00:00:64:01:01:02 N/A      DHCP
-----
Number of active subscribers : 1
=====
```

The following command gives more information about a specific subscriber:

```
A:PE-1# show service active-subscribers subscriber subscriber_1_vlan_2 detail
=====
Active Subscribers
=====
Subscriber subscriber_1_vlan_2 (initial)
-----
I. Sched. Policy : N/A
E. Sched. Policy : N/A
Q Frame-Based Ac*: Disabled
Acct. Policy      : N/A
Rad. Acct. Pol.   : N/A
Dupl. Acct. Pol.  : N/A
E. Agg Rate Limit: Max
Collect Stats     : Disabled
```

Unicast Services Configuration

```
ANCP Pol.          : N/A
HostTrk Pol.       : N/A
Sub. ANCP-String   : "subscriber_1_vlan_2"
Sub. Int Dest Id   : "CE-1"
Host Trk Rate Adj: N/A
-----
(1) SLA Profile Instance
    - sap:1/1/1:2.* (VPLS 2)
    - sla:initial
-----
Description          : (Not Specified)
Host Limit           : No Limit
Ingress Qos-Policy   : 1                      Egress Qos-Policy : 1
Ingress Queuing Type : Service-queuing
Ingress Filter-Id    : N/A                      Egress Filter-Id   : N/A
Ingress Report-Rate  : N/A
Egress Report-Rate   : N/A
Egress Remarking     : from Sap Qos
Credit Control Pol. : N/A
-----
-----
IP Address      MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin
-----
10.0.2.107      00:00:64:01:01:02 N/A      DHCP
```

The output above gives more details about which ring-node the customer is connected to (Sub. Int Dest Id : CE-1), which QoS policies are applied, statistics of each queue,

MCS Verification

Check if the two redundant peers are in sync and check the detailed MCS info:

```
A:PE-1# show redundancy multi-chassis sync peer 192.0.2.2
=====
Multi-chassis Peer Table
=====
Peer
-----
Peer IP Address      : 192.0.2.2
Description           : (Not Specified)
Authentication        : Disabled
Source IP Address     : 192.0.2.1
Admin State           : Enabled
-----
Sync-status
-----
Client Applications   : IGMP Snooping SUBMGMT RING
Sync Admin State      : Up
Sync Oper State       : Up
DB Sync State         : inSync
Num Entries           : 11
Lcl Deleted Entries   : 0
Alarm Entries         : 0
Rem Num Entries       : 11
Rem Lcl Deleted Entries : 0
```

```

Rem Alarm Entries      : 0
=====
MCS Application Stats
=====
Application           : igmp
Num Entries           : 0
Lcl Deleted Entries   : 0
Alarm Entries         : 0
-----
Rem Num Entries       : 0
Rem Lcl Deleted Entries : 0
Rem Alarm Entries     : 0
-----
Application           : igmpSnooping
Num Entries           : 0
Lcl Deleted Entries   : 0
Alarm Entries         : 0
-----
Rem Num Entries       : 0
Rem Lcl Deleted Entries : 0
Rem Alarm Entries     : 0
-----
Application           : subMgmt
Num Entries           : 1
Lcl Deleted Entries   : 0
Alarm Entries         : 0
-----
Rem Num Entries       : 1
Rem Lcl Deleted Entries : 0
Rem Alarm Entries     : 0
-----
Application           : srrp
Num Entries           : 0
Lcl Deleted Entries   : 0
Alarm Entries         : 0
-----
Rem Num Entries       : 0
Rem Lcl Deleted Entries : 0
Rem Alarm Entries     : 0
-----
Application           : mcRing
Num Entries           : 10
Lcl Deleted Entries   : 0
Alarm Entries         : 0
-----
Rem Num Entries       : 10
Rem Lcl Deleted Entries : 0
Rem Alarm Entries     : 0
-----
Application           : mldSnooping
Num Entries           : 0
Lcl Deleted Entries   : 0
Alarm Entries         : 0
-----
Rem Num Entries       : 0
Rem Lcl Deleted Entries : 0
Rem Alarm Entries     : 0
-----
Application           : dhcpServer

```

Unicast Services Configuration

```
Num Entries           : 0
Lcl Deleted Entries   : 0
Alarm Entries         : 0
-----
Rem Num Entries       : 0
Rem Lcl Deleted Entries : 0
Rem Alarm Entries     : 0
-----
Application           : subHostTrk
Num Entries           : 0
Lcl Deleted Entries   : 0
Alarm Entries         : 0
-----
Rem Num Entries       : 0
Rem Lcl Deleted Entries : 0
Rem Alarm Entries     : 0
-----
=====
A:PE-1#
```

The output shows that both MCS peers are in sync and that entries are populated for MC-ring and Subscriber Management (DHCP lease states).

Notice that the lease states are also populated on PE-2:

```
A:PE-2# show service id 2 dhcp lease-state
=====
DHCP lease state table, service 2
=====
IP Address      Mac Address      Sap/Sdp Id      Remaining   Lease   MC
                  LifeTime      Origin      Stdbby
-----
10.0.2.107      00:00:64:01:01:02  1/1/2:2.*      09d06h16m  DHCP    Yes
-----
Number of lease states : 1
=====
A:PE-2#
```

The output is similar to the output on PE-1 except that on PE-2 the flag MC-Stdbby is set to yes, which implies that this node is in standby mode for this VLAN.

This can be verified by looking at the status of the SAP on PE-1 and PE-2. On PE-1 the SAP is operationally up:

```
A:PE-1# show service id 2 sap 1/1/1:2.*
=====
Service Access Points(SAP)
=====
Service Id      : 2
SAP             : 1/1/1:2.*          Encap           : qinq
QinQ Dot1p     : Default
Description     : (Not Specified)
Admin State     : Up                 Oper State      : Up
Flags           : None
Multi Svc Site  : None
Last Status Change : 11/06/2009 17:17:26
```

```
Last Mgmt Change   : 11/04/2009 22:51:15
```

On PE-2 the situation is different:

```
A:PE-2# show service id 2 sap 1/1/2:2.*
```

```
=====
```

```
Service Access Points(SAP)
```

```
=====
```

```
Service Id       : 2
```

```
SAP              : 1/1/2:2.*           Encap              : qinq
```

```
QinQ Dot1p      : Default
```

```
Description     : (Not Specified)
```

```
Admin State     : Up                   Oper State          : Down
```

```
Flags           : StandByForMcRing
```

```
Multi Svc Site  : None
```

```
Last Status Change : 11/06/2009 18:07:30
```

```
Last Mgmt Change  : 11/04/2009 23:43:16
```

```
=====
```

Notice that the SAP on PE-2 is operationally down and that a flag is set: StandByForMcRing.

The situation is reversed for VLAN 3 since it was configured for path-b; here the SAP on PE-1 is operationally down and the SAP on PE-2 is operationally up.

Ring Failure Verification

In case a ring failure occurs (either ring link failure or ring-node failure), the IB-RCC BFD session between PE-1 and PE-2 will go down and both nodes will put the SAP in operational up state.

Break the link between CE-2 and CE-1.

Observe that the ring is now in a **broken** state:

```
A:PE-1# show redundancy multi-chassis mc-ring peer 192.0.2.2
```

```
=====
```

```
MC-Ring entries
```

```
=====
```

Sync Tag	Oper State	Failure Reason
l2ring1	broken	None

```
-----
```

```
No. of MC-Ring entries: 1
```

```
=====
```

Unicast Services Configuration

The following command shows the BSA to ring nodes connections:

```
A:PE-1# show redundancy multi-chassis mc-ring peer 192.0.2.2 ring l2ring1 ring-node
=====
MC-Ring Node entries
=====
```

Name	Loc Oper St.	Failure Reason
In Use	Rem Oper St.	
CE-1	connected	None
Yes	disconnected	
CE-2	disconnected	None
No	connected	
CE-3	disconnected	None
No	connected	
CE-4	disconnected	None
No	connected	

```
-----
No. of MC-Ring Node entries: 4
=====
```

The output shows that CE-1 is connected to PE-1. CE-2, CE-3 and CE4 are connected to PE-2.

Notice that the SAPs on both PE-1 and PE-2 are now operationally up. This can be checked with the **show service id 2 sap 1/1/1:2.*** command on PE1 and the **show service id 2 sap 1/1/2:2.*** command on PE2.

Following the ring failure, the BSA nodes send a MAC address withdrawal message to all the SDP peers configured in the VPLS.

Multicast Service Configuration

In general, BTV (Broadcast TV) services are delivered to the DSLAM on a different VLAN using a different VPLS service. The DSLAM can send/relay IGMP group membership messages if it wants to receive a multicast stream. At the BSA level (PE-1 and PE-2), IGMP snooping is configured. At the BSR level (PE-3, PE-4) and the PE where the video source is located, PIM is configured and IGMP is configured on the IES service facing the BSA ring. The BSA ring consists of concatenated spoke SDPs. The spoke SDP ring is not closed between PE-3 and PE-4 to avoid a loop. [Figure 183](#) shows the logical setup for the multicast service with a MC-ring.

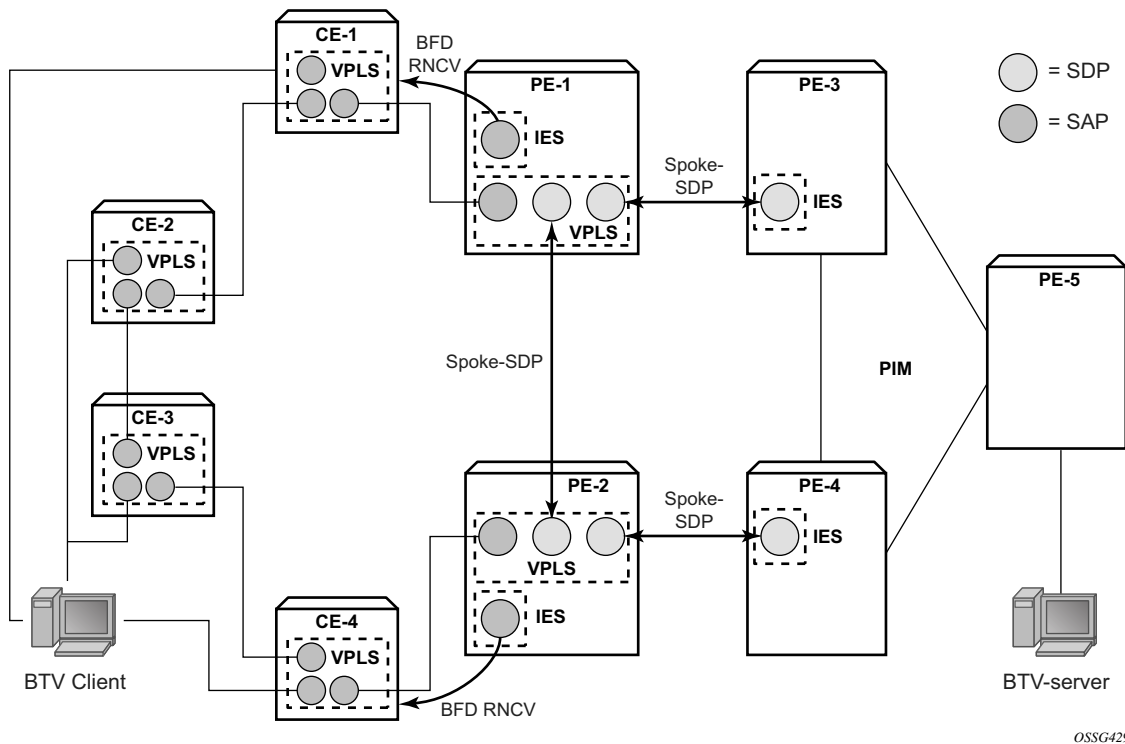


Figure 183: Multicast Service — Logical Setup

Configure an interface to the multicast server on PE-5:

```
configure service
  ies 3 customer 1 create
    interface "mcast-server" create
      address 192.168.7.1/30
      sap 1/1/3:3 create
    exit
  exit
  no shutdown
```

Multicast Service Configuration

```
        exit
exit all
```

Configure a VPLS service on PE-1 and PE-2. The configuration on PE-1 is shown below. The VPLS configuration on PE-2 is similar.

```
configure service
    vpls 4 customer 1 create
        description "Multicast VLAN"
        igmp-snooping
        no shutdown
    exit
    sap 1/1/1:4.* create
    exit
    spoke-sdp 12:4 create
        igmp-snooping
        mrouter-port
    exit
    exit
    spoke-sdp 13:4 create
        igmp-snooping
        mrouter-port
    exit
    exit
    no shutdown
    exit
exit all
```

Notice that igmp-snooping has been enabled and that the spoke SDPs are configured as mrouter-ports in order to forward the IGMP joins to the BSRs.

Configure a spoke SDP terminated IES service on PE-3:

```
configure service
    ies 4 customer 1 create
        interface "btv-dst" create
            address 10.0.4.3/24
            ip-mtu 1500
            spoke-sdp 31:4 create
        exit
    exit
    no shutdown
    exit
exit all
```

On PE-4:

```
configure service
    ies 4 customer 1 create
        interface "btv-dst" create
            address 10.0.4.4/24
            ip-mtu 1500
            spoke-sdp 42:4 create
        exit
    exit
    no shutdown
```



```

        exit
exit all

```

Notice that also here the **ip-mtu** must be configured to bring the service up. The **ip-mtu** is required to have an MTU match on the spoke SDP between the IES service and the VPLS service.

Configure PIM on PE-3, PE-4 and PE-5. The configuration on PE-3 is shown below. The PIM configuration on PE-4 and PE-5 is similar.

```

configure router pim
    interface "system"
    exit
    interface "int-PE-3-PE-4"
        priority 10
    exit
    interface "int-PE-3-PE-5"
    exit
    interface "btv-dst"
    exit
    rp
        static
            address 192.0.2.5
            group-prefix 224.0.0.0/4
        exit
    exit
exit
exit all

```

Note that PE-5 is statically configured as the RP. This is just an example. Different configurations can be used.

Configure IGMP on PE-3/PE-4:

```

configure router igmp interface btv-dst no shutdown

```

The service should also be configured on all ring nodes. Below, the configuration on CE-2 is shown. Similar configurations are required on the other ring-nodes.

```

configure service
    vpls 4 customer 1 create
        sap 1/1/1:4.* create
        exit
        sap 1/1/2:4.* create
        exit
        sap 1/1/3:4.* create
        exit
        no shutdown
    exit
exit all

```

Multicast Service Verification

Configure the multicast server to send one or more multicast streams. Have the BTV client connected to CE-2 send an IGMP join message for this multicast stream.

On the BSA routers (PE-1/PE-2), IGMP snooping can be checked:

```
A:PE-1# show service id 4 mfib
=====
Multicast FIB, Service 4
=====
Source Address  Group Address          Sap/Sdp Id              Svc Id  Fwd/Blk
-----
*               *               sdp:12:4                Local    Fwd
                  sdp:13:4                Local    Fwd
*               225.1.1.1    sap:1/1/1:4.*          Local    Fwd
                  sdp:12:4                Local    Fwd
                  sdp:13:4                Local    Fwd
-----
Number of entries: 2
=====
```

On PE-3/PE-4 the IGMP groups can be checked:

```
A:PE-3# show router igmp group
=====
IGMP Groups
=====

(*,225.1.1.1)                Up Time : 0d 00:01:03
    Fwd List  : btv-dst
-----
(*,G)/(S,G) Entries : 1
=====
```

Following command shows that the MCS peers are synchronized and that there is one IGMP entry on both peers:

```
A:PE-1# show redundancy multi-chassis sync peer 192.0.2.2 detail
=====
Multi-chassis Peer Table
=====
Peer
-----
Peer IP Address      : 192.0.2.2
Description           : (Not Specified)
Authentication       : Disabled
Source IP Address     : 192.0.2.1
Admin State          : Enabled
-----
Sync-status
-----
Client Applications   : IGMP Snooping SUBMGMT RING
Sync Admin State      : Up
Sync Oper State       : Up
DB Sync State         : inSync
```

```

Num Entries          : 12
Lcl Deleted Entries  : 0
Alarm Entries        : 0
Rem Num Entries      : 12
Rem Lcl Deleted Entries : 0
Rem Alarm Entries    : 0
=====
MCS Application Stats
=====
Application          : igmp
Num Entries          : 1
Lcl Deleted Entries  : 0
Alarm Entries        : 0
-----
Rem Num Entries      : 1
Rem Lcl Deleted Entries : 0
Rem Alarm Entries    : 0

```

Notice that the MFIB on PE-2 has also been updated:

```

A:PE-2# show service id 4 mfib
=====
Multicast FIB, Service 4
=====
Source Address  Group Address      Sap/Sdp Id          Svc Id  Fwd/Blk
-----
*               *                sdp:21:4            Local    Fwd
                  sdp:24:4            Local    Fwd
*               225.1.1.1        sap:1/1/2:4.*       Local    Fwd
                  sdp:21:4            Local    Fwd
                  sdp:24:4            Local    Fwd
-----
Number of entries: 2
=====
A:PE-2#

```

The SAP on PE-2 is down to avoid duplicated traffic and loops:

```

A:PE-2# show service id 4 sap 1/1/2:4.*
=====
Service Access Points(SAP)
=====
Service Id          : 4
SAP                  : 1/1/2:4.*          Encap          : qinq
QinQ Dot1p          : Default
Description          : (Not Specified)
Admin State          : Up                  Oper State      : Down
Flags                : StandByForMcRing
Multi Svc Site       : None
Last Status Change   : 11/06/2009 18:56:25
Last Mgmt Change     : 11/04/2009 23:43:16
=====

```

If a failure occurs in the ring-node, the IB-RCC BFD session between PE-1 and PE-2 will go down and the SAP on both PE-1 and PE-2 will be put in operational up state.

Configuration Notes

RNCV (used for ring-node connectivity check) and BFD (used for ring control connection) can either run on the same VLAN in the same IES or VPRN service or can run on different VLAN.

MCS for IGMP or DHCP states on a MC-ring requires ESM since the BSA nodes must know which ring node a subscriber is connected to in case a ring failure occurs. The ring-node name is returned through a Python script, a RADIUS server or through a local user database. This string (int_dest_id) must match one of the ring nodes defined in the redundancy configuration.

Convergence time after a ring failure should be $3 * \text{BFD timer} + \text{MCS convergence time}$.
Convergence time after a BSA failure should be likewise.

Note that a debounce timer runs on the MC-ring peers. After a ring failure, the MC-ring converges immediately (after the BFD session times out) and the debounce timer is started. After the ring is fixed and the BFD session is up the MC-ring converges immediately again. If another ring failure occurs before the debounce timer expires, convergence will be slowed down by two (2) seconds. If a third ring failure occurs before the debounce timer expires, four second delays are introduced. In case of a fourth failure, an eight second delay is introduced. 200 seconds of delay is the maximum. The debounce timer can be configured under the MC-ring.

Conclusion

This section covers an extension of dual homing support in TPSDA networks based on Layer 2 CO model. The extension addresses networks where multiple access nodes (for example, DSLAMs) are connected in a single ring. The examples show the use of a ring with four access nodes in a ring. The behavior is described in normal operation and in case a failure occurs in the access ring.

Python Cache Support for ESM Applications

In This Chapter

This section provides information about Python cache support for ESM applications.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 1164](#)
- [Overview on page 1165](#)
- [Configuration on page 1166](#)
- [Conclusion on page 1187](#)

Applicability

This feature is applicable to 7750 SR-7/12/12e systems, and 7450 systems in mixed mode, with CPM3 or later. It is also applicable to the virtualized simulator but only when running as a distributed simulator. It is not applicable to the 7750 SR c4/12.

The configuration was tested with SR OS release 12.0.R4.

Overview

SR OS sports an embedded Python scripting engine which can be used to manipulate selected messages of protocols including DHCPv4, DHCPv6, RADIUS and Diameter.

Python cache provides a central key-value memory cache with a set of APIs allowing Python scripts to store and retrieve strings across different runs of the same or even different Python scripts.

The following are some basic concepts of Python cache:

- Multiple Python policies can be defined, and each Python policy has a separate cache; only scripts configured in the Python policy can access and share that policy's cache.
- A cache entry consists of a key and a value, both of them being strings. The key is used to search and fetch the cache entry.
- A cache entry has a lifetime and the system automatically removes expired entries.

The following are the Python cache APIs:

- `alc.cache.save(val,key)`: Save the value identified by the key into the cache.
- `alc.cache.retrieve(key)`: Return the cached entry's value identified by the key.
- `alc.cache.clear(key)`: Remove the entry identified by the key from the cache.
- `cache.get_lifetime(key)`: The system returns an integer indicating the remaining lifetime of the specified entry expressed in seconds.
- `cache.set_lifetime(key,new_lifetime)`: `new_lifetime` is an integer; the system sets the remaining lifetime of the specified entry (in seconds).

Configuration

The test topology is shown in [Figure 184](#).

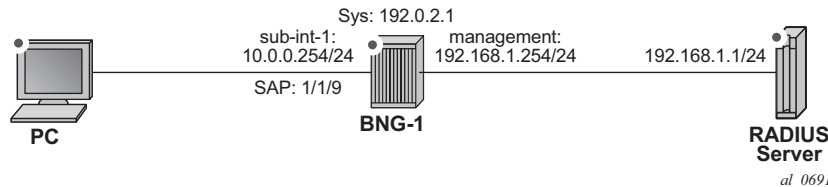


Figure 184: Test Topology

The example shows how the Python cache can be used to store multiple class attributes from the RADIUS access-accept packets and reflect them into RADIUS accounting request packets (start/interim-update/stop).

Test setup:

- A PC is used as DHCPv4 host, connect to SAP 1/1/9 of BNG-1
- SAP 1/1/9 is attached to group interface grp-int-1, which is under subscriber interface sub-int-1 of IES 1
- DHCP host is authenticated via RADIUS server, which resides in management routing instance of BNG-1
- A Python script python-script-1 stores all class attributes in access-accept and add stored attributes into RADIUS accounting requests.
- RADIUS user-name is used as cache key, which is the MAC address of the PC.

The Python cache configuration commands are shown below.

```

config>python>py-policy>
[no] cache [create]
      [no] entry-size <size>
      [no] max-entries <count>
      [no] max-entry-lifetime [days <days>] [hrs <hours>]
                                [min <minutes>] [sec <seconds>]
      [no] mcs-peer <ip-address> sync-tag <[32 chars max]>
      [no] minimum-lifetimes
            [no] high-availability <seconds>
            [no] multi-chassis-redundancy <seconds>
            [no] persistence <seconds>
      [no] persistence
      [no] shutdown
  
```

```
config>system>persistence>
python-policy-cache
[no] description <desc>
[no] location <cflash-id>

config>redundancy>multi-chassis>peer>sync>
[no] python
```

Refer to the SR OS Triple Play Guide for details of above commands. The basic configuration of the Python cache is the **cache create** statement in the python-policy as shown below:

```
config>python>py-policy>
-----
cache create
no shutdown
exit
radius access-accept direction ingress script "python-script-1"
radius accounting-request direction egress script "python-script-1"
-----
```

The **cache create** configuration enables the cache support for the Python policy. The system's behavior can be tuned in the following aspects:

- Configure **entry-size** and **max-entries** to limit the memory usage.
- Configure **max-entry-lifetime** to specify the maximum lifetime.
- Enable **persistence** to make cache entries persistent across reboot.
- Configure **mcs-peer** to enable Multi-Chassis Synchronization.

In this example only the basic cache configuration is used.

Step 0. Configuring ESM

As a prerequisite ESM must be enabled and as such BNG-1 is configured as follows:

- An **authentication-policy radius-auth-policy-1** is used to authenticate DHCPv4 hosts on group interface grp-int-1.
- A **radius-accounting-policy radius-acct-policy-1** is configured in the **sub-profile sub-profile-1** to enable RADIUS accounting.
- The **user-name** is included in **radius-acct-policy-1** since the User-Name is used as cache entry key.
- Interim-update is enabled in the **radius-acct-policy-1** with an interval 5 minutes.
- The local DHCPv4 server **dhcpv4-svr** is used to assign address to hosts.

```
#-----
echo "Management Router Configuration"
#-----
    router management
        radius-server
            server "radius-svr-1" address 192.168.1.1 secret
                                     "iaCuILBunKirJurE4jK2URAnzip6nK32" hash2 create
        exit
    exit
exit
#-----
echo "Router (Network Side) Configuration"
#-----
    router
        dhcp
            local-dhcp-server "dhcpv4-svr" create
        exit
    exit
    interface "system"
        address 192.0.2.1/32
        local-dhcp-server "dhcpv4-svr"
        no shutdown
    exit
exit
#-----
echo "Subscriber-mgmt Configuration"
#-----
    subscriber-mgmt
        authentication-policy "radius-auth-policy-1" create
            password "mcgLj0q0695Dp.pD5DthrCv9Bu8X2qPVSvGYWQmCgÜg" hash2
            radius-server-policy "radius-svr-policy-1"
        exit
        radius-accounting-policy "radius-acct-policy-1" create
            update-interval 5
            update-interval-jitter absolute 0
            include-radius-attribute
```

```

        user-name
    exit
    radius-server-policy "radius-svr-policy-1"
exit
sla-profile "sla-profile-1" create
exit
sub-profile "sub-profile-1" create
    radius-accounting-policy "radius-acct-policy-1"
exit
exit
#-----
echo "Service Configuration"
#-----
service
    ies 1 customer 1 create
        subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
            address 10.0.0.254/24
            group-interface "grp-int-1" create
                dhcp
                    server 192.0.2.1
                    gi-address 10.0.0.254
                    no shutdown
                exit
            authentication-policy "radius-auth-policy-1"
            sap 1/1/9 create
                sub-sla-mgmt
                    def-sub-id use-auto-id
                    def-sub-profile "sub-profile-1"
                    def-sla-profile "sla-profile-1"
                    no shutdown
                exit
            exit
        exit
    exit
    no shutdown
exit
exit
#-----
echo "Local DHCP Server (Base Router) Configuration"
#-----
router
    dhcp
        local-dhcp-server "dhcpv4-svr" create
            use-gi-address
            pool "addr-pool-1" create
                subnet 10.0.0.0/24 create
                    options
                        subnet-mask 255.255.255.0
                        default-router 10.0.0.254
                    exit
                address-range 10.0.0.1 10.0.0.100
            exit
        exit
        no shutdown
    exit
exit
exit
#-----
echo "AAA Configuration"

```

Configuration

```
#-----  
    aaa  
        radius-server-policy "radius-svr-policy-1" create  
            servers  
                router "management"  
                    server 1 name "radius-svr-1"  
            exit  
        exit  
    exit
```

Step 1. Create the Python script file.

A Python script is created and stored on the local storage, for example as CF3:\python_cache.py. This script handles the RADIUS packets listed below:

- Access-Accept — All class attributes from the access-accept packets are stored in the cache by combining them into a single string. The user-name (MAC address) is used as the key, and the format of this string is:
 - 1st byte is the number of class attributes in this string
 - 2nd – nth bytes: each byte holds the number of bytes for class-n attributes
 - Rest of bytes: combined string of class-1 to class-n
- Acct-Start — Retrieves the stored combined class string using the user name as key. The combined string is parsed and split into the individual class attributes and then inserted into the packet.
- Interim-Update — The cached entry is parsed and the stored class attributes are inserted, then the lifetime is reset to 15 minutes. This is greater than the interim-update interval (5 minutes) so the cached entry will not expire before next interim-update arrives.
- Acct-Stop — The cached entry is parsed and the stored class attributes are inserted, then the cached entry is removed.

Note: There is some error checking and exception handling logic in the script which causes the script to drop the packet if certain errors occur. This script is only an overview example so the error handling logic should be added according to real application requirements. In addition to the exception handling logic included in the script, the **action-on-fail** command could be used in the **python-script** command to define system's action upon failed execution, for example when an un-captured exception is encountered.

```
#-----
# Name:      Alcatel-Lucent SR OS Python Cache Support Example
# Purpose:   This script is used to demonstrate SR OS python cache support for
#            the following use case:
#            RADIUS sever returns multiple Class attributes in
#            access-accept, these Class attributes need to be reflected
#            in accounting request packets
#-----
from alc import cache
from alc import radius
import struct
def main():
    radius_header = radius.header()
    if radius_header['code'] == 2: # in case of access-accept
        entry_key = radius.attributes.get(1) # use user-name as the cache entry
                                           # key
        if entry_key == "": #drop the packet if there is no user-name present
            radius.drop()
            return
        class_list = radius.attributes.getTuple(25) # get a list of Class
```

Configuration

```

# attributes
if class_list == (): #drop the packet if there is no class present
    radius.drop()
    return
class_len_str = ''
class_str = ''
class_count = 0
for radius_class in class_list:
    class_len_str += chr(len(radius_class))
    class_str += radius_class
    class_count += 1
entry_val = chr(class_count)+class_len_str+class_str
try:
    cache.save(entry_val,entry_key)
except:
    radius.drop() #drop the packet if cache.save fails
    return

elif radius_header['code'] == 4: # in case of acct-request
    entry_key = radius.attributes.get(1)
    if entry_key == "": #drop the packet if there is no user-name present
        radius.drop()
        return
    try:
        entry_val = cache.retrieve(entry_key)
    except:#drop the packet if cache.retrieve fails
        radius.drop()
        return
    class_count = ord(entry_val[0])
    pos = class_count+1
    class_list = []
    for i in range(class_count):
        class_len = ord(entry_val[i+1])
        class_list.append(entry_val[pos:pos+class_len])
        pos += class_len
    radius.attributes.set(25,tuple(class_list))
    acct_type=struct.unpack('>I',radius.attributes.get(40))[0]
    if acct_type == 2: # in case of acct-stop
        cache.clear(entry_key) # remove the cache entry
    elif acct_type == 3: # in case of interim-update
        try:
            cache.set_lifetime(entry_key,900) # reset the lifetime
        except:#drop the packet if cache.set_lifetime fails
            radius.drop()
            return

main()
```


Step 2. Configure `python-script` and `python-policy`.

- Enable **`python-script-1`** to process received (ingress) access-accept packets and transmitted (egress) accounting-request packets.
- Enable the Python cache by configuring **`cache create`** in **`python-policy-1`**.
- Reference **`python-policy-1`** in the **`radius-server-policy-1`**.

```
#-----
echo "PYTHON Configuration"
#-----
python
    python-script "python-script-1" create
        primary-url "cf3:/python_cache.py"
        no shutdown
    exit
    python-policy "python-policy-1" create
        cache create
        no shutdown
    exit
    radius access-accept direction ingress script "python-script-1"
    radius accounting-request direction egress script "python-script-1"
exit
exit
#-----
echo "AAA Configuration"
#-----
aaa
    radius-server-policy "radius-svr-policy-1" create
        python-policy "python-policy-1"
```

Step 3. Configure the RADIUS server.

- Configure the RADIUS server so that:
 - The DHCP host is authenticated via its MAC address.
 - The RADIUS server returns the following class attributes and values in access-accept packets:
 - “Class-1”
 - “Class-22”
 - “Class-333”

Step 4. Enable debug on BNG-1 to observe the Python cache in action.

- Enable the following debug on BNG-1:

```
debug
  router "Base"
    ip
      dhcp
        detail-level low
        mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
      exit
    exit
  exit
router "management"
  radius
    packet-type authentication accounting coa
    detail-level medium
  exit
exit
python
  python-script "python-script-1"
  script-all-info
exit
exit
exit

A:BNG-1>config>log# info
-----
  log-id 10
    from debug-trace
    to session
  exit
-----
```

Step 5. Initiate DHCPv4 on the PC.

- Initiate the DHCPv4 process on the PC. When the PC sends out a DHCPv4 discover message, BNG-1 contacts the RADIUS server to authenticate the user and a DHCPv4 ESM host is created.
- RADIUS accounting-start will be sent upon host creation and interim-update will be sent every 5 minutes.

The following describes the debug output:

- The system initiates RADIUS authentication upon receipt of a DHCP discovery message.
- The RADIUS server returns an access-accept with the three class attributes.
- The system executes python-script-1, stores the three class attributes.
- After the DHCP host is created, the system sends RADIUS accounting-start and interim-update messages in which python-script-1 adds the three stored class attributes.

```

26 2014/06/26 03:02:18.34 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base PIP
"PIP: DHCP
instance 1 (Base), interface index 3 (grp-int-1),
  received DHCP Boot Request on Interface grp-int-1 (1/1/9) Port 67

  H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb)  H/W Address Length: 6
  ciaddr: 0.0.0.0           yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
  siaddr: 0.0.0.0           giaddr: 0.0.0.0
  chaddr: 00:20:fc:1e:cd:53  xid: 0x1e866b74
"

27 2014/06/26 03:02:18.34 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 management RADIUS
"RADIUS: Transmit
  Access-Request(1) 192.168.1.1:1812 id 7 len 63 vrid 4095 pol radius-svr-policy -1
    USER NAME [1] 17 00:20:fc:1e:cd:53
    PASSWORD [2] 16 R/mc867ChKkdx50PJauB5U
    NAS IP ADDRESS [4] 4 192.168.1.254
"

28 2014/06/26 03:02:18.34 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 management RADIUS
"RADIUS: Receive
  Access-Accept(2) id 7 len 69 from 192.168.1.1:1812 vrid 4095 pol radius-svr-policy-1
    CLASS [25] 7 0x436c6173732d31
    CLASS [25] 8 0x436c6173732d3232
    CLASS [25] 9 0x436c6173732d333333
    USER NAME [1] 17 00:20:fc:1e:cd:53
"

29 2014/06/26 03:02:18.34 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base Python Output
"Python Output: python-script-1
"

30 2014/06/26 03:02:18.34 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base Python Result
"Python Result: python-script-1
"

```

Configuration

```
31 2014/06/26 03:02:18.34 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 management RADIUS
"RADIUS: Script
Access-Accept(2) id 7 len 69 from 192.168.1.1:1812 policy python-policy-1 stat us success
"

32 2014/06/26 03:02:18.34 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base PIP
"PIP: DHCP
instance 1 (Base),
    transmitted DHCP Boot Request to 192.0.2.1 Port 67

    H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb)  H/W Address Length: 6
    ciaddr: 0.0.0.0            yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
    siaddr: 0.0.0.0            giaddr: 10.0.0.254
    chaddr: 00:20:fc:1e:cd:53  xid: 0x1e866b74
"

33 2014/06/26 03:02:18.34 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base PIP
"PIP: DHCP
instance 1 (Base),
    received DHCP Boot Reply on 192.0.2.1 Port 67

    H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb)  H/W Address Length: 6
    ciaddr: 0.0.0.0            yiaddr: 10.0.0.1
    siaddr: 192.0.2.1          giaddr: 10.0.0.254
    chaddr: 00:20:fc:1e:cd:53  xid: 0x1e866b74
"

34 2014/06/26 03:02:18.34 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base PIP
"PIP: DHCP
instance 1 (Base), interface index 3 (grp-int-1),
    transmitted DHCP Boot Reply to Interface grp-int-1 (1/1/9) Port 68

    H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb)  H/W Address Length: 6
    ciaddr: 0.0.0.0            yiaddr: 10.0.0.1
    siaddr: 192.0.2.1          giaddr: 10.0.0.254
    chaddr: 00:20:fc:1e:cd:53  xid: 0x1e866b74
"

35 2014/06/26 03:02:18.34 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base PIP
"PIP: DHCP
instance 1 (Base), interface index 3 (grp-int-1),
    received DHCP Boot Request on Interface grp-int-1 (1/1/9) Port 67

    H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb)  H/W Address Length: 6
    ciaddr: 0.0.0.0            yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
    siaddr: 0.0.0.0            giaddr: 0.0.0.0
    chaddr: 00:20:fc:1e:cd:53  xid: 0x1e866b74
"

36 2014/06/26 03:02:18.35 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base PIP
"PIP: DHCP
instance 1 (Base),
    transmitted DHCP Boot Request to 192.0.2.1 Port 67

    H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb)  H/W Address Length: 6
    ciaddr: 0.0.0.0            yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
    siaddr: 0.0.0.0            giaddr: 10.0.0.254
    chaddr: 00:20:fc:1e:cd:53  xid: 0x1e866b74
"
```

```

37 2014/06/26 03:02:18.35 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base PIP
"PIP: DHCP
instance 1 (Base),
    received DHCP Boot Reply on 192.0.2.1 Port 67

    H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb)  H/W Address Length: 6
    ciaddr: 0.0.0.0            yiaddr: 10.0.0.1
    siaddr: 192.0.2.1          giaddr: 10.0.0.254
    chaddr: 00:20:fc:1e:cd:53  xid: 0x1e866b74
"

38 2014/06/26 03:02:18.38 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base PIP
"PIP: DHCP
instance 1 (Base), interface index 3 (grp-int-1),
    transmitted DHCP Boot Reply to Interface grp-int-1 (1/1/9) Port 68

    H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb)  H/W Address Length: 6
    ciaddr: 0.0.0.0            yiaddr: 10.0.0.1
    siaddr: 192.0.2.1          giaddr: 10.0.0.254
    chaddr: 00:20:fc:1e:cd:53  xid: 0x1e866b74
"

39 2014/06/26 03:02:18.38 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base Python Output
"Python Output: python-script-1
"

40 2014/06/26 03:02:18.38 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base Python Result
"Python Result: python-script-1
RADIUS Attribute: Type 25, SET
    'Class-1'
    'Class-22'
    'Class-333'
"

41 2014/06/26 03:02:18.38 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 management RADIUS
"RADIUS: Transmit
    Accounting-Request(4) 192.168.1.1:1813 id 8 len 152 vrid 4095 pol radius-svr-policy-1
    STATUS TYPE [40] 4 Start(1)
    NAS IP ADDRESS [4] 4 192.168.1.254
    USER NAME [1] 17 00:20:fc:1e:cd:53
    SESSION ID [44] 63 00:20:fc:1e:cd:53|1/1/9@1/1/9@sla-profile-1_2014/06/26 03
:02:18
    EVENT TIMESTAMP [55] 4 1403751738
    CLASS [25] 7 0x436c6173732d31
    CLASS [25] 8 0x436c6173732d3232
    CLASS [25] 9 0x436c6173732d333333
"

42 2014/06/26 03:02:18.38 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 management RADIUS
"RADIUS: Receive
    Accounting-Response(5) id 8 len 20 from 192.168.1.1:1813 vrid 4095 pol radius-svr-policy-1
"

43 2014/06/26 03:02:18.38 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 management RADIUS
"RADIUS: Script
    Accounting-Response(5) id 8 len 20 from 192.168.1.1:1813 policy python-policy-1 status
success

```

Configuration

```
"
44 2014/06/26 03:07:18.71 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base Python Output
"Python Output: python-script-1
"

45 2014/06/26 03:07:18.71 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base Python Result
"Python Result: python-script-1
RADIUS Attribute: Type 25, SET
    'Class-1'
    'Class-22'
    'Class-333'
"

46 2014/06/26 03:07:18.71 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 management RADIUS
"RADIUS: Transmit
  Accounting-Request(4) 192.168.1.1:1813 id 9 len 302 vrid 4095 pol radius-svr-policy-1
    STATUS TYPE [40] 4 Interim-Update(3)
    NAS IP ADDRESS [4] 4 192.168.1.254
    USER NAME [1] 17 00:20:fc:1e:cd:53
    SESSION ID [44] 63 00:20:fc:1e:cd:53|1/1/9@1/1/9@sla-profile-1_2014/06/26 03
:02:18
    SESSION TIME [46] 4 300
    EVENT TIMESTAMP [55] 4 1403752038
    VSA [26] 12 Alcatel(6527)
      INPUT_INPROF_OCTETS_64 [19] 10 0x00010000000000000000
    VSA [26] 12 Alcatel(6527)
      INPUT_OUTPROF_OCTETS_64 [20] 10 0x00010000000000000000
    VSA [26] 12 Alcatel(6527)
      INPUT_INPROF_PACKETS_64 [23] 10 0x00010000000000000000
    VSA [26] 12 Alcatel(6527)
      INPUT_OUTPROF_PACKETS_64 [24] 10 0x00010000000000000000
    VSA [26] 12 Alcatel(6527)
      OUTPUT_INPROF_OCTETS_64 [21] 10 0x000100000000000000bea
    VSA [26] 12 Alcatel(6527)
      OUTPUT_OUTPROF_OCTETS_64 [22] 10 0x00010000000000000000
    VSA [26] 12 Alcatel(6527)
      OUTPUT_INPROF_PACKETS_64 [25] 10 0x000100000000000000019
    VSA [26] 12 Alcatel(6527)
      OUTPUT_OUTPROF_PACKETS_64 [26] 10 0x00010000000000000000
    CLASS [25] 7 0x436c6173732d31
    CLASS [25] 8 0x436c6173732d3232
    CLASS [25] 9 0x436c6173732d333333
"

47 2014/06/26 03:07:18.71 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 management RADIUS
"RADIUS: Receive
  Accounting-Response(5) id 9 len 20 from 192.168.1.1:1813 vrid 4095 pol radius-svr-policy-1
"

48 2014/06/26 03:07:18.71 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 management RADIUS
"RADIUS: Script
  Accounting-Response(5) id 9 len 20 from 192.168.1.1:1813 policy python-policy-1 status
success
"

44 2014/06/26 03:07:18.71 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base Python Output
"Python Output: python-script-1
"
```

```

45 2014/06/26 03:07:18.71 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base Python Result
"Python Result: python-script-1
RADIUS Attribute: Type 25, SET
    'Class-1'
    'Class-22'
    'Class-333'
"

46 2014/06/26 03:07:18.71 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 management RADIUS
"RADIUS: Transmit
    Accounting-Request(4) 192.168.1.1:1813 id 9 len 302 vrid 4095 pol radius-svr-policy-1
        STATUS TYPE [40] 4 Interim-Update(3)
        NAS IP ADDRESS [4] 4 192.168.1.254
        USER NAME [1] 17 00:20:fc:1e:cd:53
        SESSION ID [44] 63 00:20:fc:1e:cd:53|1/1/9@1/1/9@sla-profile-1_2014/06/26 03
:02:18
        SESSION TIME [46] 4 300
        EVENT TIMESTAMP [55] 4 1403752038
        VSA [26] 12 Alcatel(6527)
            INPUT_INPROF_OCTETS_64 [19] 10 0x00010000000000000000
        VSA [26] 12 Alcatel(6527)
            INPUT_OUTPROF_OCTETS_64 [20] 10 0x00010000000000000000
        VSA [26] 12 Alcatel(6527)
            INPUT_INPROF_PACKETS_64 [23] 10 0x00010000000000000000
        VSA [26] 12 Alcatel(6527)
            INPUT_OUTPROF_PACKETS_64 [24] 10 0x00010000000000000000
        VSA [26] 12 Alcatel(6527)
            OUTPUT_INPROF_OCTETS_64 [21] 10 0x000100000000000000bea
        VSA [26] 12 Alcatel(6527)
            OUTPUT_OUTPROF_OCTETS_64 [22] 10 0x00010000000000000000
        VSA [26] 12 Alcatel(6527)
            OUTPUT_INPROF_PACKETS_64 [25] 10 0x00010000000000000019
        VSA [26] 12 Alcatel(6527)
            OUTPUT_OUTPROF_PACKETS_64 [26] 10 0x00010000000000000000
        CLASS [25] 7 0x436c6173732d31
        CLASS [25] 8 0x436c6173732d3232
        CLASS [25] 9 0x436c6173732d333333
"

47 2014/06/26 03:07:18.71 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 management RADIUS
"RADIUS: Receive
    Accounting-Response(5) id 9 len 20 from 192.168.1.1:1813 vrid 4095 pol radius-svr-policy-1
"

48 2014/06/26 03:07:18.71 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 management RADIUS
"RADIUS: Script
    Accounting-Response(5) id 9 len 20 from 192.168.1.1:1813 policy python-policy-1 status
success
"

```

As the debug output shows, **python-script-1** stores the three class attributes from the access-accept message which then are reflected into the accounting-start and interim-update messages.

The **tools dump python python-policy <name> cache** command can be used to show the existing cached entries in the specified python-policy:

```
A:BNG-1# tools dump python python-policy "python-policy-1" cache
=====
Python policy cache "python-policy-1" entries
=====
Key       : 00:20:fc:1e:cd:53
Value     : (hex) 03 07 08 09 43 6c 61 73 73 2d 31 43 6c 61 73 73 2d 32 32 43 6c 61 73 73
            2d 33 33 33
Time Left : 0d 00:12:08
DDP Key   : N/A
=====
```


Step 6. Release DHCPv4 lease on the PC

- Release DHCPv4 lease on the PC which is sent to BNG-1.
- DHCPv4 release message from the PC will trigger BNG-1 to remove the ESM host on BNG-1.
- BNG-1 will send an accounting-stop packet to the RADIUS server.

The following is the debug output:

```
"Python Output: python-script-1
"

67 2014/06/26 03:26:14.84 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base Python Result
"Python Result: python-script-1
RADIUS Attribute: Type 25, SET
    'Class-1'
    'Class-22'
    'Class-333'
"

68 2014/06/26 03:26:14.85 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 management RADIUS
"RADIUS: Transmit
    Accounting-Request(4) 192.168.1.1:1813 id 13 len 308 vrid 4095 pol radius-svr-
policy-1
    STATUS TYPE [40] 4 Stop(2)
    NAS IP ADDRESS [4] 4 192.168.1.254
    USER NAME [1] 17 00:20:fc:1e:cd:53
    SESSION ID [44] 63 00:20:fc:1e:cd:53|1/1/9@1/1/9@sla-profile-1_2014/06/26 03
:02:18
    SESSION TIME [46] 4 1436
    TERMINATE CAUSE [49] 4 User Request(1)
    EVENT TIMESTAMP [55] 4 1403753174
    VSA [26] 12 Alcatel(6527)
        INPUT_INPROF_OCTETS_64 [19] 10 0x00010000000000000000
    VSA [26] 12 Alcatel(6527)
        INPUT_OUTPROF_OCTETS_64 [20] 10 0x00010000000000000000
    VSA [26] 12 Alcatel(6527)
        INPUT_INPROF_PACKETS_64 [23] 10 0x00010000000000000000
    VSA [26] 12 Alcatel(6527)
        INPUT_OUTPROF_PACKETS_64 [24] 10 0x00010000000000000000
    VSA [26] 12 Alcatel(6527)
        OUTPUT_INPROF_OCTETS_64 [21] 10 0x000100000000000001a36
    VSA [26] 12 Alcatel(6527)
        OUTPUT_OUTPROF_OCTETS_64 [22] 10 0x00010000000000000000
    VSA [26] 12 Alcatel(6527)
        OUTPUT_INPROF_PACKETS_64 [25] 10 0x000100000000000000037
    VSA [26] 12 Alcatel(6527)
        OUTPUT_OUTPROF_PACKETS_64 [26] 10 0x00010000000000000000
    CLASS [25] 7 0x436c6173732d31
    CLASS [25] 8 0x436c6173732d3232
    CLASS [25] 9 0x436c6173732d333333
"

69 2014/06/26 03:26:14.85 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 management RADIUS
"RADIUS: Receive
    Accounting-Response(5) id 13 len 20 from 192.168.1.1:1813 vrid 4095 pol radius
```

Configuration

```
-svr-policy-1
"

70 2014/06/26 03:26:14.85 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 management RADIUS
"RADIUS: Script
  Accounting-Response(5) id 13 len 20 from 192.168.1.1:1813 policy python-policy
-1 status success
"
```

As the debug output shows, **python-script-1** inserts three RADIUS class attributes in the accounting-stop message.

The **tools dump python python-policy <name> cache** command can be used to verify the cached entry has been removed:

```
A:BNG-1# tools dump python python-policy "python-policy-1" cache
=====
Python policy cache "python-policy-1" entries
=====
=====
```

Step 7. Manually change the lifetime of a cached entry (optional).

A **tools** command can be used to manually change the lifetime of an existing cached entry, with following syntax:

```
tool perform python-policy <name> cache {hex-key <hex-str>|string-key <str>} set-lifetime
<newlifetime>
```

However, manually changing the lifetime might cause issues with the Python script (for example, if reducing the lifetime causes the entry to expire) that needs the cached entry so it should be used with caution.

To demonstrate this recreate the cached entry by initiating a DHCPv4 discover from the PC (see Step 5, [Initiate DHCPv4 on the PC. on page 1175](#)), then change the lifetime to 20 minutes.

```
A:BNG-1# tools dump python python-policy "python-policy-1" cache
=====
Python policy cache "python-policy-1" entries
=====
Key          : 00:20:fc:1e:cd:53
Value        : (hex) 03 07 08 09 43 6c 61 73 73 2d 31 43 6c 61 73 73 2d 32 32 43 6c 61 73 73
2d 33 33 33
Time Left    : 0d 00:09:48
DDP Key      : N/A
=====
A:BNG-1# tools perform python-policy "python-policy-1" cache string-key
"00:20:fc:1e:cd:53" set-lifetime 1200
A:BNG-1# tools dump python python-policy "python-policy-1" cache
=====
Python policy cache "python-policy-1" entries
=====
Key          : 00:20:fc:1e:cd:53
Value        : (hex) 03 07 08 09 43 6c 61 73 73 2d 31 43 6c 61 73 73 2d 32 32 43 6c 61 73 73
2d 33 33 33
Time Left    : 0d 00:19:57
DDP Key      : N/A
=====
```

Step 8. Manually remove a cached entry (optional).

Manually removing an existing cached entry can be done using a clear command with following syntax:

```
clear python python-policy <name> cache {hex-key <hex-str>|string-key <str>}
```

Manually removing a cached entry can result in unexpected results (for example, if a script expects an entry to exist but it has been removed), so this should be used with caution.

The following command sequence demonstrates the effect of the clear command after initiating a DHCPv4 discover from the PC to recreate the cached entry (see Step 5, [Initiate DHCPv4 on the PC. on page 1175](#)).

```
A:BNG-1# tools dump python python-policy "python-policy-1" cache
=====
Python policy cache "python-policy-1" entries
=====
Key       : 00:20:fc:1e:cd:53
Value     : (hex) 03 07 08 09 43 6c 61 73 73 2d 31 43 6c 61 73 73 2d 32 32 43 6c 61 73 73
2d 33 33 33
Time Left : 0d 00:11:39
DDP Key   : N/A
=====
A:BNG-1# clear python python-policy "python-policy-1" cache string-key "00:20:fc:1e:cd:53"
A:BNG-1# tools dump python python-policy "python-policy-1" cache

=====
Python policy cache "python-policy-1" entries
=====
=====
```

Configuration and Operational Guidelines

The following is a list of configuration and operational guidelines that a user should follow when using the Python cache:

- SR OS has a limit on the total amount of memory used for the python cache since the python cache can be demanding with respect to memory usage. The maximum memory allocated for the cache system wide is restricted to 256MB. However, it is good practice to configure per python-policy limits using the **entry-size** and **max-entries** commands; by doing this, one python-policy's cache will not impact another python-policy's cache memory usage.
- For applications needing a cache entry for the entire lifetime of an ESM host, lifetime management is essential. If the lifetime is too long then unneeded entries might reside in the system, wasting memory; if the lifetime is too short then entries might expire while they are still needed. One way to address this is by initially setting a relative short lifetime and then using the RADIUS interim-update message as a trigger to reset a new lifetime. This new lifetime should be larger than the interim-update interval. Then the entry should be removed by a script when an accounting-stop message is sent.
- With MCS enabled, each python cached entry will have a corresponding MCS record, resulting in each python cache entry consuming twice amount of memory. For example, 256MB cached entries would consume additional 256MB memory for MCS records.
- Choosing the right key is important, a network designer needs to choose the key meeting the application requirement in terms of their uniqueness. For example: if an application needs to store per-host information then the key for that host must be unique (for example, its MAC address or remote-id). The key must be derived from the trigger packet. For example: if an application needs to store information on DHCP discovery and retrieve it on receiving a RADIUS accounting-request message for the same host, then the script needs to be able derive the same key from both the DHCP discovery as well as from the RADIUS accounting-request message.
- Using tools or clear commands to manually change cached entries could cause problems if the entries are needed by a script. Only use these commands when it is absolutely necessary.
- The minimum-lifetimes exist to make the system more efficient in handling system memory before a cache entry could be synced or made persistent (e.g. when a new entry is created or when MCS is enabled). The cache entry's lifetime must be equal or larger than the configured minimal-lifetime listed below for that function to occur.
 1. high-availability — The minimum lifetime of a cache entry for it to be synchronized from the active CPM to the standby CPM.
The default is 0 seconds, resulting in all entries being synchronized.
 2. multi-chassis-redundancy — The minimum lifetime of a cache entry for it to be synchronized between chassis.
The default is 0 seconds, resulting in all entries being synchronized.

3. persistence — The minimum lifetime of a cache entry for it to be written to the persistence file.
The default is 0 seconds, resulting in all entries will be synchronized.

Conclusion

The Python cache provides a very powerful and flexible way to share information across different Python scripts in SR OS.

RADIUS-Triggered Dynamic Data Service Provisioning

In This Chapter

This section describes advanced RADIUS-triggered dynamic data service provisioning configurations.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 1190](#)
- [Overview on page 1191](#)
- [Configuration on page 1194](#)
- [Conclusion on page 1233](#)

Applicability

This example is applicable to all 7750 SR-7/12 and 7450 ESS-7/12 in mixed mode with multicore CPM (CPM-3 and later) and ESM capability.

This feature is not supported on the 7950 XRS, 7750 SR-1, 7450 in pure ESS-mode or 7710 SR.

The configuration was tested on release 11.0R2.

Overview

RADIUS-triggered dynamic data services enables a zero touch, single-ended provisioning model for business services on the basis of Enhanced Subscriber Management functionality.

Triggered by the authentication of a single or dual stack PPPoE session or single stack IPv4 host as the “control channel” from the business CPE, parameters are passed in a RADIUS Access Accept or Change of Authorization (CoA) message to set up one or multiple Layer 2 or Layer 3 data services.

This concept removes the need to have an Operations Support System (OSS) responsible for the service provisioning and is particularly beneficial in a highly dynamic network environment, where physical network topologies – especially in the access – change frequently. With a regular service provisioning, frequent changes would be hard to keep track of. In the RADIUS-based model the service gets instantiated wherever it “pops-up” in the network. Even planned customer moves to a different office would not require advanced notifications and lead times but could be instantaneous, assuming the pure physical connectivity is given.

A variation of the current service offering will only require one or a few modified service parameters in the RADIUS user database and does not require timely and costly IT changes (for RADIUS those service parameters are just attributes; the RADIUS server does not check the logic). This speeds up the time-to-market for new service offerings, which is another big advantage.

Taking this logic to its full extent, it becomes immediately clear that the managed business CPE terminating the carrier service (and being responsible for the PPP or DHCP control channel) also needs to be provisioned in the most flexible way. Through the control channel or a dedicated management channel instantiated as the first dynamic data service, the business CPE should get its full configuration from a configuration server via a pre-populated configuration file. The details of the CPE provisioning are outside of the scope of this example and therefore not discussed further.

As the whole approach is centered around the principle of “highly flexible in a highly dynamic environment”, it is naturally required to maintain as little state information about connections in the RADIUS parameter attributes as possible. For example, fixed remote peer IP-addresses for the SDPs used in a VPLS service in the RADIUS parameter lists would remove all the flexibility and would not allow access services to be moved dynamically. As such the allowed data services for this functionality focuses on those types where a control protocol like BGP is used to exchange VPN membership information. Dynamic data services supported in this release include local Epipe VLL services, Epipe VLL services with dynamic Multi-Segment PseudoWires (MS-PWs) (FEC129), VPLS services with BGP-AD PWs, IES, and VPRN services.

A Python script interface adds a flexible abstraction layer so that only the business user specific service parameters (service type, IP address, QoS and filter parameters, etc.) are required from RADIUS and are then used in a CLI template to set up the target service.

The setup sequence is shown in [Figure 185](#) with the example of a VPLS service.

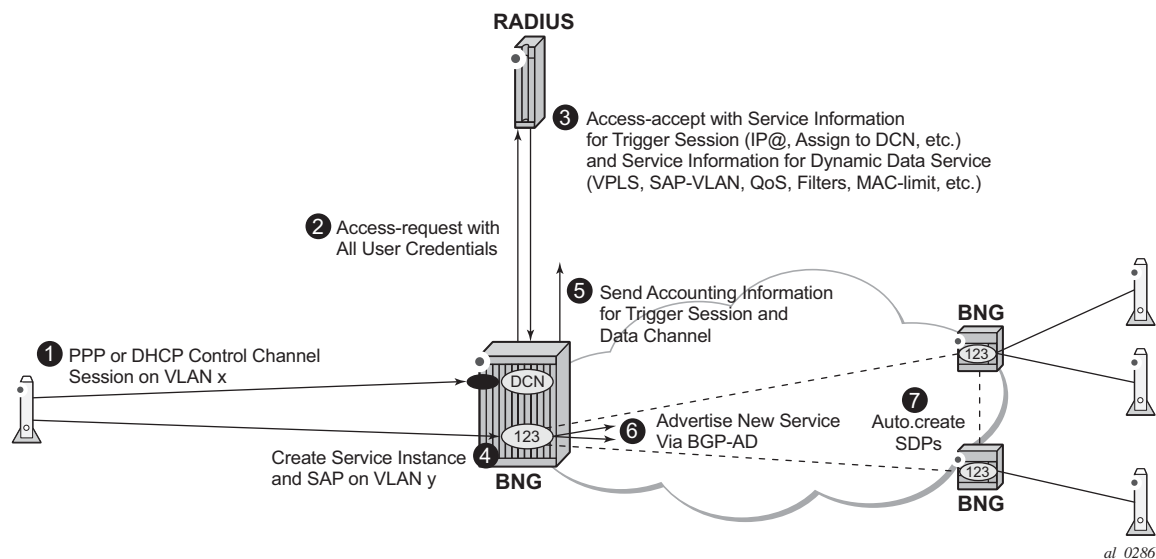


Figure 185: Principle Model of Dynamic Data Services

1. Business CPE initiates a PPP or DHCP “control channel” session. This session is important to let the BNG and RADIUS understand the existence of a new access circuit and the location of the service endpoint.
2. BNG sends an Access-Request with all user credentials to RADIUS.
3. RADIUS replies using an Access-Accept with attributes for the PPP/DHCP control channel and attributes for the dynamic data service (Service-type, SAP-VLAN, QoS, Filter, etc.).
4. BNG creates a dynamic data service instance (if it is first access-circuit for this service) and a SAP, thus completing the service configuration.
5. BNG sends an Accounting Start for PPP/DHCP control channel session and also for the dynamic data service session (and subsequently interim accountings and accounting stop for both).
6. BNG advertises VPLS instance-ID (123) via BGP-AD to other PEs/BNGs.
7. PEs/BNGs with same service instance will auto-establish SDPs to the BNG.

The result is a fully functional service which is the same as a traditionally configured service.

The lifetime of the dynamic data services are bound to the existence of the control channel session. If, for whatever reason, the control channel session is torn down all associated dynamic data services will also be terminated.

Dynamic data service SAPs have to be located on dot1q or qinq encapsulated Ethernet ports and can be part of a LAG.

Both XML accounting and RADIUS accounting can be enabled on a dynamic data service SAP. The RADIUS accounting data can be sent to up to two different RADIUS servers.

There is a strict separation of services created by dynamic service provisioning and services created via the CLI or through other standard mechanisms (5620 SAM, SNMP). It is therefore not allowed to:

- create a dynamic services object in a local provisioned CLI/SNMP context (e.g. create a dynamic SAP in a local provisioned VPLS).
- create a local provisioned object in a dynamic service context (e.g. create a SAP via CLI/SNMP in a dynamic VPLS service).
- change parameters in a local provisioned CLI/SNMP context using the dynamic services model (change system name with dynamic services provisioning).
- change parameters with the CLI/SNMP in a dynamically created context.
- delete a local provisioned object using dynamic provisioning model.
- delete a dynamic provisioning object using the CLI/SNMP.
- create a reference to a dynamic services object in a local provisioned CLI/SNMP context (reference to dynamic interface in **router ospf**)

A special command exists to overcome some of the above rules. This command is designed to ease Python script creation and testing and not for normal operations. This is discussed in [Configuration on page 1194](#).

Configuration

It is assumed that the reader is familiar with the regular Enhanced Subscriber Management (ESM) functionality as well as with general service related configurations. Furthermore certain knowledge about Python programming is also assumed.

The test topology is shown in [Figure 186](#).

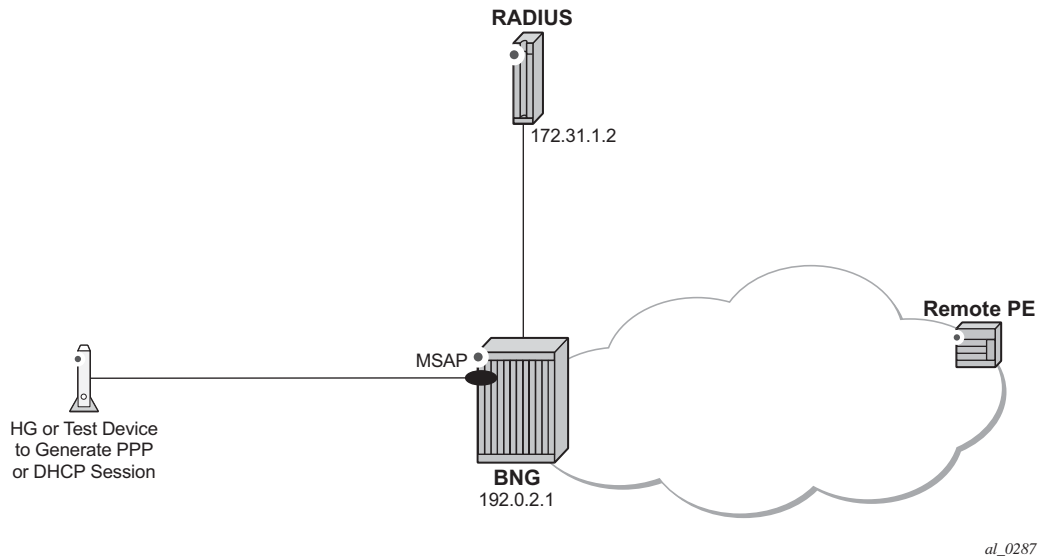


Figure 186: Test Topology

The pure service setup can be tested with a single node acting as BNG. However an Epipe service between two nodes will not normally become status “up” with only one endpoint in an up state. As such, for packets should be sent through the established dynamic data service, a remote PE could also be configured. The remote PE could have its data service configured in a regular fashion, meaning via CLI/SNMP or 5620 SAM.

The required functionality on the BNG is divided into multiple building blocks. The following sections discuss each building block in detail.

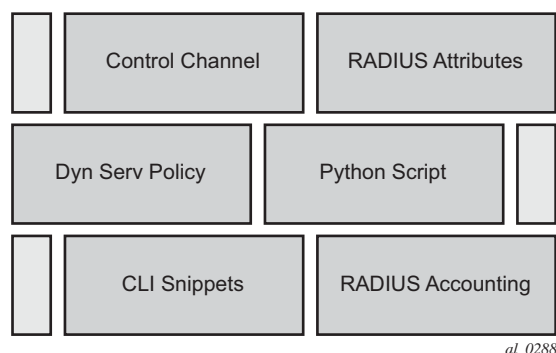


Figure 187: Building Blocks of Dynamic Data Services

Based on a PPP or DHCP control session, RADIUS will return the required parameters for the dynamic data service via dedicated Vendor Specific Attributes (VSAs). The existence of those attributes in the RADIUS Accept message will trigger the relaying of the parameters relating to those attributes towards the Python script defined in the dynamic service policy, which will process them to generate the regular CLI output for the various service types (IES, VPRN, Epipe, VPLS).

For efficiency and flexibility the Python script needs to be structured into different parts per service which then reference each other internally. Those parts are called snippets.

Finally, as the services are initiated from RADIUS, RADIUS accounting messages per dynamic data service will be sent to the RADIUS server as a necessary feedback mechanism to inform the RADIUS server about a successful or failed service setup.

Building Block: Control Channel

The configuration to authenticate and instantiate a dynamic data service control channel is identical to a residential Enhanced Subscriber Management (ESM) configuration. Examples for this can be found in other sections of the advanced configuration guide and will not be covered here in detail.

Building Block: Dynamic Services Policy

The dynamic services parameters are configured under the **configure service dynamic-services** CLI context. The following output shows two policy examples.

```
configure service dynamic-services
  dynamic-services-policy "dynamic-services-1" create
    accounting-1
      server-policy "radius-server-policy-1"
      update-interval min 5
    exit
    accounting-2
      server-policy "radius-server-policy-2"
```

Configuration

```
        stats-type time
        update-interval min 5
        update-interval-jitter absolute 10
    exit
    cli-user "dynuser"
    description "Dynamic Service Policy #1"
    sap-limit 4000
    script-policy "script-policy-1"
exit
dynamic-services-policy "dynamic-services-2" create
    accounting-1
        server-policy "radius-server-policy-2"
    stats-type volume-time
        update-interval min 30
        update-interval-jitter absolute 20
    exit
    accounting-2
        server-policy "radius-server-policy-2"
        stats-type time
        update-interval min 5
        update-interval-jitter absolute 10
    exit
    cli-user "dynuser"
    description "Dynamic Service Policy #2"
    sap-limit 100
    script-policy "script-policy-2"
exit
service-range 1000 10000
timers
    setup-timeout access-accept 3
exit
```

Details of each command and the possible parameters can be found in the SR OS Triple Play Guide in the RADIUS Triggered Dynamic Data Services section.

On the top command level under the dynamic-services sub-tree there are three options:

- dynamic-services-policy
- service-range
- timers

The setup-timeout value under **timers** is used to limit the maximum delay allowed for a dynamic data service setup. In addition, it also protects the node during times where there is a high load on the CPU. If a requested dynamic data service cannot be established in the specified time the request will be dropped.

Dynamic data services are not preferred over regular ESM subscribers. As such, given a BNG with a mix of residential ESM subscribers and business customers with dynamic data services, all compete for the same CPU resources to establish the connections.

However, dynamic data services are expected to have a very long lifetime compared to potentially very dynamic lifetimes for residential subscribers. In a regular operating mode the amount of

additional setup requests for dynamic data services should be relatively small. Only in the event of a node reboot will all users again compete to gain access, where longer setup-times are inevitable.

The service-range value reserves a certain amount of service IDs for the use of dynamic data services. The configured range is no longer available for regular provisioned services configured via the CLI/SNMP.

The dynamic-services-policy contains a CLI-user identifier, SAP-limits, accounting parameters and reference to a Python script policy which is used when creating a dynamic data service. Multiple dynamic services policies can be created to enable different profiles to be used for different users/customers or services (as an example, two different departments within the service provider, one responsible for Layer 2 services, one for Layer 3 services). The policy used for a dynamic data service is determined from the Alc-Dyn-Serv-Policy [26-6527-167] RADIUS attribute. If the attribute is not present and a policy named **default** exists, then the **default** policy is used, otherwise the dynamic data service creation fails.

Up to two accounting server policies can be defined. This allows the use of separate RADIUS accounting servers independent from the accounting servers used for residential services. The parameters defined in the accounting sections are the default values which are used if no specific values are sent via RADIUS VSAs.

As the service is established via RADIUS, a feedback mechanism towards RADIUS is most likely required which would be at least RADIUS start and stop messages per service/session. In addition performance counters (with a fixed set of parameters) can also be included in the RADIUS messages. It is also possible to use the standard service-accounting under the service instance and remove any counters from the RADIUS accounting messages.

The specification of a CLI user allows linking of the dynamic data service to a specific user-profile. In addition, this facilitates limiting of the scope of allowed service configurations even further, based on the specified context under the user profile.

The CLI-user needs to be configured locally on the node and needs to have a local user profile (remote authorization via TACACS/RADIUS is not possible).

The radius-script-policy is configured under the **configure aaa** CLI context.

```
configure aaa
radius-script-policy "script-policy-2"
    action-on-fail passthrough
    primary
        script-url "cf3:/scripts/dyn_services.py"
        no shutdown
    exit
    secondary
        script-url ftp://*:~@10.255.137.80/scripts/dyn_services.py"
        no shutdown
    exit
exit
exit
```

The parameters are no different to what have been defined generally for the use of Python scripting on the BNG.

When the very first session request arrives, the Python script is loaded into memory and executed. For all subsequent session requests the script is executed without the need for a reload. It is possible for both primary and secondary locations to be FTP sites (the small transfer delay for the first session is acceptable), however, it is recommended to have a compact-flash (cf1 or cf2) as the primary location and a remote location as backup.

Building Block: RADIUS Attributes

A series of Alcatel-Lucent vendor specific attributes (VSAs) have been defined to setup, teardown or modify dynamic data services from RADIUS.

The VSAs and their meaning are as follows:

- Alc-Dyn-Serv-SAP-Id [26-6527-164], type “string”

This attribute identifies the dynamic service SAP. The format can be any valid Ethernet SAP format (dot1q or qinq encapsulation), including LAGs. A wildcard (“#”) can be specified for the port field and optionally for one of the tag fields of a qinq interface. To define the dynamic data service SAP-ID, the wildcard fields are replaced with the corresponding field from the Control Channel SAP-ID.

Examples: “1/2/7:10.100” or “#:#.100”

- Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Action [26-6527-166], type “integer”

A mandatory VSA in a COA to the control channel accounting session ID or the accounting session ID of the dynamic data service (only applicable for modify or teardown). Tells the system what script action is required: setup, modify or teardown of a dynamic data service.

Values: 1=setup, 2=modify, 3=teardown

- Alc-Dyn-Serv-Policy [26-6527-167], type “string”

Specifies the dynamic service policy to use for provisioning the dynamic service. The policy must be configured in the “configure service dynamic-services dynamic-services-policy < dynsrv-policy-name>” CLI context.

- Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params [26-6527-165], type “string”

This VSA contains parameters that can be used by the Python script to setup or modify a dynamic data service. The parameters can be split into multiple instances of the same attribute, linked together by the same tag, that is, the parameters can cross an attribute boundary. The concatenation of all “Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params” attributes with the same tag in a single message must be formatted as “function-key = {dictionary}” where function-key specifies which Python functions will be called and {dictionary} contains the actual parameters in a Python dictionary structure format.

Example: “business_1 = { 'as_id' : '100', 'comm_id' : '200', 'if_name' : 'itf1', 'ipv4_address' : '172.16.1.1', 'egr_ip_filter' : '100', 'routes' : [{ 'to' : '172.16.100.0/24', 'next-hop' : '172.16.1.2' }, { 'to' : '172.16.200.0/24', 'next-hop' : '172.16.1.2' }] } ”

The above example shows each parameter with a keyword and the associated value. Alternatively only the parameter values can be sent with a pre-defined (and always constant) sequence.

Example: “business_1 = { “t”: '100', '200', 'itf1', '172.16.1.1', '100', '172.16.100.0/24', '172.16.1.2', '172.16.200.0/24', '172.16.1.2' } . ”

- Alc-Dyn-Serv-Acct-Interim-Ivl-1 [26-6527-168], type “integer”

This VSA defines the number of seconds between each accounting interim update message for the primary accounting server. It overrides the local configured “update-interval” value in the dynamic services policy “accounting-1” CLI context. A value of 0 (zero) corresponds to no accounting interim update messages. A value [1..299] seconds is rounded to 300s (min. CLI value) and a value above 15552000 seconds (180 days, maximum CLI value) is rounded to the maximum CLI value.

Range = 0 | [300 - 15552000].

- Alc-Dyn-Serv-Acct-Interim-Ivl-2 [26-6527-169], type “integer”

Same function and values as Alc-Dyn-Serv-Acct-Interim-Ivl-1 [26-6527-168], for the second accounting server. It overrides the locally configured “update-interval” value in the dynamic services policy “accounting-2” CLI context.

- Alc-Dyn-Serv-Acct-Stats-Type-1 [26-6527-170], type “integer”

Enable or disable dynamic data service accounting to the primary accounting server and specify the type of statistics that should be reported: volume and time or time only. It overrides the locally configured value in the dynamic services policy “accounting-1” CLI context.

Values: 1=off, 2=volume-time, 3=time

- Alc-Dyn-Serv-Acct-Stats-Type-2 [26-6527-171], type “integer”

Enable or disable dynamic data service accounting to the secondary accounting server and specify the type of statistics that should be reported: volume and time or time only. It overrides the locally configured “stats-type” value in the dynamic services policy “accounting-2” CLI context.

Values: 1=off, 2=volume-time, 3=time

All VSAs are tagged to enable manipulation of up to 32 (tag values 0..31) dynamic data services in a single RADIUS message. VSAs with an identical tag belong to the same dynamic data service.

The use of the VSAs in RADIUS Access-Accept, CoA and Disconnect Messages is detailed in [Table 33](#). An Access-Accept message can only contain dynamic data service setup requests. A CoA can be used to setup, modify or terminate a dynamic data service. A Disconnect Message can only be used to terminate a dynamic data service.

Table 33: Dynamic Service Attribute List for Setup, Modify and Teardown

Attribute Name	Access Accept	CoA			Disc. Message	Comment
	Setup	Setup	Modify	Tear-down	Tear-down	
Acct-Session-Id	N/A	M	M	M	M	Acct-Session-Id of the Control Channel or in case of a CoA: any other valid CoA key for ESM hosts/sessions.
Alc-Dyn-Serv-SAP-Id	M	M(*)	M(*)	M(*)	N/A	Identifies the dynamic data service
Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params	O	M(*)	M(*)	N/A	N/A	For a Modify, the script parameters represent the new parameters required for the change.
Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Action	O	M(*)	M(*)	M(*)	N/A	Must be “setup” if specified in an access-accept.
Alc-Dyn-Serv-Policy	O	O	O	O	N/A	The default policy used when not specified for create. In CoA, must be same as used for Setup if Specified for Modify or Teardown.
Alc-Dyn-Serv-Acct-Interim-Ivl-1	O	O	X(**)	X(**)	N/A	
Alc-Dyn-Serv-Acct-Interim-Iv2	O	O	X(**)	X(**)	N/A	
Alc-Dyn-Serv-Acct-Stats-Type-1	O	O	X(**)	X(**)	N/A	
Alc-Dyn-Serv-Acct-Stats-Type-2	O	O	X(**)	X(**)	N/A	

M = Mandatory, O= Optional, X = May not, N/A = Not Applicable (ignored)

(*) = CoA Nak'd, if not specified (Error Cause: 402 - Missing Attribute)

(**) = CoA Nak'd if specified (Error Cause:405 - Unsupported Service)

To summarize, [Table 34](#) shows resulting dynamic service script actions as function of the RADIUS message (Access-Accept, CoA or DM) and the target (Control Channel or Dynamic Service SAP).

Table 34: Dynamic Service Actions on Control- and Data-Channel

Target	RADIUS Message	Dynamic Service Script Action	Comments
Control Channel	Access-Accept	Setup	Up to 32 dynamic data services in single message. Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Action VSA optional.
		Modify/Teardown	Not supported.
	CoA (acct-session-id or any other valid CoA key for ESM hosts/sessions)	Create/Modify/Teardown	Cannot be mixed with session/post parameter changes in the same RADIUS message (results in CoA NAK). Up to 32 dynamic data services in single message. Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Action VSA mandatory.
	Disconnect	N/A	Teardown the Control Channel session and all associated dynamic data services.
Dynamic Service	CoA (acct-session-id of the dynamic data service sap)	Modify/Teardown	Only single dynamic data service per message (Acct-Session-Id). Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Action VSA mandatory.
		Setup	Not supported.
	Disconnect (acct-session-id of the dynamic data service sap)	N/A	Teardown the corresponding dynamic data service.

Building Block: Python Script

Dynamic data services scripts are built using a Python script engine. The following dedicated functions are available in the `alc.dyn` module:

- `dyn.reference(function-key, reference-id string, dictionary)`

This function creates a dynamic reference to another function in the script. This function eases the creation of N:1 relationships in the script. For more information about use cases, see [Building Block: CLI Snippets on page 1205](#). The function-key specifies the key in the action dictionary to find the corresponding setup/modify/teardown function calls.

The reference-id (typically derived from a parameter specified from RADIUS, for example: service-name) specifies a unique instance string that identifies this reference.

The dictionary specifies a dictionary with parameters that can be used in the parent function to generate CLI script output.

- `dyn.action(d)`

When called, the `dyn.action` will take the “function-key” string specified in the `Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params` attribute, and perform a lookup in the specified dictionary `d` to find the corresponding Python function to execute. The format of the dictionary is `d = {key-1 : (Setup-1, Modify-1, Revert-1, Teardown-1), ..., key-n : (Setup-n, Modify-n, Revert-n, Teardown-n) }`. If the function-key matches, for example, `key-1` and the corresponding `Alc-Dyn-Script-Action` is “setup”, then the function specified as “Setup-1” will be executed. Setup and teardown functions are mandatory. Modify and revert functions are optional. If a modify function is defined, a corresponding revert function must also be defined. If no modify/revert function is required, the keyword “None” should be used instead.

- `dyn.add_cli(string)`

This function is used to generate CLI output in the Python script. The use of `dyn.add_cli("""`) allows the specification of strings spanning multiple lines, which drastically improves the readability of the script.

A subset of all available CLI commands is currently enabled for dynamic data services. The command “tools dump service dynamic-services command-list” provides a complete overview of all available CLI nodes for dynamic data services. In the allowed nodes section, all CLI nodes are listed that can be navigated to and where attributes can be modified. The pass through nodes section shows CLI nodes that can be navigated to but no attribute changes are allowed. For example, it is not allowed to change the autonomous system of a router (`configure router autonomous-system <autonomous-system>`) because “configure router” is a “pass through node”. However, you can navigate to configure router, because you can add a static route: “/configure router static-route 0.0.0.0/0 next-hop 192.168.1.1” is part of the “allowed nodes”.

- `dyn.select_free_id("service-id")`

This function is used to select a free service ID within the service ID range defined under dynamic-services context. An automatic assignment of the service id is one option, but it is also possible to provide the service id as one of the parameters in the "Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params" list from RADIUS.

The service-ID is a node-internal attribute. As such it is valid to let the node select the ID itself. However, in a network with multiple BNGs and a single customer service spanning two or more BNGs, a network administrator may actually prefer to use the same service-id for this customer service on all nodes for better visibility, which cannot be guaranteed if the automatic option is chosen. 5620 SAM is also using the service-ID as one attribute in addition to others to discover service-entities across the whole network. If SAM is in use for general management and service assurance, it is advised to manually specify the service-ID and not to use the automatic selection.

In any case, the administrator needs to make a choice between the automatic ID assignment and the specific assignment for all dynamic data services, as a mix between both is not recommended.

When the automatic assignment is chosen, there is no "binding/memory" of a service ID to a provisioned service, which means a service that may have service ID xyz initially may get another service ID the next time it comes up. In other words, as soon as a service is disconnected, the service ID is freed up for the next activated service.

- `dyn.get_sap()`

This function returns the value of the evaluation of the "Alc-Dyn-Serv-SAP-Id" attribute as a string. Wildcards ("#") in the Alc-Dyn-Serv-SAP-Id are replaced with the corresponding port/vlan information of the control channel SAP-ID. So if, for example, the "Alc-Dyn-Serv-SAP-Id" contains "#:#.1" and the control channel SAP ID is "1/1/5:100.100", the resulting SAP for the data service would be "1/1/5:100.1".

- `dyn.get_circuit_id()`

This function returns a string which is equal to the Control Channel Circuit-ID (from the DHCP relay agent option 82 or PPP tags). This function may be useful, for example, to use the circuit id in the SAP description.

- `dyn.get_remote_id()`

This function returns a string which is equal to the Control Channel Remote-ID (from the DHCP relay agent option 82 or PPP tags). This function may be useful, for example, to use the remote id in the SAP description.

In addition to the RADIUS dictionary, the node will also store service-related parameters in a service-specific dictionary. The information in the RADIUS messages or in the stored dictionary are used for the various functions as outlined in [Table 35](#):

Table 35: Function and Dictionary Relationship

Function Name	Input	Returns
setup_dynsvc(rd*)	rd : radius dictionary in the parameter list in Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params. VSA Passed to setup function.	A dictionary that will be stored for the lifetime of the dynamic service (sd).
modify_dynsvc(rd,sd**)	rd : radius dictionary in the parameter list in Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params. VSA passed to modify function. sd : previously stored dictionary of the setup/previous modify functions.	Updated stored dictionary (sd)
revert_dynsvc(rd, sd)	rd : radius dictionary in the parameter list in Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params. VSA passed to revert function. sd : previously stored dictionary of the setup/previous modify function.	The function does not return (store) any information. The previously stored dictionary (sd) is kept.
teardown_dynsvc(sd)	sd : previously stored dictionary by the setup function or a previous modify function are passed to the teardown function.	The function does not return (store) any information. The stored dictionary (sd) is deleted.

(*) rd = radius dictionary

(**) sd = stored dictionary. sd is required for modifies, reverts and teardowns.

Building Block: CLI Snippets

The necessary functional parts of a service configuration cannot typically be put into one large script (one single actionable function). This is best described with a small and simple example:

Imagine a single script where the setup action creates both the service instance and the SAP, and the teardown action removes the service instance and the SAP. For a service with just one SAP per service instance this may work fine, however, in a multi SAP service like a VPLS this will cause problems, especially during the service teardown action. This is because if multiple SAPs have been instantiated in a single service, the disconnect of just one SAP would trigger the teardown action which would try to remove the SAP (still ok) but then would try to remove the service instance. This action would fail as other SAPs still exist in the service. As such the script execution would fail.

It is therefore necessary to structure the whole required configuration into individual actionable pieces which are referenced by each other with specific reference-IDs. Those actionable pieces are called “snippets”.

Referenced snippets may or may not be executed depending on whether the functional instance exists already or not. As shown on the left of the picture below, the action to create a SAP references the creation of a service and then to the creation of a customer. For the very first business site to come up all three snippets will be executed. For any further business site to come up in the same service the script to create the SAP will be executed, the referenced service script and subsequently the customer script will not be executed again as those instances already exist. The same logic applies during the teardown action. Only when the last SAP in a service is removed is the service-instance itself removed, and potentially also the customer (unless it too is associated with other services).

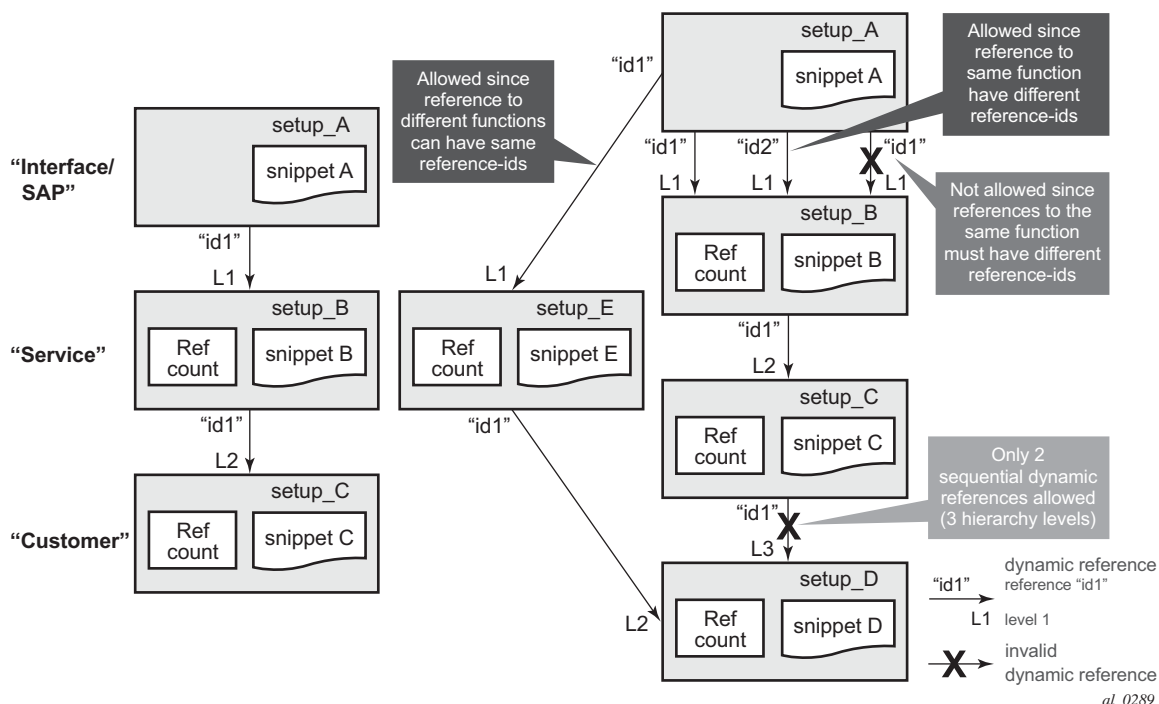


Figure 188: Hierarchy of Snippets

The implementation supports a three level hierarchy of snippets for high flexibility as shown in the picture. A reference to the fourth level as shown on the right side would result in an error.

Furthermore, snippets can be scaled “horizontally”, so from one level multiple references to other snippets are possible. An example for that would be the creation of a SAP triggers the creation of a service as well as the creation of an Ethernet CFM association for that SAP.

Identifiers are needed for the referencing. The same identifier can be used on the “horizontal” level, but not on the vertical level between the same pair of snippets, also shown above.

Snippets are heavily used in the service examples in [Bringing it all together on page 1208](#) where the logic and the referencing are described with real data.

Building Block: RADIUS Accounting

As dynamic data services are instantiated through RADIUS, it is also typically required to provide feedback to the RADIUS server for service establishment and teardown. This is achieved via RADIUS accounting records for the dynamic data channels in addition to the accounting messages for the PPP or DHCP control channel.

Up to two dedicated accounting destinations can be defined within the dynamic services policy. Thus, the accounting for the dynamic data services can be handled by an independent set of accounting servers (from the accounting for general ESM subscribers). But the same servers can also be used.

Each dynamic data service has its own accounting start/stop/interim messages based on a unique accounting session ID. In addition, the accounting packets contain a multi-session ID which is identical to the accounting session ID of the control channel and is therefore displayed in show commands as Acct-Session-ID-Ctrl as shown below.

```
A:BNG-1# show service dynamic-services saps summary
=====
Dynamic Services SAP's summary
=====
SAP                               Acct-Session-ID           Acct-Session-ID-Ctrl
-----
3/2/1:4.3                        D6E559000000B951668AEB  D6E559000000B851668AEB
3/2/2:1.1                        D6E559000000C75166CFF4  D6E559000000C45166CFF4
3/2/2:1.2                        D6E559000000C85166CFF4  D6E559000000C45166CFF4
3/2/2:1.3                        D6E559000000C95166CFF4  D6E559000000C45166CFF4
3/2/2:1.4                        D6E559000000CA5166CFF4  D6E559000000C45166CFF4
-----
No. of SAP's: 5
=====
```

The Accounting Session ID (in the centre above) is the one for the dynamic data service itself, the one on the right is from the control-channel. The above example clearly shows that the last 4 dynamic services all belong to the same control channel, as they all have the same Acct-Session-ID-Ctrl.

If the accounting stats-type is set to “volume-time”, the interim and stop accounting messages will also contain counters for the data traffic through the service. With the accounting stats-type “time”, no counters are included, only session time is reported.

As a dynamic data service is functionally no different from a regular data service, traffic volumes can also be gathered by assigning accounting policies within the service for file-based XML accounting.

Bringing it all together

This section gives examples of all of the above parameters and will also cover show, log and debug information.

In the given example, a single user in the database has four different associated data services. Not only are the data service types all different, but also other aspects of the parameter set, this has an effect on how the data is entered in the RADIUS VSAs and how the Python script is constructed. More detail is given below. The different models for specifying parameters are presented to show the flexibility. An operator typically chooses a single model and uses that for all its services.

As all of the information for these four services will potentially be sent in one RADIUS message, the VSAs need to be tagged so that the BNG can link the appropriate VSAs to each other and differentiate the services. For better visibility, the different sections in the RADIUS users file are displayed with bold black and dark grey text.

The freeradius users file format is used for this example.

```

1. "subscriber12@domain2.com" Cleartext-Password := "ALU"
2.   Alc-Subsc-ID-Str := "ppoe-user12",
3.   Framed-IP-Address = 10.2.1.200,
4.   Alc-Dyn-Serv-SAP-Id:1 = "##.1",
5.   Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params:1 = "business_epipe={ 't':('EPipe-
6.     CustomerName', 'CustomerName-Circuit-1', '3', '3', '64496',
7.     '192.0.2.5', '192.0.2.1', '3333') }",
8.   Alc-Dyn-Serv-Policy:1 = "dynamic-services-2",
9.   Alc-Dyn-Serv-SAP-Id:2 += "##.2",
10.  Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params:2 += "business_vprn={ 't':('9999',
11.    'VPRN-CustomerName', '64497', '100000', 'CustomerName-Circuit-
12.    1', '172.16.10.1/30', '3', '1', '3', '2', '172.16.100.0/24',
13.    '172.16.10.2', '100') }",
14.  Alc-Dyn-Serv-Acct-Interim-Ivl-1:2 += "600",
15.  Alc-Dyn-Serv-Acct-Interim-Ivl-2:2 += "0",
16.  Alc-Dyn-Serv-Policy:2 += "dynamic-services-2",
17.  Alc-Dyn-Serv-SAP-Id:3 += "##.3",
18.  Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params:3 += "business_vpls={ 'inst':
19.    'VPLS-CustomerName', 'if_name': 'CustomerName-Circuit-1', 'ing_qos': '3',
20.    'egr_qos': '3', 'imp_comm_val': '10000', 'exp_comm_val': '10000',
21.    'rt': '64498', 'rd': '64498' }",
22.  Alc-Dyn-Serv-Policy:3 += "dynamic-services-2",
23.  Alc-Dyn-Serv-Acct-Interim-Ivl-1:3 += "0",
24.  Alc-Dyn-Serv-Acct-Interim-Ivl-2:3 += "0",
25.  Alc-Dyn-Serv-Acct-Stats-Type-1:3 += off,
26.  Alc-Dyn-Serv-Acct-Stats-Type-2:3 += off,
27.  Alc-Dyn-Serv-SAP-Id:4 += "##.4",
28.  Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params:4 += "business_ies={ 't':
29.    ('IES-CustomerName', 'CustomerName-Circuit-1', '172.16.11.1/30',
30.    '2001:db8:5100:1000::1/64', '5', '1', '1', '6', '2', '2', '5', '25',
31.    'cfm-Mep-to-CPE', '100', ),
32.  Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params:4 += "[ { 'to': '172.16.110.0/24',
33.    'n-h': '172.16.11.2' }, { 'to': '2001:db8:bbbb::/56',
34.    'n-h': '2001:db8:5100:1000::2' } ]",
35.  Alc-Dyn-Serv-Policy:4 += "dynamic-services-2",
36.  Alc-Dyn-Serv-Acct-Interim-Ivl-1:4 += "600",
37.  Alc-Dyn-Serv-Acct-Interim-Ivl-2:4 += "0",
38.  Alc-Dyn-Serv-Acct-Stats-Type-1:4 += "3",
39.  Alc-Dyn-Serv-Acct-Stats-Type-2:4 += "2",

```

The first section (lines 1 — 3) shows a minimal parameter set for the (PPP) control channel. As the focus of this example is on the dynamic data services, all default parameters will be used for the control-session which are defined under the msap.

The second section (lines 4 — 8, attributes with tag “:1”) shows a possible parameter set for an Epipe service. Only the absolutely minimum set of VSAs is used (see [Table 33, Dynamic Service Attribute List for Setup, Modify and Teardown, on page 1200](#)). Furthermore, all service parameters are listed without keywords in a pre-defined order. No service ID number is specified in “Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params”, hence the Python script should dynamically select the next free ID.

The third section (lines 9 — 16, attributes with tag “:2”) shows a possible parameter set for a VPRN service. A few more VSAs are defined, thus some of the default parameters in the dynamic service policy are overwritten for this service. The first entry in the “Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params” attribute specifies the Service-ID number for this service, so the Python script should not select a service ID automatically. Furthermore, static-routing information towards the CPE is added as normal attributes at the end of the list.

The fourth section (line 17 — 26, attributes with tag “:3”) shows a possible parameter set for a VPLS service. Notice the difference with the first two services in the “Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params” part: now all parameters are given their specific keyword. As such, the sequence of those parameters is not important. The effect on the Python script is shown further down.

The fifth section (lines 27 — 39, attributes with tag “:4”) finally shows a possible parameter set for an IES service. All of the required parameters for this service do not fit into a single “Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params” attribute anymore (limited to 247 bytes). As is shown, multiple VSAs can be “concatenated” by simply splitting the attributes. It is important that the order in which the different “Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params” attributes with the same tag is received can be guaranteed. Furthermore the second appearance of this VSA shows a different way of provisioning static-routing information towards the CPE.

To better understand the details it is necessary to take a closer look into the active Python script. The first important part is the section with the dynamic actions.

-snip-

```
d = {
"vprn": (setup_vprn, None, None, teardown_vprn),
"ies": (setup_ies, None, None, teardown_ies),
"vpls": (setup_vpls, None, None, teardown_vpls),
"epipe": (setup_epipe, None, None, teardown_epipe),
"ethcfm" : (setup_ethcfm_domain, None, None, teardown_ethcfm_domain),
"business_vprn" : (setup_business_vprn, None, None, teardown_business_vprn),
"business_ies" : (setup_business_ies, None, None, teardown_business_ies),
"business_vpls" : (setup_business_vpls, None, None, teardown_business_vpls),
"business_epipe" : (setup_business_epipe, modify_business_epipe,
                    revert_business_epipe, teardown_business_epipe)}
dyn.action(d)
```

The function-key string specified at the start of the “Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params” (for example Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params:1 = “business_epipe={...}”) has a 1:1 mapping with the keys of the dictionary “d” in the highlighted section of the above sample (for example d = { ..., “business_epipe” : (...)}). For services, different values for setup, modify, revert and teardown are given which point to other sections in the Python script (see below). Setup and teardown functions are mandatory, whereas modify and revert functions are optional.

In the unbolded text of the previous example, there are other actions defined that are not contained in the RADIUS attributes (for example d = { “vprn”: (...), ... }). Those actions are referenced by the four main functions.

In the next part, there is more detail presented in each service example and maps it to the corresponding Python function.

It is advisable to read through all examples, as only the deltas between each service are explicitly explained.

Example 1 – Epipe service

```
# copy of the RADIUS attributes from above
-snip-
    Alc-Dyn-Serv-SAP-Id:1 = "#:1",
    Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params:1 = "business_epipe={'t':
        ('EPipe-CustomerName', 'CustomerName-Circuit-1', '3', '3', '64496'
        , '192.0.2.5', '192.0.2.1', '3333')}",
    Alc-Dyn-Serv-Policy:1 = "dynamic-services-2",
-snip-

# Python-part
d = {
-snip-
"business_epipe" : (setup_business_epipe, modify_business_epipe,
                    revert_business_epipe, teardown_business_epipe)

dyn.action(d)
-snip-
def setup_business_epipe(d):
    keys = ('inst', 'if_name', 'ing_qos', 'egr_qos', 'as', 'remote_ip',
            'local_ip', 'glb_svc_id')
    d = dict(zip(keys, d['t']))
    ref_d = dyn.reference("epipe", d['inst'], d)
    d['svc_id'] = ref_d['svc_id']
    d['sap_id'] = dyn.get_sap()
    dyn.add_cli("""
configure
service
    epipe %(svc_id)s
    sap %(sap_id)s create
    description "%(if_name)s"
    ingress
        qos %(ing_qos)s
    exit
    egress
        qos %(egr_qos)s
    exit
exit
spoke-sdp-fec %(svc_id)s fec 129 aii-type 2 create
pw-template-bind 2
saii-type2 %(as)s:%(local_ip)s:%(glb_svc_id)s
taii-type2 %(as)s:%(remote_ip)s:%(glb_svc_id)s
no shutdown
exit
exit
exit
exit
""")
    return d

def setup_epipe(d):
```

Configuration

```
        d['svc_id'] = dyn.select_free_id("service-id")
        dyn.add_cli("""
configure
  service
    epipe %(svc_id)s customer 1 create
      service-name "%(inst)s"
      description "%(inst)s"
      no shutdown
    exit
  exit
exit
""" % d)
    return {'svc_id':d['svc_id']}

def teardown_epipe(d):
    dyn.add_cli("""
configure
  service
    epipe %(svc_id)s
      shutdown
    exit
    no epipe %(svc_id)s
  exit
exit
""" % d)

def teardown_business_epipe(d):
    dyn.add_cli("""
configure
  service
    epipe %(svc_id)s
      sap %(sap_id)s
      shutdown
    exit
    spoke-sdp-fec %(svc_id)s
      shutdown
    exit
    no sap %(sap_id)s
    no spoke-sdp-fec %(svc_id)s
  exit
exit
""" % d)
-snip-
```

Based on the dictionary specified in the `dyn.action(d)` call, the function definition “`setup_business_epipe`” in the Python script corresponds with the function that will be called if the function-key “`business-epipe`” is specified in the “`Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params`” attribute as dictionary name and if a setup action is required. The dictionary containing the parameters in the RADIUS VSA “`Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params`” has a single key-value pair, with the parameters stored in a tuple. The individual parameters cannot be identified with a keyword hence the order in which they are specified in the RADIUS VSA should match the order in which they are extracted in the Python script. The first two lines in this part of the script extract the parameters out of the array “`t`” and link them to unique keywords, which are used for the rest of the script.

The parameter “inst” is important in this logic, as it defines whether access circuits belong to the same service-instance or different instances (the RADIUS VSAs for two SAPs belonging to the same service therefore need to have the same “inst” value). If you look at the CLI of the “setup_business_epipe” function, you can see that it creates the SAP and all related attributes, but not the service itself. It is the “ref_d = dyn.reference("epipe", d['inst'], d)” that references a part in the script to create the actual service-instance. The referenced function is found by using the first parameter in the dyn.reference call (“epipe”) as a function-key lookup in the dictionary specified in the dyn.action(d) and finding the corresponding setup function: d = { ..., "epipe" : (setup_epipe, ...), ... }. The second parameter (“d['inst']”) is used as unique identification of the service instance. The last parameter (“d”) is a dictionary with parameters that can be used by the references function. When the first customer endpoint with a new “inst” name comes up, the service itself gets created.

By looking at “def setup_epipe(d):” the first line “d['svc_id'] = dyn.select_free_id("service-id)” of the script automatically picks a free service-id out of the range defined in the dynamic service policy, as no service ID was provided in the RADIUS parameters. The rest of this function creates the service instance. Service attributes that were provided by RADIUS and are placed in a service specific dictionary are available to this function via the third parameter in the dyn.reference call. The newly generated service ID is returned to the calling script by the “return {'svc_id':d['svc_id']}” command at the end of the function. The service specific dictionary (as explained in the Python Script Building Block) is updated with the appropriate information.

Back to “def setup_business_epipe(d):”, the service ID together with the SAP ID and the parameters from the Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params VSA are used to create the appropriate CLI code for the SAP and the SDP within the service.

Similar to the setup, there is also a teardown part for both service and SAP. The teardown function is called either through the termination of the control-channel, through a COA with Alc-Dyn-Script-Action = teardown or through a disconnect message. The CLI for the teardown script must be written in the correct sequence as applied by the SR OS CLI logic so that SAP(s) and service(s) are removed in the correct order.

Example 2 – VPRN service

RADIUS-part from above

```
-snip-
Alc-Dyn-Serv-SAP-Id:2 += ":#.2",
Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params:2 += "business_vprn={'t':
('9999','VPRN-CustomerName','64497','100000',
'CustomerName-Circuit-1','172.16.10.1/30','3','1','3','2',
'172.16.100.0/24','172.16.10.2','100')}",
Alc-Dyn-Serv-Acct-Interim-Ivl-1:2 += "600",
Alc-Dyn-Serv-Acct-Interim-Ivl-2:2 += "0",
Alc-Dyn-Serv-Policy:2 += "dynamic-services-2",
-snip-
```

Python-part

```
d = {
-snip-
"business_vprn" : (setup_business_vprn, None, None, teardown_business_vprn)
```

Configuration

```
dyn.action(d)
-snip-
def setup_business_vprn(d):
    keys = ('svc_id', 'inst', 'as_id', 'comm_id', 'if_name', 'ipv4_address',
            'ing_qos', 'ing_ip_filter', 'egr_qos', 'egr_ip_filter', 'lan_pfx',
            'nxt_hop', 'metric')
    d = dict(zip(keys, d['t']))
    ref_d = dyn.reference("vprn", d['inst'], d)
    d['sap_id'] = dyn.get_sap()
    dyn.add_cli("""
configure
service
vprn %(svc_id)s
    interface "%(if_name)s" create
        address %(ipv4_address)s
        urpf-check mode strict
        sap %(sap_id)s create
            ingress
                qos %(ing_qos)s
                filter ip %(ing_ip_filter)s
            exit
            egress
                qos %(egr_qos)s
                filter ip %(egr_ip_filter)s
            exit
        exit
    exit
exit
router
    static-route %(lan_pfx)s next-hop %(nxt_hop)s metric %(metric)s
exit
exit
""" % d)
    return d

def setup_vprn(d):
    dyn.add_cli("""
configure
service
vprn %(svc_id)s customer 1 create
    service-name "%(inst)s"
    description "%(inst)s"
    autonomous-system %(as_id)s
    route-distinguisher %(as_id)s:%(comm_id)s
    auto-bind mpls
    vrf-target target:%(as_id)s:%(comm_id)s
    no shutdown
exit
exit
exit
""" % d)
    return {'svc_id': d['svc_id']}

def teardown_vprn(d):
    dyn.add_cli("""
configure
service
vprn %(svc_id)s
```

```

        shutdown
    exit
    no vprn %(svc_id)s
    exit
exit
""" % d)

def teardown_business_vprn(d):
    dyn.add_cli("""
configure
router
    no static-route %(lan_pfx)s next-hop %(nxt_hop)s
    exit
service
    vprn %(svc_id)s
        interface "%(if_name)s"
            sap %(sap_id)s
            shutdown
        exit
        no sap %(sap_id)s
        shutdown
    exit
    no interface "%(if_name)s"
    exit
exit
exit
""" % d)
-snip-

```

In this example of a VPRN service two additional RADIUS VSAs are used to overwrite the accounting interim update intervals for the two RADIUS Accounting servers that are specified in the dynamic services policy. The Stats-Type configuration (time or volume-time) is obtained from the dynamic services policy as no RADIUS VSA is provided for that.

The beginning of the “setup_business_vprn” definition is identical to the earlier Epipe service example. This time a service identifier is provided as part of the parameter list. The referenced function to create the VPRN service (def setup_vprn) does not need the line to auto-generate the service ID.

At the end of the setup-procedure there is a basic example to add static-route information in case they are needed for PE-CE communication. Later on, in the IES service example, a more flexible alternative is shown.

Example 3 – VPLS service

```

RADIUS-part from above
-snip-
    Alc-Dyn-Serv-SAP-Id:3 += "#:3",
    Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params:3 += "business_vpls={'inst':
        'VPLS-CustomerName', 'if_name': 'CustomerName-Circuit-1', 'ing_qos': '3',
        'egr_qos': '3', 'imp_comm_val': '10000', 'exp_comm_val': '10000',
        'rt': '64498', 'rd': '64498'}",

```

Configuration

```
Alc-Dyn-Serv-Policy:3 += "dynamic-services-2",
Alc-Dyn-Serv-Acct-Interim-Ivl-1:3 += "0",
Alc-Dyn-Serv-Acct-Interim-Ivl-2:3 += "0",
Alc-Dyn-Serv-Acct-Stats-Type-1:3 += off,
Alc-Dyn-Serv-Acct-Stats-Type-2:3 += off,
-snip-

Python-part
d = {
-snip-
"business_vpls" : (setup_business_vpls, None, None, teardown_business_vpls)
-snip-
def setup_business_vpls(d):
    ref_d = dyn.reference("vpls", d['inst'], d)
    d['svc_id'] = ref_d['svc_id']
    d['sap_id'] = dyn.get_sap()
    dyn.add_cli("""
configure
service
vpls %(svc_id)s
sap %(sap_id)s create
description "%(if_name)s"
ingress
qos %(ing_qos)s
exit
egress
qos %(egr_qos)s
exit
collect-stats
accounting-policy 10
exit
exit
exit
""")
    return d

def setup_vpls(d):
    d['svc_id'] = dyn.select_free_id("service-id")
    dyn.add_cli("""
configure
service
vpls %(svc_id)s customer 1 create
service-name "%(inst)s"
description "%(inst)s"
bgp
route-distinguisher %(rd)s:%(exp_comm_val)s
route-target export target:%(rt)s:%(exp_comm_val)s
import target:%(rt)s:%(imp_comm_val)s
pw-template-binding 1
exit
exit
bgp-ad
vpls-id %(rt)s:%(exp_comm_val)s
no shutdown
exit
no shutdown
exit
exit
""")
```

```

exit
""" % d)
    return {'svc_id':d['svc_id']}

def teardown_vpls(d):
    dyn.add_cli("""
configure
service
vpls %(svc_id)s
shutdown
bgp-ad
shutdown
exit
no bgp-ad
bgp
no pw-template-binding 1
exit
exit
no vpls %(svc_id)s
exit
exit
""" % d)

def teardown_business_vpls(d):
    dyn.add_cli("""
configure
service
vpls %(svc_id)s
sap %(sap_id)s
shutdown
exit
no sap %(sap_id)s
exit
exit
exit
""" % d)
-snip-

```

In the VPLS example the “Alc-Dyn-Serv-Acct-Stats-Type” is set to “off” for both RADIUS accounting destinations, meaning RADIUS accounting is switched off, even if it is enabled in the dynamic data services policy. In the script you can see that this service uses XML-accounting on the SAP instead (“collect-stats” and “accounting-policy 10”).

The dictionary containing the parameters in the RADIUS VSA “Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params” has a key-value pair for each parameter. In the Python script the individual parameters can be identified immediately with the dictionary key. The order in which they are specified in the RADIUS VSA does not have to be strictly defined. The drawback of this approach is that the length of the parameter VSA increases. A single parameter VSA is limited to a length of 246 bytes and the total length of all parameter VSAs for a single service is limited to 1000 bytes.

Example 4 – IES service

```

RADIUS-part from above
-snip-

```

Configuration

```
Alc-Dyn-Serv-SAP-Id:4 += "##.4",
Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params:4 += "business_ies={'t':
    ('IES-CustomerName', 'CustomerName-Circuit-1', '172.16.11.1/30',
     '2001:db8:5100:1000::1/64', '5', '1', '1', '6', '2', '2', '5', '25',
     'cfm-Mep-to-CPE', '100', ",
Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params:4 += "[{'to': '172.16.110.0/24',
    'n-h': '172.16.11.2'}, {'to': '2001:db8:bbbb::/56',
    'n-h': '2001:db8:5100:1000::2'}]}",
Alc-Dyn-Serv-Policy:4 += "dynamic-services-2",
Alc-Dyn-Serv-Acct-Interim-Ivl-1:4 += "600",
Alc-Dyn-Serv-Acct-Interim-Ivl-2:4 += "0",
Alc-Dyn-Serv-Acct-Stats-Type-1:4 += "3",
Alc-Dyn-Serv-Acct-Stats-Type-2:4 += "2",
-snip-

Python-part
d = {
-snip-
"business_ies" : (setup_business_ies, None, None, teardown_business_ies)
-snip-
def setup_business_ies(d):
    keys = ('inst', 'if_name', 'ipv4_address', 'ipv6_address', 'ing_qos',
            'ing_ip_filter', 'ing_ipv6_filter', 'egr_qos', 'egr_ip_filter',
            'egr_ipv6_filter', 'ing_bw', 'egr_bw', 'cfm_assoc_id', 'metric',
            'routes')
    d = dict(zip(keys, d['t']))
    ref_d = dyn.reference("ies", d['inst'], d)
    d['svc_id'] = ref_d['svc_id']
    d['sap_id'] = dyn.get_sap()
    d['cfm_domain'] = 1
    ref_d_cfm = dyn.reference("ethcfm", str(d['cfm_domain']), d)
    dyn.add_cli("""
configure
eth-cfm
    domain %(cfm_domain)s
    association %(svc_id)s format string name "%(cfm_assoc_id)s"
    bridge-identifier %(svc_id)s
    exit
    ccm-interval 1
    remote-mepid 2
    exit
exit
service
    ies %(svc_id)s
    interface "%(if_name)s" create
    address %(ipv4_address)s
    urpf-check mode strict
    cflowd interface both
    ipv6
    address %(ipv6_address)s
    urpf-check mode strict
    exit
    sap %(sap_id)s create
    description "%(if_name)s"
    ingress
    scheduler-policy "Business Services"
    scheduler-override
    scheduler "root-t1" create
```

```

        rate %(ing_bw)s000
    exit
    exit
    qos %(ing_qos)s
    filter ip %(ing_ip_filter)s
    filter ipv6 %(ing_ipv6_filter)s
exit
egress
    qos %(egr_qos)s
    filter ip %(egr_ip_filter)s
    filter ipv6 %(egr_ip_filter)s
    agg-rate-limit %(egr_bw)s000 queue-frame-based-accounting
exit
collect-stats
accounting-policy 10
eth-cfm
    mep 1 domain %(cfm_domain)s association %(svc_id)s direction down
    ccm-enable
    no shutdown
    exit
exit
exit
urpf-check
exit
exit
exit
exit
    for route in d['routes']:
        dyn.add_cli("""
            static-route %s next-hop %s metric %s tag 80
            """, route["to"], route["n-h"], d['metric'])
        dyn.add_cli("""
            exit
        """)
    return d

def setup_ies(d):
    d['svc_id'] = dyn.select_free_id("service-id")
    dyn.add_cli("""
configure
    service
        ies %(svc_id)s customer 1 create
        service-name "%(inst)s"
        description "%(inst)s"
        no shutdown
    exit
exit
""")
    return {'svc_id':d['svc_id']}

def setup_ethcfm_domain(d):
    dyn.add_cli("""
configure
    eth-cfm
        domain %(cfm_domain)s format none level 1
    """

```

Configuration

```
        exit
    exit
exit
""" % d)
    return {'cfm_domain':d['cfm_domain']}

def teardown_ethcfm_domain(d):
    dyn.add_cli("""
configure
    eth-cfm
        no domain %(cfm_domain)s
    exit
exit
""" % d)

def teardown_ies(d):
    dyn.add_cli("""
configure
    service
        ies %(svc_id)s
        shutdown
    exit
    no ies %(svc_id)s
    exit
exit
""" % d)

def teardown_business_ies(d):
    dyn.add_cli("""
configure
    router
    """)
    for route in d['routes']:
        dyn.add_cli("""
            no static-route %s next-hop %s
            """% (route["to"], route["n-h"])))
        dyn.add_cli("""
    exit
exit
""")
    dyn.add_cli("""
configure
    service
        ies %(svc_id)s
        interface "%(if_name)s"
            sap %(sap_id)s
            shutdown
            eth-cfm
                mep 1 domain %(cfm_domain)s association %(svc_id)s
                shutdown
            exit
            no mep 1 domain %(cfm_domain)s association %(svc_id)s
        exit
    exit
    no sap %(sap_id)s
    shutdown
    exit
    no interface "%(if_name)s"
    exit
```



```

exit
eth-cfm
    domain %(cfm_domain)s
    association %(svc_id)s
        no bridge-identifier %(svc_id)s
    exit
    no association %(svc_id)s
exit
exit
exit
""" % d)
-snip-

```

The IES example has the most attributes. The maximum length of a tagged RADIUS VSA is 246 bytes. If the amount of data is too big to fit into one attribute, simply add a second or third one in the syntax shown above in the RADIUS part. There is no need to separate the attributes exactly at 246 bytes; it can be cut at any position in the list (preferably between two attributes for better readability). Note also that all the parameter VSAs that belong to the same service should have the same tag (":4" in this example).

In case of multiple parameter VSAs, the order in which they are specified is important and must be guaranteed as the concatenation of all the attributes must result in a Python dictionary in the form: "dictionary-name = {...}". The Python script is not aware that multiple attributes were used.

Another difference to the previous examples is that there is not only a reference to the function for the service creation, but also a similar reference to a function for Ethernet Connectivity Fault Management (CFM). Considering that you may want to put all of the Eth-CFM endpoints under the same domain within unique associations, the Eth-CFM domain needs to be created first and torn down as last.

Finally, a different way to provide static-route information is shown at the end of the "setup_business_ies" definition (starting with "for route in d['routes']:"). Also note the difference in how this information is implemented at the end of the "Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params" list. The static routes themselves are defined as a dictionary and thus as many routes as required can be added with this method. Compare this to the VPRN example where a more basic mechanism was used.

As outlined before, dynamic data services can be triggered during the Access-Accept for the control channel but also through a CoA to the control channel Accounting Session ID.

Example 5 – modify an Epipe service using CoA

So far the focus was on service establishment and teardown. It is also possible to change a running dynamic data service using the "modify" function. This will be explained with the previously configured Epipe service.

RADIUS attributes in the COA message

Configuration

```
Acct-Session-Id = D6E559000000BD5166BF34 #
Alc-Dyn-Serv-SAP-Id:1 = "#:1",
Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params:1 = "business_epipe={'ing_qos':'4','egr_qos':'4'}",
Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Action:1 = modify,
Alc-Dyn-Serv-Policy:1 = "dynamic-services-2",

Python-part
d = {
-snip-
"business_epipe" : (setup_business_epipe, modify_business_epipe, revert_business_epipe,
teardown_business_epipe)}
dyn.action(d)
-snip-
def modify_business_epipe(d, sd):
    sd['ing_qos'] = d['ing_qos']
    sd['egr_qos'] = d['egr_qos']
    dyn.add_cli("""
configure
service
    epipe %(svc_id)s
    sap %(sap_id)s
    ingress
        qos %(ing_qos)s
    exit
    egress
        qos %(egr_qos)s
    exit
    exit
exit
exit
"""% sd)
    return sd

def revert_business_epipe(d, sd):
    dyn.add_cli("""
configure
service
    epipe %(svc_id)s
    sap %(sap_id)s
    ingress
        qos %(ing_qos)s
    exit
    egress
        qos %(egr_qos)s
    exit
    exit
exit
exit
"""% sd)
-snip-
```

Through the function-key in the parameter list (Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params:1 = "business_epipe= ...") and the action attribute of “modify” (Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Action:1 = modify), the script will identify the relevant routine to be invoked for the modification

(`modify_business_epipe`). If a `modify` function is defined, there must also be a definition for a `revert` function. A `revert` function cannot be initiated from RADIUS, but it is automatically executed to restore the initial configuration in case the `modify` script execution fails.

A `modify` action for an existing service is triggered with a CoA message. For this CoA, either the Accounting Session ID (ASID) of the control channel or the Accounting Session ID of the dynamic data channel can be used. In case the ASID of the control channel is used, the “Alc-Dyn-Serv-SAP-Id” can contain wildcards, as the appropriate port and VLAN information will be taken from the control channel. If the ASID of the dynamic data channel itself is used, the “Alc-Dyn-Serv-SAP-Id” needs to be fully specified, without wildcards. Otherwise the script execution will fail.

For a `modify` action, the “Alc-Dyn-Serv-Script-Params” only contains the parameters to be changed and does not need any further service identifying information. The service is identified based on the ASID and the “Alc-Dyn-Serv-SAP-Id”. Parameters which have been previously received by the `setup` or an earlier `modify` function are available in the stored dictionary (`sd`). Those are combined with the dictionary in the RADIUS message (`d`). Service modifications which relate to subsequent modifications, or for the service teardown, need to be updated in the stored dictionary so that they can be used in those later actions. This is achieved by the “`return sd`” command.

As with “manual” provisioned services, the new QoS settings from our example take effect immediately.

A dynamic data service can also be disconnected using a RADIUS Disconnect Message containing the Accounting Session ID of the dynamic data service, or indirectly via a RADIUS Disconnect Message containing the Accounting Session ID of the control channel which would result in a teardown of all associated dynamic data services.

Debugging

It is obvious that the Python scripts need extensive testing in the lab before they are deployed in the field. This testing may require a number of iterations: write the script, testing, verification, improvement and testing again. Every time there is a change in the Python script the node needs to reload the script. This is achieved by a **shutdown** and **no shutdown** of the active script using the command:

```
configure aaa radius-script-policy <script-policy-name> <primary/secondary> shutdown
configure aaa radius-script-policy <script-policy-name> <primary/secondary> no shutdown
```

Testing the script may result in some problems if certain aspects may not work as expected (see also debug functions later in this section). It can be that a dynamically created service cannot be removed properly because the teardown script contains errors and the whole service, or fragments of that service, may still exist on the node.

Dynamic data services cannot be edited in normal CLI mode as it may potentially make a later removal of that service through the script impossible. For troubleshooting there is a procedure to

manipulate those services during the testing phase, thus avoiding the need to reboot the box to clear the state. The **enable-dynamic-services-config** command allows for the editing dynamic services just like normal services. As this is an action that should only be executed by authorized personnel, the activation of this command is protected by the use of a password, defined under **configure system security password dynsvc-password**.

The **show users** command has been extended to visualize the respective mode ('D' indicates a user is in dynamic service edit mode). A user in dynamic services edit mode cannot modify regular services.

no enable-dynamic-services-config returns the user to normal mode.

To support the creation and the troubleshooting during the test phase the SR OS debug functions have been extended extensively to allow for a detailed review of what is happening in the script and on the CLI.

```
debug dynamic-services
debug dynamic-services scripts
debug dynamic-services scripts event
debug dynamic-services scripts event cli
debug dynamic-services scripts event errors
debug dynamic-services scripts event executed-cmd
debug dynamic-services scripts event state-change
debug dynamic-services scripts event warnings
debug dynamic-services scripts instance
debug dynamic-services scripts instance event
debug dynamic-services scripts instance event cli
debug dynamic-services scripts instance event errors
debug dynamic-services scripts instance event executed-cmd
debug dynamic-services scripts instance event state-change
debug dynamic-services scripts instance event warnings
debug dynamic-services scripts script
debug dynamic-services scripts script event
debug dynamic-services scripts script event cli
debug dynamic-services scripts script event errors
debug dynamic-services scripts script event executed-cmd
debug dynamic-services scripts script event state-change
debug dynamic-services scripts script event warnings
```

It is advised to enable all debug options when starting and then remove more and more debugs options as the script becomes more complete and stable. The debug output gives clear indications about errors in the script or its execution in case something goes wrong.

An additional aid is the use of “print” commands in the Python script itself for certain attributes during the execution of the script. The print output will appear in the debug log. “Print” commands in the Python script should only be used during the testing phase and not in the normal operations mode.

The following command allows the execution of a dynamic services Python script without the need for RADIUS interaction:

tools perform service dynamic-services evaluate-script sap <sap-id> control-session <acct-session-id> action <script-action> [dynsvc-policy <name>]

show service dynamic-services script statistics provides general statistics about script execution.

show service dynamic-services script snippets displays the individual service configuration parts and allows to check if all “snippets” are actually referenced (the counter will increment/decrement with every function call).

In the case of a failed script action a SAP may not be deleted properly and it remains in the configuration as an “orphaned” object. “show service dynamic-services saps orphaned” displays orphaned objects.

An orphaned object no longer has any references, which can be seen using **show service dynamic-services root-objects** where the snippet name and snippet instance is set to “N/A”.

Complete setup flow example

To finalize the section about the interaction between RADIUS and the Python script, the complete setup flow for the Epipe example is shown using extracts from the debug output (any missing sequence numbers in the flow below are simple acknowledge messages from RADIUS and are left out to focus on the important information). The debug settings to be used for this output are the following.

```
*A:BNG-1# show debug
debug
  router "Base"
    radius
      packet-type authentication accounting coa
      detail-level medium
    exit
  exit
router "management"
  radius
    packet-type authentication accounting coa
    detail-level medium
  exit
exit
dynamic-services
  scripts
    event
      cli
    exit
    instance "dynamic-services-1"
      event
        cli
      exit
    exit
  exit
exit
exit
```

The first sequence in the flow is the Access-Request to the RADIUS server for the control channel. The information provided is that configured as part of the regular ESM configuration.

```
9 2013/04/12 20:47:23.73 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base RADIUS
"RADIUS: Transmit
Access-Request(1) 172.31.1.2:1812 id 70 len 206 vrid 1 pol authentication-2
USER NAME [1] 24 subscriber12@domain2.com
NAS IP ADDRESS [4] 4 192.0.2.1
SERVICE TYPE [6] 4 Framed(2)
FRAMED PROTOCOL [7] 4 PPP(1)
CHAP PASSWORD [3] 17 1 0xd4b73e0a17c0ad7f03c19bc1db5c291d
CHAP CHALLENGE [60] 41
0x620fa5f8be193d2066f6abad96c7de2df03986e3421f9733220d9520137b0bf40b30edc9c92bea30a2
VSA [26] 29 DSL(3561)
AGENT CIRCUIT ID [1] 13 circuit-id-12
AGENT REMOTE ID [2] 12 remote-id-12
NAS PORT ID [87] 11 3/2/2:1.100
CALLING STATION ID [31] 17 00:00:64:01:02:03
NAS IDENTIFIER [32] 5 BNG-1
NAS PORT TYPE [61] 4 PPPoEoQinQ(34)
```

If the subscriber can be authenticated and authorized, RADIUS responds with an Access-Accept containing attributes for both the control channel and the dynamic data service.

```
10 2013/04/12 20:47:23.73 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base RADIUS
"RADIUS: Receive
  Access-Accept(2) id 70 len 211 from 172.31.1.2:1812 vrid 1 pol authentication-2
    VSA [26] 14 Alcatel(6527)
      SUBSC ID STR [11] 12 pppoe-user12
    FRAMED IP ADDRESS [8] 4 10.2.1.200
    VSA [26] 8 Alcatel(6527)
      DYN SERV SAP ID [164] 6 1 #:#.1
    VSA [26] 118 Alcatel(6527)
      DYN SERV SCRIPT PARAMS [165] 116 1 business_epipe={'t':('EPipe-CustomerName','CustomerName-Circuit-1','3','3','64496','192.0.2.5','192.0.2.1','3333')}
    VSA [26] 21 Alcatel(6527)
      DYN SERV POLICY [167] 19 1 dynamic-services-2
```

The existence of the Dyn Serv VSAs in the response triggers the BNG to start the execution of the Python script, but first the control channel session is completely established and an accounting start message is send to RADIUS. This is a standard accounting message for ESM subscribers.

```
11 2013/04/12 20:47:23.75 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base RADIUS
"RADIUS: Transmit
  Accounting-Request(4) 172.31.1.2:1813 id 108 len 191 vrid 1 pol accounting-2
    STATUS TYPE [40] 4 Start(1)
    NAS IP ADDRESS [4] 4 192.0.2.1
    SERVICE TYPE [6] 4 Framed(2)
    FRAMED PROTOCOL [7] 4 PPP(1)
    FRAMED IP ADDRESS [8] 4 10.2.1.200
    FRAMED IP NETMASK [9] 4 255.255.255.255
    NAS IDENTIFIER [32] 5 BNG-1
    SESSION ID [44] 22 D6E559000000D2516872DB
    MULTI SESSION ID [50] 22 D6E559000000D3516872DB
```

```

EVENT TIMESTAMP [55] 4 1365799643
NAS PORT TYPE [61] 4 PPPoEoQinQ(34)
NAS PORT ID [87] 11 3/2/2:1.100
VSA [26] 29 DSL(3561)
  AGENT CIRCUIT ID [1] 13 circuit-id-12
  AGENT REMOTE ID [2] 12 remote-id-12
VSA [26] 14 Alcatel(6527)
  SUBSC ID STR [11] 12 pppoe-user12
"

```

Next, the creation of the dynamic data service starts. As this is the first SAP for this service, the script which we reviewed above first creates the service instance.

```

12 2013/04/12 20:47:23.74 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base dyn-script cli 1/1
"dyn-script cli 1/1: epipe:EPipe-CustomerName(cli 172 dict 0->31)

```

```

configure
service
  epipe 1000 customer 1 create
    service-name "EPipe-CustomerName"
    description "EPipe-CustomerName"
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
exit
"

```

Next, the SAP and the SDP are created within this service by the main function.

```

14 2013/04/12 20:47:23.74 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base dyn-script cli 1/1
"dyn-script cli 1/1: business_epipe:3/2/2:1.1(cli 418 dict 0->308)

```

```

configure
service
  epipe 1000
    sap 3/2/2:1.1 create
      description "CustomerName-Circuit-1"
      ingress
        qos 3
      exit
      egress
        qos 3
      exit
    exit
    spoke-sdp-fec 1000 fec 129 aii-type 2 create
      pw-template-bind 2
      saii-type2 64496:192.0.2.1:3333
      taii-type2 64496:192.0.2.5:3333
      no shutdown
    exit
  exit
exit
exit
"

```

Configuration

The service is created and is now active. As two RADIUS accounting destinations are configured in the dynamic services policy a RADIUS Accounting-Start message is sent to each destination to indicate the service is up.

```
16 2013/04/12 20:47:23.76 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base RADIUS
```

```
"RADIUS: Transmit
```

```
  Accounting-Request(4) 172.31.1.2:1813 id 252 len 294 vrid 1 pol radius-server-policy-2
    STATUS TYPE [40] 4 Start(1)
    NAS IP ADDRESS [4] 4 192.0.2.1
    SESSION ID [44] 22 D6E55900000D4516872DB
    NAS PORT ID [87] 9 3/2/2:1.1
    DELAY TIME [41] 4 0
    NAS IDENTIFIER [32] 5 BNG-1
    EVENT TIMESTAMP [55] 4 1365799643
    MULTI SESSION ID [50] 22 D6E55900000D1516872DB
    USER NAME [1] 24 subscriber12@domain2.com
    VSA [26] 29 DSL(3561)
      AGENT CIRCUIT ID [1] 13 circuit-id-12
      AGENT REMOTE ID [2] 12 remote-id-12
    VSA [26] 117 Alcatel(6527)
      DYN SERV SCRIPT PARAMS [165] 115 business_epipe={'t':('EPipe-CustomerName','CustomerName-Circuit-1','3','3','64496','192.0.2.5','192.0.2.1','3333')}
"
```

```
15 2013/04/12 20:47:23.76 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base RADIUS
```

```
"RADIUS: Transmit
```

```
  Accounting-Request(4) 172.31.1.2:1813 id 251 len 294 vrid 1 pol radius-server-policy-2
    STATUS TYPE [40] 4 Start(1)
    NAS IP ADDRESS [4] 4 192.0.2.1
    SESSION ID [44] 22 D6E55900000D4516872DB
    NAS PORT ID [87] 9 3/2/2:1.1
    DELAY TIME [41] 4 0
    NAS IDENTIFIER [32] 5 BNG-1
    EVENT TIMESTAMP [55] 4 1365799643
    MULTI SESSION ID [50] 22 D6E55900000D1516872DB
    USER NAME [1] 24 subscriber12@domain2.com
    VSA [26] 29 DSL(3561)
      AGENT CIRCUIT ID [1] 13 circuit-id-12
      AGENT REMOTE ID [2] 12 remote-id-12
    VSA [26] 117 Alcatel(6527)
      DYN SERV SCRIPT PARAMS [165] 115 business_epipe={'t':('EPipe-CustomerName','CustomerName-Circuit-1','3','3','64496','192.0.2.5','192.0.2.1','3333')}
"
```

For both RADIUS accounting destinations the interim accounting updates are also configured.

```
21 2013/04/12 20:51:46.69 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base RADIUS
```

```
"RADIUS: Transmit
```

```
  Accounting-Request(4) 172.31.1.2:1813 id 173 len 511 vrid 1 pol radius-server-policy-1
    STATUS TYPE [40] 4 Interim-Update(3)
    NAS IP ADDRESS [4] 4 192.0.2.1
    SESSION ID [44] 22 D6E55900000D4516872DB
    NAS PORT ID [87] 9 3/2/2:1.1
    DELAY TIME [41] 4 0
    NAS IDENTIFIER [32] 5 BNG-1
    EVENT TIMESTAMP [55] 4 1365799906
    SESSION TIME [46] 4 125174
    MULTI SESSION ID [50] 22 D6E55900000D1516872DB
```


RADIUS-Triggered Dynamic Data Service Provisioning

```

USER NAME [1] 23 subscriber12@domain2.com
VSA [26] 27 DSL(3561)
  AGENT CIRCUIT ID [1] 12 circuit-id-12
  AGENT REMOTE ID [2] 11 remote-id-12
VSA [26] 241 Alcatel(6527)
  DYN SERV SCRIPT PARAMS [165] 115 business_epipe={'t':('EPipe-CustomerName','CustomerName-Circuit-1','3','3','64496','192.0.2.5','192.0.2.1','3333')}
    INPUT_INPROF_OCTETS_64 [19] 10 0x00010000000000000000
    INPUT_OUTPROF_OCTETS_64 [20] 10 0x00010000000000000000
    INPUT_INPROF_PACKETS_64 [23] 10 0x00010000000000000000
    INPUT_OUTPROF_PACKETS_64 [24] 10 0x00010000000000000000
    INPUT_HIGH_OCTETS_OFFER_64 [73] 10 0x00010000000000000000
    INPUT_LOW_PACK_OFFER_64 [76] 10 0x00010000000000000000
    INPUT_HIGH_PACK_OFFER_64 [75] 10 0x00010000000000000000
    INPUT_LOW_OCTETS_OFFER_64 [74] 10 0x00010000000000000000
    INPUT_UNC_PACK_OFFER_64 [78] 10 0x00010000000000000000
    INPUT_UNC_OCTETS_OFFER_64 [77] 10 0x00010000000000000000
    INPUT_HIGH_PACK_DROP_64 [71] 10 0x00010000000000000000
    INPUT_LOW_PACK_DROP_64 [72] 10 0x00010000000000000000
    INPUT_HIGH_OCTETS_DROP_64 [69] 10 0x00010000000000000000
    INPUT_LOW_OCTETS_DROP_64 [70] 10 0x00010000000000000000
    OUTPUT_INPROF_OCTETS_64 [21] 10 0x00010000000000000033c
VSA [26] 84 Alcatel(6527)
  OUTPUT_OUTPROF_OCTETS_64 [22] 10 0x00010000000000000000
  OUTPUT_INPROF_PACKETS_64 [25] 10 0x00010000000000000000b
  OUTPUT_OUTPROF_PACKETS_64 [26] 10 0x00010000000000000000
  OUTPUT_INPROF_PACK_DROP_64 [81] 10 0x00010000000000000000
  OUTPUT_OUTPROF_PACK_DROP_64 [82] 10 0x00010000000000000000
  OUTPUT_INPROF_OCTS_DROP_64 [83] 10 0x00010000000000000000
  OUTPUT_OUTPROF_OCTS_DROP_64 [84] 10 0x00010000000000000000
"

19 2013/04/12 20:48:56.69 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base RADIUS
"RADIUS: Transmit
Accounting-Request(4) 172.31.1.2:1813 id 253 len 241 vrid 1 pol radius-server-policy-2
STATUS TYPE [40] 4 Interim-Update(3)
NAS IP ADDRESS [4] 4 192.0.2.1
SESSION ID [44] 22 D6E559000000D4516872DB
NAS PORT ID [87] 9 3/2/2:1.1
DELAY TIME [41] 4 0
NAS IDENTIFIER [32] 5 BNG-1
EVENT TIMESTAMP [55] 4 1365799736
SESSION TIME [46] 4 125004
MULTI SESSION ID [50] 22 D6E559000000D1516872DB
USER NAME [1] 23 subscriber12@domain2.com
VSA [26] 27 DSL(3561)
  AGENT CIRCUIT ID [1] 12 circuit-id-12
  AGENT REMOTE ID [2] 11 remote-id-12
VSA [26] 61 Alcatel(6527)
  DYN SERV SCRIPT PARAMS [165] 115 business_epipe={'t':('EPipe-CustomerName','CustomerName-Circuit-1','3','3','64496','192.0.2.5','192.0.2.1','3333')}
"

```

The “Stats-Type” in the dynamic service policy (or obtained via RADIUS in a VSA) defines what information is sent back to the accounting server (per server). In this example one was set to Stats-Type “time” and the other to “volume-time”. The first accounting message displays the content of “volume-time”. A full set of statistics counters per service class are provided for the dynamic

service. This is equivalent to the extended accounting statistics also provided in the ESM context. The second accounting message shows the content of “time”. No volume statistics counters are provided in this case.

Once the dynamic data services are instantiated they can be displayed with the regular show commands.

```
A:BNG-1# show service service-using
=====
Services
=====
ServiceId      Type      Adm  Opr  CustomerId Service Name
-----
1              VPLS      Up   Up   1          VPLS_For_Capture_SAPs
2              VPRN      Up   Up   1          VPRN_Control_Channel
3              VPRN      Up   Up   1          VPRN_REsidential_Subs
4              IES       Up   Up   1
10             VPRN      Up   Up   1
99             Mirror    Up   Up   1
500            Mirror    Up   Up   1
[1000]         Epipe     Up   Up   1          EPipe-CustomerName
[1001]         VPLS      Up   Up   1          VPLS-CustomerName
[1002]         IES       Up   Up   1          IES-CustomerName
[5000]         IES       Up   Up   1          IES-5000
[9999]         VPRN      Up   Up   1          VPRN-CustomerName
10001          VPLS      Up   Up   1
10002          Epipe     Up   Up   1
-snip-
-----
Matching Services : 20
-----
Dynamic Services : 5, indicated by [<svc-id>]
-----
=====
```

The dynamically created services are shown in the standard service list with their service IDs between brackets. It is possible to filter only the dynamic services using the **origin dyn-script** option.

```
A:BNG-1# show service service-using origin dyn-script
=====
Services
=====
ServiceId      Type      Adm  Opr  CustomerId Service Name
-----
[1000]         Epipe     Up   Up   1          EPipe-CustomerName
[1001]         VPLS      Up   Up   1          VPLS-CustomerName
[1002]         IES       Up   Up   1          IES-CustomerName
[5000]         IES       Up   Up   1          IES-5000
[9999]         VPRN      Up   Up   1          VPRN-CustomerName
-----
Matching Services : 5
-----
Dynamic Services : 5, indicated by [<svc-id>]
-----
```

Similarly, the active SAPs can also be shown with the regular command.

```
A:BNG-1# show service sap-using
```

```
=====
Service Access Points
=====
```

PortId	SvcId	Ing. QoS	Ing. Fltr	Egr. QoS	Egr. Fltr	Adm	Opr
3/2/1:*.100	1	1	none	1	none	Up	Up
3/2/1:*.200	1	1	none	1	none	Up	Up
3/2/2:*.100	1	1	none	1	none	Up	Up
[3/2/1:4.100]	2	1	none	1	none	Up	Up
[3/2/2:1.100]	2	1	none	1	none	Up	Up
3/2/2:1000.1000	2	1	none	1	none	Up	Up
[3/2/1:2.200]	3	1	none	1	none	Up	Up
[3/2/1:3.200]	3	1	none	1	none	Up	Up
3/2/1:1001.1001	3	1	none	1	none	Up	Up
3/2/2:500.500	3	1	none	1	none	Up	Up
3/2/2:100.100	4	1	none	1	none	Up	Up
3/2/2:99.99	99	1	none	1	none	Up	Up
[3/2/2:1.1]	[1000]	3	none	3	none	Up	Up
[3/2/2:1.3]	[1001]	3	none	3	none	Up	Up
[3/2/2:1.4]	[1002]	5	ip4+ip6	6	ip4+i*	Up	Up
[3/2/1:4.3]	[5000]	1	none	1	none	Up	Up
[3/2/2:1.2]	[9999]	3	ip4	3	ip4	Up	Up
3/2/1:99.99	10001	1	none	1	none	Up	Up
3/2/19:100	10001	1	none	1	none	Up	Up
3/2/20:100	10001	1	none	1	none	Up	Up

```
-snip-
```

```
-----
Number of SAPs : 31
-----
```

```
Number of Managed SAPs : 4, indicated by [<sap-id>]
-----
```

```
Number of Dynamic Service SAPs : 5, indicated by [<sap-id>] [<svc-id>]
-----
```

```
=====
* indicates that the corresponding row element may have been truncated.
=====
```

The description at the end of this show command explains how the dynamic services SAPs are displayed. Note that there are managed SAPs created for the control channel as well as dynamic data services SAPs.

If only the SAPs for dynamic data services should be displayed, the command **show service sap-using dyn-script** can be used.

```
A:BNG-1# show service sap-using dyn-script
```

```
=====
Service Access Points
=====
```

PortId	SvcId	Ing. QoS	Ing. Fltr	Egr. QoS	Egr. Fltr	Adm	Opr
--------	-------	-------------	--------------	-------------	--------------	-----	-----

Configuration

```
-----  
[3/2/2:1.1]          [1000]      3      none      3      none      Up      Up  
[3/2/2:1.3]          [1001]      3      none      3      none      Up      Up  
[3/2/2:1.4]          [1002]      5      ip4+ip6  6      ip4+i*   Up      Up  
[3/2/1:4.3]          [5000]      1      none      1      none      Up      Up  
[3/2/2:1.2]          [9999]      3      ip4       3      ip4       Up      Up  
-----
```

Number of SAPs : 5

Number of Dynamic Service SAPs : 5, indicated by [<sap-id>] [<svc-id>]

=====

* indicates that the corresponding row element may have been truncated.

Conclusion

RADIUS-based dynamic data services provide an innovative way for business service provisioning. They are created both automatically and instantaneously.

It removes the need for comprehensive integration tasks into the existing IT environment for service provisioning and therefore speeds up the introduction of new service offerings, and thus new revenue streams for the customer.

Raw Formatting of DHCPv4/v6 Options in ESM

In This Chapter

This section provides information about raw formatting of DHCPv4/v6 options in ESM.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 1236](#)
- [Overview on page 1237](#)
- [Configuration on page 1246](#)
- [Conclusion on page 1269](#)

Applicability

This example is applicable to DHCPv4/v6 subscriber-hosts using the Routed Central Office ESM model on 7750 SR-7/12/12e, 7750 SR-c4/12 and 7450 ESS 6/7/12 in Mixed-Mode with IOM3-XP or IMM.

A local DHCPv4/v6 server is used for address/prefix assignment, which implies a 7x50 DHCP *relay* scenario (as opposed to a 7x50 DHCP *proxy* scenario where the IP address/prefix is assigned via a RADIUS server or an LUDB).

The configuration was tested in a single homed environment using SR OS 12.0.R4.

Overview

The 7x50 supports IP address assignment to its DHCP clients via two IP address assignment authorities:

- DHCP server — In this model the 7x50 behaves as a DHCP relay between the DHCP client and the 7x50 DHCP server.
- RADIUS/LUDB — In this model the IP address/prefix is assigned via a RADIUS server or an LUDB and the 7x50 internal or external behaves as a proxy¹ between the DHCP client and the non-DHCP aware RADIUS/LUDB.

Within these two fundamental address assignment models, there are several mechanisms available on the 7x50 by which DHCP parameters (DHCP options and various parameters within the options) can be passed to the DHCP client during the address assignment phase.

For example, in the RADIUS/LUDB address assignment model, the DHCP parameters can be supplied via RADIUS, LUDB and Python, while in the DHCP server model, the DHCP parameters can also be supplied via the DHCP server itself (in addition to RADIUS, LUDB and Python).

Some of the more commonly used DHCP parameters have their own RADIUS and CLI constructs. For example, a default router has its own RADIUS attribute(s):

```
Alc-Default-Router (26-6527-18)
```

or even its own CLI keyword:

```
config>router>dhcp>server>pool>subnet>options# default-router
config>service>router>dhcp>server>pool>subnet>options# default-router
config>subscr-mgmt>ludb>ipoe>host>options# default-router
```

Other less common DHCP options can be defined and inserted by the 7x50 DHCP relay agent using the pre-formatted (IP address, domain, or string) or the non-formatted (hex) custom-option CLI command:

```
config>router>dhcp>server>pool>options# custom-option
config>router>dhcp>server>pool>subnet>options# custom-option
config>router>dhcp6>server>pool>options# custom-option
config>router>dhcp6>server>pool>prefix>options# custom-option
config>service>vprn>dhcp>server>pool>options# custom-option
config>service>vprn>dhcp>server>pool>subnet>options# custom-option
config>service>vprn>dhcp6>server>pool>options# custom-option
config>service>vprn>dhcp6>server>pool>prefix>options# custom-option
```

1. Note that the term *proxy* can also refer to the functionality where the DHCP server is used for address assignment. In this case, the 7x50 would hide the DHCP server from the client and pretend to be the DHCP server to the client, passing the DHCP parameters between the client and the server (lease times, etc).

```
config>subscriber-mgmt>ludb>ipoe>host>options# custom-option
```

The most flexible way of configuring DHCP parameters is by means of ‘raw’ (or hexadecimal) formatting. Any DHCP option can be hexadecimally (raw) formatted via the following RADIUS attributes:

```
Alc-ToClient-Dhcp-Options
Alc-ToClient-Dhcp6-Options
```

and/or via the custom-options CLI commands as outlined above. These options are then passed on to the DHCP client via the DHCP relay agent in the 7x50.

In addition to raw formatting via RADIUS or CLI, Python scripting can be used to intercept DHCP messages and modify their content.

The focus of this example is to demonstrate how the **raw** DHCP options are formatted via RADIUS. The messages can be optionally pre/post-processed by a Python script in the 7x50 before they are passed on to the DHCP client.

In this example, the following DHCP parameters are passed to the DHCP client using the **Alc-ToClient-Dhcp-Options** and the **Alc-ToClient-Dhcp6-Options** RADIUS attributes:

Table 36: RADIUS Inserted Raw Options

RADIUS	
DHCPv4 ToClient-Dhcp-Options	DHCPv6 ToClient-Dhcp6-Options
(default-)router [3] = 10.10.10.254	DNS server [23] = 2001:db8:1:1:1:1:1:1 2001:db8:1:1:1:1:1:2
DNS server [6] = 172.22.250.250 172.22.250/251	Domain search list [24] = ‘alcatel-lucent.com’ ‘test.com’
Domain name [15] = ‘alcatel.com’	Vendor specific-option [17] = ‘custom-test-option’
Custom option [230] = ‘custom test option’	
Renew time [58] = 5 min (300sec)	
Rebind time [59] = 6min 40sec (400sec)	

The DHCP parameters in the following DHCP messages are altered by a Python script:

Table 37: Python Modified DHCP Fields

Python	
DHCPv4 (DHCP Request)	DHCPv6 (LDRA DHCP Request)
Lease-time [51] = 8min 20sec (500sec)	IA-NA Preferred-Lifetime = 66min 40sec (4000sec)
	IA-NA Valid-Lifetime = 66min 40sec (4000sec)
	IA-NA Renew-Time (T1) = 33min 20sec (2000sec)
	IA-NA Rebind-Time (T2) = 50min (3000sec)
	IA-PD Preferred-Lifetime = 66min 40sec (4000sec)
	IA-PD Valid-Lifetime = 66min 40sec (4000sec)
	IA-PD Renew-Time (T1) = 33min 20sec (2000sec)
	IA-PD Rebind-Time (T2) = 50min (3000sec)

The following DHCP parameters are configured via CLI in the 7x50 DHCPv4/v6 server:

Table 38: CLI Inserted DHCP Options

CLI DHCP Server Pool/prefix Options	
DHCPv4	DHCPv6
DNS server [6] = 172.22.250.253	DNS server [23] = 2001:db8:1:1:1:1:3
Custom option [231] = 'dhcp injected custom option 231'	Custom option [232] = 'v6 custom option 232'
	IA-NA Preferred-Lifetime = 20min (1200sec)
	IA-NA Valid-Lifetime = 20min (1200sec)
	IA-NA Renew-Time (T1) = 10 min (600 sec)
	IA-NA Rebind-Time (T2) = 15min (900 sec)
	IA-PD Preferred-Lifetime = 20min (1200sec)
	IA-PD Valid-Lifetime = 20min (1200sec)
	IA-PD Renew-Time (T1) = 10min (600 sec)

The RADIUS injected raw options are prepended by the DHCP relay agent in the 7x50 to any existing DHCP options already present in the DHCP message before being sent to the client. The existing options could be generated by the DHCP server (internal or external) or by the LUDB. No check is performed on the outgoing DHCP message towards the client in order to verify whether any of the RADIUS inserted options are already present in the DHCP message. This could potentially lead to duplication of DHCP options in the outgoing DHCP messages in case that the same option is inserted via the DHCP server and via RADIUS. To prove the point, this example supplies the same DHCP option (with different values) via multiple sources (RADIUS and CLI).

Configuration of DHCP lease related times requires closer examination. In DHCPv4, the DHCP lease-time option (51) is always supplied by the DHCPv4 server (this cannot be disabled). In case the lease-time is also supplied via RADIUS in an Alc-ToClient-Dhcp-Options VSA, the client would receive two lease-times for the same IP address. This can lead to unpredictable behavior not only on the client side but also on the 7x50 DHCPv4 server side since the DHCPv4 server (and the 7x50 DHCPv4 relay agent) creates the lease state only for the lease-time supplied by the DHCP server, and ignores the one supplied via RADIUS or LUDB. This scenario is shown in [Figure 189](#):

1. DHCP Discover arrives.
2. Radius authentication is triggered.

3. RADIUS returns lease-time value 'B' (Alc-ToClient-DHCP-Option) in Authentication-Accept message.
4. DHCP Discover is forwarded by the DHCP relay agent to the DHCP server.
5. DHCP server offers an IP lease with the configured lease-time of 'A'.
6. The DHCP offer is sent to the DHCP relay agent.
7. The DHCP relay agent appends the lease-time 'B' supplied by RADIUS to the DHCP message.
8. The DHCP relay forwards the message to the DHCP client with both lease-times 'A' and 'B'.

Note that the example in [Figure 189](#) does not represent a typical deployment case. This example is solely chosen to clarify the behavior in 7x50.

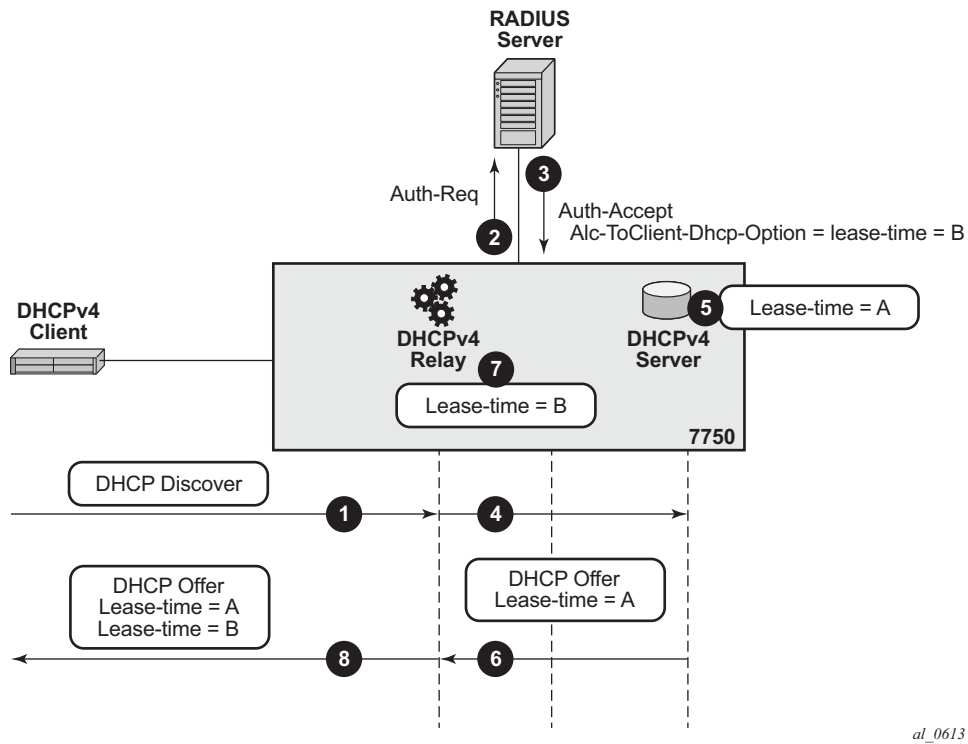


Figure 189: DHCPv4 Lease-Time Inserted by RADIUS and DHCPv4 Server

To ensure DHCPv4 lease time unambiguity, the lease-time should be supplied by a single source, in this case by the DHCPv4 server.

Since this eliminates RADIUS as a source of the DHCPv4 lease-time, an alternate method operating on the *raw level* is used to influence the automatic selection of the lease-time in the DHCPv4 server. This alternate method relies on the fact that the DHCPv4 server accepts hints received from the client as to what the desired lease-time should be. In other words, if the client

sends the option 51 (lease-time) with a specific value, the 7x50 DHCPv4 server will honor this hint². To demonstrate this behavior, a Python script is invoked upon receipt of a DHCPv4 Request message during the IP address assignment process (DORA – Discover-Offer-Request-Ack). The Python script inserts a new option 51 with the desired value for the lease-time. The DHCPv4 server honors this hint from the client and it returns the requested lease-time back to the client. This scenario is shown in [Figure 190](#):

1. DHCP Discover arrives.
2. DHCP Discover is intercepted by the Python processing engine and the lease-time 'B' is inserted in DHCP Discover message. This is then used as a hint to the DHCP server.
3. DHCP Discover message is sent to the DHCP relay agent.
4. RADIUS authentication is triggered.
5. User is authenticated. This time lease-time is not returned via RADIUS.
6. DHCP Discover is forwarded to the DHCP server.
7. The DHCP server honors the hint from the DHCP Discover and offers lease-time 'B', even though the server is configured with lease-time 'A'.
8. The DHCP server replies with a DHCP Offer message.
9. DHCP Offer is forwarded by the DHCP relay agent to the client.

2. As long as this value is within the configured range of values specified in the DHCP server.

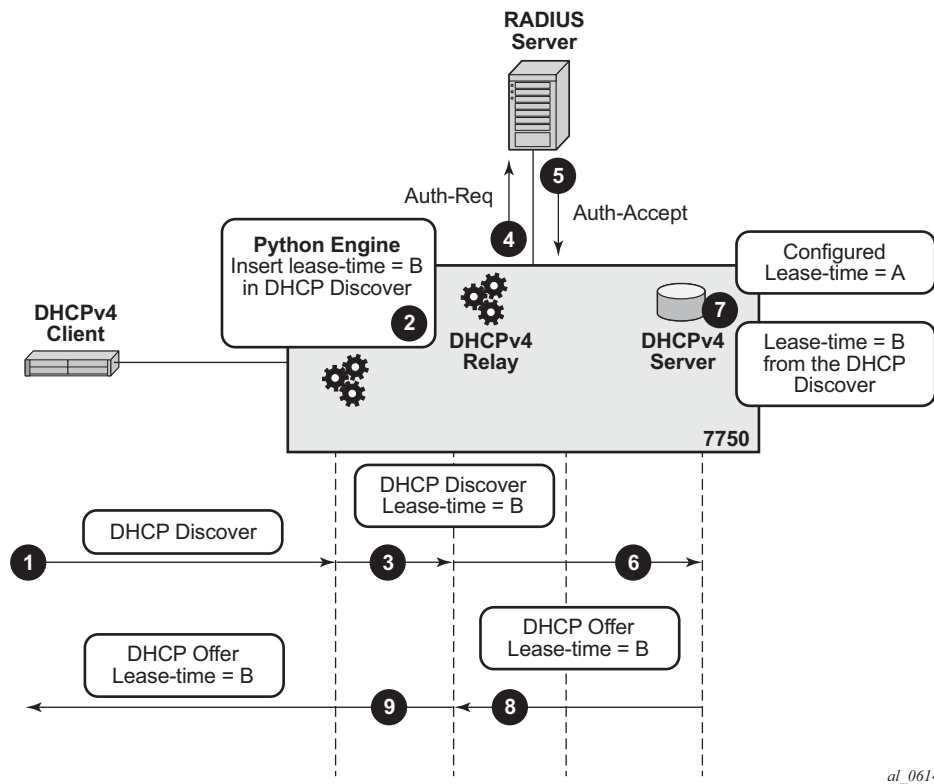


Figure 190: Python Injected Hint for Lease-Time

By default the local 7x50 DHCP server does **not** inject Renew (T1) and Rebind (T2) times so these two timers can still be supplied via RADIUS without duplication by the local 7x50 DHCP server.

When it comes to lease-time related parameters, the behavior of the 7x50 DHCPv6 server is different from the behavior of the 7x50 DHCPv4 server.

DHCPv6 lease related timers are **not** DHCP options. Instead, they are parameters within the IPv6 addressing option. An IPv6 address or prefix is assigned to the client via the IA-NA or IA-PD option, which contains additional parameters (which are not considered options) such as the IP address/prefix and the lease related timers. [Figure 191](#) shows the IA-NA option that carries the T1/T2 parameters.

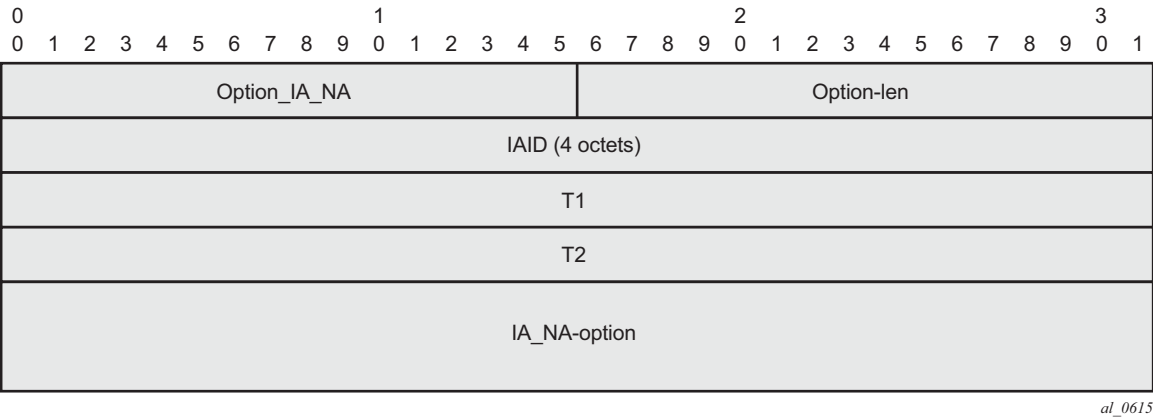


Figure 191: Format of the IA-NA Option

The format of the IA address option is shown in [Figure 192](#). This option carries preferred and valid lifetimes.

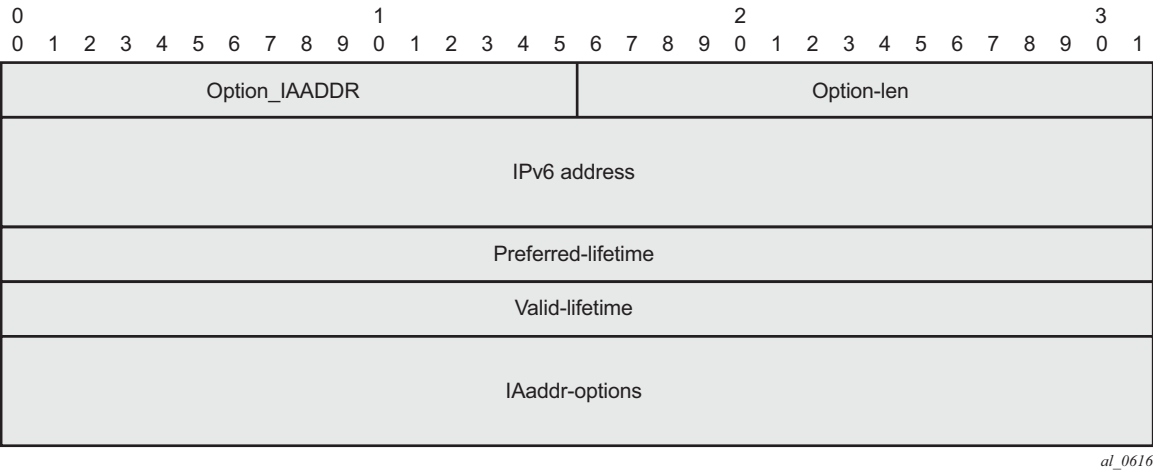


Figure 192: Format of the IA Address Option

In this example, the IPv6 address/prefix is provided by the local 7x50 DHCPv6 server and as such, RADIUS cannot modify the parameters within the DHCPv6 options supplied by the DHCP server. Therefore, the desired IPv6 lease timers (preferred-life time, valid-lifetime, renew-time[T1], rebind-time[T2]) are part of the IPv6 pool configuration in the 7x50 DHCPv6 server.

Alternatively Python can be used to intercept the outgoing DHCPv6 message and then change the timers within the IA-NA and IA-PD options. Although this would configure the lease timers for the client, the action of modifying the outgoing DHCPv6 message occurs after the DHCPv6 server processing. This would result in different lease times in the client and the DHCPv6 server, without any intermediary between them (such as a DHCPv6 Proxy) to deal with the differences.

For consistency purposes with the DHCPv4 example, a Python script processes the incoming DHCPv6 message (DHCPv6 Request) altering the lease timers (preferred/valid/renew/rebind) as a hint to the DHCPv6 server to request those values. However, the 7x50 DHCPv6 server does not honor those hints and uses its own values (default or configured) instead.

Configuration

The topology is shown in [Figure 193](#).

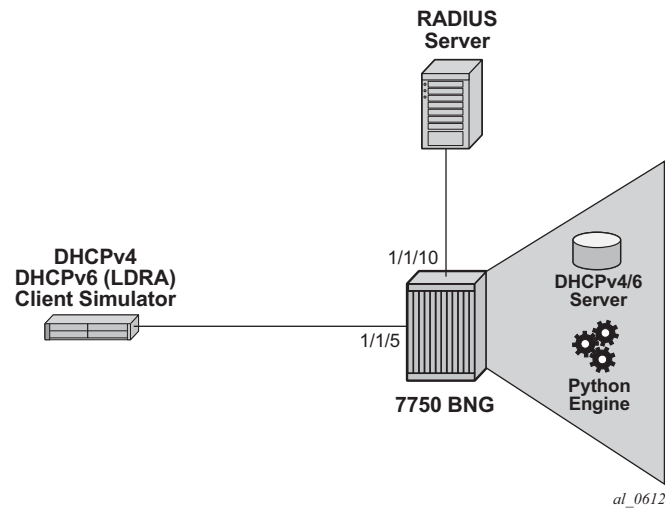


Figure 193: Topology

Access Ethernet Port with QinQ Encapsulation

```
configure port 1/1/5
  ethernet
    mode access
    encap-type qinq
  exit
  no shutdown
```

Capture SAP

A capture SAP is used to dynamically detect VLAN ID(s) in incoming DHCP (trigger) packets. This example uses RADIUS authentication along with Python scripting for DHCP message processing and therefore the authentication and Python policies must be configured under the capture SAP.

```
configure service vpls 10
  sap 1/1/5:1.* capture-sap create
    description "circuit-id authentication"
    trigger-packet dhcp dhcp6
    dhcp-python-policy "acg"
    dhcp6-python-policy "acg"
    authentication-policy "rad"
```

MSAP-Policy Configuration

The MSAP-policy defines the anti-spoofing mode which is set to next-hop MAC (nh-mac) in this example. It also defines the default subscriber management parameters in case that they are not supplied via LUDB or RADIUS.

MSAP-policy configuration is mandatory when a capture-SAP is deployed. In this example, the MSAP-policy name is supplied via RADIUS:

```
Alc-MSAP-Policy = "msaps"

configure subscriber-mgmt msap-policy "msaps"
  sub-sla-mgmt
    sub-ident-policy "sub_ident_pol"
    multi-sub-sap limit 500
  exit
  ies-vprn-only-sap-parameters
    anti-spoof nh-mac
  exit
```

Subscriber-Interface and Group-Interface Configuration

In this example the subscriber-interface is a 'numbered interface' in which the interface IPv4 address and the interface IPv6 prefixes are explicitly configured. The IPv4 address is used as the default-gateway by the IPoE attached clients. The IPv4 subnet to which this address belongs and the configured IPv6 prefixes are used for routing aggregation and are treated as local subnets/prefixes in the 7x50 routing table.

The managed (dynamic) SAPs are created under the group-interface which contains the reference to the authentication-policy name, the Python script, the v4/6 policy names and the DHCPv4/v6 relay related configuration settings (for example, a reference to DHCP servers). Both the authentication-policy name and the Python policy name referenced under the group-interface must match those configured under the capture-SAP.

```
configure service vprn 1
  subscriber-interface "int1-1" create
  address 10.10.10.254/24 # Numbered IPv4 subscriber interface.
  ipv6
    delegated-prefix-len 54
    subscriber-prefixes
      prefix 2001:db8:3::/48 pd # Numbered IPv6 subscriber interface.
      prefix 2001:db8:4::/48 wan-host # Numbered IPv6 subscriber interface.
    exit
  exit
  group-interface "gl-1" create
  ipv6
    router-advertisements
      no shutdown
    exit
    dhcp6
      python-policy "acg" # Python script for DHCPv6 messages.
      relay
        server 2001:db8::1001 # IPv6 address of the DHCPv6 server.
        client-applications dhcp
        no shutdown
      exit
    exit
  exit
  dhcp
    python-policy "acg" # Python script for DHCPv4 messages.
    option
      action keep # Keep option82 in the received DHCP packet.
      vendor-specific-option
        pool-name # Pool-name obtained via RADIUS (or LUDb) will be passed
                  # via DHCP relay to the local DHCP server. This name
                  # will be used for pool selection in DHCPv4 server.
      exit
    exit
    server 192.168.100.1 # IPv4 address of the DHCPv4 server.
    lease-populate 100 # Maximum number of DHCPv4 lease under each
                      # SAP of the group-interface.
    client-applications dhcp
    no shutdown
  exit
```

```

        authentication-policy "rad" # RADIUS authentication policy.
    exit
exit

```

Loopback (DHCP) Interface Configuration

The loopback interface is used for the DHCPv4/v6 server binding. It is configured with the IPv4/IPv6 addresses which are referenced from the DHCP relay configuration under the group-interface.

```

configure service vprn 1
    interface "loopback1-1" create
        address 192.168.100.1/32      # IPv4 address of the DHCPv4 server.
        ipv6
            address 2001:db8::1001/128 # IPv6 address of the DHCPv6 server.
            local-dhcp-server "v6"     # Binding of the DHCPv6 server
                                     # to this interface.
        exit
        local-dhcp-server "v4"        # Binding of the DHCPv4 server
                                     # to this interface.
    loopback
exit

```

DHCPv4/6 Server Configuration

The local DHCP server configuration contains the pool selection method, pool information and DHCP options which are passed to the DHCP client at IP address/prefix assignment time.

```

configure service vprn 1
    dhcp
        local-dhcp-server "v4"
            use-pool-from-client # Pool-name received in the DHCP messages
                               # sent by the DHCP relay. The pool-name
                               # is used in pool selection.
            pool "non-shared-left"
                options
                    dns-server 172.22.250.253 # DHCPv4 option passed on to the client.
                    custom-option 231 string "dhcp server injected custom option 231"
                exit # DHCPv4 option passed on to the client.
                subnet 10.10.10.0/24 create
                    address-range 10.10.10.5 10.10.10.100 # IPv4 address range available
                                                            # for address allocation.
                exit
            exit
        exit
    exit
    dhcp6
        local-dhcp-server "v6"
            use-pool-from-client

```

DHCPv4/6 Server Configuration

```
pool "pd-left" create
options
    dns-server 2001:db8:1:1:1:1:1:3
    custom-option 232 string "v6 custom option 232"
exit
prefix 2001:db8:4::/48 pd      # IPv6 prefix range available for delegated
                                # prefix allocation by this DHCPv6 server.
    preferred-lifetime min 20 # Preferred lifetime of the allocated
                                # delegated prefix.
    rebind-timer min 15       # Rebind (T2) time of the allocated
                                # delegated prefix.
    renew-timer min 10        # Renew (T1) time of the allocated
                                # delegated prefix.
    valid-lifetime min 20     # Valid lifetime of the allocated
                                # delegated prefix.
exit
exit
pool "wan-left" create
options
    dns-server 2001:db8:1:1:1:1:1:3
    custom-option 232 string "v6 custom option 232"
exit
prefix 2001:db8:3::/56 wan-host
    preferred-lifetime min 20 # Preferred lifetime of the
                                # allocated IPv6 address.
    rebind-timer min 15       # Rebind (T2) time of the
                                # allocated IPv6 address.
    renew-timer min 10        # Renew (T1) time of the
                                # allocated IPv6 address.
    valid-lifetime min 20     # Valid lifetime of the
                                # allocated IPv6 address.
exit
exit
no shutdown
exit
exit
```

RADIUS Authentication-Policy Configuration

The RADIUS authentication-policy is referenced under the capture-sap and under the group-interface configuration.

```
authentication-policy "rad" create
    password "ALU" hash2
    radius-authentication-server
    router "Base"
        server 1 address 192.168.114.1 secret "ALU" hash2
    exit
    user-name-format circuit-id
    include-radius-attribute
        circuit-id
        remote-id
        nas-port-id
        nas-identifier
    exit
exit
```

Subscriber-Identification Policy

The subscriber-identification policy in this example defines a mapping method between the subscriber strings and the predefined subscriber profiles (*sub* and *sla*) locally configured on the 7x50. In our example the subscriber strings (*sub* and *sla*) are provided via RADIUS and are directly mapped to the preconfigured sub-profiles and sla-profiles with the matching names.

The subscriber-identification policy can be configured with default subscriber profiles in case the strings are not explicitly obtained via other means (RADIUS, LUSB, Python or statically provisioned). Subscriber-identification policy configuration is mandatory.

```
sub-ident-policy "sub_ident_pol" create
    sub-profile-map
        use-direct-map-as-default
    exit
    sla-profile-map
        use-direct-map-as-default
    exit
```

Sla-Profile and Sub-Profile Configuration

The following is the configuration of the sub-profile and the sla-profile which are used to setup the subscriber-host. The sla and sub profiles are mandatory when creating subscriber-hosts in 7x50.

```
sla-profile "sla-profile-1" create
    ingress
        qos 2
        exit
    exit
    egress
        qos 2
        exit
    exit
exit

sub-profile "sub-profile-1" create
exit
```

Python-Policy Configuration

The python-policy defined below is applied under the capture-sap and under the group-interface. It references the python-script command which defines the location of the script. A python-policy specifies the DHCP messages along with the direction to which the script processing applies.

The DHCPv4 script in this example is applied to incoming DHCPv4 Request messages. The python script inserts the lease-time option in the DHCPv4 Request message as a hint to the DHCPv4 server.

Similar logic is applied to the incoming Lightweight DHCPv6 Relay Agent

(LDRA) DHCPv6 messages where IA-NA and IA-PD related lease times are altered. Note that in the DHCPv6 case the local DHCPv6 server does not honor the hint and therefore the lease related times are explicitly configured in the DHCPv6 server.

```
python-script "acg" create
    action-on-fail passthrough #In case of python script failure, do not drop the message
                                but instead continue with message processing in 7750.
    primary-url "ftp://a.b.c.d/pub/configs/alu/SIMS/acg.py"
    no shutdown
exit
python-script "acg6" create
    action-on-fail passthrough
    primary-url "ftp://a.b.c.d/pub/configs/alu/SIMS/acg6.py"
    no shutdown
exit
python-policy "acg" create # Python policy that is applied under the capture-sap and
                            under the group-interface.
    dhcp request direction ingress script "acg"
```



```

    dhcp6 relay-forward direction ingress script "acg6"
exit

```

Python Script Configuration

In this example the Python script is located in an external location and downloaded to the 7x50 once the python-script CLI node is enabled (**no shutdown**).

The DHCPv4 Python script has exception code included (try/except statements). This makes script debugging easier in case one of the commands in the script fails.

For simplicity reasons, the exception code is removed from the DHCPv6 Python script. Note that in real deployments it is recommended for the exception code to be included in all Python scripts.

DHCPv4 Python Script:

```

from alc import dhcpv4
try:
    myopt = dhcpv4.getOptionList()
    if myopt != []:
        print "option-list ", repr(myopt)
        print "\n"
except Exception:
    print "Can't retrieve DHCP options"
#lease 500s 8min 20sec
try:
    dhcpv4.set(51, ('\x00\x00\x01\xf4',# Insert the lease-time (opt51) in the incoming
                                         DHCPv4 request as a hint to the DHCPv4 server.
except Exception:
    print "Can't set time lease"

```

RADIUS Access-Accept

DHCPv6 Python Script:

```
from alc import dhcpv6
import struct
packet = dhcpv6.get_relaymsg()# Extract the original DHCPv6 packet within LDRA.

msgType = ord(packet.msg_type) # Get the message type.
ia_na = packet.get_iana()# Store the IA-NA option for further processing later on.
ia_pd = packet.get_iapd()# Store the IA-PD option for further processing later on.

if msgType == 3: # If the message in the LDRA packet is DHCPv6 Request, insert the lease
related times in address/prefic options.

    ia_na[0][1] = '\x00\x00\x07\xd0'# Set the renew time (T1) in IA-NA to 2000sec.
    ia_na[0][2] = '\x00\x00\x0b\xb8'# Set the rebind time (T2) in IA-NA to 3000sec.
    ia_na[0][3][5][0][1] = '\x00\x00\x0f\xa0' # Set the preferred time in IA-NA to
                                                # 4000sec.
    ia_na[0][3][5][0][2] = '\x00\x00\x0f\xa0'# Set the valid time in IA-NA to 4000sec.
    packet.set_iana(ia_na) # Update the stored packet with the new values for IA-NA.

    ia_pd[0][1] = '\x00\x00\x07\xd0'# Set the renew time (T1) in IA-PD to 2000sec.
    ia_pd[0][2] = '\x00\x00\x0b\xb8'# Set the rebind time (T2) in IA-PD to 3000sec.
    ia_pd[0][3][26][0][0] = '\x00\x00\x0f\xa0' # Set the preferred time in IA-PD to
                                                # 4000sec.
    ia_pd[0][3][26][0][1] = '\x00\x00\x0f\xa0'# Set the valid time in IA-PD to 4000sec.
    packet.set_iapd(ia_pd) # Update the stored packet with the new values for IA-PD.
    dhcpv6.set_relaymsg(packet) # Insert the packet in the LDRA message.
```

RADIUS Access-Accept

Upon authentication, RADIUS returns the Access-Accept message with the following attributes:

```
Sending Access-Accept of id 66 to 192.168.114.2 port 64384
Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str = "sub-profile-1"
Alc-SLA-Prof-Str = "sla-profile-2"
Alc-MSAP-Interface = "g1-1"
Alc-MSAP-Policy = "msaps"
Alc-MSAP-Serv-Id = 1
Framed-Pool = "non-shared-left"
Framed-IPv6-Pool = "wan-left"
Alc-Delegated-IPv6-Pool = "pd-left"
Alc-ToClient-Dhcp-Options += 0x03040a0a0afe
Alc-ToClient-Dhcp-Options += 0x0608ac16fafaac16fafb
Alc-ToClient-Dhcp-Options += 0x0f0b616c636174656c2e636f6d
Alc-ToClient-Dhcp-Options += 0xe612637573746f6d2074657374206f7074696f6e
Alc-ToClient-Dhcp-Options += 0x3a040000012c
Alc-ToClient-Dhcp-Options += 0x3b0400000190
Alc-ToClient-Dhcp6-Options +=
```

```
0x0011001a0000197f00e60012637573746f6d2074657374206f7074696f6e
  Alc-ToClient-Dhcp6-Options +=
0x0017002020010db800010001000100010001000120010db800010001000100010002
  Alc-ToClient-Dhcp6-Options +=
0x0018001e0e616c636174656c2d6c7563656e7403636f6d00047465737403636f6d
```

It is possible to concatenate multiple DHCP options in a single RADIUS Alc-ToClient-DHCP6-Option but for clarity each option is in a separate attribute in this example.

The following table contains the explanation of the DHCP options inserted via RADIUS:

Alc-ToClient-Dhcp-Options += 0x03040a0a0afe (default) router (3) = 10.10.10.254
Alc-ToClient-Dhcp-Options += 0x0608ac16fafaac16fafb dns (6) = 172.16.250.250 172.16.250.251
Alc-ToClient-Dhcp-Options += 0x0f0b616c636174656c2e636f6d domain-name (15) = alcatel.com
Alc-ToClient-Dhcp-Options += 0xe612637573746f6d2074657374206f7074696f6e custom -option (230) = "custom test option"
Alc-ToClient-Dhcp-Options += 0x3a040000012c renewal time T1 (58) = 300s (5min)
Alc-ToClient-Dhcp-Options += 0x3b0400000190 rebind time T2 (59) = 400s (6min 40sec)
Alc-ToClient-Dhcp6-Options += 0x0011001a0000197f00e60012637573746f6d2074657374206f7074696f6e v6 vendor option (17) [opt-id(2) len(2) entp-id(4) vopt-code(2) vlen(2) vdata] = 17 26 6527 230 18 "custom test option"
Alc-ToClient-Dhcp6-Options += 0x0017002020010db800010001000100010001000120010db800010001000100010002 dns servers (23) [opt-id(2) len(2) servers-v6@] = 23 32 2001:0db8:0001:0001:0001:0001:0001:0001 2001:0db8:0001:0001:0001:0001:0001:0002
Alc-ToClient-Dhcp6-Options += 0x0018001e0e616c636174656c2d6c7563656e7403636f6d00047465737403636f6d0 domain list (24) = alcatel-lucent.com test.com [formatting as described in section 3.1 of RFC 1035 (as referenced by RFC 4704 and RFC 3315)].

Results and Verification

The results are verified via debug output and show commands on the 7x50, and also via pcap (Wireshark® packet capture) files on the DHCP client side.

Debug output on the 7x50 is enabled for DHCPv4/6 messages and for the Python script.

The DHCP debug output shows the options sent to the client in the DHCPv4/6 Ack/Reply messages.

The following commands enables debugging information to be sent to the current telnet/ssh session:

```
*A:BNG1# configure log
*A:BNG1>config>log# info
-----
log-id 50 # Capturing and displaying debug output is configured via log.
          from debug-trace # Capture debug output.
          to session # Output the debug to the current tcp/ssh session.
exit
-----
```

The following commands enable DHCP related debugging:

```
*A:BNG1>config>log# show debug
debug
  router "1"
  ip
    dhcp
      detail-level high
      mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
    exit
    dhcp6
      mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
      detail-level high
    exit
  exit
  local-dhcp-server "v4"
    detail-level high
    mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
  exit
  local-dhcp-server "v6"
    detail-level high
    mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
  exit
exit
```

DHCPv4 Results

The following output displays the DHCPv4 Request message as it was received by the 7x50 DHCP server.

This message has been modified by the Python script on ingress and the lease-time option [51] has been inserted as a hint to the DHCPv4 server.

Option [82] is partially added by the **access-node** (relay-agent —> circuit-id and remote-id) and partially by the internal 7x50 DHCP-relay (pool name).

```
32830 2014/07/24 03:02:46.44 WEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 DHCP server
"DHCP server: v4
Rx DHCP Request

ciaddr: 0.0.0.0          yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
siaddr: 0.0.0.0          giaddr: 10.10.10.254
chaddr: 00:00:65:01:03:01  xid: 0x159dd536

DHCP options:
[82] Relay agent information: len = 42
    [1] Circuit-id: ds-left
    [2] Remote-id: remote0
    [9] Vendor-Specific info: len = 22
        Enterprise [6527] : len = 17
        [13] dhcpPool: non-shared-left
[53] Message type: Request
[54] DHCP server addr: 192.168.100.1
[50] Requested IP addr: 10.10.10.34
[51] Lease time: 500
[255] End
```

The next output captures the DHCPv4 ACK message (within the 7x50) that is on its way to the client.

It can be observed that the DHCPv4 server inserted options are listed first:

- Opt[82] is echoed back by 7x50 DHCPv4 server
- Opt[53], [54], [51] and [1] are by default inserted by the local 7x50 DHCPv4 server and they cannot be disabled. The value for the lease-time [51] is set by the Python script.
- The next two options ([6] and [231]) are the options configured explicitly in the DHCPv4 server ([Table 38](#)).

The remaining options (with the exception of the *end* [255] option) are provided by RADIUS and they appear in the exact same order as they appear in the RADIUS Alc-ToClient-Dhcp-Options attributes ([Table 36](#)).

There are two options [6] since they are inserted by both DHCP and RADIUS server.

Custom options [231] and [230] are decoded in [Table 36](#) and [Table 38](#).

```
32834 2014/07/24 03:02:46.44 WEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 PIP
"PIP: DHCP
instance 2 (1), interface index 11 (g1-1),
  transmitted DHCP Boot Reply to Interface g1-1 (1/1/5:1.3) Port 68

H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb) H/W Address Length: 6
ciaddr: 0.0.0.0          yiaddr: 10.10.10.34
siaddr: 192.168.100.1    giaddr: 10.10.10.254
chaddr: 00:00:65:01:03:01 xid: 0x159dd536

DHCP options:
[82] Relay agent information: len = 18
      [1] Circuit-id: ds-left
      [2] Remote-id: remote0
[53] Message type: Ack
[54] DHCP server addr: 192.168.100.1
[51] Lease time: 500
      [1] Subnet mask: 255.255.255.0
[6] Domain name server: 172.22.250.253
[231] Unknown option: len = 38, value = 64 68 63 70 20 73 65 72 76 65 72
20 69 6e 6a 65 63 74 65 64 20 63 75 73 74 6f 6d 20 6f 70 74 69 6f 6e 20 32
33 31
[3] Router: 10.10.10.254
[6] Domain name server: length = 8
      172.22.250.250
      172.22.250.251
[15] Domain name: alcatel.com
[230] Unknown option: len = 18, value = 63 75 73 74 6f 6d 20 74 65 73 74
20 6f 70 74 69 6f 6e
[58] Renew timeout: 300
[59] Rebind timeout: 400
[255] End
```

The Wireshark® output shown on the next page is captured at the client side (N2X Ixia) and it effectively mirrors what is shown in the 7x50 debug output.

```

❏ Bootstrap Protocol
  Message type: Boot Reply (2)
  Hardware type: Ethernet (0x01)
  Hardware address length: 6
  Hops: 0
  Transaction ID: 0x159dd536
  Seconds elapsed: 0
  + Bootstrap flags: 0x8000 (Broadcast)
  Client IP address: 0.0.0.0 (0.0.0.0)
  Your (client) IP address: 10.10.10.34 (10.10.10.34)
  Next server IP address: 192.168.100.1 (192.168.100.1)
  Relay agent IP address: 10.10.10.254 (10.10.10.254)
  Client MAC address: NetworkG_01:03:01 (00:00:65:01:03:01)
  Client hardware address padding: 00000000000000000000
  Server host name not given
  Boot file name not given
  Magic cookie: DHCP
  ❏ Option: (53) DHCP Message Type
    Length: 1
    DHCP: ACK (5)
  + Option: (54) DHCP Server Identifier
  ❏ Option: (51) IP Address Lease Time
    Length: 4
    IP Address Lease Time: (500s) 8 minutes, 20 seconds
  + Option: (1) Subnet Mask
  ❏ Option: (6) Domain Name Server
    Length: 4
    Domain Name Server: 172.22.250.253 (172.22.250.253)
  ❏ Option: (231) Private
    Length: 38
    Value: 646863702073657276657220696e6a656374656420637573...
  + Option: (82) Agent Information Option
  ❏ Option: (3) Router
    Length: 4
    Router: 10.10.10.254 (10.10.10.254)
  ❏ Option: (6) Domain Name Server
    Length: 8
    Domain Name Server: 172.22.250.250 (172.22.250.250)
    Domain Name Server: 172.22.250.251 (172.22.250.251)
  ❏ Option: (15) Domain Name
    Length: 11
    Domain Name: alcatel.com
  ❏ Option: (230) Private
    Length: 18
    Value: 637573746f6d2074657374206f7074696f6e
  ❏ Option: (58) Renewal Time Value
    Length: 4
    Renewal Time Value: (300s) 5 minutes
  ❏ Option: (59) Rebinding Time Value
    Length: 4
    Rebinding Time Value: (400s) 6 minutes, 40 seconds
  + Option: (255) End

```

DHCPv4 Results

The show command for the DHCP-relay lease state only displays the well known options inserted by the DHCPv4 server. The custom option inserted by the DHCPv4 server and any of the RADIUS supplied options are not kept as part of the DHCP-relay lease state.

```
*A:BNG1# show service id 1 dhcp lease-state detail
=====
DHCP lease states for service 1
=====
Service ID           : 1
IP Address           : 10.10.10.34
Client HW Address    : 00:00:65:01:03:01
Subscriber-interface : int1-1
Group-interface      : g1-1
SAP                  : [1/1/5:1.3]
Up Time              : 0d 00:10:46
Remaining Lease Time : 0d 00:07:35
Remaining SessionTime: N/A
Persistence Key      : N/A

Sub-Ident            : "ds-left"
Sub-Profile-String   : "sub-profile-1"
SLA-Profile-String   : "sla-profile-2"
App-Profile-String   : ""
Lease ANCP-String    : ""
Lease Int Dest Id    : ""
Category-Map-Name    : ""

Lease Info origin    : DHCP

Ip-Netmask          : 255.255.255.0
Broadcast-Ip-Addr    : N/A
Default-Router        : N/A
Primary-Dns         : 172.22.250.253
Secondary-Dns         : N/A
Primary-Nbns          : N/A
Secondary-Nbns        : N/A

ServerLeaseStart      : 07/24/2014 03:02:46
ServerLastRenew       : 07/24/2014 03:12:46
ServerLeaseEnd        : 07/24/2014 03:21:06
Session-Timeout       : N/A
Lease-Time          : 0d 00:08:20
DHCP Server Addr      : 192.168.100.1

Relay Agent Information
  Circuit Id          : ds-left
  Remote Id           : remote0
  Radius User-Name    : "ds-left"
-----
Number of lease states : 1
=====
```


DHCPv6 Results

The DHCPv6 server receives the DHCPv6 Request message with Python modified lease times (preferred, valid, renew and rebind) for IA-NA and IA-PD.

```
32877 2014/07/24 03:15:28.32 WEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 DHCP server
"DHCP server: v6
Rx DHCPv6 RELAY_FORW
  Hop Count : 1
  Link Addr : 2001:db8:4::
  Peer Addr : fe80::200:65ff:fe01:301
  Option : RELAY_MSG (9), Length : 184
    Msg Type : RELAY_FORW (12)
    Hop Count : 0
    Link Addr : ::
    Peer Addr : fe80::200:65ff:fe01:301
    Option : INTERFACE_ID (18), Length : 7
      Interface Id : 64732d6c656674 (ds-left)
    Option : RELAY_MSG (9), Length : 135
      Msg Type : REQUEST (3)
      Trans Id : 0x060000
      Option : ELAPSED_TIME (8), Length : 2
        Time : 0 seconds
      Option : CLIENTID (1), Length : 10
        LL : HwTyp=0001,LL=000065010301
          00030001000065010301
      Option : SERVERID (2), Length : 10
        LL : HwTyp=0001,LL=d896ff000000
          00030001d896ff000000
      Option : ORO (6), Length : 4
        Requested Option : IA_NA (3)
        Requested Option : IA_PD (25)
      Option : IA_NA (3), Length : 40
        IAID : 0
        Time1: 2000 seconds
        Time2: 3000 seconds
      Option : IAADDR (5), Length : 24
        Address : 2001:db8:3:1::1
        Preferred Lifetime : 4000 seconds
        Valid Lifetime : 4000 seconds
      Option : IA_PD (25), Length : 41
        IAID : 0
        Time1: 2000 seconds
        Time2: 3000 seconds
      Option : IAPREFIX (26), Length : 25
        Prefix : 2001:db8:4:400::/54
        Preferred Lifetime : 4000 seconds
        Valid Lifetime : 4000 seconds
      Option : VENDOR_OPTS (17), Length : 37
        Enterprise : 0000197f
      Option : WAN_POOL (1), Length : 8
        wan-left
      Option : PFX_POOL (2), Length : 7
        pd-left
      Option : PFX_LEN (3), Length : 1
```

The **hinted** DHCPv6 lease-times are not honored by the 7x50 DHCPv6 server and instead the 7x50 DHCPv6 server default values are inserted in the outgoing DHCPv6 Reply message towards the client as shown in the output below.

The explicitly configured DHCPv6 options are inserted by the DHCPv6 server first ([Table 38](#)) followed by the RADIUS supplied options inserted by the DHCPv6 relay ([Table 36](#)).

There are two DNS options [23] since they are supplied via two sources (DHCPv6 server and RADIUS Alc-ToClient-DHCP-Option VSA).

```
32885 2014/07/24 03:15:28.32 WEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 TIP
"TIP: DHCP6_PKT
  Outgoing DHCP6 Msg : RELAY_REPLY (13)
  to itf g1-1
  Hop Count : 0
  Link Addr : ::
  Peer Addr : fe80::200:65ff:fe01:301
  Option : RELAY_MSG (9), Length : 265
    Msg Type : REPLY (7)
    Trans Id : 0x060000
    Option : SERVERID (2), Length : 10
      LL : HwTyp=0001,LL=d896ff000000
      00030001d896ff000000
    Option : CLIENTID (1), Length : 10
      LL : HwTyp=0001,LL=000065010301
      00030001000065010301
    Option : IA_NA (3), Length : 40
      IAID : 0
      Time1: 600 seconds
      Time2: 900 seconds
    Option : IAADDR (5), Length : 24
      Address : 2001:db8:3:1::1
      Preferred Lifetime : 1200 seconds
      Valid Lifetime : 1200 seconds
    Option : IA_PD (25), Length : 41
      IAID : 0
      Time1: 600 seconds
      Time2: 900 seconds
    Option : IAPREFIX (26), Length : 25
      Prefix : 2001:db8:4:400::/54
      Preferred Lifetime : 1200 seconds
      Valid Lifetime : 1200 seconds
    Option : DNS_NAME_SRVR (23), Length : 16
      Server : 2001:db8:1:1:1:1:1:3
    Option : UNKNOWN (232), Length : 20
      763620637573746f6d206f7074696f6e20323332
    Option : VENDOR_OPTS (17), Length : 26
      Enterprise : 0000197f
    Option : UNKNOWN (230), Length : 18
      637573746f6d2074657374206f7074696f6e
    Option : DNS_NAME_SRVR (23), Length : 32
      Server : 2001:db8:1:1:1:1:1:1
      Server : 2001:db8:1:1:1:1:1:2
    Option : DOM_SRCH_LIST (24), Length : 30
      SearchList : .alcatel-lucent.com..test.com.
    Option : INTERFACE_ID (18), Length : 7
      Interface Id : 64732d6c656674 (ds-left)
```

The Wireshark® capture of the DHCPv6 Reply message on the client side mirrors the debug information captured by the 7x50:

```

[-] DHCPv6
  Message type: Relay-reply (13)
  Hopcount: 0
  Link address: :: (::)
  Peer address: fe80::200:65ff:fe01:301 (fe80::200:65ff:fe01:301)
  [-] Relay Message
    Option: Relay Message (9)
    Length: 265
    Value: 070600000002000a00030001d896ff0000000001000a0003...
  [-] DHCPv6
    Message type: Reply (7)
    Transaction ID: 0x060000
    [-] Server Identifier
      Option: Server Identifier (2)
      Length: 10
      Value: 00030001d896ff000000
      DUID: 00030001d896ff000000
      DUID Type: link-layer address (3)
      Hardware type: Ethernet (1)
      Link-layer address: d8:96:ff:00:00:00
    [-] Client Identifier
      Option: Client Identifier (1)
      Length: 10
      Value: 00030001000065010301
      DUID: 00030001000065010301
      DUID Type: link-layer address (3)
      Hardware type: Ethernet (1)
      Link-layer address: 00:00:65:01:03:01
    [-] Identity Association for Non-temporary Address
      Option: Identity Association for Non-temporary Address (3)
      Length: 40
      Value: 00000000000000258000003840005001820010db800030001...
      IAID: 00000000
      T1: 600
      T2: 900
    [-] IA Address
      Option: IA Address (5)
      Length: 24
      Value: 20010db8000300010000000000000001000004b0000004b0
      IPv6 address: 2001:db8:3:1::1 (2001:db8:3:1::1)
      Preferred lifetime: 1200
      Valid lifetime: 1200

```

```

[-] Identity Association for Prefix Delegation
    Option: Identity Association for Prefix Delegation (25)
    Length: 41
    Value: 0000000000000025800000384001a0019000004b0000004b0...
    IAID: 00000000
    T1: 600
    T2: 900
[-] IA Prefix
    Option: IA Prefix (26)
    Length: 25
    Value: 000004b0000004b03620010db8000404000000000000000...
    Preferred lifetime: 1200
    Valid lifetime: 1200
    Prefix length: 54
    Prefix address: 2001:db8:4:400:: (2001:db8:4:400::)
[-] DNS recursive name server
    Option: DNS recursive name server (23)
    Length: 16
    Value: 20010db8000100010001000100010003
    DNS server address: 2001:db8:1:1:1:1:1:3 (2001:db8:1:1:1:1:1:3)
[-] DHCP option 232
    Option: Unknown (232)
    Length: 20
    Value: 763620637573746f6d206f7074696f6e203233332
[-] Vendor-specific Information
    Option: Vendor-specific Information (17)
    Length: 26
    Value: 0000197f00e60012637573746f6d2074657374206f707469...
    Enterprise ID: Panthera Networks, Inc. (6527)
[-] option
[-] DNS recursive name server
    Option: DNS recursive name server (23)
    Length: 32
    Value: 20010db800010001000100010001000120010db800010001...
    DNS server address: 2001:db8:1:1:1:1:1:1 (2001:db8:1:1:1:1:1:1)
    DNS server address: 2001:db8:1:1:1:1:1:2 (2001:db8:1:1:1:1:1:2)
[-] Domain Search List
    Option: Domain Search List (24)
    Length: 30
    Value: 0e616c636174656c2d6c7563656e7403636f6d0004746573...
    DNS Domain Search List
    Domain: alcatel-lucent.com
    Domain: test.com
[-] Interface-Id
    Option: Interface-Id (18)
    Length: 7
    Value: 64732d6c656674
    Interface-ID: ds-left

```

The following command captures the information kept in the 7x50 DHCPv6 relay lease state:

```
*A:BNGL# show service id 1 dhcp6 lease-state detail
=====
DHCP lease states for service 1
=====
Service ID          : 1
IP Address          : 2001:db8:3:1::1/128
Client HW Address   : 00:00:65:01:03:01
Subscriber-interface : int1-1
Group-interface     : g1-1
SAP                 : [1/1/5:1.3]
Up Time             : 0d 00:02:41
Remaining Lease Time : 0d 00:17:18
Remaining SessionTime : N/A
Persistence Key      : N/A

Sub-Ident           : "ds-left"
Sub-Profile-String  : "sub-profile-1"
SLA-Profile-String  : "sla-profile-2"
App-Profile-String  : ""
Lease ANCP-String   : ""
Lease Int Dest Id   : ""
Category-Map-Name   : ""
Dhcp6 ClientId (DUID) : 00030001000065010301
Dhcp6 IAID          : 0
Dhcp6 IAID Type     : non-temporary
Dhcp6 Client Ip      : fe80::200:65ff:fe01:301
Primary-Dns          : N/A
Secondary-Dns        : N/A
Pool Name            : "wan-left"
Dhcp6 Server Addr    : 2001:db8::1001
Dhcp6 ServerId (DUID) : 00030001d896ff000000
Dhcp6 InterfaceId    : ds-left
Dhcp6 RemoteId       : N/A

Lease Info origin    : DHCP

ServerLeaseStart     : 07/24/2014 03:15:28
ServerLastRenew      : 07/24/2014 03:15:28
ServerLeaseEnd       : 07/24/2014 03:35:27
Session-Timeout      : N/A
Radius User-Name     : "ds-left"
-----
Service ID          : 1
IP Address          : 2001:db8:4:400::/54
Client HW Address   : 00:00:65:01:03:01
Subscriber-interface : int1-1
Group-interface     : g1-1
SAP                 : [1/1/5:1.3]
Up Time             : 0d 00:02:41
Remaining Lease Time : 0d 00:17:18
Remaining SessionTime : N/A
Persistence Key      : N/A

Sub-Ident           : "ds-left"
Sub-Profile-String  : "sub-profile-1"
SLA-Profile-String  : "sla-profile-2"
```

DHCPv6 Results

```
App-Profile-String      : ""
Lease ANCP-String       : ""
Lease Int Dest Id       : ""
Category-Map-Name       : ""
Dhcp6 ClientId (DUID)   : 00030001000065010301
Dhcp6 IAID              : 0
Dhcp6 IAID Type         : prefix
Dhcp6 Client Ip         : fe80::200:65ff:fe01:301
Primary-Dns             : N/A
Secondary-Dns           : N/A
Pool Name               : "pd-left"
Dhcp6 Server Addr       : 2001:db8::1001
Dhcp6 ServerId (DUID)   : 00030001d896ff000000
Dhcp6 InterfaceId       : ds-left
Dhcp6 RemoteId          : N/A
```

```
Lease Info origin      : DHCP
```

```
ServerLeaseStart        : 07/24/2014 03:15:28
ServerLastRenew         : 07/24/2014 03:15:28
ServerLeaseEnd          : 07/24/2014 03:35:27
Session-Timeout         : N/A
Radius User-Name        : "ds-left"
```

```
-----
Number of lease states : 2
=====
```

Python Debug Output

DHCPv4

For debugging purpose a line is added to the Python script printing all DHCP option numbers present in the incoming DHCP packets.

It can also be observed that all Python induced modifications to the original DHCP message are also displayed in the debugging output (inserting option [51] in this case).

Python script:

```
from alc import dhcpv4
myopt = dhcpv4.getOptionList()
print "option-list =", repr(myopt)
#lease 500s 8min 20sec
dhcpv4.set(51, ('\x00\x00\x01\xf4',))
```

Debug Output:

```
32826 2014/07/24 03:02:46.44 WEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base Python Output
"Python Output: acg
option-list (53, 54, 50, 82, 255)
"
32827 2014/07/24 03:02:46.44 WEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base Python Result
"Python Result: acg
DHCPv4 Option 51, SET
      '\x00\x00\x01\xf4'
"
```

DHCPv6

Also the DHCPv6 Python script has some lines added to demonstrate Python debugging capabilities. The new lines print assigned values to the debugging output.

DHCPv6 script

```
from alc import dhcpv6
import struct
packet = dhcpv6.get_relaymsg()
msgTop = ord(dhcpv6.msg_type)
msgBot = ord(packet.msg_type)
ia_na = packet.get_iana()
ia_pd = packet.get_iapd()
print 'ia-na = ', ia_na
print '\n'
```

Python Debug Output

```
print 'ia-pd = ', ia_pd
print '\n'
print 'msg type Top = ', msgTop
print 'msg type Bot = ', msgBot

msgType = struct.unpack('B', packet.msg_type) [0]
print "relay packet: ", msgType

# in relay request insert DHCPv6 lease times
if msgBot == 3:

    ia_na[0] [1] = '\x00\x00\x07\xd0'
    ia_na[0] [2] = '\x00\x00\x0b\xb8'
    ia_na[0] [3] [5] [0] [1] = '\x00\x00\x0f\xa0'
    ia_na[0] [3] [5] [0] [2] = '\x00\x00\x0f\xa0'
    packet.set_iana(ia_na)
    ia_pd[0] [1] = '\x00\x00\x07\xd0'
    ia_pd[0] [2] = '\x00\x00\x0b\xb8'
    ia_pd[0] [3] [26] [0] [0] = '\x00\x00\x0f\xa0'
    ia_pd[0] [3] [26] [0] [1] = '\x00\x00\x0f\xa0'
    packet.set_iapd(ia_pd)
    dhcpv6.set_relaymsg(packet)
```

Python debugging output

```
32873 2014/07/24 03:15:28.32 WEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base Python Output
"Python Output: acg6
```

```
ia-na = [['\x00\x00\x00\x00', '\x00\x00\x02X', '\x00\x00\x03\x84', {5: [['\x01
\r\xb8\x00\x03\x00\x01\x00\x00\x00\x00\x00\x00\x01', '\x00\x00\x04\xb0', '\x
00\x00\x04\xb0', {}]]}]
```

```
ia-pd = [['\x00\x00\x00\x00', '\x00\x00\x02X', '\x00\x00\x03\x84', {26: [['\x00
\x00\x04\xb0', '\x00\x00\x04\xb0', '6', ' \x01\r\xb8\x00\x04\x04\x00\x00\x00
\x00\x00\x00\x00\x00', {}]]}]
```

```
msg type Top = 12
msg type Bot = 3
relay packet: 3
"
```

```
32874 2014/07/24 03:15:28.32 WEST MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base Python Result
"Python Result: acg6
```

```
DHCPv6 Option 9, SET
'\x03\x06\x00\x00\x08\x00\x02\x00\x00\x00\x01\x00\n\x00\x03\x00\x01\x00\x00
e\x01\x03\x01\x00\x02\x00\n\x00\x03\x00\x01\xd8\x96\xff\x00\x00\x00\x06\x00\
x04\x00\x03\x00\x19\x00\x03\x00(\x00\x00\x00\x00\x00\x00\x07\xd0\x00\x0b\xb8
\x00\x05\x00\x18 \x01\r\xb8\x00\x03\x00\x01\x00\x00\x00\x00\x00\x01\x00\
x00\x0f\xa0\x00\x00\x0f\xa0\x00\x19\x00)\x00\x00\x00\x00\x00\x07\xd0\x00\x00
\x0b\xb8\x00\x1a\x00\x19\x00\x00\x0f\xa0\x00\x00\x0f\xa06 \x01\r\xb8\x00\x04\x04
\x00\x00\x00\x00\x00\x00\x00\x00'
"
```


Conclusion

The most common DHCP options that need to be passed by the 7x50 to the clients can be directly configured in CLI with a DHCP option specific command (such as DNS or a router option in IPv4). The DHCP option specific commands hide the complexity of the option encoding from the operator.

Less common options can be configured via a custom-option command in CLI. This scenario requires the operator to be familiar with the encoding of the option.

Similarly, RADIUS provides the means to pass the DHCP options destined to the client in the form of option specific RADIUS attributes (lease-time, etc). For less common options, two Alcatel-Lucent specific RADIUS attributes are provided: **Alc-ToClient-Dhcp-Options** and **Alc-ToClient-Dhcp6-Options**. These two attributes allow the operator to encode client destined DHCP options using hexadecimal notation. Although this process requires manual encoding it provides a very flexible way of providing options to the client.

The custom options supplied via LUDB or RADIUS are appended by the 7x50 DHCP-relay agent to any existing options that may have been already inserted by the DHCP server in the DHCP packet.

Python processing can additionally assist in DHCP message processing where the options or the parameters within the existing options can be added, removed or modified.

In This Chapter

This section provides information about Routed Central Office (Routed CO) configurations.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 1272](#)
- [Summary on page 1273](#)
- [Overview on page 1274](#)
- [Configuration on page 1277](#)
- [Conclusion on page 1317](#)

Applicability

This example is applicable to the 7750 SR and SR-c series as well as the 7450 ESS series in mixed mode and was tested on SR-OS 11.0.R4. Chassis mode C or higher must be used.

Summary

In the Routed Central Office (Routed CO) model, subscriber management features are implemented on a Layer 3 subscriber interface, available in a VPRN or an IES service. Compared to regular Layer 3 interfaces, a subscriber-interface supports multiple SAP's, see later.

Customer originated traffic enters an Access Node (AN) and can be aggregated via either a Layer 2 or a Layer 3 aggregation network before being handled by a Broadband Network Gateway (BNG). Alternatively, an AN can be directly connected to the BNG.

Routed CO supports numbered, unnumbered and hybrid (combined numbered/unnumbered) subscriber interface configurations.

Enhanced Subscriber Management (ESM) is not mandatory for IPoEv4 in Routed CO, but is mandatory for PPPoE and all IPoEv6 scenarios.

The numbered and unnumbered scenarios in this example use an IES service with:

- Dual Stack IPoEv4 + IPoEv6
- Single stack PPPoEv4

General knowledge of Alcatel-Lucent's Triple Play Service Delivery Architecture is assumed throughout this section. Refer to the 7x50 SR OS Triple Play Guide.

Overview

The Routed CO model offers through the subscriber and group interface construct:

- Flexible subnet management
 - Subnets can be shared across multiple access nodes.
- Support for different deployment models, for example:
 - VLAN/service model.
 - VLAN/subscriber model.
 - VLAN/service/subscriber model.
 - VLAN/access node model.
- Per group-interface load balancing in multi-chassis redundancy configurations. Redundancy is out of the scope of this example.

The components needed in the Routed CO model are depicted in [Figure 194](#).

For the Routed CO model two interface types are needed:

- First, one or more subscriber interfaces must be created.
- Second, one or more group interfaces must be created within the subscriber interface context.

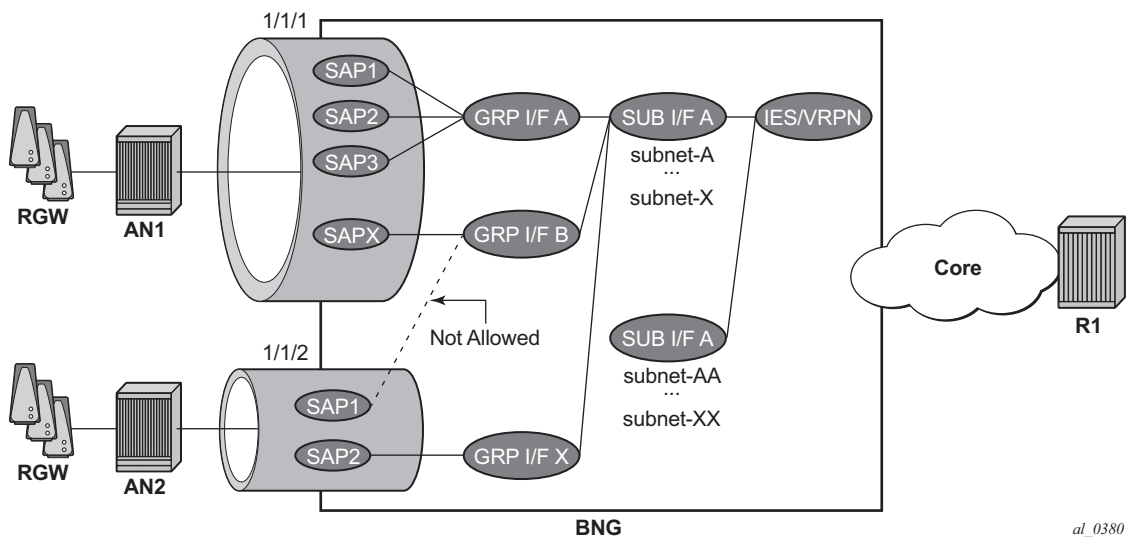


Figure 194: Components of the Routed CO Model

Subscriber Interface

A subscriber interface is a set of one or more group interfaces and identified by name.

A subscriber interface is created under an IES or VPRN service context, and supports up to 256 subnets (sum of IPv4 subnets and IPv6 prefixes).

Three types of subscriber interface configurations are available:

- Numbered subscriber interface.
 - Unnumbered subscriber interface.
 - Hybrid subscriber interface (numbered and unnumbered combined).
-

Subnet/Prefix Assignment

For the numbered scenario, the subscriber interface is configured with

- One or more IPv4 subnets.
- One or more IPv6 subscriber prefixes:
 - For WAN-hosts, using the DHCPv6 Identity Association for Non-temporary Addresses (IA_NA) option or Stateless Address Auto Configuration (SLAAC) and the prefix length is /64.
 - For Prefix Delegation-hosts (PD-hosts), using the DHCPv6 Identity Association for Prefix Delegation (IA_PD) option and the prefix length is defined by the Delegated Prefix Length (DPL).

This allows for subscriber-host address assignment in these subnets/prefixes only.

For the unnumbered scenario, the subscriber interface is configured with:

- IPv4:
 - No IPv4 subnets.
 - The keyword **unnumbered** plus an interface in the same routing instance (for example the system interface). The IP address of the interface referenced in the unnumbered command is used in IPCP negotiation.
- IPv6:
 - No IPv6 prefixes.
 - **allow-unmatching-prefixes**.

This allows for subscriber-host address assignment in any subnet/prefix. For IPv4, the keywords **unnumbered** and **allow-unmatching-subnets** are mutually exclusive.

Group Interface

For the hybrid scenario the subscriber interface is configured with:

- One or more IPv4 subnets and/or IPv6 subscriber prefixes.
- For IPv4: the keyword **allow-unmatching-subnets**.
- For IPv6: the keyword **allow-unmatching-prefixes**.

This allows for both subscriber-host address assignment within and outside of these subnets/prefixes.

Host IP Reachability

For the numbered scenario, host IP reachability requires:

- Adding the subscriber interfaces to the Interior Gateway Protocol (IGP).
- Or an export policy matching the subscriber interface subnets/prefixes.

For the unnumbered scenario, host IP reachability requires:

- An export policy matching the addresses of all individual subscriber hosts (from protocol sub-mgmt).

For the hybrid scenario, host IP reachability requires:

- An export policy matching both the subscriber interface subnets/prefixes as well as all individual subscriber hosts addresses.

Detailed examples of numbered/unnumbered/hybrid scenarios, including host IP reachability are included below.

Group Interface

A group interface is a set of one or more SAPs belonging to the same port and identified by name.

Configuration

This section covers:

- The definition of subscriber and group interfaces.
- A description of the numbered, unnumbered and hybrid scenarios.
- Options ensuring host IP reachability throughout the network.

Subscriber Interface

The configuration of the subscriber interface appears as follows.

```
configure
service
  ies 1
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
      address 10.1.1.254/24
      address 10.1.2.254/24
      ipv6
        delegated-prefix-len 56
        link-local-address FE80::EA:48:FF
        subscriber-prefixes
          prefix 2001:DB8:101::/48 wan-host
          prefix 2001:DB8:102::/48 pd
          prefix 2001:DB8:F101::/48 wan-host
          prefix 2001:DB8:F102::/48 pd
        exit
      exit
    exit
  subscriber-interface "sub-int-2" create
    address 10.2.1.254/24
    address 10.2.2.254/24
    ipv6
      delegated-prefix-len 56
      link-local-address FE80::EA:48:FF
      subscriber-prefixes
        prefix 2001:DB8:201::/48 wan-host
        prefix 2001:DB8:202::/48 pd
        prefix 2001:DB8:F201::/48 wan-host
        prefix 2001:DB8:F202::/48 pd
      exit
    exit
  exit
exit
```

Notice that once a subnet/prefix is assigned to a subscriber interface, the subnet/prefix is tied to that interface, meaning that the same subnet/prefix cannot be used on another subscriber interface or regular interface in the same routing instance. When using VPRN for the Routed CO model, overlapping subnets/prefixes are allowed when on different VPRN services.

Subscriber Interface

As long as no group interfaces are configured within the subscriber interface context, the subscriber interfaces are in the operationally down state as shown in the following output. The subscriber-interfaces, sub-int-1 and sub-int-2, are operational down since no group-interfaces have been assigned at this stage.

```
*A:BNG# show router "Base" interface
=====
Interface Table (Router: Base)
=====
Interface-Name      Adm      Opr (v4/v6)  Mode  Port/SapId  PfxState
IP-Address
-----
sub-int-1           Up       Down/Down    IES Sub subscriber
10.1.1.254/24       n/a
10.1.2.254/24       n/a
2001:DB8:101::/48    INACCESSIBLE
2001:DB8:102::/48    INACCESSIBLE
2001:DB8:F101::/48   INACCESSIBLE
2001:DB8:F102::/48   INACCESSIBLE
FE80::EA:48:FF/64    INACCESSIBLE
sub-int-2           Up       Down/Down    IES Sub subscriber
10.2.1.254/24       n/a
10.2.2.254/24       n/a
2001:DB8:201::/48    INACCESSIBLE
2001:DB8:202::/48    INACCESSIBLE
2001:DB8:F201::/48   INACCESSIBLE
2001:DB8:F202::/48   INACCESSIBLE
FE80::EA:48:FF/64    INACCESSIBLE
system             Up       Up/Up        Network system
192.0.2.75/32       n/a
2001:DB8::75/128     PREFERRED
toDHCP-1           Up       Up/Up        Network loopback
10.11.11.1/32       n/a
2001:DB8::11/128     PREFERRED
FE80::E84B:FFFF:FE00:0/64  PREFERRED
toRADIUS-1         Up       Up/Down      Network 1/1/10
192.168.202.75/24   n/a
-----
Interfaces : 5
=====
*A:BNG#
```

The corresponding IPv4 routing table looks as follows.

```
*A:BNG# show router "Base" route-table ipv4
=====
Route Table (Router: Base)
=====
Dest Prefix[Flags]      Type  Proto  Age      Pref
Next Hop[Interface Name] Metric
-----
10.11.11.1/32           Local  Local  00h30m12s  0
toDHCP-1                0
192.0.2.75/32           Local  Local  00h30m12s  0
system                  0
192.168.202.0/24        Local  Local  00h29m54s  0
toRADIUS-1              0
```

```

-----
No. of Routes: 3
Flags: L = LFA nexthop available    B = BGP backup route available
      n = Number of times nexthop is repeated
=====
*A:BNG#

```

The corresponding IPv6 routing table looks as follows.

```

*A:BNG# show router "Base" route-table ipv6
=====
IPv6 Route Table (Router: Base)
=====
Dest Prefix[Flags]                Type    Proto    Age          Pref
Next Hop[Interface Name]          Metric
-----
2001:DB8::11/128                  Local   Local    00h30m19s    0
toDHCP-1                          0
2001:DB8::75/128                  Local   Local    00h30m21s    0
system                            0
-----
No. of Routes: 2
Flags: L = LFA nexthop available    B = BGP backup route available
      n = Number of times nexthop is repeated
=====
*A:BNG#

```

No subscriber interface subnets/prefixes are present in the IPv4 and the IPv6 routing table as the subscriber interfaces are operational down.

Group Interface

A group interface is created under the subscriber-interface hierarchy.

```
configure
  service
    ies 1
      subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
        group-interface "grp-int-1-1" create
          ipv6
          exit
          sap 1/1/1:111 create
          exit
          sap 1/1/1:112 create
          exit
        exit
        group-interface "grp-int-1-2" create
          ipv6
          exit
          sap 1/1/1:121 create
          exit
        exit
      exit
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-2" create
      group-interface "grp-int-2-1" create
        ipv6
        exit
        sap 1/1/2:211 create
        exit
      exit
      group-interface "grp-int-2-2" create
        ipv6
        exit
        sap 1/1/3:221 create
        exit
        sap 1/1/3:222 create
        exit
      exit
    exit
  exit
exit
```

Static SAPs are created manually under the group-interface context. Managed SAPs (MSAPs) are dynamically created when a trigger packet (DHCP, DHCPv6, ARP, PPPoE) is successfully authenticated, which eliminates the provisioning of static SAPs. The creation and use of capture and managed SAPs (MSAPs) is explained in the example on [Managed SAPs with Routed CO on page 1095](#).

A group interface is operationally up when at least one of its statically configured SAPs is operationally up or when no static SAPs are configured while the parameter **oper-up-while-empty** under the group-interface context is enabled. The following output shows all group interfaces are operationally up.

```
*A:BNG# show router "Base" interface ipv4
=====
Interface Table (Router: Base)
=====
Interface-Name      Adm      Opr (v4/v6)  Mode      Port/SapId
IP-Address          PfxState
-----
grp-int-1-1         Up       Up/Up        IES Grp   1/1/1
grp-int-1-2         Up       Up/Up        IES Grp   1/1/1
grp-int-2-1         Up       Up/Up        IES Grp   1/1/2
grp-int-2-2         Up       Up/Up        IES Grp   1/1/3
sub-int-1           Up       Up/Up        IES Sub   subscriber
10.1.1.254/24              n/a
10.1.2.254/24              n/a
sub-int-2           Up       Up/Up        IES Sub   subscriber
10.2.1.254/24              n/a
10.2.2.254/24              n/a
system              Up       Up/Up        Network  system
192.0.2.75/32           n/a
toDHCP-1            Up       Up/Up        Network  loopback
10.11.11.1/32           n/a
toRADIUS-1          Up       Up/Down      Network  1/1/10
192.168.202.75/24       n/a
-----
Interfaces : 9
=====
*A:BNG#
```

The IPv4 routing table includes the subnets configured on the subscriber-interfaces.

```
*A:BNG# show router "Base" route-table ipv4
=====
Route Table (Router: Base)
=====
Dest Prefix[Flags]      Type      Proto      Age      Pref
Next Hop[Interface Name] Metric
-----
10.1.1.0/24             Local     Local      00h25m32s  0
sub-int-1                0
10.1.2.0/24             Local     Local      00h25m32s  0
sub-int-1                0
10.2.1.0/24             Local     Local      00h25m32s  0
sub-int-2                0
10.2.2.0/24             Local     Local      00h25m32s  0
sub-int-2                0
10.11.11.1/32           Local     Local      01h01m53s  0
toDHCP-1                 0
192.0.2.75/32           Local     Local      01h01m53s  0
system                   0
192.168.202.0/24        Local     Local      01h01m36s  0
toRADIUS-1               0
```

Group Interface

```
-----
No. of Routes: 7
Flags: L = LFA nexthop available    B = BGP backup route available
      n = Number of times nexthop is repeated
=====
*A:BNG#
```

For IPv6, the interface table looks as follows.

```
*A:BNG# show router "Base" interface ipv6
=====
Interface Table (Router: Base)
=====
Interface-Name      Adm      Opr (v4/v6)  Mode      Port/SapId
IP-Address                               PfxState
-----
grp-int-1-1         Up        Up/Up        IES Grp    1/1/1
grp-int-1-2         Up        Up/Up        IES Grp    1/1/1
grp-int-2-1         Up        Up/Up        IES Grp    1/1/2
grp-int-2-2         Up        Up/Up        IES Grp    1/1/3
sub-int-1           Up        Up/Up        IES Sub    subscriber
    2001:DB8:101::/48                                PREFERRED
    2001:DB8:102::/48                                PREFERRED
    2001:DB8:F101::/48                               PREFERRED
    2001:DB8:F102::/48                               PREFERRED
    FE80::EA:48:FF/64                                PREFERRED
sub-int-2           Up        Up/Up        IES Sub    subscriber
    2001:DB8:201::/48                                PREFERRED
    2001:DB8:202::/48                                PREFERRED
    2001:DB8:F201::/48                               PREFERRED
    2001:DB8:F202::/48                               PREFERRED
    FE80::EA:48:FF/64                                PREFERRED
system              Up        Up/Up        Network    system
    2001:DB8::75/128                                  PREFERRED
toDHCP-1            Up        Up/Up        Network    loopback
    2001:DB8::11/128                                  PREFERRED
    FE80::E84B:FFFF:FE00:0/64                         PREFERRED
toRADIUS-1          Up        Up/Down      Network    1/1/10
-                   -
-----
Interfaces : 9
=====
*A:BNG# #
```

The IPv6 routing table includes the prefixes configured on the subscriber interfaces.

```
*A:BNG# show router "Base" route-table ipv6
=====
IPv6 Route Table (Router: Base)
=====
Dest Prefix[Flags]      Type      Proto      Age      Pref
Next Hop[Interface Name] Metric
-----
2001:DB8::11/128        Local     Local      14d04h08m 0
    toDHCP-1              0
2001:DB8::75/128        Local     Local      14d04h08m 0
```

system			0	
2001:DB8:101::/48	Local	Local	14d03h10m	0
sub-int-1			0	
2001:DB8:102::/48	Local	Local	14d03h10m	0
sub-int-1			0	
2001:DB8:201::/48	Local	Local	14d03h08m	0
sub-int-2			0	
2001:DB8:202::/48	Local	Local	14d03h08m	0
sub-int-2			0	
2001:DB8:F101::/48	Local	Local	14d03h10m	0
sub-int-1			0	
2001:DB8:F102::/48	Local	Local	14d03h10m	0
sub-int-1			0	
2001:DB8:F201::/48	Local	Local	14d03h08m	0
sub-int-2			0	
2001:DB8:F202::/48	Local	Local	14d03h08m	0
sub-int-2			0	

No. of Routes: 10

Flags: L = LFA nexthop available B = BGP backup route available
n = Number of times nexthop is repeated

=====

*A:BNG#

Numbered Scenario

Figure 195 depicts the numbered scenario outlined below, including the connecting subscribers and subscriber hosts. Subscribers sub-11 and sub-44 are using PPPv4 hosts, and subscribers sub-22 and sub-33 are using dual stack DHCP hosts. Their VLANs and the MAC addresses are shown, as are the IP addresses and prefixes assigned once they are connected.

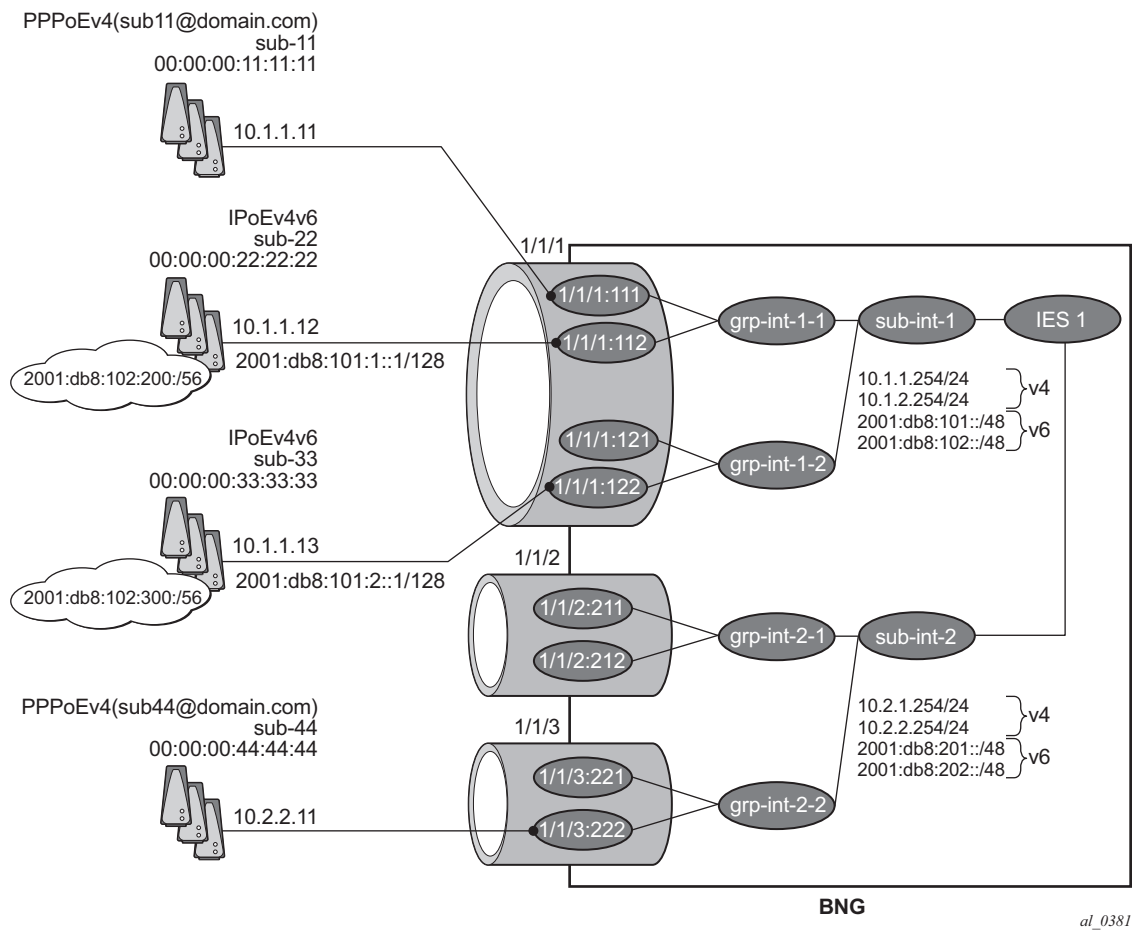


Figure 195: Numbered Scenario For IES 1

The configuration for the numbered scenario is shown below. Only the configuration items specific to the numbered scenario are shown.

In the numbered scenario the subscriber interfaces have following configuration:

- IPv4
 - Subnets.
 - **no allow-unmatching-subnets.**
 - **no unnumbered.**
- IPv6
 - A delegated prefix length.
 - subscriber prefixes.
 - **no allow-unmatching-prefixes.**

```
configure
service
  ies 1
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
      address 10.1.1.254/24
      address 10.1.2.254/24
      ipv6
        delegated-prefix-len 56
        link-local-address FE80::EA:4B:FF
        subscriber-prefixes
          prefix 2001:DB8:101::/48 wan-host
          prefix 2001:DB8:102::/48 pd
        exit
      exit
    group-interface "grp-int-1-1" create
      ipv6
        --- snip ---
      exit
      arp-populate
      dhcp
        --- snip ---
        lease-populate 100
        no shutdown
      exit
      authentication-policy "auth-pol-1"
      local-proxy-arp
      sap 1/1/1:111 create
        anti-spoof ip-mac
        sub-sla-mgmt
        --- snip ---
      exit
    exit
    sap 1/1/1:112 create
      anti-spoof ip-mac
      sub-sla-mgmt
      --- snip ---
    exit
```

Numbered Scenario

```
exit
pppoe
    --- snip ---
    no shutdown
exit
exit
group-interface "grp-int-1-2" create
    ipv6
        --- snip ---
    exit
    arp-populate
    dhcp
        --- snip ---
        lease-populate 100
        no shutdown
    exit
    authentication-policy "auth-pol-1"
    local-proxy-arp
    sap 1/1/1:121 create
        anti-spoof ip-mac
        sub-sla-mgmt
        --- snip ---
    exit
    exit
    sap 1/1/1:122 create
        anti-spoof ip-mac
        sub-sla-mgmt
        --- snip ---
    exit
    exit
    pppoe
        --- snip ---
        no shutdown
    exit
exit
exit
subscriber-interface "sub-int-2" create
    address 10.2.1.254/24
    address 10.2.2.254/24
    ipv6
        delegated-prefix-len 56
        link-local-address FE80::EA:4B:FF
        subscriber-prefixes
            prefix 2001:DB8:201::/48 wan-host
            prefix 2001:DB8:202::/48 pd
    exit
exit
group-interface "grp-int-2-1" create
    ipv6
        --- snip ---
    exit
    arp-populate
    dhcp
        --- snip ---
        lease-populate 100
        no shutdown
    exit
    authentication-policy "auth-pol-1"
    local-proxy-arp
```

```

    sap 1/1/2:211 create
        anti-spoof ip-mac
        sub-sla-mgmt
        --- snip ---
    exit
exit
sap 1/1/2:212 create
    anti-spoof ip-mac
    sub-sla-mgmt
    --- snip ---
    exit
exit
pppoe
    --- snip ---
    no shutdown
exit
exit
group-interface "grp-int-2-2" create
    ipv6
        --- snip ---
    exit
    arp-populate
    dhcp
        --- snip ---
        lease-populate 100
        no shutdown
    exit
    authentication-policy "auth-pol-1"
    local-proxy-arp
    sap 1/1/3:221 create
        anti-spoof ip-mac
        sub-sla-mgmt
        --- snip ---
    exit
exit
sap 1/1/3:222 create
    anti-spoof ip-mac
    sub-sla-mgmt
    --- snip ---
    exit
exit
pppoe
    --- snip ---
    no shutdown
exit
exit
exit
no shutdown

```

The following parameters are mandatory for the routed CO model:

- **lease-populate** — DHCPv4 lease state population is enabled by default on a group-interface with DHCPv4 configured as **no shutdown**. The number of leases allowed on each SAP of the group-interface must be configured. By default one single DHCPv4 host is allowed on each SAP. This parameter enables the creation of an ESM host table entry for each DHCPv4 lease. For DHCPv6 the ESM host table entry creation is implicit: no CLI parameter is required.
- **arp-populate** — The ARP table is populated with dynamically learned entries from the DHCP lease state table or static entries from the static host table. The BNG does not send downstream ARPs for those managed ARP table entries.
- **local-proxy-arp** — Enables user to user traffic in a split-horizon environment. The BNG responds with its own MAC address to ARP requests targeting subnets configured on the subscriber interface. If the ARP request is targeting a host of the same subscriber on the same SAP, the ARP request is silently discarded. This prevents traffic within a single bridged home to be attracted to the BNG. Local-proxy-arp is enabled by default.
- **anti-spoof** — Checks the source MAC and/or source IP of the upstream subscriber traffic. This parameter is configured at the SAP level with values **ip-mac** (default), **ip** or **nh-mac**. With ESM enabled, anti-spoof must include the source mac (values **ip-mac** or **nh-mac**).

Optional settings are:

- **description** — Can be used to assign a descriptive text to the item and used for administrative reasons.
- **delayed-enable** — To be used in redundant configurations. It is expressed in seconds and defines the additional time the BNG waits before the interface is enabled.

Verification

The interfaces on the BNG are listed using following command. Notice that all subscriber and group interfaces are operational up for IPv4 and IPv6.

```
A:BNG# show router "Base" interface
=====
Interface Table (Router: Base)
=====
Interface-Name      Adm      Opr (v4/v6)  Mode      Port/SapId
IP-Address          PfxState
-----
grp-int-1-1         Up       Up/Up        IES Grp   1/1/1
grp-int-1-2         Up       Up/Up        IES Grp   1/1/1
grp-int-2-1         Up       Up/Up        IES Grp   1/1/2
grp-int-2-2         Up       Up/Up        IES Grp   1/1/3
sub-int-1           Up       Up/Up        IES Sub   subscriber
    10.1.1.254/24    n/a
    10.1.2.254/24    n/a
    2001:DB8:101::/48  PREFERRED
    2001:DB8:102::/48  PREFERRED
    FE80::EA:48:FF/64  PREFERRED
sub-int-2           Up       Up/Up        IES Sub   subscriber
    10.2.1.254/24    n/a
    10.2.2.254/24    n/a
    2001:DB8:201::/48  PREFERRED
    2001:DB8:202::/48  PREFERRED
    FE80::EA:48:FF/64  PREFERRED
system             Up       Up/Up        Network  system
    192.0.2.75/32     n/a
    2001:DB8::75/128  PREFERRED
toDHCP-1           Up       Up/Up        Network  loopback
    10.11.11.1/32     n/a
    2001:DB8::11/128  PREFERRED
    FE80::E84B:FFFF:FE00:0/64  PREFERRED
toR1               Up       Up/Up        Network  1/1/12
    192.168.12.1/24   n/a
    2001:DEAD::1/64   PREFERRED
    FE80::E84B:FFFF:FE00:0/64  PREFERRED
toRADIUS-1         Up       Up/Down      Network  1/1/10
    192.168.202.75/24 n/a
-----
Interfaces : 10
=====
A:BNG#
```

Successfully created hosts have forwarding state Fwding. Hosts not in the Fwding state cannot forward any data.

```
A:BNG# show service id 1 subscriber-hosts
=====
Subscriber Host table
=====
Sap      Subscriber
IP Address
```

Numbered Scenario

MAC Address	PPPoE-SID Origin	Fwding State
1/1/1:111	sub-11	
10.1.1.11		
00:00:00:11:11:11	1	IPCP
1/1/1:112	sub-22	
10.1.1.12		
00:00:00:22:22:22	N/A	DHCP
1/1/1:112	sub-22	
2001:DB8:101:1::1/128		
00:00:00:22:22:22	N/A	IPoE-DHCP6
1/1/1:112	sub-22	
2001:DB8:102:200::/56		
00:00:00:22:22:22	N/A	IPoE-DHCP6
1/1/1:122	sub-33	
10.1.1.13		
00:00:00:33:33:33	N/A	DHCP
1/1/1:122	sub-33	
2001:DB8:101:2::1/128		
00:00:00:33:33:33	N/A	IPoE-DHCP6
1/1/1:122	sub-33	
2001:DB8:102:300::/56		
00:00:00:33:33:33	N/A	IPoE-DHCP6
1/1/3:222	sub-44	
10.2.2.11		
00:00:00:44:44:44	1	IPCP

Number of subscriber hosts : 8

=====

A:BNG#

The list of active subscribers can be displayed as follows.

```
A:BNG# show service active-subscribers
=====
Active Subscribers
=====
Subscriber sub-11 (sub-prof-1)
-----
(1) SLA Profile Instance sap:1/1/1:111 - sla:sla-prof-1
-----
IP Address      MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin
-----
10.1.1.11      00:00:00:11:11:11 1      IPCP
-----
Subscriber sub-22 (sub-prof-1)
-----
(1) SLA Profile Instance sap:1/1/1:112 - sla:sla-prof-1
-----
IP Address      MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin
-----
10.1.1.12
```

```

00:00:00:22:22:22 N/A      DHCP
2001:DB8:101:1::1/128
00:00:00:22:22:22 N/A      IPoE-DHCP6
2001:DB8:102:200::/56
00:00:00:22:22:22 N/A      IPoE-DHCP6
-----
Subscriber sub-33 (sub-prof-1)
-----
(1) SLA Profile Instance sap:1/1/1:122 - sla:sla-prof-1
-----
IP Address      MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin
-----
10.1.1.13
00:00:00:33:33:33 N/A      DHCP
2001:DB8:101:2::1/128
00:00:00:33:33:33 N/A      IPoE-DHCP6
2001:DB8:102:300::/56
00:00:00:33:33:33 N/A      IPoE-DHCP6
-----
Subscriber sub-44 (sub-prof-1)
-----
(1) SLA Profile Instance sap:1/1/3:222 - sla:sla-prof-1
-----
IP Address      MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin
-----
10.2.2.11
00:00:00:44:44:44 1      IPCP
-----
Number of active subscribers : 4
-----
A:BNG#

```

Manually cross-referencing the SAPs from this output with the actual configuration shows the following for IPv4, and is depicted in [Figure 195](#).

- Sub-11 and sub-22 are connected to the same subscriber and group interface (sub-int-1 and grp-int-1-1) but via different SAPs (1/1/1:111 and 1/1/1:112) and are sharing the same IPv4 subnet.
- Sub-33 is also connected to the same subscriber interface (sub-int-1) but via a different group-interface (grp-int-1-2). Sub-33 shares the same IPv4 subnet as sub-11 and sub-12, showing that the same subnet is shared across multiple group-interfaces.
- Sub-44 is connected to a different subscriber and group interface, and does not share a subnet with the other subscribers.

Numbered Scenario

An alternative way to find where, for example, subscriber sub-33 is connected is shown below.

```
*A:BNG# show service active-subscribers subscriber "sub-33" detail
=====
Active Subscribers
=====
-----
Subscriber sub-11 (sub-prof-1)
-----
I. Sched. Policy : N/A

    --- snip ---

Oper-Rate-Limit : Maximum
* indicates that the corresponding row element may have been truncated.
-----
(1) SLA Profile Instance
    - sap:1/1/1:112 (IES 1 - grp-int-1-2)
    - sla:sla-prof-1
-----
Description      : (Not Specified)

    --- snip ---
```

An alternative to find where, for example, IP address 10.1.1.13 is connected is shown below.

```
*A:BNG# show service id 1 dhcp lease-state ip-address 10.1.1.13 detail
=====
DHCP lease states for service 1
=====
Service ID      : 1
IP Address      : 10.1.1.13
Client HW Address : 00:00:00:33:33:33
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : grp-int-1-2
SAP                  : 1/1/1:122

    --- snip ---

Sub-Ident      : "sub-33"
Sub-Profile-String : "sub-prof-1"
SLA-Profile-String : "sla-prof-1"
App-Profile-String : ""

    --- snip ---

DHCP Server Addr : 10.11.11.1
Radius User-Name  : "00:00:00:33:33:33"
-----
Number of lease states : 1
=====
*A:BNG#
```


For IPv6, the situation is as follows:

- Sub-22 and sub-33 are connected to the same subscriber interface (sub-int-1) but to different group interfaces. Both subscribers share the same IPv6 prefix for prefix-delegation (PD) and wan-host.

With these subscriber hosts connected, the IPv4 routing table (RIB) for the base router looks as follows.

```
*A:BNG# show router "Base" route-table ipv4
=====
Route Table (Router: Base)
=====
Dest Prefix[Flags]                                Type   Proto   Age           Pref
  Next Hop[Interface Name]                        Metric
-----
10.1.1.0/24                                         Local   Local    02h25m15s    0
      sub-int-1                                     0
10.1.1.11/32                                        Remote  Sub Mgmt  02h25m10s    0
      [grp-int-1-1]                                 0
10.1.1.12/32                                        Remote  Sub Mgmt  00h49m52s    0
      [grp-int-1-1]                                 0
10.1.1.13/32                                        Remote  Sub Mgmt  00h47m40s    0
      [grp-int-1-2]                                 0
10.1.2.0/24                                         Local   Local    02h25m15s    0
      sub-int-1                                     0
10.2.1.0/24                                         Local   Local    02h25m15s    0
      sub-int-2                                     0
10.2.2.0/24                                         Local   Local    02h25m15s    0
      sub-int-2                                     0
10.2.2.11/32                                        Remote  Sub Mgmt  02h25m10s    0
      [grp-int-2-2]                                 0
10.11.11.1/32                                       Local   Local    02h25m33s    0
      toDHCP-1                                       0
192.0.2.75/32                                       Local   Local    02h25m33s    0
      system                                         0
192.0.2.76/32                                       Remote  ISIS     02h24m43s    15
      192.168.12.2                                  10
192.168.12.0/24                                     Local   Local    02h25m15s    0
      toR1                                           0
192.168.202.0/24                                    Local   Local    02h25m15s    0
      toRADIUS-1                                    0
-----
No. of Routes: 13
Flags: L = LFA nexthop available    B = BGP backup route available
      n = Number of times nexthop is repeated
=====
*A:BNG#
```

The IPv6 routing table (RIB) for the base router displays as follows.

```
*A:BNG# show router "Base" route-table ipv6
=====
IPv6 Route Table (Router: Base)
=====
Dest Prefix[Flags]                                Type   Proto   Age           Pref
```

Numbered Scenario

```

      Next Hop[Interface Name]
-----
2001:DB8::11/128          Local   Local   02h27m23s  0
      toDHCP-1              0
2001:DB8::75/128          Local   Local   02h27m24s  0
      system                0
2001:DB8::76/128          Remote  ISIS    02h26m32s  15
      FE80::E84C:FFFF:FE00:0-"toR1"  10
2001:DB8:101::/48         Local   Local   02h27m06s  0
      sub-int-1             0
2001:DB8:101:1::1/128     Remote  Sub Mgmt 01h13m43s  0
      [grp-int-1-1]         0
2001:DB8:101:2::1/128     Remote  Sub Mgmt 01h13m25s  0
      [grp-int-1-2]         0
2001:DB8:102::/48         Local   Local   02h27m06s  0
      sub-int-1             0
2001:DB8:102:200::/56     Remote  Sub Mgmt 01h13m43s  0
      [grp-int-1-1]         0
2001:DB8:102:300::/56     Remote  Sub Mgmt 01h13m25s  0
      [grp-int-1-2]         0
2001:DB8:201::/48         Local   Local   02h27m06s  0
      sub-int-2             0
2001:DB8:202::/48         Local   Local   02h27m06s  0
      sub-int-2             0
2001:DEAD::/64            Local   Local   02h27m05s  0
      toR1                  0
-----
No. of Routes: 12
Flags: L = LFA nexthop available   B = BGP backup route available
      n = Number of times nexthop is repeated
=====
*A:BNG#

```

The corresponding IPv4 FIB on card 1 looks as follows.

```

*A:BNG# show router "Base" fib 1 ipv4
=====
FIB Display
=====
Prefix                                     Protocol
NextHop
-----
10.1.1.0/24                               LOCAL
      10.1.1.0 (sub-int-1)
10.1.2.0/24                               LOCAL
      10.1.2.0 (sub-int-1)
10.2.1.0/24                               LOCAL
      10.2.1.0 (sub-int-2)
10.2.2.0/24                               LOCAL
      10.2.2.0 (sub-int-2)
10.11.11.1/32                             LOCAL
      10.11.11.1 (toDHCP-1)
192.0.2.75/32                             LOCAL
      192.0.2.75 (system)
192.0.2.76/32                             ISIS
      192.168.12.2 (toR1)
192.168.12.0/24                           LOCAL
      192.168.12.0 (toR1)

```

```

192.168.202.0/24                                LOCAL
    192.168.202.0 (toRADIUS-1)
-----
Total Entries : 9
=====
*A:BNG#

```

The corresponding IPv6 FIB on card 1 is as follows.

```

*A:BNG# show router "Base" fib 1 ipv6
=====
FIB Display
=====
Prefix                                     Protocol
  NextHop
-----
2001:DB8::11/128                          LOCAL
    2001:DB8::11 (toDHCP-1)
2001:DB8::75/128                          LOCAL
    2001:DB8::75 (system)
2001:DB8::76/128                          ISIS
    FE80::E84C:FFFF:FE00:0 (toR1)
2001:DB8:101::/48                         LOCAL
    2001:DB8:101:: (sub-int-1)
2001:DB8:102::/48                         LOCAL
    2001:DB8:102:: (sub-int-1)
2001:DB8:201::/48                         LOCAL
    2001:DB8:201:: (sub-int-2)
2001:DB8:202::/48                         LOCAL
    2001:DB8:202:: (sub-int-2)
2001:DEAD::/64                            LOCAL
    2001:DEAD:: (toR1)
-----
Total Entries : 8
=====
*A:BNG#

```

The addresses of the individual subscriber hosts show up in the RIB but they do not show up in the FIB.

- /32 for IPv4-hosts.
- /DPL (Delegated Prefix Length) for IPv6 DP hosts, /56 in this example.
- /128 or /64 for IPv6 wan host.

Downstream traffic is forwarded based on a subscriber host table lookup. For specific network designs, subscriber host IPv4 addresses can optionally be included in the FIB with the populate-host-routes statement added to the subnet configuration. This is out of scope of this example.

Unnumbered Scenario

Figure 196 depicts the unnumbered scenario outlined below, including the connecting subscribers and subscriber hosts. Sub-11 and sub-44 are using single stack PPPoEv4 hosts, and sub-22 and sub-33 are using dual stack DHCP hosts. Their VLANs and the MAC addresses are shown, as are the IP addresses and prefixes assigned once they are connected.

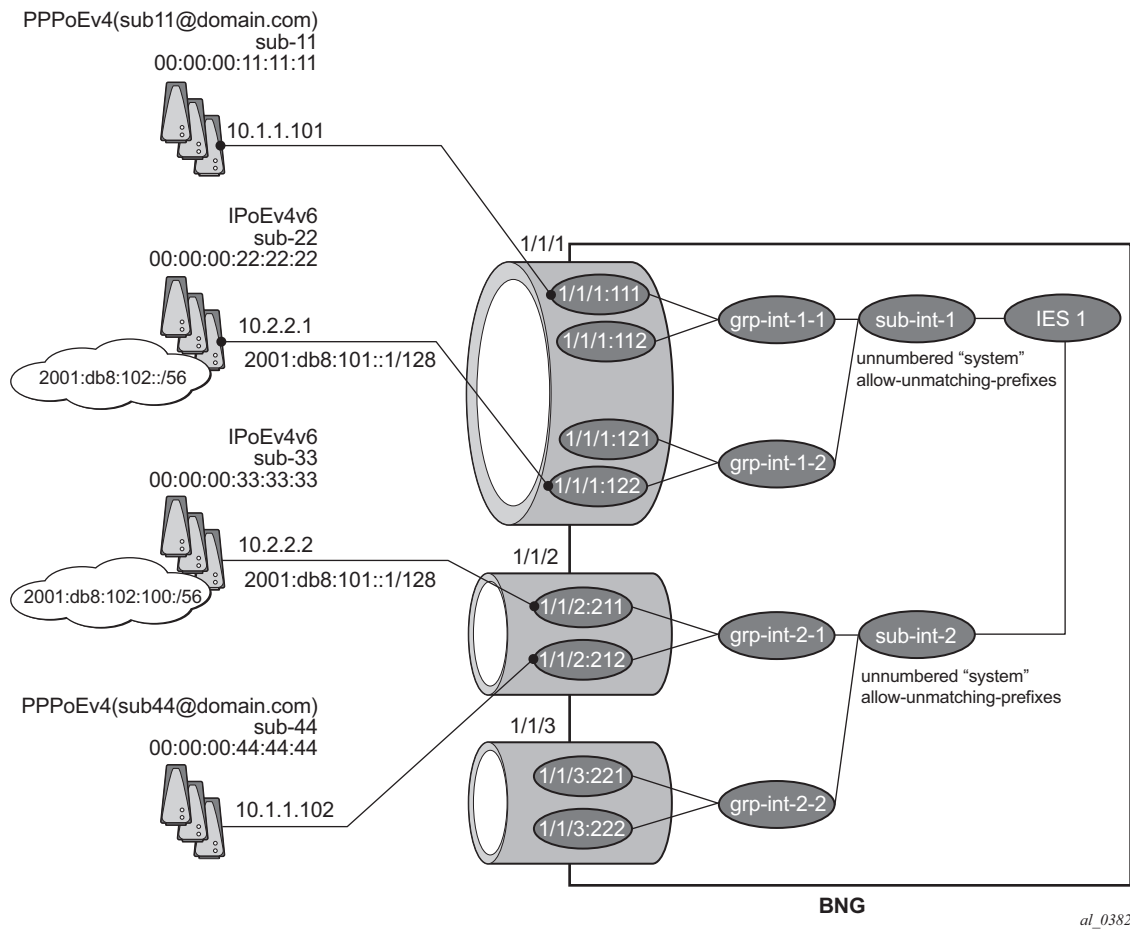


Figure 196: Unnumbered Scenario for IES 1

The configuration for the unnumbered scenario is shown below. Only the configuration items specific to the unnumbered scenario are shown.

In the unnumbered scenario the subscriber interfaces have following properties:

- IPv4:
 - No subnets configured.
 - **unnumbered**, with an IPv4 interface or an IPv4 address used for IPCP negotiation.
 - **no allow-unmatching-subnets.**
- IPv6:
 - No subscriber prefixes configured.
 - **allow-unmatching-prefixes.**

```
configure
service
  ies 1
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
      unnumbered "system"
      ipv6
        delegated-prefix-len 56
        allow-unmatching-prefixes
        link-local-address FE80::EA:4B:FF
      exit
    group-interface "grp-int-1-1" create
      ipv6
        --- snip ---
      exit
      arp-populate
      dhcp
        --- snip ---
        lease-populate 100
        no shutdown
      exit
      authentication-policy "auth-pol-1"
      sap 1/1/1:111 create
        anti-spoof ip-mac
        sub-sla-mgmt
        --- snip ---
      exit
    exit
    sap 1/1/1:112 create
      anti-spoof ip-mac
      sub-sla-mgmt
      --- snip ---
    exit
    pppoe
      --- snip ---
      no shutdown
    exit
  exit
  group-interface "grp-int-1-2" create
    ipv6
      --- snip ---
    exit
    arp-populate
    dhcp
```

Unnumbered Scenario

```
        --- snip ---
        lease-populate 100
        no shutdown
    exit
    authentication-policy "auth-pol-1"
    sap 1/1/1:121 create
        anti-spoof ip-mac
        sub-sla-mgmt
        --- snip ---
    exit
    exit
    sap 1/1/1:122 create
        anti-spoof ip-mac
        sub-sla-mgmt
        --- snip ---
    exit
    exit
    pppoe
        --- snip ---
        no shutdown
    exit
    exit
subscriber-interface "sub-int-2" create
    unnumbered "system"
    ipv6
        delegated-prefix-len 56
        allow-unmatching-prefixes
        link-local-address FE80::EA:4B:FF
    exit
    group-interface "grp-int-2-1" create
        ipv6
            --- snip ---
        exit
        arp-populate
        dhcp
            --- snip ---
            lease-populate 100
            no shutdown
        exit
        authentication-policy "auth-pol-1"
        sap 1/1/2:211 create
            anti-spoof ip-mac
            sub-sla-mgmt
            --- snip ---
        exit
    exit
    sap 1/1/2:212 create
        anti-spoof ip-mac
        sub-sla-mgmt
        --- snip ---
    exit
    exit
    pppoe
        --- snip ---
        no shutdown
    exit
    exit
    group-interface "grp-int-2-2" create
```

```

        ipv6
        --- snip ---
    exit
    arp-populate
    dhcp
        --- snip ---
        lease-populate 100
        no shutdown
    exit
    authentication-policy "auth-pol-1"
    sap 1/1/3:221 create
        anti-spoof ip-mac
        sub-sla-mgmt
        --- snip ---
    exit
    exit
    sap 1/1/3:222 create
        sub-sla-mgmt
        anti-spoof ip-mac
        sub-sla-mgmt
        --- snip ---
    exit
    exit
    exit
    pppoe
        --- snip ---
        no shutdown
    exit
    exit
    exit
    no shutdown

```

The same mandatory and optional settings as for the numbered scenario apply.

Verification

The interfaces on the BNG are listed using following command. Notice that all subscriber and group interfaces are operational up for IPv4 and IPv6.

```
A:BNG# show router "Base" interface
=====
Interface Table (Router: Base)
=====
```

Interface-Name IP-Address	Adm	Opr (v4/v6)	Mode	Port/SapId PfxState
grp-int-1-1	Up	Up/Up	IES Grp	1/1/1
grp-int-1-2	Up	Up/Up	IES Grp	1/1/1
grp-int-2-1	Up	Up/Up	IES Grp	1/1/2
grp-int-2-2	Up	Up/Up	IES Grp	1/1/3
lb-pool4-1 10.1.1.254/24	Up	Up/Down	Network	loopback n/a
lb-pool4-2 10.1.2.254/24	Up	Up/Down	Network	loopback n/a
lb-pool4-3 10.2.1.254/24	Up	Up/Down	Network	loopback n/a
lb-pool4-4 10.2.2.254/24	Up	Up/Down	Network	loopback n/a
sub-int-1 Unnumbered If [system] FE80::EA:4B:FF/64	Up	Up/Up	IES Sub	subscriber n/a PREFERRED
sub-int-2 Unnumbered If [system] FE80::EA:4B:FF/64	Up	Up/Up	IES Sub	subscriber n/a PREFERRED
system 192.0.2.75/32 2001:DB8::75/128	Up	Up/Up	Network	system n/a PREFERRED
toDHCP-1 10.11.11.1/32 2001:DB8::11/128 FE80::E84B:FFFF:FE00:0/64	Up	Up/Up	Network	loopback n/a PREFERRED PREFERRED
toR1 192.168.12.1/24	Up	Up/Down	Network	1/1/12 n/a
toRADIUS-1 192.168.202.75/24	Up	Up/Down	Network	1/1/10 n/a

```
-----
Interfaces : 14
=====
A:BNG#
```


Successfully created hosts have forwarding state Fwding. Hosts not in the Fwding state cannot forward any data.

```
*A:BNG# show service id 1 subscriber-hosts
=====
Subscriber Host table
=====
Sap      Subscriber
IP Address
MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin      Fwding State
-----
1/1/1:111      sub-11
10.1.1.101
00:00:00:11:11:11      1      IPCP      Fwding
1/1/1:122      sub-22
10.2.2.1
00:00:00:22:22:22      N/A      DHCP      Fwding
1/1/1:122      sub-22
2001:DB8:101::1/128
00:00:00:22:22:22      N/A      IPoE-DHCP6      Fwding
1/1/1:122      sub-22
2001:DB8:102::/56
00:00:00:22:22:22      N/A      IPoE-DHCP6      Fwding
1/1/2:211      sub-33
10.2.2.2
00:00:00:33:33:33      N/A      DHCP      Fwding
1/1/2:211      sub-33
2001:DB8:101:1::1/128
00:00:00:33:33:33      N/A      IPoE-DHCP6      Fwding
1/1/2:211      sub-33
2001:DB8:102:100::/56
00:00:00:33:33:33      N/A      IPoE-DHCP6      Fwding
1/1/2:212      sub-44
10.1.1.102
00:00:00:44:44:44      1      IPCP      Fwding
-----
Number of subscriber hosts : 8
=====
*A:BNG#
```

A variant of the show service active-subscribers command shows the subscriber hierarchy.

```
*A:BNG# show service active-subscribers hierarchy
=====
Active Subscriber hierarchy
=====
-- sub-11 (sub-prof-1)
|
|-- sap:1/1/1:111 - sla:sla-prof-1
|   |
|   |-- 10.1.1.101
|   |   00:00:00:11:11:11 - 1 (IPCP)
|   |
|
-- sub-22 (sub-prof-1)
|
```

Unnumbered Scenario

```
-- sap:1/1/1:122 - sla:sla-prof-1
|
|   -- 10.2.2.1
|   |   00:00:00:22:22:22 - N/A (DHCP)
|
|   -- 2001:DB8:101::1/128
|   |   00:00:00:22:22:22 - N/A (IPoE-DHCP6)
|
|   -- 2001:DB8:102::/56
|   |   00:00:00:22:22:22 - N/A (IPoE-DHCP6)
|
-- sub-33 (sub-prof-1)
|
|   -- sap:1/1/2:211 - sla:sla-prof-1
|   |
|   |   -- 10.2.2.2
|   |   |   00:00:00:33:33:33 - N/A (DHCP)
|   |
|   |   -- 2001:DB8:101:1::1/128
|   |   |   00:00:00:33:33:33 - N/A (IPoE-DHCP6)
|   |
|   |   -- 2001:DB8:102:100::/56
|   |   |   00:00:00:33:33:33 - N/A (IPoE-DHCP6)
|   |
|
-- sub-44 (sub-prof-1)
|
|   -- sap:1/1/2:212 - sla:sla-prof-1
|   |
|   |   -- 10.1.1.102
|   |   |   00:00:00:44:44:44 - 1 (IPCP)
|   |
|
=====
*A:BNG#
```

Manually cross-referencing the SAPs from this output with the actual configuration shows the following for IPv4, and is represented in [Figure 196](#).

- Sub-11 and sub-44 share the same IPv4 subnet even though they are connected to different subscriber interfaces.
- Sub-22 and sub-33 share the same subnet even though they are connected to different subscriber interfaces.

For IPv6 the situation is as follows:

- Sub-22 and sub-33 are in different subscriber interfaces and do not share IPv6 prefixes in this example.

With these subscriber hosts are connected, the IPv4 RIB for the base router looks as follows.

```
A:BNG# show router "Base" route-table ipv4
=====
Route Table (Router: Base)
=====
```

```

Dest Prefix[Flags]
Next Hop[Interface Name]      Type    Proto    Age          Pref
                                Metric
-----
10.1.1.0/24                    Local   Local    00h49m42s    0
    lb-pool4-1                  0
10.1.1.101/32                  Remote  Sub Mgmt  00h23m24s    0
    [grp-int-1-1]              0
10.1.1.102/32                  Remote  Sub Mgmt  00h02m32s    0
    [grp-int-2-1]              0
10.1.2.0/24                    Local   Local    00h49m42s    0
    lb-pool4-2                  0
10.2.1.0/24                    Local   Local    00h49m42s    0
    lb-pool4-3                  0
10.2.2.0/24                    Local   Local    00h49m42s    0
    lb-pool4-4                  0
10.2.2.1/32                    Remote  Sub Mgmt  00h27m18s    0
    [grp-int-1-2]              0
10.2.2.2/32                    Remote  Sub Mgmt  00h27m10s    0
    [grp-int-2-1]              0
10.11.11.1/32                  Local   Local    00h49m42s    0
    toDHCP-1                    0
192.0.2.75/32                  Local   Local    00h49m42s    0
    system                      0
192.0.2.76/32                  Remote  ISIS      00h41m48s    15
    192.168.12.2                10
192.168.12.0/24                Local   Local    00h49m24s    0
    toR1                        0
192.168.202.0/24               Local   Local    00h49m24s    0
    toRADIUS-1                  0
-----
No. of Routes: 13
Flags: L = LFA nexthop available    B = BGP backup route available
       n = Number of times nexthop is repeated
=====
A:BNG#

```

The IPv6 RIB for the base router looks as follows.

```

.A:BNG# show router "Base" route-table ipv6
=====
IPv6 Route Table (Router: Base)
=====
Dest Prefix[Flags]
Next Hop[Interface Name]      Type    Proto    Age          Pref
                                Metric
-----
2001:DB8::11/128               Local   Local    01h03m27s    0
    toDHCP-1                    0
2001:DB8::75/128               Local   Local    00h06m34s    0
    system                      0
2001:DB8:101::1/128            Remote  Sub Mgmt  00h36m12s    0
    [grp-int-1-2]              0
2001:DB8:101:1::1/128          Remote  Sub Mgmt  00h35m58s    0
    [grp-int-2-1]              0
2001:DB8:102::/56              Remote  Sub Mgmt  00h36m12s    0
    [grp-int-1-2]              0
2001:DB8:102:100::/56          Remote  Sub Mgmt  00h35m58s    0
    [grp-int-2-1]              0
-----

```

Unnumbered Scenario

```
No. of Routes: 6
Flags: L = LFA nexthop available    B = BGP backup route available
      n = Number of times nexthop is repeated
=====
A:BNG# #
```

The corresponding IPv4 FIB on card 1 looks as follows.

```
A:BNG# show router "Base" fib 1 ipv4
=====
FIB Display
=====
Prefix                                     Protocol
  NextHop
-----
10.1.1.0/24                               LOCAL
    10.1.1.0 (lb-pool4-1)
10.1.1.101/32                             LOCAL
    10.1.1.101 (sub-int-1)
10.1.1.102/32                             LOCAL
    10.1.1.102 (sub-int-2)
10.1.2.0/24                               LOCAL
    10.1.2.0 (lb-pool4-2)
10.2.1.0/24                               LOCAL
    10.2.1.0 (lb-pool4-3)
10.2.2.0/24                               LOCAL
    10.2.2.0 (lb-pool4-4)
10.2.2.1/32                               LOCAL
    10.2.2.1 (sub-int-1)
10.2.2.2/32                               LOCAL
    10.2.2.2 (sub-int-2)
10.11.11.1/32                             LOCAL
    10.11.11.1 (toDHCP-1)
192.0.2.75/32                             LOCAL
    192.0.2.75 (system)
192.0.2.76/32                             ISIS
    192.168.12.2 (toR1)
192.168.12.0/24                           LOCAL
    192.168.12.0 (toR1)
192.168.202.0/24                          LOCAL
    192.168.202.0 (toRADIUS-1)
-----
Total Entries : 13
=====
A:BNG#
```

The corresponding IPv6 FIB on card 1 looks as follows:

```
A:BNG# show router "Base" fib 1 ipv6
=====
FIB Display
=====
Prefix                                     Protocol
  NextHop
-----
2001:DB8::11/128                          LOCAL
    2001:DB8::11 (toDHCP-1)
2001:DB8::75/128                          LOCAL
    2001:DB8::75 (system)
2001:DB8:101::1/128                       LOCAL
    2001:DB8:101::1 (sub-int-1)
2001:DB8:101:1::1/128                     LOCAL
    2001:DB8:101:1::1 (sub-int-2)
2001:DB8:102::/56                         LOCAL
    2001:DB8:102:: (sub-int-1)
2001:DB8:102:100::/56                     LOCAL
    2001:DB8:102:100:: (sub-int-2)
-----
Total Entries : 6
=====
A:BNG#
```

The addresses of the individual subscriber hosts appear in the RIB and the FIB, which is the main difference with the numbered model. The forwarding plane here needs the individual addresses to forward the traffic towards the individual subscriber hosts.

Hybrid Scenario

An alternative to the scenarios described above does exist in the form of a mixed numbered/unnumbered (hybrid) scenario as depicted in [Figure 197](#).

The subscriber interface is configured with

- One or more IPv4 subnets and/or IPv6 subscriber prefixes.
- For IPv4: the keyword **allow-unmatching-subnets**.
- For IPv6: the keyword **allow-unmatching-prefixes**.

No explicit configuration is shown as it is a mix of the numbered and the unnumbered scenario described above, and as such the behavior is mixed.

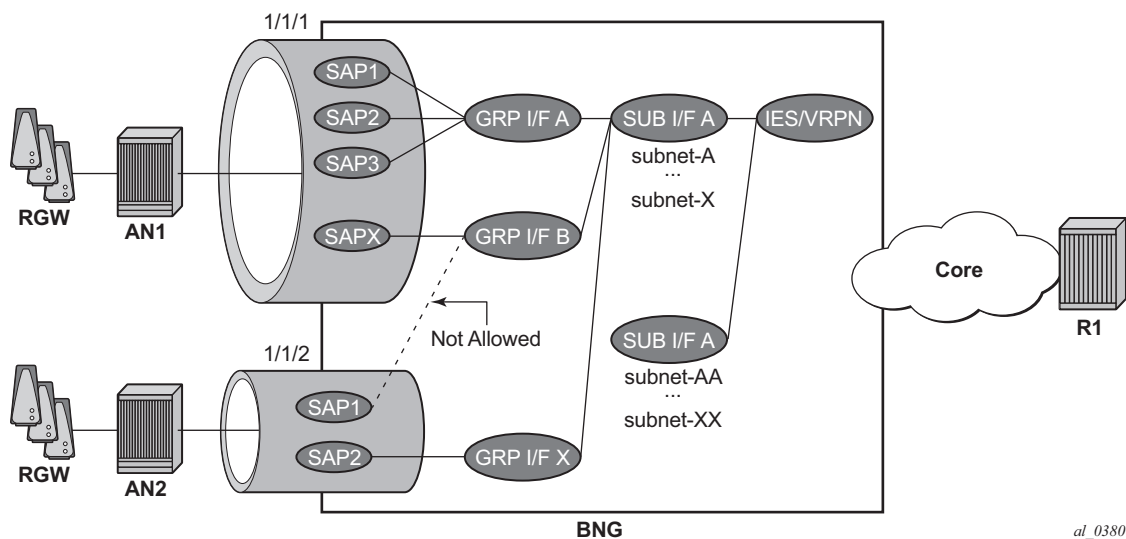


Figure 197: Hybrid Configuration

Host IP Reachability

To ensure reachability to the individual subscriber hosts, the subnets and prefixes of the subscriber interfaces/subscriber hosts need to be distributed to other routers in the network.

Three options are available:

- Without an export policy.
- With an export policy using, for example, from protocol direct.
- With an export policy using, for example, from protocol sub-mgmt.

Option 1 – No Export Policy

The key properties for the first option are:

- Subscriber interface subnets and prefixes are distributed into the network by adding the subscriber interfaces as passive interfaces to the routing protocol.
- It is used in combination with IGP based route distribution.
- It works with the numbered model only.

In this option the BNG uses IS-IS as IGP and no export policy is needed.

```
configure
router
  isis
    area-id 48.0001
    multi-topology
      ipv6-unicast
    exit
    interface "system"
      no shutdown
    exit
    interface "sub-int-1"
      passive
      no shutdown
    exit
    interface "sub-int-2"
      passive
      no shutdown
    exit
    interface "toR1"
      interface-type point-to-point
      no shutdown
    exit
  no shutdown
exit
```

Host IP Reachability

The corresponding IPv4 RIB on router R1 (from [Figure 194](#)) lists the subscriber-interface subnets, not the individual subscriber host addresses.

```
A:R1# show router "Base" route-table ipv4
=====
Route Table (Router: Base)
=====
Dest Prefix[Flags]                                Type  Proto  Age           Pref
Next Hop[Interface Name]                          Metric
-----
10.1.1.0/24                                         Remote ISIS    00h14m11s  15
192.168.12.1                                       20
10.1.2.0/24                                         Remote ISIS    00h14m11s  15
192.168.12.1                                       20
10.2.1.0/24                                         Remote ISIS    00h14m05s  15
192.168.12.1                                       20
10.2.2.0/24                                         Remote ISIS    00h14m05s  15
192.168.12.1                                       20
192.0.2.75/32                                       Remote ISIS    00h14m17s  15
192.168.12.1                                       10
192.0.2.76/32                                       Local  Local    62d21h22m  0
system                                             0
192.168.12.0/24                                     Local  Local    05d04h43m  0
toBNG                                             0
-----
No. of Routes: 7
Flags: L = LFA nexthop available    B = BGP backup route available
      n = Number of times nexthop is repeated
=====
A:R1#
```

The corresponding IPv6 RIB on router R1 lists the subscriber-interface prefixes, not the individual subscriber host addresses/prefixes.

```
A:R1# show router "Base" route-table ipv6
=====
IPv6 Route Table (Router: Base)
=====
Dest Prefix[Flags]                                Type  Proto  Age           Pref
Next Hop[Interface Name]                          Metric
-----
2001:DB8::75/128                                     Remote ISIS    00h04m25s  15
FE80::E84B:FFFF:FE00:0-"toBNG"                     10
2001:DB8::76/128                                     Local  Local    02d05h54m  0
system                                             0
2001:DB8:101::/48                                    Remote ISIS    00h04m25s  15
FE80::E84B:FFFF:FE00:0-"toBNG"                     20
2001:DB8:102::/48                                    Remote ISIS    00h04m25s  15
FE80::E84B:FFFF:FE00:0-"toBNG"                     20
2001:DB8:201::/48                                    Remote ISIS    00h04m25s  15
FE80::E84B:FFFF:FE00:0-"toBNG"                     20
2001:DB8:202::/48                                    Remote ISIS    00h04m25s  15
FE80::E84B:FFFF:FE00:0-"toBNG"                     20
2001:DEAD::/64                                       Local  Local    01h42m18s  0
toBNG                                             0
-----
No. of Routes: 7
```


Flags: L = LFA nexthop available B = BGP backup route available
 n = Number of times nexthop is repeated

=====

A:R1#

Alternatively the same result can be achieved with OSPF/OSPFv3.

Option 2 – Export Policy (from protocol direct)

The key properties for the second option are:

- Subscriber interface subnets and prefixes are distributed into the network by applying an export policy.
- It is most typically used in combination with BGP based route distribution.
- It works with the numbered model only.

The following export policy is used for this example.

```
configure
router
  policy-options
    policy-statement "local-subnets-out"
      entry 10
        from
          protocol direct
        exit
        action accept
        exit
      exit
    exit
```

In this option the BNG relies on BGP using the policy local-subnets-out as an export policy. The neighbor address is the IPv4 system address of router R1.

```
configure
router
  autonomous-system 65536
  bgp
    group "grp-1"
      family ipv4 ipv6
      export "local-subnets-out"
      peer-as 65536
      neighbor 192.0.2.76
        advertise-label ipv6
      exit
    exit
  no shutdown
exit
```

The following command shows the IPv4 routes advertised by applying the local-subnets-out policy. The subscriber interface subnets are advertised, as are some other local subnets.

```
*A:BNG# show router bgp neighbor 192.0.2.76 advertised-routes ipv4
=====
BGP Router ID:192.0.2.75      AS:65536      Local AS:65536
=====
Legend -
Status codes : u - used, s - suppressed, h - history, d - decayed, * - valid
Origin codes : i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete, > - best, b - backup
=====
BGP IPv4 Routes
=====
```

Flag	Network Nexthop As-Path	LocalPref Path-Id	MED Label
i	10.1.1.0/24 192.0.2.75 No As-Path	100 None	None -
i	10.1.2.0/24 192.0.2.75 No As-Path	100 None	None -
i	10.2.1.0/24 192.0.2.75 No As-Path	100 None	None -
i	10.2.2.0/24 192.0.2.75 No As-Path	100 None	None -
i	10.11.11.1/32 192.0.2.75 No As-Path	100 None	None -
i	192.0.2.75/32 192.0.2.75 No As-Path	100 None	None -
i	192.168.12.0/24 192.0.2.75 No As-Path	100 None	None -
i	192.168.202.0/24 192.0.2.75 No As-Path	100 None	None -

```
-----
Routes : 8
=====
*A:BNG#
```

The same applies for IPv6.

```
*A:BNG# show router bgp neighbor 192.0.2.76 advertised-routes ipv6
=====
BGP Router ID:192.0.2.75      AS:65536      Local AS:65536
=====
Legend -
Status codes : u - used, s - suppressed, h - history, d - decayed, * - valid
Origin codes : i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete, > - best, b - backup
=====
BGP IPv6 Routes
```

```

=====
Flag   Network                               LocalPref  MED
      Nexthop                               Path-Id    Label
      As-Path
-----
i      2001:DB8::11/128                     100        None
      ::FFFF:C000:24B                       None        2
      No As-Path
i      2001:DB8::75/128                     100        None
      ::FFFF:C000:24B                       None        2
      No As-Path
i      2001:DB8:101::/48                    100        None
      ::FFFF:C000:24B                       None        2
      No As-Path
i      2001:DB8:102::/48                    100        None
      ::FFFF:C000:24B                       None        2
      No As-Path
i      2001:DB8:201::/48                    100        None
      ::FFFF:C000:24B                       None        2
      No As-Path
i      2001:DB8:202::/48                    100        None
      ::FFFF:C000:24B                       None        2
      No As-Path
i      2001:DEAD::/64                       100        None
      ::FFFF:C000:24B                       None        2
      No As-Path
-----
Routes : 7
=====
*A:BNG#

```

The corresponding IPv4 RIB on router R1 lists the subscriber-interface subnets, not the individual subscriber host addresses. Notice the list also includes other routes local to the BNG.

```

*A:R1# show router "Base" route-table ipv4
=====
Route Table (Router: Base)
=====
Dest Prefix[Flags]                               Type  Proto   Age           Pref
      Next Hop[Interface Name]                   Metric
-----
10.1.1.0/24                                       Remote BGP    00h13m34s    170
      192.168.12.1                                0
10.1.2.0/24                                       Remote BGP    00h13m34s    170
      192.168.12.1                                0
10.2.1.0/24                                       Remote BGP    00h13m34s    170
      192.168.12.1                                0
10.2.2.0/24                                       Remote BGP    00h13m34s    170
      192.168.12.1                                0
10.11.11.1/32                                    Remote BGP    00h13m34s    170
      192.168.12.1                                0
192.0.2.75/32                                    Remote ISIS   00h15m38s    15
      192.168.12.1                                10
192.0.2.76/32                                    Local  Local      03h11m54s    0
      system                                         0
192.168.12.0/24                                  Local  Local      03h11m25s    0
      toBNG                                         0

```

Host IP Reachability

```
192.168.202.0/24                                Remote BGP      00h13m34s  170
192.168.12.1                                    0
-----
No. of Routes: 9
Flags: L = LFA nexthop available    B = BGP backup route available
      n = Number of times nexthop is repeated
=====
*A:R1#
```

The corresponding IPv6 RIB on router R1 lists the subscriber-interface prefixes, not the individual subscriber host addresses/prefixes. They are tunneled through the IPv4 core.

```
*A:R1# show router "Base" route-table ipv6
=====
IPv6 Route Table (Router: Base)
=====
Dest Prefix[Flags]                                Type  Proto    Age          Pref
Next Hop[Interface Name]                          Metric
-----
2001:DB8::11/128                                Remote BGP      00h00m49s  170
192.0.2.75 (tunneled)                            0
2001:DB8::75/128                                Remote ISIS    00h54m05s  15
FE80::E84B:FFFF:FE00:0-"toBNG"                  10
2001:DB8::76/128                                Local  Local      05h18m12s   0
system                                             0
2001:DB8:101::/48                                Remote BGP      00h00m49s  170
192.0.2.75 (tunneled)                            0
2001:DB8:102::/48                                Remote BGP      00h00m49s  170
192.0.2.75 (tunneled)                            0
2001:DB8:201::/48                                Remote BGP      00h00m49s  170
192.0.2.75 (tunneled)                            0
2001:DB8:202::/48                                Remote BGP      00h00m49s  170
192.0.2.75 (tunneled)                            0
2001:DEAD::/64                                  Local  Local      05h17m42s   0
toBNG                                             0
-----
No. of Routes: 8
Flags: L = LFA nexthop available    B = BGP backup route available
      n = Number of times nexthop is repeated
=====
*A:R1# #
```

The same export policy can be used in combination with IGP based route distribution. However, when IGP based route distribution is needed option 1 is the preferred method.

Option 3 – Export Protocol (from protocol sub-mgmt)

The key properties for the third option are:

- Host addresses and prefixes are distributed into the network by applying an export policy.
- It is most typically used in combination with BGP based route distribution, as IGP based route distribution does not scale for a large number of subscribers.
- It is most typically used for the unnumbered model, and in some cases for the numbered model.

The following export policy is used for this option.

```
configure
router
  policy-options
    policy-statement "subsc-hosts-out"
      entry 10
        from
          protocol sub-mgmt
        exit
        action accept
      exit
    exit
  exit
exit
```

In this option the BNG relies on BGP using the policy subsc-hosts-out as an export policy.

```
configure
router
  autonomous-system 65536
  bgp
    group "grp-1"
      family ipv4 ipv6
      export "subsc-hosts-out"
      peer-as 65536
      neighbor 192.0.2.76
        advertise-label ipv6
      exit
    exit
  no shutdown
exit
```

The following command shows the IPv4 routes advertised by applying the subsc-hosts-out policy. Now the subscriber host addresses are advertised individually.

```
*A:BNG# show router bgp neighbor 192.0.2.76 advertised-routes ipv4
=====
BGP Router ID:192.0.2.75      AS:65536      Local AS:65536
=====
Legend -
Status codes : u - used, s - suppressed, h - history, d - decayed, * - valid
Origin codes : i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete, > - best, b - backup
=====
BGP IPv4 Routes
=====
```

Flag	Network Nexthop As-Path	LocalPref Path-Id	MED Label
?	10.1.1.101/32	100	0
	192.0.2.75	None	-
	No As-Path		
?	10.1.1.102/32	100	0
	192.0.2.75	None	-
	No As-Path		
?	10.2.2.1/32	100	0
	192.0.2.75	None	-
	No As-Path		
?	10.2.2.2/32	100	0
	192.0.2.75	None	-
	No As-Path		

```
-----
Routes : 4
=====
*A:BNG#
```

For IPv6, the host addresses and prefixes are advertised.

```
*A:BNG# show router bgp neighbor 192.0.2.76 advertised-routes ipv6
=====
BGP Router ID:192.0.2.75      AS:65536      Local AS:65536
=====
Legend -
Status codes : u - used, s - suppressed, h - history, d - decayed, * - valid
Origin codes : i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete, > - best, b - backup
=====
BGP IPv6 Routes
=====
```

Flag	Network Nexthop As-Path	LocalPref Path-Id	MED Label
?	2001:DB8:101::1/128	100	0
	::FFFF:C000:24B	None	2
	No As-Path		
?	2001:DB8:101:1::1/128	100	0
	::FFFF:C000:24B	None	2
	No As-Path		

```

?      2001:DB8:102::/56                                100      0
      ::FFFF:C000:24B                                    None     2
      No As-Path
?      2001:DB8:102:100::/56                             100      0
      ::FFFF:C000:24B                                    None     2
      No As-Path
-----
Routes : 4
=====
*A:BNG#

```

The corresponding IPv4 RIB on router R1 looks as follows. Notice the individual host addresses do appear.

```

A:R1# show router route-table ipv4
=====
Route Table (Router: Base)
=====
Dest Prefix[Flags]                                     Type   Proto   Age           Pref
Next Hop[Interface Name]                               Metric
-----
10.1.1.101/32                                           Remote BGP      00h40m49s    170
      192.168.12.1                                     0
10.1.1.102/32                                           Remote BGP      00h19m53s    170
      192.168.12.1                                     0
10.2.2.1/32                                             Remote BGP      00h44m49s    170
      192.168.12.1                                     0
10.2.2.2/32                                             Remote BGP      00h44m17s    170
      192.168.12.1                                     0
192.0.2.75/32                                           Remote ISIS     00h59m41s    15
      192.168.12.1                                     10
192.0.2.76/32                                           Local  Local      01h22m11s    0
      system                                           0
192.168.12.0/24                                         Local  Local      01h21m42s    0
      toBNG                                           0
-----
No. of Routes: 7
Flags: L = LFA nexthop available    B = BGP backup route available
      n = Number of times nexthop is repeated
=====
A:R1#

```

The corresponding IPv6 RIB on router R1 looks as follows. Notice the individual host addresses and prefixes are distributed in this case.

```

A:R1# show router route-table ipv6
=====
IPv6 Route Table (Router: Base)
=====
Dest Prefix[Flags]                                     Type   Proto   Age           Pref
Next Hop[Interface Name]                               Metric
-----
2001:DB8::76/128                                         Local  Local      01h22m16s    0
      system                                           0
2001:DB8:101::1/128                                     Remote BGP      00h36m40s    170
      192.0.2.75 (tunneled)                         0

```

Host IP Reachability

```
2001:DB8:101:1::1/128          Remote  BGP      00h36m40s  170
    192.0.2.75 (tunneled)          0
2001:DB8:102::/56              Remote  BGP      00h36m40s  170
    192.0.2.75 (tunneled)          0
2001:DB8:102:100::/56          Remote  BGP      00h36m40s  170
    192.0.2.75 (tunneled)          0
2001:DEAD::/64                 Local   Local    01h21m47s   0
    toBNG                           0
-----
No. of Routes: 6
Flags: L = LFA nexthop available    B = BGP backup route available
      n = Number of times nexthop is repeated
=====
A:R1#
```


Conclusion

This example explains how to configure and use the Routed CO model. The subscriber and the group interfaces were configured for the numbered, unnumbered and hybrid scenario, showing the flexibility of the Routed CO model in terms of subnet/prefix assignment as well as the impact on the forwarding and the reachability to and from the subscriber hosts.

Subscriber Redundancy for Routed-CO

In This Chapter

This section provides information about Subscriber Redundancy for Routed-CO (SRRP).

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 1320](#)
- [Summary on page 1321](#)
- [Overview on page 1322](#)
- [Configuration on page 1324](#)
- [Conclusion on page 1352](#)

Applicability

These configuration notes are applicable for the 7750 SR-c12, SR-7/12 and 7710 series and was tested on SR-OS 7.0 R5. This is supported on 7450 ESS-7 or ESS-12 in mixed-mode since 8.0R1. The 7750 SR-c4 is supported from 8.0R4 and higher.

This note is related only to the use of IPv4.

Configuration and troubleshooting commands were taken from a 7750 SR-7.

Summary

This section focuses on the delivery of redundant services in an Enhanced Subscriber management (ESM) Routed-CO environment using IES (Internet Enhanced Service) or VPRN (Virtual Private Routed Network).

It is applicable to delivering high speed Internet (HSI), voice-over-IP (VoIP) and video-on-demand (VoD) to subscribers.

Redundancy is provided at two levels:

- system redundancy
- network redundancy

The system redundancy is based on the high availability features of the 7750/7710 SRs, such as component redundancy (power, fans, control processor modules etc.) and software redundancy (service and protocol redundancy and non-stop-routing), which are not discussed here.

The network redundancy for subscriber access in an ESM Routed-CO environment requires that each BSAN (Broadband Service Access Node) is dual-homed to two 7750/7710 SRs either in a point-to-point fashion with the BSANs having direct physical connectivity to the 7750/7710 SRs, or by having Layer 2 aggregation between the BSANs and the 7750/7710 SRs.

This connection will operate in a master-slave relationship providing both link and system redundancy for the subscribers on the BSAN when accessing the configured services.

Subscriber redundancy for Routed-CO aims to minimize the outage due to a failure.

This chapter provides configuration and troubleshooting commands for SRRP with **static-host ip-mac**.

Knowledge of the TPSDA (Triple Play Service Delivery Architecture) concepts is assumed throughout this document.

Overview

There are three components on the 7750/7710 SRs to implement network redundancy:

1. Redundant access from the BSANs to the two 7750/7710 SRs provided by the SRRP.
2. Mirroring of subscriber state between the two 7750/7710 SRs achieved through the Multi-Chassis Synchronization (MCS) protocol.
3. Backup spoke SDP traffic path between the two 7750/7710 SRs peers.

These components are shown in [Figure 198](#).

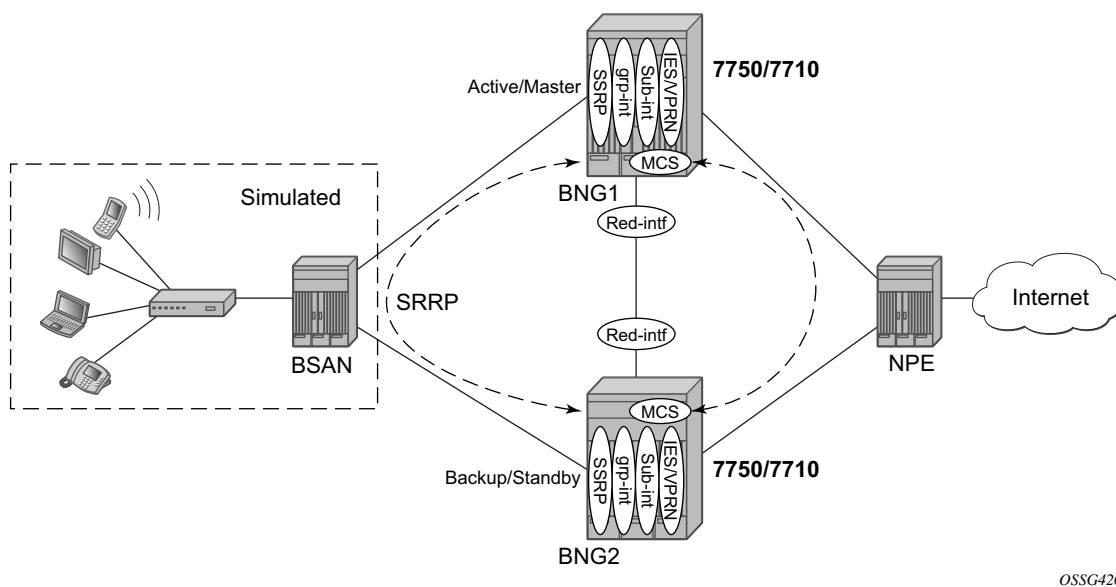


Figure 198: Network Redundancy Components for ESM Routed-CO

The following configuration tasks should be done first and are not explained in detail in these configuration notes:

- Basic service router configuration (system interface, IGP, MPLS, BGP)
- Routed CO service topology: VPRN or IES service with subscriber and group interface on BNGs (Broadband Network Gateway)
- ESM configuration
- Static host configuration

This chapter will focus on SRRP in a VPRN service subscriber-interface on BNG (Routed-CO). Note that in case of Routed-CO, it is also possible to configure SRRP in the base routing instance using an IES service.

The SRRP Protocol

The SRRP protocol operates on a specific SAP within the group interface under the subscriber-interface of an IES/VPNN service. Through a method similar to the VRRP (Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol), it provides a set of default gateways to the subscribers on the BSAN. These are active on the 7750 SR in a master state and inactive on the 7750 SR in the backup state. Traffic is forwarded upstream and downstream through the master. If the backup loses connectivity to the master (for example, fails to receive SRRP messages from the master), it transitions to the master state and takes over the ownership of the default gateways and the responsibility for forwarding traffic to/from the subscriber. This provides redundancy from the BSAN toward the provider network.

If an SRRP failover were to occur, it is important that the subscriber state (IP/MAC addresses, QOS profiles, etc.) be immediately available on the new SRRP master 7750 SR; otherwise, subscriber traffic will be dropped due to the anti-spoofing security. The subscriber state is synchronized through the MCS protocol, which mirrors the subscriber state between the two peers. This allows both peers to know the details of the active subscribers and therefore forward traffic on their behalf with the correct QOS actions both to and from the BSAN if that peer is the SRRP master.

The last scenario relates to the forwarding from the provider network to the subscribers. If the natural IP routing causes this traffic to forward through the SRRP master, then it will automatically be forwarded to the subscriber. However, if the provider routing scheme causes traffic destined to a subscriber to arrive at the 7750 SR in the SRRP backup state for that subscriber, it will be dropped as the backup does not forward traffic out of the subscriber SAPs.

To avoid this, a redundant interface is configured between the two 7750 SRs under the subscriber/group-interfaces. Any traffic arriving on the 7750 SR for an active subscriber, where its associated SRRP instance is in the backup state, will be forwarded through the redundant interface to the SRRP master, which in turn forwards it to the subscriber.

In addition to successful forwarding the traffic, this operation also maintains the subscriber QOS compliance as all traffic for a given subscriber enters and exits the routed-co interface through a single SAP, allowing the associated IOM hardware to perform the correct QOS actions.

Configuration

Subscriber Interface Configuration

Redundant Default Gateway

- The redundant default gateway IP addresses must be configured under the subscriber-interface (within the IES/VRPN service) for each subnet defined.
- Three subnets are configured under the subscriber-interface sub-int-1, each with a **gw-ip-address** which is used as the default gateway by the subscribers in that subnet.

```
*A:BNG-2>configure
  service
    vprn 1 customer 1 create
- - - snip - - -
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
      address 10.2.0.2/16 gw-ip-address 10.2.0.254
      address 10.3.0.2/16 gw-ip-address 10.3.0.254
      address 10.4.0.2/16 gw-ip-address 10.4.0.254
```

- Note that the **gw-ip-address** could be a virtual (unused) address in this subnet or the address of one of the actual subscriber-interfaces on the two 7750/7710 SRs. It must not be assigned as a subscriber address.
- If DHCP were to be used, the associated subscriber-interface address should be used for the gi-address configured for DHCP under the group-interface (will not be covered here as static host is used). This ensures that if the offer returned from the DHCP server arrives at the SRRP backup (rather than master) it will be forwarded by the SRRP backup to the master through the redundant interface.

In environments where there are many subscribers, it will take time to synchronize the subscriber state between the peers when the subscriber-interface is enabled (perhaps, after a reboot). In order to ensure that the state has time to be synchronized, a delayed-enable timer can be specified under the subscriber interface. The optional **init-only** parameter can be added to use this timer only after a reboot.

```
*A:BNG-2>config>service>vprn>sub-if# delayed-enable
- delayed-enable <seconds> [init-only]
- no delayed-enable

<seconds>          : [1..1200]
<init-only>        : keyword
*A:BNG-2>config>service>vprn>sub-if# info
-----
---snip---
      delayed-enable 1200 init-only
```


Group Interface Configuration

The group interface **group-int-1** to connect BSAN is configured under the subscriber interface

```
*A:BNG-2>config>service>vprn# info
-----
---snip---
        subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
            address 10.2.0.2/16 gw-ip-address 10.2.0.254
            address 10.3.0.2/16 gw-ip-address 10.3.0.254
            address 10.4.0.2/16 gw-ip-address 10.4.0.254
            group-interface "group-int-1" create
---snip---
```

Static Host Configuration

Enable the sub-sla-mgmt and sub-ident-policy **sub-id-default** under **sap 1/1/3:1** and define static host (ip-mac) with **sla-profile sla-profile-1**, **sub-profile sla-profile-1** and **subscriber static-host-routed-10.2.0.3**.

```
*A:BNG-2>configure service vprn 1 customer 1 create
---snip---
        subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
---snip---
        group-interface "group-int-1" create
---snip---
        sap 1/1/3:1 create
            sub-sla-mgmt
                sub-ident-policy "sub-id-default"
                no shutdown
            exit
            static-host ip 10.2.0.3 mac 00:00:00:00:00:01 create
                sla-profile "sla-profile-1"
                sub-profile "sub-profile-1"
                subscriber "static-host-routed-10.2.0.3"
```

SRRP Configuration

In order for the redundant gateway information to be used by subscribers through SAPs belonging to a particular group-interface, an SRRP instance must be added in the group interface context.

```
*A:BNG-2>configure service vprn 1 customer 1 create
- - - snip - - -
        group-interface "g1" create
- - - snip- - -
        srrp 1 create
---snip---
```

Group Interface Configuration

At this point, any subscriber ARPing for the gw-ip-address will receive a response from the SRRP master with a source MAC of 00-00-5E-00-01-<xx>, where <xx> is the first byte of the SRRP identifier in hexadecimal, so in this case for SRRP=1 the source MAC will be 00-00-5E-00-01-01.

The redundant default gateway MAC address could be explicitly configured, if desired, by use of the **gw-mac** parameter.

```
*A:BNG-2>config>service>vprn>sub-if>grp-if>srrp# gw-mac
- gw-mac <mac-address>
- no gw-mac

<mac-address>          : xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx or xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx
```

There can be only one SRRP instance per group-interface and all SRRP identifiers must be unique per system.

When an SRRP instance is enabled, or when there is an SRRP failover from one device to another, gratuitous ARPs are sent on all VLANs associated with this instance for all gw-ip-addresses (for example, on all subscriber SAPs and on the SRRP message path SAP in the associated group interface). This allows all downstream devices to relearn the path to the new master.

The SRRP messages are normally forwarded through the BSAN, thereby verifying the connectivity from one 7750/7710 SR through the BSAN to the other 7750/7710 SR. In order to achieve this, a non-subscriber SAP must be configured under the **group-interface** which is referenced in the SRRP configuration by the **message-path** parameter. This not only selects the SAP to be used for the SRRP messages but also avoids the subscriber anti-spoofing from automatically dropping the received messages (as there would be no subscriber IP-to-MAC entry corresponding to the received information) and causing both peers to become master.

The message-path SAP configuration effectively disables IP-MAC anti-spoofing on that SAP.

```
*A:BNG-2>configure service vprn 1 customer 1 create
- - - snip - - -
      group-interface "group-int-1" create
      sap 1/1/3:2 create
      exit
---snip---
      srrp 1 create
      message-path 1/1/3:2
---snip---
```

Note that the SRRP messages are then not sent within the same SAP as the subscriber data traffic, but it is assumed that the path traversed by the SRRP messages is same as would be used for the subscriber data; if this is not the case, then the SRRP state would not necessarily reflect a failure in the data path.

The master of the SRRP instance generates advertisement messages at the keep-alive-interval (which is encoded in the message) ranging from one (1) to 100 in multiples of 100ms with a default of 10 (for example, 1 second). The SRRP backup will monitor the reception of these messages and assume the role of the master if three consecutive messages are not received.

The keep-alive-interval of the master is always used.

```
*A:BNG-2>config>service>vprn>sub-if>grp-if>srrp# keep-alive-interval
- keep-alive-interval <interval>
- no keep-alive-interval

<interval>          : [1..100] tenths of a second
```

Only two devices can participate in an SRRP protocol exchange for a given SRRP instance, this being another difference from VRRP which allows more potential backup devices. This is a consequence of the direct relationship between the SRRP instance and the associated redundant interface and MCS peering.

This protocol exchange is also used for the master/backup election, based on the priority (1 to 254) configured in the SRRP instance. The device with the highest priority will become master.

```
*A:BNG-2>config>service>vprn>sub-if>grp-if>srrp# info
-----
---snip---
                priority 250
```

With the message source IP address (system IP address) being used as a tie break when the priorities are the same (the lower IP address becomes the master). The master/backup status is per SRRP instance (not per IP address). For example, the master is the active gateway for all gw-ip-addresses under the subscriber interface for the associated group-interface (this is true even if the backup is the IP address owner for one of the gw-ip-addresses). Priority 0 is sent by the master when it is transitioning to the backup role due to the appearance of a high priority peer. Higher priority backups always preempt a lower priority master.

A basic form of load distribution can be achieved by having the master SRRP for some group-interfaces on one peer and the master for other group interfaces on the other peer. Clearly, a failure may cause all masters to be active on a single peer, which must be taken into account when designing the network.

The minimum keepalive-timer of 1 is configured, together with the message-path giving the SAP to be used for the SRRP messages. The priority is set to 250 (default is 100) in order to force this peer to be the SRRP master when both peers are active.

```
srrp 1 create
        keep-alive-interval 1
---snip---
```

SRRP Configuration Notes

- A VRRP policy statement can be added to the SRRP instance definition in order to dynamically adjust the SRRP priority based on certain non-SRRP related events occurring (for example, port down, LAG degrade, host unreachable or route unknown).
 - The gw-ip-addresses are accessible by active subscribers, for example, regardless which peer is the master, an active subscriber can ping or telnet to its associated gw-ip-address (clearly, filters can be configured to control this).
-

BFD (Bi-directional Forwarding Detection)

BFD can be configured with SRRP to speed up the convergence.

```
srrp 1 create
---snip---
bfd-enable 2 interface "bfd-1" dst-ip 10.1.1.1
```

An IES service needs to be created for the BFD session.

```
*A:BNG-2# configure service ies 2
      interface "bfd-1" create
        address 10.1.1.0/31
        bfd 100 receive 100 multiplier 3
        sap 1/1/3:3 create
        exit
      exit
    no shutdown
```

Monitoring In-Band Communications Path

In order to monitor the in-band communications path between the subscribers and two 7750/7710 SRs, SRRP uses a slightly modified VRRP advertisement message.

The SRRP message destination IP address (224.0.0.18) and IP protocol number (112) are the same as for VRRP but there are changes in the following areas:

- The source IP address of the message is the system IP address, as opposed to the interface IP address.
- The protocol version has been set to eight (8) (the current version of VRRP is two (2)).
- The virtual router identifier has been extended from one byte (maximum 255) to four bytes (maximum 4294967295) though the maximum number of SRRPs that can be defined is 255.
- The source MAC address is included instead of the virtual router IP addresses (this being 00-00-5E-00-01-<xx>, where <xx> is the first byte of the SRRP identifier in hexadecimal).

Synchronizing the SRRP Peer State

In order to troubleshoot an SRRP environment, the state of each peer is synchronized with the other peer through the Multi-Chassis Synchronization (MCS). MCS is a proprietary protocol used for synchronizing application state between two peers. SRRP will function without synchronizing its state but this synchronization allows for current state of both the local and remote peers to be displayed and appropriate error messages to be reported when the peer state is not correct. It also allows the master SRRP subscriber-interface to be pinged through the backup peer (through the redundant interface).

To link information being mirrored between two 7750/7710 SRs, a **sync-tag** value is configured to correspond to either an entire port/LAG or under a port/LAG for a VLAN range. This allows each 7750/7710 SR to know exactly which information should be in sync on each device. The sync-tag must be unique on the two peers involved.

This example configuration shows only the SRRP aspects. SRRP instance has been configured for MCS peer 192.0.2.1 using VLANs 1-2 on port 1/1/3. Here, a sync-tag is associated with the SRRP instance.

```
*A:BNG-2>config>redundancy>multi-chassis# info
-----
peer 192.0.2.1 create
  authentication-key "441d0/0RgDg2CA0JlyzVNPuH6Fy2512w" hash2
  sync
    srrp
    sub-mgmt
    port 1/1/3 create
      range 1-2 sync-tag "srrp1"
    exit
  no shutdown
```

Alternatively, if the information needs to be synchronized on port 1/1/3 for all VLANs, then the following port command could be used instead of the port-plus-ranges shown above.

```
srrp
  sub-mgmt
  port 1/1/3 sync-tag "srrp1" create
exit
```

Note: the VLANs used within the group interfaces must match between the two peers, clearly the physical ports identifiers may differ.

Multi-Chassis Synchronization

Multi-chassis synchronization (MCS) is a general propriety protocol used to synchronize information between two 7x50/7710 SR peers. It can be used for the following applications:

- IGMP
- IGMP Snooping
- Subscriber Management
- Subscriber Router Redundancy Protocol

IGMP and IGMP snooping are out of the scope of this document.

Subscriber Management Synchronization

In order to ensure that the QOS defined for a subscriber is adhered to, all traffic for a given subscriber needs to be forward by a single port. When an MSAN is dual-homed to two 7750/7710 SRs this is achieved using the SRRP protocol (described above) and the redundant interface (described below); specifically, the traffic is forwarded through the SRRP master of the related group-interface.

When a subscriber is created on the master SRRP, a host route (/32) for its IP address is inserted in the IP FIB pointing towards the appropriate group-interface.

The same subscriber on the backup peer will have a host route in the IP FIB pointing to the redundant interface. Note that on the backup peer this requires the subscriber subnet to also be present in the IP FIB, which in turn requires one of the following:

- The local subscriber-interface is up.
- The subscriber subnets are learned from active BNG (Broadband Network Gateway) through routing protocol.
- Forcing the subscriber-interface to stay up by creating a dummy group interface with the **oper-up-when-empty** command.

```
*A:BNG-2>config>service>vprn# info
-----
---snip---
    subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
    ---snip--
    group-interface "group-int-1" create
    ---snip---
        oper-up-while-empty
        sap 1/1/3:1 create
        exit
```

Redundant Interface

The requirement for the redundant interface comes from the situation where traffic destined to a subscriber arrives on the 7750/7710 SR but the associated SRRP state is not master.

When the SRRP state is backup for a particular group-interface, subscriber traffic is not normally forwarded in/out of the associated subscriber SAPs. Also traffic could arrive but the specific group-interface for that subscriber is down. These situations could occur due to the natural routing within the provider network or temporarily during an SRRP failover. Note that as the subscriber subnets are configured under the subscriber-interface, it is not possible to stop advertising these subnets into the provider core in the case where only a subset of the group interfaces are down or the associated SRRP instances are in backup. The advertisement of the subscriber subnet could therefore attract traffic to the 7750/7710 SR, which is not the SRRP master.

In these cases, traffic must be sent to the SRRP active 7750/7710 SR in order to be forwarded to the subscriber. This is achieved through the configuration of a redundant interface between two SRRP peers, which protects against failures of the related group interfaces.

The redundant interface is configured under the IES/VRPN service. It must use a single pseudowire, configured as a spoke SDP, to provide connectivity to the peer 7750/7710 SR. This is essential as it avoids any possibility of the traffic being misrouted by any other system between the two peers. It can either use a /31 IP subnet mask or a longer mask with the remote IP being explicitly specified.

```
*A:BNG-2>config>service>vprn# info
-----
----snip----
      redundant-interface "bng-2-bng-1-vprn-1" create
      address 192.168.4.1/31
      spoke-sdp 21:1 create
      exit
    exit
```

If non /31 address is used, the remote IP address will be required.

```
*A:BNG-2>config>service>vprn# redundant-interface "bng-2-bng-1-vprn-1"
*A:BNG-2>config>service>vprn>red-if# address 192.168.4.1/30
INFO: PIP #1399 Invalid or unspecified remote IP address - Non /31 address requires
remote IP address
```

The remote-ip address can be defined by the following command:

```
*A:BNG-2>config>service>vprn>red-if# address 192.168.4.1/30 remote-ip 192.4.1.2
```

Each group-interface must then be associated with a redundant interface.

```
group-interface "group-int-1" create
---snip---
      redundant-interface "bng-2-bng-1-vprn-1"
```


Only one redundant interface is required for a given IES/VPNN service on each peer, though it is possible to create multiple redundant interfaces and assign group interfaces to each individually. Clearly, each redundant interface needs to terminate on a matching redundant interface in the corresponding peer service.

When traffic arrives from the core network for an active subscriber on a SAP in group-interface **group-int-1**, and if the associated SRRP instance is in the backup state, then this traffic will be forwarded over the **redundant-interface bng-2-bng-1-vprn-1** to the peer 7750/7710 SR. It will then be forward to the subscriber as the associated SRRP instance will be in the master state.

The information about the redundant interfaces is mirrored through MCS as part of the SRRP synchronization.

Show and Debug Commands

Routing Table Related Information

A host route (/32) for its IP address is inserted in the IP FIB pointing toward the appropriate group-interface.

```
*A:BNG-2# show router 1 route-table
=====
Route Table (Service: 1)
=====
Dest Prefix                                Type    Proto    Age          Pref
      Next Hop[Interface Name]                                Metric
-----
10.2.0.3/32                                Remote  Sub Mgmt  22h56m34s    0
      [group-int-1]                                           0
---snip---
```

The same subscriber on the backup peer will have a host route in the IP FIB pointing to the redundant interface.

```
*B:BNG-1# show router 1 route-table
=====
Route Table (Service: 1)
=====
Dest Prefix                                Type    Proto    Age          Pref
      Next Hop[Interface Name]                                Metric
-----
0
10.2.0.3/32                                Remote  Sub Mgmt  22h51m06s    0
      [bng-1-bng-2-vprn-1]                                   0
---snip---
```

Subscriber Related Information

To check the subscriber information:

```
*A:BNG-2# show service id 1 subscriber-hosts
=====
Subscriber Host table
=====
Sap          IP Address    MAC Address    PPPoE-SID Origin
Subscriber                               Fwding state
-----
1/1/3:1      10.2.0.3      00:00:00:00:00:01 N/A      Static
static-host-routed-*      Fwding
```

To check the subscriber details:

```
*A:BNG-2# show service id 1 subscriber-hosts detail
=====
Subscriber Host table
=====
Sap          IP Address    MAC Address    PPPoE-SID Origin
Subscriber                               Fwding state
-----
1/1/3:1      10.2.0.3      00:00:00:00:00:01 N/A      Static
static-host-routed-*      Fwding

Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : group-int-1
Sub Profile           : sub-profile-1
SLA Profile           : sla-profile-1
App Profile           : N/A
=====
```

The same command on the peer would show the same information except for the port identifier part of the SAP, which is specific to the peer and may differ.

MCS Redundancy Related Information

The high-level state of MCS can be seen in the following output:

```
*A:BNG-2# show redundancy multi-chassis all
=====
Multi-Chassis Peers
=====
Peer IP          Src IP          Auth          Peer Admin    MC-Ring Oper  MC-EP Adm
MCS Admin        MCS Oper        MCS State     MC-LAG Adm    MC-LAG Oper
-----
192.0.2.1        192.0.2.2      hash2         Enabled       unknown      --
Enabled          Enabled        inSync        Disabled      Disabled
=====
*A:BNG-2#
```

Information about the peering, the use of authentication, the state of MCS (Enabled) and the fact that MCS is inSync is shown.

```
*A:BNG-2# show redundancy multi-chassis sync
=====
Multi-chassis Peer Table
=====
Peer
-----
Peer IP Address      : 192.0.2.1
Description           : (Not Specified)
Authentication        : Enabled
Source IP Address     : 192.0.2.2
Admin State           : Enabled
-----
Sync-status
-----
Client Applications   : SUBMGMT SRRP
Sync Admin State      : Up
Sync Oper State       : Up
DB Sync State         : inSync
Num Entries           : 6
Lcl Deleted Entries   : 0
Alarm Entries         : 0
Rem Num Entries       : 6
Rem Lcl Deleted Entries : 0
Rem Alarm Entries     : 0
=====
*A:BNG-2#
```

In the output, it can be seen that SUBMGMT and SRRP are the client applications and they are inSync with six database entries both on this peer and the remote peer.

If the above command included the detailed output for peer 192.0.2.1, the following additional information would be shown.

```
*A:BNG-2# show redundancy multi-chassis sync peer 192.0.2.1 detail
=====
Multi-chassis Peer Table
=====
Peer
-----
Peer IP Address      : 192.0.2.1
Description          : (Not Specified)
Authentication       : Enabled
Source IP Address    : 192.0.2.2
Admin State          : Enabled
-----
Sync-status
-----
---snip---
Application          : srrp
Num Entries          : 6
Lcl Deleted Entries  : 0
Alarm Entries        : 0
-----
Rem Num Entries      : 6
Rem Lcl Deleted Entries : 0
Rem Alarm Entries    : 0
-----
---snip---
=====
Ports synced on peer 192.0.2.1
=====
Port/Encap          Tag
-----
1/1/3
  1-2                srrp1
=====
---snip---
```

Show and Debug Commands

This shows that there are six entries on both peers for SRRP.

If the delayed-enable parameter is configured under the subscriber-interface, in order to allow time for the MCS to fully synchronize, its setting and current expiry time can be seen as follows:

```
*A:BNG-2# show service id 1 interface sub-int-1 detail
=====
Interface Table
=====
Interface
-----
If Name       : sub-int-1
Admin State   : Up                               Oper (v4/v6)   : Up/--
Protocols     : None
IP Addr/mask  : 10.2.0.2/16
IP Addr/mask  : 10.3.0.2/16
IP Addr/mask  : 10.4.0.2/16
-----
Details
-----
Description   : (Not Specified)
If Index      : 2                               Virt. If Index : 2
Last Oper Chg: 12/15/2009 15:14:43             Global If Index: 125
Delay IfUp    : 1200 init-only
If Type       : VPRN Sub

DHCP Details
Gi-Addr       : Not configured                 Gi-Addr as Src Ip: Disabled
=====
Interface sub-int-1 group-interfaces
=====
Interface-Name      Adm      Opr (v4/v6)  Mode      Port/SapId
IP-Address          PfxState
-----
group-int-1         Up      Up/--      VPRN G* 1/1/3
```

Tool Dump Commands Related Information

The database entries can be view in more detail with the **tools dump redundancy multi-chassis** command.

```
*A:BNG-2# tools dump redundancy multi-chassis sync-database ?
The following totals are for:
  peer ip ALL, port/lag ALL, sync-tag ALL, application ALL
Valid Entries:          6
Locally Deleted Entries: 0
Locally Deleted Alarmed Entries: 0
```

The output of the “tool dump redundancy multi-chassis” command.

```
*A:BNG-2# tools dump redundancy multi-chassis srrp-sync-database
Tag Key:  sap = 1/1/3:2
Key Info: (Type/Owner)
          SMK_BASE_CONFIG / 192.0.2.1
Data Info:
  srrpId: 1      svcId: 1      svcType: VPRN
  system IP: 0xc0000201      Group interface MAC: 00:03:fa:90:f8:6a
  Gateway MAC: 00:00:5e:00:01:01
  Subscriber interface name: sub-int-1

Tag Key:  sap = 1/1/3:2
Key Info: (Type/Owner)
          SMK_BASE_CONFIG / 192.0.2.2
Data Info:
  srrpId: 1      svcId: 1      svcType: VPRN
  system IP: 0xc0000202      Group interface MAC: 00:03:fa:56:9e:96
  Gateway MAC: 00:00:5e:00:01:01
  Subscriber interface name: sub-int-1

Tag Key:  sap = 1/1/3:2
Key Info: (Type/Owner)
          SMK_GRP_IF / 192.0.2.1
Data Info:
  Group interface name: group-int-1
  Group Interface Sap (Tag/Encap): srrp1/2
  Group Interface Sap (Tag/Encap): srrp1/1
  Redundant interface name: bng-1-bng-2-vprn-1
  Redundant Interface IP/Mask:
    IP: 0xc0a80400 Mask: 0xfffffffffe
  AdminUp: Up, OperState: SRRP_STATE_BACKUP_SHUNT, InUsePriority: 200, Red-If OK:
Yes, MessageSap OK: Yes

Tag Key:  sap = 1/1/3:2
Key Info: (Type/Owner)
          SMK_GRP_IF / 192.0.2.2
Data Info:
  Group interface name: group-int-1
  Group Interface Sap (Tag/Encap): srrp1/2
  Group Interface Sap (Tag/Encap): srrp1/1
  Redundant interface name: bng-2-bng-1-vprn-1
  Redundant Interface IP/Mask:
    IP: 0xc0a80401 Mask: 0xfffffffffe
  AdminUp: Up, OperState: SRRP_STATE_MASTER, InUsePriority: 250, Red-If OK: Yes,
```

Show and Debug Commands

MessageSap OK: Yes

```
Tag Key:  sap = 1/1/3:2
Key Info: (Type/Owner)
          SMK_SUBNET_INFO / 192.0.2.1 vRtrId 2, ifIdx 2
Data Info:
  Subscriber IP Addr: 10.2.0.1      Mask: 0xffff0000      Gateway: 10.2.0.254
  Subscriber IP Addr: 10.3.0.1      Mask: 0xffff0000      Gateway: 10.3.0.254
  Subscriber IP Addr: 10.4.0.1      Mask: 0xffff0000      Gateway: 10.4.0.254

Tag Key:  sap = 1/1/3:2
Key Info: (Type/Owner)
          SMK_SUBNET_INFO / 192.0.2.2 vRtrId 2, ifIdx 2
Data Info:
  Subscriber IP Addr: 10.2.0.2      Mask: 0xffff0000      Gateway: 10.2.0.254
  Subscriber IP Addr: 10.3.0.2      Mask: 0xffff0000      Gateway: 10.3.0.254
  Subscriber IP Addr: 10.4.0.2      Mask: 0xffff0000      Gateway: 10.4.0.254
```

Also shown are the port/VLANs synchronized with their respective sync-tags.

To further troubleshoot and debug this configuration, there are commands to both dump the sync and SRRP MCS information and to dump the SRRP database:

```
tools dump redundancy multi-chassis sync-database [application {sub-mgmt|srrp}]
```

The command provides the same information as the equivalent show commands. However, the detailed version gives more information about the contents of the sync-database.

For SRRP, there are entries for the base configuration, group interface and subnet information for each of the SRRP instances. This should show corresponding entries for the local and remote peer. Specifying the **sync-tag srrp1** shows only the information for SRRP instance 1.

```
*A:BNG-2# tools dump redundancy multi-chassis sync-database application srrp sync-tag
srrp1 detail
```

If no entries are present for an application, no detail will be displayed.

FLAGS LEGEND: ld - local delete; da - delete alarm

Peer Ip 192.0.2.1

```
Application SRRP
Sap-id      Client Key
SyncTag      DLen  Flags timeStamp
deleteReason code and description
-----
1/1/3:2      SMK_BASE_CONFIG / 192.0.2.1
srrp1        88    -- -- 12/15/2009 15:52:18
0x0
1/1/3:2      SMK_BASE_CONFIG / 192.0.2.2
srrp1        88    -- -- 12/15/2009 15:51:57
0x0
1/1/3:2      SMK_GRP_IF / 192.0.2.1
```


Subscriber Redundancy for Routed-CO

```
srrp1                      260  -- -- 12/16/2009 16:10:50
0x0
1/1/3:2                    SMK_GRP_IF / 192.0.2.2
srrp1                      260  -- -- 12/16/2009 16:10:50
0x0
1/1/3:2                    SMK_SUBNET_INFO / 192.0.2.1 vRtrId 2, ifIdx 2
srrp1                      40   -- -- 12/15/2009 15:52:18
0x0
1/1/3:2                    SMK_SUBNET_INFO / 192.0.2.2 vRtrId 2, ifIdx 2
srrp1                      40   -- -- 12/15/2009 15:51:57
0x0
```

The following totals are for:

```
peer ip ALL, port/lag ALL, sync-tag ALL, application SRRP
Valid Entries:                6
Locally Deleted Entries:      0
Locally Deleted Alarmed Entries: 0
```

This same information can be seen in more detail by dumping the SRRP database. This output is for SRRP instance 1, and shows the detailed information for each peer. This should clearly reflect the configuration and current state of the SRRP instances. Again there are two entries (one for the local peer and the other for the remote peer) for the BASE_CONFIG, GRP_IF and SUBNET_INFO.

```
*A:BNG-2# tools dump redundancy multi-chassis srrp-sync-database instance 1
Tag Key:  sap = 1/1/3:2
Key Info: (Type/Owner)
          SMK_BASE_CONFIG / 192.0.2.1
Data Info:
  srrpId: 1      svcId: 1      svcType: VPRN
  system IP: 0xc0000201      Group interface MAC: 00:03:fa:90:f8:6a
  Gateway MAC: 00:00:5e:00:01:01
  Subscriber interface name: sub-int-1

Tag Key:  sap = 1/1/3:2
Key Info: (Type/Owner)
          SMK_BASE_CONFIG / 192.0.2.2
Data Info:
  srrpId: 1      svcId: 1      svcType: VPRN
  system IP: 0xc0000202      Group interface MAC: 00:03:fa:56:9e:96
  Gateway MAC: 00:00:5e:00:01:01
  Subscriber interface name: sub-int-1

Tag Key:  sap = 1/1/3:2
Key Info: (Type/Owner)
          SMK_GRP_IF / 192.0.2.1
Data Info:
  Group interface name: group-int-1
  Group Interface Sap (Tag/Encap): srrp1/2
  Group Interface Sap (Tag/Encap): srrp1/1
  Redundant interface name: bng-1-bng-2-vprn-1
  Redundant Interface IP/Mask:
    IP: 0xc0a80400 Mask: 0xffffffffe
  AdminUp: Up, OperState: SRRP_STATE_BACKUP_SHUNT, InUsePriority: 200, Red-If OK:
Yes, MessageSap OK: Yes

Tag Key:  sap = 1/1/3:2
```

Show and Debug Commands

```
Key Info: (Type/Owner)
SMK_GRP_IF / 192.0.2.2
Data Info:
  Group interface name: group-int-1
  Group Interface Sap (Tag/Encap): srrp1/2
  Group Interface Sap (Tag/Encap): srrp1/1
  Redundant interface name: bng-2-bng-1-vprn-1
  Redundant Interface IP/Mask:
    IP: 0xc0a80401 Mask: 0xffffffff
  AdminUp: Up, OperState: SRRP_STATE_MASTER, InUsePriority: 250, Red-If OK: Yes,
MessageSap OK: Yes
```

```
Tag Key: sap = 1/1/3:2
Key Info: (Type/Owner)
SMK_SUBNET_INFO / 192.0.2.1 vRtrId 2, ifIdx 2
Data Info:
  Subscriber IP Addr: 10.2.0.1      Mask: 0xffff0000      Gateway: 10.2.0.254
  Subscriber IP Addr: 10.3.0.1      Mask: 0xffff0000      Gateway: 10.3.0.254
  Subscriber IP Addr: 10.4.0.1      Mask: 0xffff0000      Gateway: 10.4.0.254
```

```
Tag Key: sap = 1/1/3:2
Key Info: (Type/Owner)
SMK_SUBNET_INFO / 192.0.2.2 vRtrId 2, ifIdx 2
Data Info:
  Subscriber IP Addr: 10.2.0.2      Mask: 0xffff0000      Gateway: 10.2.0.254
  Subscriber IP Addr: 10.3.0.2      Mask: 0xffff0000      Gateway: 10.3.0.254
  Subscriber IP Addr: 10.4.0.2      Mask: 0xffff0000      Gateway: 10.4.0.254
```

The following is an example of error messages that could be seen due to this synchronization which otherwise without it would not be available.

An event will be generated in log 99, if the IP address was removed from the redundant interface on the remote peer.

```
10 2009/12/16 16:08:50.55 UTC WARNING: MC_REDUNDANCY #2012 vprn1 SRRP/MCS: Peer Red i/
f down
"SRRP ID 1: Redundant interface bng-2-bng-1-vprn-1 on peer 192.0.2.2 / interface
group-int-1 does not match local 192.0.2.1 / interface group-int-1."
9 2009/12/16 16:08:50.54 UTC MINOR: MC_REDUNDANCY #2024 vprn1 Become Backup-Route
"SRRP instance 1 on interface group-int-1 changed state to backup - current master is
192.0.2.2"

8 2009/12/16 16:08:50.53 UTC WARNING: MC_REDUNDANCY #2012 vprn1 SRRP/MCS: Peer Red i/
f no addr
"SRRP ID 1: Redundant interface bng-2-bng-1-vprn-1 on peer 192.0.2.2 / interface
group-int-1 does not match local 192.0.2.1 / interface group-int-
```

The SRRP Instance Related Information

The SRRP instance information can be displayed by the following commands:

The master BNG shows the **master** in the operation status.

```
*A:BNG-2# show srrp
=====
SRRP Table
=====
ID          Service      Group Interface      Admin    Oper
-----
1           1             group-int-1          Up       master
-----
No. of SRRP Entries: 1
=====
*A:BNG-2#
```

The backup BNG shows a **backupShunt** in the operation status.

```
*B:BNG-1# show srrp
=====
SRRP Table
=====
ID          Service      Group Interface      Admin    Oper
-----
1           1             group-int-1          Up       backupShunt
-----
...
=====
*B:BNG-1#
```

To check detailed information:

```
*A:BNG-2# show srrp 1 detail
=====
SRRP Instance 1
=====
Description          : (Not Specified)
Admin State           : Up                Oper State           : master
System IP             : 192.0.2.2
Service ID            : VPRN 1
Group If              : group-int-1        MAC Address          : 00:03:fa:56:9e:96
Grp If Description:N/A
Grp If Admin State    : Up                Grp If Oper State: Up
Subscriber If         : sub-int-1
Sub If Admin State    : Up                Sub If Oper State: Up
Address               : 10.2.0.2/16        Gateway IP           : 10.2.0.254
Address               : 10.3.0.2/16        Gateway IP           : 10.3.0.254
Address               : 10.4.0.2/16        Gateway IP           : 10.4.0.254
Redundant If          : bng-2-bng-1-vprn-1
Red If Admin State    : Up                Red If Oper State: Up
Address               : 192.168.4.1/31
Red Spoke-sdp         : 21:1
```

Show and Debug Commands

```
Msg Path SAP      : 1/1/3:2
Admin Gateway MAC :                               Oper Gateway MAC : 00:00:5e:00:01:01
Config Priority   : 250                           In-use Priority    : 250
Master Priority    : 250
Keep-alive Interval : 1 deci-seconds           Master Since      : 12/16/2009 10:42:31
VRRP Policy 1     : None                         VRRP Policy 2      : None
-----
BFD interface
-----
Service ID        : 2
Interface Name     : bfd-1
Src IP            : 10.1.1.0
Dst IP            : 10.1.1.1
Session Oper State : connected
-----
Statistics
-----
Become Master      : 1                           Master Changes    : 1
Become Bkup Routing : 0                         Become Bkup Shunt : 1
Become Non-Master  : 0
Adv Sent           : 197854                      Adv Received      : 685948
Pri 0 Pkts Sent    : 0                           Pri 0 Pkts Rcvd   : 0
Preempt Events     : 1                           Preempted Events  : 0
Mesg Intvl Discards : 0                         Mesg Intvl Errors : 0
```

If this output is shown on the SRRP backup, an extra line appears after the keep-alive-interval showing the interval during which the receipt of no SRRP messages would cause the master to be considered down, together with the instantaneous time to this interval expiring.

```
Master Down Interval: 0.300 sec (Expires in 0.250 sec)
```

Monitoring the Traffic on Redundant Interface

The Oper State reflects both the state of the SRRP instance and its action with respect to the redundant interface. Specifically, when the peer is SRRP master the operational state is always master – traffic is sent directly to the subscriber over its associated SAP. If the peer is SRRP backup and the redundant interface is Up then the Oper State will be backupShunt, if the redundant interface is down then the Oper State is **backupRouting**. In the **backupShunt** state, traffic to the subscriber is shunted (for example, forwarded) across the redundant interface to the peer (to the master) in order to be forwarded to the subscriber.

When in the **backupRouting** state, the SRRP instance is in backup but the redundant interface is down, so the traffic is forwarded directly to the subscriber through its associated SAP.

A useful command to see the traffic on the redundant interface is:

```
*A:BNG-2# monitor service id 1 sdp 21:1 rate interval 11 repeat 3
=====
Monitor statistics for Service 1 SDP binding 21:1
=====
-----
At time t = 0 sec (Base Statistics)
-----
I. Fwd. Pkts.   : 19517656           I. Dro. Pkts.   : 13
E. Fwd. Pkts.   : 14                 E. Fwd. Octets  : 1090
-----
At time t = 11 sec (Mode: Rate)
-----
I. Fwd. Pkts.   : 1000               I. Dro. Pkts.   : 0
E. Fwd. Pkts.   : 0                 E. Fwd. Octets  : 0
-----
---snip---
```

BFD-Related Information

To check the BFD session state.

```
*A:BNG-2# show router bfd session
=====
BFD Session
=====
Interface          State          Tx Intvl  Rx Intvl  Mult
Remote Address     Protocol      Tx Pkts   Rx Pkts
-----
bfd-1              Up (3)         100       100       3
10.1.1.1           srrp           875616    874287
-----
No. of BFD sessions: 1
=====
*A:BNG-2#
```

Show and Debug Commands

To check the MAC addresses of the SRRP, this is can be done by checking the MACs table in the BSAN.

```
*A:dslam# show service fdb-mac
=====
Service Forwarding Database
=====
ServId      MAC                Source-Identifier    Type/Age  Last Change
-----
1           00:00:00:00:00:01  sap:1/1/4:1         L/0       12/16/2009 17:35:29
1           00:00:5e:00:01:01  sap:1/1/1:1         L/0       12/16/2009 17:35:29
2           00:00:5e:00:01:01  sap:1/1/1:2         L/0       12/16/2009 16:45:17
3           00:03:fa:56:9e:96  sap:1/1/1:3         L/0       12/16/2009 16:04:00
3           00:03:fa:90:f8:6a  sap:1/1/2:3         L/0       12/16/2009 16:04:05
-----
No. of Entries: 5
=====
*A:dslam#
```

The first entry shows the source MAC address of SRRP 1 which is learned through the SRRP messages received from the SRRP master for that instance. The next two entries relate to the subscriber traffic to and from sub1. Note that the 7750/7710 SR source MAC address is that of the SRRP instance.

The last two entries are the source MAC address BFD received from each BNG.

SRRP Debug Commands

There are debug command to show the SRRP protocol events and packets.

```
*A:BNG-2# debug router 1 srrp events
*A:BNG-2# debug router 1 srrp packets
```

To display the debugging information, a dedicated log should be created:

```
*A:BNG-2# configure log
      log-id 1
      from debug-trace
      to session
      exit
```

The following output displays a sample SRRP debug log:

```
109 2009/12/16 16:21:57.87 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 SRRP
"SRRP: Sending Pkt

Version (SRRP)      : 8
Type                : Advertisement (1)
Vr Id               : 1
Priority             : 250
Count Ip Addresses  : 3
Advertise Interval  : 10 centi-second
Checksum            : 0x25ef

Raw Pkt:

81 00 fa 00 00 00 00 01 00 00 5e 00 01 01 00 0a
00 03 25 ef "
```

Example:

Change the state of BNG-1 by receiving a higher SRRP priority from BNG-2 if the SRRP priority in BNG-1 is higher than the configured one in BNG-2.

In the following output, this peer is the SRRP master for instance one 1 and is sending SRRP messages, it then receives an SRRP message with a higher priority (254) from its peer. This causes an event **Become Pending-Backup Shunt** where it prepares to transition to the backup state. To achieve this, it sends an SRRP message with priority 0. If it continues to receive SRRP messages (with priority 254) from its peer, then passes into the backup state with the event **Become Backup Shunt**.

```
646 2009/12/16 18:06:47.77 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 SRRP
"SRRP: Sending Pkt

Version (SRRP)      : 8
Type                : Advertisement (1)
Vr Id               : 1
Priority             : 250
Count Ip Addresses  : 3
```

Show and Debug Commands

```
Advertise Interval : 10 centi-second
Checksum           : 0x25ef
```

Raw Pkt:

```
81 00 fa 00 00 00 00 01 00 00 5e 00 01 01 00 0a
00 03 25 ef "
```

```
647 2009/12/16 18:06:47.77 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 SRRP
"SRRP: Receiving Pkt
```

```
Version (SRRP)      : 8
Type                : Advertisement (1)
Vr Id               : 1
Priority             : 254
Count Ip Addresses  : 3
Advertise Interval  : 10 centi-second
Checksum            : 0x21ee
```

Raw Pkt:

```
81 01 fe 00 00 00 00 01 00 00 5e 00 01 01 00 0a
00 03 21 ee "
```

```
648 2009/12/16 18:06:47.77 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 SRRP
"SRRP: Event
Become Pending-Backup Shunt: vRtrId 2, ifIdx 3, IPv4 vr_id 1, Master IP 192.0.2.
1"
```

```
649 2009/12/16 18:06:47.78 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 SRRP
"SRRP: Sending Pkt
```

```
Version (SRRP)      : 8
Type                : Advertisement (1)
Vr Id               : 1
Priority             : 0
Count Ip Addresses  : 3
Advertise Interval  : 10 centi-second
Checksum            : 0x1ff0
```

Raw Pkt:

```
81 00 00 00 00 00 00 01 00 00 5e 00 01 01 00 0a
00 03 1f f0 "
```

```
650 2009/12/16 18:06:47.78 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 SRRP
"SRRP: Receiving Pkt
```

```
Version (SRRP)      : 8
Type                : Advertisement (1)
Vr Id               : 1
Priority             : 254
Count Ip Addresses  : 3
Advertise Interval  : 10 centi-second
Checksum            : 0x21ef
```


Raw Pkt:

```
81 00 fe 00 00 00 00 01 00 00 5e 00 01 01 00 0a
00 03 21 ef "
```

```
651 2009/12/16 18:06:47.78 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 SRRP
"SRRP: Event
Become Backup Shunt: vRtrId 2, ifIdx 3, IPv4 vr_id 1, Master IP 192.0.2.1"
```

```
652 2009/12/16 18:06:47.78 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn1 SRRP
"SRRP: Receiving Pkt
```

```
Version (SRRP)      : 8
Type                : Advertisement (1)
Vr Id               : 1
Priority             : 254
Count Ip Addresses  : 3
Advertise Interval  : 10 centi-second
Checksum            : 0x21ef
```

Raw Pkt:

```
81 00 fe 00 00 00 00 01 00 00 5e 00 01 01 00 0a
00 03 21 ef "
```

The output for the SRRP message captured with wireshark .

No.	Time	Source	Destination	Protocol	Info
1	0.000000	192.0.2.2	224.0.0.18	VRRP	Announcement (v8)

```

Frame 1 (68 bytes on wire, 68 bytes captured)
Ethernet II, Src: IETF-VRRP-virtual-router-VRID_01 (00:00:5e:00:01:01), Dst:
IPv4mcast_00:00:12 (01:00:5e:00:00:12)
  Destination: IPv4mcast_00:00:12 (01:00:5e:00:00:12)
  Address: IPv4mcast_00:00:12 (01:00:5e:00:00:12)
  .... 1 .... = IG bit: Group address (multicast/broadcast)
  .... 0. .... = LG bit: Globally unique address (factory
default)
  Source: IETF-VRRP-virtual-router-VRID_01 (00:00:5e:00:01:01)
  Address: IETF-VRRP-virtual-router-VRID_01 (00:00:5e:00:01:01)
  .... 0 .... = IG bit: Individual address (unicast)
  .... 0. .... = LG bit: Globally unique address (factory
default)
  Type: 802.1Q Virtual LAN (0x8100)
802.1Q Virtual LAN, PRI: 0, CFI: 0, ID: 2
000. .... = Priority: 0
...0 .... = CFI: 0
.... 0000 0000 0010 = ID: 2
Type: 802.1Q Virtual LAN (0x8100)
802.1Q Virtual LAN, PRI: 0, CFI: 0, ID: 2
000. .... = Priority: 0
...0 .... = CFI: 0
.... 0000 0000 0010 = ID: 2

```

Show and Debug Commands

```
Type: IP (0x0800)
Trailer: 000066BD5035
Internet Protocol, Src: 192.0.2.2 (192.0.2.2), Dst: 224.0.0.18 (224.0.0.18)
Version: 4
Header length: 20 bytes
Differentiated Services Field: 0xc0 (DSCP 0x30: Class Selector 6; ECN: 0x00)
Total Length: 40
Identification: 0x0139 (313)
Flags: 0x00
Fragment offset: 0
Time to live: 255
Protocol: VRRP (0x70)
Header checksum: 0x1758 [correct]
    [Good: True]
    [Bad : False]
Source: 192.0.2.2 (192.0.2.2)
Destination: 224.0.0.18 (224.0.0.18)
Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol
Version 8, Packet type 1 (Advertisement)
    1000 .... = VRRP protocol version: 8
    .... 0001 = VRRP packet type: Advertisement (1)
Virtual Rtr ID: 0
Priority: 250 (Non-default backup priority)
Count IP Addrs: 0
Auth Type: No Authentication (0)
Adver Int: 0
Checksum: 0x0001 [correct]
```

SRRP Traffic Marking

The SRRP messages are sent by default with DSCP of **nc1** and with 802.1p bits of **0**.

```
802.1Q Virtual LAN, PRI: 0, CFI: 0, ID: 100
000. .... = Priority: 0
...0.... = CFI: 0
.... 0000 0110 0100 = ID: 100
Type: 802.1Q Virtual LAN (0x8100)

Internet Protocol, Src: 10.10.10.3 (10.10.10.3), Dst: 224.0.0.18 (224.0.0.18)
Version: 4
Header length: 20 bytes
Differentiated Services Field: 0xc0 (DSCP 0x30: Class Selector 6; ECN: 0x00)
```

```
*A:BNG-2# show qos dscp-table
```

```
=====
DSCP Mapping
=====
DSCP Name      DSCP Value      TOS (bin)      TOS (hex)
-----
nc1             48               1100 0000      C0
```

Where DSCP 0x30=48 (DSCP value). This can be changed to EF, for example, using the following command:

```
*A:BNG-2# configure service vprn 1 sgt-qos application srrp dscp ef
```

Conclusion

This section provides configuration and troubleshooting commands for SRRP with static (IP-MAC) host in a Layer 3 Routed-CO (IES/VPNN subscriber interface) context.

WiFi Aggregation and Offload — Basic Open SSID

In This Chapter

This section provides information about WiFi Aggregation and Offload — Basic Open SSID.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 1354](#)
- [Overview on page 1355](#)
- [Configuration on page 1359](#)
- [Conclusion on page 1377](#)

Applicability

This chapter is applicable to all 7750 SR platforms that function as Wireless Local Area Network gateways (WLAN-GWs). The configuration uses soft-Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE) as the access technology, which requires one or more WLAN-IOMs (IOM3-XP and 2 x MS-ISAs), and was tested using SR OS release 12.0.R5.

Overview

WiFi Aggregation and Offload functionality for the 7750 SR is supported on SR OS 10.0.R3 or later. The functionality includes a RADIUS proxy server with a RADIUS proxy cache and support for soft-GRE tunnels.

WLAN-GW subscribers are implemented using Enhanced Subscriber Management (ESM) on the Control Processing Module (CPM), to benefit from the extensive ESM features available on the 7750 SR platform. Many different WiFi Offload configurations are possible, with the two most versatile configurations being open and secure Service Set Identifier (SSID).

This configuration should be used as a starting point for operators who need to offer an open SSID, where any client can connect to an Access Point (AP) and obtain an IP address without authentication. In most cases, operators want users to go through an authentication process before allowing full Internet access using the open SSID; therefore, this configuration also includes a web portal.

IP address assignment and Internet connectivity can be achieved using various methods in SR OS. In this configuration, a local DHCP server provides IP addresses to the User Equipment (UE) and routing to the Internet is performed using Global Routing Table (GRT) leaking.

Several considerations typically affect the choice of a WiFi Offload solution. Will access be free or paid? Will equipment be preconfigured, or will users bring their own WiFi device? When there is no pre-existing subscription, an open SSID is the most obvious solution. To provide a paywall or to have the user acknowledge certain terms of use due to legal reasons, a web portal may also be required.

When a web portal is implemented, users who connect to the open SSID which are not yet authenticated have all their web traffic redirected to the web portal landing page. This is performed using an http-redirect filter applied to the initial (limited) Service Level Agreement (SLA) profile assigned to the UE. Typically, the operating system of the UE will detect the presence of the web portal and automatically open the login page for the user. When the user logs in, the web portal sends a RADIUS Change of Authorization (CoA) request to the WLAN-GW, changing the SLA profile to one that does not contain an http-redirect filter.

Besides authentication, a major consideration is the method used to achieve Internet connectivity. Will the users require public addresses or are private addresses sufficient? In case few public IP addresses are available, private IP addresses can be assigned to UEs and the WLAN-GW can perform a Network Address Translation (NAT) function. If public routable IP addresses can be made available to all UEs, traffic from the UEs can be routed by the WLAN-GW to the Internet.

When a UE connects to an open SSID (as shown in Figure 1), typically the UE attempts to obtain an IP address using Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP). The WLAN-GW can serve as a DHCP relay or proxy and may obtain the IP address from an external source, or use a local DHCP server function. A DHCP Discover or Request packet from a UE will trigger a form of authentication where the WLAN-GW requests information about the UE, such as SLA profile or

DHCP local pool name. This authentication is separate from the web portal authentication and occurs immediately when a UE connects.

In summary:

- DHCP Discover triggering RADIUS authentication
- DHCP completes and UE has SLA profile with limited access
- UE logs into a web portal
- Successful login causes the portal to send a RADIUS CoA which assigns an SLA profile with full access

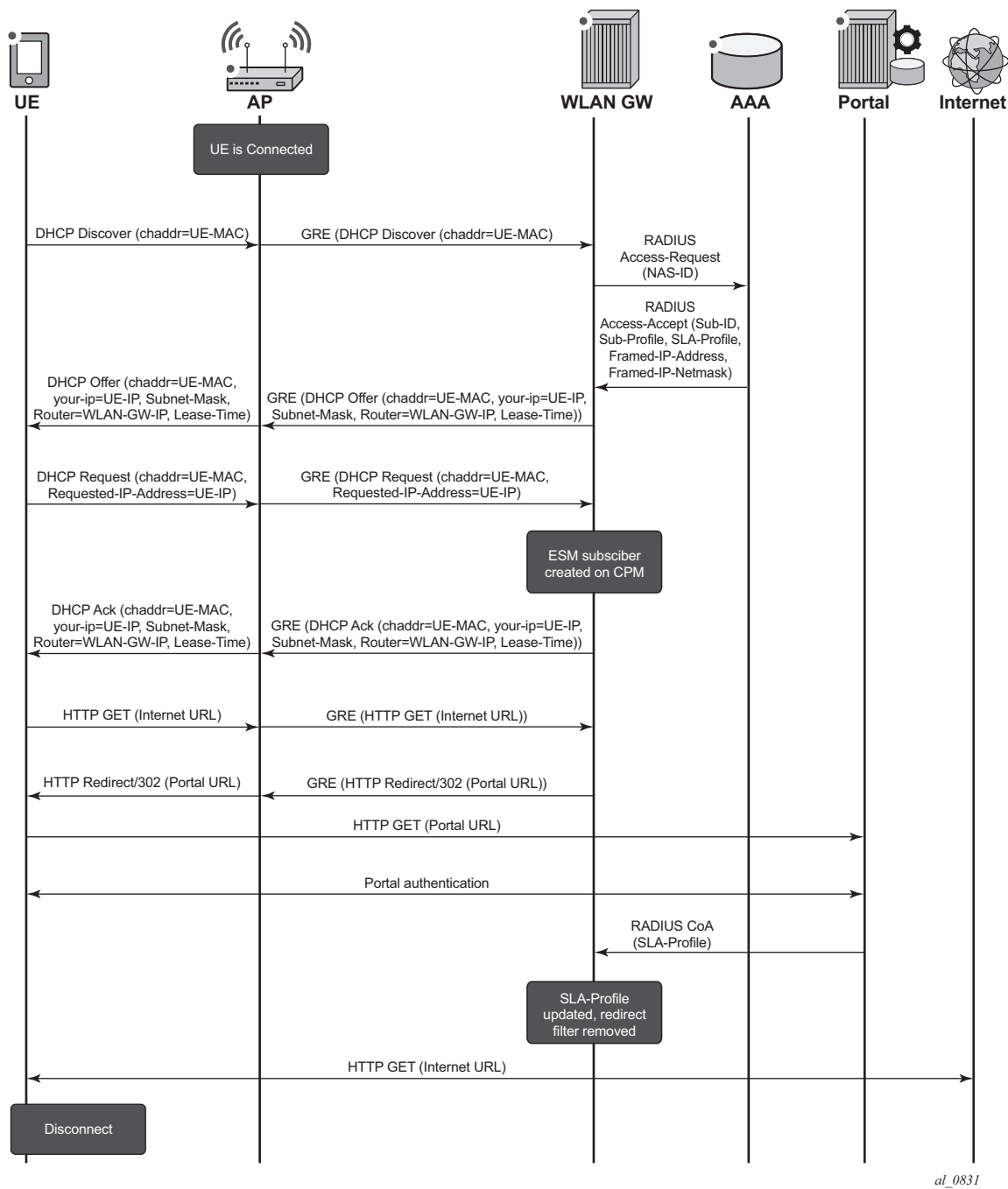


Figure 199: Call Flow for Open SSID

The SR OS is flexible in allowing the operator to separate the various WiFi Offload functions between different routing instances. All functions can be configured in the same routing instance, or as shown in Figure 2, the connectivity to the APs (and soft-GRE tunnels) can be provided in one Virtual Private Routed Network (VPRN), the users can be instantiated in another VPRN, and Authentication, Authorization and Accounting (AAA) access can be provided in yet another routing instance (in this case, the Base router). This clear separation of functions can enhance security; for example, by separating user traffic from authentication traffic.

Configuration

The WiFi offload scenario shown in Figure 2 has following characteristics:

- Open SSID with web portal authentication
- Local breakout to Internet using GRT leaking, routing through Base routing instance
- Same private IP address assigned to all UEs, with L2-aware NAT
- AP access in VPRN 1000
- UEs terminated in VPRN 2005
- Local DHCP server assigning public IP addresses

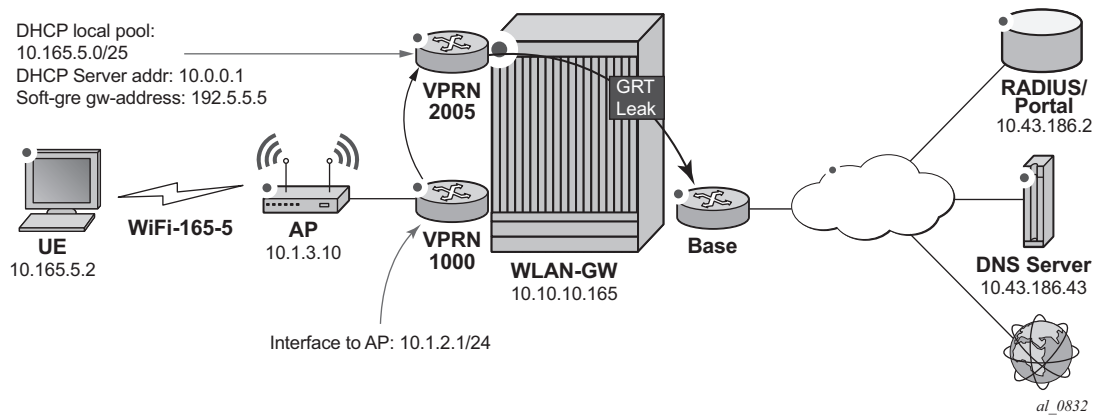


Figure 200: WiFi Offload Scenario with Open SSID and Local DHCP Server

WLAN-GW

Note that the uplink interface, Interior Gateway Protocol (IGP), and system configuration is outside the scope of this document.

The following card and Media Dependent Adapter (MDA) configuration shows only the WLAN-Input/Output Module (IOM). An IOM3-XP-B containing two Multi-Service Integrated Service Adapter (MS-ISA) cards provides the WLAN-GW functionality. The MDA type for the ISA cards is isa-bb, the same type that is used for NAT.

```
*A:WLAN-GW# /configure card 2
*A:WLAN-GW>config>card# info
```

```
-----
card-type iom3-xp-b
mda 1
    mda-type isa-bb
    no shutdown
exit
mda 2
    mda-type isa-bb
    no shutdown
exit
no shutdown
-----
```

The following ISA configuration defines a wlan-gw-group referencing the IOM in slot two which hosts the two MS-ISA cards and providing the WLAN-GW functions.

```
A:WLAN-GW# /configure isa
A:WLAN-GW>config>isa# info
```

```
-----
wlan-gw-group 1 create
    active-iom-limit 1
    iom 2
    no shutdown
exit
-----
```

The following is a RADIUS server configuration, where the secret must match the secret configured on the external RADIUS server. The accept-coa option must be configured to allow the change of SLA profile by the web portal using a CoA request.

```
*A:WLAN-GW# /configure router radius-server
*A:WLAN-GW>config>router>radius-server# info
```

```
-----
server "Server2" address 10.43.186.2 secret "zmLYVgt8UOLypJamceNSSHDWbZproq7Y"
hash2 create
    accept-coa
exit
-----
```

The following AAA configuration contains a RADIUS server policy used in the authentication policy. The source address must match the IP address configured for this client on the RADIUS server.

```
*A:WLAN-GW# /configure aaa
*A:WLAN-GW>config>aaa# info
-----
radius-server-policy "RS_5" create
  servers
    router "Base"
    source-address 10.10.10.165
    server 1 name "Server2"
  exit
exit
-----
```

The following policy configuration is used for exporting routes so that they are reachable by the public network. These policies are used for exporting UE routes in subsequent configuration sections.

```
*A:WLAN-GW# /configure router policy-options
*A:WLAN-GW>config>router>policy-options# info
-----
prefix-list "WiFi-clients"
  prefix 10.165.0.0/16 longer
exit
policy-statement "WiFi-clients"
  entry 10
    from
      prefix-list "WiFi-clients"
    exit
    action accept
    exit
  exit
exit
-----
```

The uplink network configuration is outside the scope of this document. However, note that the IGP (here ISIS) must be aware of the UE addresses so that they are accessible from the Internet.

```
*A:WLAN-GW# /configure router isis
*A:WLAN-GW>config>router>isis# info
-----
export "WiFi-clients"
-----
```

The following IP filter redirects all HTTP traffic to the web portal. The filter should also allow DNS and potentially other traffic, so the entry that allows TCP port 80 traffic to the web portal address must be placed before the entry that redirects all traffic to that portal; otherwise, there will be a redirect loop.

The HTTP redirect URL also includes a parameter that provides the MAC address of the UE to the web portal. In this configuration, either \$MAC or \$SUB can be used since both variables contain the MAC address of the UE. The web portal can reply with a CoA request specifying this particular UE MAC as the Subscriber ID after successful login. The URL also returns the IP address of the WLAN-GW to the web portal, so that the portal knows which WLAN-GW to send the CoA request to.

```
*A:WLAN-GW# /configure filter
*A:WLAN-GW>config>filter# info
-----
ip-filter 2005 create
  default-action forward
  entry 70 create
    match protocol udp
    dst-port eq 53
  exit
  action forward
exit
entry 80 create
  match protocol icmp
  exit
  action forward
exit
entry 90 create
  match protocol tcp
  dst-ip 10.43.186.2/32
  dst-port eq 80
  exit
  action forward
exit
entry 100 create
  match protocol tcp
  dst-port eq 80
  exit
  action http-redirect "http://portal2.3ls.net/portal-no-
login.php?gw=10.10.10.165&mac=$SUB"
  exit
exit
```

The following is a subscriber management configuration, with the RADIUS authentication policy used to authenticate DHCP requests, including the accept-authorization-change option to allow for SLA profile change after portal authentication. This DHCP authentication request also sends the NAS ID attribute that allows the RADIUS server to match on the configuration for this particular SSID. All UEs will be authenticated with their MAC address as user name, and **alcatel** as their password (any DHCP request will result in a successful authentication).

Two SLA profiles are required: profile SLAP_5_portal is initially used for each UE and refers to the portal redirect filter, while profile SLAP is applied using a CoA request after the user successfully authenticates on the web portal. A subscriber identity policy is also required.

```

configure subscriber-mgmt
    authentication-policy "WiFi-165-5-auth-policy" create
        password alcatel
        accept-authorization-change
        include-radius-attribute
            nas-identifier
        exit
        radius-server-policy "RS_5"
    exit
    sla-profile "SLAP" create
    exit
    sla-profile "SLAP_5_portal" create
        ingress
            ip-filter 2005
        exit
    exit
    sub-profile "SUBP" create
    exit
    sub-ident-policy "SIP" create
        sub-profile-map
            use-direct-map-as-default
        exit
        sla-profile-map
            use-direct-map-as-default
        exit
    exit
exit

```

The following VPRN 1000 configuration contains the interface to the AP, and has GRT lookup with export-grt configured to allow APs to be managed from the Base routing instance.

```

*A:WLAN-GW# /configure service vprn 1000
*A:WLAN-GW>config>service>vprn# info
-----
    route-distinguisher 65400:1000
    interface "toAP3" create
        address 10.1.3.1/24
        sap 1/1/10 create
        exit
    exit
    grt-lookup
        enable-grt
            static-route 0.0.0.0/0 grt
        exit
        export-grt "WiFi-APs"
    exit
    no shutdown
-----

```

VPRN 2005 is used for UE termination and contains:

- A local DHCP server with a single pool of addresses that are assigned to UEs.
- A loopback interface used by the DHCP server.

- A subscriber interface and group interface of type **wlangw** (called softgre prior to release 12.0).
- Subscriber parameters.
- The authentication policy, which will run each time a UE requests a DHCP address.
- The host-connectivity-verify function, which periodically checks the presence of UEs and quickly removes disconnected UEs even before their DHCP lease expires; the WLAN-GW has no other way of knowing when a UE has disconnected from the AP.
- The wlan-gw CLI-node (called soft-gre prior to release 12.0), including the wlan-gw GRE tunnel end-point address, and the routing instance where AP traffic is terminated, the ISA WLAN-GW group, and mobility parameters, which allow the UE state to be kept if the UE moves between two APs broadcasting the same SSID.
- GRT lookup with export-grt configured to allow UE traffic to be routed to the Internet.

```
*A:WLAN-GW# /configure service vprn 2005
*A:WLAN-GW>config>service>vprn# info
-----
description "WiFi-165-5 Open SSID"
dhcp
    local-dhcp-server "local_dhcp_2005" create
        use-pool-from-client
        pool "pool1" create
            max-lease-time hrs 1
            options
                dns-server 10.43.186.43
            exit
        subnet 10.165.5.0/25 create
            options
                subnet-mask 255.255.255.128
                default-router 10.165.5.1
            exit
        address-range 10.165.5.2 10.165.5.99
    exit
    exit
    no shutdown
exit
route-distinguisher 65400:2005
interface "dhcp-server" create
    address 10.0.0.1/24
    local-dhcp-server "local_dhcp_2005"
    loopback
exit
subscriber-interface "SI5" create
    address 10.165.5.1/24
    group-interface "GI5" wlangw create
        sap-parameters
            sub-sla-mgmt
                def-sla-profile "SLAP_5_portal"
                def-sub-profile "SUBP"
                sub-ident-policy "SIP"
            exit
        exit
    exit
    dhcp
```



```

    option
        action replace
        circuit-id
        no remote-id
        vendor-specific-option
            pool-name
        exit
    exit
    server 10.0.0.1
    trusted
    lease-populate 10000
    gi-address 10.165.5.1
    no shutdown
exit
authentication-policy "WiFi-165-5-auth-policy"
host-connectivity-verify interval 5 action remove
wlan-gw
    gw-address 192.5.5.5
    mobility
        trigger data iapp
    exit
    router 1000
    wlan-gw-group 1
    no shutdown
exit
exit
grt-lookup
    enable-grt
    exit
    export-grt "WiFi-clients"
exit
no shutdown

```

Freeradius

This simple default configuration section matches on any host. During the DHCP authentication phase, RADIUS returns the DHCP pool name **pool1** informing the WLAN-GW DHCP server which pool to assign the UE IP address from:

```

/etc/freeradius/users
DEFAULT      Auth-Type := Local, User-Password := "alcatel", user-name=~"
              Alc-Subsc-ID-Str = "%{User-Name}",
              Framed-Pool = "pool1",

```

In `/etc/freeradius/clients.conf`, the secret must match the secret configured in the WLAN-GW RADIUS server configuration.

```

client 10.10.10.165 {
    secret      = alcatel
    shortname   = WLAN-GW
}

```

The RADIUS CoA sent during successful portal login allows this UE full access, by applying SLA profile SLAP which does not have an http-redirect filter.

```
echo "ALC-Subsc-Id-Str='68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7',ALC-Subsc-Prof-Str='SUBP_5',ALC-SLA-Prof-Str='.SLAP',Alc-Primary-Dns = '10.43.186.43'" | /usr/bin/radclient -x -r 1 -t 2 '10.10.10.165' coa 'alcatel'
```

Access Points

At a minimum, the following must be configured on the Access Point:

- IP address 10.1.3.10/24
- Default route to 10.1.3.1
- Open SSID WiFi-165-5 mapped to VLAN 50
- Soft-GRE tunnel with destination 192.5.5.5, with VLAN 50 mapped to this tunnel

Show Commands

The following show commands reflect the status of the router after the UE has connected and obtained an IP address using DHCP.

The following output displays the UEs presently connected.

```
*A:WLAN-GW# show subscriber-mgmt wlan-gw ue
=====
User Equipments
=====
MAC address           : 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7
-----
VLAN Q-tag            : 50
MPLS label             : (Not Specified)
Tunnel router          : 1000
Tunnel remote IP address : 10.1.3.10
Tunnel local IP address  : 192.5.5.5
Retail service         : N/A
SSID                   : (Not Specified)
Previous Access Point IP : (Not Specified)
IMSI                   : (Not Specified)
Last move time         : 2014/09/22 10:47:58
-----
No. of UE: 1
=====
```

The DHCP lease information indicates that the address was assigned by the local DHCP server.

```
*A:WLAN-GW# show service id 2005 dhcp lease-state
=====
DHCP lease state table, service 2005
=====
IP Address      Mac Address      Sap/Sdp Id      Remaining Lease   MC
                  LeaseTime   Origin   Stdbby
-----
10.165.5.2      68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7 [2/1/nat-out-ip:20* 00h59m27s  DHCP
-----
Number of lease states : 1
=====
* indicates that the corresponding row element may have been truncated.
```

DHCP statistics can be displayed using following command.

```
*A:WLAN-GW# show service id 2005 dhcp statistics
=====
DHCP Global Statistics, service 2005
=====
Rx Packets                : 2
Tx Packets                : 2
Rx Malformed Packets      : 0
Rx Untrusted Packets      : 0
Client Packets Discarded  : 0
Client Packets Relayed    : 2
Client Packets Snooped     : 0
Client Packets Proxied (RADIUS) : 0
Client Packets Proxied (User-Db) : 0
Client Packets Proxied (Lease-Split) : 0
Server Packets Discarded  : 0
Server Packets Relayed    : 2
Server Packets Snooped     : 0
DHCP RELEASEs Spoofed     : 0
DHCP FORCERENEWs Spoofed  : 0
=====
```

The route table for the routing instance where UEs are terminated shows an entry for the UE.

```
*A:WLAN-GW# show router 2005 route-table
=====
Route Table (Service: 2005)
=====
Dest Prefix[Flags]      Type   Proto   Age      Pref
Next Hop[Interface Name] Metric
-----
10.0.0.0/24             Local  Local   00h32m12s  0
    dhcp-server          0
10.165.5.0/24           Local  Local   00h27m20s  0
    SI5                  0
10.165.5.2/32           Remote Sub Mgmt 00h00m33s  0
    [GI5]                0
-----
No. of Routes: 3
Flags: n = Number of times nexthop is repeated
```

Show Commands

```
B = BGP backup route available
L = LFA nexthop available
S = Sticky ECMP requested
```

=====

The active subscribers view shows the initial limited SLA profile SLAP_5_portal before the user has logged in to the portal.

```
*A:WLAN-GW>config>service>vprn# show service active-subscribers
=====
Active Subscribers
=====
-----
Subscriber 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7 (SUBP)
-----
-----
(1) SLA Profile Instance sap:[2/1/nat-out-ip:2049.3] - sla:SLAP_5_portal
-----
IP Address
-----
MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin
-----
10.165.5.2
68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7 N/A      DHCP
-----
-----
Number of active subscribers : 1
-----
```

The following output shows the active subscribers view after the user has logged in and the SLA profile has been updated with the unrestricted SLA profile SLAP.

```
*A:WLAN-GW# show service active-subscribers
=====
Active Subscribers
=====
-----
Subscriber 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7 (SUBP_5)
-----
-----
(1) SLA Profile Instance sap:[2/1/nat-out-ip:2049.3] - sla:SLAP
-----
IP Address
-----
MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin
-----
10.165.5.2
68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7 N/A      DHCP
-----
-----
Number of active subscribers : 1
-----
```

The following output shows the RADIUS statistics for the DHCP authentication.

```
*A:WLAN-GW# show aaa radius-server-policy "RS_5" statistics
```

```

=====
RADIUS server policy "RS_5" statistics
=====
Tx transaction requests           : 1
Rx transaction responses          : 1
Transaction requests timed out   : 0
Transaction requests send failed : 0
Packet retries                   : 0
Transaction requests send rejected : 0
Authentication requests failed   : 0
Accounting requests failed       : 0
Ratio of access-reject over auth responses : 0%
Transaction success ratio        : 100%
Transaction failure ratio        : 0%
Statistics last reset at         : n/a

Server 1 "Server2" address 10.43.186.2 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
-----
Tx request packets                : 1
Rx response packets               : 1
Request packets timed out         : 0
Request packets send failed       : 0
Request packets send failed (overload) : 0
Request packets waiting for reply : 0
Response packets with invalid authenticator : 0
Response packets with invalid msg authenticator : 0
Authentication packets failed     : 0
Accounting packets failed         : 0
Avg auth response delay (10 100 1K 10K) in ms : 7.24 7.24 7.24 7.24
Avg acct response delay (10 100 1K 10K) in ms : n/a
Statistics last reset at          : n/a

=====

```

The following output shows the CoA statistics after portal authentication.

```

*A:WLAN-GW# show subscriber-mgmt authentication coa-statistics
=====
Radius Notify Statistics      Change-Of-Authorization      Disconnect-Messages
=====
Requests Received            1                          0
Requests Accepted            1                          0
Requests Rejected            0                          0
Requests Dropped              0                          0
  No Auth Policy found        0                          0
  Invalid message              0                          0
  Out of resources             0                          0
  Authentication failure       0                          0
=====

```

Debug

The following is a complete debug of a UE connecting and logging in to the portal. Shortly after logging in, the UE disconnects from the SSID and the subscriber is removed by host-connectivity-verify.

The following debug configuration applies:

```
debug
  router "Base"
    radius
      packet-type authentication accounting coa
      detail-level medium
    exit
  exit
  router "2005"
    ip
      dhcp
        detail-level medium
        mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
      exit
    exit
    local-dhcp-server "local_dhcp_2005"
      detail-level medium
      mode dropped-only
    exit
  exit
  service
    id 2005
      host-connectivity-verify
        mac 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7
      exit
    exit
  exit
exit
```

The WLAN-GW is notified of the UE after receiving the first DHCP packet.

```
1 2014/09/22 10:47:58.46 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn2005 PIP
"PIP: DHCP
instance 5 (2005), interface index 3 (GI5),
  received DHCP Boot Request on Interface GI5 (2/1/nat-out-ip:2049.3) Port 67

H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb)  H/W Address Length: 6
ciaddr: 0.0.0.0           yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
siaddr: 0.0.0.0           giaddr: 0.0.0.0
chaddr: 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7  xid: 0x8c0fc642

DHCP options:
[53] Message type: Discover
[61] Client id: (hex) 01 68 7f 74 8b 3d d7
[50] Requested IP addr: 10.165.5.2
[12] Host name: W81VM
[60] Class id: MSFT 5.0
[55] Param request list: len = 13
```

```

        1 Subnet mask
       15 Domain name
         3 Router
         6 Domain name server
       44 NETBIOS name server
       46 NETBIOS type
       47 NETBIOS scope
       31 Router discovery
       33 Static route
      121 Unknown option
      249 Unknown option
      252 Unknown option
        43 Vendor specific
[255] End
"

```

DHCP triggers sending the RADIUS Access-Request.

```

2 2014/09/22 10:47:58.48 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base RADIUS
"RADIUS: Transmit
  Access-Request(1) 10.43.186.2:1812 id 1 len 79 vrid 1 pol RS_5
    USER NAME [1] 17 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7
    PASSWORD [2] 16 IyDg9t17sGTbfR/6h0Bs1U
    NAS IP ADDRESS [4] 4 10.10.10.165
    NAS IDENTIFIER [32] 14 WLAN-GW
"

```

The UE authentication request is always accepted and the Access-Accept message contains the required subscriber management and IP parameters, in this case, at least the subscriber ID string as well as the pool name to be used by the local DHCP server.

```

3 2014/09/22 10:47:58.50 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base RADIUS
"RADIUS: Receive
  Access-Accept(2) id 1 len 52 from 10.43.186.2:1812 vrid 1 pol RS_5
    VSA [26] 19 Alcatel(6527)
    SUBSC ID STR [11] 17 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7
    FRAMED POOL [88] 5 pool1
"

```

The DHCP request is transmitted to the local DHCP server, which assigns the IP address to the UE.

```

4 2014/09/22 10:47:58.50 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn2005 PIP
"PIP: DHCP
instance 5 (2005),
  transmitted DHCP Boot Request to 10.0.0.1 Port 67

  H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb)  H/W Address Length: 6
  ciaddr: 0.0.0.0           yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
  siaddr: 0.0.0.0           giaddr: 10.165.5.1
  chaddr: 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7  xid: 0x8c0fc642

  DHCP options:
  [82] Relay agent information: len = 54
"

```

Debug

```
[1] Circuit-id: WLAN-GW|2005|GI5|2/1/nat-out-ip:2049.3
[9] Vendor-Specific info: len = 12
    Enterprise [6527] : len = 7
    [13] dhcpPool: pool1
[53] Message type: Discover
[61] Client id: (hex) 01 68 7f 74 8b 3d d7
[50] Requested IP addr: 10.165.5.2
[12] Host name: W81VM
[60] Class id: MSFT 5.0
[55] Param request list: len = 13
    1 Subnet mask
    15 Domain name
    3 Router
    6 Domain name server
    44 NETBIOS name server
    46 NETBIOS type
    47 NETBIOS scope
    31 Router discovery
    33 Static route
    121 Unknown option
    249 Unknown option
    252 Unknown option
    43 Vendor specific
[255] End
"

5 2014/09/22 10:47:58.50 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn2005 PIP
"PIP: DHCP
instance 5 (2005),
    received DHCP Boot Reply on 10.0.0.1 Port 67

H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb)  H/W Address Length: 6
ciaddr: 0.0.0.0           yiaddr: 10.165.5.2
siaddr: 10.0.0.1         giaddr: 10.165.5.1
chaddr: 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7  xid: 0xc0fc642

DHCP options:
[82] Relay agent information: len = 54
    [1] Circuit-id: WLAN-GW|2005|GI5|2/1/nat-out-ip:2049.3
    [9] Vendor-Specific info: len = 12
        Enterprise [6527] : len = 7
        [13] dhcpPool: pool1
[53] Message type: Offer
[54] DHCP server addr: 10.0.0.1
[51] Lease time: 3600
[1] Subnet mask: 255.255.255.128
[3] Router: 10.165.5.1
[6] Domain name server: 10.43.186.43
[12] Host name: W81VM
[60] Class id: MSFT 5.0
[255] End
"

6 2014/09/22 10:47:58.52 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn2005 PIP
"PIP: DHCP
instance 5 (2005), interface index 3 (GI5),
    transmitted DHCP Boot Reply to Interface GI5 (2/1/nat-out-ip:2049.3) Port 68

H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb)  H/W Address Length: 6
```



```

ciaddr: 0.0.0.0          yiaddr: 10.165.5.2
siaddr: 10.0.0.1        giaddr: 10.165.5.1
chaddr: 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7  xid: 0x8c0fc642

DHCP options:
[53] Message type: Offer
[54] DHCP server addr: 10.0.0.1
[51] Lease time: 3600
[1] Subnet mask: 255.255.255.128
[3] Router: 10.165.5.1
[6] Domain name server: 10.43.186.43
[12] Host name: W81VM
[60] Class id: MSFT 5.0
[255] End
"

7 2014/09/22 10:47:58.69 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn2005 PIP
"PIP: DHCP
instance 5 (2005), interface index 3 (GI5),
received DHCP Boot Request on Interface GI5 (2/1/nat-out-ip:2049.3) Port 67

H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb) H/W Address Length: 6
ciaddr: 0.0.0.0          yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
siaddr: 0.0.0.0          giaddr: 0.0.0.0
chaddr: 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7  xid: 0x8c0fc642

DHCP options:
[53] Message type: Request
[61] Client id: (hex) 01 68 7f 74 8b 3d d7
[50] Requested IP addr: 10.165.5.2
[54] DHCP server addr: 10.0.0.1
[12] Host name: W81VM
[81] client FQDN: rcode1: 0, rcode2: 0, domain name = (hex) 00 57 38 31 56
4d
[60] Class id: MSFT 5.0
[55] Param request list: len = 13
      1 Subnet mask
      15 Domain name
      3 Router
      6 Domain name server
      44 NETBIOS name server
      46 NETBIOS type
      47 NETBIOS scope
      31 Router discovery
      33 Static route
      121 Unknown option
      249 Unknown option
      252 Unknown option
      43 Vendor specific
[255] End
"

8 2014/09/22 10:47:58.69 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn2005 PIP
"PIP: DHCP
instance 5 (2005),
transmitted DHCP Boot Request to 10.0.0.1 Port 67

H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb) H/W Address Length: 6
ciaddr: 0.0.0.0          yiaddr: 0.0.0.0

```

Debug

```
siaddr: 0.0.0.0          giaddr: 10.165.5.1
chaddr: 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7  xid: 0x8c0fc642

DHCP options:
[82] Relay agent information: len = 54
    [1] Circuit-id: WLAN-GW|2005|GI5|2/1/nat-out-ip:2049.3
[9] Vendor-Specific info: len = 12
    Enterprise [6527] : len = 7
    [13] dhcpPool: pool1
[53] Message type: Request
[61] Client id: (hex) 01 68 7f 74 8b 3d d7
[50] Requested IP addr: 10.165.5.2
[54] DHCP server addr: 10.0.0.1
[12] Host name: W81VM
[81] client FQDN: rcode1: 0, rcode2: 0, domain name = (hex) 00 57 38 31 56
4d
[60] Class id: MSFT 5.0
[55] Param request list: len = 13
    1 Subnet mask
    15 Domain name
    3 Router
    6 Domain name server
    44 NETBIOS name server
    46 NETBIOS type
    47 NETBIOS scope
    31 Router discovery
    33 Static route
    121 Unknown option
    249 Unknown option
    252 Unknown option
    43 Vendor specific
[255] End
"
```

9 2014/09/22 10:47:58.69 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn2005 PIP

"PIP: DHCP

instance 5 (2005),

received DHCP Boot Reply on 10.0.0.1 Port 67

H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb) H/W Address Length: 6

ciaddr: 0.0.0.0 yiaddr: 10.165.5.2

siaddr: 10.0.0.1 giaddr: 10.165.5.1

chaddr: 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7 xid: 0x8c0fc642

DHCP options:

[82] Relay agent information: len = 54

[1] Circuit-id: WLAN-GW|2005|GI5|2/1/nat-out-ip:2049.3

[9] Vendor-Specific info: len = 12

Enterprise [6527] : len = 7

[13] dhcpPool: pool1

[53] Message type: Ack

[54] DHCP server addr: 10.0.0.1

[51] Lease time: 3600

[1] Subnet mask: 255.255.255.128

[3] Router: 10.165.5.1

[6] Domain name server: 10.43.186.43

[12] Host name: W81VM

[81] client FQDN: rcode1: 0, rcode2: 0, domain name = (hex) 00 57 38 31 56

4d

```

[60] Class id: MSFT 5.0
[255] End
"

10 2014/09/22 10:47:58.69 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn2005 PIP
"PIP: DHCP
instance 5 (2005), interface index 3 (GI5),
transmitted DHCP Boot Reply to Interface GI5 (2/1/nat-out-ip:2049.3) Port 68

H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb) H/W Address Length: 6
ciaddr: 0.0.0.0 yiaddr: 10.165.5.2
siaddr: 10.0.0.1 giaddr: 10.165.5.1
chaddr: 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7 xid: 0x8c0fc642

DHCP options:
[53] Message type: Ack
[54] DHCP server addr: 10.0.0.1
[51] Lease time: 3600
[1] Subnet mask: 255.255.255.128
[3] Router: 10.165.5.1
[6] Domain name server: 10.43.186.43
[12] Host name: W81VM
[81] client FQDN: rcode1: 0, rcode2: 0, domain name = (hex) 00 57 38 31 56
4d
[60] Class id: MSFT 5.0
[255] End
"

```

At this point in the configuration, the UE has network connectivity but all HTTP traffic is redirected to the web portal, as configured in the IP filter included in the initial SLA profile.

After web portal authentication, the WLAN-GW receives a RADIUS CoA for this subscriber, which includes the new unrestricted SLA profile SLAP.

```

11 2014/09/22 10:48:12.54 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base RADIUS
"RADIUS: Receive
Change of Authorization(43) id 162 len 71 from 10.43.186.2:55255 vrid 1
VSA [26] 19 Alcatel(6527)
SUBSC ID STR [11] 17 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7
VSA [26] 8 Alcatel(6527)
SUBSC PROF STR [12] 6 SUBP_5
VSA [26] 6 Alcatel(6527)
SLA PROF STR [13] 4 SLAP
"

12 2014/09/22 10:48:12.54 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base RADIUS
"RADIUS: Transmit
Change of Authorization Ack(44) 10.43.186.2:55255 id 162 len 20 vrid 1
"

```

The host has accessed a few web sites, then disconnected from the SSID, which is not known by the WLAN-GW. After 5 minutes of inactivity, host-connectivity-verify removes the subscriber and the DHCP lease is cleared.

```

13 2014/09/22 10:48:58.90 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn2005 SHCV

```

Debug

```
"SHCV: Periodic Check
  2/1/nat-out-ip:2049.3
  DHCP lease state 10.165.5.2 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7"

14 2014/09/22 10:49:08.90 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn2005 SHCV
"SHCV: Periodic Check
  2/1/nat-out-ip:2049.3
  DHCP lease state 10.165.5.2 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7"

15 2014/09/22 10:49:18.90 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn2005 SHCV
"SHCV: Periodic Check
  2/1/nat-out-ip:2049.3
  DHCP lease state 10.165.5.2 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7"

16 2014/09/22 10:49:28.90 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn2005 SHCV
"SHCV: Connectivity Lost
  2/1/nat-out-ip:2049.3
  DHCP lease state 10.165.5.2 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7"

17 2014/09/22 10:49:30.00 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn2005 PIP
"PIP: DHCP
instance 5 (2005),
  transmitted DHCP Boot Request to 10.0.0.1 Port 68

  H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb)  H/W Address Length: 6
  ciaddr: 10.165.5.2         yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
  siaddr: 0.0.0.0           giaddr: 0.0.0.0
  chaddr: 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7  xid: 0x0

  DHCP options:
  [53] Message type: Release
  [54] DHCP server addr: 10.0.0.1
  [255] End
"
```

Conclusion

The 7750 SR WLAN-GW can support many WiFi Offload architectures, including open SSID with portal authentication. WiFi Offload functions such as terminating GRE tunnels or subscribers can be performed in separate routing instances, if required. IP addresses can be assigned from an external or local source and routing can be performed using NAT, by connecting the UE routing instance directly to the Internet, or by leaking routes to other routing instances. Using http-redirect, a web portal can be used to allow users to log in to a paid service or to accept the terms of service for a free WiFi service. Several show commands and debug options are available to help the operator monitor and troubleshoot the solution.

WiFi Aggregation and Offload — Basic Secure SSID with Distributed RADIUS Proxy

In This Chapter

This section provides information about WiFi Aggregation and Offload — Basic Secure SSID with Distributed RADIUS Proxy.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 1380](#)
- [Summary on page 1381](#)
- [Overview on page 1382](#)
- [Configuration on page 1383](#)
- [Conclusion on page 1404](#)

Applicability

The configuration example in this chapter is applicable to all 7750 SR platforms that function as WLAN gateway (WLAN-GW). This configuration makes use of soft-GRE as the access technology which requires one or more WLAN-IOMs (IOM3-XP and two MS-ISAs) and was tested using SR OS release 13.0.R3.

Summary

WiFi Aggregation and Offload functionality for the 7750 SR has been supported in SR OS 10.0.R3, and later. This includes a RADIUS proxy server and support for soft-GRE tunnels.

WLAN-GW subscribers can be implemented using Enhanced Subscriber Management (ESM) on the CPM in order to benefit from the extensive ESM features available on the 7750 SR platform. Many different WiFi Offload configurations are possible, with two versatile categories being open and secure SSID.

Starting from SR OS release 12.0.R4, distributed RADIUS-proxy functionality (DRP) has been added to the MS-ISA. This feature allows running a high-performance proxy over multiple MS-ISA cards instead of being limited to a single CPM, greatly increasing scalability.

This chapter can be used as a starting point for operators who wish to configure a secure SSID scenario using DRP and ESM. In a secure SSID scenario, the Access Point (AP) uses 802.1x and Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) to authenticate the UE. The EAP method used is transparent to the WLAN-GW. In this chapter, PEAP/EAP-MSCHAPv2 is used to associate with the SSID by entering a user name and password, but other methods such as EAP-Subscriber Identity Module (EAP-SIM) can also be used without any configuration change on the WLAN-GW.

IP address assignment and Internet connectivity can be achieved by using various methods on the 7750. In this scenario, the RADIUS server provides the IP addresses to the User Equipment (UEs). The same IP private address is assigned to every UE and L2-aware Network Address Translation (NAT) is used to provide a public IP address on the Internet.

Overview

For a WiFi Offload solution where the service provider has a record of their users, that is, where users have login accounts, the provider may consider offering a secure SSID as a more convenient and secure alternative to an open SSID with a web portal. In a secure SSID scenario, all user traffic is encrypted between the UE and the AP, and UEs are only granted access if they authenticate successfully. This makes attacks more difficult and blocks non-paying users who only connect to test if they can get free access.

Authentication in this case requires a centralized Authentication, Authorization and Accounting (AAA) which keeps track of the user accounts. The user is granted full access immediately after connecting to the secure SSID. One drawback is that WiFi clients may need some configuring by the user before they are able to connect to the SSID using the correct EAP method. In the case of EAP-SIM, users do not need to know their user name and password because authentication is done based on credentials contained in the SIM card, but the SSID configuration may need to be preloaded by the operator on the mobile device or provided to the user ahead of time. For other EAP methods such as PEAP/EAP-MSCHAPv2, users need to supply the correct user name and password, without the help of a portal or any instructions to guide them.

An operator offering Internet access to a large number of users while only a limited number of public IP addresses are available will likely use Network Address Translation (NAT) in order to conserve public IP addresses. NAT typically maps a few public IP addresses and ports to a large number of inside (private) IP addresses and ports. The 7750 SR WLAN-GW supports several NAT configurations including L2-aware NAT, where the MAC address of the UE is also used when creating the mapping between the inside IP/port and the outside IP/port. Therefore with L2-aware NAT, the same private IP address can be assigned to all UEs because the unique MAC address for each UE allows the WLAN-GW to distinguish between each UE. This greatly simplifies IP address assignment; the RADIUS server can assign the same private IP address to all UEs and there is no DHCP server required. Using a RADIUS server for IP address assignment means DHCP proxy needs to be configured on the WLAN-GW.

The 7750 SR platform is flexible in terms of allowing the operator to separate the various WiFi Offload functions between different routing instances. All functions can be configured in the same routing instance, or as shown in the following configuration, the connectivity to the APs (and soft-GRE tunnels) can be provided in one Virtual Private Routed Network (VPRN), the users can be instantiated in another VPRN, and AAA access can be provided in yet another routing instance (in this example the Base router). This provides a clear separation of functions and can enhance security, by separating user traffic from authentication and management traffic.

Configuration

The WiFi offload scenario with SSID and L2-aware NAT shown in [Figure 201](#) has following characteristics:

- Secure SSID with EAP authentication
- Local breakout to Internet, routing through the Base routing instance
- Same private IP address assigned to all UEs by RADIUS
- L2-aware NAT
- AP access in VPRN 1000
- UEs terminated in VPRN 2001

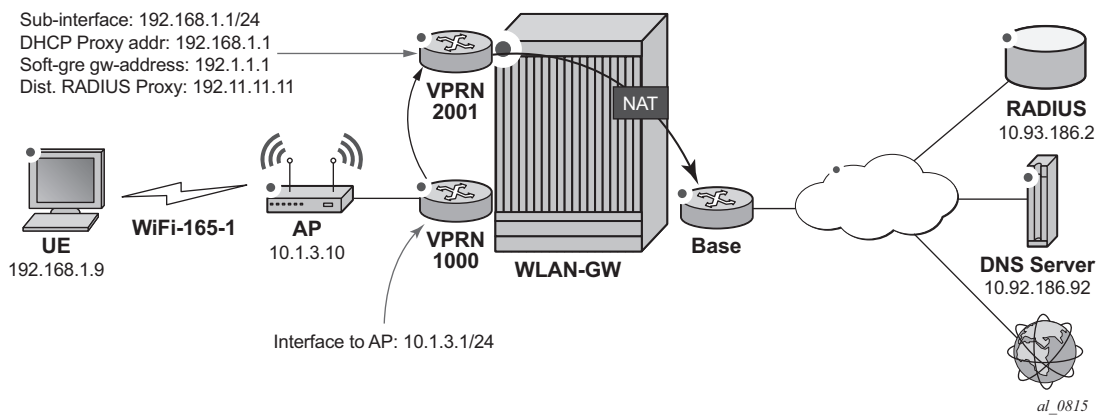


Figure 201: WiFi Offload Scenario with Secure SSID and L2-Aware NAT

WLAN-GW

Note that configuring the uplink interface, Interior Gateway Protocol (IGP) and system configuration is outside the scope of this chapter and only partial configuration is provided.

Card and Media Dependent Adapter (MDA) configuration showing only the WLAN-IOM. An IOM3-XP-B containing two MS-ISA cards provides the WLAN-GW functionality. The MDA type for the ISA cards is isa-bb, the same type that is used for NAT.

```
*A:WLAN-GW# /configure card 2
*A:WLAN-GW>config>card# info
-----
card-type iom3-xp-b
mda 1
    mda-type isa-bb
    no shutdown
exit
mda 2
    mda-type isa-bb
    no shutdown
exit
no shutdown
-----
```

The ISA configuration contains a wlan-gw-group referencing the IOM in slot 2, which hosts the two MS-ISA cards providing the WLAN-GW functions.

```
A:WLAN-GW# /configure isa
A:WLAN-GW>config>isa# info
-----
wlan-gw-group 1 create
    active-iom-limit 1
    iom 2
    no shutdown
exit
-----
```

The AAA configuration contains an ISA RADIUS policy used for authentication requests. The source address range configures the source address of the first MS-ISA in the wlan-gw-group. The second MS-ISA card gets the next consecutive IP address and so on. All the IP addresses assigned this way to MS-ISA cards must be configured as clients on the RADIUS server. The secret here must match the secret configured on the RADIUS server.

```
A:WLAN-GW# /configure aaa
A:WLAN-GW>config>aaa# info
-----
isa-radius-policy "IRS_1" create
    servers
        router "Base"
        source-address-range 10.10.165.1
        server 1 create
-----
```

```

        authentication
        ip-address 10.93.186.2
        secret "7USmr6f7JkxaGnDDq1uqwEAJKGbhZr5i" hash2
        no shutdown
    exit
exit
exit
-----

```

The following policy shows the two routes that must be exported for this scenario to work: UE NAT outside routes (NAT is configured in the next step), to make UEs reachable on the Internet, and MS-ISA RADIUS source address routes, in order for the MS-ISAs to be reachable from the RADIUS server. This policy should be used for export in the IGP configuration (not shown).

```

A:WLAN-GW# /configure router policy-options
A:WLAN-GW>config>router>policy-options# info
-----
    prefix-list "WiFi"
        prefix 10.10.165.0/24 longer
        prefix 10.165.0.0/16 longer
    exit
    policy-statement "WiFi"
        entry 10
            from
                prefix-list "WiFi"
            exit
            action accept
            exit
        exit
    exit
-----

```

The following configures L2-aware NAT by creating an outside NAT pool with a public IP address range. The private inside address used by the UE will be mapped to an outside IP address routable on the Internet. NAT port mapping parameters can be set in this configuration, controlling how many outside ports can be used by each UE. Details of NAT configuration are outside the scope of this document.

```

A:WLAN-GW# /configure router nat
A:WLAN-GW>config>router>nat# info
-----
    outside
        pool "WiFi-165-1" nat-group 1 type l2-aware create
        address-range 10.165.1.0 10.165.1.255 create
        exit
        no shutdown
    exit
exit
-----

```

The following configures a NAT policy under services, linking this policy with the outside NAT pool. When the NAT policy is invoked for a subscriber, this associates the subscriber with the correct outside pool.

```
A:WLAN-GW# /configure service nat
A:WLAN-GW>config>service>nat# info
-----
      nat-policy "WiFi-165-1" create
        pool "WiFi-165-1" router Base
      exit
-----
```

The following subscriber management configuration includes an SLA profile, a subscriber identity policy, and the subscriber profile that makes use of the previously defined NAT policy. This allows subscriber traffic to be forwarded to the Internet through the Base routing instance where the outside NAT pool exists.

A dummy authentication-policy is required for the CPM to handle the DHCP Discover messages forwarded by the MS-ISA cards.

```
A:WLAN-GW# /configure subscriber-mgmt
A:WLAN-GW>config>subscr-mgmt# info
-----
      authentication-policy "dummy-auth-policy" create
      exit
      sla-profile "SLAP_1" create
      exit
      sub-profile "SUBP_1" create
        nat-policy "WiFi-165-1"
      exit
      sub-ident-policy "SIP" create
        sub-profile-map
          use-direct-map-as-default
        exit
        sla-profile-map
          use-direct-map-as-default
        exit
      exit
-----
```

VPRN 1000 contains the interface to the AP as well as the distributed RADIUS proxy server RP_1. The RADIUS proxy wlan-gw address configures a special NAT route in VPRN 1000 that forwards RADIUS packets from the AP to the correct MS-ISA. That address is known to the AP as the RADIUS server address it uses for EAP authentication for this SSID. The secret configured here has to match the RADIUS secret configured on the AP.

The RADIUS proxy is configured to create cache entries based on attribute 31 in RADIUS access-request packets (Calling-Station-ID), which contains the MAC address of the UE. These cache entries will be stored temporarily and used to authenticate DHCP packets from the UE. The **track-**

accounting start parameter allows mobility to be triggered for a UE upon receiving an accounting-start message. The UE's associated tunnel will be moved to the IP address indicated by the NAS-IP-Address. The **track-accounting stop** parameter allows the UE session to be terminated immediately when the AP sends a RADIUS accounting-stop for the UE, when this UE disconnects from the SSID.

The default-authentication-server-policy links the RADIUS proxy with the isa-radius-policy that authenticates the UEs. If accounting is required, the accounting policy can be specified in this configuration and can be the same as or different from the isa-radius-policy. The send-accounting-response option makes the WLAN-GW acknowledge (and then discard) the RADIUS accounting messages from the AP, instead of proxying the accounting messages to the external RADIUS server.

```
A:WLAN-GW# /configure service vprn 1000
A:WLAN-GW>config>service>vprn# info
-----
route-distinguisher 65400:1000
interface "toAP3" create
    address 10.1.3.1/24
    sap 1/1/10 create
    exit
exit
radius-proxy
    server "DRP_1" purpose accounting authentication wlan-gw-group 1 create
        cache
            key packet-type request attribute-type 31
            track-accounting start stop
            no shutdown
        exit
        default-authentication-server-policy "IRS_1"
        secret "nUeorYjgFZtuAqIwoUOLODFx43rhSf/" hash2
        send-accounting-response
        wlan-gw
            address 192.11.11.11
        exit
        no shutdown
    exit
exit
no shutdown
-----
```

VPRN 2001 is used for UE termination and contains:

- A subscriber interface and group interface of type **wlangw** (**softgre** prior to release 12.0).
- Default subscriber parameters assigned to every UE.
- DHCP proxy, which allows the RADIUS-assigned IP address parameters stored in the DRP cache during authentication to be passed to the UE.
- A dummy authentication policy which allows the CPM to handle the DHCP Discover passed on by the MS-ISA.

- The **wlan-gw** node (**soft-gre** prior to release 12.0), which includes:
 - The gw-address that is the end-point of the GRE tunnel
 - The routing instance where AP traffic is terminated
 - The ISA wlan-gw-group, which associates this WLAN-GW configuration with a set of IOMs
 - Mobility parameters, which allow the UE state to be kept if the UE moves between two APs broadcasting the same SSID
 - The authenticate-on-dhcp option required for the CPM to instantiate ESM UEs when using DRP
 - The L2-aware address/subnet used for L2-aware NAT. This address matches the default gateway assigned to the UEs.

```
A:WLAN-GW# /configure service vprn 2001
A:WLAN-GW>config>service>vprn# info
-----
description "WiFi-165-1 Secure SSID"
route-distinguisher 65400:2001
subscriber-interface "SI1" create
  address 192.168.1.1/24 populate-host-routes
  group-interface "GI1" wlangw create
    sap-parameters
      sub-sla-mgmt
        def-sla-profile "SLAP_1"
        def-sub-profile "SUBP_1"
        sub-ident-policy "SIP"
      exit
    exit
  dhcp
    proxy-server
      emulated-server 192.168.1.1
      no shutdown
    exit
    lease-populate 10000
    gi-address 192.168.1.1
    no shutdown
  exit
  authentication-policy "dummy-auth-policy"
  wlan-gw
    gw-address 192.1.1.1
    mobility
      trigger data iapp
    exit
    router 1000
    wlan-gw-group 1
    vlan-tag-ranges
      range default
      authenticate-on-dhcp
    exit
  exit
  no shutdown
exit
exit
exit
```



```

nat
  inside
    l2-aware
    address 192.168.1.1/24
  exit
exit
no shutdown
-----

```

Freeradius

This part of the user's configuration file matches on the user name entered by the UE while connecting to this secure SSID. If the password entered is correct, RADIUS returns the IP addressing parameters configured as follows. The same IP address 192.168.1.9 is assigned to every user on this SSID, but the L2-aware NAT on the WLAN-GW can distinguish between all the UEs based on their L2 MAC address.

```

/etc/freeradius/users:
"user1"
    User-Password := "alcatel"
    Alc-Subsc-ID-Str = "%{User-Name}",
    Alc-Default-Router = 192.168.1.1,
    Alc-Primary-Dns = 10.43.186.43,
    Framed-IP-Address = 192.168.1.9,
    Framed-IP-Netmask = 255.255.255.0,

```

In `/etc/freeradius/clients.conf` the secret matches the one configured in the WLAN-GW `isa-radius-policy` configuration. Since there are only two MS-ISA cards in the wlan-group used in this example, two clients are configured.

```

client 10.10.165.1 {
    secret      = alcatel
    shortname   = WLAN-GW-ISA1
}
client 10.10.165.2 {
    secret      = alcatel
    shortname   = WLAN-GW-ISA2
}

```

Access Points

The following must be configured on the Access Point as a minimum:

- IP address 10.1.3.10/24
- Default route to 10.1.3.1

- Secure SSID WiFi-165-1 mapped to VLAN 10, using WPA2 with EAP/802.1x authenticating against RADIUS server 192.11.11.11, with RADIUS accounting enabled
- Soft-GRE tunnel with destination 192.1.1.1, with VLAN 10 mapped to this tunnel

Show Commands

The following show commands reflect the status of the WLAN-GW after the UE has connected and obtained an IP address using DHCP.

The following output displays the connected UEs:

```
A:WLAN-GW# show subscriber-mgmt wlan-gw ue
=====
User Equipments
=====
MAC address           : 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7
-----
VLAN Q-tag            : 10
MPLS label            : (Not Specified)
Tunnel router         : 1000
Tunnel remote IP address : 10.1.3.10
Tunnel local IP address  : 192.1.1.1
Retail service        : N/A
SSID                  : "WiFi-165-1"
Previous Access Point IP : (Not Specified)
IMSI                  : (Not Specified)
Subscriber host service : 2001
Subscriber host SAP     : 2/1/nat-out-ip:2049.1
Last move time        : 2015/09/15 16:20:01

-----
No. of UE: 1
=====

A:WLAN-GW# tools dump wlan-gw ue

=====
Matched 1 session on Slot #2 MDA #1
=====
UE-Mac           : 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7    UE-vlan          : 10
UE IP Addr       : N/A                  UE Timeout       : N/A
DHCPv6 Timeout   : N/A                  SLAAC Timeout    : N/A
DHCPv6 IA-NA ID  : N/A                  RA Timeout       : N/A
DHCPv6 Addr      : N/A
SLAAC Prefix     : N/A
Description      : ESM-user
Auth/CoA-time    : 09/16/2015 10:47:38  Retail Service   : N/A
Tunnel MDA       : 2/2                  Tunnel Router    : 1000
MPLS label       : N/A                  Shaper           : 1
Tunnel Src IP    : 10.1.3.10             Tunnel Dst IP    : 192.1.1.1
Tunnel L2 Svc    : N/A                  Tunnel L2 Vlan   : N/A
Tunnel Type      : GRE
Anchor SAP       : 2/1/nat-out-ip:2049.2
AP-Mac          : 00:0d:67:39:0b:65      AP-RSSI          : Unknown
```

```

AP-SSID           : "WiFi-165-1"
Last-forward      : 09/16/2015 15:59:26   Last-move         : 09/16/2015 10:47:38
Session Timeout   : None                   Idle Timeout      : N/A
Acct Update       : None                   Acct Interval     : N/A
Acct Session-Id   : N/A
Acct Policy       : N/A
NAT Policy        : N/A
Redirect Policy    : N/A
IP Filter         : N/A
App-profile       : N/A
Rx Oper PIR       : N/A                   Rx Oper CIR       : N/A
Tx Oper PIR       : N/A                   Tx Oper CIR       : N/A
Rx Frames        : N/A                   Rx Octets         : N/A
Tx Frames        : N/A                   Tx Octets         : N/A

```

```

-----
No sessions on Slot #2 MDA #2 match the query

```

The DHCP lease information indicates that the address was assigned by RADIUS.

```

A:WLAN-GW# show service id 2005 dhcp lease-state
=====
DHCP lease state table, service 2001
=====
IP Address      Mac Address      Sap/Sdp Id      Remaining Lease MC
                  LeaseTime  Origin  Stdby
-----
192.168.1.9     68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7 [2/1/nat-out-ip:20* 06d23h59m Radius
-----
Number of lease states : 1
=====
* indicates that the corresponding row element may have been truncated.

```

When troubleshooting DHCP issues, displaying DHCP statistics is useful.

```

A:WLAN-GW# show service id 2005 dhcp statistics
=====
DHCP Global Statistics, service 2001
=====
Rx Packets           : 2
Tx Packets           : 2
Rx Malformed Packets : 0
Rx Untrusted Packets : 0
Client Packets Discarded : 0
Client Packets Relayed : 0
Client Packets Snooped : 0
Client Packets Proxied (RADIUS) : 2
Client Packets Proxied (Diameter) : 0
Client Packets Proxied (User-Db) : 0
Client Packets Proxied (Lease-Split) : 0
Server Packets Discarded : 0
Server Packets Relayed : 0
Server Packets Snooped : 0
DHCP RELEASEs Spoofed : 0
DHCP FORCERENEWs Spoofed : 0

```

```
=====
```

The following output lists the active subscribers, showing each UE SLA profile, MAC address and IP address.

```
A:WLAN-GW# show service active-subscribers
=====
Active Subscribers
=====
-----
Subscriber DUACBU2ZLE (SUBP_1)
-----
NAT Policy: WiFi-165-1
Outside IP: 10.165.1.0
Ports      : 1024-65535
-----
(1) SLA Profile Instance sap:[2/1/nat-out-ip:2049.1] - sla:SLAP_1
-----
IP Address      MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin
-----
192.168.1.9     68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7 N/A             DHCP
-----
Number of active subscribers : 1
-----
```

The following output displays distributed RADIUS proxy server statistics after the UE has authenticated, showing all the EAP messages exchanged between the AP and RADIUS proxy:

```
A:WLAN-GW# show router 1000 radius-proxy-server "DRP_1" statistics
=====
ISA RADIUS Proxy server statistics for "DRP_1"
=====
Group 1 member 1
-----
Rx packet                      : 12
Rx Access-Request              : 11
Rx Accounting-Request          : 1
Rx dropped                     : 0
  Retransmit                   : 0
  Wrong purpose                 : 0
  No UE MAC to cache           : 0
  Client context limit reached : 0
  No ISA RADIUS policy configured : 0
  Invalid attribute encoding    : 0
  Invalid password              : 0
  Accounting-Request with invalid Acct-Status-Type : 0
  Accounting-Request with no Acct-Status-Type : 0
  Invalid accounting Authenticator : 0
  Invalid Message-Authenticator : 0
  Management core overload      : 0
Tx Access-Accept                : 1
```

```

Tx Access-Reject                : 0
Tx Access-Challenge              : 10
Tx Accounting-Response           : 1
Tx dropped                       : 0
  Server timeout                 : 0
  Invalid response Authenticator : 0
  Invalid Message-Authenticator : 0
  Invalid attribute encoding     : 0
  RADIUS server send failure     : 0

```

Group 1 member 2

```

-----
Rx packet                        : 0
Rx Access-Request                : 0
Rx Accounting-Request            : 0
Rx dropped                       : 0
  Retransmit                     : 0
  Wrong purpose                  : 0
  No UE MAC to cache             : 0
  Client context limit reached   : 0
  No ISA RADIUS policy configured : 0
  Invalid attribute encoding     : 0
  Invalid password               : 0
  Accounting-Request with invalid Acct-Status-Type : 0
  Accounting-Request with no Acct-Status-Type      : 0
  Invalid accounting Authenticator : 0
  Invalid Message-Authenticator    : 0
  Management core overload         : 0

```

```

Tx Access-Accept                : 0
Tx Access-Reject                : 0
Tx Access-Challenge              : 0
Tx Accounting-Response           : 0
Tx dropped                       : 0
  Server timeout                 : 0
  Invalid response Authenticator : 0
  Invalid Message-Authenticator : 0
  Invalid attribute encoding     : 0
  RADIUS server send failure     : 0
=====

```

The following output shows the ISA RADIUS policy statistics after the UE has connected, showing the transactions between the WLAN-GW and the RADIUS server.

```
A:WLAN-GW# show aaa isa-radius-policy "IRS_1"
```

```
=====
ISA RADIUS policy "IRS_1"
```

```

=====
Description                : (Not Specified)
Include attributes acct     : N/A
Include attributes auth     : nas-ip-address
User name format           : mac
User name MAC format       : alu
NAS-IP-Address              : system-ip
=====

```

```
RADIUS server settings
=====
```

```

Router                : "Base"
Source address start  : 10.10.165.1
Source address end    : 10.10.165.2
Access algorithm      : direct
Retry                 : 3
Timeout (s)           : 5
Last management change : 09/15/2015 15:05:02

```

```

=====
Servers for "IRS_1"
=====

```

Index	Address	Acct-port	Auth-port	CoA-port
1	10.93.186.2	0	1812	0

```

=====
Status for ISA RADIUS server policy "IRS_1"
=====

```

```

Server 1, group 1, member 1
-----

```

Purposes Up	: authentication
Source IP address	: 10.10.165.1
Acct Tx Requests	: 0
Acct Tx Retries	: 0
Acct Tx Timeouts	: 0
Acct Rx Replies	: 0
Auth Tx Requests	: 11
Auth Tx Retries	: 0
Auth Tx Timeouts	: 0
Auth Rx Replies	: 11
CoA Rx Requests	: 0

```

Server 1, group 1, member 2
-----

```

Purposes Up	: (None)
Source IP address	: 10.10.165.2
Acct Tx Requests	: 0
Acct Tx Retries	: 0
Acct Tx Timeouts	: 0
Acct Rx Replies	: 0
Auth Tx Requests	: 0
Auth Tx Retries	: 0
Auth Tx Timeouts	: 0
Auth Rx Replies	: 0
CoA Rx Requests	: 0

```

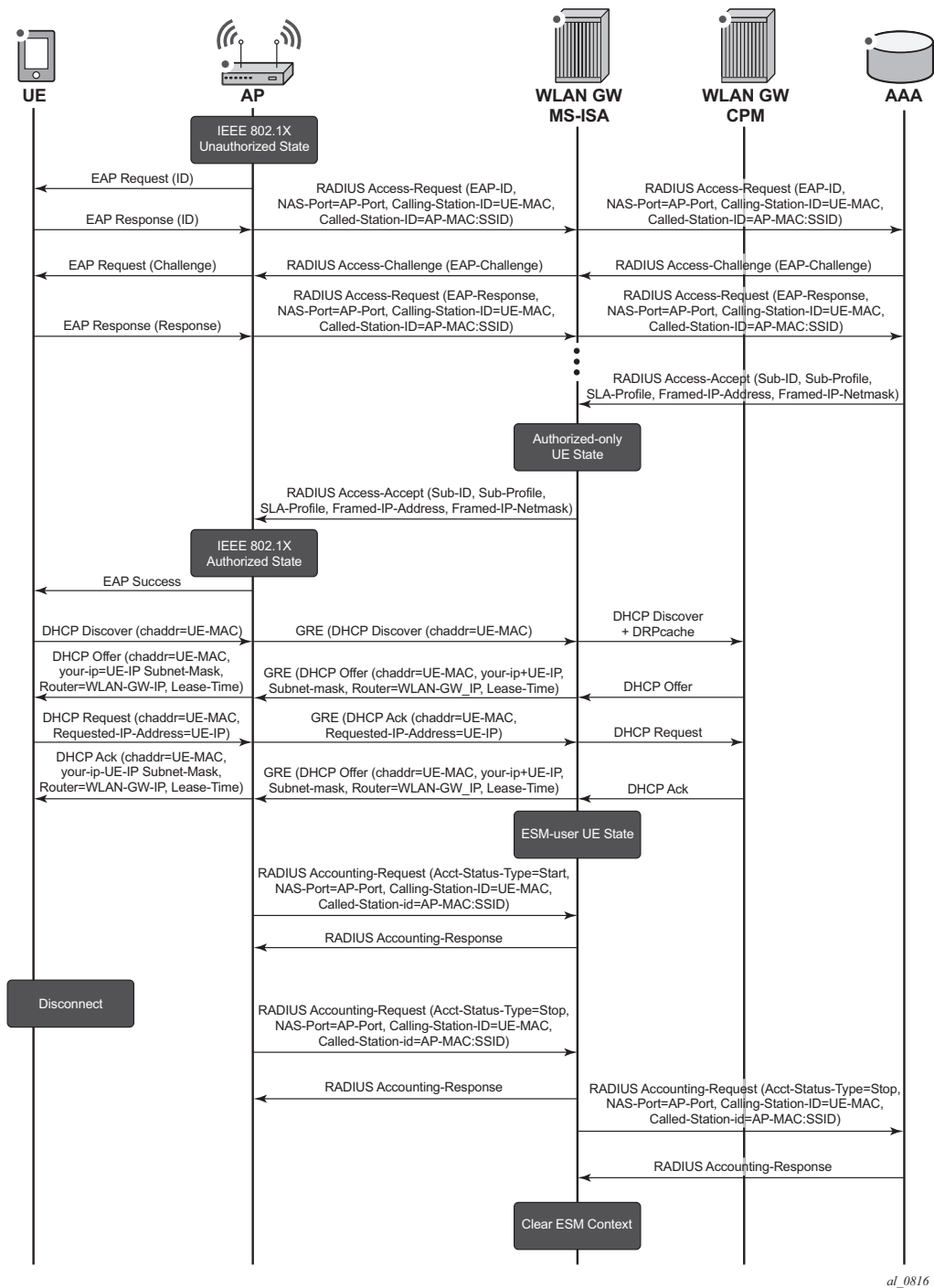
=====

```

Call Flow

[Figure 202](#) shows the call flow for a secure SSID with DRP. The main steps are:

- EAP authentication using DRP on MS-ISA placing UE authorized-only state
- UE sends DHCP Discover which is forwarded by the MS-ISA to the CPM
- CPM places UE in ESM-user state
- Upon disconnect, the AP sends a RADIUS accounting-stop which clears the UE context on the WLAN-GW



al_0816

Figure 202: Call Flow for Secure SSID with DSM

Debug

In this example, the following debug configuration is used (note that some default options are automatically added and do not need to be entered manually, e.g. mode under dhcp). For DRP, only a limited number of UEs can be debugged at a time and their MAC address have to be specified.

```
debug
  router "2001"
    ip
      dhcp
        detail-level medium
        mode egr-ingr-and-dropped
      exit
    exit
  exit
wlan-gw
  group 1
    ue 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7 packet radius dhcp
  exit
exit
exit
```

The following is a partial debug of a UE connecting to the SSID and authenticating with the RADIUS server. Shortly after logging in the UE disconnects from the SSID and the subscriber is removed on reception of the RADIUS accounting-stop message.

As soon as the UE attempts to connect to the secure SSID, the WLAN-GW distributed RADIUS proxy in VPRN 1000 receives the first Access-Request packet from the AP. Note that the CALLING STATION ID [31] attribute contains the MAC address of the UE, and that the AP sends the SSID name in the NAS IDENTIFIER [32] attribute.

```
1464 2015/09/15 16:19:52.93 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base WLAN-GW
"WLAN-GW: MDA 2/1, SeqNo 3291
  Info:      anchor ingressing frame
          radius upstream from client

IP/UDP:    from 10.1.3.10 (port 51235) to 192.11.11.11 (port 1812)

RADIUS:    Access-Request (1) id 122 len 190
USER NAME [1] 5 user1
NAS IP ADDRESS [4] 4 10.1.3.10
FRAMED IP ADDRESS [8] 4 255.255.255.255
NAS IDENTIFIER [32] 10 WiFi-165-1
CALLED STATION ID [30] 28 00-0D-67-39-0B-65:WiFi-165-1
NAS PORT TYPE [61] 4 Wireless - IEEE 802.11(19)
NAS PORT [5] 4 0
CALLING STATION ID [31] 17 68-7F-74-8B-3D-D7
CONNECT INFO [77] 21 CONNECT 0Mbps 802.11b
SESSION ID [44] 17 556F2789-0000008D
FRAMED MTU [12] 4 1400
EAP MESSAGE [79] 10 0x02e2000a017573657231
MESSAGE AUTHENTICATOR [80] 16 0xbc3a66d7f9d4e02465797f2018914ed7
```

"

The WLAN-GW MS-ISA forwards the Access-Request to the RADIUS server in the Base router.

```
1465 2015/09/15 16:19:52.94 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base WLAN-GW
"WLAN-GW: MDA 2/1, SeqNo 3292
  Info:      anchor egressing frame
           radius upstream to server

IP/UDP:    from 10.10.165.1 (port 1024) to 10.93.186.2 (port 1812)

RADIUS:    Access-Request (1) id 20 len 190
USER NAME [1] 5 user1
NAS IP ADDRESS [4] 4 10.1.3.10
FRAMED IP ADDRESS [8] 4 255.255.255.255
NAS IDENTIFIER [32] 10 WiFi-165-1
CALLED STATION ID [30] 28 00-0D-67-39-0B-65:WiFi-165-1
NAS PORT TYPE [61] 4 Wireless - IEEE 802.11(19)
NAS PORT [5] 4 0
CALLING STATION ID [31] 17 68-7F-74-8B-3D-D7
CONNECT INFO [77] 21 CONNECT 0Mbps 802.11b
SESSION ID [44] 17 556F2789-0000008D
FRAMED MTU [12] 4 1400
EAP MESSAGE [79] 10 0x02e2000a017573657231
MESSAGE AUTHENTICATOR [80] 16 0xbf48919833584995109b8387efc03b21
"
```

Many RADIUS Access-Request and Access Challenge messages are exchanged, which encapsulate the EAP authentication between the UE and the RADIUS server. At the end of the exchange, for a successful authentication, the WLAN-GW receives an Access-Accept message (for a failed authentication it would receive an Access-Reject).

```
1506 2015/09/15 16:20:01.69 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base WLAN-GW
"WLAN-GW: MDA 2/1, SeqNo 3333
  Info:      anchor ingressing frame
           radius downstream from server

IP/UDP:    from 10.93.186.2 (port 1812) to 10.10.165.1 (port 1024)

RADIUS:    Access-Accept (2) id 25 len 203
VSA [26] 6 Alcatel(6527)
  DEFAULT ROUTER [18] 4 192.168.1.1
VSA [26] 6 Alcatel(6527)
  PRIMARY DNS [9] 4 10.92.186.92
FRAMED IP ADDRESS [8] 4 192.168.1.9
FRAMED IP NETMASK [9] 4 255.255.255.0
USER NAME [1] 5 user1
VSA [26] 52 Microsoft(311)
  MS MPPE RECV KEY [17] 50 0xc1af6befb148f03d5bd9bb8863500dd0a1ffcf57392dcda
8db5529be6e2de52fc239d3595212eelb181e50c064e292595db8
VSA [26] 52 Microsoft(311)
  MS MPPE SEND KEY [16] 50 0xcbe708a0751bc3c9ef43bb58e2b103cca0a6373b6800279
148a0f1934176f000e1540e5078eeba9d43af5f42d4799b16a79d
EAP MESSAGE [79] 4 0x03ec0004
MESSAGE AUTHENTICATOR [80] 16 0xb3d2459f830217fd455b26e7767012c3"
```

"

The Access-Accept contains the IP addressing parameters for the UE such as the IP address, netmask, and default gateway, as well as the subscriber ID string. The IP addressing information is used by the WLAN-GW, but the Access-Accept message is also forwarded by the RADIUS proxy to the AP to tell it that the UE authenticated successfully so it can associate with the SSID.

```
1507 2015/09/15 16:20:01.69 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base WLAN-GW
"WLAN-GW: MDA 2/1, SeqNo 3334
  Info:      anchor egressing frame
           radius downstream to client

IP/UDP:    from 192.11.11.11 (port 1812) to 10.1.3.10 (port 51235)

RADIUS:    Access-Accept (2)  id 132  len 203
VSA [26] 6 Alcatel(6527)
  DEFAULT ROUTER [18] 4 192.168.1.1
VSA [26] 6 Alcatel(6527)
  PRIMARY DNS [9] 4 10.92.186.92
FRAMED IP ADDRESS [8] 4 192.168.1.9
FRAMED IP NETMASK [9] 4 255.255.255.0
USER NAME [1] 5 user1
VSA [26] 52 Microsoft(311)
  MS MPPE RECV KEY [17] 50 0xc1afa8a2e9f23dbe5c0d41410a8bcc7fc42406813a3bff6
a61c957fbad58b7af6de0447898603980aeebe5cc2d5db54b8ca7
VSA [26] 52 Microsoft(311)
  MS MPPE SEND KEY [16] 50 0xcbe7fb9182312534ea50ecdffc8ed59874401515968ae276
7826fa664e3871d0b13e2946b01750825dbb95b3fe6ee615afala
EAP MESSAGE [79] 4 0x03ec0004
MESSAGE AUTHENTICATOR [80] 16 0x66b269e340328cee108dfc1d27f46fca
"
```

After the AP allows the UE to connect to the secure SSID, establishing L2 connectivity to the WLAN-GW across the soft-GRE tunnel, the UE can obtain an IP address through DHCP. The WLAN-GW receives a DHCP Discover from the UE on MS-ISA MDA 2/1:

```
1508 2015/09/15 16:20:01.83 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base WLAN-GW
"WLAN-GW: MDA 2/1, SeqNo 3335
  Info:      anchor ingressing frame
           received upstream from tunnel

Ethernet:   from 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7 to ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff (ethertype: 0x0800)

IP/UDP:    from 0.0.0.0 (port 68) to 255.255.255.255 (port 67)

DHCP:
ciaddr: 0.0.0.0          yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
siaddr: 0.0.0.0          giaddr: 0.0.0.0
chaddr: 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7  xid: 0xf4b37

DHCP options:
[53] Message type: Discover
[61] Client id: (hex) 01 68 7f 74 8b 3d d7
[12] Host name: VMS11
[60] Class id: MSFT 5.0
```

```

[55] Param request list: len = 12
      1 Subnet mask
     15 Domain name
      3 Router
      6 Domain name server
     44 NETBIOS name server
     46 NETBIOS type
     47 NETBIOS scope
     31 Router discovery
     33 Static route
    121 Unknown option
    249 Unknown option
     43 Vendor specific
[255] End
"

```

The MS-ISA forwards the DHCP Discover to the CPM and it arrives on group interface GI1 in VPRN 2001.

```

1509 2015/09/15 16:20:01.83 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn2001 PIP
"PIP: DHCP
instance 6 (2001), interface index 3 (GI1),
  received DHCP Boot Request on Interface GI1 (2/1/nat-out-ip:2049.1) Port 67

H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb)  H/W Address Length: 6
ciaddr: 0.0.0.0           yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
siaddr: 0.0.0.0           giaddr: 0.0.0.0
chaddr: 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7  xid: 0xfb4fb37

DHCP options:
[53] Message type: Discover
[61] Client id: (hex) 01 68 7f 74 8b 3d d7
[12] Host name: VMS11
[60] Class id: MSFT 5.0
[55] Param request list: len = 12
      1 Subnet mask
     15 Domain name
      3 Router
      6 Domain name server
     44 NETBIOS name server
     46 NETBIOS type
     47 NETBIOS scope
     31 Router discovery
     33 Static route
    121 Unknown option
    249 Unknown option
     43 Vendor specific
[255] End
"

```

The WLAN-GW sends a DHCP Offer to the UE with the IP address information retrieved from the RADIUS Access-Accept message.

```

1510 2015/09/15 16:20:01.85 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn2001 PIP
"PIP: DHCP
instance 6 (2001), interface index 3 (GI1),

```

```

transmitted DHCP Boot Reply to Interface GI1 (2/1/nat-out-ip:2049.1) Port 68

H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb)  H/W Address Length: 6
ciaddr: 0.0.0.0            yiaddr: 192.168.1.9
siaddr: 192.168.1.1        giaddr: 192.168.1.1
chaddr: 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7  xid: 0xfb4fb37

DHCP options:
[53] Message type: Offer
[54] DHCP server addr: 192.168.1.1
[51] Lease time: 604800
[1] Subnet mask: 255.255.255.0
[3] Router: 192.168.1.1
[6] Domain name server: 10.92.186.92
[28] Broadcast addr: 192.168.1.255
[61] Client id: (hex) 01 68 7f 74 8b 3d d7
[12] Host name: VMS11
[255] End
"

```

The Offer message is sent to the MS-ISA and towards the UE (not shown). The UE then sends a DHCP Request and the WLAN-GW responds with an Ack.

```

1513 2015/09/15 16:20:01.86 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base WLAN-GW
"WLAN-GW: MDA 2/1, SeqNo 3337
  Info:      anchor ingressing frame
           received upstream from tunnel

Ethernet: from 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7 to ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff (ethertype: 0x0800)

IP/UDP:   from 0.0.0.0 (port 68) to 255.255.255.255 (port 67)

DHCP:
ciaddr: 0.0.0.0            yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
siaddr: 0.0.0.0            giaddr: 0.0.0.0
chaddr: 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7  xid: 0xfb4fb37

DHCP options:
[53] Message type: Request
[61] Client id: (hex) 01 68 7f 74 8b 3d d7
[50] Requested IP addr: 192.168.1.9
[54] DHCP server addr: 192.168.1.1
[12] Host name: VMS11
[81] client FQDN: rcode1: 0, rcode2: 0, domain name = (hex) 00 56 4d 53 31
31
[60] Class id: MSFT 5.0
[55] Param request list: len = 12
      1 Subnet mask
     15 Domain name
      3 Router
      6 Domain name server
     44 NETBIOS name server
     46 NETBIOS type
     47 NETBIOS scope
     31 Router discovery
     33 Static route
    121 Unknown option

```

WLAN-GW

```

    249 Unknown option
    43 Vendor specific
[255] End
"

1515 2015/09/15 16:20:01.86 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 vprn2001 PIP
"PIP: DHCP
instance 6 (2001), interface index 3 (GI1),
transmitted DHCP Boot Reply to Interface GI1 (2/1/nat-out-ip:2049.1) Port 68

H/W Type: Ethernet(10Mb) H/W Address Length: 6
ciaddr: 0.0.0.0 yiaddr: 192.168.1.9
siaddr: 192.168.1.1 giaddr: 192.168.1.1
chaddr: 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7 xid: 0xfb4fb37

DHCP options:
[53] Message type: Ack
[54] DHCP server addr: 192.168.1.1
[51] Lease time: 604800
[1] Subnet mask: 255.255.255.0
[3] Router: 192.168.1.1
[6] Domain name server: 10.92.186.92
[28] Broadcast addr: 192.168.1.255
[61] Client id: (hex) 01 68 7f 74 8b 3d d7
[12] Host name: VMS11
[81] client FQDN: rcode1: 0, rcode2: 0, domain name = (hex) 00 56 4d 53 31
31
[255] End
"
```

The AP sends a RADIUS accounting Start to the WLAN-GW as a result of the UE successfully associating with the SSID.

```

1518 2015/09/15 16:20:01.88 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base WLAN-GW
"WLAN-GW: MDA 2/1, SeqNo 3339
Info:      anchor ingressing frame
        radius upstream from client

IP/UDP:    from 10.1.3.10 (port 51236) to 192.11.11.11 (port 1813)

RADIUS:    Accounting-Request (4) id 133 len 197
SESSION ID [44] 17 556F2789-0000008D
EVENT TIMESTAMP [55] 4 1442292269
STATUS TYPE [40] 4 Start(1)
AUTHENTIC [45] 4 RADIUS(1)
USER NAME [1] 5 user1
NAS IP ADDRESS [4] 4 10.1.3.10
FRAMED IP ADDRESS [8] 4 192.168.1.9
NAS IDENTIFIER [32] 10 WiFi-165-1
CALLED STATION ID [30] 28 00-0D-67-39-0B-65:WiFi-165-1
NAS PORT TYPE [61] 4 Wireless - IEEE 802.11(19)
NAS PORT [5] 4 0
CALLING STATION ID [31] 17 68-7F-74-8B-3D-D7
CONNECT INFO [77] 21 CONNECT 0Mbps 802.11b
SESSION ID [44] 17 556F2789-0000008D
DELAY TIME [41] 4 0
"
```

At the end of the session, the UE disconnects from the SSID, and the AP sends a RADIUS accounting Stop to the WLAN-GW.

```
1520 2015/09/15 16:20:37.45 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base WLAN-GW
"WLAN-GW: MDA 2/1, SeqNo 3401
  Info:      anchor ingressing frame
          radius upstream from client

IP/UDP:    from 10.1.3.10 (port 51237) to 192.11.11.11 (port 1813)

RADIUS:    Accounting-Request (4)  id 134  len 233
SESSION ID [44] 17 556F2789-0000008D
EVENT TIMESTAMP [55] 4 1442292304
STATUS TYPE [40] 4 Stop(2)
AUTHENTIC [45] 4 RADIUS(1)
USER NAME [1] 5 user1
NAS IP ADDRESS [4] 4 10.1.3.10
FRAMED IP ADDRESS [8] 4 192.168.1.9
NAS IDENTIFIER [32] 10 WiFi-165-1
CALLED STATION ID [30] 28 00-0D-67-39-0B-65:WiFi-165-1
NAS PORT TYPE [61] 4 Wireless - IEEE 802.11(19)
NAS PORT [5] 4 0
CALLING STATION ID [31] 17 68-7F-74-8B-3D-D7
CONNECT INFO [77] 21 CONNECT 0Mbps 802.11b
SESSION ID [44] 17 556F2789-0000008D
DELAY TIME [41] 4 0
SESSION TIME [46] 4 35
INPUT PACKETS [47] 4 57
OUTPUT PACKETS [48] 4 36
INPUT OCTETS [42] 4 5228
OUTPUT OCTETS [43] 4 5538
TERMINATE CAUSE [49] 4 User Request(1)
"
```

This removes the subscriber from the WLAN-GW, clears the DHCP state, and also removes the GRE tunnel if this UE is the last one on the tunnel.

Conclusion

The 7750 SR WLAN-GW can support many WiFi Offload architectures including secure SSID with various types of EAP authentication. WiFi Offload functions such as terminating GRE tunnels, NAT, and RADIUS server connectivity can be performed in separate routing instances if required. UE IP addresses can be assigned locally or from an external source such as RADIUS, and routing to the Internet can be performed in various ways, including NAT. Several show commands and debug options are available to help the operator monitor and troubleshoot the solution.

WiFi Aggregation and Offload — IPv4/v6 Dual-Stack UEs

In This Chapter

This section provides information about WiFi aggregation and offload IPv4/v6 dual-stack UEs.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 1406](#)
- [Summary on page 1407](#)
- [Overview on page 1408](#)
- [Configuration on page 1415](#)
- [Conclusion on page 1425](#)

Applicability

This chapter is applicable to all 7750 SR platforms that function as WLAN gateways (WLAN-GWs). The configuration makes use of soft Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE) as the access technology, which requires one or more WLAN-IOMs (IOM3-XP and 2 x MS-ISAs). However, a similar configuration can be made without soft-GRE and, therefore, without WLAN-IOMs.

The example configuration was tested on a 7750 SR-7 with SR OS 13.0.R3.

Summary

WiFi Aggregation and Offload functionality for the 7750 SR is supported on SR OS 10.0.R3 or later. The functionality includes enhanced subscriber management (ESM) for user equipment (UE) that gains network access via a WiFi service.

This chapter provides a functional description of the WLAN-GW features related to IPv4/v6 dual-stack UEs, as well as the related configuration.

Overview

Because IP address demand is mainly due to mobile devices, the support of IPv6 on mobile devices is a major requirement to manage IPv4 address depletion.

However, IPv6 on mobile devices is currently considered as an add-on rather than a replacement of IPv4, so the demand is for IPv4/v6 dual-stack UEs.

The basic concepts of ESMv6 for IPoE dual-stack hosts also apply to dual-stack UEs. However, WLAN-GW operates in a bridged environment where the Access Point (AP) performs L2 forwarding of Ethernet frames between the IEEE 802.11 air interface and the soft-GRE, soft-L2TPv3, or VLAN tunnel. Therefore, a WLAN-GW treats each UE as an individual subscriber who connects to the WiFi service. This contrasts with ESMv6 IPoE hosts behind a routed residential gateway (RG), where multiple hosts connect via the RG and the BNG treats the RG as the subscriber.

Depending on the type of UE, it may be allocated an IPv4 address through DHCPv4 and an IPv6 address through Stateless Address Auto-Configuration (SLAAC), or DHCPv6, or both (not all UEs have support for DHCPv6). Therefore, a UE can instantiate up to three IPoE hosts: a DHCPv4 host, a SLAAC host, and a DHCPv6 host.

Authentication and authorization depend on whether the UE connects to a WiFi with open or closed SSID. With an open SSID, authentication and authorization are performed when the first packet is received from the UE (typically a DHCPv4 Discover, an ICMPv6 Router-Solicit, or a DHCPv6 Solicit), similar to the routed RG model. Upon successful authentication, the Access-Accept is stored for 10 s on the WLAN-GW, so for a dual-stack IPv4/v6 UE, two or three authentication rounds can be avoided if DHCPv4, SLAAC, and DHCPv6 are started within this 10 s interval.

When the UE has successfully authenticated with the portal, a CoA-Request may lift the HTTP redirect filter by changing the SLA profile and, optionally, the subscriber profile. If the CoA-Request contains the subscriber ID, the CoA-Request applies to both the DHCPv4 host and the SLAAC and/or DHCPv6 host. See the RADIUS attributes reference guide for more information about alternative subscriber host identification in RADIUS CoA-Request messages.

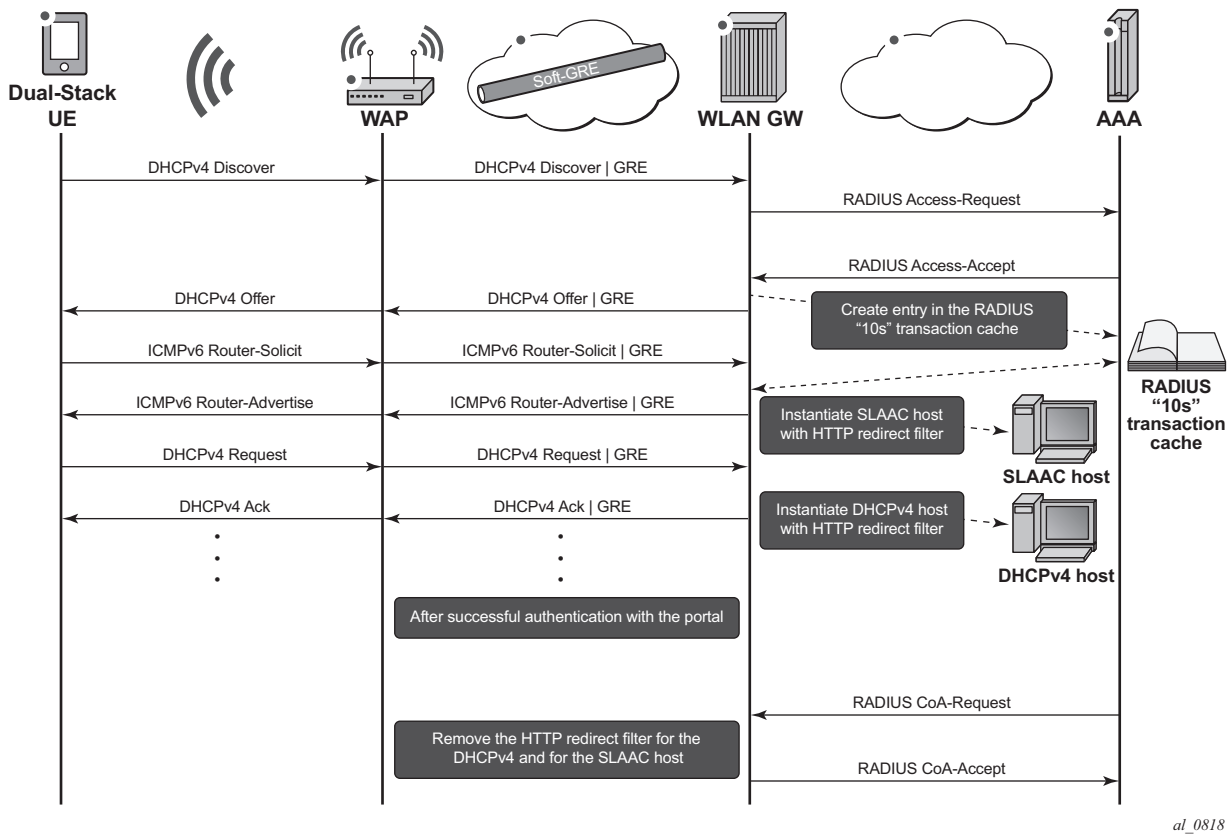


Figure 203: DHCPv4 + SLAAC/64 — Open SSID

With a closed SSID, there is a separation between the authentication and authorization phases. When a UE connects to a WiFi with closed SSID in WPA-Enterprise mode, also known as WPA-802.1X mode, the UE initiates authentication before it obtains an IP address. The WLAN-GW is aware of the successful authentication when it receives the DHCPv4 Discover, the ICMPv6 Router-Solicit, or the DHCPv6 Solicit.

As with ESMv6, the WLAN-GW supports SLAAC/64 and DHCPv6/128 Identity Association for Non-temporary Addresses (IA_NA). DHCPv6 Identity Association for Prefix Delegation (IA_PD) is not supported because the UEs are considered as individual hosts that have direct Layer 2 connectivity with the WLAN-GW. Devices that use the UE as an IPv6 gateway are currently not supported.

For SLAAC/64 hosts, the DNS information can be advertised with the recursive DNS server (RDNSS) option [RFC6106] via SLAAC or via stateless DHCPv6 [RFC3736]. For DHCPv6/128 hosts, the DNS information is advertised via DNS options for DHCPv6 [RFC3646]. If the AP supports a Lightweight DHCPv6 Relay Agent (LDRA), the WLAN-GW can learn the AP MAC address and the SSID that the UE connects to if the DHCPv6 Interface-Id option is in the format

<ap-mac>:<ssid>:{o (open) | s (secure)} This information can then be used in subsequent accounting messages.

The following three IPv4/v6 dual-stack UE IP address assignment models are available:

- DHCPv4 + SLAAC/64
- DHCPv4 + SLAAC/64 with DHCPv4 linking
- DHCPv4 + DHCPv6/128 IA_NA

In the DHCPv4 + SLAAC/64 model, DHCPv4 DORA and SLAAC/64 are processed independently of each other. If successful, two IPoE hosts are instantiated on the WLAN-GW for a particular UE: a DHCPv4 IPoE host and an IPv6 SLAAC/64 host.

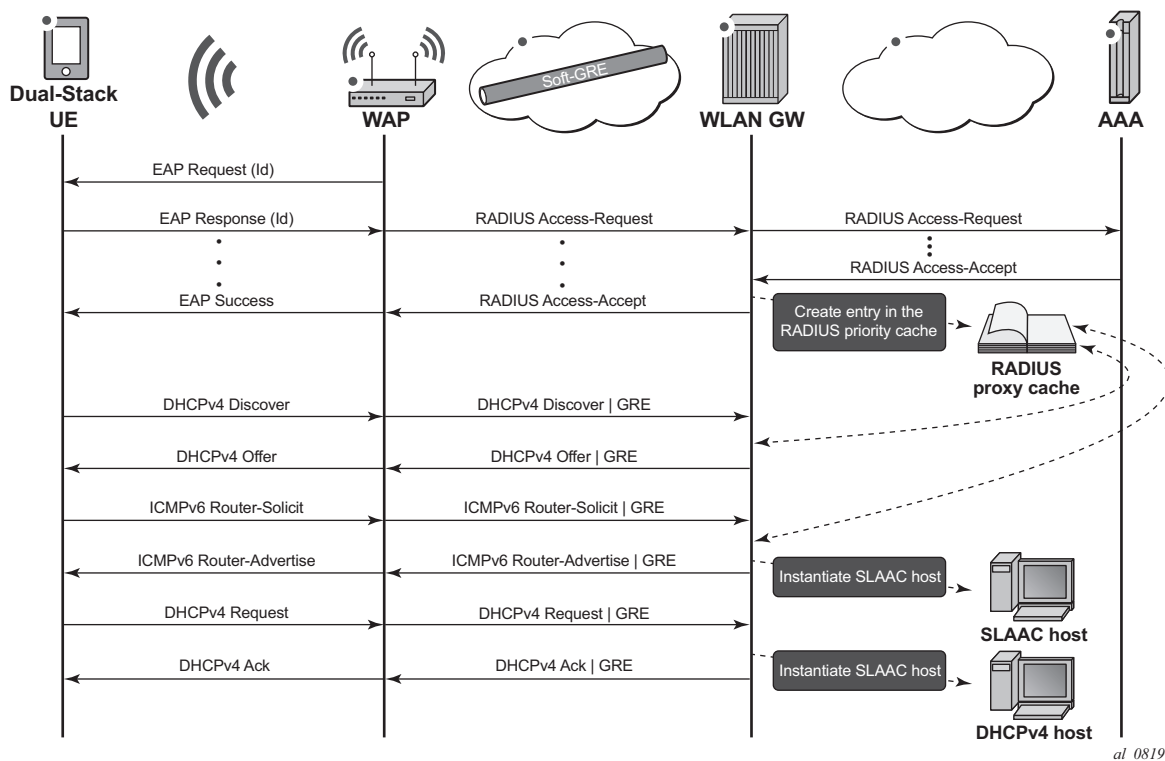
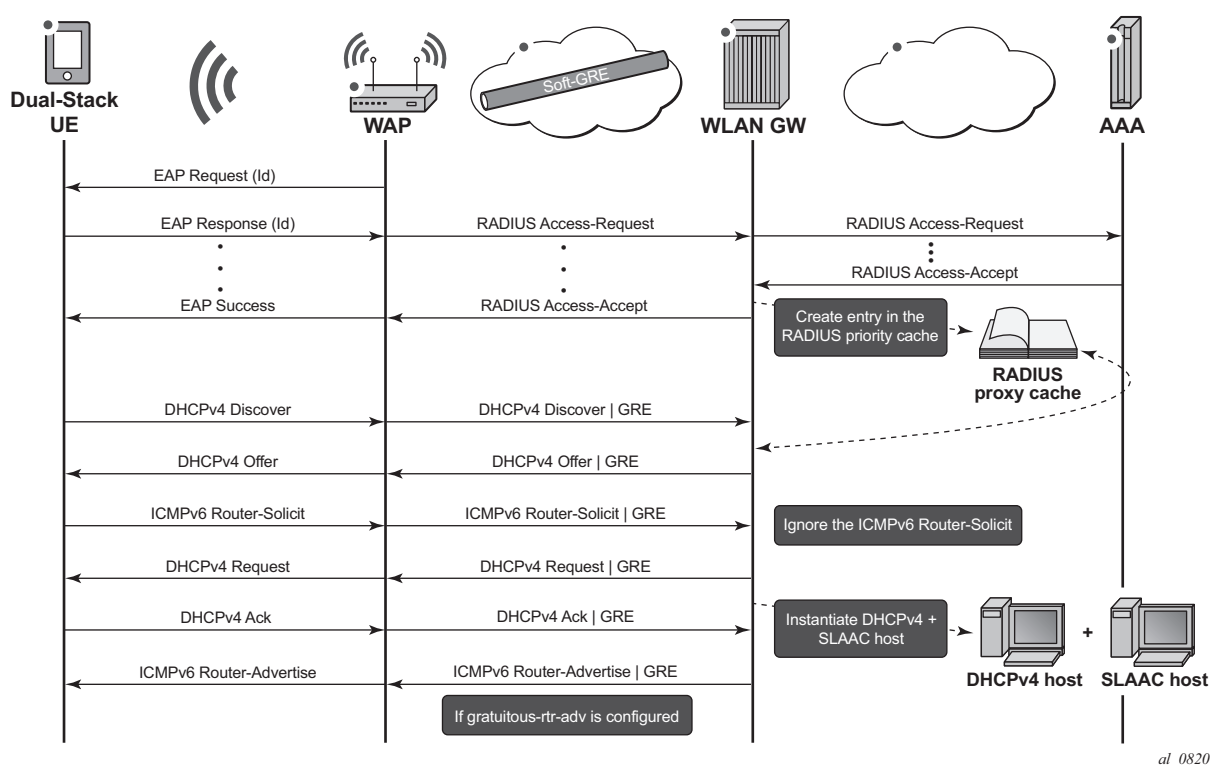


Figure 204: DHCPv4 + SLAAC/64 Model — Closed SSID

When the AP sends a RADIUS Accounting-Stop for a particular UE while track-accounting is enabled for Accounting-Stop messages, both the DHCPv4 IPoE host and the IPv6 SLAAC/64 host will be removed.

However, it is not always possible for the AP to send RADIUS accounting messages (for example, in the case of an open SSID). Because SLAAC has no renew or release mechanism, the only way to delete a SLAAC host is to determine which UE was stopped using the SLAAC prefix; for example, by using idle-timeout and/or by periodic Subscriber Host Connectivity Verification (SHCV).

In the DHCPv4 + SLAAC/64 with DHCPv4 linking model, a SLAAC/64 host is instantiated when a DHCPv4 host is instantiated. The state of the SLAAC/64 host is linked to the state of the DHCPv4 host. This is useful to speed up the removal of the SLAAC host in cases where the AP does not send RADIUS accounting messages. With DHCPv4 linking, when the DHCPv4 host is removed, also the SLAAC/64 host is removed.



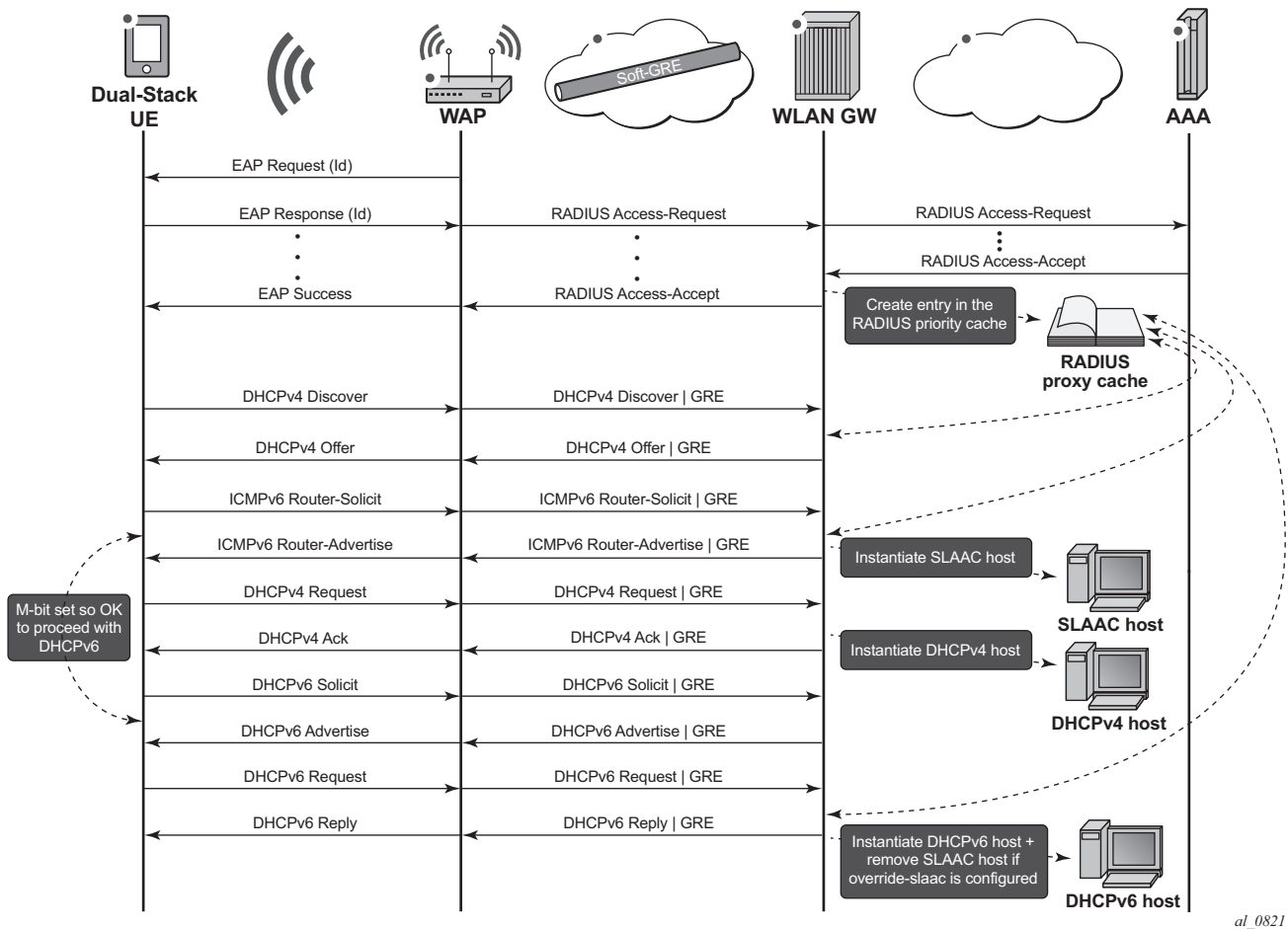
al_0820

Figure 205: DHCPv4 + SLAAC/64 with DHCPv4 Linking Model — Closed SSID

In the DHCPv4 + DHCPv6/128 IA_NA model, similar to the DHCPv4 + SLAAC/64 model, DHCPv4 DORA and DHCPv6/128 IA_NA are processed independently of each other. SLAAC/64 is optional in this model although it is typically enabled because some UEs do not support DHCPv6.

UEs that do support stateful address auto-configuration only initiate DHCPv6 when they receive an ICMPv6 Router-Advertisement with the M-bit set (RFC 2462, *IPv6 Stateless Address*

Autoconfiguration). Because the WLAN-GW does not know whether the UE supports DHCPv6, the WLAN-GW must include a SLAAC/64 prefix in the ICMPv6 Router-Advertisement, also for UEs that do support DHCPv6. Therefore, for a UE that does support DHCPv6, three IPoE hosts are instantiated in the WLAN-GW. To avoid this, the WLAN-GW can be configured to flush the SLAAC/64 host when a DHCPv6/128 IA_NA host is established. The UE should always prefer the DHCPv6/128 IA_NA address for sending data traffic above the IPv6 address derived from the SLAAC/64 prefix.



al_0821

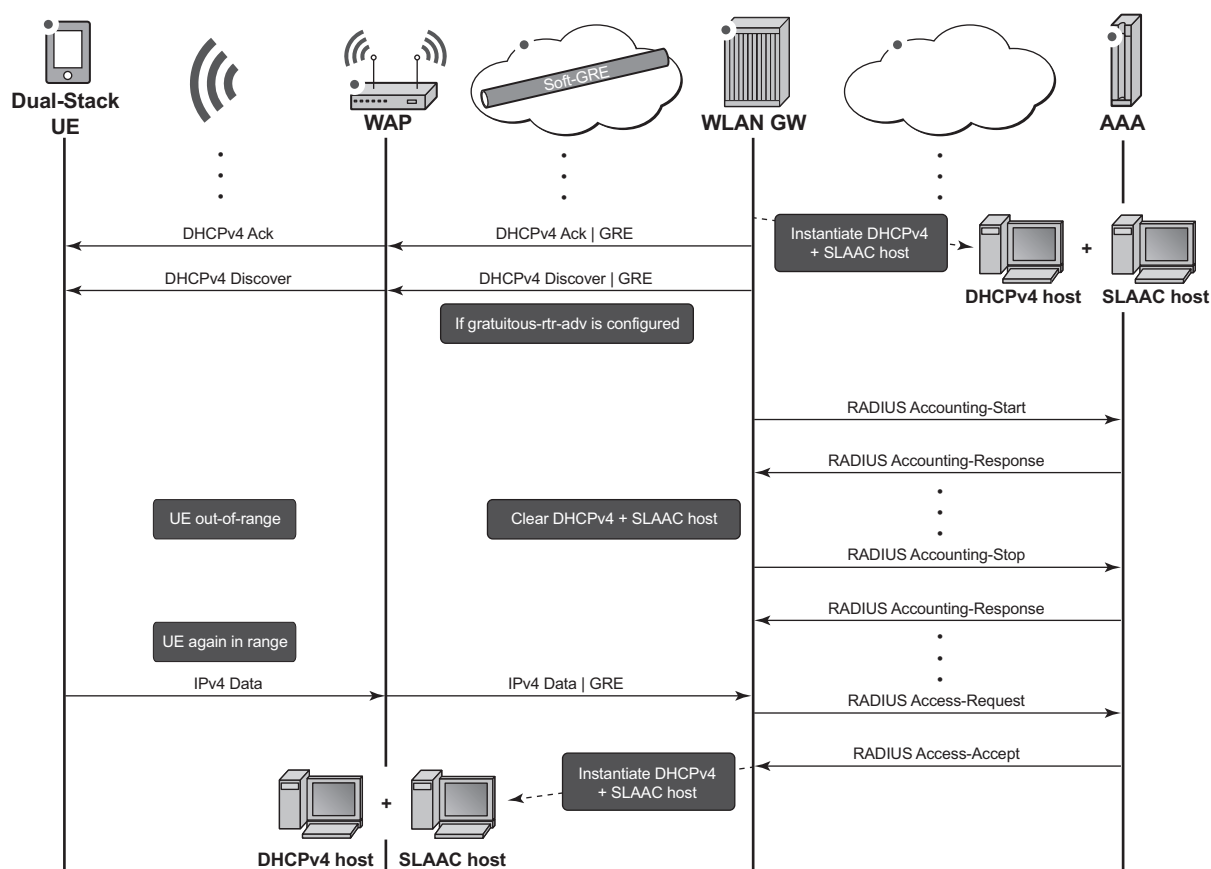
Figure 206: DHCPv4 + DHCPv6/128 IA_NA Model — Closed SSID

As with ESMv6, the SLAAC/64 prefix could come from the Local User Database (LUDB); this is typically not used because it requires configuring individual UE MAC addresses with their associated SLAAC/64 prefix. Alternatively, the SLAAC/64 prefix could come from RADIUS via the Framed-IPv6-Prefix attribute, or from a local SLAAC prefix pool that is referenced in the LUDB or from RADIUS via the Alc-SLAAC-IPv6-Pool attribute.

The DHCPv6/128 prefix comes from a DHCPv6 server that could be local (collocated with the WLAN-GW) or external, or from RADIUS via the Alc-IPv6-Address attribute. When a DHCPv6 server is used, the WLAN-GW relays the DHCPv6 messages between the UE and the local or external DHCPv6 server. If the DHCPv6/128 prefix comes from RADIUS/LUDB, the WLAN-GW must be configured as a DHCPv6 proxy server.

Note that IPv6 for WLAN-GW UEs is not supported in combination with certain other features, which include GPRS Tunneling Protocol (GTP(v2)) offload, migrant UEs, and data-triggered authentication (DTA).

Data-triggered authentication is not supported for IPv6 hosts, which means that an IPv6 packet from a UE for which no ESM context exists will not trigger RADIUS authentication. However, by using SLAAC/64 with DHCPv4 linking, the SLAAC host will be created together with the DHCPv4 host by successful completion of IPv4 data-triggered authentication. This requires the RADIUS Access-Accept to contain the necessary DHCPv4 and SLAAC/64 attributes.



al_0822

Figure 207: DHCPv4 + SLAAC/64 with DHCPv4 Linking Model — DTA

IPv6 is also not supported for migrant UEs, which means that ICMPv6 Router-Solicitation and DHCPv6 Solicit messages will be dropped by the WLAN-GW as long as the UE is in a migrant state. However, by using SLAAC/64 with DHCPv4 linking, when the UE becomes an ESM subscriber and a DHCPv4 host is created, a SLAAC/64 host is also created.

Configuration

Open Versus Closed SSID

The configuration examples in this chapter always refer to a closed SSID scenario. With an open SSID, the lookup in the RADIUS proxy cache is typically not configured. Instead, an authentication policy is directly referenced.

```
configure service vprn 2 customer 1 create
  subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
    group-interface "group-int-1" wlangw create
      authentication-policy "auth-pol-1"
      dhcp
        no user-db
      exit
    exit
  exit
exit
exit
```

DHCPv4 + SLAAC/64 Model

In this model, DHCPv4 and SLAAC/64 are enabled independently of each other. The autonomous flag tells the UE that the IPv6 prefix in the ICMPv6 Router-Advertisement can be used for SLAAC. The no on-link configuration commands the UE to always perform neighbor discovery for the WLAN-GW, even for destinations within the IPv6 prefix.

```
configure service vprn 2 customer 1 create
  subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
    address 10.255.255.254/8
    ipv6
      subscriber-prefixes
        prefix 2001:db8:ffff::/48 wan-host
      exit
    exit
  group-interface "group-int-1" wlangw create
    ipv6
      router-advertisements
        no managed-configuration
        no other-stateful-configuration
        dns-options
          include-dns
        exit
        prefix-options
          autonomous
          no on-link
        exit
        no shutdown
      exit
    exit
```

DHCPv4 + SLAAC/64 Model

```
        router-solicit
            user-db "ludb-1"
            no shutdown
        exit
    exit
    ipoe-linking
        shutdown
    exit
    sap-parameters
        sub-sla-mgmt
            def-sub-id use-auto-id
            sub-ident-policy "policy-sub-ident-1"
        exit
    exit
    dhcp
        proxy-server
            emulated-server 172.16.0.1
            no shutdown
        exit
        lease-populate 10000
        user-db "ludb-1"
        no shutdown
    exit
    ip-mtu 1454
    wlan-gw
        gw-address 172.16.74.244
        gw-ipv6-address 2001:db8::1:1
        router 1
        tcp-mss-adjust 1400
        wlan-gw-group 1
        no shutdown
    exit
exit
exit
no shutdown
exit
```

The SLAAC/64 prefix can come from the RADIUS server, as in the following RADIUS users file:

```
"user-1" Cleartext-Password := "pass-1"
    Alc-Subsc-ID-Str := "user-1",
    Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str := "sub-profile-1",
    Alc-SLA-Prof-Str := "sla-profile-1",
    Framed-IP-Address := 10.255.0.1,
    Alc-Primary-DNS := 67.138.54.100,
    Framed-IPv6-Prefix := 2001:db8:ffff::/64,
    Alc-IPv6-Primary-Dns := 2001:db8::8:8:8:8,
    Alc-IPv6-Secondary-Dns := 2001:db8::8:8:4:4
```

If the UE is successfully connected, two IPoE hosts will exist on the WLAN-GW.

```
*A:WLAN-GW # show service active-subscribers
=====
Active Subscribers
=====
-----
Subscriber user-1 (sub-profile-1)
-----
-----
(1) SLA Profile Instance sap:[4/2/nat-out-ip:2049.4] - sla:sla-profile-1
-----
-----
IP Address          MAC Address          PPPoE-SID Origin
-----
10.255.0.1          b0:9f:ba:b9:40:f8 N/A          DHCP
2001:db8:ffff::/64  b0:9f:ba:b9:40:f8 N/A          IPoE-SLAAC
-----
Number of active subscribers : 1
-----
```

The trigger that created the SLAAC host and the origin is shown by issuing:

```
*A:WLAN-GW # show service id 2 slaac host detail
=====
SLAAC hosts for service 2
=====
Service ID          : 2
Prefix              : 2001:db8:ffff::/64
Interface Id        : N/A
Mac Address         : b0:9f:ba:b9:40:f8
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface     : group-int-1
SAP                 : [4/2/nat-out-ip:2049.4]
Creation Time       : 2015/07/09 11:24:19
Persistence Key     : N/A

IPoE Trigger        : rtr-solicit
Last Auth Time      : 2015/07/09 11:24:19
Inactivity Timer    : 0d 00:03:59

Sub-Ident           : "user-1"
Sub-Profile-String  : "sub-profile-1"
SLA-Profile-String  : "sla-profile-1"
App-Profile-String  : ""
ANCP-String         : ""
Int Dest Id         : ""
Category-Map-Name   : ""

Info origin         : radius
Pool                : ""

Primary-Dns         : 2001:db8::8:8:8:8
Secondary-Dns       : 2001:db8::8:8:4:4
```

DHCPv4 + SLAAC/64 Model

```
Circuit Id          : N/A
Remote Id           : N/A
-----
Number of hosts : 1
=====
```

The SLAAC/64 prefix can also come from a local SLAAC prefix pool:

```
configure service vprn 2 customer 1 create
  dhcp6
    local-dhcp-server "local-dhcp-server-1" create
      use-pool-from-client
      pool "slaac-prefix-pool-1" create
        prefix 2001:db8:ffff:ffff::/64 wan-host create
          options
            dns-server 2001:db8::8:8:8:8
          exit
        exit
      exit
    exit
  no shutdown
exit
exit
exit
```

The subscriber interface must then be configured with local-address-assignment enabled:

```
configure service vprn 2 customer 1 create
  subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
    group-interface "group-int-1" wlangw create
      local-address-assignment
        ipv6
          client-application ipoe-slaac
          server "local-dhcp-server-1"
        exit
      no shutdown
    exit
  exit
exit
exit
```

The origin of the SLAAC host then changes to:

```
*A:WLAN-GW # show service id 2 slaac host detail | match origin
Info origin      : localPool
```

DHCPv4 + SLAAC/64 with DHCPv4 linking model

In this model, DHCPv4 linking instantiates a SLAAC/64 host when a DHCPv4 host is instantiated. This requires **ipoe-linking** to be configured:

```
configure service vprn 2 customer 1 create
  subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
    address 10.255.255.254/8
    ipv6
      subscriber-prefixes
        prefix 2001:db8:ffff::/48 wan-host
      exit
    exit
  exit
  group-interface "group-int-1" wlangw create
    ipv6
      router-advertisements
        no managed-configuration
        no other-stateful-configuration
        dns-options
          include-dns
        exit
        prefix-options
          autonomous
          no on-link
        exit
        no shutdown
      exit
      router-solicit
        shutdown
      exit
    exit
  ipoe-linking
    gratuitous-rtr-adv
    no shutdown
  exit
  sap-parameters
    sub-sla-mgmt
      def-sub-id use-auto-id
      sub-ident-policy "policy-sub-ident-1"
    exit
  exit
  dhcp
    proxy-server
      emulated-server 172.16.0.1
      no shutdown
    exit
    lease-populate 10000
    user-db "ludb-1"
    no shutdown
  exit
  ip-mtu 1454
  wlan-gw
    gw-address 172.16.74.244
    gw-ipv6-address 2001:db8::1:1
    router 1
    tcp-mss-adjust 1400
    wlan-gw-group 1
    no shutdown
  exit
```

DHCPv4 + SLAAC/64 Model

```
        exit
    exit
    no shutdown
exit
```

Note that DHCPv4 linking is mutually exclusive with ICMPv6 Router-Solicit handling. Configuring DHCPv4 linking while ICMPv6 Router-Solicit handling is still enabled results in the following error:

```
*A:WLAN-GW # configure service vprn 2 subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" group-interface
"group-int-1" ipoe-linking no shutdown
MINOR: SVCMGR #1543 Can't enable linking if router solicit authentication is enabled
```

Similarly, enabling ICMPv6 Router-Solicit handling while DHCPv4 linking is still enabled, results in the following error:

```
*A:WLAN-GW # configure service vprn 2 subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" group-interface
"group-int-1" ipv6 router-solicit no shutdown
MINOR: SVCMGR #1544 Can't enable router solicit authentication if linking is enabled
```

As with the DHCPv4 + SLAAC/64 model without DHCPv4 linking, if the UE is successfully connected, two IPoE hosts will exist on the WLAN-GW:

```
*A:WLAN-GW # show service active-subscribers
=====
Active Subscribers
=====
-----
Subscriber user-1 (sub-profile-1)
-----
(1) SLA Profile Instance sap:[4/2/nat-out-ip:2049.4] - sla:sla-profile-1
-----
IP Address
-----
MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin
-----
10.255.0.1
                b0:9f:ba:b9:40:f8 N/A      DHCP
2001:db8:ffff::/64
                b0:9f:ba:b9:40:f8 N/A      IPoE-SLAAC
-----
Number of active subscribers : 1
-----
```


The trigger that created the SLAAC host and the origin is shown by issuing:

```
*A:WLAN-GW # show service id 2 slaac host detail
=====
SLAAC hosts for service 2
=====
Service ID           : 2
Prefix               : 2001:db8:ffff::/64
Interface Id         : N/A
Mac Address          : b0:9f:ba:b9:40:f8
Subscriber-interface : sub-int-1
Group-interface      : group-int-1
SAP                  : [4/2/nat-out-ip:2049.4]
Creation Time        : 2015/07/09 11:49:42
Persistence Key      : N/A

IPoE Trigger         : linking
Last Auth Time       : N/A
Inactivity Timer     : N/A

Sub-Ident            : "user-1"
Sub-Profile-String   : "sub-profile-1"
SLA-Profile-String   : "sla-profile-1"
App-Profile-String   : ""
ANCP-String          : ""
Int Dest Id          : ""
Category-Map-Name    : ""

Info origin          : radius
Pool                 : ""

Primary-Dns           : 2001:db8::8:8:8:8
Secondary-Dns         : 2001:db8::8:8:4:4

Circuit Id           : N/A
Remote Id             : N/A
-----
Number of hosts : 1
=====
```

Clearing the DHCPv4 host results in both the DHCPv4 host and the SLAAC host being deleted.

```
*A:WLAN-GW # clear service id 2 dhcp lease-state mac b0:9f:ba:b9:40:f8

*A:WLAN-GW # show service active-subscribers
=====
Active Subscribers
=====
-----
No active subscribers found
-----
```

DHCPv4 + DHCPv6/128 IA_NA Model

Because some UEs do not support DHCPv6, this model configures DHCPv4 + DHCPv6/128 IA_NA with SLAAC/64 enabled. To avoid having two IPv6oE hosts set up for the UEs that do support DHCPv6, the **allow-multiple-wan-addresses** and **override-slaac** parameters are both configured. The **allow-multiple-wan-addresses** allows handling of DHCPv6 when a SLAAC host exists already, and the **override-slaac** parameter removes the SLAAC host after successful assignment of an IPv6 address via DHCPv6:

```
configure service vprn 2 customer 1 create
  subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
    address 10.255.255.254/8
    ipv6
      subscriber-prefixes
        prefix 2001:db8:ffff::/48 wan-host
      exit
    exit
  group-interface "group-int-1" wlangw create
    ipv6
      allow-multiple-wan-addresses
      router-advertisements
        managed-configuration
        other-stateful-configuration
        dns-options
          include-dns
        exit
        prefix-options
          autonomous
          no on-link
        exit
        no shutdown
      exit
      router-solicit
        user-db "ludb-1"
        no shutdown
      exit
      dhcp6
        user-db "ludb-1"
        proxy-server
          no shutdown
        exit
        override-slaac
      exit
    exit
  ipoe-linking
    shutdown
  exit
  sap-parameters
    sub-sla-mgmt
      def-sub-id use-auto-id
      sub-ident-policy "policy-sub-ident-1"
    exit
  exit
  dhcp
    proxy-server
```

```

        emulated-server 172.16.0.1
        no shutdown
    exit
    lease-populate 10000
    user-db "ludb-1"
    no shutdown
exit
ip-mtu 1454
wlan-gw
    gw-address 172.16.74.244
    gw-ipv6-address 2001:db8::1:1
    router 1
    tcp-mss-adjust 1400
    wlan-gw-group 1
    no shutdown
exit
exit
exit
no shutdown
exit

```

If the UE is successfully connected, two IPoE hosts will exist on the WLAN-GW:

```

*A:WLAN-GW # show service active-subscribers
=====
Active Subscribers
=====
-----
Subscriber user-1 (sub-profile-1)
-----
(1) SLA Profile Instance sap:[4/2/nat-out-ip:2049.4] - sla:sla-profile-1
-----
IP Address
-----
MAC Address      PPPoE-SID Origin
-----
10.255.0.1       b0:9f:ba:b9:40:f8 N/A      DHCP
2001:db8:ffff::1/128
                  b0:9f:ba:b9:40:f8 N/A      IPoE-DHCP6
-----
Number of active subscribers : 1
-----

```

The origin of the DHCPv6 lease is shown by issuing:

```
*A:WLAN-GW # show service id 2 dhcp6 lease-state
=====
DHCP lease state table, service 2
=====
IP Address      Mac Address      Sap/Sdp Id      Remaining Lease   MC
                  LeaseTime  Origin  Stdby
-----
2001:db8:ffff::1/128
                  b0:9f:ba:b9:40:f8 [4/2/nat-out-ip:20* 23h59m29s  Radius
-----
Number of lease states : 1
=====
* indicates that the corresponding row element may have been truncated.
```

Conclusion

The WLAN-GW supports IPv4/v6 dual-stack UEs. Although the IPv6 support for UEs can handle single-stack IPv6-only UEs, the UEs only have IPv6 support as an add-on to IPv4.

WiFi Aggregation and Offload — Migrant User Support

In This Chapter

This section provides information about WiFi aggregation and offload for migrant user support configurations.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 1428](#)
- [Overview on page 1429](#)
- [Configuration on page 1437](#)
- [Conclusion on page 1441](#)

Applicability

This example is applicable to all 7750 SR platforms supporting WLAN gateway (WLAN-GW) IOMs (IOM3-XP and 2xISAs). It provides a functional description of “migrant user” handling on 7750 WLAN-GW and the corresponding configuration. It assumes the user is aware of the general operations and configuration of the basic WLAN-GW function as already described in the 7750 SR OS Triple Play guide.

The configuration with migrant user support enabled was tested on release 11.0R4.

Overview

The term “Migrant user” refers to user equipment (UEs) that connects to a WiFi network service set identification (SSID) but moves out of the range of the access point before initiating or completing authentication. For open-SSIDs, a migrant user may stay in the range of the access point just long enough to get a DHCP lease from the WLAN-GW. In actual WiFi deployments with portal authentication, it has been observed that a large percentage of users are migrant such that they get a DHCP lease but do not initiate or complete authentication.

Prior to this feature, an Enhanced Subscriber Management (ESM) host is created when the DHCP process completes. This results in the consumption of resources on both the CPM and IOM, limiting the ESM scale and performance for fully authenticated active users. This feature adds support to create an ESM host only after a user has been fully authenticated, either via a web portal or with an AAA server based on completing EAP exchange. In addition, with this feature L2-aware NAT is required, such that each UE gets the same shared configured inside IP address from the ISA via DHCP. Until a user is authenticated, forwarding of user traffic is constrained (via policy) to DNS and portal server access only.

Each user is allocated a small number of configured NAT outside ports to minimize public IP address consumption for unauthenticated users. Once the user is successfully authenticated, as indicated via a RADIUS Change of Authorization (COA) on successful portal authentication, an ESM host is created, and the L2-aware NAT is applied via a normal per-subscriber NAT policy. The inside IP address of the user does not change. The outside IP pool used is as per the NAT policy, and the L2-aware NAT could be 1:1 or NAT with larger number of outside ports than in the un-authenticated phase. If a user is already pre-authenticated (for example if the RADIUS server remembers the MAC address of the UE from a previous successful portal authentication) then the initial access-accept from RADIUS will trigger the creation of the ESM host.

Migrant User Support for Open SSID Based on Portal Authentication

Sequence Of Events

1. DHCP Is Received From UE On ISA

Based on the DHCP and L2-aware NAT configuration on the ISA, an IP address is assigned to the user via DHCP. The DHCP and L2-aware NAT configuration is under the soft-gre node under the group-interface, or under vlan-tag range under the soft-gre node on the group-interface.

A different DHCP lease-time can be configured for an un-authenticated user (initial-lease-time) and an authenticated user (active-lease-time) for which an ESM host has been created. It is suggested that the initial lease be configured to a smaller value while the UE is migrant so that resources can be reclaimed quickly for a truly migrant user that will not complete authentication.

In addition to lease-times, DHCP return options, for example primary and secondary DNS and NBNS server addresses, that can be configured. This configuration can be per soft-GRE group interface or per VLAN range (where a VLAN tag corresponds to an SSID).

Up to 512 bytes of received DHCP options from clients are stored on the ISA. Once the DHCP ACK is sent back to the UE from the ISA, the UE will be created on the ISA in “migrant (or unauthenticated) state”.

A configured L2-aware IP address is returned to each UE and a temporary L2-aware host is created on the anchor ISA for the UE. The NAT policy applicable to this L2-aware NAT for UE in migrant state is also configured under the group-interface (under soft-gre node or under vlan-tag range).

ARP requests coming from the UE in migrant state will be responded to from the ISA. The authentication to RADIUS is triggered on receiving the first Layer 3 data packet as opposed to on a DHCP DISCOVER.

2. Layer 3 Data Packet Received on the ISA

The first Layer 3 packet (other than DHCP) will trigger RADIUS authentication from the ISA based on configured **isa-radius-policy** in the **configure>aaa** context. The user-name in the access-request is as per the user-name-format configured in the isa-radius-policy. By default it is the MAC address of the UE. The isa-radius-policy can be configured as the authentication policy under the soft-gre group-interface, or under specific VLAN tag ranges on the soft-gre group-interface. The latter allows for the use of a different authentication policy per SSID.

The RADIUS packets from the ISA are sourced with the IP address owned by the ISA. Each ISA in the WLAN-GW group gets an IP address from a set of contiguous addresses,

the start of which is configurable in isa-radius-policy. The nas-ip-address sent in access-request message is configurable in the isa-radius-policy as the ISA's local IP address or the system IP address. In case the RADIUS server is behind a load-balancer which updates the source IP address of the RADIUS messages, the RADIUS server may use nas-ip-address to route the RADIUS response back. In this case the nas-ip-address should be configured as the ISA's IP address otherwise the response would incorrectly be routed to the CPM instead of the ISA.

The debug output below shows a RADIUS accept-request being sent to the RADIUS server on reception of first Layer 3 packet. The debug can be enabled by issuing:

```
debug router "management" radius packet-type authentication | accounting | coa

253 2013/08/07 20:58:35.53 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base WLAN-GW
"WLAN-GW: MDA 2/1, SeqNo 11830
  Info:      anchor egressing frame
          radius-auth-req

  IP/UDP:    from 192.168.0.2:1142 to 192.0.2.3:1812

RADIUS:     Access-Request (continued)
"

254 2013/08/07 20:58:35.53 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base RADIUS
"RADIUS: Transmit
  Access-Request(1) 192.168.0.2:1142 id 40 len 158 vrid 1
    NAS IP ADDRESS [4] 4 192.0.2.3
    NAS PORT TYPE [61] 4 Virtual(5)
    NAS PORT ID [87] 43 GRE rtr-3#lip-192.168.0.1#rip-192.0.2.1
    USER NAME [1] 17 00:0a:0a:00:01:00
    PASSWORD [2] 16 rCmhFboYeM2M8hOuBYJXJk
    CALLING STATION ID [31] 17 00:0a:0a:00:01:00
    VSA [26] 19 Alcatel(6527)
    CHADDR [27] 17 00:0a:0a:00:01:00
"
```

Received Layer 3 packets from the UE are handled as per the redirect-policy configured under the soft-gre group-interface or under applicable VLAN tag range on the soft-gre interface.

The redirect-policy is an IP ACL that should contain one more “forward rules” for traffic that should be forwarded while the UE is pending portal authentication. This typically should include traffic to and from DNS and web portal and is subjected to temporary L2-aware NAT. The redirect-policy also specifies the URL for redirecting triggered by http packets. The redirect-policy and/or the redirect URL can also be overridden via the RADIUS access-accept. Any other non-http traffic that does not match the forward rules is dropped.

While a UE is pending portal authentication no accounting messages are sent to the AAA server. Disconnect-Message from AAA server is supported while the UE is pending authentication.

3. Access-accept from RADIUS

The access-accept is received on the ISA from which the access-request was generated. The initial access-accept from RADIUS can indicate if a user needs to be authenticated by the portal or is a pre-authenticated user. The indication is based on inclusion of a “redirect policy” applicable to the user in a vendor specific attribute (VSA) (Alc-Wlan-Portal-Redirect, type = string) received from the RADIUS server. The access-accept can also include a redirect URL VSA (Alc-Wlan-Portal-Url, type = string) for the user. An empty Alc-Wlan-Portal_redirect VSA forces the use of the redirect policy that is locally specified under the soft-gre interface or under vlan-tag ranges on soft-gre interface. The redirect-policy is created under sub-mgmt node.

The UE state is changed to “portal” to indicate the UE is pending portal authentication and has limited access.

The debug below shows the RADIUS accept-request being received from the RADIUS server and being processed by the WLAN-GW.

```
255 2013/08/07 20:58:35.61 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base WLAN-GW
"WLAN-GW: MDA 2/1, SeqNo 11831
  Info:      anchor ingressing frame
           portal auth-accept

  IP/UDP:    from 192.0.2.3:1812 to 192.168.0.2:1142

RADIUS:     Access-Accept (continued)
"

256 2013/08/07 20:58:35.62 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base RADIUS
"RADIUS: Receive
  Access-Accept(2) id 40 len 64 from 192.0.2.3:1812 vrid 1
    VSA [26] 14 Alcatel(6527)
      SUBSC ID STR [11] 12 migrant_user
    VSA [26] 18 Alcatel(6527)
      WLAN PORTAL REDIRECT [172] 16 redirect-policy-1
"
```

The following command is used to display UE information on the ISA, including the state of the UE and the GRE tunnel to the AP through which the UE is connected.

```
*A:PE-1# tools dump wlan-gw ue
=====
Matched 1 session on Slot #2 MDA #1
=====
UE-Mac      : 00:0a:0a:00:01:00      UE-vlan     : N/A
UE IP Addr  : 10.0.0.10              Description  : Portal
UE timeout  : 288 sec                Auth-time   : 08/07/13 20:58:35
Tunnel MDA  : 2/2                    Tunnel Router : 10
MPLS label  : 3000                   Shaper      : Default
GRE Src IP Addr : 192.0.2.2          GRE Dst IP Addr : 192.168.0.1
Anchor SAP  : 2/1/nat-out-ip:2049.1
Last-forward : None                  Last-move   : None
Rx Frames   : 0                      Rx Octets   : 0
Tx Frames   : 0                      Tx Octets   : 0
```

```
-----
=====
No sessions on Slot #2 MDA #2 match the query
```

If neither of the two redirect related VSAs are included in access-accept, then this indicates a “pre-authenticated user”, and an ESM host is created for the subscriber with a subscriber-profile and other subscriber configuration from access-accept; from here normal ESM based forwarding occurs for the subscriber.

If a user is determined as a “pre-authenticated user”, a message is generated to the CPM to create an ESM host. The information received from RADIUS in the access-accept message (for example subscriber-profile, app-profile etc) and the information from DHCP (for example the DHCP options) are passed in this message.

4. COA from RADIUS

When user’s credentials entered on the portal are successfully verified, the portal triggers the AAA server to generate COA to WLAN-GW. The COA serves as a trigger to create an ESM host. The COA MUST contain the subscriber-id and user-name, which are used as a key to identify the UE pending portal authentication.

The following shows an example debug of a COA being received from the AAA server.

```
248 2013/08/07 19:12:38.29 UTC MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base RADIUS
"RADIUS: Transmit
  Change of Authorization(43) 192.0.2.3:36776 id 124 len 96 vrid 1
    VSA [26] 19 Alcatel(6527)
      SUBSC ID STR [11] 17 00:0a:0a:00:01:00
    USER NAME [1] 17 00:0a:0a:00:01:00
    VSA [26] 10 Alcatel(6527)
      SLA PROF STR [13] 8 sla-profile-1
    VSA [26] 10 Alcatel(6527)
      SUBSC PROF STR [12] 8 sub-profile-1
"
```

When the COA is received and successfully processed, a COA-ACK is sent back to the AAA server. The COA message is passed to the CPM to create an ESM host. The information received in the COA, as well as stored information from DHCP (for example the DHCP options) are passed in this message. Once the ESM host is successfully created, the state of the UE on the ISA is changed accordingly to “ESM-user“, and can be seen in the output of **tools dump WLAN-GW UE** command, as shown below.

The UE now has full access (and is not restricted by the original redirect-policy). The COA provides a reference to a subscriber profile that contains the NAT policy for an authenticated UE. The UE continues to keep the same inside L2-aware IP address that was provided originally via DHCP on the ISA. However, the NAT for an authenticated user could be an L2-aware 1:1 NAT or NAPT with a different outside pool and outside ports than the UE in migrant state. The ESM host that is created as described above will also result in the creation of a normal L2-aware host. The original temporary L2-aware host is retained for 10 seconds (and then deleted) to ensure the http response from the portal can be successfully routed back to the UE on the existing connection.

```

A:PE-1# tools dump wlan-gw ue
=====
Matched 1 session on Slot #2 MDA #1
=====
UE-Mac           : 00:0a:0a:00:01:00      UE-vlan          : N/A
UE IP Addr       : N/A                    Description      : ESM-user
UE timeout       : N/A                    Auth-time       : 08/07/13 19:12:38
Tunnel MDA       : 2/2                    Tunnel Router    : 10
MPLS label       : 3000                   Shaper          : 1
GRE Src IP Addr  : 192.0.2.2              GRE Dst IP Addr  : 192.168.0.1
Anchor SAP       : 2/1/nat-out-ip:2049.1
Last-forward     : 08/07/13 19:12:25      Last-move       : None
Rx Frames        : 1                      Rx Octets       : 88
Tx Frames        : 1                      Tx Octets       : 222
=====
No sessions on Slot #2 MDA #2 match the query

```

If UE goes out of range such that the idle timeout expires, the ESM host is deleted and an accounting-stop is sent to the AAA server. If a UE then comes back, and still has a valid DHCP lease, it may not send DHCP DISCOVER or REQUEST and continue to send data. The **data-triggered-ue-creation** command can be configured under soft-gre node on the group-interface (or under vlan-tag ranges on the group-interface) to trigger authentication and recreation of the ESM host for this UE.

The overall sequence of events to take a UE from migrant to authenticated state, where the forwarding of UE traffic is not restricted, is shown in [Figure 208](#).

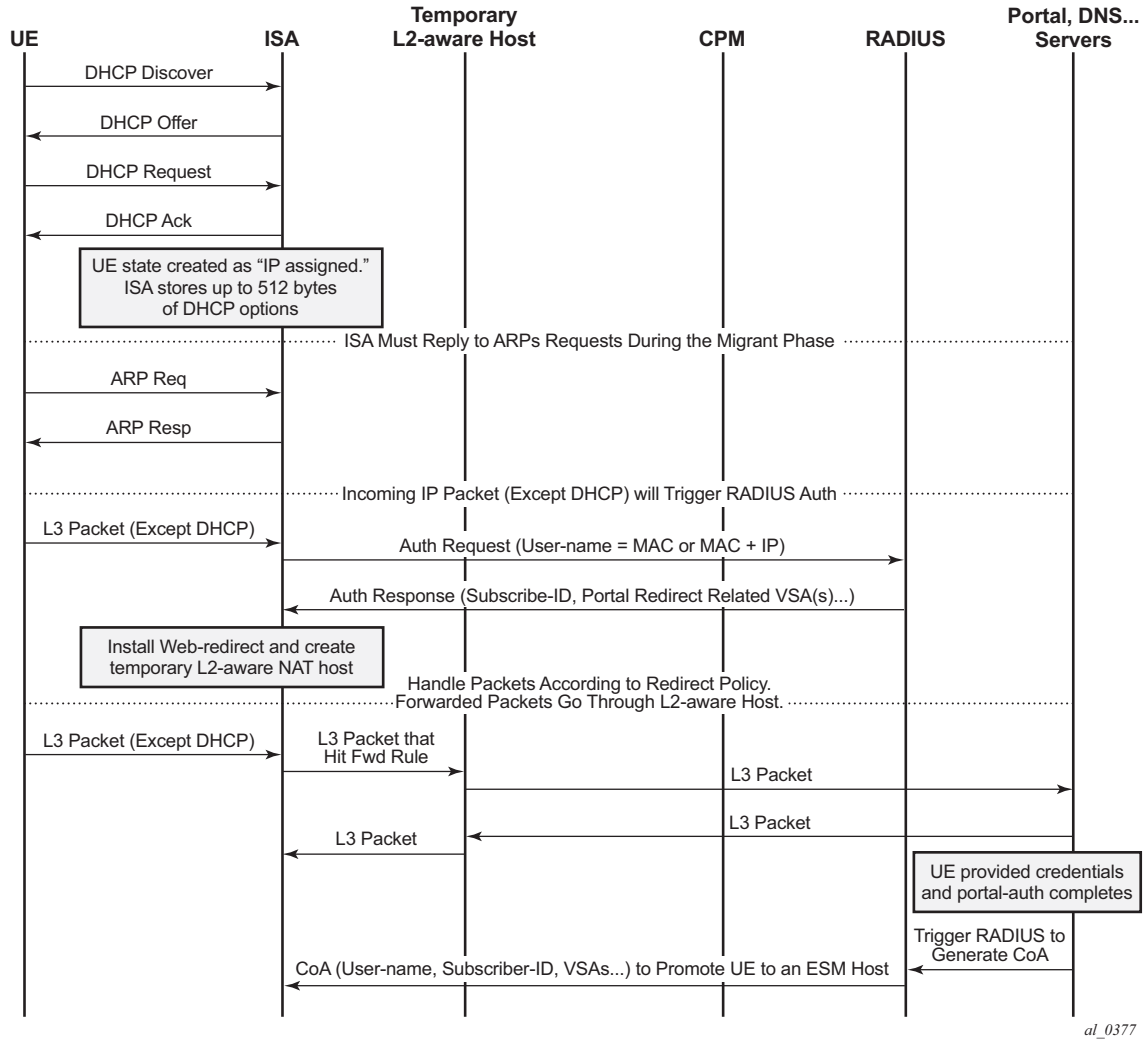


Figure 208: Sequence of Events to Establish and Authenticate a Migrant User (continued)

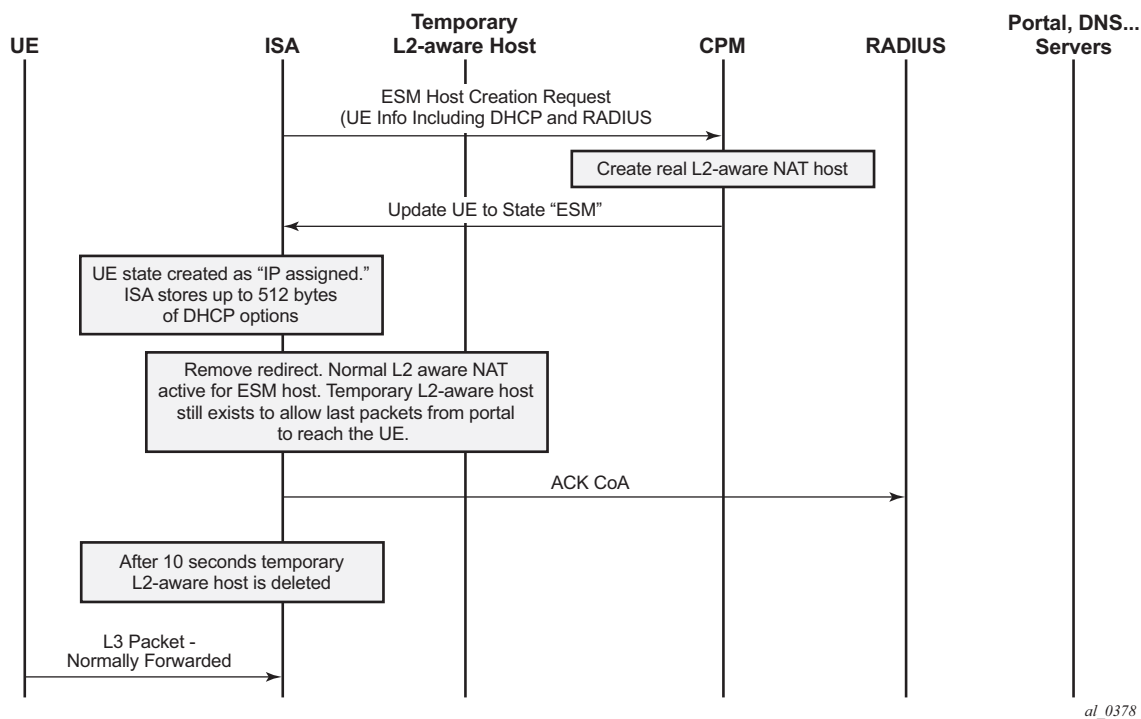


Figure 209: Sequence of Events to Establish and Authenticate a Migrant User

Configuration

The authentication-policy as shown below is used to configure a RADIUS server, and is applicable to the UEs in authenticated state.

```
subscriber-mgmt
authentication-policy "authentication-1" create
password "E40PedK6aqrEIpr2DEoJyVR8PQ3XkFF7" hash2
radius-authentication-server
    source-address 192.0.2.1
    router "management"
    server 1 address 192.0.2.3 secret "6uuGli25Vtl49q0." hash2
exit
accept-authorization-change
include-radius-attribute
    acct-session-id
    circuit-id
    remote-id
    nas-port-id
    nas-identifier
    nas-port-type
    pppoe-service-name
    dhcp-options
    dhcp-vendor-class-id
    access-loop-options
    mac-address
    called-station-id
    calling-station-id sap-string
    tunnel-server-attrs
```

An isa-radius-policy is required for authentication from the ISA, as below – this contains the attributes to be sent in the access request message to the RADIUS server, which is also configured in this policy.

```
aaa
isa-radius-policy "isa-policy-1" create
nas-ip-address-origin isa-ip
password "CAO6ALDnhyBJERE4xnXoW15MQ/hu74x5nDE7F.OJxHM" hash2
auth-include-attributes
    called-station-id
    calling-station-id
    circuit-id
    dhcp-options
    dhcp-vendor-class-id
    mac-address
    nas-identifier
    nas-port-id
    nas-port-type
    remote-id
exit
servers
    router 1
    source-address-range 192.168.0.2
```

Configuration

```
server 1 create
  authentication
  coa
  ip-address 192.0.2.3
  secret "CA06ALDnhyBJERE4xnXoW15MQ/hu74x5nDE7F.OJxHM" hash2
  no shutdown
exit
exit
exit
exit
```

The HTTP redirect policy is shown below, this is enforced on ISA while a UE is migrant and contains the configurations defining the forwarding of traffic in this state.

```
subscriber-mgmt
  http-redirect-policy "redirect-policy-1" create
  url "http://66.185.84.163"
  forward-entries
    dst-ip 192.168.1.1 protocol udp dst-port 53
    dst-ip 192.168.1.2 protocol udp dst-port 53
    dst-ip 66.185.84.163 protocol tcp dst-port 80
    dst-ip 10.0.0.1 protocol udp dst-port 67
    dst-ip 10.0.0.1 protocol udp dst-port 68
  exit
  exit
exit
```

The NAT pool configuration for migrant and authenticated UEs is shown below.

```
vprn 10 customer 1 create
  nat
    inside
      l2-aware
        address 10.0.0.1/24
      exit
    exit
    outside
      pool "migrant-pool-1" nat-group 1 type wlan-gw-anchor create
        address-range 192.168.2.0 192.168.2.255 create
        exit
        no shutdown
      exit
      pool "auth-pool-1" nat-group 1 type l2-aware create
        address-range 192.168.3.0 192.168.3.255 create
        exit
        no shutdown
      exit
    exit
  exit
exit
exit
```

The NAT policy for migrant UEs is as follows.

```
service
  nat
    nat-policy "migrant-policy" create
    pool "migrant-pool-1" router 1
    timeouts
      tcp-established min 1
    exit
  exit
exit
```

Below is the NAT policy for authenticated UEs.

```
service
  nat
    nat-policy "nat-auth-policy-1" create
    pool "auth-pool-1" router 10
  exit
exit
exit
```

The migrant user configuration under the soft-gre group-interface within the VPRN service is shown below. This includes configuration for authentication, DHCP, and forwarding from the ISA, as defined in the sections above. The migrant user related configuration can be specified per VLAN tag (or range) under soft-gre interface, where each VLAN tag represents an SSID.

```
vprn 1 customer 1 create
  subscriber-interface "sub-int-1" create
  address 10.0.0.1/24
  group-interface "soft-gre-1" softgre create
  sap-parameters
    sub-sla-mgmt
      def-sla-profile "sla-profile-1"
      def-sub-id use-auto-id
      def-sub-profile "sub-profile-1"
      sub-ident-policy "sub_ident"
    exit
  exit
  dhcp
    proxy-server
      emulated-server 10.0.0.1
      lease-time hrs 1
      no shutdown
    exit
  trusted
    lease-populate 32767
    gi-address 10.0.0.1
    no shutdown
  exit
```

Configuration

```
authentication-policy "authentication-1"
host-connectivity-verify

soft-gre
  authentication
    authentication-policy "isa-policy-1"
  exit
  gw-address 192.168.0.1
  mobility
    hold-time 0
    trigger data iapp
  exit
  router 1
  wlan-gw-group 1
  vlan-tag-ranges
    range start 100 end 100
    authentication
      authentication-policy "isa-policy-1"
    exit
    data-triggered-ue-creation
    dhcp
      active-lease-time min 12
      initial-lease-time min 5
      l2-aware-ip-address 10.0.0.10
      primary-dns 192.168.1.1
      secondary-dns 192.168.1.2
      no shutdown
    exit
    http-redirect-policy "redirect-policy-1"
    nat-policy "migrant-policy"
  exit
  exit
  no shutdown
exit
exit
exit
exit
exit
```

Conclusion

Migrant user support is a useful feature that optimizes system resources (public IP addresses, ESM hosts, CPU processing, etc.) to provide the scale and performance required in live hot-spot and home-spot WiFi deployments at peak times.

WiFi Aggregation and Offload — Open SSID with DSM and Lawful Intercept

In This Chapter

This section provides information about WiFi Aggregation and Offload — Open SSID with DSM and Lawful Intercept.

Topics in this section include:

- [Applicability on page 1444](#)
- [Summary on page 1445](#)
- [Overview on page 1446](#)
- [Configuration on page 1447](#)
- [Conclusion on page 1461](#)

Applicability

The configuration in this example is applicable to all 7750 SR platforms that function as Wireless Local Area Network gateway (WLAN-GW). This configuration makes use of soft-Generic Routing Encapsulation (soft-GRE) as the access technology, which requires one or more WLAN-Input/Output Module IOMs (IOM3-XP and 2 x MS-ISAs), and was tested using SR OS release 12.0.R4.

Summary

WiFi Aggregation and Offload functionality for the 7750 SR has been supported in SR OS 10.0.R1 and later. This includes a RADIUS proxy server with RADIUS proxy cache and support for soft-GRE tunnels.

Initially, WLAN-GW subscribers were implemented using Enhanced Subscriber Management (ESM) on the Control Processing Module (CPM). To achieve higher scalability, subscribers can be implemented using Distributed Subscriber Management (DSM) on the Multi-Service Integrated Service Adapter (MS-ISA) cards, as described in this chapter.

Law enforcement agencies often require operators to provide a method of intercepting traffic from specific User Equipment (UE). This chapter describes a method of configuring Lawful Intercept (LI) for a DSM UE.

Overview

Starting with release 12.0.R4, DSM can be used for higher scalability by instantiating subscribers on the MS-ISA cards, even after authentication, instead of creating them on the CPM as when using ESM. Therefore, the maximum number of UEs per WLAN-GW, and other performance factors such as setup rate, are higher. When using DSM, commands that are different from those used with ESM are used to monitor the UEs. These commands are similar to those used by the previously available migrant users feature, which only instantiated the users on the MS-ISA cards prior to their authentication.

Lawful intercept can also be configured to intercept traffic to and from a UE. For security reasons, the configuration for LI can be kept separate and invisible to the regular admin user of the 7750 SR, even if this admin user has full admin access. In this situation, any information about the intercept is only available to the LI user. An example LI configuration is shown in this document, with the intercept configured using CLI. It is also possible to trigger DSM LI using RADIUS (in Access-Accept or Change of Authorization (CoA) messages). The RADIUS attributes are encrypted so that knowledge of the intercept cannot be gained by examining a packet capture.

Configuration

The WiFi offload scenario with open SSID, DSM and LI shown in [Figure 210](#) has following characteristics:

- Open SSID with web portal authentication
- DSM with fixed IPv4 address for all UEs, with L2-aware NAT
- Access Point (AP) access in Virtual Private Routed Network (VPRN) 1000
- UEs terminated in VPRN 2004
- Lawful Intercept with separate user account for monitoring or configuring intercepts using the CLI

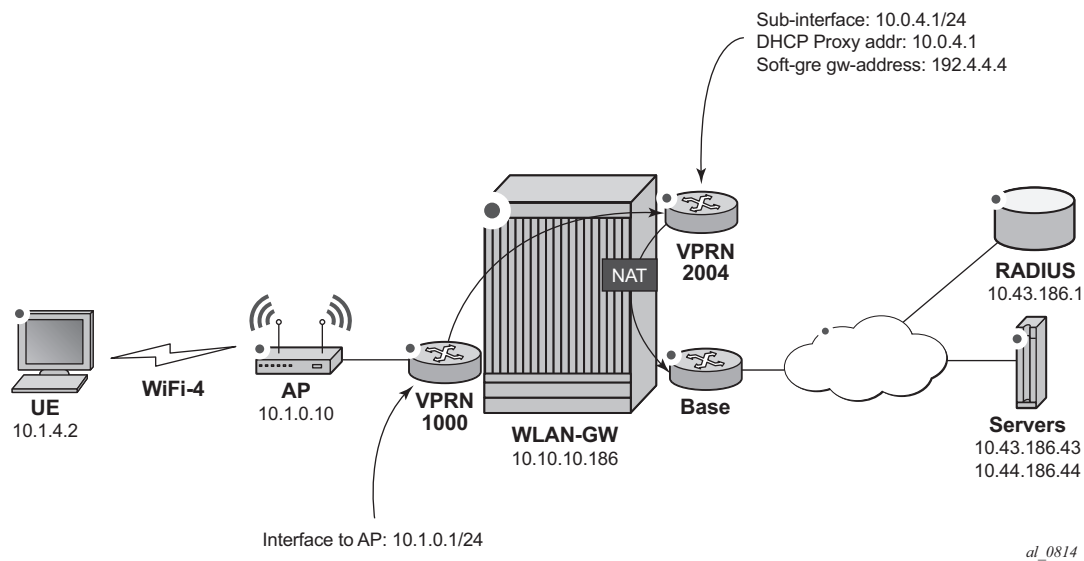


Figure 210: WiFi Offload Scenario with Open SSID, DSM and LI

WLAN-GW

Note that the uplink interface, Interior Gateway Protocol (IGP), and system configuration is outside the scope of this document.

The following Card and Media Dependent Adapter (MDA) configuration only shows the WLAN-Input/Output Module (IOM). An IOM3-XP containing two MS-ISA cards provides the WLAN-GW functionality. The MDA type for the ISA cards is isa-bb, the same type that is used for NAT.

```
*A:WLAN-GW# /configure card 3
*A:WLAN-GW>config>card# info
-----
card-type iom3-xp
mda 1
mda-type isa-bb
no shutdown
exit
mda 2
mda-type isa-bb
no shutdown
exit
no shutdown
-----
```

The following ISA configuration applies.

```
*A:WLAN-GW# /configure isa
*A:WLAN-GW>config>isa# info
-----
wlan-gw-group 1 create
active-iom-limit 1
iom 3
no shutdown
exit
-----
```

The following NAT configuration provides an outside pool of type wlan-gw-anchor required to support DSM.

```
*A:WLAN-GW# /configure router nat
*A:WLAN-GW>config>router>nat# info
-----
outside
pool "WiFi-4-dsm" nat-group 1 type wlan-gw-anchor create
port-reservation ports 15
address-range 10.0.40.0 10.0.40.255 create
exit
no shutdown
exit
exit
-----
```

```

*A:WLAN-GW# /configure service nat
*A:WLAN-GW>config>service>nat# info
-----
      nat-policy "WiFi-4-dsm" create
        pool "WiFi-4-dsm" router Base
      exit
-----

```

The following Authentication, Authorization and Accounting (AAA) configuration contains an isa-radius-policy. The nas-ip-address-origin parameter selects the IP address sent as the Network Access Server (NAS) IP Address attribute in the ISA RADIUS requests. The source-address-range configures the IP address used by the first MS-ISA card on this WLAN-GW to send and receive RADIUS messages. Other WLAN IOM MS-ISA cards will get consecutive IP addresses in order of slot number. The password and secret configured here have to match the RADIUS server configuration.

```

*A:WLAN-GW# /configure aaa
*A:WLAN-GW>config>aaa# info
-----
      isa-radius-policy "IRS_4" create
        nas-ip-address-origin isa-ip
        password "7USmr6f7JkxD5zb3MeEZnjf1BSqaZkcH" hash2
        servers
          access-algorithm round-robin
          router "Base"
          source-address-range 10.10.186.1
          server 1 create
            authentication
            coa
            ip-address 10.43.186.1
            secret "7USmr6f7JkxD5zb3MeEZnjf1BSqaZkcH" hash2
            no shutdown
          exit
        exit
      exit
    exit
-----

```

The following subscriber management configuration contains the http-redirect-policy for redirecting newly connected UEs to the web portal, and allowing only traffic to the web portal IP address and the Domain Name Server (DNS) server.

```

*A:WLAN-GW# /configure subscriber-mgmt
*A:WLAN-GW>config>subscr-mgmt# info
-----
      http-redirect-policy "WiFi-4-dsm-redirect" create
        url "http://portal1.3ls.net/portal4.php?mac=$MAC"
        forward-entries
          dst-ip 10.43.186.1 protocol tcp dst-port 80 prefix-length 32
          dst-ip 10.43.186.43 protocol udp dst-port 53 prefix-length 32
        exit
      exit
    exit
-----

```

The following policy configuration is used for exporting required routes, including the address of the APs, the outside NAT prefixes, and the ISA RADIUS source IP addresses.

```
*A:WLAN-GW# /configure router policy-options
*A:WLAN-GW>config>router>policy-options# info
-----
    prefix-list "WiFi"
        prefix 10.0.0.0/16 longer
        prefix 10.10.186.0/24 longer
    exit
    prefix-list "WiFi-APs"
        prefix 10.1.0.0/16 longer
    exit
    policy-statement "toisis"
        entry 10
            from
                prefix-list "WiFi" "WiFi-APs"
            exit
            action accept
            exit
        exit
    exit
    policy-statement "WiFi-APs"
        entry 10
            from
                prefix-list "WiFi-APs"
            exit
            action accept
            exit
        exit
    exit
exit
-----
```

The following configuration is used for exporting the outside NAT prefixes and the ISA RADIUS source IP addresses to ISIS.

```
*A:WLAN-GW# /configure router isis
*A:WLAN-GW>config>router>isis# info
-----
    export "toisis"
-----
```

The following configures VPRN 1000 for AP connectivity, where the AP prefix is exported to the Global Route Table (GRT) so that it can be managed from servers reachable through the Base router.

```
*A:WLAN-GW# /configure service vprn 1000
*A:WLAN-GW>config>service>vprn# info
-----
    route-distinguisher 65400:1000
    interface "toAP" create
        address 10.1.0.1/24
        sap 1/1/7 create
    exit
exit
-----
```

```

grt-lookup
  enable-grt
    static-route 0.0.0.0/0 grt
  exit
export-grt "WiFi-APs"
exit
-----

```

The following configures VPRN 2004 for UE termination, with distributed-sub-mgmt enabled and the ISA RADIUS policy configured under vlan-tag-ranges.

```

*A:WLAN-GW# /configure service vprn 2004
*A:WLAN-GW>config>service>vprn# info
-----
description "Open WiFi with DSM"
route-distinguisher 65400:2004
subscriber-interface "SI4" create
  address 10.0.4.1/24
  group-interface "GI4" wlangw create
    wlan-gw
      gw-address 192.4.4.4
      mobility
        trigger data iapp
      exit
      router 1000
      wlan-gw-group 1
      vlan-tag-ranges
        range default
          authentication
            authentication-policy "IRS_4"
          exit
          dhcp
            active-lease-time min 5
            initial-lease-time min 5
            l2-aware-ip-address 10.1.4.2
            primary-dns 10.43.186.43
            secondary-dns 10.44.186.44
            no shutdown
          exit
          distributed-sub-mgmt
            no shutdown
          exit
          nat-policy "WiFi-4-dsm"
        exit
      exit
    no shutdown
  exit
exit
nat
  inside
    l2-aware
      address 10.1.4.1/24
    exit
  exit
exit
wlan-gw

```

```

exit
no shutdown
-----

```

The following LI user configuration allows user LIadmin to configure and view the Lawful Intercept configuration.

```

*A:WLAN-GW# /configure system security
*A:WLAN-GW>config>system>security# info
-----
profile "li"
  default-action deny-all
  li
  entry 1
    match "back"
    action permit
  exit
  entry 2
  exit
  entry 10
    match "configure system security"
    action permit
  exit
  entry 20
    match "configure li"
    action permit
  exit
  entry 30
    match "show li"
    action permit
  exit
  entry 40
    match "file"
    action permit
  exit
  entry 50
    match "info"
    action permit
  exit
  entry 60
    match "admin display-config"
    action permit
  exit
  entry 70
    match "tools perform security"
    action permit
  exit
  entry 80
    match "tools dump li wlan-gw ue"
    action permit
  exit
  entry 100
    match "exit"
    action permit
  exit
exit
user "LIadmin"

```



```

password "$2y$10$Yp3sQZpG1bg6K3CeQoCHi.wyBOj7ts5/tsY/nqb0bbFjuFZ9G5wsi"
access console li
console
    no member "default"
    member "li"
exit
exit
-----

```

The following mirror configuration of type ip-only forwards intercepted traffic to a server.

```

*A:WLAN-GW# /configure mirror
*A:WLAN-GW>config>mirror# info
-----
    mirror-dest 199 type ip-only create
        encap
            layer-3-encap ip-udp-shim create
                gateway create
                    ip src 10.10.10.186 dest 10.43.186.43
                    udp src 3199 dest 3199
                exit
            exit
        exit
    exit
    no shutdown
exit
-----

```

The following configures a BOF, with li-local-save, a local LI config file, and li-separate, ensuring that only the LI user can view or modify LI parameters.

```

*A:WLAN-GW# show bof
=====
BOF (Memory)
=====
    li-local-save
    li-separate

```

The following LI source configuration to intercept the UE can only be configured or viewed by user LIadmin. The configuration is saved in cf3:\li.cfg, encrypted. The intercept-id and session-id will appear in the LI packets, which can be decoded in Wireshark using Decode As, Jmirror.

```

*A:WLAN-GW# /configure li
*A:WLAN-GW>config>li# info
-----
#-----
echo "LI Log Configuration"
#-----
    log
    exit
#-----
echo "LI Filter Lock State Configuration"
#-----
    li-filter-lock-state locked
#-----

```

```

echo "LI Mirror Source Configuration"
#-----
    li-source 199
        wlan-gw
            dsm-subscriber mac 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7
            intercept-id 1
            session-id 199
        exit
    exit
    no shutdown
exit
-----

```

Freeradius

This default configuration section sets the VSA Alc-Wlan-Ue-Creation-Type with value 1, which triggers the creation of a DSM host (value 0 is ESM). The Nas-Ip-Address is returned in the Alc-Wlan-Portal-URL to tell the web portal which MS-ISA address should receive the RADIUS CoA request:

/etc/freeradius/users:

```

DEFAULT      Auth-Type := Local, User-Password := "alcatel", user-name=~"^.*$"
              Alc-Subsc-ID-Str = "%{User-Name}",
              Alc-Wlan-Ue-Creation-Type = 1,
              Alc-Wlan-Portal-Redirect = "WiFi-4-dsm-redirect",
              Alc-Wlan-Portal-URL = "http://portal1.3ls.net/portal4.php?nas=%{Nas-
Ip-Address}&mac=%{User-Name}&ssid=WiFi-4",

```

As an alternative to configuring the LI for the UE in the CLI, the following RADIUS attributes can be sent in the Access-Accept and CoA.

```

Alc-LI-Action = "enable",
Alc-LI-Destination = "199",
Alc-LI-Intercept-Id = 1,

```

In /etc/freeradius/clients.conf, each ISA is a client.

```

client 10.10.186.1 {
    secret      = alcatel
    shortname   = WLAN-GW-ISA1
}
client 10.10.186.2 {
    secret      = alcatel
    shortname   = WLAN-GW-ISA2
}

```

A RADIUS CoA sent during a successful portal login makes the following UE a DSM subscriber with full access.

```
echo "User-Name='.$mac.',Alc-Wlan-Ue-Creation-Type="1",Alc-Subsc-Prof-Str="SUBP_4",Alc-
SLA-Prof-Str=SLAP_4,Alc-Primary-Dns = 10.43.186.43," | /usr/bin/radclient -x -r 1 -t 2
'.$nas.' coa alcatel
```

Access Points

The following must be configured on the Access Point as a minimum:

- IP address 10.1.1.10/24
 - Default route to 10.1.1.1
 - Open SSID WiFi-4 mapped to VLAN 40
 - Soft-GRE tunnel with destination 192.4.4.4, with VLAN 40 mapped to this tunnel
-

Show Commands

The following commands show the status of the UEs. For DSM users, the UEs are displayed using a tools command. Before portal authentication, the UE is in Portal state.

```
*A:WLAN-GW# /tools dump wlan-gw ue
=====
Matched 1 session on Slot #3 MDA #1
=====
UE-Mac           : 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7      UE-vlan          : 40
UE IP Addr       : 10.1.4.2              UE timeout       : 293 sec
Description      : Portal
Auth-time        : 09/08/2014 11:30:34
Tunnel MDA       : 3/2                  Tunnel Router    : 1000
MPLS label       : 40                   Shaper           : Default
Tunnel Src IP    : 10.1.0.10             Tunnel Dst IP    : 192.4.4.4
Tunnel Type      : GRE
Anchor SAP       : 3/1/nat-out-ip:2049.3
AP-Mac           : Unknown              AP-RSSI          : Unknown
AP-SSID          : Unknown
Last-forward     : 09/08/2014 11:30:39  Last-move        : None
Session Timeout  : None                  Idle Timeout     : N/A
Acct Update      : None                   Acct Interval    : N/A
Acct Session-Id  : N/A
Acct Policy      : N/A
NAT Policy       : WiFi-4-dsm
Redirect Policy  : WiFi-4-dsm-redirect
IP Filter        : N/A
App-profile      : N/A
Rx Oper PIR      : N/A                   Rx Oper CIR      : N/A
Tx Oper PIR      : N/A                   Tx Oper CIR      : N/A
Rx Frames        : 204                   Rx Octets        : 17381
```

```
Tx Frames      : 78                      Tx Octets      : 67793
```

```
=====
```

```
No sessions on Slot #3 MDA #2 match the query
```

After login to the web portal, the UE transitions to a DSM-user and the Redirect Policy is removed,

```
*A:WLAN-GW# /tools dump wlan-gw ue
```

```
=====
```

```
Matched 1 session on Slot #3 MDA #1
```

```
=====
```

UE-Mac	: 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7	UE-vlan	: 40
UE IP Addr	: 10.1.4.2	UE timeout	: 284 sec
Description	: DSM-user		
Auth-time	: 09/08/2014 11:30:45		
Tunnel MDA	: 3/2	Tunnel Router	: 1000
MPLS label	: 40	Shaper	: Default
Tunnel Src IP	: 10.1.0.10	Tunnel Dst IP	: 192.4.4.4
Tunnel Type	: GRE		
Anchor SAP	: 3/1/nat-out-ip:2049.3		
AP-Mac	: Unknown	AP-RSSI	: Unknown
AP-SSID	: Unknown		
Last-forward	: 09/08/2014 11:30:47	Last-move	: None
Session Timeout	: None	Idle Timeout	: N/A
Acct Update	: None	Acct Interval	: N/A
Acct Session-Id	: N/A		
Acct Policy	: N/A		
NAT Policy	: WiFi-4-dsm		
Redirect Policy	: N/A		
IP Filter	: N/A		
App-profile	: N/A		
Rx Oper PIR	: N/A	Rx Oper CIR	: N/A
Tx Oper PIR	: N/A	Tx Oper CIR	: N/A
Rx Frames	: 273	Rx Octets	: 23186
Tx Frames	: 122	Tx Octets	: 108083

```
=====
```

```
No sessions on Slot #3 MDA #2 match the query
```

User LIadmin can view the configured intercept,

```
*A:WLAN-GW>config>li# /tools dump li wlan-gw ue
```

```
=====
```

```
Matched 1 session on Slot #3 MDA #1
```

```
=====
```

UE-Mac	: 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7	Mirror Service	: 199
LI Intercept-Id	: 1	LI Session-Id	: 199

```
=====
```

```
No sessions on Slot #3 MDA #2 match the query
```

Debug

In this example, the following debug configuration applies.

```
debug
  mirror-source 99
    port 1/1/7 egress ingress
    port 1/1/9 egress ingress
    no shutdown
  exit
wlan-gw
  group 1
    ue 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7 packet dhcp radius
  exit
exit
exit
```

The debug trace starts with DHCP.

```
150 2014/09/08 11:30:31.93 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base WLAN-GW
"WLAN-GW: MDA 3/1, SeqNo 3528
  Info:      anchor ingressing frame
           received upstream from tunnel

Ethernet: from 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7 to ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff (ethertype: 0x0800)

IP/UDP:   from 0.0.0.0 (port 68) to 255.255.255.255 (port 67)

DHCP:
ciaddr: 0.0.0.0          yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
siaddr: 0.0.0.0          giaddr: 0.0.0.0
chaddr: 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7  xid: 0xca073331

DHCP options:
[53] Message type: Discover
[61] Client id: (hex) 01 68 7f 74 8b 3d d7
[12] Host name: W81VM
[60] Class id: MSFT 5.0
[55] Param request list: len = 13
      1 Subnet mask
     15 Domain name
      3 Router
      6 Domain name server
     44 NETBIOS name server
     46 NETBIOS type
     47 NETBIOS scope
     31 Router discovery
     33 Static route
    121 Unknown option
    249 Unknown option
    252 Unknown option
     43 Vendor specific
[255] End
"
```

```
151 2014/09/08 11:30:31.93 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base WLAN-GW
"WLAN-GW: MDA 3/2, SeqNo 706
  Info:      tunnel ingressing frame
```

```

        received downstream from anchor

Ethernet: from 00:00:00:02:02:02 to 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7 (ethertype: 0x0800)

IP/UDP:   from 10.1.4.1 (port 67) to 10.1.4.2 (port 68)

DHCP:
ciaddr: 0.0.0.0          yiaddr: 10.1.4.2
siaddr: 10.1.4.1          giaddr: 0.0.0.0
chaddr: 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7  xid: 0xca073331

DHCP options:
[53] Message type: Offer
[54] DHCP server addr: 10.1.4.1
[1] Subnet mask: 255.255.255.0
[3] Router: 10.1.4.1
[51] Lease time: 300
[6] Domain name server: length = 8
    10.43.186.43
    10.44.186.44
[255] End
"

152 2014/09/08 11:30:32.09 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base WLAN-GW
"WLAN-GW: MDA 3/1, SeqNo 3529
    Info:      anchor ingressing frame
            received upstream from tunnel

Ethernet: from 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7 to ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff (ethertype: 0x0800)

IP/UDP:   from 0.0.0.0 (port 68) to 255.255.255.255 (port 67)

DHCP:
ciaddr: 0.0.0.0          yiaddr: 0.0.0.0
siaddr: 0.0.0.0          giaddr: 0.0.0.0
chaddr: 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7  xid: 0xca073331

DHCP options:
[53] Message type: Request
[61] Client id: (hex) 01 68 7f 74 8b 3d d7
[50] Requested IP addr: 10.1.4.2
[54] DHCP server addr: 10.1.4.1
[12] Host name: W81VM
[81] client FQDN: rcode1: 0, rcode2: 0, domain name = (hex) 00 57 38 31 56
4d
[60] Class id: MSFT 5.0
[55] Param request list: len = 13
    1 Subnet mask
    15 Domain name
    3 Router
    6 Domain name server
    44 NETBIOS name server
    46 NETBIOS type
    47 NETBIOS scope
    31 Router discovery
    33 Static route
    121 Unknown option
    249 Unknown option
    252 Unknown option

```

```

        43 Vendor specific
    [255] End
"

153 2014/09/08 11:30:32.09 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base WLAN-GW
"WLAN-GW: MDA 3/2, SeqNo 707
    Info:      tunnel ingressing frame
           received downstream from anchor

    Ethernet:  from 00:00:00:02:02:02 to 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7 (ethertype: 0x0800)

    IP/UDP:    from 10.1.4.1 (port 67) to 10.1.4.2 (port 68)

    DHCP:
    ciaddr: 0.0.0.0          yiaddr: 10.1.4.2
    siaddr: 10.1.4.1        giaddr: 0.0.0.0
    chaddr: 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7  xid: 0xca073331

    DHCP options:
    [53] Message type: Ack
    [54] DHCP server addr: 10.1.4.1
    [1] Subnet mask: 255.255.255.0
    [3] Router: 10.1.4.1
    [51] Lease time: 300
    [58] Renew timeout: 150
    [59] Rebind timeout: 263
    [6] Domain name server: length = 8
           10.43.186.43
           10.44.186.44
    [255] End
"

```

RADIUS authentication is triggered by the first data packet.

```

154 2014/09/08 11:30:34.76 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base WLAN-GW
"WLAN-GW: MDA 3/1, SeqNo 3563
    Info:      anchor egressing frame
           radius-auth-req

    IP/UDP:    from 10.10.186.1 (port 1082) to 10.43.186.1 (port 1812)

    RADIUS:    Access-Request (continued)
"

155 2014/09/08 11:30:34.76 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base RADIUS
"RADIUS: Transmit
    Access-Request(1) 10.10.186.1:1082 id 45 len 126 vrid 1
    NAS IP ADDRESS [4] 4 10.10.186.1
    USER NAME [1] 17 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7
    PASSWORD [2] 16 MvqAtmAovSeeWgNIGyT/t.
    CALLING STATION ID [31] 17 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7
    CALLED STATION ID [30] 17 00:00:00:00:00:00
    VSA [26] 19 Alcatel(6527)
    CHADDR [27] 17 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7
"

156 2014/09/08 11:30:34.76 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base WLAN-GW
"WLAN-GW: MDA 3/1, SeqNo 3564

```

```

Info:      anchor ingressing frame
          portal auth-accept

IP/UDP:    from 10.43.186.1 (port 1812) to 10.10.186.1 (port 1082)

RADIUS:    Access-Accept (continued)
"

157 2014/09/08 11:30:34.76 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base RADIUS
"RADIUS: Receive
  Access-Accept(2) id 45 len 258 from 10.43.186.1:1812 vrid 1
    VSA [26] 19 Alcatel(6527)
      SUBSC ID STR [11] 17 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7
    VSA [26] 20 Alcatel(6527)
    VSA [26] 20 Alcatel(6527)
    VSA [26] 20 Alcatel(6527)
    VSA [26] 6 Alcatel(6527)
      WLAN UE CREATION TYPE [184] 4 1
    VSA [26] 25 Alcatel(6527)
      WLAN PORTAL REDIRECT [172] 23 WiFi-4-dsm-redirect
    VSA [26] 86 Alcatel(6527)
      WLAN PORTAL URL [173] 84 http://portal1.3ls.net/portal4.php?nas=10.10.186.
1&mac=68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7&ssid=WiFi-4
"

```

RADIUS returns the redirect policy and portal URL, and the UE is then in Portal state. Next, the user logs in and a CoA is sent by the portal.

```

159 2014/09/08 11:30:45.07 EDT MINOR: DEBUG #2001 Base RADIUS
"RADIUS: Receive
  Change of Authorization(43) id 220 len 91 from 10.43.186.1:53449 vrid 1
    USER NAME [1] 17 68:7f:74:8b:3d:d7
    VSA [26] 6 Alcatel(6527)
      WLAN UE CREATION TYPE [184] 4 1
    VSA [26] 8 Alcatel(6527)
      SUBSC PROF STR [12] 6 SUBP_4
    VSA [26] 8 Alcatel(6527)
      SLA PROF STR [13] 6 SLAP_4
    VSA [26] 6 Alcatel(6527)
      PRIMARY DNS [9] 4 10.43.186.43
"

```

Finally the UE is in DSM state with unrestricted access.

Conclusion

The 7750 SR WLAN-GW, with Open SSID, can support WiFi Offload users as DSM subscribers instantiated on MS-ISA cards. This allows the support of a greater number of UEs on a single system when a full ESM feature set is not required. DSM UEs, just as ESM UEs, can have their traffic intercepted using LI.

Glossary

6PE — IPv6 Provider Edge router. An MPLS IPv4 core network that supports IPv6 domains which communicate over an IES service.

6VPE — IPv6 Provider Edge router with IP-VPN Services. An MPLS IPv4 core network that supports the communication using IPv6 VPRN services.

AA — Application Assurance

AARP — Application Assurance Redundancy Protocol

ARP — Address Resolution Protocol

Bridged CO — Bridged Central Office

B-DA — Backbone destination MAC address

BFD — Bi-Directional Forwarding Detection

BGP — Border Gateway Protocol

BITS — Building Integrated Timing Supply

B-MAC — The backbone source and destination MAC address fields defined in the 802.1ah provider MAC encapsulation header

BMCA — Best Master Clock Algorithm

BNG — Broadband Network Gateway

BSA — Broadband Service Aggregator

BSAN — Broadband Service Access Node

BSM — Basic Subscriber Management

BSR — Broadband Service Router

BTV — Broadcast TV

B-VPLS — Backbone VPLS

CBS — Committed Burst Size

CCM — Continuity Check Messages

CE — Customer premises equipment dedicated to one particular business/enterprise.

CHAP — Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol

CIR — Committed Information Rate

C-MAC — Customer MAC

CO — Central Office

CSC-CE — Peering router managed and operated by the Customer Carrier that is connected to CSC-PEs for purposes of using the associated CSC IP VPN services for backbone transport. The CSC-CE may attach directly to CEs if it is also configured to be a PE for business VPN services.

CSC-PE — A PE router managed and operated by the Super Carrier that supports one or more CSC IP VPN services possibly in addition to other traditional PE services.

CSPF — Constraint-Based Shortest Path First

DE — Discard-Eligible

DEI — Drop Eligibility Indicator

DHCP — Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol

DHCPv6 — Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol for IPv6

DSCP — Differentiated Services Code Point

eBGP — External Border Gateway Protocol

Epipe — Ethernet P2P VLL Service

eLER — Egress Label Edge Router

ERO — Explicit Router Object

ESM — Enhanced Subscriber Management

ESMC — Ethernet Synchronization Messaging Channel

FEC — Forwarding Equivalence Class

FPP — Floor Packet Percentage

FRR — Fast Reroute

GMPLS — Generalized Multi-Protocol Label Switching

GNSS — Global Navigation Satellite System

GPS — Global Positioning System (the GNSS operated by the US Government)

iBGP — Interior Border Gateway Protocol

IA-NA — Identity Association for Non-Temporary Addresses Option

IA-PD — Identity Association for Prefix Delegation Option

ICB — Inter-Chassis Backup

ICMP — Internet Control Message Protocol

IES — Internet Enhanced Service

IGP — Interior Gateway Protocol

iLER — Ingress Label Edge Router

IMPM — Ingress Multicast Path Management

IPoE — IP over Ethernet

ITU-T — International Telecommunications Union - Telecommunications

I-VPLS — A field of the backbone service instance tag that identifies the backbone service instance of a frame

LDP FRR — Label Distribution Protocol Fast Re-Route

LDPoRSVP — LDP over RSVP

LSA — Link State Advertisement

LSP — Label Switched Path

LUDB — Local User Data Base

MBB — Make-Before-Break

MBS — Maximum Burst Size

MC-APS — Multi-chassis Automatic Protection Switching

MC-EP — Multi-Chassis Endpoint

MC-LAG — Multi-Chassis Link Aggregation

MDT-SAFI — Multicast Distribution Tree Sub-Address Family Indicator

MEP — Maintenance End Point

MMRP — Multiple MAC Registration Protocol

MP-BGP — Multi-Protocol BGP

MSAP — Managed Service Access Point

MTSO — Mobile Telephony Switching Office

MTU — Multi-Tenant Unit

MVPN — Multicast Virtual Private Network

NAT — Network Address Translation

NH — Next-Hop

NLHI — Network Layer Reachability Information

NTP — Network Time Protocol

OAM — Operation, Administration and Management

OIL — Outgoing Interface List

OPS — On-Path Support

P2MP — Point-to-Multipoint

PAP — Password authentication protocol

PBB — Provider Backbone Bridging

PBB-Epipe — A combination of the best of the PBB and Epipe

PBB-VPLS — A combination of the best of the PBB and VPLS

PBT — Port Based Timestamping

PDV — Packet Delay Variation

PE — Edge router managed and operated by the “Customer Carrier” that connects to CEs to provide business VPN or Internet services.

PIR — Peak Information Rate

PLR — Point of Local Repair

POP — Points of Presence

PPPoE — Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet

PPS — Packets per second

PTP — Precision Time Protocol

QoS — Quality of Service

RADIUS — Remote Authentication Dial In User Service

Routed CO — Routed Central Office

RPF — Reverse Path Forwarding

RR — Route Reflector

RTM — Routing Table Manager

SAP — Service Access Point

SASE — Stand Alone Synchronization Equipment

SDH — Synchronous Digital Hierarchy

SDP — Service Distribution Point

SHCV — Subscriber Host Connectivity Verification

SLA — Service Level Agreement

SONET — Synchronous Optical Network

Spoke-SDP — Spoke Service Distribution Point

SRLG — Shared Risk Link Groups

SSM — Synchronization Status Messages

TCN — Topology Change Notification

TE — Traffic Engineering

TED — Traffic Engineering Database

T-LDP — Targeted LDP

TPSDA — Triple Play Service Delivery Architecture

TTM — Tunnel Table Manager

VLL — Virtual Leased Line

VPLS — Virtual Private LAN Service

VPN-IPv6 — Virtual Private Network address family for IPv6 addressing.

VPRN — Virtual Private Routed Network

VSA — Vendor Specific Attribute

WRED — Weighted Random Early Detection

Customer documentation and product support



Customer documentation

<http://documentation.alcatel-lucent.com>



Technical support

<http://support.alcatel-lucent.com>



Documentation feedback

documentation.feedback@alcatel-lucent.com

